

#1 *NEW YORK TIMES* BESTSELLING AUTHOR

**MARK R. LEVIN**



**AMERICAN**

**MARXISM**

#1 *NEW YORK TIMES* BESTSELLING AUTHOR

**MARK R. LEVIN**



**AMERICAN  
MARXISM**

**Thank you for downloading this  
Simon & Schuster ebook.**

---

Get a FREE ebook when you join our mailing list. Plus, get updates on new releases, deals, recommended reads, and more from Simon & Schuster. Click below to sign up and see terms and conditions.

**[CLICK HERE TO SIGN UP](#)**

Already a subscriber? Provide your email again so we can register this ebook and send you more of what you like to read. You will continue to receive exclusive offers in your inbox.

# AMERICAN MARXISM

---

MARK R. LEVIN



THRESHOLD EDITIONS

NEW YORK LONDON TORONTO SYDNEY NEW DELHI

## CHAPTER ONE

---

# IT'S HERE

The counterrevolution to the American Revolution is in full force. And it can no longer be dismissed or ignored, for it is devouring our society and culture, swirling around our everyday lives, and ubiquitous in our politics, schools, media, and entertainment. Once a mostly unrelatable, fringe, and subterranean movement, it is here—it is everywhere. You, your children, and your grandchildren are now immersed in it, and it threatens to destroy the greatest nation ever established, along with your freedom, family, and security. Of course, the primary difference between the counterrevolution and the American Revolution is that the former seeks to destroy American society and impose autocratic rule, and the latter sought to protect American society and institute representative government.

The counterrevolution or movement of which I speak is Marxism. I have written about Marxism at length in two earlier books—*Ameritopia* and *Rediscovering Americanism and the Tyranny of Progressivism*—and discuss it regularly on my radio and television shows. There are also untold numbers of books written about Marxism. It is not my purpose to contribute yet another long treatise to the many that exist, nor is it possible given the focus and limitations of this book. But the application and adaption of *core* Marxist teachings to American society and culture—what I call *American Marxism*—must be addressed and confronted, lest we are smothered by its modern manifestations. And make no mistake, the situation today is dire.

In America, many Marxists cloak themselves in phrases like “progressives,” “Democratic Socialists,” “social activists,” “community activists,” etc., as most

Americans remain openly hostile to the name Marxism. They operate under myriad newly minted organizational or identifying nomenclatures, such as “Black Lives Matter” (BLM), “Antifa,” “The Squad,” etc. And they claim to promote “economic justice,” “environmental justice,” “racial equity,” “gender equity,” etc. They have invented new theories, like Critical Race Theory, and phrases and terminologies, linked to or fit into a Marxist construct. Moreover, they claim “the dominant culture” and capitalist system are unjust and inequitable, racist and sexist, colonialist and imperialist, materialistic and destructive of the environment. Of course, the purpose is to tear down and tear apart the nation for a thousand reasons and in a thousand ways, thereby dispiriting and demoralizing the public; undermining the citizenry’s confidence in the nation’s institutions, traditions, and customs; creating one calamity after another; weakening the nation from within; and ultimately, destroying what we know as American republicanism and capitalism.

However, there should be no mistake that various leaders of this counterrevolution are increasingly outspoken and brazen about who they are, including bands of openly Marxist professors and activists, and they are supported by a core group of zombie-like “woke” followers. Whatever their labels and self-descriptions, the essential characteristics of their beliefs, statements, and policies exhibit core Marxist dogma. Moreover, they occupy our colleges and universities, newsrooms and social media, boardrooms, and entertainment, and their ideas are prominent within the Democratic Party, the Oval Office, and the halls of Congress. Their influence is seen and felt among the mostly witting as well as the unsuspecting, and in news reporting, movies, television shows and commercials, publishing, and sports, as well as teacher training and classroom curriculum throughout America’s public school system. They use the tactics of propaganda and indoctrination, and demand conformity and compliance, silencing contrary voices through repressive tactics, such as “the cancel culture,” which destroys reputations and careers, censoring and banning mostly patriotic and contrary viewpoints on social media, even including former president Donald Trump, and attacking academic freedom and intellectual interchange in higher education. Indeed, they take aim at all aspects of the culture—historical monuments (including memorials to Abraham Lincoln,

George Washington, abolitionist Frederick Douglass, and the 54th Massachusetts black Union regiment), Mark Twain, William Shakespeare, Mr. Potato Head, Dr. Seuss, Disney cartoons, ad infinitum. Pronouns are banned and replaced with nondescript words so as not to offend fifty-eight flavors of gender identification. Past social media posts are scrutinized for early indications of insufficient fealty to the present-day Marxist hegemony. Journalism and editorial pages are sanitized of nonbelievers.

And yet, historical and present-day experience shows that Marxism and its supposed “worker’s paradise” are responsible for the death of tens of millions of human beings, and the impoverishment and enslavement of over a billion more. Indeed, Marx was wrong about almost everything. The Industrial Revolution created a vast middle class unmatched at any time in world history, as opposed to an army of angry proletariat revolutionaries hell-bent on overthrowing the capitalist system. And despite the Marxist class warfare rhetoric of Democratic Party politicians and their surrogates, with technological and other advances capitalism has created unimaginable and unparalleled wealth for more people in all walks of life than any other economic system.

Marx’s insistence that labor alone creates value is also incorrect. If that were the case, the Third World would not be the Third World. It would be flourishing. Longer workdays do not ensure wealth creation or growth. Of course, labor is a very important part of economic value and production, but without capital investment, entrepreneurship and sensible risk taking, wise management, etc., businesses would fail—as many do. As any businessman will tell you, there are many decisions that go into running a successful enterprise. Furthermore, all labor is not alike—that is, there are different specialties, backgrounds, and approaches both within the workforce and applicable to certain businesses that make references to “*the* proletariat” nonsensical.

In addition, labor alone does not determine the value of a product or service. Obviously, it contributes to it. However, consumers play the major role. They create the demand. And depending on the demand, business and labor provide the supply. In other words, capitalism caters to desires and needs of “the masses.” Also, profit does not create worker exploitation, as Marx insisted. On the

contrary. It makes possible increased worker pay, benefits, security, and job opportunities.

Nor was America's early economic success built on imperialism or colonialism. The very resources America is falsely accused of plundering from other countries have not, in and of themselves, made those countries wealthy, even though they are the repository of the resources. American know-how and ingenuity, born of freedom and capitalism, are the source of societal and economic development and advancement.

What, then, is the appeal of Marxism? American Marxism has adapted the language and allure of *utopianism*, which I wrote about at length in my book *Ameritopia*. It is “tyranny disguised as a desirable, workable, and even paradisiacal governing ideology. There are... unlimited utopian constructs, for the mind is capable of infinite fantasies. But there are common themes. The fantasies take the form of grand social plans or experiments, the impracticability and impossibility of which, in small ways and large, lead to the individual's subjugation.”<sup>1</sup> Indeed, the economic and cultural agenda driven by President Joe Biden and the Democratic Party provide ample examples of this ideology and behavior at work. They include massive deficit spending, confiscatory taxation, and the regulation of all things large and small—drenched in Marxist class-warfare propaganda—and a slew of executive orders claiming to end numerous historical and cultural injustices.

So, too, does their demand for absolute one-party control over the body politic through various extra-constitutional schemes and other means, as Marxism does not tolerate the competition of ideas or political parties. These efforts include changing the voting system to ensure Democratic Party control for decades, which has as its purpose the eradication of the Republican Party and political competition; attempting to eliminate the Senate filibuster rule so all manner of laws can be imposed on the country without effective deliberation or challenge; threatening to breach separation of powers and judicial independence by plotting to pack the Supreme Court with like-minded ideologues; planning to add Democratic seats to the Senate to ensure its control over that body; using tens of billions in taxpayer funds to subsidize and strengthen core parts of the Democratic Party base (such as unions and political activists); and facilitating



massive illegal immigration, the purpose of which is to, among other things, alter the nation's demographics and eventually add significantly to the pro-Democratic Party voting base. These actions and designs, among others, are evidence of an autocratic, power-hungry, ideological movement that rejects political and traditional comity and seeks to permanently crush its opposition—and emerge as the sole political and governmental power.

The latter explains the true motivation of the obsessive and unremitting war against the candidacy and presidency of Donald Trump, and his tens of millions of supporters. The Democratic Party, aligned with its surrogates in the media, academia, and the bureaucratic Leviathan, colluded to discredit and cripple Trump's presidency, and destroy him personally, by unleashing an onslaught of slanders, conspiracy theories, criminal and congressional investigations, impeachments, and coup attempts, the likes of which this nation has never experienced. The unremitting, harmonized, and ferocious blitz was aimed not only at the former president, but his followers and voters. Their purpose was to break the back and spirit of the political opposition, and clear the field of obstacles to power and governance. Indeed, the Democratic Party continues to pursue now-private-citizen Trump, having gained access to his tax returns through the offices of elected Democratic officials, including the Manhattan district attorney, an aggressive partisan.

The campaign to delegitimize and marginalize the Democratic Party's political opposition is further evidenced by Biden's reckless racial rhetoric in accusing Republicans in Georgia of instituting Jim Crow laws to prevent black citizens from voting, a contemptible lie intended to upset minorities and turn them against the Republican Party. Although weaponizing race is not new to the Democratic Party, given its historic pedigree—from supporting slavery to segregation—and Biden's vocal and active opposition to integration early in his Senate career, it is shocking to witness its grotesque rebirth as a political tool.

And during the violent riots last summer and this spring, which involved looting, arson, and even murder in multiple cities over the course of several months, and where Antifa and BLM had prominent organizational roles, the Democratic Party's leadership mostly regurgitated the rhetoric and claims of the anarchist/Marxist groups and rioters, including the broad condemnation of law

enforcement as “systemically racist,” and were not only loath to denounce the violence, but, incredibly, declared the rioters as “mostly peaceful” and their demand to defund the police (later, changed to slash their budgets) as legitimate. In fact, a BLM cofounder declared in the summer of 2020 that one of their “goal[s] is to get Trump out now.”<sup>2</sup> Democratic-controlled cities named streets after the group. And numerous Biden campaign staffers donated to a fund that paid the bail for the release of those who were arrested and jailed.<sup>3</sup> Obviously, the Democratic Party and Biden campaign perceived an overlap or synergy of political interests and objectives with the rioters.

The Democratic Party seeks to empower *itself* by breaching constitutional firewalls; skirting if not eradicating rules, traditions, and customs; adopting Marx’s language of class warfare; and aligning with certain avowedly Marxist groups and ideological causes, among other things. Moreover, it is using the instrumentalities of the government for its political empowerment and purposes. The truth is that the interests of the Democratic Party come before those of the country. And allegiance to the party is more important than fidelity to the country. It holds these characteristics in common with other autocratic and communist parties throughout the world.

Marxism is especially alluring to, and actively supported by, individuals who find Marxism’s oppressor-oppressed class warfare construct appealing for several reasons. First, the fact is people want to belong to groups, including ethnic, racial, religious, and economic groups. People find identity, commonality, purpose, and even self-worth with such attachments. Indeed, I believe this to be the most potent of Marx’s paradigms, because he exploits this instinctively human and psychologically emotional appeal to create passionate and even fanatical adherents and revolutionaries. This is another characteristic of American Marxism and the Democratic Party.

This brings me to my second point. Within this class warfare construct, Marxism’s adherents and would-be followers are encouraged to view themselves and the groups with which they identify as the oppressed—that is, the victims. And their oppressors are found in the existing society, culture, and economic system, from which the oppressed must liberate themselves and their fellow travelers, meaning those victims who identify with or are also members of the

same group. This is a primary reason why Marxism stresses classism over individualism. The individual is dehumanized and is nothing unless he identifies with a group—the oppressed and victimized group. And the individuals who make up opposing or nonconforming groups are collectively dehumanized, condemned, and loathed as the enemy. Again, this is a trait of American Marxism and the Democratic Party.

Of course, this formulation is especially seductive to the malcontented, disenchanting, disaffected, and dissatisfied. For them, individual liberty and capitalism expose their own shortcomings and failings, and their difficulty and perhaps inability to function in an open society. Marxism provides a theoretical and institutional framework through which they can project their own limitations and weaknesses onto “the system” and their “oppressors” rather than take responsibility for their own real or perceived plight. Again, as I wrote in *Ameritopia*, these individuals are “lured by the false hopes and promises of the utopian transformation and the criticisms of the existing society, to which their connection is tentative or nonexistent. Improving the malcontents’ lot becomes linked to the utopian cause.”<sup>4</sup> Many in this population are susceptible to manipulation, especially by demagogues and propagandists, and the lure of revolutionary transformation.

Importantly, whether one identifies with or is among the class of oppressed or victimized is a matter of self-determination and self-actualization. In other words, there are no hard and fast rules. Furthermore, they and their group can also define and identify what and whom, for them, are their oppressors. In the end, Marx and his modern-day surrogates direct their wrath at the existing society and culture, which must be toppled if life is to have meaning and start over in the newly minted egalitarian paradise.

Thus, those in the existing society who are successful, content, and happy are tormented and targeted, for they are either among the oppressors or oppressor groups, and therefore support and sustain the status quo. Moreover, those who sanction the existing society, or refuse to support or acquiesce to the agenda and demands of the oppressed, are also subjected to damaging and destructive pressures and conduct. Either you are part of the righteous revolution for liberation and transformation or you are not. Hence, the allegedly oppressed

become the real oppressors, and wield substantial power throughout society and the culture despite their limited appeal and smaller numbers. And they become more belligerent, demanding, and even violent as their appetite for control and revolution grows and must be constantly satiated.

This also explains, but only in part, the cowardice of corporatists, professional athletes, broadcasters, artists, actors, writers, and journalists who, in the face of such tumult, buckle under the pressure, seek to avoid the mob's notice through various forms of appeasement and capitulation, and in some cases participate in their own transfiguration and even disembowelment. For others, their boardrooms, management, and workforce are sympathetic and "down for the revolution," populated from the ranks of ideologically indoctrinated college and university students, particularly among the Ivy School elite, teachers' unions, or the increasingly radicalized Democratic Party, of which they are members, sympathizers, and/or supporters. And, of course, many corporatists have simply abandoned capitalism for statism and government/economic centralization, and support groups like BLM and various radical causes, as a way to curry favor if not partner with political and bureaucratic autocrats to destroy their competition and improve their financial positions.

Ted McAllister, professor of public policy at Pepperdine University, makes a persuasive case that today's ruling class or elites disdain our country. In a 2021 essay titled "Thus Always to Bad Elites," he writes:

Today, we have a very different elite than America did as recently as the 1980s in terms of their nature, goals, ambitions, style, and ways of exercising power. The deepest fact of our time is that America has a bad elite, a mendacious one whose skills, values, goals, tastes, and types of knowledge are hostile to our nation's inherited cultures and plural people. The new elite that has emerged in the last generation or two has no interest in preserving anything but perhaps their own power. They lack historical knowledge and vision, which they supplant by, or exchange for, the powers of transformation and change. Intoxicated by the power possible with emerging technologies, inspired by visions that only a

deracinated globalist perspective could make attractive, this elite thinks of creative destruction as applied to culture.

As winners in what they imagine to be a meritocratic struggle, they can see nothing of an inherited world worth preserving for their very success. The peculiar characteristics of their evolving power have given to our new elite the soul of adolescent art applied to a global canvas. They lack any experiential or historical ballast to weigh them down, to slow them in remaking everything according to their desires. For them, streamlining power is key to creation and the annoying obstacles to their new creations are not really checks to prevent tyranny but, rather, limitations—unnecessary friction in the headlong rush to transform.

For this new elite, for instance, the good of free speech has become invisible because, for them, free speech is simply friction, resistance to their goals. The elimination of hate speech is the goal, the unimpeachable good, that the openness of free speech prevents. In half a generation, the work of centuries is undone and the levers of tyranny put in place.<sup>5</sup>

Actually, this is the best that can be said of the contemporary elite.

Unfortunately, too many among us take false comfort in the belief that there could never be a Marxist-based or oriented revolution in America, and what they are witnessing is just another in a cycle of liberal movements, which contribute to the evolution of American society and culture and, therefore, are worthy of approval and passive support.

Collectively, these are America's "useful idiots" on whom Marxists rely—that is, individuals and organizations that are unserious and unaroused by the ominous clouds of tyranny, and even worse, are participants in their own demise and that of the country.

For many, Marxism has a way of sneaking up on them. They are not yet personally threatened and, at least for now, are unmolested or personally unaffected by it; or there are those who are too busy in their everyday lives to realize what is transpiring, or may dismiss these threats as amorphous, distant, or passing events; and there are still more who cannot believe their country would succumb to Marxist influences and despotism.

The purpose of this book is to *awaken* the millions of patriotic Americans, who love their country, freedom, and family, to the *reality* of Marxism's rapidly spreading influence throughout our nation. What is occurring in our country is not a temporary fad or passing event. American Marxism exists, it is here and now, and indeed it is pervasive, and its multitude of hybrid but often interlocking movements are actively working to destroy our society and culture, and overthrow the country as we know it. Many of the individuals and groups who collectively make up this movement are unknown to most Americans, or operate in ways in which most Americans are unaware. Thus, this book is written to introduce you to a representative sample of them, some perhaps more familiar than others, and to provide you with specific examples of *their* writings, ideas, and activities, so you can know of them and hear from them. Of course, I provide commentary and analysis throughout. I also provide some thoughts about tactical actions that might be taken to help stem the nation's slide and reverse course. Although this is the longest book I have written, there is much more to be said about this subject. Therefore, I anticipate writing a second volume.

American Marxism has made great progress toward instituting its goals over the last several years. If it is to be defeated, as it must—albeit a daunting and complex mission—its existence must first be acknowledged and labeled for what it is, the urgency of the moment must be realized, and the emergence of a unified, patriotic front of previously docile, divergent, and/or disputatious societal, cultural, and political factions and forces, which have in common their belief that America is worth defending, must immediately galvanize around and rally to the cause. We must rise to the challenge, as did our Founding Fathers, when they confronted the most powerful force on earth, the British Empire, and defeated it. Admittedly, in numerous ways today's threat is more byzantine, as it now inhabits most of our institutions and menaces from within, making engagement difficult and complicated. Nonetheless, I fervently believe America as we know it will be forever lost if we do not prevail.

I closed my book *Liberty and Tyranny*, which was published a short twelve years ago, with President Ronald Reagan's fateful and prescient observation, which compels our attention especially now for it is more imperative than ever:

“Freedom is never more than one generation away from extinction. We didn’t pass it to our children in the bloodstream. It must be fought for, protected, and handed on for them to do the same, or one day we will spend our sunset years telling our children and children’s children what it was once like in the United States where men were free.”<sup>6</sup>

*PATRIOTS OF AMERICA, UNITE!*

## CHAPTER TWO

---

# BREEDING MOBS

Almost a decade ago, and before Antifa was widely known and Black Lives Matter (BLM) was established, I wrote of mass movements in my book *Ameritopia* in the framework of utopianism. Utopianism, whether in the form of Marxism, fascism, or some other form of autocratic statism, is alluring to many because at their core they make glorious claims of a paradisiacal future and the perfectibility of man, if only the existing society and culture are radically transformed or abandoned altogether, and the individual surrenders more of his liberty, free will, and security to the cause. Such is the nature of mass movements.

I explained further that mass movements attempt to devour the individual in two ways: consume his identity and uniqueness, thereby making him indistinguishable from “the masses,” but also assigning him a group identity based on race, age, income, etc., to draw class distinctions. “This way [the demagogues and propagandists] can speak to the well-being of ‘the people’ as a whole while dividing them against themselves, thereby stampeding them in one direction or another as necessary to collapse the existing society or rule over the new one.”<sup>1</sup>

And who among us is attracted to such mass movements? Again, as I noted: “[A] receptive audience [is found] among the society’s disenchanted, disaffected, dissatisfied, and maladjusted who are unwilling or unable to assume responsibility for their own real or perceived conditions but instead blame their surroundings, ‘the system,’ and others. They are lured by the false hopes and promises of utopian transformation and the criticisms of the existing society, to



which their connection is tentative or nonexistent. Improving the malcontent's lot becomes linked to the utopian cause. Moreover, disparaging and diminishing the successful and accomplished becomes an essential tactic. No one should be better than anyone else, regardless of the merits or value of his contribution. By exploiting human frailties, frustrations, jealousies, and inequities, a sense of meaning and self-worth is created in the malcontent's otherwise unhappy and directionless life."<sup>2</sup>

Furthermore, in mass movements "[t]he individual is inconsequential as a person and useful only as an insignificant part of an agglomeration of insignificant parts. He is a worker, part of a mass; nothing more, nothing less. His existence is soulless. Absolute obedience is the highest virtue. After all, only an army of drones is capable of building a rainbow to paradise."<sup>3</sup>

Almost a century ago, the French philosopher and essayist Julien Benda observed that mass movements form frequently around individuals who share the same political hatred. He wrote: "Thanks to the progress of communication and, still more, to the group spirit, it is clear that the holders of the same political hatred now form a compact impassioned mass, every individual of which feels himself in touch with the infinite numbers of others, whereas a century ago such people were comparatively out of touch with each other and hated in a 'scattered' way.... It may be asserted that these coherences will tend to develop still further, for the will to group is one of the most profound characteristics of the modern world, which even in the most unexpected domains (for instance, the domain of thought) is more and more becoming the world of leagues, of 'unions' and of 'groups.' Is it necessary to say that the passion of the individual is strengthened by feeling itself in proximity to these thousands of similar passions?... [T]he individual bestows a mystic personality on the association of which he feels himself a member, and gives it a religious adoration, which is simply the deification of his own passion and no small stimulus to its intensity."<sup>4</sup>

Benda also concluded that such movements are often cultlike. "The coherence just described might be called a surface coherence, but there is added to it a coherence of essence. For the very reason that the holders of the same political passion form a more compact, impassioned group, they also form a more *homogeneous*, impassioned group, in which the individual ways of feeling

disappear and the zeal of each member more and more takes on the color of the others.”<sup>5</sup>

Today, clearly the Antifa movement is populated with indistinguishable “soldiers” dressed uniformly in black clothing and face coverings. Their identities and names are unknown. They are indoctrinated in a Marxist-anarchist ideology, trained in violence, and said to be “an idea.” Obviously, it is more than an idea. It is a dangerous and brutal movement populated by angry zealots.<sup>6</sup>

BLM is also a Marxist-anarchist movement. However, it has self-identified as a black power or black liberation movement when, in fact, its agenda extends well beyond race into the usual Marxist demands for the destruction of the existing society.<sup>7</sup>

Of course, these movements, like all mass movements, cannot tolerate or survive competing or rival ideas or voices. They demand groupthink and conformity. We have even seen this orthodoxy spread throughout our culture, with the widespread firing, shaming, banning, intimidating, and otherwise abusing those who dare to voice contrary or different views, or question or challenge, for example, BLM’s mission. So ubiquitous is this assault on individualism and nonconformism in today’s society that it has acquired its own modern nomenclature—the “cancel culture.” However, this is not new, just more prevalent, open, and intense.

Again, I wrote nearly a decade ago that these mass movements are “intolerant of diversity, uniqueness, debate, etc., for [their] purpose requires a singular focus. There can be no competing voices or causes slowing or obstructing society’s long and righteous march. [They rely] on deceit, propaganda, dependence, intimidation, and force. In its more aggressive state, as the malignancy of the enterprise becomes more painful and its impossibility more obvious, it incites violence inasmuch as avenues for free expression and civil dissent are cut off. Violence becomes the individual’s primary recourse and the state’s primary response. Ultimately, the only way out is the state’s termination.”<sup>8</sup>

Thus, mass movements rely significantly on indoctrination and brainwashing. They are ignited and motivated “by an enthusiastic intelligentsia or ‘experts’ professionally engaged in developing and spreading utopian fantasies.... [They] are immune from the impracticability and consequences of their blueprints for they rarely present themselves for public office. Instead, they seek to influence those who do. They legislate without accountability.”<sup>9</sup>

Where are these “experts” found? As we shall see, primarily among tenured faculty in our colleges and universities, whose intellectual and emotional fealty are mostly aligned, at least in significant part, with the ideological prescriptions of Jean-Jacques Rousseau, Georg Wilhelm Friedrich Hegel, and, of course, Karl Marx.

Rousseau, Hegel, and Marx, in their own ways, argue for the individual’s subjugation into a general will, or greater good, or bigger cause built on radical egalitarianism—that is, “the collective.” Of course, as logic, reason, and experience demonstrate, this is a building block for totalitarian causes and regimes. As the state becomes increasingly authoritarian and despotic, controlling speech, mobility, and even thought where possible, it is said to perpetuate and celebrate a kind of popular or people-oriented will and liberation.

To better understand the philosophical underpinnings of the Antifa, BLM, and similar anti-American movements, let us take a brief look at Rousseau, Hegel, and Marx in this context. Rousseau explained: “I conceive of two kinds of inequality in the human species: one that I call natural and physical, because it is established by nature and consists in the difference of age, health, bodily strength, and qualities of mind or soul. The other may be called moral or political inequality, because it depends on a kind of convention and is established, or at least authorized, by the consent of men. This latter type of inequality consists in the different privileges enjoyed by some at the expense of others, such as being richer, more honored, more powerful than they, or even causing themselves to be obeyed by them.”<sup>10</sup>

Rousseau argued further that “[i]f we follow the progress of inequality [in the history of governing systems], we will find that the first stage was the establishment of the law and of the right of property, the second stage was the

institution of magistracy, and the third and final stage was the transformation of legitimate power into arbitrary power. Thus the condition of rich and poor was authorized by the first epoch, that of the strong and weak by the second, and that of the master and slave by the third: the ultimate degree of inequality and the limit to which all the others finally lead, until new revolutions completely dissolve the government or bring it nearer to a legitimate institution.”<sup>11</sup>

How will we know when the “legitimate institution” has been achieved beyond the theoretical construct? Rousseau does not tell us.

For Hegel, the individual finds his actualization—liberty, happiness, fulfillment—through the state. But not just any state. States evolve over time, ultimately leading to a fully developed state, or the “final end.” In such a state, the individual becomes part of a universalized, collective whole. That which preceded the final end is of no consequence. Again, the individual is subservient to the state for both his own realization and the greater good of the collective.

At this point, “[t]he state as a completed reality is the ethical whole and the actualization of freedom. It is the absolute purpose of reason that freedom should be actualized, the state is the spirit, which abides in the world and there realizes itself consciously.... Only when it is present in consciousness, knowing itself as an existing object, is it the state. In thinking of freedom, we must not take our departure from individuality or the individual’s self-consciousness, but from the essence of self-consciousness. Let man be aware of it or not, this essence realizes itself as an independent power, in which particular persons are only phases. The state is the march of God in the world; its ground or cause is the power of reason realizing itself as well.”<sup>12</sup>

How do we know when we have reached the “final end” beyond the theoretical construct? Hegel does not tell us.

Marx, with his emphasis on historic materialism, wrote: “The modern bourgeois society that has sprouted from the ruins of feudal society has not done away with class antagonisms. Society as a whole is more and more splitting up into two great hostile camps, into two great classes directly facing each other: Bourgeoisie [the capitalists, the owners of property and the means of production] and Proletariat [laborer, the industrial working class]...”<sup>13</sup>

Marx argues that “[n]ot only are [the proletarians] slaves of the bourgeois class, and the bourgeois State, they are daily and hourly enslaved by the machine, by the over-seer, and above all, the individual bourgeois manufacturer himself.”<sup>14</sup> Consequently, the proletariat’s fate is at a dead end. Unless, of course, he adopts the revolution prescribed by Marx. It is the only way out.

If the proletariat is to eliminate economic classes and transform society into an egalitarian paradise, he must wipe clean the present from the past—first, by overthrowing the existing regime and smashing capitalism, replacing them with a centralized proletariat state, and once society and the culture are cleansed of the past, the state will wither away and what follows is an amorphous utopian state powered by the people through the collective. As Marx declares: “Of course, in the beginning this cannot be effected except by means of despotic inroads on the rights of property and on the conditions of the bourgeois production; by means of measures, therefore, which appear economically insufficient and untenable, but which, in the course of the movement, outstrip themselves, necessitate further inroads upon the old social order and are unavoidable as a means of entirely revolutionizing the mode of production.”<sup>15</sup>

Again, Marx insists that the individual’s realization and salvation are discovered through his identity with the proletarian revolution and, then, the perfected existence under the people’s collective will, which somehow and some way develops from a police state that precedes the withering away of the state altogether.

How do we know when we have reached the “workers’ paradise” beyond a theoretical construct? Marx does not tell us.

The impracticability and, in fact, impossibility of these ideologies appear to be strangely alluring to those who crusade for them. Moreover, the paradise each promises, once the revolution succeeds in dissolving the status quo and existing state, fails to move beyond the point of a centralized police state, in which the individual is indeed expendable and “the masses” are compelled to serve the purposes of the party or individuals in charge of that state. Examples of such states include China, North Korea, Venezuela, Cuba, etc.

Seventy years ago, Eric Hoffer wrote an iconic book, *The True Believer*, on the nature of mass movements. Hoffer explained that mass movements are built of

deeply flawed individuals with deeply flawed ideas. He noted that “[a] mass movement attracts and holds a following not because it can satisfy the desire for self-advancement, but because it can satisfy the passion for self-renunciation. People who see their lives as irremediably spoiled cannot find a worthwhile purpose in self-advancement.... They look on self-interest as something tainted and evil; something unclean and unlucky. Anything undertaken under the auspices of the self seems to them foredoomed. Nothing that has its roots and reasons in the self can be good and noble.”<sup>16</sup>

Moreover, most mass movements are angry and gloomy movements, hostile toward well-adjusted, happy, and successful individuals. Again, this is evident in the Antifa and BLM movements, among others. Hoffer observed that “[n]ot only does a mass movement depict the present as mean and miserable—it deliberately makes it so. It fashions a pattern of individual existence that is dour, hard, repressive and dull. It decries pleasures and comforts and extols the rigorous life. It views ordinary enjoyment as trivial or even discreditable, and represents the pursuit of personal happiness as immoral.... The prime objective of the ascetic ideal preached by most movements is to breed contempt for the present....”<sup>17</sup>

Indeed, there is a kind of psychotic pleasure and excitement in wrecking the present-day society, including if not especially one as free, humane, tolerant, and virtuous as ours. “What surprises one, when listening to the frustrated as they decry the present and all its works,” wrote Hoffer, “is the enormous joy they derive from doing so. Such delight cannot come from the mere venting of a grievance.... By expatiating upon the incurable baseness and vileness of the times, the frustrated soften their feeling of failure and isolation.... Thus by deprecating the present they acquire a vague sense of equality.”<sup>18</sup>

The “cause” itself becomes the reason for one’s existence. As Hoffer pointed out, “[t]he means... a mass movement uses to make the present unpalatable strike a responsive chord in the frustrated. The self-mastery needed in overcoming their appetites gives them an illusion of strength. They feel that in mastering themselves they have mastered the world.... <sup>19</sup> One gains the

impression that the frustrated derive as much satisfaction—if not more—from the means a mass movement uses as from the end it advocates....”<sup>20</sup>

This also explains why “the end” of such revolutions is never in sight. Even when the revolutionaries have seized power, the revolution perseveres, for the cause has no end as it is ultimately unachievable as man and society are not perfectible. But the true believer’s appetite for revolution is insatiable.

Nonetheless, as Hoffer points out, and as Rousseau, Hegel, and Marx advocated, “[t]he [radical] ha[s] a passionate faith in the infinite perfectibility of human nature. He believes that by changing man’s environment and by perfecting a technique of soul forming, a society can be wrought that is wholly new and unprecedented....”<sup>21</sup>

And, of course, brainwashing and idolatry to the cause are the lifeblood of mass movements. For example, when presented with statistical evidence that law enforcement is not systemically racist, “It is the true believer’s ability to ‘shut his eyes and stop his ears’ to facts that do not deserve to be either seen or heard which is the source of his unequaled fortitude and constancy. He cannot be frightened by danger nor disheartened by obstacles nor baffled by contradictions because he denies their existence.... And it is the certitude of his infallible doctrine that renders the true believer impervious to the uncertainties, surprises and the unpleasant realities of the world around him....”<sup>22</sup> “It is obvious... that in order to be effective a doctrine must not be understood, but has rather to be believed in.... The devout are always urged to seek the absolute truth with their hearts and not their minds.”<sup>23</sup>

Thus, Hoffer is describing a fanatic and fanaticism. “[The fanatic’s] passionate attachment is the essence of his blind devotion and religiosity, and he sees in it the source of all virtue and strength. Though his single-minded dedication is a holding on for dear life, he easily sees himself as the supporter and defender of the holy cause to which he clings....”<sup>24</sup>

When the fanatic is confronted with facts, statistics, history, experience, ethics, faith, or what have you, it is of no consequence. He has found his calling and he will not be dissuaded from it. Again, “the cause” is greater than all things.

Hoffer explains it this way: “The fanatic cannot be weaned away from his cause by an appeal to his reason or moral sense. He fears compromise and cannot be persuaded to qualify the certitude and righteousness of his holy cause.... His passionate attachment is more vital than the quality of the cause to which he is attached.”<sup>25</sup> He continues, “To live without an ardent dedication is to be adrift and abandoned. He sees in tolerance a sign of weakness, frivolity and ignorance. He hungers for the deep assurance which comes with total surrender—with the wholehearted clinging to a creed and a cause. What matters is not the contents of the cause but the total dedication and the communion with the congregation.”<sup>26</sup>

The fanatic comes from all walks of life and all backgrounds. For example, multi-billionaire George Soros pours enormous sums of money into radical causes and groups<sup>27</sup>; professional athletes such as Colin Kaepernick and LeBron James are vociferous vilifiers and disparagers of American society; many college and university professors are purveyors of revisionist American history and radical anti-American ideologies; college and university students from middle-class and wealthy families are increasingly militant opponents of the civil society; and, of course, various communities are ever more radicalized by racial, economic, educational, and other distinctions and disparities.

Like Benda, Hoffer sees the fanatic and the mass movement as centered on an intense if not obsessive hatred. “Passionate hatred can give meaning and purpose to an empty life,” explained Hoffer. “Thus people haunted by the purposelessness of their lives try to find a new content not only by dedicating themselves to a holy cause but also by nursing a fanatical grievance. A mass movement offers them unlimited opportunities for both.”<sup>28</sup> Indeed, the dangerousness of this hatred, when tied to a cause, can have calamitous societal and human consequences. It leads to scapegoating, balkanization, violence, and, in its more aggressive form, ethnic cleansing. More broadly and simultaneously, this hatred seeks to malign, debase, debauch, and, ultimately, topple the status quo and the civil society—for example, the American founding (the “1619 Project,” which is addressed in Chapter 4), the Constitution, capitalism, law enforcement, etc.



Hoffer described the model by which the groundwork is set for the rise of mass movements: “1) by discrediting prevailing creeds and institutions and detaching from them the allegiance of the people; 2) by indirectly creating a hunger for faith in the hearts of those who cannot live without it, so that when the new faith is preached it finds an eager response among the disillusioned masses; 3) by furnishing the doctrine and the slogans of the new faith; 4) by undermining the convictions of the ‘better people’—those who can get along without faith—so that when the new fanaticism makes its appearance they are without the capacity to resist it.”<sup>29</sup>

In the end, if such mass movements succeed, the result is totalitarianism. Hannah Arendt, in her book *The Origins of Totalitarianism*, argued these mass movements are the foundation for violence and despotism: “The attraction of evil and crime for the mob mentality is nothing new. It has always been true that the mob will greet deeds of violence with the admiring remark: ‘it may be mean but it is very clever.’ The disturbing factor in the success of totalitarianism is rather the true selflessness of its adherents....”<sup>30</sup>

In point of fact, mass movements are the necessary precursors to building revolutions and overthrowing governments—in the immediate instance, our own republic—by various and competing tactical approaches. But as described earlier, there is a commonality and essential methodology to this counterrevolution and societal transformation—the promotion of the “the collective” into which all revolutionaries or “social activists” are to be absorbed.

Unbeknownst to most, this subject, loosely called “social movement theory” among academics, is widely analyzed, debated, taught, and promoted by the professoriate throughout that nation’s colleges and universities. Moreover, revolution and mass movements are frequently romanticized and glamorized as righteous and irreproachable responses to an oppressive, inequitable, unjust, racist, and immoral society. Of course, this matters greatly because of the effect that education on the college campus and communication through formal textbooks and scholarly essays—which, too often, take the form of indoctrination and brainwashing—have on the ideas that saturate and engulf not just students but the culture and society, and manifest themselves in

America's streets, corporate boardrooms, politics, and newsrooms. Hence, it is necessary to briefly examine examples of this pedagogy.

*Frontiers in Social Movement Theory* (1992) is a compilation of such essays authored by numerous social activist scholars, most of whom are professors. As will become apparent, these scholars have essentially built their arguments and propositions for social activism and even revolution on the foundational ideological writings of Rousseau, Hegel, and Marx, and mostly follow the characteristics and formula of mass movements described by Benda, Hoffer, and me.

The book's preface sums up its overarching premise: "[W]e hope this volume illuminates some fundamental issues regarding an important topic, for, as Lewis Coser [a prominent socialist, sociologist, and social conflict advocate] reminded us..., 'social movements are instrumentalities to abolish, or at least weaken, structures of political and social domination.' He also made the point that many people who participate in social movements do so at great sacrifice because 'they draw their sustenance not from the enhancement of present satisfaction but from long-term time perspective sustained by the firm belief in the coming of a society embodying justice and democratic equality instead of the here and now of exploitation and denial of human dignity.'"<sup>31</sup>

One of the essayists, Professor William A. Gamson of Boston College, emphasizes, much like Rousseau, the significance of *the collective identity*. He writes, in part, that "[p]articipation in social movements frequently involves an enlargement of personal identity for participants and offers fulfillment and realization of self. Participation in the civil rights movement, women's movement, and New Left, for example, was frequently a transformative experience, central to the self-definition of many participants in their later lives."<sup>32</sup> "[T]he construction of a collective identity is the most central task of 'new' social movements."<sup>33</sup>

Group identity is necessary and critical to the success of the movement. "When people bind their fate to the fate of a group," argues Gamson, "they feel personally threatened when the group is threatened. Solidarity and collective

identity operate to blur the distinction between individual and group interest, undermining the premises on which such utilitarian models operate.”<sup>34</sup>

Gamson insists that for a movement to effectively mobilize, it must be viewed and, in fact, must become the identity through which the individual views himself. “Collective identity is a concept at the cultural level, but to operate in mobilization, individuals must make it part of their personal identity. Solidarity centers on the ways in which individuals commit themselves and the resources they control to some kind of collective actor—an organization or advocacy network. Adopting a collective action frame involves incorporating a product of the cultural system—a particular shared understanding of the world—into the political consciousness of individuals. Individual and sociocultural levels are linked through mobilizing acts in face-to-face encounters.”<sup>35</sup>

Assistant Professor Debra Friedman and Professor Doug McAdam, then of the University of Arizona, bluntly declare: “The collective identity of social movement organization is a shorthand designation announcing a status—a set of attitudes, commitments, and rules for behavior—that those who assume the identity can be expected to subscribe to.”<sup>36</sup> They continue, “It is also an individual announcement of affiliation, of connection with others. To partake of a collective identity is to reconstitute the individual self around a new and valued identity.”<sup>37</sup>

In essence, therefore, the individual is being reinvented and remade, he is being conditioned and programmed, into a devoted social activist or revolutionary tied inextricably to the cause through the movement. “As regards a social movement,” write Friedman and McAdam, “collective identity refers to that identity or status that attaches to the individual by virtue of his or her participation in movement activities. One of the most powerful motivators of individual action is the desire to confirm through behavior a cherished identity. In the case of a movement, the opportunity to do so can be seen as selective incentive more available to those who are integrated into activist networks than those who are not. Integration into these networks makes it more likely that the individual will value the identity of ‘activist’ and choose to act in accordance with it.”<sup>38</sup>

In addition to collective identity, the movement's *collective beliefs* must be drilled into the individual. Professor Bert Klandermans of the Free University in the Netherlands, argues: "Collective beliefs and the way they are formed and transformed are the core of the social construction of protest; interpersonal networks submerged in multiorganizational fields are the conduits of this process of meaning construction. Collective beliefs are constructed and reconstructed over and over; in public discourse, during the mobilization of consensus, and in the process of consciousness raising during episodes of collective action. Because collective beliefs are formed and transformed in interpersonal interactions, attempts to change the mind of a single individual would not be very effective in changing the collective beliefs unless that individual is influential in his or her interpersonal circle. Incoming information is processed and anchored in existing collective beliefs through interpersonal interaction. Only when actors are able to direct this interaction so that their message becomes anchored in existing beliefs can they transform collective beliefs. Thus every actor will be able to mobilize consensus more easily in some groups or categories than others."<sup>39</sup>

And then there is *class consciousness*, including class and group identity, as yet another means to absorb the individual into the collective—that is, the mass movement and revolution. Professor Aldon D. Morris of Northwestern University contends: "Empirical studies using diverse methodologies and conceptual frameworks have demonstrated that class consciousness has developed in a variety of societies and historical periods and that it has affected major revolutions and social movements. Indeed, class consciousness has been one of the key determinants of social and historical change."<sup>40</sup>

Morris's observations reflect, in a significant way, the teachings of Marx in that he sees society and culture broken down into classes that are in a constant state of competition and conflict. "Class consciousness," he writes, "is important precisely because it influences the very nature of class conflict and helps determine the kinds of social structures—unions, political parties, workers' associations—that will be erected and that affect the outcome of class conflict."<sup>41</sup>

Consequently, groups are dominated and oppressed by looking at society's and the culture's structural and historical prejudices and inequities, and the effect on their political influence. Morris declares that “[g]roups['] interests become paramount because systems of domination have no meaning outside the accumulation and defense of such interests. The task of precisely identifying the groups who benefit from such a system is complex because several groups usually benefit, although unequally. An important task, therefore, is to establish the relative positions of privilege enjoyed by groups hierarchically positioned within systems of domination and to show how such relative positions affect their political consciousness. In this approach, scholarly attention is directed squarely toward the long-standing cleavages within a society and the structural preconditions (threats of violence, polity membership, economic resources such as the control of jobs, and so on) inherent to systems of domination that enable certain groups to rule. By the same token, attention is focused on the structural preconditions (networks of communications, formal and informal social organization, availability of leadership, financial resources, and so on) central to effective and sustained protest by oppressed groups.”<sup>42</sup>

Given the injustices, prejudices, and inequality imposed by society's dominant groups against oppressed groups, the oppressed groups must awaken to their inferior status, become politically aware, and then rise up in protest and even revolution against the existing society. Morris argues, “My approach directs attention to culture—political consciousness. Such consciousness is also analyzed within the context of major social cleavages and systems of domination.... [B]oth dominant and oppressed groups have long-standing traditions of political consciousness. Hegemonic consciousness is always present but often unrecognized because of its ability to successfully masquerade as the general outlook while simultaneously protecting the interests of dominant groups. But effective social protest informed by a mature oppositional consciousness enables challenging groups to strip away the garments of universality from hegemonic consciousness, revealing its essential characteristics. This is precisely what the modern civil rights movement accomplished in the South, forcing the nation to decide publicly on the world stage whether it would continue to be guided by blatant white supremacy ideology.”<sup>43</sup>

The oppressed must be encouraged to rise up and join in protest and even revolution. “Oppositional consciousness,” explains Morris, “often lie[s] dormant within the institutions, life-styles, and culture of oppressed groups. Members of such groups are usually not without basic collective identities, injustice frames, and the like that are conducive to individual and collective social protest.”<sup>44</sup>

Morris contends that the seeds of oppositional protest and revolution already exist in oppressed communities, which makes possible the birth of new and more effective forms of collective activism. “[C]ultural phenomena are not reducible simply to organization and structural dynamics. Indeed, varied forms of oppositional consciousness are important precisely because they are able to survive under the most adverse structural conditions. In many ways, oppressed communities nurture oppositional ideas during intense periods of repression, thereby creating the social and cultural space for the emergence of more favorable structural conditions conducive to collective action...”<sup>45</sup>

Moreover, much can be learned from the experiences of successful “combat-ready” oppositional protests—that is, veterans of protest movements—that help spread and sustain activism. Morris writes, “Combat-ready oppositional consciousness can have an independent effect on structural determinants of collective action. Once a successful instance of protest has occurred..., it affects collection action in two ways: It provides those activists who participated directly with an understanding of how it happened and why it worked, and it attracts other non-participants who wish to internalize these lessons so as to transplant the model to other locales, thereby increasing the volume of collective action. Thus, both sets of actors become cultural workers for the movement by further hammering out the set of viewpoints that previously lay dormant within the historic oppositional consciousness, making them relevant for the contemporary scene. In the manner, these viewpoints become the defining ideas about how to initiate and sustain social protests.”<sup>46</sup>

Ultimately, these arguments for collective identity, collective beliefs, and class consciousness, in support of mass movements, wittingly or otherwise have a Marxist formulation, and form the basis not only for peaceful protests but violence, riots, and revolution—of the sort we have seen in our cities and towns

with the likes of Antifa, BLM, and other violent radical groups. In fact, they attempt to provide the veneer of an expertise or scholarly approach to societal disruption, the undermining of civil institutions, and flat-out rebellion.

Professors Frances Fox Piven and the late Richard A. Cloward wrote less about social movement theory and more extensively and openly in support of militant uprisings. And they were more forthright and detailed than many others in their prescriptions for using activism to develop disruption, create crises, collapse institutions, and excite riots as legitimate and necessary to transform society. Therefore, given their extensive writings and influence on radical and even violent revolutionary strategies, they require more substantial exposition here.

In 1966, the professors wrote what is considered by radical activists a seminal essay in the far-left *Nation*, entitled “The Weight of the Poor: A Strategy to End Poverty,” focused on race and poverty. They bluntly stated their intention: “It is our purpose to advance a strategy which affords the basis for a convergence of civil rights organizations, militant anti-poverty groups and the poor. If this strategy were implemented, a political crisis would result that could lead to legislation for a guaranteed annual income and thus an end to poverty.”<sup>47</sup>

The pair laid the predicate by arguing that welfare is a right, the welfare payments recipients receive are less than what they are entitled to, and efforts to reduce the welfare rolls are an assault on the well-being of the poor and minorities. They contend that more people should enter the system, indeed flood it, and those in the system should demand more benefits to which they are entitled. This would create a major societal crisis. Piven and Cloward wrote that “a vast discrepancy exists between the benefits to which people are entitled under public welfare programs and the sums which they actually receive. This gulf is not recognized in a society that is wholly and self-righteously oriented toward getting people off the welfare rolls.... This discrepancy is not an accident stemming from bureaucratic inefficiency; rather, it is an integral feature of the welfare system which, if challenged, would precipitate a profound financial and political crisis. The force for that challenge, and the strategy we propose, is a massive drive to recruit the poor onto the welfare rolls.”<sup>48</sup>

Piven and Cloward also argued that in certain past periods, the Democratic Party was the political institution through which radical change was realized as a result of economic crises and that the party must again be targeted and effectively hijacked for such purposes. Moreover, the reforms were also instituted to build and strengthen a new Democratic coalition. “The legislative reforms of the depression years, for example, were impelled not so much by organized interests exercised through regular electoral processes as by widespread economic crisis. That crisis precipitated the disruption of the regionally based coalitions underlying the old national parties. During the realignments of 1932, a new Democratic coalition was formed, based heavily on urban working-class groups. Once in power, the national Democratic leadership proposed and implemented the economic reforms of the New Deal. Although these measures were a response to the imperative of economic crisis, the types of measures enacted were designed to secure and stabilize the new Democratic coalition.”<sup>49</sup>

For Piven and Cloward, revolution is tied, at least in part, to radicalized black communities influencing and tied to the Democratic Party. “In the face of such a crisis, urban political leaders may well be paralyzed by a party apparatus which ties them to older constituent groups, even while the ranks of these groups are diminishing. The national Democratic leadership, however, is alert to the importance of the urban Negro vote, especially in national contests where the loyalty of other urban groups is weakening. Indeed, many of the legislative reforms of the Great Society can be understood as efforts, however feeble, to reinforce the allegiance of growing ghetto constituencies to the national Democratic Administration.”<sup>50</sup>

Indeed, today the allegiance of the black community to the Democratic Party is overwhelming. And a similar strategy is playing out with respect to the Hispanic and Asian communities.

In 1968, Piven and Cloward also wrote of “Movements and Dissensus Politics,” explicitly arguing that, among other things, “incendiarism” and “riots” are legitimate and necessary acts of mass movements. They declared that “poor people win mainly when they mobilize in disruptive protests, for the obvious reason that they lack the resources to exert influence in conventional ways, such as forming organizations, petitioning, lobbying, influencing the media, buying



politicians. By disruptive protest, we mean acts such as incendiarism, riots, sit-ins and other forms of civil disobedience, great surges in demands for relief benefits, rent strikes, wildcat strikes, or obstructing production on assembly lines.”<sup>51</sup>

The goal is to force the weakening of the system or, as they call it, the “regime,” making it vulnerable to the movement’s demands. “Mass disruption, both its emergence and its successes, is closely related to electoral politics.... When a regime is insecure... it is more likely to bargain actively for support, and may then issue appeals which signal its vulnerability to demands from the bottom.”<sup>52</sup>

“Social movements thrive on conflict,” wrote Piven and Cloward. “By contrast, electoral politics demands strategies of consensus and coalition. [M]ovements have the impact they do on electoral politics mainly because the issues they raise and the strife they generate widen cleavages among voter groups. We call this ‘dissensus politics’ to differentiate it from the usual process of building electoral influence by recruiting adherents and assembling coalitions, or what might be called ‘consensus’ politics.... Movements are not likely to have much impact unless economic and social conditions are already eroding established electoral allegiances and coalitions. But then it is also the case that significant change-oriented movements are not likely to emerge except during periods of economic and social instability.”<sup>53</sup>

If this seems familiar, it is. This strategy has also largely played out in America’s streets and politics, as Antifa, BLM, and other Marxist-anarchist groups exploited both the initial economic collapse due to the coronavirus and the death of George Floyd. These groups and others have been key in fomenting violent rioting mostly but not exclusively in the inner cities, militant confrontations with law enforcement, the destruction of public monuments and targeting of a federal courthouse and the White House, occupying parts of cities, and assaulting and threatening citizens at restaurants and other public places.

Piven and Cloward also see opportunity in the transformation of the Democratic Party. “The discontinuities between social experience and electoral politics that result from a static party system may well set the stage for

realignment. And signs of electoral discontent may even prompt some rhetorical shifts in campaign appeals by major party operatives.”<sup>54</sup> Indeed, this transformation occurred during the last election cycle, where the leadership of the Democratic Party was reluctant to criticize the violent, revolutionary movements and, indeed, frequently disparaged efforts to control them. Furthermore, within the Democratic Party there is a growing allegiance to these movements and their causes, as Piven and Cloward had hoped, which is reflected, in part, by the party’s rhetorical and policy radicalization, including the Biden-Sanders 110-page “unity” agenda released during the campaign<sup>55</sup> and the slew of executive orders and legislative initiatives. Moreover, there is clearly a growing radicalization of the party’s elected membership, including the likes of the so-called Squad members—Representatives Alexandria Ocasio-Cortez, Ilhan Omar, Ayanna Pressley, and Rashida Tlaib. But for Piven and Cloward, still more is required, and the pace must quicken.

The professors argue that the progress of mass movements will always be too slow as the American system is too difficult to mold into a truly revolutionary force. However, there will be opportunities to use the system against the system, and to create turmoil from within and without, bringing pressure for revolutionary change. “Still, overall, political leaders remain timid and conservative, trying to suppress the potential for realignment by bridging potential cleavages with general symbols and vague promises. Under these confusing conditions, discontented voters may be as atomized and ineffective as all voters are said to be in the absence of parties.”<sup>56</sup>

Social activists must be prepared to abandon the political parties as another way of putting pressure on them. “Just as people have to be mobilized to support parties and the issues and candidates they put forward,” they declare, “so do they have to be mobilized to desert them. Social movements are often the mobilizers of disaffection. In particular,... social movements are politically effective precisely when they mobilize electoral disaffection.”<sup>57</sup>

Nonetheless, the duet proclaim that the party system is problematic in that even the losing party retains some power, blunting or slowing revolutionary progress. “A fragmented governmental system in the United States means that

the opposition party usually continues to control some part of the government apparatus, and so it is itself constrained by the need to hold together a majority by promoting consensus.”<sup>58</sup> Consequently, there is a need for constant upheaval to bring pressure for change.

Piven and Cloward write that since political parties seek consensus, there will always be cleavages and discordant issues between and among groups that should be exploited by social activists. “To appreciate the role of social movements in helping to precipitate electoral convulsion and realignment, we have to pay attention to the distinctive dynamics of social movements that enable them to do what party politicians do not do....<sup>59</sup> Social movements, even movements that are not particularly disruptive, can do what party leaders and contenders for office in a two-party system will not do: They can raise deeply divisive issues. In fact, social movements thrive on the drama and urgency and solidarity that result from raising divisive issues. If conflict is deadly to the strategy of a party trying to build a majority coalition, it is the very stuff that makes social movements grow.”<sup>60</sup> Hence, as we see today, the spawning of numerous movements based on, for example, race, gender, income inequality, environmental justice, etc.

Again, when economic conditions have weakened, causing social conditions to do the same, the political system is said to be ripe for transformation. “[S]ocial movements tend to emerge at moments when the electoral system itself signals the emergence of new potential conflicts. Signs of increased volatility appear in electoral politics, usually traceable to changes in the economy or social life that generate new discontents or encourage new aspirations. The evidence of voter volatility in turn may prompt party leaders to do what they characteristically do, to attempt to hold together their coalition. Only now they will employ more expansive rhetoric, acknowledging grievances among their constituents that are ordinarily ignored or naming and thus perhaps fueling the aspirations that are only beginning to emerge. Even the threat of defections that jeopardize a majority can prompt electoral leaders to make the pronouncements that contribute to the climate of change and possibility that nourish movements.”<sup>61</sup>

Indeed, the coronavirus pandemic and the shutting down of our economy, schools, and social activities, and the collective economic and psychological effects on our society, created an environment ripe for exploitation. And that exploitation has occurred both in the halls of power, with far-reaching legislative and executive actions, and in the streets, where organized violence is becoming all too common.

Having created conflict and strife, the movements must control the narrative. Piven and Cloward explained: “[P]oliticians are not the only communicators. The conflicts that movements generate often lend them considerable communicative force. This is no small thing. Ordinarily, political communication is dominated by political leaders and the mass media, who together define the parameters of the political universe, including understandings of which sorts of problems should properly be considered political problems and which sorts of remedies are available... [I]t is hard to dispute the monopoly by the powerful on public and political communication, at least in the absence of movements.<sup>62</sup> Movements can break that monopoly, at least for a brief moment. Movements mount marches and rallies, strikes and sit-ins, theatrical and sometimes violent confrontations. The inflammatory rhetoric and dramatic representations of collective indignation associated with these tactics project new definitions of social reality, or definitions of social reality of new groups, into public discourse. They change understandings not only of what is real but of what is possible and of what is just. As a result, grievances that are otherwise naturalized or submerged become political issues.”<sup>63</sup>

For example, BLM has succeeded hugely in controlling the narrative. Time and again, violent confrontations with police are said by the media to be “mostly peaceful protests.”<sup>64</sup> Looting is all but ignored and certainly tolerated. Driving the narrative and creating new divisions are key ingredients in expanding and further empowering revolutionary movements. “Movements raise new issues,” write Piven and Cloward, “and when new issues take center stage in politics, the balance of political forces changes, in two ways. First, by raising new issues or articulating latent issues, movements activate groups that might otherwise remain inactive. Second, new issues are likely to create new cleavages, with far-reaching consequences for the balance between contending forces. Cleavages are

what electoral politicians seek to avoid, but they are the key to understanding the impact of movements on electoral politics and, in particular, to understanding why movements sometimes win victories.”<sup>65</sup>

Moreover, hitherto moderate or reluctant politicians can be pressured into accommodating and embracing radical movements if their own political survival is at stake. The professors explained that “[m]ovements wrest concessions from reluctant political leaders when concessions are seen as a way to avert threatened disaffections, or to staunch [*sic*] the flow of defections already occurring, or sometimes when concessions are viewed as a way to rebuild an already fragmented coalition by enlarging or solidifying support from one side of the cleavage line.”<sup>66</sup>

Recently, Piven returned to the *Nation* magazine to specifically take aim at “stopping Trump,” whom she and the vast majority of academia loathe, of course. In her 2017 article, titled “Throw Sand in the Gears of Everything,” Piven wrote, in part: “[W]hat makes movements a force—when they are a force—is the deployment of a distinctive power that arises from the ability of angry and indignant people to at times defy the rules that usually ensure their cooperation and quiescence. Movements can mobilize people to refuse, to disobey, in effect to strike. In other words, people in motion, in movements, can throw sand in the gears of the institutions that depend on their cooperation. It therefore follows that movements need numbers, but they also need a strategy that maps the impact of their defiance and the ensuing disruptions on the authority of decision-makers.”<sup>67</sup> “[B]y blocking or sabotaging the policy initiatives of the regime, resistance movements can create or deepen elite and electoral cleavages.”<sup>68</sup>

Once again, form and activate a violent mob, create societal fissures, attack racial and economic distinctions, undermine civic life and social associations, etc. In other words, use the freedom secured by the Constitution to attack that which the Constitution is intended to protect. Particularly ready for unrest, Piven posits, are the large cities with their leftist mayors. Indeed, events have rolled out as Piven encouraged, with Antifa and BLM followers, among others, rioting and the left-wing, Democratic mayors who run these cities tolerating

most of it. Piven declared: “The repercussions of such mass refusals can be far-reaching, simply because social life depends on systems of intricate cooperation. So does our system of governance. Perhaps the U.S. government, with its famous separation of powers on the national level and its decentralized federal structure, is especially vulnerable to collective defiance.... [T]he big cities, where a majority of the population lives, have not been captured [by the ‘right wing’]. Center-left mayors preside over cities like New York, Los Angeles, Boston, Seattle, and San Francisco, for example. And that fact can nourish urban resistance movements.”<sup>69</sup>

More recently, as if leading a resistance movement herself against President Trump and his supporters, this senior-citizen revolutionary insisted that mass action must be taken immediately against them: “Resistance movements are hard: They must mobilize defiant collective action against what seem formidable odds, and they risk triggering tough reprisals. Moreover, they often operate in the dark, not knowing the weak points of the regime they confront or the strains among its allies. This describes our own situation: We don’t really know much about the potential fissures among this parade of groups and individuals that Trump is inviting into the national government.... But we do know something about the political dangers of a Trump administration that is allowed to move forward without mass resistance.”<sup>70</sup>

As if addressing Piven and the literally hundreds of like-minded revolutionaries populating our college and university facilities, the late philosopher and professor Allan Bloom wrote in his 1987 book, *The Closing of the American Mind*, that “[e]very educational system has a moral goal that it tries to attain and that informs its curriculum. It wants to produce a certain kind of human being. This intention is more or less explicit, more or less a result of reflection; but even the neutral subjects, like reading and writing and arithmetic, take their place in a vision of the educated person.... Democratic education... wants and needs to produce men and women [who are] supportive of a democratic regime.”<sup>71</sup> Bloom warned that “we have a culture in which to root education, but we have begun to undermine it. The idealism of the American founding has been explained away as mythical, selfishly motivated, and racist.

And so our culture has been devalued.”<sup>72</sup> “Nobody believes that the old books do, or even could, contain the truth.... Tradition has become superfluous.”<sup>73</sup>

Indeed, America’s college and university faculties have turned their classrooms into breeding grounds for resistance, rebellion, and revolution against American society, as well as receptors for Marxist or Marxist-like indoctrination and propaganda. Academic freedom exists first and foremost for the militant professors, and the competition of ideas is mostly a quaint concept of what higher education used to be and should be. But Marxism is not about free speech and debate, it is about domination, repression, indoctrination, conformity, and compliance. The existing society and culture and those who prosper within it (intellectually, spiritually, and economically), as well as those who defend it, must be denounced and defamed. Disillusion with the status quo is key. Marxism presents a “new faith,” if you will, which promises a new and better society, for which a passion if not obsession is inculcated in future generations—despite its trail of mass death, enslavement, and impoverishment.

## CHAPTER THREE

---

# HATE AMERICA, INC.

The progressive intellectuals of the late 1800s and early 1900s laid the foundation for the present-day acceptance and indoctrination of the Marxist ideology throughout academia, society, and the culture. They made clear their hostility toward capitalism and the constitutional-republican system that established barriers against tyrannies of various kinds, including that which is born from the mob or centralized autocracy—and, of course, what would become known as progressivism. They understood that the citizenry generally was not amenable to their alien objectives. Thus, they undertook a long campaign to educate, or better stated, reeducate and indoctrinate future armies of radicals and revolutionaries, such as students and student advocates, through government schools and institutions of higher learning.

Early progressive intellectuals were sympathetic toward the Marxist ideology, as they are today, and even embraced its core themes. And they more or less adopted the Rousseauian approach to educational indoctrination—that is, while contending the student should be free to learn what interests and motivates him as an individual, in fact the instructor should cleverly manipulate what interests and motivates the student. For the ultimate purpose of public education is to subsume the individual's will into the general will. Hence, the progressive frequently intones on behalf of the individual's needs and desires but only in the sense or context of “the greater good” and “the community's best interests.”

More recently, but over three decades ago, in a little-remembered article on Marxism's influence in American colleges and universities, *New York Times*



education writer Felicity Barringer penned “The Mainstreaming of Marxism in U.S. Colleges” (October 29, 1989). She revealed, in part, that “[a]s Karl Marx’s ideological heirs in Communist nations struggle to transform his political legacy, his intellectual heirs on American campuses have virtually completed their own transformation from brash, beleaguered outsiders to assimilated academic insiders. It could be considered a success story for the students of class struggle, who were once regarded as subversives. But some scholars say that as Marxists have adapted, their ties to the 19th-century German philosopher have fragmented into a loosely knit collection of theories with little in common. And in the past decade, while the prosperity of Western economies has made Marxism irrelevant to many, new rival radical theories have arisen to challenge the Marxists themselves.”<sup>1</sup>

Thus, there has been an “Americanized” adaption of Marxism, which uses Marx’s core precepts and contextualizes them to the American system, in order to effectively overthrow the system—governmental, economic, social, and cultural. Indeed, the report goes on to say: “Marxism and feminism, Marxism and deconstruction, Marxism and race—this is where the exciting debates are,” said Jonathan M. Wiener, a professor of history at the University of California at Irvine.”<sup>2</sup> Indeed, in 1989, at the time of this article’s publication, the seeds of a radical-fringe ideology, Critical Theory, which I discuss at length in a subsequent chapter, and the unraveling of the existing society by weaponizing the culture against itself, began their early bloom throughout the American landscape, but with little public notice.

In fact, Barringer unknowingly exposes what will become a central tenet of Critical Race Theory and other adaptations of Marxism to Americanism—that is, the assault on American history, institutions, and traditions or “the dominant white culture,” including by her own employer and publisher, the *New York Times*, in such schemes as the 1619 Project. She wrote: “[D]econstructionists deny that one can understand any experience of the past because the evidence for any conclusion comes from people’s observations, most of which appear in a text. Deconstructionists maintain that texts are only stories told by people who leave out what they deem unimportant, and that such omissions keep written

history from being reliable evidence about reality.”<sup>3</sup> Thus, the war on the traditional teaching of history begins its metastization throughout academia.

In American colleges and universities, there is no limit to how professors can and do use Marxism as a doctrinal tool. Barringer explained: “[D]iversity is now the signature of once-monolithic Marxism. Professor [Gayatri] Spivak, [who teaches]... English at the University of Pittsburgh, calls herself a Marxist feminist, Professor [John] Roemer, economics professor at the University of California at Davis, designs Marxist market-driven economies, and Erik Olin Wright, a sociology professor at the University of Wisconsin, calls himself an analytic Marxist, seeking to break Marx’s grand theories down into their components.”<sup>4</sup>

While Barringer’s exposé is quite accurate, and the consequences of multifaceted applications of Marxism are manifest today throughout modern America, the “brash” Marxists still exist and their numbers are growing both on campus and throughout the society, culture, and government.

Moreover, the early progressives understood that they must institutionalize their educational activism by, among other things, controlling the administration of education and the classroom through a tenured and unionized legion of teachers, where like-minded instructors armed with ideologically driven (“social activism”) curricula populate all levels of educational institutions, often choose their successors, and are protected from scrutiny or competition. For these reasons and more, they adamantly oppose standardized testing, merit-based teacher evaluations, school choice, and the like. After all, their purpose is to uproot traditional, pre-progressive oriented educational approaches and clear the way for progressive/Marxist-oriented, ideologically based doctrinal approaches instead.

It also bears reminding that the early progressives, like their modern progeny, are the intellectual offspring of Rousseau, Hegel, and Marx. They share the overarching view that the individual must be subjugated to the greater community. Herbert Croly (1869–1930), a leading progressive mastermind and founder of the *New Republic*, explained in his 1909 book, *The Promise of American Life*, that “[t]he better future to which Americans propose to build is nothing if not an idea which must in certain essential respects emancipate them

from their past. American history contains much matter for pride and congratulation, and much matter for regret and humiliation.... [Americans] must be prepared to sacrifice that traditional vision, even the traditional American way of realizing it.”<sup>5</sup> Hence, Croly denounces America’s past and insists that it not only be rejected, but that the American people learn to reject it. In other words, as Marx preached, the citizenry must condemn and cast off their own history if there is to be individual and societal progress. Of course, this attitude has now taken firm hold throughout academia and has spilled over into much of our culture.

Croly continued: “It is the economic individualism of our existing national system which inflicts the most serious damage on American individuality; and American individual achievement in politics and science and the arts will remain partially impoverished as long as our fellow countrymen neglect or refuse systematically to regulate the distribution of wealth in the national interest.... Americans have always associated individual freedom with the unlimited popular enjoyment of all available economic opportunities. Yet it would be far more true to say that the popular enjoyment of practically unrestricted economic opportunities is precisely the condition which makes for individual bondage....”<sup>6</sup>

Of course, this is a core theme of Rousseau, Hegel, and Marx—that is, the individual must sacrifice his independence, free will, and personal pursuits to the greater good, and in that way not only will he become more fulfilled and self-realized, but the entire community will benefit as well. In America, capitalism and constitutionalism are ramparts that stand against Marxism and progressivism and, therefore, must be discredited and ultimately demolished. For the progressive, like the Marxist, economic and political power must be in the same hands, the hands of a relative few in charge of the state.

However, much groundwork must be done to create broad acquiescence or acceptance to this alien transformation, where the philosopher kings and intellectual masterminds disassemble and, thereafter, remake society. The solution: indoctrinate “the masses,” who have been raised to respect and revere the ideals of tradition, custom, faith, and patriotism, to abandon their supposedly obsolete beliefs for a promise of an organized, collective utopia.

Change the people to accommodate and eventually support an autocratic government that can allegedly manage their lives better than they can. This necessitates the transformation and seizing of the culture and governing instrumentalities.

Croly wrote that “[i]t can hardly be claimed that the greater proportion of the millions who are insufficiently educated are not as capable of being better educated as the thousands to whom science [the centralized administrative state run by ‘expert’ masterminds] comes to have a real meaning. Society has merely deprived them of the opportunity. There may be certain good reasons for this negligence on the part of society; but as long as it exists, it must be recognized as in itself a good reason for unpopularity of experts. The best way to popularize [progressivism], and to enable the democracy to consider highly educated officials as representatives, is to popularize the higher education. An expert administration cannot be sufficiently representative until it comes to represent a better educated constituency.”<sup>7</sup>

This explains, in part, the push in the Democratic Party for free college education for all, or the canceling of student loans to encourage more attendance at colleges and universities. The purpose is less about teaching classical liberal education or science, technology, engineering, and mathematics to a larger number of students, than doing exactly as Croly urged—indoctrinating as many young people as possible to support their radical dogma.

Moreover, although there has been a huge increase in the number of young people who have graduated from a four-year college (less than 6 percent in 1940)<sup>8</sup>, still, only about one-third of the adult population today actually graduates from a four-year college.<sup>9</sup> Therefore, it is necessary to begin the indoctrination process at an earlier age. Thus, the widening of ideologically driven course work and textbooks in government-run primary and secondary schools. This also explains the war on true academic freedom and campus free speech, through intimidation and even violence against those who teach, write, or speak well of Americanism, or merely challenge, or do not conform to, the Marxist-centric orthodoxy.

Even more prolific and prominent than Croly, John Dewey’s (1859–1952) role in drastically altering the traditional purposes of education into a social

activism movement is manifest throughout education today. Dewey acknowledged and approved of Marxism's influence on, and relationship to, the progressive movement: "[T]he issue which [Marx] raised—the relation of the economic structure to political—is one that actively persists. Indeed, it forms the only basis of present political questions.... We are in for some kind of socialism, call it by whatever name we please, and no matter what it will be called when it is realized. Economic determinism [Marx's theory of economic class struggle between, among others, the capitalist and the proletariat] is now a fact, not a theory. But there is a difference and a choice between a blind, chaotic and unplanned determinism, issuing from business conducted for pecuniary profit, and the determination of a socially planned and ordered development. It is the difference and the choice between a socialism that is public and one that is capitalistic."<sup>10</sup>

But there is no "economic determinism" when individuals are free to pursue their own goals and dreams. "Economic struggle" is a false label given to hard work, competition, free will, personal responsibility, and life's lessons—the exercise of free will, personal motivations, the satisfaction of individual needs and desires, the creation and pursuit of opportunities, personal responsibility and accountability, etc. That is, the yearnings and complexity of each human being. And in this context, individual liberty and capitalism go hand in hand. Therefore, capitalism must be maligned and ultimately disemboweled if the individual is to accept and conform to the demands of the few in the name of the many. Hence, Dewey's call for a public, top-down, government-managed "socialism," as opposed to a messy socialism that slow-creeps into the capitalist economy.

Of course, capitalism is a spontaneous form of commerce arising from individuals voluntarily entering into economic relationships. It is not a planned economic system imposed on people by a governmental regime. For Dewey et al., that is the problem. Authority, social engineering, grandiose plans, etc., can only "work" if imposed on the population, which requires usurping the very foundation of America's purpose. Constitutionalism and capitalism limit the role or possibility of a centralized authoritarianism and, conversely, empower the individual within the framework of the civil society. As such, they are utterly

incompatible with Marxism and Marxism's offspring—progressivism, which seek the widest latitude over the development and future state of a society. The party controls the government and the government controls the society. There is little room for philosophical or political diversity.

In recent days, this has been demonstrated by threats from the highest levels of the Democratic Party to destroy the independence of the judiciary by packing the courts with progressive ideologues; permanently instituting a Democratic Party majority in the Senate by expanding the chamber's numbers with additional members from Democratic Party strongholds; eliminating the Senate's filibuster rule in order to impose, without effective debate or challenge, far-reaching progressive legislation; and, nationalizing the electoral system in ways that ensure permanent Democratic Party control over the elected parts of our government. Together, these policies would disenfranchise, disunite, and marginalize tens of millions of citizens from more conservative and Republican areas of the country from any role in the nation's governance. Republicanism and representative government would be effectively dead.

It is further evidenced with the flood of market-killing, anticapitalist plans from the infinite government-centric, socialist-type programs promoted by the Democratic Party, which fall under the newly minted nomenclature of the "Green New Deal" and the war on "man-made climate change," which I discuss in a later chapter. So far-reaching are these plans that the principle of private property rights would be gutted—again, in the name of the greater good and the larger community.

Moreover, since the institution of the federal income tax over a century ago, at the birth of American progressivism, redistribution of wealth through the heavy taxation of labor, income, and wealth, supported by Marxist-like class-warfare political propaganda, is a central objective of the Democratic Party. Unfortunately, it resonates today with a significant portion of the population. Indeed, under the guise of the coronavirus pandemic, the Democratic Party has widely expanded the scope and reach of the welfare state, not only doling out trillions of dollars to shore up its political and ideological base, but also ensnaring an ever-larger pool of individuals to government subsidies and transfer payments.

The educational transformation has led, in many ways, to the societal transformation intended by the early progressive intellectuals. Dewey had condemned the educational system of his day and insisted on its conversion into a progressive-thought mill. While he attempted to portray his intentions as training students how to think, much like Socrates, in truth his ambition was the opposite: the indoctrination of children, much like Rousseau had hoped and Marx had demanded. It also has a kinship with *The Republic*, Plato's version of a utopian society, which was nothing more than a form of organized tyranny. As Dewey wrote: "The pupil learns symbols without the key to their meaning. He acquired a technical body of information without ability to trace its connections with the objects and operations with which he is familiar—often he acquires simply a peculiar vocabulary. There is a strong temptation to assume that presenting subject matter in its perfected form provides a royal road to learning. What's more natural than to suppose that the immature can be saved time and energy and be protected from needless error by commencing where competent inquires have left off? The outcome is written large in the history of education. Pupils begin their study of science with texts in which the subject is organized into topics according to the order of the specialist. Technical concepts, with their definitions, are introduced at the outset. Laws are introduced at a very early stage, with at best a few indications of the way in which they were arrived at. The pupils learn a 'science' instead of learning the scientific way of treating familiar material of ordinary experience. The method of the advanced student dominates college teaching; the approach of the college is transferred into the high school, and so down the line, with such omissions as may make the subject easier...."<sup>11</sup>

Therefore, Dewey, argued, as Marx had, that the nation's youth must be freed from existing mores, values, belief systems, traditions, customs, and the like, through public education, and made ready for another sort of programming. And why not? The classroom provides a captive audience of millions of children, a perfect setting for Marxist-oriented indoctrination. Dewey, like his intellectual peers, described this as applying "science" and "reason." As Dewey wrote: "Under the influence of conditions created by the non-existence of experimental science, experience was opposed in all the ruling philosophies of the past to reason and the truly rational. Empirical knowledge meant the

knowledge accumulated by a multitude of past instances without intelligence insight into the principles of any of them.... Science is experience becoming rational. The effect of science is thus to change men's idea of the nature and inherent possibilities of experience.... It aims to free an experience from all which is purely personal and strictly immediate; it aims to detach whatever it has in common with the subject matter of other experiences, and which, being common, may be saved for further use.... From the standpoint of science, this material is accidental, while the features which are widely shared are essential.... In emancipating an idea from the particular context in which it originated and giving it a wider reference the results of the experience of any individual are put at the disposal of all men. Thus ultimately and philosophically science is the organ of general social progress.”<sup>12</sup>

In other words, Dewey sought to relinquish what is and what has been, for an ideology disguised as science and reason. Of course, the arrogance of the progressives, like that of the Marxists, is boundless, which one would expect from those who would rule over us. That said, to be clear, people of tradition, faith, and custom do not reject science or reason, but they do not worship them, either. They have learned and experienced the value of eternal truths and past wisdom, including from the ancients, which reflects the basis of America's founding, as concisely set forth in the Declaration of Independence.

Like Rousseau, Dewey framed his educational approach as both opening the student's mind and insisting on his obedience; or, more accurately stated, opening the mind to surrender to indoctrination and conformity. As Dewey declared, “The fundamental conclusion is that the school must be made itself into a vital social institution to a much greater extent than obtains at present.... Interest in the community's welfare, an interest which is intellectual and practical, as well as emotional—an interest that is to say, in perceiving whatever makes for social order and progress, and for carrying these principles into execution—is the ultimate ethical habit to which all the special school habits must be related.”<sup>13</sup>

Unsurprisingly, Dewey was an early fan of the Soviet Union and its “educational system”—or more precisely, its massive propaganda efforts where obedience and conformity were contorted as a new unity. He visited the



communist regime and in December 1928 wrote in the *New Republic* that “in the ‘transitional’ state of Russia (of course, communist regimes are always in ‘transitional states’) chief significance attaches to the mental and moral (*pace* the Marxians) change that is taking place; that while in the end this transformation is supposed to be a means to economic and political change, for the present it is the other way around. The consideration is equivalent to saying that the import of all institutions is educational in the broad sense—that of their effects upon disposition and attitude. Their function is to create habits so that persons will act cooperatively and collectively as readily as now in capitalistic countries they act ‘individualistically.’”<sup>14</sup>

So, here is one of the founding fathers of America’s progressive movement, who had lectured about “science and reason,” praising the forced brainwashing of the Russian population by the brutal regime of communist dictator Joseph Stalin. And keep in mind, Dewey remains central to progressive thought in academia, the media, and elsewhere.

Dewey continued: “The same consideration defines the importance and the purpose of the narrower education agencies, the schools. They represent a direct and concentrated effort to obtain the effect which other institutions develop in a diffused and roundabout manner. The schools are, in current phase, the ‘ideological arm of the Revolution.’ In consequence, the activities of the schools dovetail in the most extraordinary way, both in administration and organization and in aim and spirit, into all other social agencies and interests.”<sup>15</sup>

Ah, “the revolution.” Again, the objective is to control the schools and the curriculum, control the teachers and the classroom, and you will, in time, control the minds and hearts of the population. Is not that the state of affairs in education that we confront in the United States today? And as we shall see later, the radicalization of the culture through education and media propaganda with radical, Marxist-based ideologies, such as Critical Theory.

“During the transitional regime,” wrote Dewey, “the school cannot count upon the larger education to create in any single and wholehearted way the required collective and cooperative mentality. The traditional customs and institutions of the peasant, his small tracts, his three-system farming, the influence of home and Church, all work automatically to create in him an

individualistic ideology. In spite of the greater inclination of the city worker towards collectivism, even his social environment works adversely in many respects. Hence the great task of the school is to counteract and transform those domestic and neighborhood tendencies that are still so strong, even in a nominally collectivist regime.”<sup>16</sup>

This is an extraordinarily blunt proclamation by Dewey of what public schools should be and, in fact, have now become. “The required collective and cooperative mentality?” Marx would have been so proud of his progressive descendants. Indeed, it is startling that Dewey would specifically point to the peasant farmers as an obstacle to the collective utopia. In 1932, about four years after the publication of Dewey’s article, Stalin targeted the Ukrainian population, especially the peasant farmers, for extinction through a campaign of massive and ruthless starvation, because they would not surrender their “small tracts” of land to the communist regime and would not buckle to Stalin’s collectivist agenda. Millions lost their lives. Indeed, in an effort to protect the stated ideas and supposed principles behind the Russian Revolution, including liberating the people, promoting equality, and instituting justice, the *New York Times*, one of the most influential newspapers in the United States, was a propaganda sheet for Stalin’s early regime and helped cover up the genocide and atrocities against the Ukrainians.<sup>17</sup>

Again, it could not be clearer that the ideological underpinnings of the modern progressive movement were spawned from the Marxist womb. The bond is indisputable. Of course, all of Marxism’s incarnations, as practiced and where imposed, need not be identical in every respect and, in fact, differ. But the same core beliefs and vocalized arguments are unmistakable among America’s progressives. And the resulting decades-long process of progressive indoctrination and manipulation, throughout the culture and government, has taken its toll. Rather than learning allegiance to the nation’s founding and ideals, and celebrating a free and civil society, successive generations of students are taught disdain for their own country, its history and its founding, and are encouraged to renounce it.

Many parents who send their children to government-mandated schools, or later voluntarily support their children’s attendance at schools of higher

learning, hoping they will improve their future job opportunities in society post-education, are often appalled to see the transformation of their children from what they were raised to believe as part of a family, to what they have been indoctrinated to believe as part of a third-party indoctrination effort and ideological movement.

As the progressive control over education, the culture, and society began taking hold, in 1948, University of Chicago professor Richard M. Weaver, in his book, *Ideas Have Consequences*, warned that education and the civil society were crumbling. He wrote: “Surely we are justified in saying of our time: If you seek the monument to our folly, look about you.”<sup>18</sup> He condemned what he rightly saw as the rejection of olden truths and faith, resulting in unimaginable inhumanity. “In our own day,” Weaver explained, “we have seen cities obliterated and ancient faiths stricken. We may well ask, in the words of Matthew, whether we are not faced with ‘great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world.’ We have for many years moved with brash confidence that man had achieved a position of independence which rendered the ancient restraints needless. Now, in the first half of the twentieth century, at the height of modern progress, we behold unprecedented outbreaks of hatred and violence; we have seen whole nations desolated by war and turned into penal camps by their conquerors; we find half of mankind looking upon the other half as criminal. Everywhere occur symptoms of mass psychosis. Most portentous of all, there appear diverging bases of values, so that our single planetary globe is mocked by worlds of different understanding. These signs of disintegration arouse fear, and fear leads to desperate unilateral efforts toward survival, which only forward the process.”<sup>19</sup>

Weaver explained that “religion begins to assume an ambiguous dignity, and the question of whether it can endure at all in a world of rationalism and science has to be faced.” Born is “the anomaly of a ‘humanized’ religion.”<sup>20</sup> Indeed, mankind was now to be defined by his surroundings and, in particular, materialism—the foundational principle behind Marxism, also known as material historicism. “Materialism loomed... on the horizon, for it was implicit in what had already been framed. Thus it soon became imperative to explain man by his environment.... If man came into this century trailing clouds of

transcendental glory, he was now accounted for in a way that would satisfy the positivists.”<sup>21</sup> That is, by those intellectuals who reject eternal truths and experience through the ages for the social engineering by supposed experts and their administrative state—which claim to use data, science, and empiricism to analyze, manage, and control society.

Weaver also referenced Charles Darwin and his theory of evolution, writing that “[b]iological necessity, issuing in the survival of the fittest, was offered as the *causa causans* [the primary cause of action], after the important question of human origin had been decided in favor of scientific materialism. After it has been granted that man is molded entirely by environmental pressures, one is obligated to extend the same theory of causality to his institutions. The social philosophers of the nineteenth century found in Darwin powerful support for their thesis that human beings act always out of economic incentives, and it was they who completed the abolishment of freedom of will. The great pageant of history thus became reducible to the economic endeavors of individuals and classes; and elaborate prognoses were constructed on the theory of economic conflicts and resolution. Man created in the divine image, the protagonists of a great drama in which his soul was at stake, was replaced by man the wealth-seeking and-consuming animal.”<sup>22</sup>

In other words, the complexity and nature of human existence is reduced to nothing more than a simplistic and defective economic theory in which the individual is little more than a one-dimensional creature, focused solely on material consumption.

“Finally came psychological behaviorism,” wrote Weaver, “which denied not only freedom of the will but even such elementary means of direction as instinct.” What is happening now “is a reduction to absurdity of the line of reasoning which began when man bade a cheerful goodbye to the concept of transcendence [that is, spirit, faith, God]. There is no term proper to describe the condition in which he is now left unless to be ‘abysmality.’ He is in the deep and dark abysm, and he has nothing with which to raise himself.... As problems crowd upon him, he deepens confusion by meeting them with *ad hoc* policies.”<sup>23</sup>

Of course, this leads again to the subject of education. Religion was let go and replaced with education, which, as Weaver observed, “supposedly would exercise the same efficacy. The separation of education from religion, one of the proudest achievements of modernism, is but an extension of the separation of knowledge from metaphysics. And the education thus separated can provide their kind of indoctrination. We include... the education of the classroom, for all such institutionalized instruction proceeds on the assumptions of the state. But the education which best accomplishes their purpose is the systematic indoctrination from day to day of the whole citizenry through channels of information and entertainment.”<sup>24</sup> Little did Weaver know how right he was, and how bad it would get nearly eighty years later.

This brings us to the period of the late 1950s to the early 1970s, which gave rise to the New Left movement on America’s college campuses, much heralded by today’s Marxists. Students for a Democratic Society (SDS), among the most prominent of the New Left groups, was founded in 1959 and issued its political manifesto, *The Port Huron Statement*, in 1962. *The Port Huron Statement* is a platitudinous, rambling, pop-psychoanalytical essay condemning capitalism and endorsing a Marxist-type revolution. The New Left “generally avoided traditional forms of political organization in favor of strategies of mass protest, direct actions, and civil disobedience.”<sup>25</sup> The movement was greatly influenced by a German-born Marxist, Herbert Marcuse, who, expectedly, was a fierce anticapitalist. Also, unsurprisingly, Marcuse taught at several American universities during his career, including Columbia, Harvard, and Brandeis. A prolific writer, his 1964 book, *One-Dimensional Man*, was widely read, especially among the New Left, and its success helped to transform Marcuse from a relatively unknown university professor to a prophet and father figure of the burgeoning student antiwar movement.”<sup>26</sup> As we will later see, his influence extends well beyond the New Left to modern-day Critical Theory movements, which actively seek to undermine and ultimately supplant American society and culture. Therefore, serious attention must be paid to his writings.

Like most Marxist professors, Marcuse was not merely satisfied with indoctrination, but he urged activism—concrete revolution. Marcuse’s explanation for the lack of a Marxist uprising in the United States would change

from time to time. At one point he believed it would be led by “the masses.” Later, he insisted that the affluence of capitalist society made such a revolution impossible. Hence, he claimed the revolution would emerge from the intellectuals working with the disenfranchised. However, with the advent of the student movement, he was more inclined toward the idea of a popular revolutionary movement.<sup>27</sup> In any event, Marcuse asserted, like Marx, that anything short of a full-fledged revolution would fail to dislodge the scourge of capitalism and the dominant culture.

Marcuse argued, in part, that the capitalist system or “industrial machine” was both psychologically and economically omnipresent, even to the point of devouring and co-opting the working class and labor movements. “By virtue of the way it has organized its technological base,” declared Marcuse, “contemporary industrial society tends to be totalitarian. For ‘totalitarian’ is not only a terroristic political coordination in society, but also a non-terroristic economic-technical coordination which operates through the manipulation of needs by bested interests. It thus precludes the emergence of an effective opposition against the whole. Not only a specific form of government or party rule makes for totalitarianism, but also a specific system of production and distribution which may well be compatible with a ‘pluralism’ of parties, newspapers, ‘countervailing powers,’ etc.”<sup>28</sup>

Indeed, so powerful is capitalism’s grasp, Marcuse claimed, that it is used by the government to manage and control society. “Today political power asserts itself through its power over the machine process and over the technical organization of the apparatus,” wrote Marcuse. “The government of advanced and advancing industrial societies can maintain and secure itself only when it succeeds in mobilizing, organizing, and exploiting the technical, scientific, and mechanical productivity available to industrial civilization. And this productivity mobilizes society as a whole, above and beyond any particular individual or group of interests. The brute fact that the machine’s physical... power surpasses that of the industrial, and of any particular groups of individuals, makes the machine the most effective political instrument in any society whose basic organization is that of the machine process.”<sup>29</sup>

But Marcuse argued that there is a way out of “the machine’s” clutches. “New modes of realization are needed, corresponding to the new capabilities of society. Such new modes can be indicated only in negative terms because they would amount to the negation of the prevailing modes. Thus economic freedom would mean freedom *from* the economy—from being controlled by economic forces and relationships; freedom from the daily struggle for existence, from earning a living. Political freedom would mean liberation of the individuals *from* politics over which they have no effective control.... The most effective and enduring form of warfare against liberation is the implanting of material and intellectual needs that perpetuate obsolete forms of struggle for existence.”<sup>30</sup>

The internal contradictions of Marxism and its advocates, like Marcuse, are stark. Individual and economic freedom mean forsaking free-market capitalism for collectivism? The individual is fulfilled and free from want and struggle? The government will eventually wither away? Is this how Marxism has worked throughout the world or anywhere? Of course not. For example, is there a Marxist regime anyplace on earth that is not a police state? China, North Korea, Cuba, Venezuela? The imposition of the Marxist ideology, from an abstraction to reality, has left tens of millions of suffering and dead human beings in its wake.

Nonetheless, Marcuse argued, having failed to actually overthrow the existing society, there are now serious cracks in its foundation. “[T]here are indications that the ‘message’ of the New Left has spread and been heard beyond its own spheres. There are, of course, reasons for that. The stability of capitalism has been upset, and indeed on an international scale; the system exposes more and more of its inherent destructiveness and irrationality. It is from this point that protest grows and spreads, even if it is largely unorganized, diffuse, unconnected and still without any evident socialist aims at first. Among workers, the protest expresses itself in the form of wildcat strikes, absenteeism and in undercover sabotage, or appears in flare-ups against the union leadership; it appears as well in the struggles of oppressed social minorities and finally, in the women’s liberation movement. It is obvious that there is a general disintegration of worker morale, a mistrust of the basic values of capitalist society and its

hypocritical morality; the overall breakdown of confidence in the priorities and hierarchies set by capitalism is apparent.”<sup>31</sup>

In the last several decades, building on Dewey’s work, and adopting Marxist ideas developed and espoused by the likes of Marcuse and others, and adapting them for American society and culture, the teaching and promotion of Marxism and Marxist notions in the classroom have been open and pervasive on America’s college campuses. As I noted earlier, it even merited an exposé in the *New York Times* some thirty years ago.<sup>32</sup>

Lest anyone be misled, the issue is not whether Marxist teachings in our classrooms have devolved into “a loosely knit collection of theories with little in common,” as the *Times* reported back then, thereby making the messages and impact less concerning, but that the tenets of Marxism are being used in numerous ways to attack American society and culture on myriad fronts, making these movements much more difficult to confront and challenge.

It is well worth underscoring what Professor Jonathan M. Wiener told the *Times*: “Marxism and feminism, Marxism and deconstruction, Marxism and race—this is where the exciting debates are.”<sup>33</sup> And diversity is now the signature of once-monolithic Marxism.”<sup>34</sup>

Indeed, as Marxism has borne various iterations of itself, with its advocates seeking to overturn one or another aspect of cultural and societal life, with their constant exploitation of societal imperfections and individual dissatisfaction, and the Marxist archetype of class struggle theory of the oppressor and the oppressed (bourgeoisie versus proletariat), Marxism’s tentacles have reached deeply into American society. And its ubiquity has led to a kind of acquiescence or passive embrace, from corporate boardrooms and professional sports, to most newsrooms and beyond—or is even openly celebrated, albeit under different nomenclatures. At its core, however, Marxism is named for the man and the ideology he propounded at great length in numerous writings. Its principles and arguments provide the foundation for the unmaking of our constitutional republic and market-based economy, regardless of and despite its various permutations in academia and elsewhere.



As underscored in this chapter, however, it is academia and its rule over the education of generations of students that serves as the most potent force for Marxist indoctrination and advocacy, and the most powerful impetus for its acceptance and spread. And it is these students, the real target of Marxist thought, who form the basis for resistance, rebellion, and even revolution.

In his 2011 book, *Heaven on Earth*, Professor Richard Landes of Boston University explains, among other things, the emotional, intellectual, religious, and spiritual drive of millennials. While he intends for the word “millennialist” to mean more than what I address here, it is very helpful in describing the mind-set and motivations of younger people, especially college and university students, drawn to Marxism and revolutionary movements. As I highlight some of his writing, keep in mind that his use of the word “millennialist” is intended to incorporate “millennials” of a sort; but for my analytical purposes here, if you prefer, substitute the word millennialist with millennials. Either way, Landes’s scholarship is important and relevant in understanding the mentality that breeds societal upheaval on college and university campuses.

Landes explains that “[m]illennialists have a passion for justice. They think they know good and evil well. When they look at humanity, many see not a wide and nuanced spectrum of people, but a few saints and a vast sea of sinners, some redeemable, some (most) not. They are quite clear on who will suffer punishment, and who will gain reward at the final Revelation. And when they believe the moment has come, they do not believe in compromise. They anticipate the absolute eradication of evil—corruption, violence, oppression—and the wondrous bliss of the just kingdom for the good.... For millennialists, the gray world of the *corpus permixtum* [mixed body of believers and unbelievers] is an illusion in which the ‘bad guys’ are only first for the time being; it will—it *must*—pass away. Then the last, the meek, the humble, the powerless, will be first.”<sup>35</sup>

This makes Marxism a uniquely alluring ideology in that Marx wraps his ideology in the language of the underdog and oppressed, and calls for the eradication of the status quo for it is said to be corrupt through and through.

“All millennialists hope that commitment to their beliefs will spread far and wide,” writes Landes, “enough to bring about a transformation of the social and political universe. That is the very essence of millennialism, as opposed to other forms of eschatology: *the just will live free in this world*. It is a collective salvation, a social mysticism. It might come by and by, but such a promise is not pie in the sky. It imagines a transformation of humanity, an evolutionary leap to a different way of human interaction that can have enormous emotional appeal. To use language of political science, millennialism is a (perhaps the first) revolutionary ideology.”<sup>36</sup>

Thus, for its preachers and followers, there is a theological-like aspect to Marxism. A promised fundamental transformation of society and the purification of man’s nature through a rebirth of society, replaced with a “collective salvation” found in communal egalitarianism.

Landes continues: “Revolutionary ideologies only begin to appeal to large numbers (i.e., the *meme* only spreads widely) when people feel themselves close to the moment of transformation. Indeed, while many of us are millennialists in some way (i.e., we hope that eventually humankind will enter a new stage of peace and justice), very few of us are apocalyptic millennialists (i.e., believe that this world-historical event is about to happen). Only in those relatively rare moments when large numbers are convinced and mobilized by the conviction that at last *the time has come*, does millennialism become a movement that has entered the apocalyptic vortex.”<sup>37</sup>

Of course, we saw this play out during the summer of 2020, with widespread violent riots initiated and organized by Black Lives Matter (BLM), Antifa, and other Marxist-oriented groups, among others. We also saw acceptance of and support for BLM spread throughout the culture, including in the Democratic Party, corporations, professional sports, and newsrooms, to name a few.

“For the people who have entered apocalyptic time,” explains Landes, “everything quickens, enlivens, coheres. They become semiotically aroused—everything has meaning, patterns. The smallest incident can have immense importance and open the way to an entirely new vision of the world, one in which forces unseen by other mortals operate. If the warrior lives with death at

his shoulder, then apocalyptic warriors live with cosmic salvation before them, just beyond their grasp.”<sup>38</sup>

Moreover, the revolutionary is intolerant of differing beliefs or ideas, of intellectual challenges or opposition. He demands conformity, which he declares as unity and communality. Landes argues that “[m]illennialists are prolific in what they do. They live in an enchanted and exciting world, and they want nothing more than to bring the rest of us into it. Or, if we refuse, they will bring it to us. And if we still resist, alas too often, they will strike us down as the apocalyptic enemy or force us to strike them down.”<sup>39</sup>

Consequently, it is unsurprising that the world’s most renowned and notorious Marxist revolutionaries were greatly influenced by their college experiences and studies. For example, the biography of Russia’s Vladimir Ilyich Ulyanov, aka Lenin, includes that he “was born... into a well-educated family. He excelled at school and went on to study law. At university, he was exposed to radical thinking, and his views were also influenced by the execution of his elder brother, a member of a revolutionary group. Expelled from university for his radical policies, Lenin completed his law degree as an external student in 1891. He moved to St Petersburg and became a professional revolutionary.”<sup>40</sup>

Although China’s Mao Zedong was born into a peasant family, his biography explains that “he train[ed] as a teacher, [and] he travelled to Beijing where he worked in the University Library. It was during this time that he began to read Marxist literature. In 1921, he became a founding member of the Chinese Communist Party (CCP) and set up a branch in Hunan.”<sup>41</sup>

Cambodia’s Pol Pot came from a relatively prosperous family. His biography states that he “was educated in a series of French-speaking schools. In 1949, he won a scholarship to study in Paris where he became involved in communist politics.”<sup>42</sup>

What occurs in our colleges and universities is largely ignored or abided by most Americans, including parents who often subsidize their children’s attendance at these schools, and taxpayers who subsidize these institutions to the tune of tens of billions of dollars every year. This is a grave failure of accountability and responsibility, even a multigenerational debacle.

It is necessary, therefore, to undertake a brief, albeit incomplete, review of Marxist and Marxist-related influences occurring today in higher education. It is enough, for now, to focus on the teachings and writings of the late professor Jean Anyon. Anyon was a professor of social and education policy in the Urban Education Doctoral Program at the Graduate Center of the City University of New York. While unknown to most outside academia, and one of many professors who use their classrooms to promote Marxist or Marxist-related indoctrination, her influence in higher education is well established and lingers to this day.

Writing of her longtime friend, Lois Weis, Ph.D., University at Buffalo, explained: “Relatively few graduate students over the past thirty-five years in the US, Canada, Australia, New Zealand and the UK in the areas of Urban Education, Sociology of Education, Curriculum Studies, and Anthropology of Education have not encountered [Anyon’s] work. Since the late 1970’s, Jean Anyon sits at the very center of a scholarly movement to unpack the nature of what later is called the ‘official curriculum’: what is it; how it comes to attain this status; and who it serves. Spurred by calls in England in the early 1970’s for a ‘new sociology of education,’ scholars began to address questions related to what constitutes ‘official’ knowledge and the ways in which such knowledge is differentially distributed through schools. The theoretical starting point for most of these analyses is articulated by Michael F. D. Young (1971), who argues that there is a ‘dialectical relationship between access to power and the opportunity to legitimate dominant categories, and the processes by which the availability of such categories to some groups enable them to assert power and control over others.’ Extending this general framework, numerous writers argue that the organization of knowledge, the forms of its transmission, and the assessment of its acquisition are factors in the reproduction of class relationships in advanced capitalist societies.”<sup>43</sup>

In plain English, Anyon promoted her dumbed-down brand of Marxist ideology in the classroom in lieu of a traditional approach to attaining knowledge. For example, she wrote: “Capitalism’s private ownership of production is... distinct from a socialist/communist system as imagined by Marx, in which everyone contributes to the production of economic goods according

to their ability, and is provided profits and goods according to what each person needs.”<sup>44</sup>

She trumpeted the usual bourgeoisie (property-owning capitalists) versus the proletariat (wage-earning laborers) class warfare struggle, as if a complex world and complicated relationships are so easily broken down into such a caste system. In her 2011 book, *Marx and Education*, she claimed, “An important insight of Marx was that capitalism is an economic system that cannot function without fundamental inequality—meaning that inequity is built into the way the system works. Business owners must make a profit to survive, and those who do not own businesses must find jobs and work in these enterprises, if they are to provide for themselves and their families. Workers (and other employees) are commodities, bought and sold in the market place like any other, at the lowest price. In order to make a profit, the capitalist must pay the worker less than the product s/he made can be sold for. (If the product is a service like health care or computer work, the owner of the business must take in more money than is paid to the employees, if the business is to survive.) The extra money from selling the product or providing the service is the profit that is kept by the capitalist. It is important to note that while the profit margin of small businesses is often relatively small, large corporations—and the shareholders, executives, and managers of these businesses—typically enjoy huge profits, that dwarf the wages and salaries of employees.... This profoundly unequal relationship between workers/employees and owners is at the base of the system and, for Marx, is fundamental to its definition.”<sup>45</sup>

Obviously, this theory rejects, among other things, all evidence of economic and social mobility that exists in capitalist societies, and especially the United States. The “rags to riches” and “riches to rags” stories are infinite. Indeed, the extent to which individuals by the millions seek refuge in America, risking their lives and the lives of their families, particularly those fleeing so-called communist paradises throughout the world, for a better life are also limitless. Where are the concomitant examples of the opposite—that is, individuals “escaping” the “inequalities of America capitalism” for a better life in communist regimes? The entire ideology is built on a fairy tale, yet delivers a nightmare of horrors.

Anyon, like all Marxists, also exploits the fact of human inequality, which exists for myriad reasons, many having nothing to do with economic oppression or dislocation, historic discrimination, or injustice, but the nature and consequences of individual conduct, motivation, work ethic, luck (good or bad), etc. Moreover, actual equality in the economic context is both impracticable and impossible. What precisely is meant by economic equality? To what extent can it be imposed upon a population of unique and diverse individuals? And by what means and methods shall it be imposed? How do we measure when economic equality has been achieved? And how do we ensure it endures from one generation to the next? Is not economic equality in the eye of the beholder? And what effect will economic equality, whatever it means and however enforced, have on the economic growth, opportunity, and well-being of the general society? In over 190 countries, including communist regimes, where does economic equality actually exist? The questions are endless, yet profoundly important in addressing Marxist theory and its implications for real societies.

Furthermore, the “owner versus worker” paradigm is not a rational paradigm at all. Frequently, the line or distinction between an “owner” and “worker” is ambiguous if nonexistent. Is a person who owns a small retail shop or online business who is self-employed an owner, worker, or both? Most people would answer both. Is a worker who invests in stocks issued by a publicly held business who employs him, or who purchases stock through their own investments and pension plan, also an owner in these businesses? The answer is yes. And why is it assumed, as a matter of empirical fact, that an employer is exploiting his employees in a capitalist economic system? For example, who is better off—employees working for American businesses large and small, or those working in slave-labor conditions in North Korea, Cuba, and Venezuela? Or, let’s look at Communist China. Chinese citizens are not free to change jobs; they are assigned social credits based on their strict compliance with governmental dictates; they must worship China’s brutal dictator, Xi Jinping, as a supreme leader; religion is all but banned; the judicial system exists to enforce Communist Party orthodoxy; there exists an extensive network of concentration camps; etc. For most cogent people, this is far from the idyllic nirvana promised by Marxist propagandists, especially university professors.

The late Raymond Aron, who was a philosopher and journalist, had a keen insight into the thinking of Marxist intellectuals and elites. In 1955, he wrote in *The Opium of the Intellectuals*, “In the myth of the Revolution, this inconclusive struggle is represented as an ineluctable necessity. The resistance of vested interests, of elements hostile to the radiant, lyrical future, can only be broken by force. On the face of it, Revolution and Reason are diametrically opposed: the latter suggests discussion, the former, violence. Either one argues and ends up by convincing one’s opponent, or one renounces argument and resorts to arms. Yet violence has been and continues to be the last resort of a certain rationalist impatience. Those who claim to know the form which institutions should be made to assume are enraged by the blindness of their fellow-men and lose faith in words, forgetting that the same obstacles arising from the nature of individuals and societies will always be there and the revolutionaries, when they have made themselves the masters of the State, will be faced with the same alternative of compromise or despotism.”<sup>46</sup>

Nonetheless, despite the world’s experience with the reality of Marxism, professors like Anyon march on. For example, she wrote, which is basic Marxist orthodoxy, that “[s]ince higher salaries and employee benefits would reduce the profit margin of owners, capitalists are (by definition and in most actual cases) diametrically opposed to the interests of workers—who generally desire unions, higher minimum wages, and stronger benefits. Thus the worker/owner economic relationship can be seen as a contradictory relationship. The contradictions between the main classes (working and capitalist classes) lead to tension and continual battles (strikes, slow-downs, political demonstrations) and it is by winning these class struggles that workers can be freed from the ‘chains’ Marx saw holding them down in factories, offices, and other capitalist enterprises. It is this class struggle which Marx saw as ultimately leading to the overthrow of capitalism and the possible development of socialism and communism—a democratic sharing of resources and profits. Marx argued that in a socialist system, ‘In place of the old bourgeois society, with its classes and class antagonisms, we shall have an association in which the free development of each is the condition for the free development of all’ (Marx and Engels, 1848).”<sup>47</sup>

Actually, the vast majority of private sector employees are not members of unions<sup>48</sup> not because of some conspiracy to prevent the spread of unions but because unions are outdated in many industries, job-killing in other industries, and serve no purpose in additional industries. Furthermore, many if not most employers understand that mistreating your workforce is self-destructive, as it becomes difficult to fill jobs, retain employees in whom much time, training, and resources have been invested, and maintain a loyal and productive work environment. For the American Marxist, however, they are useful in centralizing labor control in the hands of a relative few who mostly share their collectivist agenda. Too often, the union becomes more of a voice for the state than the members it claims to represent, as witnessed in many totalitarian regimes. In the end, however, the decline of private-sector unions is a natural consequence of the preferences and needs of both management and individual employees in an open society.<sup>49</sup>

Anyon asserted that “[i]n capitalism, according to Marx, economic class relations strongly influence the social situation outside the work place, affecting the domestic and civic worlds in which people live.... He argued that, ‘The mode of production of material life conditions the social, political and intellectual life process in general. It is not the consciousness of men that determines their being, but, on the contrary, their social being that determines their consciousness.’ (1859)... Marx argued, in this vein, that the economic relation and social context in which the working class exists limits the worker’s ability to transcend her or his social situation.... Men and women, Marx argued, do have some freedom and agency, but are not as free to determine their own life chances as living in a (capitalist) democracy would suggest. ‘Men [and women] make their own history,’ he said, ‘but they do not make it as they please, they do not make it under self-selected circumstances, but under circumstances existing already, given and transmitted from the past.’”<sup>50</sup>

Most obvious in this fallacy is the assertion that our nation exists in some kind of caste or class system, that our entire existence is determined by our economic condition at a given moment in our life, and that there is no ability or hope in transcending this supposed condition. Yet, in a relatively free society, with a relatively free economic system, the opposite is true. Indeed, the examples



of individual mobility up and down the social and economic chain are infinite. There simply are no static economic or social caste or class systems. That is not to say that social snobbery and the like is nonexistent, which occurs in every society. However, nowhere does an impenetrable caste or class system exist more profoundly than in communist regimes around the world, where a party and governmental aristocracy lead lives that the populations they lord over can never hope to enjoy.

Aron uncloaks this, as well. He wrote: “The mission assigned to the proletariat bespeaks a lesser degree of hope than the virtue which used to be ascribed to the people. To believe in the people was to believe in humanity as a whole. To believe in the proletariat is to believe in election by suffering. People and proletariat both symbolize the truth of simple creatures, but the people remain, in law, universal—one can conceive at a pinch that the privileged themselves could be included in the communion—while the proletariat is one class among many others, it achieves its triumph by liquidating the other classes and cannot become identified with the social whole except after much strife and bloodshed. Whoever speaks in the name of the proletariat will recall, throughout the centuries, slaves at grips with their masters; he cannot believe any longer in the progressive development of a natural order, but counts on the crowning revolt of the slaves to eliminate slavery.”<sup>51</sup>

Despite these observable facts, Anyon repeats Marxist propaganda by writing that “[s]ocial class is another concept of Marx which neo-Marxists in education have made extensive use of. Social class is defined as a person’s or group’s relation to the means of production—that is, whether your relation to factories, corporations, and other businesses is one of ownership and control, or one of worker as dependent on being hired. Marx described two main classes as characterizing the capitalist system. Members of the working class... are in an unequal and contradictory relation to the owners who hire them. Capitalists are in ownership positions, and obtain income not from labor, but from appropriating the surplus money produced by the workers. Marx saw social class as a fundamental social category, based on the way production of goods and services is organized and distributed in the economy.”<sup>52</sup>

Anyon continued: “Marx argued... that ‘the class which has the means of material production at its disposal [i.e., industrial and financial capital], has control at the same time over the means of mental production [that is, of schools, book printing, news outlets, etc.]’... These ideologies are expressed and legitimated in the institutions in which we live and learn (in schools, for example, as curriculum and individual competition). It was because of the power of ideologies promulgated by those with economic power to mold a society’s children and youth that Marx said that we need to ‘rescue education from the influence of the ruling class.’”<sup>53</sup>

This declaration is simply wrong. Teachers and students in our primary and secondary schools are of all backgrounds and economic conditions. They are not mouthpieces or figureheads for the wealthy, whoever they may be. Indeed, “the ruling class” in our public schools consists mostly of teachers who are overwhelmingly “progressive” and teachers’ unions that are the bulwark for American Marxism.<sup>54</sup> Moreover, school curriculum is often taught with the political bias of these teachers<sup>55</sup>—including Critical Race Theory, which I discuss in a subsequent chapter. What Anyon objects to is that Marx’s revolution, and the overthrow of the existing society, is not pressed harder and faster in public schools. Therefore, the failure to live up to her radical standards is, absurdly, evidence of bourgeois control over the classrooms.

“My generation came of age in the rebellious 1960s, and that may be one reason that as academics many of us were attracted to a theory that challenged what we had been taught about U.S. society. Rather than focusing on meritocracy, democracy, and patriotism, as our school books had taught us, we focused on what seemed to us structural inequalities—and what we saw as systematic means by which whole groups and cultures (e.g., workers, African Americans, women) were excluded from the American Dream.”<sup>56</sup>

“Structural inequalities” and “systemic means.” Sound familiar? Of course, these terms characterize our society as interminably dissolute, unjust, and immoral. There can be no justice or improvement. The entire enterprise was irredeemable from the start, and nothing since has or can significantly improve the society. It must be relentlessly attacked and condemned, assaulted in small

ways and large, and ultimately uprooted for a fantasy society that has delivered, through its entire history and various impositions, nothing but human agony.

Anyon and her ilk see the entire American society as an interlocking system of universal and inescapable oppression serving dark and archaic forces desperately holding on to their power. Moreover, these objectives are said to be formally instituted and enshrined by the Constitution and the capitalist system. Everywhere she looks, there is discrimination, injustice, and subjugation. But, again, the key to advancing “the cause” is indoctrination.

Anyon explains, “A central tenet of critical pedagogy is that students are not always incorporated into the dominant ideology, they sometimes resist. Indeed, they may resist more than we know.”<sup>57</sup> Anyon wrote that neo-Marxist scholarship from the late 1970s to 1989 established that “U.S. schools were not neutral in regard to social oppression or exclusion, but were critically implicated in the reproduction of economic inequalities and social ideologies. The next period, 1990–2005, attended to the criticism that race and gender were missing from our analysis and took neo-Marxism in new directions.” Anyon argued that her own work evolved from “analysis of social class manifestations in schooling to investigation of ways in which the economic and political decisions of powerful corporations and legislative bodies fundamentally shape school systems and the opportunities they present (or deny) various groups of students.”<sup>58</sup>

“[I]n addition to extending Marxist theory,” wrote Anyon, “new conditions require an extension of our practice. Critical pedagogy is an enduring, important form of neo-Marxist practice for education at all levels. In order to make this practice more effective in encouraging political participation by young people in struggles for social justice, we need to move our work beyond classroom walls and into the worlds in which low-income, black and Latino, and immigrant students live. We can... involve our students in contestation in public places—public struggles over rights, injustice, and opportunity.”<sup>59</sup>

Consequently, it is not enough to teach Marxism, but the students must be enlisted into the revolution. Anyon contended there are several reasons for people to become involved in political contention. It “has to do with how they interpret their political and economic surroundings—and changes in those. To

be willing to engage in social protest, people must view current developments as presenting opportunities for waging struggle.... Situations that were previously understood as oppressive but immutable can be reimagined and viewed as useful.”<sup>60</sup> “Critical educators today have an important role to play in helping students apprehend possibility in what, at first glance, might appear overdetermined or unchangeable racial, class, or gender subordination.”<sup>61</sup>

Anyon and others have introduced the word “re-imagine” into the Marxist lexicon, the purpose of which is to soften the iron fist of Marxism with a nonthreatening appeal. This description has also become popular among Democratic Party politicians and the media, as well. You have heard it more recently in the application to defunding police departments. For example, “it is time to re-imagine law enforcement.” Thus, writes Anyon, “Critical educators are involved in [the] vital process of reimagining schools and classrooms as social justice building spaces. This work is incredibly difficult but... not any more impossible than the re-imagining of economic relations, the church, and culture that black Americans undertook to achieve the victories in the civil rights movement.”<sup>62</sup>

Re-imagine an entirely new society, built on Marxist precepts, leaving no societal stone unturned. Of course, there is no reason to re-imagine such a place, given mankind’s infernal experience with Marxist totalitarianism and genocide. Nonetheless, little is mentioned of this knowledge despite its familiarity and real-world consequences, and on those rare occasions when it is mentioned, it is framed in a way to deflect from its consistently inhumane outcomes. Frequently, the diversion involves statements like, “Well, Stalin was a flawed person and not a real communist,” or “Mao improved the lot of the peasants,” or “Castro’s Cuba has universal health care,” etc. In other words, semantic digression is used to excuse the horrors of despotism.

Again, Anyon was no mere academic, like so many in her profession. She urged, as did Marx, charging the civil society’s ramparts. “Re-imagining economic change and institutions as potentially oppositional does not, by itself, bring social change. And developing critical consciousness in people through information, readings, and discussion does not, by itself, induce them to participate in transgressive politics—although it provides a critical basis for

understanding. To activate people to create or join public contention, it is important to actually involve them in protest activity of some kind.”<sup>63</sup> Indeed, wrote Anyon, “shifts in political identity do not so much motivate contentious political action, as develop a logical consequence of it. One develops a political identity and commitment—a change in consciousness—from joining demonstrations, marching, singing, joining the activities of social justice organizations in one’s neighborhood, etc. Participation creates individual participants; and it also leads to groups developing their own collective identity as social change agents.”<sup>64</sup>

If you wondered why college-age people were participating in the violent uprisings during the summer of 2020 and since, certainly a primary reason was the indoctrination they had been receiving to “join the revolution” and “resistance,” led by such groups as BLM and Antifa. And given that most college and university campuses had been closed to physical attendance due to the coronavirus, they had both the time and opportunity to join in the “mostly peaceful protests.”

Indeed, as Anyon wrote: “In order to develop a sense of themselves as change agents, as active political players, youth also need opportunities to engage in such activity.... Engagement itself, then, is a necessary part of taking up further engagements. Like riding a bike, one has to do it to learn to do it.... There is an addition[al], very important reason that people become active, and that is that they are part of organizations or networks that are already active.”<sup>65</sup>

Brainwashing against the American founding and civil society, and indoctrination about activism and protest—even violent if necessary—are constantly preached throughout academia. The goal is to create a generation of revolutionaries. Anyon argues that “although critical educators do well to share with students information about systemic causes of subordination, that is not enough to get students involved in the struggle for social justice.... [There is] the need to assist students in interpreting economic and political developments as opportunities for participation, helping them to appropriate existing institutional and organization forms for providing physical and emotional support for... actual public contention and the development of themselves as active agents in their own and their communities’ futures.... By giving students

direct experience with social justice work, we can educate them to appreciate and value those forms of democratic process that are aimed specifically at creating a more equitable society—public contention toward progressive social change. By setting up situations in the school experience that allow practice of, and assisting students to acquire skill with, public political contention, we legitimize this work and develop students' predisposition to engage in it.”<sup>66</sup>

Thus, the agenda for the Marxist faculty member is clear: to create an army of anti-American youth who will do the bidding of the Marxist faculty as they emerge from academia and enter the workplace. Anyon proclaimed: “Re-imagining economic change, institutions, and cultural forms as potentially oppositional does not by itself bring social change. And developing ‘critical consciousness’ in people through information, readings, and discussion does not by itself induce them to participate in transgressive politics—although it provides a crucial base of understanding. To activate people to create or join a social movement, it is important to actually involve them in protest activity of some kind... One develops a political identity and commitment—a change in consciousness—from talking, walking, marching, singing, attempting to vote, ‘sitting in,’ or otherwise demonstrating with others.”<sup>67</sup>

In his 2020 book, *The Breakdown of Higher Education*, John M. Ellis, distinguished professor emeritus at University of California, Santa Cruz, cites a 2006 survey conducted by Neil Gross and Solon Simmons, of a very large sample of faculty from 927 different institutions, in which Ellis studied the survey's data and concluded that “the faculty in their sample were 9 percent conservative (though only mildly so on average), while 80 percent were solidly left, with well over half of those being extreme left.... They found that one in five professors in the social sciences self-identified as ‘Marxist.’ (In the field of sociology, the ratio was more than one in four.)”... “Astonishing as this statistic is,” writes Ellis, “it almost certainly understates the matter. The word ‘Marxist’ does not play at all well with the general public, and many whose mental framework has been largely formed by Marx's ideas prefer to describe themselves as ‘socialist’ and ‘progressives,’ or simply ‘activists.’ We can assume, therefore, that the real number of people motivated by Marxist ideas among social science professors is

higher—anything up to double the Gross and Simmons number, but certainly a good deal more than one in five.”<sup>68</sup>

Ellis declares that “[i]t is safe to say that self-identified Marxists are no more than a tiny fraction of the general public of the United States, which means that there is a huge discrepancy between this very small group in the population and the very large one found among social science professors.”<sup>69</sup> This helps explain why the Democratic Party generally, and Sen. Bernie Sanders in particular, push for free college and the cancellation of student loans. The more young people who are processed through America’s colleges and universities, the greater the chance for their revolution.

## CHAPTER FOUR

---

# RACISM, GENDERISM, AND MARXISM

The foundational question: what is Critical Theory, from which these other Critical Theory/Marxist movements sprang? Uri Harris at *Quillette* explains: “Critical theory draws heavily on Karl Marx’s notion of *ideology*. Because the bourgeoisie controlled the means of production, Marx suggested, they controlled the culture. Consequently, the laws, beliefs, and morality of society reflected the interests of the bourgeoisie. And importantly, people were unaware that this was the case. In other words, capitalism created a situation where the interests of a particular group of people—those who controlled society—were made to *appear* to be universal truths and values, when in fact they were not.”<sup>1</sup>

Harris continues: “The founders of critical theory developed this notion. By identifying the distorting effects power had on society’s beliefs and values, they believed they could achieve a more accurate picture of the world. And when people saw things as they really were, they would liberate themselves. ‘Theory,’ they suggested, always serves the interests of certain people; *traditional* theory, because it is uncritical towards power, automatically serves the powerful, while *critical* theory, because it unmasks these interests, serves the powerless. All theory is political, they said, and by choosing critical theory over traditional theory one chooses to challenge the status quo, in accordance with Marx’s famous statement: ‘Philosophers have hitherto only interpreted the world in various ways; the point is to change it.’”<sup>2</sup>



Herbert Marcuse is credited with hatching the Critical Theory ideology from which the racial, gender, and other Critical Theory–based movements were launched in America. As mentioned earlier, he was a German-born Hegelian-Marxist ideologue of the Frankfurt School of political theorists. He is best known for attempting to explain why the so-called proletariat (workers) in the United States and elsewhere have not risen up to overthrow the capitalist system of the ruling bourgeoisie. Therefore, we must plunge further into Marcuse’s “scholarship.”

In his 1965 paper, “Repressive Tolerance,” the title of which is a truly perverse if not bizarre twist on logic and reality, Marcuse wrote, in part: “This essay examines the idea of tolerance in our advanced industrial society. The conclusion reached is that the realization of the objective of tolerance would call for intolerance toward prevailing policies, attitudes, opinions, and the extension of tolerance to policies, attitudes, and opinions which are outlawed or suppressed. In other words, today tolerance appears again as what it was in its origins, at the beginning of the modern period—a partisan goal, a subversive liberating notion and practice. Conversely, what is proclaimed and practiced as tolerance today, is in many of its most effective manifestations serving the cause of oppression.”<sup>3</sup>

Thus, for Marcuse, tolerance is actually a ploy instituted by the powerful and conniving forces of the bourgeoisie against the unsuspecting proletariat, in which the masses are duped and programmed to support their oppressors. In short, tolerance is used to suppress the people.

“Tolerance is an end in itself,” declared Marcuse. “The elimination of violence, and the reduction of suppression to the extent required for protecting man and animals from cruelty and aggression are preconditions for the creation of a humane society. Such a society does not yet exist; progress toward it is perhaps more than before arrested by violence and suppression on a global scale. As deterrents against nuclear war, as police action against subversion, as technical aid in the fight against imperialism and communism, as methods of pacification in neo-colonial massacres, violence and suppression are promulgated, practiced, and defended by democratic and authoritarian

governments alike, and the people subjected to these governments are educated to sustain such practices as necessary for the preservation of the status quo.”<sup>4</sup>

Therefore, the public in non-Marxist or nonrevolutionary societies are too senseless to realize that they are oppressed and their existence is at the service of the rich and powerful who control the society.

Marcuse claims that “[t]olerance is extended to policies, conditions, and modes of behavior which should not be tolerated because they are impeding, if not destroying, the chances of creating an existence without fear and misery. This sort of tolerance strengthens the tyranny of the majority against which authentic liberals protested. The political locus of tolerance has changed: while it is more or less quietly and constitutionally withdrawn from the opposition, it is made compulsory behavior with respect to established policies. Tolerance is turned from an active into a passive state, from practice to non-practice: laissez-faire the constituted authorities. It is the people who tolerate the government, which in turn tolerates opposition within the framework determined by the constituted authorities. Tolerance toward that which is radically evil now appears as good because it serves the cohesion of the whole on the road to affluence or more affluence. The toleration of the systematic moronization of children and adults alike by publicity and propaganda, the release of destructiveness in aggressive driving, the recruitment for and training of special forces, the impotent and benevolent tolerance toward outright deception in merchandising, waste, and planned obsolescence are not distortions and aberrations: they are the essence of a system which fosters tolerance as a means for perpetuating the struggle for existence and suppressing the alternatives. The authorities in education, morals, and psychology are vociferous against the increase in juvenile delinquency; they are less vociferous against the proud presentation, in word and deed and pictures, of ever more powerful missiles, rockets, bombs—the mature delinquency of a whole civilization.”<sup>5</sup>

In other words, America as a land of opportunity and freedom is a fiction, and the citizen-majority that accepts this fiction is made up of mindless zombies, unable to think for themselves—unwitting servants of their own persecutors, who themselves are undermining the cause of economic and political liberation. Tolerance is the means by which this supposed con is accomplished.

Indeed, Marcuse insisted that “[t]he tolerance which enlarged the range and content of freedom was always partisan—intolerant toward the protagonists of the repressive *status quo*. The issue was only the degree and extent of intolerance. In the firmly established liberal society of England and the United States, freedom of speech and assembly was granted even to the radical enemies of society, provided they did not make the transition from word to deed, from speech to action.”<sup>6</sup>

Hence, if American society does not tolerate its own demise or overthrow at the hands of Marxist ideologues and movements, it cannot be said to be truly tolerant. Therefore, Marcuse insists that a society is not truly tolerant if it does not sow the seeds of its own demise by Marxist revolutionaries.

Marcuse makes excuses for the failure of his ideology to take root among the American people. He adds: “With the actual decline of dissenting forces in the society, the opposition is insulated in small and frequently antagonistic groups who, even where tolerated within the narrow limits set by the hierarchical structure of society, are powerless while they keep within these limits. But the tolerance shown to them is deceptive and promotes coordination. And on the firm foundations of a coordinated society all but closed against qualitative change, tolerance itself serves to contain such change rather than to promote it. These same conditions render the critique of such tolerance abstract and academic, and the proposition that the balance between tolerance toward the Right and toward the Left would have to be radically redressed in order to restore the liberating function of tolerance becomes only an unrealistic speculation. Indeed, such a redressing seems to be tantamount to the establishment of a ‘right of resistance’ to the point of subversion. There is not, there cannot be any such right for any group or individual against a constitutional government sustained by a majority of the population.”<sup>7</sup>

Moreover, since a republic would not consent to its own subversion and dissolution, thereby rejecting true tolerance, Marxists must resort to other means to overthrow it, including violence. Marcuse declared: “I believe that there is a ‘natural right’ of resistance for oppressed and overpowered minorities to use extralegal means if the legal ones have proved to be inadequate. Law and order are always and everywhere the law and order which protect the established

hierarchy; it is nonsensical to invoke the absolute authority of this law and this order against those who suffer from it and struggle against it—not for personal advantages and revenge, but for their share of humanity. There is no other judge over them than the constituted authorities, the police, and their own conscience. If they use violence, they do not start a new chain of violence but try to break an established one. Since they will be punished, they know the risk, and when they are willing to take it, no third person, and least of all the educator and intellectual, has the right to preach them abstention.”<sup>8</sup>

The inescapable conclusion is that in the end, Marcuse was urging the violent overthrow of American society in which the “established hierarchy” was using tolerance to perpetuate oppression against the minority. This nonsensical argument has served as the foundational catalyst for various critical theories that have grown into Marxist-related ideological movements—which, in turn, have been embraced and promoted by the Biden administration, the Democratic Party, the media, and institutions throughout our society and culture. One of the most destructive among these movements is Critical Race Theory (CRT).

In short, CRT is an insidious and racist Marxist ideology spreading throughout our culture and society. The Heritage Foundation’s Jonathan Butcher and Mike Gonzalez write in their study, “The New Intolerance, and Its Grip on America,” that it promotes, among other things:

- “The Marxist analysis of society made up of categories of oppressors and oppressed;
- The idea that the oppressed impede revolution when they adhere to the cultural beliefs of their oppressors—and must be put through re-education sessions;
- The concomitant need to dismantle all societal norms through relentless criticism; and
- The replacement of all systems of power and even the descriptions of those systems with a worldview that describes only oppressors and the oppressed.

Far from being merely esoteric academic exercises, these philosophies have real-life consequences.”<sup>9</sup>

George R. La Noue, research professor of public policy and political science at the University of Maryland, describes CRT through the writings of “the two best-selling proponents of CRT, Robin DiAngelo and Ibram X. Kendi.... CRT begins with the presumption that race is the primary way to identify and analyze people and consequently posits a racial hierarchy that supposedly exists with whites on top and blacks at the bottom. Individual behavior is insignificant because everyone in America functions within a society of systemic racism, structural racism, and institutional racism. CRT affirms this perspective by pointing to various existing racial disparities, which it claims are the result of racist discrimination. According to this perspective, efforts by public and private organizations to enforce civil rights laws in employment, housing, contracting, education, etc. are either insufficient or pointless. CRT offers two responses to this situation. First, all whites must admit their culpability by confessing the advantages white supremacy confers on them. Failure to do so reflects ‘white fragility’—an instinctive defensiveness that whites are said to display after they have been trained about their investment in racism. Second, individual whites cannot hide behind any personal history of non-discrimination or the desirability of race-neutral laws or policies because the collective action of their race has been oppressive.”<sup>10</sup>

In acknowledging their white privilege, La Noue explains that “[w]hites... must support ‘anti-racist’ policies that require various forms of race preferences for non-whites across a variety of fields for an indefinite period. This is required even where whites are a local minority and power structures are controlled by non-whites or Blacks, Indigenous, and People of Color—‘BIPOCs’ in the current terminology.”<sup>11</sup>

In his book *Intellectuals and Society*, Dr. Thomas Sowell, author, scholar, and professor, denounces the entire multicultural/ identity politics movement. He explains that “[t]he kind of collective justice demanded for racial or ethnic groups is often espoused as ‘social justice,’ since it seeks to undo disparities created by circumstances, as well as those created by the injustices of human beings. Moreover, cosmic justice not only extends from individuals to groups, it

extends beyond contemporary groups to intertemporal abstractions, of which today's groups are conceived as being the current embodiments."<sup>12</sup>

“Among intellectuals who confuse blame with causation,” writes Sowell, “the question-begging phrase ‘blaming the victim’ has become a staple in discussions of intergroup differences. No individual or group can be blamed for being born into circumstances (including cultures) that lack the advantages that other people’s circumstances have. But neither can ‘society’ be automatically assumed to be either the cause or the cure for such disparities. Still less can a particular institution whose employment, pricing, or lending decisions *convey* intergroup differences be automatically presumed to be *causing* those differences.”<sup>13</sup> Indeed, CRT takes blame to a new and dangerously hateful level—that is, white privilege and the white dominant culture are responsible for all manner of black and minority grievances and disaffection.

Moreover, the claim is that the existing system has been permanently rigged against blacks and minorities from its founding by white racists. Sowell explains that “[e]ven if one believes that environment is the key to intergroup differences, that environment includes a cultural legacy from the past—and the past is as much beyond our control as the geographic settings and historic happenstances that have left not only different individuals or races, but whole nations and civilizations, with very different heritages....”<sup>14</sup>

While Marcuse and his progeny are obsessed with categorizing individuals and treating such groups as stagnant and operating within their own boxes, Sowell contends that such a belief and approach is actually destructive of the very people who are said to be oppressed. In the context of multiculturalism, Sowell argues: “If the dogmas of multiculturalism declare different cultures equally valid, and hence sacrosanct against efforts to change them, then these dogmas simply complete the sealing off of a vision from facts—and sealing off many people in lagging groups from the advances available from other cultures around them, leaving nothing but an agenda of resentment-building and crusades on the side of angels against the forces of evil—however futile or even counterproductive these may turn out to be for those who are the ostensible beneficiaries of such moral melodramas.”<sup>15</sup>

In fact, CRT goes beyond arguing that different cultures are equally valid. It declares that society is a systemically racist white-dominant culture and enlists those who are disaffected, dissatisfied, and malcontented into a growing legion of anti-American revolutionaries, where minorities are at dagger points with the “white dominant” societal forces. In his 1964 book, *One-Dimensional Man*, Marcuse urges the expansion of Marxist ideology and revolution to include racial and ethnic groups. “Underneath the conservative popular base is the substratum of the outcasts and outsiders,” he wrote, “the exploited and persecuted of other races and other colors, the unemployed and the unemployable. They exist outside the democratic process; their life is the most immediate and the most real need for ending intolerable conditions and institutions. Thus their opposition is revolutionary even if their consciousness is not. Their opposition hits the system from without and is therefore not deflected by the system; it is an elementary force which violates the rules of the game and, in doing so, reveals it is a rigged game. When they get together and go out into the streets, without arms, without protection, in order to ask for the most primitive civil rights, they know that they face dogs, stones, and bombs, jail, concentration camps, even death. Their force is behind every political demonstration for the victims of law and order. The fact which marks the beginning of the end of a period.”<sup>16</sup>

Indeed, Marcuse and other Marxists spawned Critical Race Theory and a seemingly endless list of disgruntled, ideologically driven groups. Discrimination is based on race, ethnicity, gender, sexual preference, economics, and a potential myriad of other diverse human characteristics, qualities, preferences, and circumstances. In fact, often individuals and groups are said to be victims of more than one kind of discrimination. For example, if an individual is female, Muslim, and black, she is said to be subjected to multiple forms of discrimination. This, too, has been given a name by, among others, University of California, Los Angeles, law professor Kimberlé Crenshaw—*intersectionality*.

In an interview with CNN in 2020, Crenshaw described Critical Race Theory as “a practice. It’s an approach to grappling with a history of White supremacy that rejects the belief that what’s in the past is in the past, and that the laws and systems that grow from that past are detached from it.”<sup>17</sup>

“Critical race theory attends not only to law’s transformative role which is often celebrated,” claimed Crenshaw, “but also to its role in establishing the very rights and privileges that legal reform was set to dismantle. Like American history itself, a proper understanding of the ground upon which we stand requires a balanced assessment, not a simplistic commitment to jingoistic accounts of our nation’s past and current dynamics.”<sup>18</sup>

In other words, CRT undermines and exploits America’s unique and very successful fusion of diversity and cultural assimilation, and considers all issues in the context of past societal imperfections—regardless of enormous struggles and efforts in creating a more perfect society, including a civil war, massive economic redistribution, and groundbreaking legal changes. Even more, it incorporates and advances an increasing list of causes as new or additional reasons for eradicating society and transforming the country. Indeed, CRT repositions what is the most tolerant and beneficent society on earth as a miserably dark and impoverished nation, from its beginning to today.

Despite Marcuse’s call to revolution among minority groups, some Marxist purists saw CRT as diffusing or undermining Marx’s material historicism—that is, the notion of class struggle based on economic conditions. That view has all but passed. Critical race theoreticians are typically Marxists in orientation and mostly consider their theory for transitioning society as blending with the Marxist agenda. For example, for the Marxist and the critical race theoretician, the past is evidence of manipulation, exploitation, mistreatment, and corruption of different classes of people. America is, therefore, an irredeemably contemptible society that must be relentlessly condemned and ultimately toppled.

Like Marx, the CRT proponents deal in group stereotypes and prejudices, whether talking about perpetrators or victims, based on race, etc. Assumptions are made about individuals grounded on their physical, religious, ancestral, and other characteristics. But human beings are more than racial beings, just as they are more than economic beings, and the Marxist ideology preaches a monumental and deadly distortion of man’s nature. Individuals are complex and complicated, unique, and spiritual. They are influenced by innumerable events, circumstances, motivations, desires, interests, etc. It is the Marxist and



critical race academics and activists who create these categories for their own convenience and revolutionary purposes when demanding the dissolution of society and its rebirth as some utopian autocracy or mobocracy. Of course, this is not to say that individuals and the larger society are unaffected by racial and other such distinctions, but not to the exclusion of, and not through the sole lens of, a host of other human influences.

Among the most widely read books on CRT is, unsurprisingly, *Critical Race Theory*. The authors, Professors Richard Delgado and his wife, Jean Stefancic, both teach law at the University of Alabama. They write, in part: the CRT movement “is a collection of activists and scholars engaged in studying and transforming the relationship among race, racism, and power. The movement considers many of the same issues that conventional civil rights and ethnic studies discourses take up but places them in a broader perspective that includes economics, history, setting, group and self-interest, and emotions and the unconscious. Unlike traditional civil rights discourse, which stresses incrementalism and step-by-step progress, critical race theory questions the very foundations of the liberal order, including equality theory, legal reasoning, Enlightenment rationalism, and neutral principles of constitutional law. After the first decade, Critical Race Theory began to splinter and now includes well-developed Asian American jurisprudence, a forceful Latino-critical (LatCrit) contingent, feisty LGBT interest groups, and now a Muslim and Arab caucus. Although the groups continue to maintain good relations under the umbrella of critical race theory, each has developed its own body of literature and set of priorities.”<sup>19</sup>

Thus, like Marx, the CRT movement openly disdains and rejects mankind’s progress over the centuries if not several millennia, which serve as the underpinning of American society and other advanced societies, as well as racial progress made in our country, which is dismissed as an improvement by, for, and of the white privileged class. By rejecting “equality theory, legal reasoning, Enlightenment rationalism, and neutral principles of constitutional law,” CRT reveals itself as a radical dogma and fanatical cause led by true believers.

Delgado and Stefancic break down the meaning and bases of CRT as follows: “First, racism is ordinary, not aberrational—‘normal science,’ the usual way

society does business, the common, everyday experience of most people of color in this country.”<sup>20</sup>

Hence, racism is rampant, ubiquitous, conscious, and unconscious. It is everywhere, and there is no escaping it. Minorities are relentlessly victimized as individuals and a class, and in all manners, by white dominance. And short of eradicating society, there is no cure. That’s the mind-set, that’s the doctrine.

“Second,” write Delgado and Stefancic, “most would agree that our system of white-over-color ascendancy serves important purposes, both psychic and material, for the dominant groups. The first feature is that racism is difficult to cure because it is not acknowledged. Color-blind, or ‘formal,’ conceptions of equality, expressed in rules that insist only on treatment that is the same across the board, can thus remedy only the most blatant forms of discrimination...”<sup>21</sup>

Therefore, goes the argument, widespread white privilege and white supremacy are a scientific fact that must be acknowledged if there is to be any true racial progress. References to and actions based on promoting “color-blindness” or “equality” are meaningless and superficial diversions away from a real cultural revolution.

“The second feature,... material determinism, adds a further dimension,” declare Delgado and Stefancic. “Because racism advances the interests of both white elites (materially) and working-class whites (psychically), large segments of society have little incentive to eradicate it.”<sup>22</sup> For our purposes here, Marx’s “material determinism” simply means that individuals and mankind are influenced and motivated by purely material factors.

Thus, CRT borrows from Marx in promoting the concept of material determinism but further racializes it—that is, white elites and even the white working class are part of the bourgeois in Marx’s class-struggle model. As such, the white majority must continue to support a racist societal-regime because they are its economic and “power” beneficiaries.

Delgado and Stefancic write that “[a] third theme... [is] the ‘social construction’ thesis, [which] holds that race and races are products of social thought and relations. Not objective, inherent, or fixed, they correspond to no biological or generic reality; rather, races are categories that society invents, manipulates, or retires when convenient. People with common origins share

certain physical traits, of course, such as skin color, physique, and hair texture. But these constitute only an extremely small portion of their genetic endowment, are dwarfed by what we have in common, and have little or nothing to do with distinctly human, higher-order traits, such as personality, intelligence, and moral behavior. That society seeks to ignore these scientific truths, creates races, and endows them with pseudo-permanent characteristics is of great interest to the critical race theory.”<sup>23</sup>

If you are somewhat perplexed by this third theme, it is understandable. The CRT theoreticians and movement try to advance two conflicting ideas at once: first, that minority groups are discriminated against based on their racial, gender, ethnicity, etc., yet these categories of minority groups are said to have been invented by the unjust society for stereotypical purposes. Actually, it is the Critical Theory advocates who talk and write about groups, and develop new groups of people, who are said to be subjected to injustice and discrimination, known and unknown, conscious and unconscious, interminable and everywhere, in a stereotypical fashion. Hence, identity politics, intersectionality, etc.

And, of course, Delgado and Stefancic celebrate intersectionality as a key element of the CRT movement—that is, discrimination frequently occurs on multiple levels. They write: “Closely related to differential racialization—the idea that each race has its own origins and ever-evolving history—is the notion of intersectionality and anti-essentialism. No person has a single, easily stated, unitary identity.... Everyone has potentially conflicting, overlapping identities, loyalties, and allegiances.”<sup>24</sup> Moreover, anti-essentialism is the idea that there is not a single answer to every situation; therefore, governmental solutions to discrimination must be flexible and endless to accommodate all manner of discriminatory thinking, behavior, and practices in a racist society, now and in the future.

Clearly, academia is not merely about teaching students how to think—or, in the case of Marxism and CRT, what to think through repetition and indoctrination—but to develop an army of activist revolutionaries. Delgado and Stefancic write that “[u]nlike some academic disciplines, critical race theory contains an activist dimension. It tries not only to understand our social

situation but to change it, setting out not only to ascertain how society organizes itself along racial lines and hierarchies but to transform it for the better.”<sup>25</sup>

The late Derrick Bell, a Harvard law professor, is considered by some to be the founding father of modern Critical Race Theory. Thomas Sowell knew Bell and also had little regard for Bell or his ideological movement. He believed Bell was not competent to teach at Harvard and, earlier, Stanford Law School and denounced Bell for demanding “not only that people be hired by race, but that they be hired to fit Derek Bell’s ideology.”<sup>26</sup>

Indeed, it appears Bell’s personal setbacks, and criticisms from colleagues and students alike, affected his view of life and victimization. In his 1992 book, *Inside American Education: The Decline, the Deception, the Dogmas*, Sowell writes of Bell that “he argued that ‘direct action’ is more effective than law, that ‘reform requires confrontation’ which ‘can’t be intellectualized.’ While admitting that ‘few minority scholars have national reputations or are frequently published in the major law reviews,’ Bell attributed this to whites’ ‘exclusion’ of them. Blacks with a different outlook are dismissed by Bell as people who merely ‘look black’ but ‘think white.’”<sup>27</sup>

Bell was critical of most civil rights advances that had come before, including the civil rights acts and Supreme Court decisions such as *Brown v. Board of Education*, and the ideas of color-blindness, merit, and equal opportunity. He argued that they served the interests of the white elite by masking ongoing and interminable racism—the so-called “interest-convergence dilemma.”<sup>28</sup> For Bell and his adherents, there can be no neutral law, decisions, or actions as they are all affected by the white-dominant culture and white privilege. As with Marx, therefore, the societal slate must be wiped clean.

“It is our hope,” wrote Bell, “that scholarly resistance will lay the groundwork for wide-scale resistance. We believe that standards and institutions created by and fortifying white power ought to be resisted. Decontextualization, in our view, too often masks unregulated—even unrecognized—power. We insist, for example, that abstraction, put forth as ‘rational’ or ‘objective’ truth, smuggles the privileged choice of the privileged to depersonify their claims and then pass them off as the universal authority and the universal good. To counter such

assumptions, we try to bring to legal scholarship an experientially grounded, oppositionally expressed, and transformatively aspirational concern with race and other socially constructed hierarchies.”<sup>29</sup>

And, of course, any negative critique of Bell’s “righteous” cause was met with the charge of both white arrogance and white ignorance. Thus, no criticism of Bell or CRT is said to be legitimate. In fact, it is evidence of the very systemic racism of which Bell complains. Bell wrote: “Comparing critical race theory writing with the Spirituals is an unjustified conceit, but the essence of both is quite similar: to communicate understanding and reassurance to needy souls trapped in a hostile world. Moreover, the use of unorthodox structure, language, and form to make sense of the senseless is another similarity. Quite predictably, critics wedded to the existing legal canons will critique critical race theory, and the comparable work by feminists, with their standards of excellence and find this new work seriously inadequate. Many of these critics are steeped in theory and deathly afraid of experience. They seek meaning by dissecting portions of this writing—the autobiographical quality of some work, and the allegorical, story-telling characteristic of others. But all such criticisms miss the point. Critical race theory cannot be understood by claiming that it is ineffective in conveying arguments of discrimination and disadvantage to the majority. Moreover, it is presumptuous to suggest, as a few critics do, that by their attention, even negative attention, they provide this work with legitimacy so that the world will take it seriously. Even if correct, this view is both paternalistic and a pathetically poor effort to regain a position of dominance.”<sup>30</sup>

But there were and are prominent critics of CRT who were active in the early civil rights movement, including the late Rev. Martin Luther King Jr.’s chief of staff, confidant, and friend, Dr. Wyatt Tee Walker. Walker was a legend in the civil rights movement in his own right. His friend and frequent collaborator in the school choice movement, Steve Klinsky, writes that Walker was King’s “‘field general’ in the organized resistance against notorious Birmingham safety commissioner ‘Bull’ Connor. Walker compiled and named King’s ‘The Letter from Birmingham Jail.’ He was with King for the march on Washington that produced the ‘I have a dream’ speech, and in Oslo for the Nobel Peace Prize.”<sup>31</sup> Walker emphatically rejected CRT. In 2015, Klinsky and Walker coauthored an

essay in which they wrote, in part: “Today, too many ‘remedies’—such as Critical Race Theory, the increasingly fashionable post-Marxist/post-modernist approach that analyzes society as institutional group power structures rather than on a spiritual or one-to-one human level—are taking us in the wrong direction: separating even elementary school children into explicit racial groups, and emphasizing differences instead of similarities.”<sup>32</sup>

“The answer is to go deeper than race, deeper than wealth, deeper than ethnic identity, deeper than gender,” they explained. “To teach ourselves to comprehend each person, not as a symbol of a group, but as a unique and special individual within a common context of shared humanity. To go to that fundamental place where we are all simply mortal creatures, seeking to create order, beauty, family and connection to the world—on its own—seems to bend too often towards randomness and entropy.”<sup>33</sup>

Klinsky adds that “Dr. Walker was *for* a fundamental respect for all people, without regard to their ethnic group or religion or color of their skin. Dr. Walker’s civil rights views tie back to religious values, to humanism, to rationalism, to the Enlightenment. The roots of CRT are planted in entirely different intellectual soil. It begins with ‘blocs’ (with each person assigned to an identity or economic bloc, as in Marxism). Human-to-human interactions are replaced with bloc-to-bloc interactions.... How can we ever find peace among the races and religions if we won’t look at each other, person by person, based on actual facts and actual intentions?”<sup>34</sup>

Indeed, CRT is pseudo-scholarship hatched at first by a small cabal of Marxist law professors, led by Bell, based on victimization, emotional appeals, balkanization, and separatism. By now it should be clear that it is a Marxist-based ideology laced throughout with raw bigotry, antagonism, and hate.

Not surprisingly, Delgado and Stefancic promote “legal storytelling and narrative analysis” as among the most effective forms of persuasion, not serious scholarship. “Critical race theorists have built on everyday experiences with perspective, viewpoint, and the power of stories and persuasion to come to a deeper understanding of how Americans see race. They have written parables, autobiography, and ‘counterstories’ and have investigated the factual background of personalities, frequently ignored in the casebooks.... Legal

storytellers, such as Derrick Bell... draw on a long history with roots going back to the slave narratives, talks written by black captives to describe their condition and unmask the gentility that white plantation society pretended to.... Although some writers criticize CRT for excessive negativity and failure to develop a positive program, legal storytelling and narrative analysis are clear-cut advances that the movement can claim.... One premise of legal storytellers is that members of this country's dominant racial group cannot easily grasp what it is like to be nonwhite.”<sup>35</sup>

As the Heritage Foundation's Jonathan Butcher and Mike Gonzalez underscore, “CRT is purposely political and dispenses with the idea of rights because it blames all inequalities of outcome on what its adherents say is pervasive racism in the United States. ‘White supremacy,’ a term that comes up repeatedly in CRT discourse and continues to be heavily used today by leaders of the Black Lives Matter organizations, must be smashed. White supremacy does not mean an actual belief in the superiority of white people, however. It can mean anything from classical philosophers to Enlightenment thinkers to the Industrial Revolution.”<sup>36</sup>

Butcher and Gonzalez point to CRT author Robin DiAngelo's use of term “white supremacy” to condemn all of society. DiAngelo is an affiliate associate professor of education at the University of Washington. She writes in her book, *White Fragility*: “White supremacy is a descriptive and useful term to capture the all-encompassing centrality and assumed superiority of people defined and perceived as white and the practices based on this assumption. White supremacy in this context does not refer to individual white people and their individual intentions or actions but to an overarching political, economic, and social system of domination. Again, racism is a structure, not an event. While hate groups that openly proclaim white superiority do exist and this term refers to them also, the popular consciousness solely associates white supremacy with these radical groups. This reductive definition obscures the reality of the larger system at work and prevents us from addressing this system.”<sup>37</sup> Hence, white supremacy defines and explains the entire American experiment, not merely an extreme fringe of white supremacists.

CRT theorists and activists declare that not only is society incurably racist and white dominated, but there is no point in attempting to assert or pursue your “rights” because such rights really are not rights at all. Why? Because they do not deliver the kind of Marxist egalitarianism and people’s (workers’) paradise demanded by the critical race movement. Indeed, rights are used to uphold the white racial structure and deny minorities power. Delgado and Stefancic claim that “[i]n our system, rights are almost always procedural (for example, to a fair process) rather than substantive (for example, to food, housing, or education). Think how that system applauds affording everyone equality of opportunity but resists programs that assure equality of results, such as affirmative action at an elite college or university or efforts to equalize public school funding among districts in a region. Moreover, rights are almost always cut back when they conflict with the interests of the powerful. For example, hate speech, which targets mainly minorities, gays, lesbians, and other outsiders, receives legal protection, while speech that offends the interest of the empowered groups finds a ready exception in First Amendment law.... Moreover, rights are said to be alienating. They separate people from each other—‘stay away, I’ve got my rights’—rather than encouraging them to form close, respectful communities.”<sup>38</sup>

CRT activists, like Marxist revolutionaries, are intolerant of contrary arguments and challenges to their views. Therefore, free speech is particularly threatening to “the cause.” Although the focus is said to be on hate speech, which is a term applied to both obvious and offensive racial smears as well as broader political and philosophical disagreements, Chris Demaske, associate professor of communication at the University of Washington Tacoma, explained that “CRT scholars have critiqued many of the assumptions that they believe constitute the ideology of the First Amendment. For example, instead of helping to achieve healthy and robust debate, the First Amendment actually serves to preserve the inequities of the status quo; there can be no such thing as an objective or content neutral interpretation in law in general or of the First Amendment in particular; some speech should be viewed in terms of the harm it causes, rather than all speech being valued on the basis of it being speech; and there is no ‘equality’ in ‘freedom’ of speech.”<sup>39</sup>



For CRT advocates, counter-speech, more speech, and the marketplace of ideas are all poisoned by white dominance and privilege. Of course, this leads to repression, censorship, and today's "cancel culture," which I address in a later chapter.

Delgado and Stefancic state: "One of the first critical race theory proposals has to do with hate speech—the rain of insults, epithets, and name-calling that many minority people face on a daily basis. An early article documents some of the harms that this type of speech can inflict. It pointed out that courts were already affording intermittent relief for victims of hate speech under such doctrines as defamation, intentional infliction of emotional distress, and assault and battery and concluded by urging a new independent tort in which the victims of deliberate, face-to-face vituperation could sue and provide damages. Later articles and books built on this idea. One writer suggested criminalization as an answer; others urged that colleges and universities adopt student conduct rules designed to deter hate speech on campus. Still others connected hate speech to the social-construction-of-race hypothesis, pointing out that concerted racial vilification contributes to social images and ingrained preconceptions of people of color as indolent, immoral, or intellectually deficient."<sup>40</sup>

The answer, therefore, is the regulation of speech. Thus, governing authorities or, for example, their surrogates in Big Tech, the media, and academia, are to be in the business of determining what speech is acceptable and what speech is not. Of course, for the Marxists and the CRT ideologues, only one kind of speech is acceptable—theirs. Hence, the demand for campus speech codes, the war on academic freedom, and threats to intellectual diversity among faculty and students alike, and the demand for federal and state criminal hate speech laws. Obviously, the problem becomes the vagueness, overbreadth, and overreach of such policies and laws, and eventually governmental and governing authorities controlling speech. This is another example of the contradictions and hypocrisy of Marxism, and here the CRT movement, in that they rail against the existing society while demanding that the government intervene to accomplish their ideological ends.

Delgado and Stefancic also target the Internet. "Hate speech on the Internet is posing a difficult problem. Blogs, tweets, cartoons... and other messages in this

medium are inexpensive and easy to circulate, often anonymously. They enable those who dislike a person or race to find others of like mind, so that reinforcement builds, often unopposed. Society polarizes, with groups distrusting each other and believing the other side wrongheaded. Of course, counter-speech is easy and inexpensive on the Internet. Still, the ready availability of an avenue for replying to a vituperative message has not completely solved the problem.”<sup>41</sup> They have since figured out, however, the means by which to use the Internet for their ends. Again, more on that later in the book.

Moreover, the idea of merit as a just, objective, and desirable goal in society is said to be seen and applied through the eyes of white privilege. Delgado and Stefancic declare that “CRT’s critique of merit takes a number of forms, all designed to show that the notion is far from the neutral standard that its supporters imagine it to be. Several writers critique standardized testing, demonstrating that tests like the SAT or LSAT are coachable and reward people from high socioeconomic levels who can afford to pay for expensive test-prep courses. Low test scores predict little more than first-year grades—and those only modestly—and do not measure other important qualities such as empathy, achievement, orientation, achievement orientation, or communication skills. These writers point out that merit is highly situational. If one moves the hoop in a basketball court up or down six inches, one radically changes the distribution of who has merit.”<sup>42</sup>

Clearly, the CRT movement has spread not only throughout academia, but in the media, politics, and corporations, and has given rise to racialization of virtually all walks of life. I have often said that while the Soviet Union was defeated, manifestations of that totalitarian regime can be found on the American university and college campus. Butcher and Gonzalez explain why: “Since CRT originated in post-secondary institutions, it comes as no surprise that some of the most intolerant manifestations of CRT are found on university campuses. College grounds have been the home to protests for decades, but many in the current generation of rioters are determined to have their ideas heard and not allow others to express themselves, even sometimes resorting to violence. Further, activist students and their allies issue demands to school

administrators that attempt to exercise power over those in positions of authority.”<sup>43</sup> From college and university campuses, the intolerant, speech-crushing cancel culture is now everywhere. And the endgame is the same as the Marxist goal—the destruction of the existing society.

Today, publishers are pushing out books on CRT at a brisk pace. Educational materials are being used in public school classrooms throughout America to indoctrinate and brainwash children. Schoolteachers are being “re-educated” and trained in Critical Race Theory. For example, *Is Everyone Really Equal—An Introduction to Key Concepts in Social Justice Education*, is a popular book by Ozlem Sensoy and Robin DiAngelo currently circulating throughout public education circles. In the book’s foreword, James A. Banks, editor of the Multicultural Education Series, explains the agenda: “This trenchant and timely book is written to help both preservice and practicing teachers attain the knowledge, attitudes, and skills needed to work effectively with students from diverse groups, including mainstream groups. A major assumption of this book is that teachers need to develop a critical social justice perspective in order to understand the complex issues related to race, gender, class, and exceptionality in the United States and Canada and to teach in ways that will promote social justice and equality.”<sup>44</sup>

Banks cautions that “[o]ne of the most challenging tasks that those of us who teach multicultural education courses to teacher education students experience is resistance to the knowledge and skills that we teach. This resistance has deep roots in the communities in which most teacher education students are socialized as well as in the mainstream knowledge that becomes institutionalized within the academic community and the popular culture that most students have not questioned until they enroll in a multicultural education or diversity course....”<sup>45</sup>

The book is broken down into the following chapters:

*Chapter 1: How to Engage Constructively in Courses That Take a Critical Social Justice Approach*

*Chapter 2: Critical Thinking and Critical Theory*

*Chapter 3: Culture and Socialization*

*Chapter 4: Prejudice and Discrimination*

*Chapter 5: Oppression and Power*

*Chapter 6: Understanding Privilege Through Ableism*

*Chapter 7: Understanding the Invisibility of Oppression Through Sexism*

*Chapter 8: Understanding the Structural Nature of Oppression Through Racism*

*Chapter 9: Understanding the Global Organization of Racism Through White Supremacy*

*Chapter 10: Understanding Intersectionality Through Classism*

*Chapter 11: “Yeah, But...” Common Rebuttals*

*Chapter 12: Putting It All Together*<sup>46</sup>

Banks describes the ideological agenda intended by the book:

“We hope to take our readers on a journey that results in an increased ability to see beyond the immediate surface level to the deeply embedded injustice... injustice that for so many of us is normal and taken for granted. Looking head-on at injustice can be painful, especially when we understand that we all have a role in it. However, in taking our readers on this journey we do not intend to inspire guilt or assign blame. At this point in society, guilt and blame are not useful or constructive, no one reading this book had a hand in creating the systems that hold injustice in place. But each of us does have a choice about whether we are going to work to interrupt and dismantle these systems or support their existence by ignoring them. There is no neutral ground; to choose not to act against injustice is to choose to allow it. We hope that this book gives our readers the conceptual foundations from which to act against injustice.”<sup>47</sup>

CRT is now firmly entrenched in American universities and colleges, and its reach is widespread. The website Legal Insurrection, founded by Professor William Jacobson of Cornell Law School, provides the most comprehensive database of more than two hundred colleges and universities that are using critical race training on their campuses.<sup>48</sup>

Moreover, CRT is spreading rapidly throughout America's public schools. Among other things, this is being accomplished with the strong advocacy and corporate machinery of the *New York Times* and the 1619 Project.

What is the 1619 Project? Writing in *Real Clear Public Affairs*, Krystina Skurk, a research assistant at Hillsdale College, explains that it is “[a] series of essays published by the *New York Times*... the 1619 Project reframes U.S. history by arguing that 1619, the year slaves were first brought to Jamestown, is the year of America's true founding. In partnership with the *Times*, the Pulitzer Center created a curriculum based on 1619 that they distributed to over 3,500 schools. The curriculum teaches that slavery has had a lasting impact on all U.S. institutions, according to a Pulitzer Center lesson plan. One discussion guide question asks, How do societal structures developed to support the enslavement of black people, and the anti-black racism that was cultivated in the U.S. to justify slavery, influence many aspects of modern laws, policies, systems, and culture?”<sup>49</sup>

Skurk continues: “In a video created for the curriculum Nikole Hannah-Jones, the creator of the 1619 Project, explains that growing up in the Midwest, she ‘saw the landscape of inequality’ through her school bus window. The most telling portion of the video is when Hannah-Jones discusses American history, first describing 1776 positively as the year that set in motion the most ‘liberatory democratic experiment in the history of the world.’ As she speaks, iconic images play of the pilgrims, the American Founders, the 1950s, and the Statue of Liberty. Then the images begin to rewind, and Hannah-Jones says, ‘The only way you can believe that this country was the most liberatory democratic nation that the world has ever seen is to, of course, erase the indigenous people who were already here... and to ignore the enslaved Africans.’”<sup>50</sup>

Everywhere Hannah-Jones looks, from her *New York Times* perch, she sees racism. “Hannah-Jones claims that nearly everything in modern American life is

tainted by the legacy of slavery,” writes Skurk. “She points to incarceration rates, the lack of universal healthcare, the length of maternity leave, minimum wage laws, low rates of union membership, highway systems, explicitly and implicitly discriminatory laws, and poorly performing school systems in minority neighborhoods as examples of the continued effects of racism.”<sup>51</sup>

What is the goal of this *New York Times* project? Jake Silverstein, the *Times* editor in chief, stated that it “is to reframe American history by considering what it would mean to regard 1619 as our nation’s birth year [as opposed to 1776]. Doing so requires us to place the consequences of slavery and the contributions of black Americans at the very center of the story we tell ourselves about who we are as a country.”<sup>52</sup>

In his book *1620: A Critical Response to the 1619 Project*, Peter W. Wood, president of the National Association of Scholars, and a former professor, wrote a devastating response to the 1619 Project. Among other things, he explains: “The larger aim of the 1619 Project is to change America’s understanding of itself. Whether it will ultimately succeed in doing so remains to be seen, but it certainly had already succeeded in shaping how Americans now argue about key aspects of history. The 1619 Project aligns with the views of those on the progressive left who hate America and would like to transform it radically into a different kind of nation. Such a transformation would be a terrible mistake: it would endanger our hard-won liberty, our self-government, and our virtues as a people...”<sup>53</sup> Wood observes that “the 1619 Project has taken ideas that a few years ago were exclusively fringe a good way into the realm of mainstream opinion. The idea, for example, that the American Revolution was a pro-slavery event once circulated only among conspiracy-minded activists with comic-book-style theories of history. The 1619 Project has brought it from the playground into the classroom, to the consternation of serious historians everywhere.”<sup>54</sup>

Wood condemns the project as phony scholarship. And, of course, it is. It is Critical Race Theory dressed up as history. “The usual way for disputes about history to be resolved,” says Wood, “is for historians to present their best arguments, and their sources, in journal articles; each side can then examine the evidence for themselves and hammer out the truth. The 1619 Project evades this

kind of transparency.... Hannah-Jones, who makes some of the most audacious claims, cites no sources at all: the project as presented [originally] in the [*New York Times*] *Magazine* contains no footnotes, bibliography, or other scholarly footholds.”<sup>55</sup>

In December 2019, in the *New York Times Magazine*, five exemplary historians “express[ed]... strong reservations about important aspects of the 1619 Project. The project is intended to offer a new version of American history in which slavery and white supremacy become the dominant organizing themes. The *Times* has announced ambitious plans to make the project available to schools in the form of curriculums and related instructional material.”<sup>56</sup> They were: Victoria Bynum, distinguished emerita professor of history, Texas State University; James M. McPherson, George Henry Davis 1886 emeritus professor of American history, Princeton University; James Oakes, distinguished professor, the Graduate Center, the City University of New York; Sean Wilentz, George Henry Davis 1886 professor of American history, Princeton University; and Gordon S. Wood, Alva O. Wade University emeritus professor and emeritus professor of history, Brown University.

The historians explained that “[t]hese errors, which concern major events, cannot be described as interpretation or ‘framing.’ They are matters of verifiable fact, which are the foundation of both honest scholarship and honest journalism. They suggest a displacement of historical understanding by ideology. Dismissal of objections on racial grounds—that they are the objections of only ‘white historians’—has affirmed that displacement.”<sup>57</sup>

“On the American Revolution, pivotal to any account of our history,” they write, “the project asserts that the founders declared the colonies’ independence of Britain ‘in order to ensure slavery would continue.’ This is not true. If supportable, the allegation would be astounding—yet every statement offered by the project to validate it is false. Some of the other material in the project is distorted, including the claim that ‘for the most part,’ black Americans have fought their freedom struggles ‘alone.’”<sup>58</sup>

The historians continued: “Still other material is misleading. The project criticizes Abraham Lincoln’s views on racial equality but ignores his conviction

that the Declaration of Independence proclaimed universal equality, for blacks as well as whites, a view he upheld repeatedly against powerful white supremacists who opposed him. The project also ignores Lincoln's agreement with Frederick Douglass that the Constitution was, in Douglass's words, 'a GLORIOUS LIBERTY DOCUMENT.' Instead, the project asserts that the United States was founded on racial slavery, an argument rejected by a majority of abolitionists and proclaimed by champions of slavery like John C. Calhoun."<sup>59</sup>

In a separate interview with the *Atlantic*, Wilentz explained: "To teach children that the American Revolution was fought in part to secure slavery would be giving a fundamental misunderstanding not only of what the American Revolution was all about but what America stood for and has stood for since the Founding."... "Anti-slavery ideology was a 'very new thing in the world in the 18th century,' he said, and 'there was more anti-slavery activity in the colonies than in Britain.'"<sup>60</sup>

It is important to remember that the *New York Times* has a disastrous record on truth and human rights. It has been a propaganda operation for some of the most heinous monsters and regimes in modern history. As I detailed in *Unfreedom of the Press*, the *Times* all but covered up Adolf Hitler's extermination of the European Jews for virtually the entire Holocaust. Earlier, Walter Duranty, its Moscow bureau chief from 1922 to 1936, was Joseph Stalin's favorite Western reporter. Duranty wrote glowingly of the genocidal dictator and the Soviet Union and helped cover up the purposeful mass starvation of millions of Ukrainians in 1932.<sup>61</sup> And in the late 1950s, Herbert L. Matthews, the *Times*' foreign correspondent, "was the first American reporter to interview Fidel Castro and the last to recognize the man as a ruthless and slightly mad totalitarian murderer. He created, fell in love with, and ultimately was devoured by Castro's mythology without ever really understanding what was happening."<sup>62</sup> Today, the *Times* gives voice to a racist, anti-American ideology built on Marxist ideas and tactics, brainwashes our children with lies, and undermines our own country.



However, even before the 1619 Project, the media embraced and promoted Critical Race Theory, setting the stage for the violent riots that have engulfed numerous cities. Zack Goldberg, a doctoral candidate in political science at Georgia State University, undertook what may be the most extensive examination of media reporting on race and racism in recent years. “In the wake of the protests, riots, and general upheaval sparked by the police killing of George Floyd in Minneapolis,” wrote Goldberg, “the United States is experiencing a racial reckoning. The response from America’s elite liberal institutions suggests that many have embraced the ideology of the protesters. Here, for instance, is a sampling of the titles of opinion pieces and news stories published over the past month by the country’s two most influential newspapers, *The Washington Post* and *The New York Times*:

“When black people are in pain, white people just join book clubs”

“Black Activists Wonder: Is Protesting Just Trendy for White People?”

“To White People Who Want to Be ‘One of the Good Ones’”

“America’s Enduring Caste System: Our founding ideals promise liberty and equality for all. Our reality is an enduring racial hierarchy that has persisted for centuries.”

The last entry on the list, a lengthy feature on America’s “caste system” in the *New York Times Magazine*, explicitly compares the United States to Nazi Germany.<sup>63</sup>

Goldberg continues: “What the evidence suggests is that leading publications have not only vastly expanded the definition of racism and actively promoted a more racialized view of American society—in a period beginning under a Black president and during which many indicators showed slow and frustrating, but consistent, racial progress—but have done so, in part, by normalizing and popularizing the notion of ‘white people’s’ collective guilt. The latest offering from the *New York Times*’ popular podcast lineup... is called ‘Nice White Parents’ and perfectly illustrates the point. The *Times*’ description of the podcast, focused on why reform initiatives have failed to fix the problems in American public schools, suggests it has found the source of the problem: ‘Arguably the most powerful force in our schools: White parents.’”<sup>64</sup>

Focusing on the *Times* and the *Washington Post*, Goldberg found that “[p]rior to 2013, the terms ‘white’ and ‘racial privilege(s)’ appeared in an average of 0.000013% and 0.000015% of all words in the *Times* and *Post*, respectively. Between 2013 and 2019, these average frequencies grew by an astounding 1,200% in the *Times*, which was surpassed by nearly 1,500% increase at the *Post*. Meanwhile, the frequency at which ‘privilege’ shared the same lexical space as terms like ‘white,’ ‘color,’ and ‘skin’ reached a record high.”<sup>65</sup>

Even if you are not a daily viewer or reader of the news, it is impossible to miss the radicalization of so-called journalism these days. Goldberg notes: “The spikes for ‘white supremacy’ and variant terms are remarkable given that they are by no means novel and so started from a higher baseline. Until a few years ago, their usage was likely limited to references to actual card-carrying white supremacists. But as with ‘racism,’ these terms have since been radically expanded by a rapid and ideologically driven concept creep. White supremacy is now a vague and all-encompassing label. Instead of describing the demonstrably discriminatory ideas and actions of particular institutions or individuals, white supremacy is now understood by many progressives to be the fundamental ethos of the American system as a whole.”<sup>66</sup>

The media’s use of “white supremacy” and related terms to describe anything or anyone who does not conform to the CRT racist ideology is pervasive. “Whatever it used to mean,” writes Goldberg, “white supremacy is now everywhere and applicable to any context. Consider that until 2015, terms related to ‘white supremacy’ almost never registered at more than 0.001% of all words in a given year in any of the above newspapers. With the exception of *The Wall Street Journal*, whose upswing was less consistent, this ceiling has been comfortably breached in every year since. By 2019, the *Times* and *Post* were respectively using these terms approximately 17 and 18 times more frequently than they were in 2014.”<sup>67</sup>

Moreover, the vast federal bureaucracy is inundated with the CRT agenda and training. President Donald Trump took steps last September 22, 2020, to end the spread of the ideology with Executive Order 13950. It stated, in part: “This destructive ideology is grounded in misrepresentations of our country’s history and its role in the world. Although presented as new and revolutionary,

they resurrect the discredited notions of the nineteenth century’s apologists for slavery who, like President Lincoln’s rival Stephen A. Douglas, maintained that our government ‘was made on the white basis’... ‘by white men, for the benefit of white men.’ Our Founding documents rejected these racialized views of America, which were soundly defeated on the blood-stained battlefields of the Civil War. Yet they are now being repackaged and sold as cutting-edge insights. They are designed to divide us and to prevent us from uniting as one people in pursuit of one common destiny for our great country.”<sup>68</sup>

The executive order explained that the CRT movement and its Marxist-racist agenda were consuming the government: “Unfortunately, this malign ideology is now migrating from the fringes of American society and threatens to infect core institutions of our country. Instructors and materials teaching that men and members of certain races, as well as our most venerable institutions, are inherently sexist and racist are appearing in workplace diversity trainings across the country, even in components of the Federal Government and among Federal contractors. For example, the Department of the Treasury recently held a seminar that promoted arguments that ‘virtually all White people, regardless of how “woke” they are, contribute to racism,’ and that instructed small group leaders to encourage employees to avoid ‘narratives’ that Americans should ‘be more color-blind’ or ‘let people’s skills and personalities be what differentiates them.’ Training materials from Argonne National Laboratories, a Federal entity, stated that racism ‘is interwoven into every fabric of America’ and described statements like ‘color blindness’ and the ‘meritocracy’ as ‘actions of bias.’ Materials from Sandia National Laboratories, also a Federal entity, for non-minority males stated that an emphasis on ‘rationality over emotionality’ was a characteristic of ‘white male[s],’ and asked those present to ‘acknowledge’ their ‘privilege’ to each other. A Smithsonian Institution museum graphic recently claimed that concepts like ‘[o]bjective, rational linear thinking,’ ‘[h]ard work’ being ‘the key to success,’ the ‘nuclear family,’ and belief in a single god are not values that unite Americans of all races but are instead ‘aspects and assumptions of whiteness.’ The museum also stated that ‘[f]acing your whiteness is hard and can result in feelings of guilt, sadness, confusion, defensiveness, or fear.’”<sup>69</sup>

The executive order banned teaching “race or sex stereotyping or scapegoating,” including:

1. One race or sex is inherently superior to another race or sex.
2. An individual, by virtue of his or her race or sex, is inherently racist, sexist, or oppressive, whether consciously or unconsciously.
3. An individual should be discriminated against or receive adverse treatment solely or partly because of his or her race or sex.
4. Members of one race or sex cannot and should not attempt to treat others without respect to race or sex.
5. An individual’s moral character is necessarily determined by his or her race or sex.
6. An individual, by virtue of his or her race or sex, bears responsibility for actions committed in the past by other members of the same race or sex.
7. Any individual should feel discomfort, guilt, anguish, or any other form of psychological distress on account of his or her race or sex.
8. Meritocracy or traits such as a hard work ethic are racist or sexist, or were created by a particular race to oppress another race.<sup>70</sup>

President Joe Biden, on his first day in office, signed his own executive order to reverse and cancel President Trump’s executive order, falsely claiming that Trump’s order had eliminated diversity training. Among other things, in announcing this executive order, Biden replaced the phrase “racial equality” with “racial equity,” a clear indication that his intentions are in line with the CRT movement’s view that the goal is equal outcomes, *not* equal access and treatment. Indeed, the pursuit of “equity” makes the pursuit of equality impossible. Moreover, Biden directs the federal bureaucracy to aggressively collect all kinds of data on the characteristics of individual citizens to ensure the

enforceability of equitable outcomes—often referred to as radical egalitarianism. The executive order states, in part: “Many Federal datasets are not disaggregated by race, ethnicity, gender, disability, income, veteran status, or other key demographic variables. This lack of data has cascading effects and impedes efforts to measure and advance equity. A first step to promoting equity in Government action is to gather the data necessary to inform that effort... There is hereby established an Interagency Working Group on Equitable Data (Data Working Group).”<sup>71</sup>

The tracking of citizen behavior in government databases for the purpose of enforcing the government’s social and cultural objectives, in this case the racist CRT goals, is reminiscent of Communist China’s social credit system. China’s program regulates its citizens’ behavior based on a point system. As Fox News reported, “[u]nder this system, citizens are ranked in different areas of civil life using data collected from court documents, government or corporate records, and in some cases, citizen observers. Citizens with higher scores have had an easier time getting bank loans, free medical checkups and discounts on heating. Points have been deducted for traffic violations, selling faulty products or defaulting on loan payments. In some cases, people with bad social credit scores have been barred from buying airline or train tickets. Other infractions have included smoking in non-smoking zones, buying—or playing—too many video games and posting false news stories online.”<sup>72</sup> Moreover, “[p]eople failing to comply have been placed on so-called ‘blacklists,’ which companies may reference when considering potential employees. In other cases, students may be denied entry into universities because of their parents’ bad social credit scores.”<sup>73</sup>

Furthermore, among Biden’s first presidential acts was to abolish Trump’s Advisory 1776 Commission, which was established to “enable a rising generation to understand the history and principles of the founding of the United States in 1776 and to strive to form a more perfect Union.”<sup>74</sup> “The Commission’s first responsibility is to produce a report summarizing the principles of the American founding and how those principles have shaped our country.”<sup>75</sup> Prior to Biden’s swearing in, the commission issued the 1776 Report, which was immediately disparaged by the media.

On January 19, 2021, NBC's Chuck Todd and MSNBC's Trymaine Lee refused to even dig into the contents of the report on air before ridiculing it. Their commitment to the Critical Race Theory ideology was obvious:

TODD: "Well, look, we've seen it even in sports what Deion Sanders wants to do at Jackson State and sort of break some of those barriers and reestablish a lot of ways for HBCUs [Historically Black Colleges and Universities]. I know one of the things we wanted you to do was talk to students at the university to see what their reactions were about the banner that said "1776..."

LEE: Yeah, Chuck. We talked to a political science professor who said it's really just the response to 1619 and it's really based in a fiction, hypocrisy of America that there's no way to disentangle slavery. To present this kind of shoddily slapdash, it's a shock to no one quite frankly because they've been on this for quite some time.

TODD: It's both a shock, and sadly, I don't think we were surprised.<sup>76</sup>

Todd, Lee, and the other media personalities toe the party line. By this I mean they do not and will not break from the groupthink and ideological imperatives of the various Marxist-spawned movements. They are mouthpieces for and enforcers of ideological purity—true believers for the various intersecting Marxist-centric causes and belief systems, and mostly loyal members of the Democratic Party. There can be no disagreement or deviation from the party line. And for the most part, there is not.

Delgado and Stefancic remind us, like Marcuse before them, that, in the end, if a "peaceful transition" does not take place, given "the white establishment may resist an orderly progression toward power sharing, particularly in connection with upper-level and technical jobs, policies agencies, and government," what comes next, "[a]s happened in South Africa, the change may be convulsive and cataclysmic. If so, critical theorists and activists will need to provide criminal defense for resistance movements and activists and articulate theories and strategies for resistance. Or a third, intermediate regime may set in.... [W]hites

may deploy neocolonial mechanisms, including token concessions and the creation of a host of light-skinned minority middle managers to stave off the transfer of power as long as possible.”<sup>77</sup> This is a truly dangerous, unhinged, racist movement.

The group Black Lives Matter (BLM) is a product of the fusion of Marxism and CRT. In a 2015 video interview with Jared Ball of the Baltimore-based Real News Network, one of the three cofounders of BLM, Patrisse Cullors, declared that she and fellow founder Alicia Garza were Marxists. Cullors stated, in part: “I think of a lot of things, the first thing I think is that we actually do have an ideological frame; myself, and Alicia [Garza] in particular, are trained organizers, we are trained Marxists. We are super versed on ideological theories and I think that what we really try to do is build a movement that could be utilized by many, many black folk.”<sup>78</sup> (The third of the cofounders is Opal Tometi.)

Meanwhile, BLM Marxist Khan-Cullors has acquired four homes worth several million dollars. She published a best-selling book and signed lucrative deals with Warner Bros. and other companies to promote her radical agenda.<sup>79</sup> Few Marxist revolutionaries and sympathizers live as they preach.

And there is ample evidence tying the BLM Global Network, the overarching organization, to violent Marxist-anarchist movements of the past. The Heritage Foundation’s Mike Gonzalez notes that “Cullors trained for a decade as a radical organizer in the Labor/Community Strategy Center, established and run by Eric Mann, a former member of the Weather Underground, the 1960s radical faction identified by the FBI as a domestic terrorist group. The ‘Weathermen’ explained in their 1969 foundational statement that they were dedicated to ‘the destruction of U.S. imperialism and the achievement of classless world: world communism.’”<sup>80</sup>

Gonzalez discovered a seminar in which Mann lectured attendees to ask themselves “am I making decisions to change the system? Am I being tied to the masses?” Moreover, Mann noted that “[t]he university is the place where Mao Zedong was radicalized, where Lenin and Fidel were radicalized, where Che was radicalized. The concept of the radical middle class of the colonized people, or in my case the radical middle class of the privileged people, is a model of a certain

type of revolutionary.”... “Take this country away from the white settler state, take this country away from imperialism and have an anti-racist, anti-imperialist and anti-fascist revolution.”<sup>81</sup>

Scott Walter of the Capital Research Center explains: “If there were any question whether Black Lives Matter has ideological ties to the Communist terrorists of the 1960s, the story of Susan Rosenberg should put that issue to bed.... BLM is ideologically tied—to the point of having [Susan] Rosenberg on the board of the central group—with trained Marxists with a history of extremism and violence. In fact, Rosenberg was a member of the May 19th Communist Organization (M19).”<sup>82</sup> Rosenberg had a long violent, criminal record as a Marxist revolutionary, for which she served sixteen years of a fifty-eight-year sentence, until her full pardon by Bill Clinton. Gonzalez notes that Rosenberg is “vice chair of the board of directors of Thousand Currents—the radical, grantmaking institution that until July [2020] sponsored the BLM Global Network. Rosenberg was also sought on federal charges that she aided the 1979 prison escape of Joanne Chesimard, a Communist now living in Cuba.”<sup>83</sup>

Rosenberg and Mann, as well as Barack Obama’s former associates, Bill Ayers and Bernardine Dohrn, were all associated with the Weather Underground. *Britannica* explains: “The Weather Underground, originally known as the Weathermen, evolved from the Third World Marxists, [and] was a faction within Students for a Democratic Society (SDS), the major national organization representing the burgeoning New Left in the late 1960s.”<sup>84</sup>

Furthermore, as part of its earlier mission statement, since scrubbed from its website, BLM called for the dissolution of the nuclear family: “We disrupt the Western-prescribed nuclear family structure requirement for supporting each other as extended families and ‘villages’ that collectively care for one another, especially our children, to the degree that mothers, parents, and children are comfortable.”<sup>85</sup> Neither the original mission statement nor its subsequent scrubbing was by accident. Marx believed that the nuclear family was a manifestation of bourgeois society. Like religion, the nuclear family interfered



with the kind of social ideological brainwashing necessary to achieve the Marxist paradise. Thus, he attacked it and called for its destruction:

Abolition of the family! Even the most radical flare up at this infamous proposal of the Communists.

On what foundation is the present family, the bourgeois family, based? On capital, on private gain. In its completely developed form, this family exists only among the bourgeoisie. But this state of things finds its complement in the practical absence of the family among the proletarians, and in public prostitution.

The bourgeois family will vanish as a matter of course when its complement vanishes, and both will vanish with the vanishing of capital.

Do you charge us with wanting to stop the exploitation of children by their parents? To this crime we plead guilty.

But, you say, we destroy the most hallowed of relations, when we replace home education by social.

And your education! Is not that also social, and determined by the social conditions under which you educate, by the intervention direct or indirect, of society, by means of schools, &c.? The Communists have not invented the intervention of society in education; they do but seek to alter the character of that intervention, and to rescue education from the influence of the ruling class.

The bourgeois clap-trap about the family and education, about the hallowed co-relation of parents and child, becomes all the more disgusting, the more, by the action of Modern Industry, all the family ties among the proletarians are torn asunder, and their children transformed into simple articles of commerce and instruments of labour.<sup>86</sup>

In the meantime, countless corporations, grant-making nonprofit groups, athletes, actors, and business executives, among others, provide tens of millions of dollars in financial support to BLM. Democratic Party mayors name streets and boulevards for the organization. And BLM is celebrated and even lionized

throughout the culture and media, drawing support from countless individuals, especially young people.

As the Marxist–Critical Theory ideology and propaganda spread throughout academia, the media, and beyond, so do the number of movements associated with it. For example, another significant and growing movement is the “Latina/o Critical Race Theory” (LatCrit), which, as Lindsay Perez Huber, a “post-doctoral scholar” at UCLA writes, involves “experiences unique to the Latina/o community such as immigration, status, language, ethnicity, and culture. A LatCrit analysis has allowed researchers to develop the conceptual framework of racist nativism, a lens that highlights the intersection of racism and nativism.... The overarching theoretical frameworks... are CRT, and in particular, LatCrit. CRT in educational research unapologetically centers on the ways race, class, gender, sexuality and other forms of oppression manifest in the education experiences of People of Color. CRT draws from multiple disciplines to challenge the dominant ideologies such as meritocracy and colorblindness, which suggest educational institutions are neutral systems that function in the *same* ways for *all* students. This framework challenges these beliefs by learning and building from the knowledge of Communities of Color whose education experiences are marked by oppressive structures and practices. The efforts of revealing racism in education is a conscious move toward social and racial justice and empowerment among Communities of Color.”<sup>87</sup>

To understand LatCrit, one must understand race and racism—that is, as with CRT generally, the nature of white supremacy and the white-dominant culture. “Understanding racism as a tool to subordinate People of Color reveals its intent as an ideological function of white supremacy. White supremacy can be understood as a system of racial domination and exploitation where power and resources are unequally distributed to privilege whites and oppress People of Color.” Indeed, writes Huber, “One can be victimized by racism, despite the reality of whether or not any real differences exist.... [R]acism is defined as, *the assigning of values to real or imagined differences in order to justify white supremacy, to the beliefs of whites and at the expense of People of Color, and thereby defend the right of whites to dominance.*”<sup>88</sup> (Italics in the original)

Furthermore, in defining racist nativism, Huber declares: “Historically, perceptions of the native have been directly tied to definitions of whiteness. Beliefs in white superiority and historical amnesia have erased the histories of the indigenous communities that occupied the U.S. prior to the first white European settlers. Whites have been historically and legally deemed the native ‘founding fathers’ of the U.S. With this important connection between nativism and whiteness in mind, racist nativism is defined as, *the assigning of values to real and imagined differences in order to justify the superiority of the native, who is perceived to be white, over that of the non-native, who is perceived to be People and Immigrants of Color, and thereby defend the native’s right to dominance.*”<sup>89</sup>

Stefancic asserts that Latino/a CRT has been around for half a century or so. Its “progenitor was Rodolfo Acuna,” ... “who was the first scholar to reformulate American history to take account of U.S. colonization of land formerly held by Mexico and how this colonization affected Mexicans living in those territories. His thesis has proven as powerful for Latinos as the potent theories of Derrick Bell have been in understanding the dynamics of race for blacks.”<sup>90</sup>

Therefore, not only is the United States a white-dominant, systemically racist society oppressing all people of color, but the country’s very existence is illegitimate due to its colonization of Mexico’s land. Hence, the true natives are the indigenous Mexicans, not the whites who promote racist nativism.

Acuna’s 1972 book, *Occupied America*, opens: “Mexicans—Chicanos—in the United States today are an oppressed people. They are citizens, but their citizenship is second-class at best. They are exploited and manipulated by those with more power. And, sadly, many believe that the only way to get along in Anglo-America is to become ‘Americanized’ themselves. Awareness of their history—of their contributions and struggles, of the fact that they were not the ‘treacherous enemy’ that Anglo-American histories have said they were—can restore pride and a sense of heritage to a people who have been oppressed for so long. In short, awareness can help them to liberate themselves.”<sup>91</sup>

In other words, being the true natives, Mexicans and Chicanos ought not assimilate into an Anglo-American culture. The former are oppressed and the latter are colonialists.

But Acuna's dire assessment respecting the condition of the Mexican population in the United States cannot explain why "Mexico is the top origin country of the U.S. immigrant population. In 2018, roughly 11.2 million immigrants living in the U.S. were from there, accounting for 25% of all U.S. immigrants."<sup>92</sup> Why would millions of Mexican citizens leave their home country to migrate, both legally and illegally, to America, in some cases risking life and limb, only to be "exploited and manipulated"? The fact is that they are escaping oppression, poverty, crime, and corruption in their own countries for a better life in the United States.

In their book, *Navigating Borders—Critical Race Theory Research and Counter History of Undocumented Americans*, University of Arizona professor Ricardo Castro-Salazar and UK-Durham University professor Carl Bagley proclaim that "[s]cholars have repeatedly pointed out that U.S. people and their leaders tend to be 'chronic ignorers of history.' This amnesia becomes damaging when it forms the boundaries of inclusiveness in modern narratives of U.S. identity and citizenship. The quotidian narratives of history and current events in the United States overlook that 'America' encompasses two continents and includes Argentines, Brazilians, Canadians, Colombians, Cubans, Dominicans, Guatemalans, Haitians, Jamaicans, Mexicans, Salvadorians, Venezuelans, and many other nations traveled by European explorers in the 1500s. In a proclivity for simplification and abbreviation, many U.S. people, *United Statesians*,... have forgotten that the United States is *of* America and not the other way around. The United States is located in Northern America but has shaped the realities of Central and South American nations."<sup>93</sup>

Thus, the argument goes, America is bigger than the United States, encompassing two continents, and the United States and its majority-white, European-linked population—namely, "United Statesians"—are the true trespassers. Indeed, "Mexican-origin Americans" have a greater claim to United States territory than "American Anglo-Protestants," according to Castro-Salazar and Bagley. They write: "Ironically, undocumented Americans of Mexican origin have a double American identity (United Statesian and Mexican) and possess a stronger historical connection with the American continent than the majority population in the U.S. People of Mexican origin, meaning those with a

blend of indigenous and European heritage, lived in the lands that are now the Southwestern United States centuries before U.S. expansionism dispossessed Mexico of half of its territory. Those who perceive Mexican-origin Americans as a threat to American ‘Anglo-Protestant identity’ do not overlook this; they fear that ‘No other immigrant group in U.S. history has asserted or could assert a historical claim to U.S. territory. Mexican and Mexican-Americans can and do make the claim.’”<sup>94</sup>

In applying CRT to the discussion about what Castro-Salazar and Bagley define as “undocumented Americans of Mexican origin,” they argue that CRT holds that “all knowledge is historical, and, therefore, biased and subjective. Their Critical Theory of society rejected any claim to objective knowledge and focused on uncovering the oppressive mechanisms of society. The purpose was to understand such mechanisms in order to develop conditions that would allow the oppressed to free themselves.”<sup>95</sup>

Therefore, illegal aliens are neither illegal nor aliens, and are actually the victims of “internal colonialism”—that is, “[t]he conquered group is dominated and controlled through various means, including violence and more subtle attacks on the subordinated group’s culture, language, religion, and history.”<sup>96</sup> Consequently, there is opposition and resistance to assimilation into the American culture by a host of racial and ethnic activists—the culture of Anglo-Protestant identity—or the white-dominant culture, for which they are taught to have complete and passionate contempt.

And what of Latino Americans who reject this ideological fanaticism? Again, echoing Marcuse and his “repressive tolerance” theory, Castro-Salazar and Bagley claim that “[t]he phenomenon becomes more complex when the colonized internalize the colonialist mentality and become part of the colonizing majority. In a pluralist capitalist democracy, those who have internalized the oppressor’s mentality can become part of the colonizing structure and support many of its actions...”<sup>97</sup> Thus, Mexican-Americans and other immigrants who assimilate into American society have been snookered by or sold out to the “colonizing white majority.”

Castro-Salazar and Bagley declare: “Internal colonialism is a form of inegalitarian pluralism where different ethnicities and cultures coexist, but ethnic relations traditionally follow an assimilation model, like in the United States. It is also a form of racism where the dominant culture views the colonized ethnicities and cultures as alien and inferior, as in the case of Native-, African-, Asian-, and Mexican-Americans in the U.S. Internal colonialism exists in the United States with or without the intention of individuals and can be found in all dimensions of life.... Internal colonialism contradicts the notion of an integrated and democratic society where, some researchers argue, political and economic inequalities are not temporary, but necessary for the industrial, capitalist system. The dominant society does not see such contradiction, which perpetuates their privileges....”<sup>98</sup>

Hence, according to Castro-Salazar and Bagley, assimilation and capitalism promote targeted oppression and inequality against minorities by the supposedly white-dominated society.

As with his embrace of CRT, soon after his swearing in, Biden signed five executive actions unilaterally changing immigration policy, all of which were sympathetic to, and supportive of the “Latina/o Critical Race Theory” (LatCrit) movement. Among other things, he ended construction of the border wall (later, continuing construction of a mere 13.5 miles), ended the Trump interior enforcement policies, instituted a hundred-day deportation moratorium, and proposed amnesty for individuals without legal status.<sup>99</sup> Moreover, Biden ended agreements the Trump administration had secured with Mexico and other Central American countries to send asylum seekers who arrived at the U.S.-Mexico border to one of three Central American countries. The result, as reported even by the Biden-supportive *Washington Post*: “[T]he new president began tearing down some of the guardrails [instituted by the Trump administration]. [Biden] issued five immigration executive orders on Inauguration Day alone and promised an immigration policy far more humane and welcoming than that of his predecessor. His administration also began allowing unaccompanied minors into the country, a marked departure from the Trump administration’s approach.... The situation at the border—which Biden and his advisers steadfastly refuse to call a crisis—is the result of an

administration that was forewarned of the coming surge, yet still ill-prepared and lacking the capacity to deal with it. Administration officials have been plagued by muddled messaging, sometimes making appeals that seem directed more at liberal activists than the migrants they need to dissuade from coming to the country.”<sup>100</sup>

Biden and his transition team were warned early on by federal immigration officials that their initiatives would overwhelm the border and the immigration systems, but Biden ignored them. The *Post* report: “During the transition period, career officials at U.S. Customs and Border Protection tried to issue sober alarms to the Biden team about the likelihood of a crisis at the border that could quickly overwhelm the nation’s capacity. Senior [Customs and Border Patrol] CBP officials delivered Zoom briefings to the Biden transition team that included modeling projections showing a steep increase in the arrival of unaccompanied minors if Trump’s policies were suddenly lifted, according to one current and two former Department of Homeland Security officials.”<sup>101</sup>

What was missing from this report was that Biden’s decisions were in line with the LatCrit movement’s view of immigration, to which he was appealing. Overwhelming the immigration system and border security forced significant numbers of CBP officials from their border enforcement duties and had the effect of creating an open, unmanned border. Untold thousands of immigrants were released into our country without even receiving court dates for asylum hearings and others had the coronavirus, among other diseases. Therefore, rather than defund CBP, a policy pushed by Marxists within the Democratic Party, and LatCrit activists, but which would not have received sufficient votes in Congress, the Biden administration simply changed the immigration and border dynamics by executive fiat.

Alas, as LatCrit preaches, there really is no such thing as United States sovereignty because America is bigger than just the United States and, besides, “United Statesians” are the real interlopers. Those crossing the border by the hundreds of thousands are the actual indigenous Americans. Moreover, the Democratic Party hopes to benefit from embracing the movement as it counts on wave after wave of illegal aliens, and subsequent grants of amnesty, as one of

the ways in which it seeks a permanent hold on power. As Pew Research has reported, Latino voters favor the Democratic Party by a significant margin.<sup>102</sup>

Jim Clifton, chairman and CEO of Gallup, asks: “Here are questions every leader should be able to answer regardless of their politics: How many more people are coming to the southern border? And what is the plan? There are 33 countries in Latin America and the Caribbean. Roughly 450 million adults live in the region. Gallup asked them if they would like to move to another country permanently if they could. A whopping 27% said ‘yes.’ This means roughly 120 million would like to migrate somewhere. Gallup then asked them where they would like to move. Of those who want to leave their country *permanently*, 35%—or 42 million—said they want to go to the United States. Seekers of citizenship or asylum are watching to determine exactly when and how is the best time to make their move. In addition to finding a solution for the thousands of migrants currently at the border, let’s include the bigger, harder question—what about all of those who would like to come? What is the message to them? What is the 10-year plan? 330 million U.S. citizens are wondering. So are 42 million Latin Americans.”<sup>103</sup>

The plan is linked to the CT Marxist ideology—that is, the more migrants the better, continue to overwhelm and collapse the system, change the nation’s politics, demographics, and citizenry, and ultimately transform the nature of the governing system. And by no means support or accept assimilation. After all, balkanization and tribalization are certain to destroy any country.

Another of the intersectional movements that have also grown into powerful political forces involves gender—Critical Gender Theory. As with other CT movements, at the heart of this movement is the claim that the dominant society and culture, which see gender through the lens of a biological, empirical, scientific, and normative fact, have been oppressing the LGBTQ+ communities, which see gender as a social construct—where the dominant beliefs are simply the viewpoints and traditions of the privileged status quo at a given point in time. Therefore, virtually all traditional gender and sexual binary distinctions and related moral beliefs are considered oppressive, bigoted, and unjust.

Moreover, a distinction has been developed over the last several decades between “sex” and “gender,” which historically were interchangeable in



understanding and use. But no more. As Scott Yenor, professor of political science at Boise State University, writes: “Many Americans today have accepted what seemed inconceivable just a generation ago: that gender is artificial, is socially constructed, and can be chosen freely by all individuals. This notion—that biological sex can be willfully separated from gender—originated in the arguments of influential radical feminists writing from the 1950s through the 1970s. The premises of their theories, in turn, have ushered in the new world of transgenderism. Yesterday’s shocking theory has become today’s accepted norm, with more changes to come. Yet whether this new world will prove to be fit for human flourishing remains to be seen.” Yenor explains that nowadays, “[h]uman identity is not determined by one’s biology, genes, or upbringing; it is a product of how people conceive of themselves. Human beings are, on this view, unsexed persons caught in a body of one sex or another without any need to follow previous gender scripts. ‘No more vivid example exists,’ writes the philosopher Roger Scruton, ‘of the human determination to triumph over biological destiny, in the interests of a moral idea.’”<sup>104</sup>

Indeed, we are told, sex and gender orientation are more complicated than once thought. “‘People often are unaware of the biological complexity of sex and gender,’ says Dr. Eric Vilain, director of the Center for Gender-Based Biology at UCLA, where he studies the genetics of sexual development and sex differences. ‘People tend to define sex in a binary way—either wholly male or wholly female—based on physical appearance or by which sex chromosomes an individual carries. But while sex and gender may seem dichotomous, there are in reality many intermediates.’”<sup>105</sup>

Academia, corporations, the media, and even the House of Representatives are adopting speech codes that eliminate pronoun distinctions between males and females. In the House “‘He’ or ‘She’ would become ‘Member,’ ‘Delegate’ or ‘Resident Commissioner.’ And ‘father’ and ‘mother’ would become ‘parent’ while ‘brother’ and ‘sister’ would be ‘sibling.’”<sup>106</sup> Yet, Nancy Pelosi proudly and often reminds us, as do the media, that she is the first *female* speaker of the House.

ABC News reports that Facebook not only allows users to select from among “him,” “her,” or “their,” but also from fifty-eight additional gender options:

“Agender, Androgyne, Androgynous, Bigender, Cis, Cisgender, Cis Female, Cis Male, Cis Man, Cis Woman, Cisgender Female, Cisgender Male, Cisgender Man, Cisgender Woman, Female to Male, FTM, Gender Fluid, Gender Nonconforming, Gender Questioning, Gender Variant, Genderqueer, Intersex, Male to Female, MTF, Neither, Neutrois, Non-binary, Other, Pangender, Trans, Trans\*, Trans Female, Trans\* Female, Trans Male, Trans\* Male, Trans Man, Trans\* Man, Trans Person, Trans\* Person, Trans Woman, Trans\* Woman, Transfeminine, Transgender, Transgender Female, Transgender Male, Transgender Man, Transgender Person, Transgender Woman, Transmasculine, Transsexual, Transsexual Female, Transsexual Male, Transsexual Man, Transsexual Person, Transsexual Woman, and Two-Spirit.”<sup>107</sup> And Facebook is hardly alone.

As with CRT and LatCrit, a few hours after his inauguration, Biden signed an executive order reinstating an Obama-era critical gender policy, which states, in part: “All persons should receive equal treatment under the law, no matter their gender identity or sexual orientation. These principles are reflected in the Constitution, which promises equal protection of the laws. These principles are also enshrined in our Nation’s anti-discrimination laws, among them Title VII of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, as amended (42 U.S.C. 2000e et seq.).”<sup>108</sup>

But the Civil Rights Act of 1964 says nothing about “gender identity” or “sexual orientation.” It prohibits discrimination in public accommodations and federally funded programs, and bans employment discrimination on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin. Therefore, it is already a violation of federal law to discriminate based on someone’s sex.

In fact, “Biden is... explicitly laying out his administration’s plans for instituting transgender ideology in every sphere of life from schools, locker rooms, and sports teams, to health care and homeless shelters,” wrote *National Review*’s editors. Moreover, “[t]he executive order instructs ‘the head of each agency’ to review all existing regulations where a prohibition on ‘sex discrimination’ appears, and to apply the ‘prohibitions on sex discrimination on the basis of gender identity or sexual orientation’ from the Supreme Court’s ruling last summer in *Bostock v. Clayton County*. This is overreach, plain and simple. In *Bostock*, the court explicitly restricted its decision to Title VII, stating

that ‘other policies and practices,’ such as ‘bathrooms, locker rooms, or anything else of the kind,’ were ‘questions for future cases.’ By contrast, the executive order takes *Bostock*’s fallacious reasoning—that discrimination on the basis of ‘gender identity’ necessarily ‘entails discrimination on the basis of sex’—and applies it to ‘any other statute or regulation that prohibits sex discrimination.’”<sup>109</sup>

In addition, the Biden Education Department switched sides in two lawsuits before the Supreme Court, reversing the Trump administration’s support for the female athletes—one in Connecticut and another in Idaho—where the female high school athletes sued to prevent biologically male athletes who identify as female from competing in girls’ sports. Thus, Critical Gender Theory trumped both science and the integrity of female high school sports.

In another executive order, Biden “established a White House Gender Policy Council (Council) within the Executive Office of the President,” with broad and far-reaching authority. It is granted sweeping power to “coordinate Federal Government efforts to advance gender equity and equality.” Again, equality and equity are different things. The pursuit of equity, which is a result or end, often requires the unequal treatment of an individual or group to achieve. For example, the destruction of biological girls’ high school sports to promote “equity” for biological males identifying as females. Nonetheless, the commission is directed to enforce the objectives of the critical gender theory movement as it applies to gender identity and sexual orientation.<sup>110</sup>

Do these Biden administration directives and actions apply to America’s children? According to the Human Rights Campaign, yes. On its website, in a section titled “Transgender Children and Youth: Understanding the Basics,” the group states:

Children are not born knowing what it means to be a boy or a girl; they learn it from their parents, older children and others around them. This learning process begins early. As soon as a doctor or other healthcare provider declares—based on observing the newborn’s external sex organs—‘it’s a boy’ or ‘it’s a girl,’ the world around a child begins to teach these lessons. Whether it’s the sorting of blue clothes and pink clothes, ‘boys’

toys' and 'girls' toys' or telling young girls they're 'pretty' and boys they're 'strong.' It continues into puberty and adulthood as social expectations of masculine and feminine expression and behavior often become more rigid. But gender does not simply exist in those binary terms; gender is more of a spectrum, with all individuals expressing and identifying with varying degrees of both masculinity and femininity. Transgender people identify along this spectrum, but also identify as a gender that is different than the one they were assigned at birth."<sup>111</sup>

Michelle Cretella, M.D., and executive director of the American College of Pediatricians, a national organization of pediatricians and other health care professionals dedicated to the health and well-being of children, disagrees. "[T]ransgender ideology is not just infecting our laws. It is intruding into the lives of the most innocent among us—children—and with the apparent growing support of the professional medical community."<sup>112</sup> She adds: "Today's institutions that promote transition affirmation are pushing children to impersonate the opposite sex, sending many of them down the path of puberty blockers, sterilization, the removal of healthy body parts, and untold psychological damage."<sup>113</sup>

What does this have to do with Marxism? First, recall Marx's war on the nuclear family. As described by the Wiley Online Library, "Marxist feminism is a species of feminist theory and politics that takes its theoretical bearings from Marxism, notably the criticism of capitalism as a set of structures, practices, institutions, incentives, and sensibilities that promote the exploitation of labor, the alienation of human beings, and the debasement of freedom. For Marxist feminists, empowerment and equality for women cannot be achieved within the framework of capitalism. Marxist feminism is reluctant to treat 'women' as a stand-alone group with similar interests and aspirations. Marxist feminism thus distinguishes itself from other modes of feminist thought and politics by attending critically and systematically to the economic organization of societies, including stratification along the lines of class; by refusing to accord the category of 'women' separate and special status, without regard to class; by its

commitment to the overthrow of capitalism; and by its allegiance to working-class and impoverished women.”<sup>114</sup>

The International Socialism website explains, in part: “[T]he development of the forces and relations of production shaped, and continued to do so in different ways, the impact that biology had on the position of women and the development of women’s oppression. This connection between productive forces and family structure is not mechanical—each new formation builds on what came before and is impacted also by battles between contending classes.”... “Historical materialism emphasizes the particular historical circumstances in which the oppression of women, and later of trans people, emerged and developed. It allows us to look at the interplay between the biological and the social. The point is not to ask why trans people exist but to defend unconditionally their right to their gender identity.”<sup>115</sup>

Laura Miles, author of the book *Transgender Resistance: Socialism and the Fight for Trans Liberation*, and contributor to the *Socialist Review*, “locates the origins of trans oppression in the enforcement of a greater rigidity of gender roles within the emergent nuclear family that arose around the time of another great transformation in productive forces—the industrial revolution. Women and children were pulled into the new factories alongside men, working in horrific conditions that resulted in a huge rise in infant mortality. The ruling class needed a reliable supply of future labor power, and some parts of the ruling class saw that this was under threat.”<sup>116</sup>

Even if one does not accept a direct link or parallel to *classical* Marxist historical materialism and class theory, as with other CT movements, it need not be. The movements are said to be developed from or tailored after Marxist ideology. Indeed, that was the basis of Marcuse’s adaption.

I would be remiss if I did not at least touch on the fact that children are being drawn into these movements and being programmed. Writing in the *Washington Post*, Natalie Jesionka declares that “[i]n the year of Black Lives Matter and #MeToo, many parents are wondering when the right time is to talk to their children about social justice. Experts say it’s never too early, and a new wave of tools and resources can help start the conversation. You can enroll in music class... that develops understanding of gender and personhood. A drag

queen story time will soon be a television show. And there are more and more children's books that discuss intersectionality and broaden representation, plus flashcards and short videos that teach parent and toddler alike anti-racism ideas."<sup>117</sup> "Leigh Wilton and Jessica Sullivan, Skidmore College psychology professors who study race and social interaction, say that children develop implicit bias as early as 3 months old and at 4 years old are categorizing and developing stereotypes."<sup>118</sup>

With respect to Critical Gender Theory, Andrea Jones and Emilie Kao, in a Heritage Foundation essay titled "Sexual Ideology Indoctrination: The Equality Act's Impact on School Curriculum and Parental Rights," explain: "In recent years, activist groups have strengthened pressures on legislators and educators to require the teaching of radical Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, and Transgender ideology in schools. They argue that inclusion and non-discrimination toward students who identify as gay or transgender require radical revision of curricula. Schools across the country and around the world have attempted to implement curricula that teach students the nonscientific belief that gender is fluid and subjective, and that traditional beliefs about marriage and family are rooted in bigotry."<sup>119</sup>

And the activism has reached into classrooms in an increasing number of states: "Around the country, five states and the District of Columbia have begun mandating SOGI [sexual orientation and gender identity] curricula in sex education and history, while 10 others have explicitly prohibited it. If Congress enacts a federal law ['The Equality Act'], it would usurp the states' authority on the issue and undermine parental rights."<sup>120</sup>

Jones and Kao point out that the powerful "Human Rights Campaign, a leading activist organization, already asserts that LGBT students 'have been denied equal access to educational opportunities in schools in every part of our nation' and explicitly draws comparisons to the Civil Rights Act's protections for characteristics such as race, sex, and national origin."<sup>121</sup>

I wish to make clear that I believe generally in the motto "Live and let live." That said, many of its activists are outspoken advocates of CT and are making escalating demands on the imposition of their beliefs on the rest of society and the culture, including in classrooms and respecting ever younger children, the

United States armed forces, etc., by the force of government and law, if need be. As such, this is less about tolerance and more about indoctrination, obedience, and the widespread institution of an affirmative agenda. Moreover, the intersectional connection with other CT movements, and their Marxist roots, is undeniable.

As should be clear, the Critical Theory movement, born and developed by German Marxists, chief among them the late Herbert Marcuse, is more influential in the Oval Office, the halls of Congress, university and college classrooms, public schools, corporate boardrooms, the media, Big Tech, and the entertainment industry than the genius and works of Aristotle, Cicero, John Locke, Montesquieu, Adam Smith, John Adams, Thomas Jefferson, James Madison, and so many others who contributed mightily to a civil and humane world. It is increasingly influential throughout the culture, too often at the cost of Judeo-Christian values and the lessons of the Age of the Enlightenment, which undergird the most tolerant, free, and beneficent societies—especially the United States. Instead, the intersectional network of a seemingly endless list of oppressed individuals and groups are obsessively committed to transforming and overthrowing the American republic and society—that is, the dominant culture and its supposedly repressive institutions—and are tearing this country apart. Of course, this is not to say that every individual or group associated with these movements or their professed purposes is knowingly part of such a rebellion or revolution. No doubt many are unfamiliar with the ultimate objectives and motivations of the fanatical leaders, organizers, and activists among them. Nonetheless, they are contributing to CT's extremely destructive and revolutionary purposes and ends.

## CHAPTER FIVE

---

# “CLIMATE CHANGE” FANATICISM

Capitalism has been explained in many ways by many brilliant scholars and philosophers. But a useful and concise definition, workable for the purposes of this chapter, is provided by economist George Reisman, professor emeritus of Economics at Pepperdine University and author.

Reisman explains in his book *Capitalism*: “Economic activity and the development of economic institutions do not take place in a vacuum. They are profoundly influenced by the fundamental philosophical convictions people hold. Specifically, the development of capitalist institutions and the elevation of the level of production to the standard it has reached over the last two centuries presuppose the acceptance of a *this-worldly, pro-reason philosophy*. Indeed, in their essential development, the institutions of capitalism and the economic progress that results represent the implementation of *man’s right to life*.... Capitalism is the economic system that develops insofar as people are free to exercise their right to life and choose to exercise it... [I]ts institutions represent, in effect, a self-expanded power of human reason to serve human life. The growing abundance of goods that results is the material means by which people further, fulfill, and enjoy their lives. The philosophical requirements of capitalism are identical with the philosophical requirements of the recognition and implementation of man’s right to life.”<sup>1</sup>

Moreover, as F. A. Hayek, economist, social theorist, philosopher, professor, and 1974 Nobel Prize winner in economics, explained in his book *The Fatal*



*Conceit—The Errors of Socialism*, while people and institutions in capitalist economies apply reason to decision-making that affects them directly, “[t]o understand our civilization, one must appreciate that the extended order results not from human design or intention but spontaneously: it arose from unintentionally conforming to certain traditional and largely *moral* practices, many of which men tend to dislike, whose significance they usually fail to understand, whose validity they cannot prove, and which have nonetheless fairly rapidly spread by means of evolutionary selection.... This process is perhaps the least appreciated facet of human evolution.... The dispute between the market order and socialism would destroy much of present humankind and impoverish much of the rest.... [W]e generate and garner greater knowledge and wealth than could ever be obtained or utilized in a centrally-directed economy whose adherents claim to proceed strictly in accord with ‘reason.’ Thus socialist aims and programs are factually impossible to achieve or execute; and they also happen... to be logically impossible.”<sup>2</sup>

Furthermore, Milton Friedman, economist, philosopher, professor, and 1976 Nobel Prize winner in economics, describes the inextricable link between economic and political freedom. “It is widely believed that politics and economics are separate and largely unconnected; that individual freedom is a political problem and material welfare an economic problem; and that any kind of political arrangements can be combined with any kind of economic arrangements. The chief contemporary manifestation of this idea is the advocacy of ‘democratic socialism...’” Friedman condemns such a view as a “delusion.” “[T]here is an intimate connection between economics and politics, that only certain combinations of political economic arrangements are possible, and that in particular, a society which is socialistic cannot also be democratic, in the sense of guaranteeing individual freedom. Economic arrangements play a dual role in the promotion of a free society. On the one hand, freedom in economic arrangements is itself a component of freedom broadly understood, so economic freedom is an end in itself. In the second place, economic freedom is also an indispensable means towards the achievement of political freedom.”<sup>3</sup> “Viewed as a means to the end of political freedom, economic arrangements are important because of their effect on the concentration or dispersion of power. The kind of

economic organization that provides economic freedom directly, namely, competitive capitalism, also promotes political freedom because it separates economic power from political power and in this way enables the one to offset the other.”<sup>4</sup> “History suggests that capitalism is a necessary condition of political freedom.” It is, of course, also possible “to have economic arrangements that are fundamentally capitalist and political arrangements that are not free.”<sup>5</sup>

In addition to the freedom Americans enjoy, albeit increasingly threatened by, among other things, the movements discussed in this book, capitalism has created a standard of living for the vast majority of the people unparalleled in any other society, ancient or present. It is important to take stock of the vast benefits to human life produced by this remarkable economic system. Indeed, the fact that we need reminding underscores its pervasiveness. In this regard, Reisman writes that the “industrialized civilization has produced the greatest abundance and variety of food in the history of the world, and has created the storage and transportation systems required to bring it to everyone. This same industrialized civilization has produced the greatest abundance of clothing and shoes, and of housing, in the history of the world. And while some people in countries may be hungry or homeless... it is certain that no one in the industrialized countries needs to be hungry or homeless. Industrial civilization has also produced the iron and steel pipe, the chemical purification and pumping systems, and the boilers, that enable everyone to have instant access to safe drinking water, hot or cold, every minute of the day. It has produced the sewage systems and the automobiles that have removed the filth of human and animal waste from the streets of cities and towns. It has produced the vaccines, anesthetics, antibiotics, and all the other ‘wonder drugs’ of modern times, along with all kinds of new and improved diagnostic and surgical equipment. It is such accomplishments in the foundations of public health and medicine, along with the improved nutrition, clothing, and shelter, that have put an end to plagues and radically reduced the incidence of almost every type of disease.”<sup>6</sup>

Moreover, “[a]s the result of industrialized civilization,” writes George Reisman, “not only do billions more people survive, but in the advanced countries, they do so on a level far exceeding that of kings and emperors in all previous ages—on a level that just a few generations ago would have been

regarded as possible only in a world of science fiction. With the turn of a key, the push of a pedal, and the touch of a steering wheel, they drive along highways in wondrous machines at sixty miles an hour. With the flick of a switch, they light a room in the middle of darkness. With the touch of a button, they watch events taking place ten thousand miles away. With the touch of a few other buttons, they talk to other people across town or across the world. They even fly through the air at six hundred miles per hour, forty thousand feet up, watching movies and sipping martinis in air-conditioned comfort as they do so. In the United States, most people have all this, and spacious homes or apartments, carpeted heating, air conditioning, refrigerators, freezers, and gas or electric stoves, and also personal libraries of hundreds of books, records, compact disks, and tape recordings; they can have all this, as well as long life and good health—as the result of working forty hours a week.”<sup>7</sup>

Conversely, the so-called environmental movement of the 1970s has devolved into another avenue to attack American constitutional republicanism and, of course, capitalism. From clean air and clear water, to global cooling/warming/climate change, the goal of many of the leading intellectuals behind this effort has been the introduction of Marxist thinking and objectives through the guise of environmentalism, as the Green New Deal, which promotes economic regression, radical egalitarianism, and autocratic rule. But the movement has expanded well beyond that, to include virtually every programmatic and agenda-driven goal of American Marxism, which has been embraced to one degree or another by the Democratic Party, among others. Moreover, the environmental movement has developed numerous areas of overlap with the other Marxist-centric ideologies and movements, such as Critical Race Theory via environmental justice, which declares the existence of environmental racism targeting minority communities. Some of the movement’s masterminds insist that Marxism does not go far enough in establishing their degrowth utopianism as they imagine life in a perpetual state of nature, where productivity, growth, and material acquisition are toxic to the human spirit. Of course, in the end, it all involves a form of repression and autocracy.

At the core of this mind-numbing amalgamated Marxist-centric or Marxist-like crusade is the “degrowth movement.” Mankind consumes and produces too

much, and the blame resides with capitalism and America. Again, there are a variety of movements within movements targeting one or another approach, but there are basic tenets. The best way to explain this is to expose what certain of its leading advocates have to say.

In their essay, “What Is Degrowth—From an Activist Slogan to a Social Movement,” leading degrowthers Federico Demaria, Francois Schneider, Filka Sekulova, and Joan Martin-Alier write that “[d]egrowth was launched in the beginning of the 21st century as a project of voluntary societal shrinking of production and consumption aimed at social and ecological sustainability. It quickly became a slogan against economic growth and developed into a social movement.... Unlike sustainable development, which is a concept based on false consensus, degrowth does not aspire to be adopted as a common goal by the United Nations, the OECD [Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development] or the European Commission. The idea of ‘socially sustainable degrowth,’ or simply degrowth, was born as a proposal for radical change. The contemporary context of neo-liberal capitalism appears as a post-political condition, meaning a political formation that forecloses the political and prevents the politicization of particular demands. Within this context, degrowth is an attempt to re-politicize the debate on much needed socio-ecological transformation, affirming dissidence with the current world representations and search for alternative ones.... Degrowth... challenges the ideas of ‘green growth’ or ‘green economy’ and the associated belief in economic growth as a desirable path in political agendas.... Degrowth is not just an economic concept. [I]t is a frame constituted by a large array of concerns, goals, strategies and actions. As a result, degrowth has now become a confluence point where streams of critical ideas and political action converge.”<sup>8</sup>

Hence, the goal is to reverse the massive economic progress resulting from, among other things, the Industrial Revolution, which created a huge, vibrant middle class and infinite technological, scientific, and medical advancements that have overwhelmingly improved the human condition.

The quartet continues: “Degrowth has evolved into an interpretative frame for a social movement, understood as the mechanism through which actors engage in a collective action. For instance, anti-car and anti-advertising activists,

cyclists and pedestrian rights campaigners, partisans of organic agriculture, critics of urban sprawl, and promoters of solar energy and local currencies have started seeing degrowth as an appropriate common representative frame for their world view.”<sup>9</sup>

The social movement envisioned by these utopians would drag America into a regressive, impoverished society with widespread economic and social dislocation—that is, a pre-industrialized environment where progress comes to an end, for that is the goal. Anti-car (mobility), anti-advertising (speech), anti-modern agricultural (abundant food), anti-fossil fuel (abundant energy), etc. One wonders, what of scientific and medical advances? How would they be developed and broadly applied for the benefit of the general population? Like Marxism generally, this movement is based on theories and abstractions that, when forcibly applied in the real world, particularly in a widely successful and advanced society, have a result that is disastrous for the population. Moreover, experience shows that for those among them who are famous, wealthy, and/or powerful, they will continue to luxuriate in a lifestyle created by capitalism.

“Degrowth is [also] an interpretative frame diagnosis that disparate social phenomena such as the social and environmental crises are related to economic growth,” write the foursome. “Degrowth actors are thus ‘signifying agents’ engaged in the production of alternative and contentious meanings which differ from the ones defended by the mainstream.... The prognosis, usually characterized by a strong utopian dimension, seeks solutions and hypothesizes new social patterns. Beyond practical goals, this process opens new spaces and prospects for action. Strategies associated with the prognosis tend to be multiple. In terms of approaches, these can be alternatives building, opposition research, and in relation to capitalism, they can be ‘anti-capitalist,’ post-capitalist,’ and ‘despite capitalism.’”<sup>10</sup>

And there you have it. For many of the “environmental” intellectuals behind this amorphous yet widespread movement, the goal is to spawn myriad sub-movements aimed at taking down the capitalist system. As I explained in 2015 in *Plunder and Deceit*, among other things, “[t]he degrowthers seek to eliminate carbon sources of energy and redistribute wealth according to terms they consider equitable. They reject the traditional economic reality that

acknowledges growth as improving living conditions generally but especially for the impoverished. They embrace ‘less competition, large scale redistribution, sharing and reduction of excessive incomes and wealth.’ Degrowthers want to engage in policies that will set ‘a maximum income, or maximum wealth, to weaken envy as a motor of consumerism, and opening borders (“no-border”) to reduce means to keep inequality between rich and poor countries.’ And they demand reparations by supporting a ‘concept of ecological debt, or the demand that the Global North pays for past and present colonial exploitation of the Global South.’”<sup>11</sup> The degrowthers also demand that government establish a living wage and reduce the workweek to twenty hours.<sup>12</sup>

Serge Latouche, a French emeritus professor of economics at the University of Paris-Sud, is among the leading degrowthers. “In the 1970s, Serge Latouche spent several years in South Africa, where he conducted extensive research on traditional Marxism, where he formed his own ideology based on ‘progresses and development.’ He is among the pioneers of the degrowth theory.”<sup>13</sup> Latouche emphasizes a utopian-type doctrine in which even Marxism fails to make the grade. In *Farewell to Growth*, he declared: “We do not dwell on a specific critique of capitalism because it seems to us that there is no point in stating the obvious. That critique was, for the most part, put forward by Karl Marx. And yet a critique of capitalism is not enough: we also need a critique of any growth society. And that is precisely what Marx fails to provide. A critique of the growth society implies a critique of capitalism, but the converse is not necessarily true. Capitalism, neo-liberal or otherwise, and productivist socialism are both variants on the same project for a growth society based upon the development of the productive forces, which will supposedly facilitate humanity’s march in the direction of progress.”<sup>14</sup>

In other words, even Marx’s ideological approach, which does not reject the creation of wealth but attacks the methods of production and distribution, misses the mark. While eliminating capitalism and promoting redistribution and egalitarianism are important objectives, apparently vigorous economic production and materialism itself are the bigger problems.

Latouche writes that “[b]ecause it cannot integrate ecological constraints, the Marxist critique of modernity remains terribly ambiguous. The capitalist economy is criticized and denounced, but the growth of the forces it unleashes is described as ‘productive’ (even though they are as destructive as they are productive). Ultimately, growth, seen in terms of the production/jobs/consumption trio, is credited with every, or almost every, virtue, even though, when seen in terms of accumulation of capital, it is held responsible for every scourge.... De-growth is fundamentally anti-capitalist. Not so much because it denounces the contradictions and ecological and social limitations of capitalism as because it challenges its ‘spirit.’... A generalized capitalism cannot but destroy the planet in the same way that it is destroying society and anything else that is collective.”<sup>15</sup>

In this, of course, Latouche does point to a significant flaw in Marxism—that is, despite his attacks on capitalism, Marx does not abandon the growth and productivity goals inherent in capitalism. Meanwhile, for Latouche, the obvious absurdity of his radicalism is the claim or inference that economic regression can somehow occur without human regression, and that the populace will somehow willingly participate in creating its own economic and lifestyle degradation.

Latouche writes further: “More so than ever before, development is sacrificing populations and their concrete, local well-being on the altar of an abstract, deterritorialized well-being. The sacrifice is made to honor a mythical and disembodied people, and it works, of course, to the advantage of ‘the developers’ (transactional companies, politicians, technocrats and mafias). Growth is now a profitable business only if the costs are borne by nature, future generations, consumers’ health, wage earners’ working conditions and, above all, the countries of the South. That is why we have to abandon the idea of growth.... All modern regimes have been productivist: republics, dictatorships, authoritarian systems, no matter whether their governments were of the right or the left, and no matter whether they were liberal, socialist, populist, social-liberal, social-democratic, centrist, radical or communist. They all assumed that economic growth was the unquestionable cornerstone of their systems. The change of direction that is needed is not one that can be resolved merely by an election that brings in a new government or votes in a new majority. What is

needed is much more radical: a cultural revolution, nothing more and nothing less, that re-establishes politics on a new basis.... The de-growth project is therefore a utopia, or in other words a source of hope and dreams. Far from representing a flight into fantasy, it is an attempt to explore the objective possibility of implementation.”<sup>16</sup>

Latouche and his ilk refer to this as “concrete utopianism.” Of course, there is nothing concrete about it. Indeed, he says no matter the governing regime, they are all “productivist.” How large populations of people are to be fed, an immensely complex commercial enterprise from field to table, let alone have access to medical treatments and innovations, such as lifesaving vaccines and treatments, is left mostly unsaid. And when it is rarely addressed, it is done so in an abstract and even sophomoric way.

Nonetheless, try as Latouche might, the inspiration behind this ecototalitarian movement is, for innumerable activists, undeniably Marxism. In his essay “Urban Sprawl, Climate Change, Oil Depletion, and Eco-Marxism,” University of Miami political science professor George A. Gonzalez writes: “The U.S. urban zones are the most sprawled in the world.... Urban sprawl can only be fully comprehended within the political economy framework developed by Karl Marx. Marx’s concepts of value and rent are indispensable to understanding the profligate use of fossil fuels—vis-à-vis urban sprawl—that has significantly contributed to oil depletion and to the recent global warming trend. This argument is consistent with the eco-Marxist contention that the writings of Marx and Frederick Engels contain a thorough ecological critique of capitalism.”<sup>17</sup>

Thus, for Gonzalez, Marx’s ideological writings provide a “thorough ecological critique of capitalism.” For Latouche, they are utterly void of ecological considerations and adopt capitalist goals related to production and growth. Yet, for both the enemy is economic progress.

“Urban sprawl,” writes Gonzalez, “was deployed in the United States during the 1930s as a means of reviving U.S. capitalism from the Great Depression. The sprawling of urban zones greatly increased the need for automobiles and other consumer durables. This use of urban sprawl to increase economic demand is consistent with Marx’s argument that demand within capitalism is malleable and



is geared toward increasing the consumption of goods and services produced through social labor. The exploitation of social labor is the basis of capitalist wealth.”<sup>18</sup>

One wonders, what evil mastermind was behind the “deployment” of “urban sprawl.” The large movement of individuals from farms to the cities, as well as the movement of immigrants to cities, was not about “deploying” people to save capitalism. People moved to population centers, thereby further increasing the population of cities, out of economic necessity—that is, to find jobs, to start businesses, to live among similar ethnic groups, and for scores of other self-interested and understandable reasons. It had nothing to do with “deploying” people and resources.

And there can be no doubt whatsoever that this movement has as its purpose to abolish or cripple the capitalist economic system and, by necessity, constitutional republicanism and its emphasis on individualism and private property rights. For example, Giorgos Kallis, an ecological economist from Greece and an ICREA research professor at ICTA–Universitat Autònoma de Barcelona, whose influence is considerable among the eco-radicals in the United States, explains in his book *In Defense of Degrowth* that “[s]ustainable degrowth is defined as an equitable downscaling of production and consumption that increases human well-being and enhances ecological conditions. [It] envision[s] a future wherein societies live within their ecological means, with localized economies, which distribute resources more equally through new forms of democratic institutions.... Material accumulation will no longer hold a central position in the cultural imaginary. The primacy given to efficiency will be substituted by a focus on sufficiency. The organizing principles will be simplicity, conviviality, and sharing. Innovation will no longer be directed to new technology for technology’s sake but to new social and technological arrangements that will enable a convivial and frugal living.”<sup>19</sup>

Again, one wonders, is Kallis fantasizing about some kind of 1960s national and international hippie commune? And yet, one also wonders how this “nirvana” will come to pass and, itself, be sustainable—that is, the very nature of the individual and mankind generally would require forced indoctrination, forced reeducation, forced relocation in many instances, etc. In other words, as

Marx preached, the existing society must be abolished—its history, families, schools, and religions—which may well require a period of despotism, to cleanse society of existing norms and replace them with the Marxist paradise. The picture Kallis and other radicals paint is nothing like the inevitable, horrific nightmare their abstract dreams would unleash.

Kallis continues: “Sustainable degrowth denotes an intentional process of a smooth and ‘prosperous way down,’ through a range of social, environmental, and economic policies and institutions, orchestrated to guarantee that while production and consumption decline, human welfare improves and is more equally distributed. Various concrete and practical proposals are being debated for enabling such degrowth transitions. These include both policy-institutional changes *within* the current system—such as drastic changes to financial institutions, resource and pollution caps and sanctuaries, infrastructure moratoria, eco-taxes, work-sharing and reduced working hours, basic income and social security guaranteed for all—as well as ideas for creating new spaces outside of the system, such as eco-villages and co-housing, cooperative production and consumption, various systems of sharing, or community issued and regulated currencies, barter and non-money market exchanges. ‘Exiting the economy,’ to create new spaces of simplicity, sharing and conviviality, is the driving motto of degrowth.”<sup>20</sup>

But Marxism dressed up as a green movement is still Marxism, at least in significant part. Moreover, “exiting the economy” would create not “sharing and conviviality,” but need, poverty, indolence, and the overall decline of the civil society and the quality of life. One can envision how the *purposeful* shrinking of the economy would destroy “conviviality” and, in fact, create an explosive societal reaction by reducing the supply of even necessities (food, medicine, energy, clothing, housing, etc.) while increasing the demand for such basics (people chasing the availability of fewer necessities). Even where the shrinking of an economy is not purposeful but inevitable, such as in certain types of communist regimes (Venezuela and North Korea come to mind, and Cambodia of the recent past), it clearly is unmanageable once unbridled and the consequences for the people who live in these places, both in terms of human dignity and liberty, and even survivability, become horribly dire.

Kallis insists that “[e]scaping the capitalist economy and forming nowtopias is not an idyllic ecologist call for a return to a bucolic past that has never existed. It is of course a romantic project, and this is fine, since a dose of romanticism is precisely what we need in this era of cold-blooded and self-destructive individualistic utilitarianism. Nowtopias are not just ‘life style choices’: they represent conscious ‘life projects’ for their participants, and are political actions, consciously and explicitly for some and unconsciously for others. But ‘escaping the economy’ is unlikely to become a massive movement on its own without an interlocked change at the political-institutional level that will make its flourishing possible. Institutions to limit the expansion of the economy and to open spaces for alternative life projects are a prerequisite for nowtopia.”<sup>21</sup>

Indeed, even the *fact* of an economy is doubted by Kallis, among others. “[F]irst principle: the economy is an invention.” “[W]hen and how did we come to think of an autonomous system out there called ‘the economy’?”<sup>22</sup> And the economy is a political creation, not a spontaneous aggregation of untold commercial and financial interactions among a free people. “[T]he economy in the degrowth literature is political. It is not an independent system governed by the laws of supply and demand. The imaginary free market does not exist.... In ecological economics we do recognize the political nature of the economy.... Often though we reproduce the economic distinction between an economy out there, with its own laws and processes, and a political process which distributes the fruits of this process or sets limits to it....”<sup>23</sup>

Therefore, principles upon which America was founded, such as private property rights, the free flow of commerce, voluntary exchange, and the sanctity of the individual, and the establishment of a government around these principles, which is intended to undergird these principles and limit its own authority to molest or alter them, are dismissed.

In her book *Return of the Primitive—The Anti-Industrial Revolution*, published more than forty years ago, Ayn Rand presciently exposed the purpose of this movement: “The immediate goal is obvious: the destruction of the remnants of capitalism in today’s mixed economy, and the establishment of a global dictatorship. The goal does not have to be inferred—many speeches and books on the subject state explicitly that the ecological crusade is a means to an

end.” Rand also noted that the movement demonstrated the failure of Marxism, writing that the new approach involved “the substitution of birds, bees and beauty—‘nature’s beauty’—for the pseudoscientific, super-technological paraphernalia of Marx’s economic determinism. A more ludicrous shrinking of a movement’s stature or a more obvious confession of intellectual bankruptcy could not be invented in fiction.”<sup>24</sup>

“Instead of their old promises,” writes Rand, “that collectivism would create universal abundance and their denunciations of capitalism for creating poverty, they are now *denouncing capitalism for creating abundance*. Instead of promising comfort and security for everyone, they are now denouncing people for being comfortable and secure. They are still struggling, however, to inculcate guilt and fear; these have always been their psychological tools. Only instead of exhorting you to feel guilty of exploiting the poor, they are now exhorting you to feel guilty of exploiting land, air and water. Instead of threatening you with bloody rebellion of the disinherited masses, they are now trying... to scare you out of your wits with thunderously vague threats of an unknowable, cosmic cataclysm, threats that cannot be checked, verified or proved.”<sup>25</sup>

Rand hammered the “[t]he deeper significance of the ecological crusade,” which she said “lies in the fact that it does expose a profound threat to mankind—though not in the sense its leaders allege. It exposes the ultimate motive of the collectivists—the naked essence of *hatred* for achievement, which means: hatred for reason, for man, for life.” Rather than condemning the Industrial Revolution, Rand explains that it “was the great breakthrough that liberated man’s mind from the weight of the ballast. The country made possible by the Industrial Revolution—The United States of America—achieved the magnificence which only free men can achieve, and demonstrated that reason is the means, the base, the precondition of man’s survival.”<sup>26</sup>

Rand’s point, of course, is that freedom and capitalism are inextricably linked. And the Industrial Revolution is magnificent evidence of the capabilities of a free people.

She explained, “The enemies of reason—the mystics, the man-haters and life-haters, the seekers of the unearned and the unreal—have been gathering their forces for a counterattack, ever since.... The enemies of the Industrial Revolution

—its displaced persons—were of the kind that had fought human progress for centuries....” Today, “they are... reduced, like cornered animals, to baring their teeth and their souls, and to proclaiming that man has no right to exist....”<sup>27</sup> In fact, the movement’s refrain is a relentless condemnation of modern man’s way of life—such as “man-made climate change.”

Another of the movement’s leading lights, Timothy W. Luke, a professor of political science at Virginia Polytechnic Institute and State University, and a Critical Theory advocate, writes in his essay “Climatologies as Social Critique: The Social Construction/Creation of Global Warming, Global Dimming, and Global Cooling,” that due to mankind and capitalism, the planet has already been transformed—from nature to urbanature. “Global warming, dimming, and/or cooling are the unintended consequences of human organisms reshaping the earth’s natural and artificial environments to support their survival. And, as the moves are made, human and natural life forms begin to inhabit a nature that, as habitat, is being recreated by the output of corporate labs, major industries, and big agribusiness. Products and their by-products infiltrate terrestrial ecologies through human actions, and this technonature congeals in a ‘Second Creation,’ or urbanaturalized environments, with a new atmosphere, changing oceans, different biodiversity, and remade land masses. And study of climate change must consider all these ramifications.”<sup>28</sup>

In addition to Luke’s use and abuse of the English language, which is pervasive throughout academia, he is describing human progress under capitalism as a hellish rebirth of the planet, away from nature. Indeed, he argues, the capitalist system is such a disaster that it is the impetus for communism.

“Climatology as social criticism maps how the unintended consequences of industrial capitalism are externalized as by-products of mass production and consumption, only to begin altering the earth’s atmosphere. At one time, ‘scientific socialism’ presumed to foretell the workers of the world about the coming crisis of capitalism, out of which would come a more rational, just and equitable communist order. An intrinsic set of tendencies were believed to be creating the basis for full rationalization of the means of production as well as the opportunity to enact new forms of material equality, political deliberation, and psychological emancipation. Unalterable laws of surplus value would

guarantee the advent and permanence of these outcomes as the chaotic dynamics of the market pushed the anarchy of exchange toward the order of communism.”<sup>29</sup>

Rand deals with this, too, by observing that “in all the propaganda of the ecologists—amidst all their appeals to nature and pleas for ‘harmony with nature’—there is no discussion of *man’s* needs and the requirements of *his* survival. Man is treated as if he were an *unnatural* phenomenon. Man cannot survive in the kind of state of nature that ecologists envision—i.e., on the level of sea urchins or polar bears. In that sense, man is the weakest of the animals: he is born naked and unarmed, without fangs, claws, horns or ‘instinctual’ knowledge. Physically, he would fall an easy prey, not only to the higher animals, but also to the lowest bacteria: he is the most complex organism and, in a contest of brute force, extremely fragile and vulnerable. His only weapon—his basic means of survival is his mind.”<sup>30</sup>

“It is not necessary to remind you,” writes Rand, “of what human existence was like—for centuries and millennia—prior to the Industrial Revolution. That the ecologists ignore or evade it is so terrible a crime against humanity that it serves as their protection: no one believes that anyone can be capable of it. But, in this matter, it is not even necessary to look at history; take a look at the conditions of existence in the undeveloped countries, which means: on most of this earth, with the exception of the blessed island which is Western civilization.”<sup>31</sup>

Luke acknowledges that while the eco-radical movement is not identical to Marx’s model, it is not all that different, either. “While its scientific credibility clearly exceeds that of historical materialism, contemporary climatology, especially in its more engaged expressions as public policy, popular science, or economic forecasting, often strangely echoes, parallels, or reimagines postulates not unlike those of the materialist conception of history. While it clearly is not completely the same, it also is not entirely different.”<sup>32</sup>

In *The Communist Manifesto* (1848), Marx and Engels state, in part: “The bourgeois cannot exist without constantly revolutionizing the instruments of production, and thereby the relations of production, and with them the whole

relations of society.... Constant revolutionizing of production, uninterrupted disturbance of all social conditions, everlasting uncertainty and agitation, distinguish the bourgeois epoch from all earlier ones. All fixed, fast-frozen relations, with their train of ancient and venerable prejudices and opinions, are swept away; all newformed ones become antiquated before they can ossify. All that is solid melts into air, all that is holy is profaned, and man is at last compelled to face with sober sense his real conditions of life and his relations with his kind. The need of a constantly expanding market for its products chases the bourgeoisie over the whole surface of the globe. It must nestle everywhere, settle everywhere, establish connections everywhere.”<sup>33</sup>

The condemnation of economic and technological progress by Marx, Engels, and their prodigy in this Marxist-oriented movement is not merely a demand to restrict technology but, as Rand asserts, “the demand to restrict man’s mind. It is nature—i.e., reality—that makes both these goals impossible to achieve. Technology can be destroyed, and the mind can be paralyzed, but neither can be restricted. Whether and whatever such restrictions are attempted, it is the mind—not the state—that withers away. Technology is applied science. The progress of theoretical science and technology—i.e., of human knowledge—is moved by such a complex and interconnected sum of the work of individual minds that no computer or committee could predict and prescribe its course. The discoveries in one branch of knowledge lead to unexpected discoveries in another; the achievements in one field open countless roads in all others.... [R]estrictions mean the attempt to regulate the unknown, to limit the unborn, to set rules for the undiscovered.... As to the notion that progress is unnecessary, that we know enough, that we can stop on the present level of technological development and maintain it, without going farther—ask yourself why mankind’s history is full of the wreckage of civilizations that could not be maintained and vanished along with such knowledge as they had achieved; why men who do not move forward, fall back into the abyss of savagery.”<sup>34</sup>

As you can see, it takes one Ayn Rand to tackle the entire academy of Marxist de-growthers. However, I would contribute a further observation to Rand’s. Inasmuch as the purpose of this movement is to regress back to nature and a mere subsistence economy, where the communal psyche is anti-growth, anti-

technology, anti-science, and anti-modernity, ironically the irrelevancy of higher education, graduate studies, and doctoral degrees, and the colleges and faculties themselves, particularly in the teaching of hard sciences, technology, engineering, and mathematics, are expendable. Illiberalism and its product, totalitarianism, do not require large educational edifices to enforce the impoverishment of man's mind and spirit, or to feed his hunger for knowledge and bare necessities.

Given the movement's Marxist inculcation, it is unsurprising that it "intersects" with the growing influence of Critical Race Theory and other such manifestations. Indeed, the early environmental movement has metastasized into a multi-headed Hydra with intersecting and overlapping revolutionary causes. For example, writing in *What Is Critical Environmental Justice?*, David Naguib Pellow, professor of environmental studies at the University of California, states: "[From] its earliest days, the Environmental Justice [EJ] movement articulated a transformative vision of what an environmentally and socially just and sustainable future might look like, at the local, regional, national, and global scales.... [D]uring the historic Environmental Justice Summit Conference in 1991, participants drafted what became known as the Principles of Environmental Justice, which not only embrace a synthesis of anti-racism and ecological sustainability but also support anti-militaristic, anti-imperialist, gender-justice politics. The Principles also recognize the inherent and cultural worth of nonhuman natures."<sup>35</sup>

Thus, the introduction of race, gender, pacifism, injustice, classism, and anti-Americanism generally under the nomenclature of environmental justice. Pellow continues: "The EJ movement is largely comprised of people from communities of color, indigenous communities, and working-class communities who are focused on combating environmental injustice, racism, and gender and class inequalities that are most visibly manifested in the disproportionate burden of environmental harm facing these populations. For the EJ movement, the battle for global sustainability cannot be won without addressing the ecological violence imposed on vulnerable human populations; thus social justice (that is, justice for humans) is inseparable from environmental protection.... While environmental justice is a vision of a possible future, environmental inequality



(or environmental *in*justice) generally refers to a situation in which a particular social group is disproportionately affected by environmental hazards.”<sup>36</sup>

Actually, the EJ movement is mostly led and driven by Marxist-oriented elitists, academics, and activists, like most of these movements, while enticing many unsuspecting followers. It is promoted and advocated throughout our colleges and universities, in the media, by activists and think tanks. Like Critical Race Theory, critical environmental justice studies are now prominent and growing. It means, as Pellow writes, “[b]uilding on the work of scholars across numerous fields that only periodically intersect (such as Environmental Justice Studies, Critical Race Theory, Critical Race Feminism, Ethnic Studies, Gender and Sexuality Studies, Political Ecology, Anti-Statist/Anarchist Theory, and Ecological Feminism)....”<sup>37</sup>

In essence, then, more “intersectionality”—that is, the combination of disparate causes and alleged victimizations under yet another radical, anti-capitalist umbrella united in their hatred for American society.

Pellow argues that the EJ framework is built on four pillars, including: “The first pillar... [which] involves the recognition that social inequality and oppression in all forms intersect, and that actors in the more-than-human world are subjects of oppression and frequently agents of social change. The fields of critical race theory, critical race feminism, gender and sexuality studies, queer theory, ecological feminism, disability studies, and critical animal studies all speak to the ways in which various social categories of difference work to place particular bodies at risk of exclusion, marginalization, erasure, discrimination, violence, destruction, and othering. These insights are important for building an understanding of the ways that intra-human inequality and oppressions function and how they intersect with human-nonhuman oppression.”<sup>38</sup>

I must confess, it is difficult to keep up with the number and kind of alleged and proclaimed maladies supposedly unleashed by the most diverse, beneficent, tolerant, successful, and free nation ever established by mankind. But it would certainly seem that this movement has attracted them all. So much for clean air, clean water, and polar bears.

Skipping ahead, Pellow informs us that the third pillar “is the view that social inequalities—from racism to speciesism—are deeply embedded in society

(rather than aberrations) and reinforced by state power, and that therefore the current social order stands as a fundamental obstacle to social and environmental justice. The logical conclusion of that observation is that social change movements may be better off thinking and acting beyond human supremacy and beyond the state as targets of reform and reliable partners....”<sup>39</sup>

Therefore, it must follow that the current society must be fundamentally transformed into an egalitarian nirvana. Is the state to be abolished altogether? Is this transformation achieved by force, repression, and educational brainwashing? And what of the constitutional limitations placed between the individual and government in order to protect the individual—that is, how is this revolution manifested?

“Most of human history,” Pellow writes, “has been marked by the absence of states, suggesting that the modern condition of state dominance is anything but natural or inevitable. My view, and the view of a growing number of scholars, is that states are social institutions that tend to lean toward practices and relationships that are authoritarian, coercive, racist, patriarchal, exclusionary, militaristic, and anti-ecological.”<sup>40</sup>

This is a strange formulation. Of course, “most of human history” has been plagued by uncivil societies, where governments have rejected the view enunciated in our Declaration of Independence—“We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty and the pursuit of Happiness.—That to secure these rights, Governments are instituted among Men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed...”<sup>41</sup> The law of the jungle, resulting from the collapse of norms, traditions, customs, law, and order, breeds the kind of hellish existence Pellow would unleash on mankind.

“The fourth pillar... centers on a concept I call *indispensability*.... A Critical EJ Studies perspective... counter[s] the ideology of a white supremacy and human dominionism, and articulating the perspective that excluded, marginalized, and othered populations, beings, and things—both human and more-than-human—must be viewed not as expendable but rather as *indispensable* to our collective futures. This is what I term *racial indispensability*

(when referring to people of color) and *socioecological indispensability* (when referring to broader communities within and across the human/more-than-human spectrum)... CEJ extends the work of Ethnic Studies scholars and activists who argue that, in this society, people of color are constructed as and rendered expendable. Building on those ideas and challenging the ideology of white supremacy and human dominionism, CEJ articulates the perspective that excluded, marginalized, and othered populations, beings and things—both human and more-than-human—must be viewed as *indispensable* to our collective futures....”<sup>42</sup>

Pellow broadly proclaims that a white supremacist–dominant society and human dominance of nature overall, which includes ruling over other species (such as animals, insects, etc.), highlight the indispensability of marginalized people. Notice here, and throughout these movements, individual human beings are treated in conformity with the Marxist model—broken into classes of oppressed groups based on an endless list of victimizations and stereotypes.

Pellow continues, “In addition to building on Environmental Justice Studies, Critical EJ Studies draws inspiration from a number of other important fields, such as Critical Race Theory and Ethnic Studies, Critical Race Feminism and Gender and Sexuality Studies, and Anti-Statists/Anarchist Theory, which have done an enormous service by producing rigorous conceptual and grounded understandings of how social inequality, oppression, privilege, hierarchy, and authoritarian institutions and practices shape the lives of human beings. These scholars have explored and revealed myriad ways in which gender, race, sexuality, citizenship, social class, and ability reflect and are reflective on how social structures function in society.... They show how the domination of those persons without privilege is accomplished through practices, policymaking, and discourses on a daily basis. Thus these fields are invaluable to strengthening [EJS], which is, at its root, an area of inquiry concerned with inequality, domination, and liberation.”<sup>43</sup>

Of course, Pellow cannot explain why, in an open society, where people are mobile and free to escape the kind of systemic racial hatred and multiplicity of abuses he conceptualizes, they choose not to leave the United States. There are many low- or no-growth economies throughout the world, where nature

dominates the people, and where the majority populations are nonwhite. The reason, of course, is that for many if not most in these countries, life is very difficult if not hellish. In fact, he cannot explain why millions of people from countries where the majority populations are nonwhite and the economic system is other than capitalistic risk their health and lives to escape their societies and migrate to the United States. Nonetheless, Pellow is hardly alone in his ideological fiction and fanaticism, which is fast traveling throughout, and rolling over, American institutions.

---

On July 18, 2014, a large number of delegates from radical groups throughout the world gathered to issue a joint proclamation called the Margarita Declaration on Climate Change. It is revealing that their proclamation leads with a quote from Venezuela's late Marxist dictator, Hugo Chávez: "Let us go to the future, let us bring it and sow it here." Of course, thanks to Chávez and his successor, Nicolás Maduro, the Venezuelan economy and society are devastated, the people are dying of starvation and seeking refuge in the United States and other countries, there is a complete breakdown in health care and basic public services, and the government is a violent police state that represses any and all dissonant voices. Indeed, the proclamation reads like a modern version of Marx's *Communist Manifesto*, laced with environmental declarations and platitudes. While it is insipid and absurd on so many levels, it is also dangerously appealing and increasingly acceptable as a matter of national and international policy. The declaration states, in part:

It is necessary to reach an alternative development model based on the principles of living in harmony with nature, guided by absolute and ecological sustainability limits, and the capacity of Mother Earth as well; a fair, egalitarian model that constructs sustainable economies that moves us away from energy models based on fossil fuels and hazardous energies, that guarantees and recognizes the respect to Mother Earth, the rights of women, children, adolescents, gender diversity, the impoverished, the vulnerable minority groups and the original indigenous peoples—A fair

and egalitarian model that fosters the peaceful coexistence of our peoples. We likewise want a society where the right of Mother Earth prevails over neoliberal policies, economic globalization and patriarchy, because without Mother Earth life does not exist.<sup>44</sup>

Nothing says bombast and narcissism like a gathering of self-righteous Marxists working together to construct a statement of purpose, to include every possible group and cause in their coalition, and to treat “Mother Earth” as if she is some kind wallflower or victim. The result: an incoherent and nonsensical mission statement. Nonetheless, the movement is for real and it threatens our way of life. Hayek explains in *The Fatal Conceit* that this is “a morality [that] pretends to be able to do something that it cannot possibly do, e.g., to fulfill a knowledge generating and organizational function that is impossible under its own rules and norms, then this impossibility itself provides a decisive rational criticism of that moral system. It is important to confront these consequences, for the notion that, in the last resort, the whole debate is a matter of value judgments and not of facts has prevented professional students of the market order from stressing forcibly enough that socialism cannot possibly do what it promises.”<sup>45</sup>

The Declaration continues:

The main sources for climate crisis are the political and economic systems commercializing and reifying nature and life, thus impoverishing spirituality and imposing consumerism and developmentalism that generate unequal regimes and exploitation of resources. This global crisis is exacerbated by unsustainable practices of exploitation and consumption by the developed countries and the elites of the developing countries. We demand the leaders in the North not continue such wicked practices that destroy the planet and demand the leaders in the South not follow the development models in place in the North which lead to this civilizing crisis. We urge them to construct an alternative path to achieve fair, egalitarian and sustainable societies and fair economies. For such purposes, it is required that the developed countries meet their moral and

legal obligations, especially vis-à-vis vulnerable and marginalized countries and communities by lifting barriers such as intellectual property rights which prevent the attainment of the preservation of life over the planet and the salvation of human species. We likewise urge them to comply with the financial contribution and the transfer of safe and locally suitable technologies free from barriers such as intellectual property rights, strengthen capacities and embrace the principles set forth in the Climate Change Convention and in the Rio Earth Summit, especially as to the common but differentiated responsibilities and respective capabilities, and the principles of precaution and gender equality.<sup>46</sup>

I am reminded of what Thomas Sowell wrote in his book *The Quest for Cosmic Justice* about such widely overstated, generalized, and untested “visions”: “V. I. Lenin represented one of the purest examples of a man who operated on the basis of a vision and its categories, which superseded the world of flesh-and-blood human beings or the realities within which they lived out their lives. Only tactically or strategically did the nature of the world beyond the vision matter, as a means to the end of fulfilling that vision.... Lenin’s preoccupation with visions was demonstrated not only by his failure to enter the world of the working class, in whose name he spoke, but also his failure to ever set foot in Soviet Central Asia—a vast area larger than Western Europe, and one in which the doctrinaire and devastating schemes of Lenin and his successors would be imposed by force for nearly three-quarters of a century.”<sup>47</sup> Sowell added that “[v]isions are inescapable because the limits of our own direct knowledge are inescapable. The crucial question is whether visions provide a basis for theories to be tested or for dogmas to be proclaimed and imposed. Much of the history of the twentieth century has been a history of the tyranny of visions as dogmas. Previous centuries saw the despotisms of monarchs or of military conquerors, but the twentieth century has seen the rise of ruling individuals and parties whose passport to power was their successful marketing of visions. Almost by definition, this was the marketing of the *promises* of visions, since performance could not be judged before achieving the power to put the vision into action.... The prevalence and power of a vision is shown, not by what its evidence of logic

can prove, but precisely by its *exemption* from any need to provide evidence or logic—by the number of things that can be successfully asserted because they fit the vision, without having to meet the test of fitting the facts.”<sup>48</sup>

As if leading an international Marxist revolution, the radicals at the convention went on to demand “the change of the production and consumption patterns taking into account the historic responsibilities of the emissions from nations and corporations and their cumulative nature, thus recognizing that the carbon atmospheric space is finite and needs to be equally distributed amongst the countries and their peoples. The historically unequal overconsumption of the global emissions budget managed by mainstream corporations and economic systems has contributed to cause inequalities in terms of the capacities of the countries. Some key indicators to measure such disparity would be the national per capita emission of greenhouse effect gases since 1850, the distribution and size of the wealth and national income, and the technological resources owned by a country. Such indicators may be used to determine the fair portion of effort corresponding to each country... the needs for sustainable development, the losses and damages caused by climate change and the need of technology transfer and financial support are recognized.” And what would a revolution be without a Star Chamber. “We demand the implementation of a Justice, Ethics and Moral Court on Climate Change, where humanity at large may file complaints against crimes related to this topic.”<sup>49</sup>

The Margarita Declaration on Climate Change then proceeds to declare “a great world social movement,” a “people’s movement” that requires an anticapitalist economic transformation, a change in thinking, reeducation, and indoctrination, the “eradication” of fossil fuels, and much more:

We must organize ourselves to guarantee life on the planet through a great world social movement. A change of attitude for a conscience of power keeping the peoples united becomes necessary. As organized peoples we can push for the transformation of the system.

The structural causes for climate change are linked to the current capitalist hegemonic system. Fighting the climate change involves changing the system. The change of the system must provide for a

transformation of the economic, political, social and cultural systems at local, national, regional and global levels. Education is a right of the peoples, a continuous process of fair, free, and transversal comprehensive training. Education is one of the fundamental driving forces for transformation and construction in diversity of the new women and men, for the Good Living and the respect of life and Mother Earth. Education should be oriented to reflect value, create, raise awareness, coexist, participate and act. When we speak of education to face the climate change, we speak of the main roots of such change and the historic and current responsibilities. We also speak of poverty, inequality and vulnerability of the peoples, especially the indigenous peoples and other historically excluded and victimized groups.

The colossal incoherence and imbecility of this movement cannot be overstated. Nonetheless, it stridently marches on with appeal and force.

The declaration continues:

We propose the following actions to change the system:

- Transformation of the power relations and the decision-making systems for the construction of an anti-patriarchal people's power.
- Transformation of food production systems into agro-ecological systems, thus ensuring food sovereignty and security and valuing knowledge, innovations, ancestral and traditional practices.
- Transformation of the energy production systems, eradicating dirty energies respecting the right of the peoples to fight poverty and keeping fair transition as a guiding principle.
- Transformation of the energy consumption patterns through education, regulations to large energy consumers and empowerment of the people over community-scaled systems of renewable energies production under control of the communities.



- Implementation of participative government of territory and city planning systems, thus ensuring fair and sustainable access to land and to urban services, as well as other means that are necessary to face the Climate Change impacts.
- Shifting from an energy and materials profligate system to a cyclic system that emphasizes the eradication of the unsustainable exploitation of nature and promotes reduction, reutilization, and recycling of residues.
- Ensuring financing by the developed countries to developing countries for such transformations, and for compensation and rehabilitation of the impacts of Climate Change. Financing must not be conditional, and the management of the funds supplied shall be in the hands of the Peoples.
- Creation of accessible mechanisms for the protection of the displaced people and the defenders of environmental rights.<sup>50</sup>

Two of the traditional attacks on capitalism, productivity, and economic growth have revolved around the claimed depletion of natural resources and carbon dioxide emissions, both of which, among other things, are said to lead to climate change. With respect to the former, George Reisman explains that mankind has not come close to even scratching the surface of the earth's resources. He writes: "What is true of the earth is equally true of every other planetary body in the universe. Insofar as the universe consists of matter, it consists of nothing but chemical elements, and thus of nothing but natural resources."<sup>51</sup> "Because the earth is literally nothing but an immense solid ball of chemical elements and because man's intelligence and initiative in the last two centuries were relatively free to operate and had the incentive to operate, it should not be surprising that the supply of useable, accessible minerals today vastly exceeds the supply that man is economically capable of exploiting."<sup>52</sup> "[T]he portion of nature that represents wealth should be understood as a tiny

fraction that began as virtually zero and even though it has since been multiplied by several hundredfold, is still virtually zero when one considers how small is the portion of the mass of the earth, let alone the universe, that is subject to man's control, and how far man is from understanding all aspects and potential uses of what has become subject to his control.”<sup>53</sup>

A common theme and, therefore, significant problem respecting too many social activists and self-proclaimed revolutionaries is their utter ignorance about matters in which they are passionately, if not violently, committed. “Conservationism regards the existing supply of economically useable natural resources as nature-given,” writes Reisman, “rather than as the product of human intelligence and its corollary, capital accumulation. It does not see that what nature provides is, for all practical purposes, an infinite supply of matter and energy, which human intelligence can progressively master, in the process creating a steadily increasing supply of economically useable natural resources.... Having no conception of the role of human intelligence in the creation of economically useable natural resources, and confusing the present supply with all the natural resources present in nature, the conservationists naively believe that every act of production that consumes natural resources is an act of impoverishment, using up an allegedly priceless, irreplaceable treasure of nature. On this basis, they conclude that the pursuit of self-interest by individuals under economic freedom leads to the wanton consumption of mankind's irreplaceable natural heritage, with no regard for the needs of future generations.”<sup>54</sup>

Nevertheless, ignorance is apparently no excuse for altering beliefs. Reisman writes that “[o]nce having arrived at the existence of this altogether illusory problem, the product of nothing more than their own ignorance of the productive process, the conservationists further conclude that what is necessary to solve this alleged problem is government intervention designed to ‘conserve’ natural resources by restricting or prohibiting in various ways mankind's use of them.”<sup>55</sup>

Respecting the second issue, carbon dioxide emissions and climate change generally, it must be first unequivocally stated that carbon dioxide is not, never has been, and never can be a pollutant. Moreover, during the last half century, “scientists” and “experts” have asserted with certainty that the earth was facing a

cooling period, then a warming period, and now simply and more broadly put, climate change, thereby covering all possibilities with no future need for clarification or correction. The main culprit, we are told, is carbon dioxide resulting primarily from the use of fossil fuels. Of course, as any elementary school science teacher explains to her students, carbon dioxide is oxygen to plants, and in turn plants generate oxygen for the rest of us.

As for carbon dioxide emissions and the impact on the atmosphere, earth, and climate, the debate even among scientists and experts rages on, despite efforts to intimidate skeptics, shut them down, and dismiss them as “deniers.” However, suffice to say there is simply no consensus. For example, as recently as September 23, 2019, “A global network of more than 500 knowledgeable and experienced scientists and professionals in climate and related fields” signed a letter to the United Nations secretary-general insisting that “[c]limate science should be less political, while climate policies should be more scientific. Scientists should openly address the uncertainties and exaggerations in their predictions of global warming, while politicians should dispassionately count the real benefits as well as the imagined costs of adaptation to global warming, and the real costs as well as the imagined benefits of mitigation.”<sup>56</sup>

The letter goes on to say that “[t]he general-circulation models of climate on which international policy is at present founded are unfit for their purpose. Therefore, it is cruel as well as imprudent to advocate the squandering of trillions of dollars on the basis of results from such immature models. Current climate policies pointlessly and grievously undermine the economic system, putting lives at risk in countries denied access to affordable, reliable electrical energy. We urge you to follow a climate policy based on sound science, realistic economics and genuine concern for those harmed by costly but unnecessary attempts at mitigation.”<sup>57</sup> The signatories explain that “natural as well as anthropogenic factors cause warming, warming is far slower than predicted, climate policy relies on inadequate models, CO<sub>2</sub> is plant food, the basis of all life on Earth, global warming has not increased natural disasters, and climate policy must respect scientific and economic realities.”<sup>58</sup>

Indeed, there are so many scientists and experts who question or reject the climate change movement that it is impossible to list them all here. Nonetheless,

a few examples suffice.

Ian Plimer, emeritus professor of earth sciences at University of Melbourne, and professor of mining geology at the University of Adelaide, explains: “The theory of human-induced global warming is not science because research is based on a pre-ordained condition, huge bodies of evidence are ignored, and the analytical procedures are treated as evidence. Furthermore, climate ‘science’ is sustained by government research grants. Funds are not available to investigate theories that are not in accord with government ideology.”<sup>59</sup> Of alternative energy sources, such as wind and solar, Plimer writes that “[t]he ‘alternative’ energy systems such as wind and solar are environmentally disastrous. They cause loss of ecosystems, destruction of wildlife, sterilization of the land, inordinate costs that may not be retrieved during the life of the system, and the emission of huge amounts of CO<sub>2</sub> during construction. Furthermore, both wind and solar power are inefficient. They can’t provide 24/7 base-load power and need backup by coal-burning carbon dioxide-emitting electricity generating plants.”<sup>60</sup>

Plimer condemns the entire movement: “Climate change catastrophism is the biggest scientific fraud that has ever occurred. Much climate ‘science’ is political ideology dressed up as science. There are times in history when the popular consensus is demonstrably wrong and we live in such a time. Cheap energy is fundamental for employment, living in the modern world, and for bringing the Third World out of poverty.... Furthermore, the education system has been captured by activists, and the young are inculcated with environmental, political, and economic ideology. During their education, these same young people are not given the basic critical and analytical methods to evaluate ideology that has been presented as fact....”<sup>61</sup>

Patrick J. Michaels was director of the Center for the Study of Science at the Cato Institute, past president of the American Association of State Climatologists, program chair for the Committee on Applied Climatology of the American Meteorological Society, and research professor of environmental sciences at University of Virginia for thirty years. He contends that climate models are failing: “In its most basic form, science consists of statements of hypotheses that are retained by critical tests against observations. Without such

testing, or without a testable hypothesis, [philosopher] Karl Popper stated that what may be called ‘science’ is, in fact, ‘pseudo-science.’ A corollary is that a theory which purports to explain everything in its universe of subject matter is, in fact, untestable and therefore is pseudo-science. In climate, perhaps it is charitable to refer to untested (or untestable) climate model projections as ‘climate studies’ rather than ‘climate science.’”<sup>62</sup>

Richard S. Lindzen, atmospheric physicist, and former professor of meteorology at Massachusetts Institute of Technology (1983–2013), states that “[g]lobal warming is about politics and power rather than science. In science, there is an attempt to clarify; in global warming, language is misused in order to confuse and mislead the public. The misuse of language extends to the use of climate models. Advocates of policies allegedly addressing global warming use models not to predict but rather to justify the claim that catastrophe is possible. As they understand, proving something to be impossible is itself almost impossible.”<sup>63</sup>

Robert M. Carter, emeritus fellow and science policy adviser at the Institute of Public Affairs, science adviser at the Science and Public Policy Institute; chief science adviser for the International Climate Science Coalition, and former professor and head of the School of Earth Sciences at James Cook University, writes: “It needs to be recognized that the theoretical hazard of dangerous human-caused warming is but one small part of a much wider climate hazard that all scientists will agree upon, which is the dangerous weather and climate events that Nature intermittently presents us with—and always will. It is clear from the many and continuing climate-related disasters that occur around the world that the governments of even advanced, wealthy countries are often inadequately prepared for such disasters. We need to do better, and squandering money to give Earth the benefit of the doubt based upon an unjustifiable assumption that dangerous warming will shortly resume is exactly the wrong type of ‘picking winners’ approach.”<sup>64</sup>

Carter makes a point that no serious person should dispute: “The reality is that no scientist on the planet can tell you with credible probability whether the climate in 2030 will be cooler or warmer than today. In such circumstances the only rational conclusion to draw is that we need to be prepared to react to either

warming or cooling over the next several decades, and also to severe weather events, depending upon what Nature chooses to serve up to us. A primary government duty of care is to protect the citizenry and the environment from the ravages of natural climate-related events. What is needed is not unnecessary and penal measures against CO2 emissions, but instead a prudent and cost-effective policy of preparation for, and adaptive response to, all climate events and hazards.”<sup>65</sup>

Rather than giving politicians, bureaucrats, media, advocates, and activists pause, these experts and innumerable others are demeaned and dismissed, as they dare to challenge an ideologically driven movement that targets America’s economic system, and presses on more aggressively than ever. For example, as if lifting the language directly from the Margarita Declaration on Climate Change in authoring her congressional resolution for a “Green New Deal,” Representative Alexandria Ocasio-Cortez and dozens of her Democrat colleagues drafted an equally ludicrous, Marxist-centric bill. I have included most of it here, because to summarize the bill would diminish a true understanding of its dangerousness. It states, in part:

*Whereas* climate change, pollution, and environmental destruction have exacerbated systemic racial, regional, social, environmental, and economic injustices (referred to in this preamble as “systemic injustices”) by disproportionately affecting indigenous communities, communities of color, migrant communities, deindustrialized communities, depopulated rural communities, the poor, low-income workers, women, the elderly, the unhoused, people with disabilities, and youth (referred to in this preamble as “frontline and vulnerable communities”);

*...Resolved*, That it is the sense of the House of Representatives that—

(1) it is the duty of the Federal Government to create a Green New Deal—

(A) to achieve net-zero greenhouse gas emissions through a fair and just transition for all communities and workers;

(B) to create millions of good, high-wage jobs and ensure prosperity and economic security for all people of the United States;

(C) to invest in the infrastructure and industry of the United States to sustainably meet the challenges of the 21st century;

(D) to secure for all people of the United States for generations to come—

(i) clean air and water;

(ii) climate and community resiliency;

(iii) healthy food;

(iv) access to nature; and

(v) a sustainable environment; and

(E) to promote justice and equity by stopping current, preventing future, and repairing historic oppression of indigenous communities, communities of color, migrant communities, deindustrialized communities, depopulated rural communities, the poor, low-income workers, women, the elderly, the unhoused, people with disabilities, and youth (referred to in this resolution as “frontline and vulnerable communities”);

(2) the goals described in subparagraphs of paragraph (1) above (referred to in this resolution as the “Green New Deal goals”) should be accomplished through a 10-year national mobilization (referred to in this resolution as the “Green New Deal mobilization”) that will require the following goals and projects—

(A) building resiliency against climate change-related disasters, such as extreme weather, including by leveraging funding and providing investments for community-defined projects and strategies;

(B) repairing and upgrading the infrastructure in the United States, including—

(i) by eliminating pollution and greenhouse gas emissions as much as technologically feasible;

(ii) by guaranteeing universal access to clean water;

(iii) by reducing the risks posed by flooding and other climate impacts; and

- (iv) by ensuring that any infrastructure bill considered by Congress addresses climate change;
- (C) meeting 100 percent of the power demand in the United States through clean, renewable, and zero-emission energy sources, including—
  - (i) by dramatically expanding and upgrading existing renewable power sources; and
  - (ii) by deploying new capacity;
- (D) building or upgrading to energy-efficient, distributed, and “smart” power grids, and working to ensure affordable access to electricity;
- (E) upgrading all existing buildings in the United States and building new buildings to achieve maximal energy efficiency, water efficiency, safety, affordability, comfort, and durability, including through electrification;
- (F) spurring massive growth in clean manufacturing in the United States and removing pollution and greenhouse gas emissions from manufacturing and industry as much as is technologically feasible, including by expanding renewable energy manufacturing and investing in existing manufacturing and industry;
- (G) working collaboratively with farmers and ranchers in the United States to eliminate pollution and greenhouse gas emissions from the agricultural sector as much as is technologically feasible, including—
  - (i) by supporting family farming;
  - (ii) by investing in sustainable farming and land use practices that increase soil health; and
  - (iii) by building a more sustainable food system that ensures universal access to healthy food;
- (H) overhauling transportation systems in the United States to eliminate pollution and greenhouse gas emissions from the transportation sector as much as is technologically feasible, including through investment in—



- (i) zero-emission vehicle infrastructure and manufacturing;
- (ii) clean, affordable, and accessible public transportation; and
- (iii) high-speed rail;

(I) mitigating and managing the long-term adverse health, economic, and other effects of pollution and climate change, including by providing funding for community-defined projects and strategies;

(J) removing greenhouse gases from the atmosphere and reducing pollution, including by restoring natural ecosystems through proven low-tech solutions that increase soil carbon storage, such as preservation and afforestation;

(K) restoring and protecting threatened, endangered, and fragile ecosystems through locally appropriate and science-based projects that enhance biodiversity and support climate resiliency;

(L) cleaning up existing hazardous waste and abandoned sites to promote economic development and sustainability;

(M) identifying other emission and pollution sources and creating solutions to eliminate them; and

(N) promoting the international exchange of technology, expertise, products, funding, and services, with the aim of making the United States the international leader on climate action, and to help other countries achieve a Green New Deal;

(3) a Green New Deal must be developed through transparent and inclusive consultation, collaboration, and partnership with frontline and vulnerable communities, labor unions, worker cooperatives, civil society groups, academia, and businesses; and

(4) to achieve the Green New Deal goals and mobilization, a Green New Deal will require the following goals and projects—

(A) providing and leveraging, in a way that ensures that the public receives appropriate ownership stakes and returns on investment, adequate capital (including through community grants, public

banks, and other public financing), technical expertise, supporting policies, and other forms of assistance to communities, organizations, Federal, State, and local government agencies, and businesses working on the Green New Deal mobilization;

(B) ensuring that the Federal Government takes into account the complete environmental and social costs and impacts of emissions through—

(i) existing laws;

(ii) new policies and programs; and

(iii) ensuring that frontline and vulnerable communities shall not be adversely affected;

(C) providing resources, training, and high-quality education, including higher education, to all people of the United States, with a focus on frontline and vulnerable communities, so those communities may be full and equal participants in the Green New Deal mobilization;

(D) making public investments in the research and development of new clean and renewable energy technologies and industries;

(E) directing investments to spur economic development, deepen and diversify industry in local and regional economies, and build wealth and community ownership, while prioritizing high-quality job creation and economic, social, and environmental benefits in frontline and vulnerable communities that may otherwise struggle with the transition away from greenhouse gas intensive industries;

(F) ensuring the use of democratic and participatory processes that are inclusive of and led by frontline and vulnerable communities and workers to plan, implement, and administer the Green New Deal mobilization at the local level;

(G) ensuring that the Green New Deal mobilization creates high-quality union jobs that pay prevailing wages, hires local workers, offers training and advancement opportunities, and guarantees wage and benefit parity for workers affected by the transition;

- (H) guaranteeing a job with a family-sustaining wage, adequate family and medical leave, paid vacations, and retirement security to all people of the United States;
- (I) strengthening and protecting the right of all workers to organize, unionize, and collectively bargain free of coercion, intimidation, and harassment;
- (J) strengthening and enforcing labor, workplace health and safety, antidiscrimination, and wage and hour standards across all employers, industries, and sectors;
- (K) enacting and enforcing trade rules, procurement standards, and border adjustments with strong labor and environmental protections—
  - (i) to stop the transfer of jobs and pollution overseas; and
  - (ii) to grow domestic manufacturing in the United States;
- (L) ensuring that public lands, waters, and oceans are protected and that eminent domain is not abused;
- (M) obtaining the free, prior, and informed consent of indigenous people for all decisions that affect indigenous people and their traditional territories, honoring all treaties and agreements with indigenous people, and protecting and enforcing the sovereignty and land rights of indigenous people;
- (N) ensuring a commercial environment where every businessperson is free from unfair competition and domination by domestic or international monopolies; and
- (O) providing all people of the United States with—
  - (i) high-quality health care;
  - (ii) affordable, safe, and adequate housing;
  - (iii) economic security; and
  - (iv) access to clean water, clean air, healthy and affordable food, and nature.<sup>66</sup>

Milton Ezrati at *Forbes* rounded up some of the cost estimates for this proposal. Here are figures for just some of its goals: “The proposed expansion of

renewables to provide 100% of the nation's power needs would, according to respected physicist Christopher Clark, cost about \$2 trillion or approximately \$200 billion a year for ten years. The Deal's desire to build a 'smart power grid' for the entire country, would, according to the Electric Power Institute, cost some \$400 billion or \$40 billion a year for ten years; according to several sources, AOC's aspiration to 'draw down greenhouse gases' would cost upwards of \$11 trillion or about \$110 billion a year for ten years."<sup>67</sup> Moreover, "the Deal's goal to upgrade every home and industrial building in the country to state-of-the-art safety and energy efficiency would run some \$2.5 trillion over ten years or about \$250 billion a year. This figure may well be understated. Consider that there are 136 million dwellings in the United States. An upgrade of each would conservatively cost \$10,000 a unit on average or near \$1.4 trillion, and this does not even include the industrial and commercial structures. Nor does it include upkeep."<sup>68</sup> In addition, "the Green New Deal also aspires to provide jobs guarantees at a 'living wage.' A government assessment of a similar proposal by Sen. Cory Booker (D-NJ) puts the cost of such a program at \$543 billion in its first year. Though the costs thereafter would fall, the cumulative expense over ten years would come to some \$2.5 trillion. The goal of developing a universal, single payer health-care system would, according to an MIT-Amherst study of a similar plan put forward by Senator Bernie Sanders, come to about \$1.4 trillion a year."<sup>69</sup>

"Just these six of AOC's long list of aspirations," states Ezrati, "would then roughly cost some \$2.5 trillion a year. Since Washington's 2018 budget put spending at \$4.5 trillion, the Deal would effectively increase federal spending by a touch over half again. That is a hefty price tag, considerably more than the estimated \$700 billion a year that would emerge from AOC's proposal to raise the maximum tax rate to 70%."<sup>70</sup>

The Heritage Foundation's Kevin Dayaratna and Nicolas Loris note that "according to the Heritage Energy Model, as a result of the taxes and carbon-based regulations, by 2040 one can expect: a peak employment shortfall of over 1.4 million jobs; a total income loss of more than \$40,000 for a family of four; an aggregate gross domestic product loss of over \$3.9 trillion; and, increases in

household electricity expenditures averaging approximately 12 to 14 percent. Unquestionably, these projections from the Heritage Energy Model significantly underestimate the costs of the Green New Deal's energy components. As Ocasio-Cortez's Frequently Asked Questions sheet notes, the carbon tax is only one of many policy tools Green New Deal advocates hope to implement."<sup>71</sup>

And the American Action Forum, headed by former Congressional Budget Office director Douglas Holtz-Eakin, concludes that the Green New Deal may cost up to \$93 trillion over ten years—between \$8.3 trillion and \$12.3 trillion to eliminate, at least theoretically, carbon emissions from the power and transportation sectors, and between \$42.8 trillion and \$80.6 trillion for its massive social and economic undertakings.<sup>72</sup>

Apart from the crushing financial costs of these preposterous and perilous undertakings, and the horrendous economic dislocations that would follow, I continue to return to the fact that it would require us to abandon such foundational principles as limited government, private property rights, and the capitalist economic system, and require the assembly of an even more massive bureaucracy with immense regulatory control and police powers. Decision making would be further centralized in Washington, DC, and politicians would wield enormous authority over the individual and citizenry generally. Furthermore, imagine the brownouts, blackouts, fuel shortages, scarcity of basic necessities, etc. Of course, basic human liberties, free will, mobility, etc. would eventually fade and then vanish, as the Marxist vision is pursued in earnest.

Even so, Joe Biden and the Democratic Party are all in. One of Biden's first acts after his inauguration was signing an executive order returning the United States to the Paris Agreement of 2015. Of course, such an agreement should be handled as a treaty, given the far-reaching impact this kind of an international agreement will have on American society. But rather than risk losing a vote in the Senate, where treaties require the support of two-thirds (67) of the senators, Biden, like President Barack Obama before him, simply issued an edict.

Among other things, the agreement commits signatories to “[a]cknowledg[e] that climate change is a common concern of humankind, [and therefore] Parties should, when taking action to address climate change, respect, promote and consider their respective obligations on human rights, the right to health, the

rights of indigenous peoples, local communities, migrants, children, persons with disabilities and people in vulnerable situations and the right to development, as well as gender equality, empowerment of women and intergenerational equity.”<sup>73</sup> One of the signatories to this agreement is Communist China, which is currently running concentration camps, where more than 1 million Uyghurs and other minorities are being enslaved, tortured, and raped, and where Uyghur women are sterilized and prisoners are summarily executed.<sup>74</sup>

Indeed, on January 19, 2021, the Trump administration formally accused China of committing “genocide and crimes against humanity” in its oppression of Uyghur Muslims in its Xinjiang region.<sup>75</sup> However, on February 16, 2021, when asked about China’s conduct during a CNN town hall, Biden said, in part: “If you know anything about Chinese history, it has always been, the time when China has been victimized by the outer world is when they haven’t been unified at home. So the central, well, vastly overstated, the central principle of [China’s president] Xi Jinping is that there must be a united, tightly controlled China. And he uses his rationale for the things he does based on that.” He later added, shockingly: “Culturally there are different norms that each country and their leaders are expected to follow.”<sup>76</sup>

Thus, all the talk and proclamations about equality, human rights, indigenous peoples, empowerment of women, as well as the right to health care, jobs, and the like in the Paris Agreement, the Green New Deal, the claims of Critical Race Theory and intersectionality, etc., are essentially ignored when a Democrat administration is faced with a brutal regime like China. Meanwhile, Biden obligates the United States to global economic and financial conditions set by international governments and bureaucrats under the rubric of climate change, without any formal input from our representatives in Congress, which will very likely negatively affect our quality of life, and which countries like China have no intention of adhering to.

In fact, literally a few hours after he was sworn in as president, Biden also signed an executive order shutting down further construction of the Keystone XL pipeline. Among other things, his fiat repeated the propaganda of some of

the most hyped charges of the extreme climate-change propagandists: “Climate change has had a growing effect on the U.S. economy, with climate-related costs increasing over the last 4 years. Extreme weather events and other climate-related effects have harmed the health, safety, and security of the American people and have increased the urgency for combatting climate change and accelerating the transition toward a clean energy economy. The world must be put on a sustainable climate pathway to protect Americans and the domestic economy from harmful climate impacts, and to create well-paying union jobs as part of a climate solution.... That crisis must be met with action on a scale and at a speed commensurate with the need to avoid setting the world on a dangerous, potentially catastrophic climate trajectory...”<sup>77</sup> Of course, the use of fossil fuels has actually reduced carbon dioxide levels. It is cheaper and cleaner than coal. And pipelines are far more efficient than transporting fuel by truck and railcar. Regardless, Biden destroyed the pipeline and thousands of union jobs with it.

But Biden was not done. On January 27, 2021, he issued another executive order that, in part, provides, as the White House explained:

[T]hat, in implementing [the order]—and building on—the Paris Agreement’s objectives, the United States will exercise its leadership to promote a significant increase in global ambition. It makes clear that both significant short-term global emission reductions and net zero global emissions by mid-century—or before—are required to avoid setting the world on a dangerous, potentially catastrophic, climate trajectory.

Among numerous other steps aimed at prioritizing climate in U.S. foreign policy and national security, the order directs the Director of National Intelligence to prepare a National Intelligence Estimate on the security implications of climate change, the State Department to prepare a transmittal package to the Senate for the Kigali Amendment to the Montreal Protocol, and all agencies to develop strategies for integrating climate considerations into their international work....

The order also calls for the establishment of a Civilian Climate Corps Initiative to put a new generation of Americans to work conserving and restoring public lands and waters, increasing reforestation, increasing

carbon sequestration in the agricultural sector, protecting biodiversity, improving access to recreation, and addressing the changing climate.

The order formalizes President Biden's commitment to make environmental justice a part of the mission of every agency by directing federal agencies to develop programs, policies, and activities to address the disproportionate health, environmental, economic, and climate impacts on disadvantaged communities.

The order establishes a White House Environmental Justice Interagency Council and a White House Environmental Justice Advisory Council to prioritize environmental justice and ensure a whole-of-government approach to addressing current and historical environmental injustices, including strengthening environmental justice monitoring and enforcement through new or strengthened offices at the Environmental Protection Agency, Department of Justice, and Department of Health and Human Services....

The order directs the Secretary of the Interior to pause on entering into new oil and natural gas leases on public lands or offshore waters to the extent possible, launch a rigorous review of all existing leasing and permitting practices related to fossil fuel development on public lands and waters, and identify steps that can be taken to double renewable energy production from offshore wind by 2030.<sup>78</sup>

Biden's executive order bypassed Congress and instituted by edict the foundation of the Green New Deal Movement's radical agenda.

In addition to striking blow after blow against the capitalist engine of the American economy, Biden next sought to seize for the federal government unprecedented authority over the private economy by expending unimaginable sums of money and plunging the nation into inconceivable debt, redirecting trillions of dollars in private sector resources to his political priorities, and imposing unprecedented regulatory controls on American industry, not only to take initial steps to fulfill the demands of the degrowth activists and their Green New Deal, but to rearrange major aspects of American society and daily life.<sup>79</sup>



On March 31, 2021, Biden announced a \$2.5 trillion plan (on top of \$1.9 trillion already spent on a so-called COVID-19 relief bill, only 9 percent of which was actually related to COVID-19<sup>80</sup>), that includes: “\$10 Billion to Create a ‘Civilian Climate Corp’; \$20 Billion to ‘Advance Racial Equity and Environmental Justice’; \$175 Billion in Subsidies for Electric Vehicles; \$213 Billion to Build/Retrofit 2 Million Houses & Buildings; \$100 Billion for New Public Schools and Making School Lunches ‘Greener’; \$12 Billion for Community Colleges; Billions to Eliminate ‘Racial and Gender Inequities’ in STEM; \$100 Billion to Expand Broadband Internet (and Government Control of It); and, \$25 Billion for Government Childcare Programs.” Only \$621 billion of the multi-trillion-dollar proposal actually goes to “transportation infrastructure and resilience.”<sup>81</sup> And, says Biden, there is more to come. Indeed, the revolution can never end. The radical site *Mother Jones* reported: “The Democratic Party’s left flank has argued that the [\$2.5 trillion] plan doesn’t spend nearly enough to address the crises the country faces. Rep. Pramila Jayapal (D-Wash.), chair of the Congressional Progressive Caucus, said the package ‘should be substantially larger,’ noting Biden had committed to \$2 trillion in climate investment alone as a candidate.”<sup>82</sup> And they are ready with something called the THRIVE Act—the Transform, Heal, and Renew by Investing in a Vibrant Economy.<sup>83</sup> The cost: \$10 trillion!<sup>84</sup>

And after all of this, when it comes to energy, the public will suffer. America’s largest state, California, has been an incubator for far-left environmental experiments. During the summer of 2020, California’s climate policies resulted in a widespread blackout. Millions of its citizens had their electrical power cut off in the midst of a heat wave. Michael Shellenberger at *Forbes* explains: “[T]he underlying reasons that California... experience[ed] rolling black-outs for the second time in less than a year stem[s] from the state’s climate policies....”... “California saw its electricity prices rise six times more than the rest of the United States from 2011 to 2019, due to its huge expansion of renewables....”<sup>85</sup>

“Even though the cost of solar panels declined dramatically from 2011 and 2019,” writes Shellenberger, “their unreliable and weather-dependent nature meant that they imposed large new costs in the form of storage and

transmissions to keep electricity reliable. California's solar panels and farms were all turning off as the blackouts began, with no help available from the states to the East already in nightfall.... The two blackouts in less than a year are strong evidence that the tens of billions that Californians have spent on renewables come with high human, economic, and environmental costs.”<sup>86</sup>

In February 2021, Texas experienced a disastrous energy crisis during a severe winter storm. The Institute for Energy Research (IER) reports that “Texas’s current energy problem is reminiscent of California’s problems last summer—another state with a renewable energy mandate.... These recent experiences prove that during extreme weather, solar panels and wind turbines are of little value to the electric grid, especially when investment flows to them because of subsidies and mandates at the expense of grid reliability and resilience.”<sup>87</sup>

IER described how Texas’s growing reliance on renewables was catastrophic. “Wind turbines at times... generated over half of the Texas power *generation*. As wind generation dropped off and demand surged, fossil-fuel generation increased and covered the supply gap. Between the mornings of Feb. 7 and Feb. 11, wind as a share of the state’s electricity fell to 8 percent from 42 percent, according to the Energy Information Administration. Gas-fired plants produced 43,800 MW of power Sunday night and coal plants chipped in 10,800 MW—about two to three times what they usually generate at their peak on any given winter day. Between 12 a.m. on Feb. 8 and Feb. 16, wind power plunged 93 percent while coal increased 47 percent and gas 450 percent. Nuclear dropped 26 percent due to a reactor shutting off because the sensor could not relay that the system was stable—a safety feature.... [T]he state’s electricity grid that depends increasingly on subsidized, intermittent wind and solar energy needs backup power to handle surges in demand. Natural gas helps but reliable coal and nuclear power are also needed.”<sup>88</sup>

IER issued this warning: “Energy security and resilience is the opposite of what... Biden and other politicians want for our future when they advocate for a ‘green new deal’ or something similar by indicating that the United States should stop consuming hydrocarbons and use only carbon free sources. They want electricity to be almost entirely generated by renewable energy and for all sectors of the economy to be supplied solely by electricity. This means if cars and

trucks and other vehicles become all electric, the increased electric demand will be supplied mainly by renewable energy, which will also need to replace the retiring hydrocarbon capacity—capacity that would last for decades if it was not forced to prematurely shutter, and which supplies 62 percent of our electricity.”<sup>89</sup>

And Biden issued an executive order in January requiring the Interior Department to develop a so-called 30 by 30 conservation plan, in which the Interior Department, working with the Agricultural and Commerce Departments, is to protect “at least 30 percent of our lands and waters by 2030” as a first step to an even more aggressive conservation policy. The left-wing Internet site Vox characterized this initiative as “a game-changing approach to nature conservation.” While details are sparse, you can imagine the kind of power that is likely to be used against private-property owners and publicly available and used areas of the country. In fact, Vox celebrates the plan as “monumental,” explaining that it “redefines what ‘conservation’ means”; “indigenous rights and sovereignty are front and center”; “farms, ranches, and other working lands will contribute to the 30 percent”; “it will increase access to nature in low-income communities”; and “the initiative also seeks to generate a lot of jobs.”<sup>90</sup>

Of course, given the desires of this Marxist-oriented movement, the anti-private property disposition of the federal bureaucracy, the endless overreach of successive administrations, and federalization of land and water use decisions, this has all the markings of an economic and property-rights catastrophe.

Unfortunately, true science, experience, and knowledge are not hallmarks of the anticapitalist degrowth zealots. As I explained in *Plunder and Deceit*, their Marxist-oriented mind-set “has... developed into a pseudo-religion and public policy obsession. In fact, the degrowthers insist their ideology reaches far beyond the environment or even its odium for capitalism and is an all-encompassing lifestyle and governing philosophy.”<sup>91</sup> And their influence reaches directly into the Oval Office and the halls of Congress, where the American economic marvel is quickly unraveling before our eyes.

## CHAPTER SIX

---

# PROPAGANDA, CENSORSHIP, AND SUBVERSION

My purpose here is not to restate in truncated form what I wrote at length in *Unfreedom of the Press*. Nonetheless, some initial and limited overlap is necessary to explain how the media are now well suited as propagandists for an anti-American, pro-Marxist agenda—from Critical Race Theory and the 1619 Project to the degrowth movement and its war on capitalism.

Writing in *Jacobin* magazine, a self-described socialist publication, Steven Sherman notes that Marx “was a journalist more or less all of his adult life. He started writing for the *Rheinische Zeitung* in 1842, and founded his own paper in 1848. His work for the [*New York*] *Tribune* came about because he’d met an American newspaper editor, Charles Dana (who would later go on to edit the *New York Sun*) in Cologne in 1848, and a few years later Dana asked Marx to contribute some articles to the *New York Tribune* on the situation in Germany. I think that Marx and Engels viewed the *Tribune* as a way to publicize their views and to influence debate with a large number of readers....”<sup>1</sup>

In an interview with James Ledbetter, the editor of *Dispatches for the New York Tribune*, a 2008 book of Marx’s articles for the *Tribune*, Ledbetter explains that “the basic Marx approach to his *New York Tribune* column was to take an event that was in the news—an election, an uprising, the second Opium War, the outbreak of the American Civil War—and sift through it until he could boil it down to some fundamental questions of politics or economics. And then on those questions he would make his judgment. In this sense, Marx’s journalism

does resemble some of the writing that is published today in journals of opinion, and it's not hard to see a direct line between Marx's journalistic writing and the kind of tendentious writing on public affairs that characterized much political journalism (especially in Europe) in the twentieth century."<sup>2</sup>

Thus, Marx approached journalism as modern journalists do today—that is, he was unencumbered by a commitment to actual news reporting. Instead, his reporting would shape the news around his own opinions and ideology.

“After 1848, Marx learned the power of counterrevolution,” writes Ledbetter, “and began to believe that existing systems of government and economy could not be overthrown until a relatively informed and organized proletariat could be mobilized to do so. As became clear with every passing year, in many nations such organization was decades away, if it existed at all.”<sup>3</sup>

In short, Marx understood the power of mass communication and the need to control it and shape it to frame events and opinions. In other words, the purpose was to propagandize, not inform.

“[R]eading through Marx's *Tribune* dispatches, you can't help but see an urgency, an excitement—almost an impatience—in his portrayals of some insurrections and crises in Europe and India. At times he wrote as if this particular rise in corn prices, or this little dust-up with authorities in Greece, was going to be *the* spark that would ignite revolution. And it's not as if one can fault Marx for feeling that way; after all, during this period crowned heads of Europe were toppling and certainly at least liberal revolutions seemed likely in a number of settings. But there are times when his discipline of thought appears to leave him, and he is also prone to the tautology that revolution can only occur when the masses are ready, but we can't know for certain if the masses are ready until they create a revolution.”<sup>4</sup>

Ledbetter explains that Marx was indeed a revolutionary advocating his ideology of material historicism, but he was, first and foremost, a journalist. “Marx today is taught as an economic theorist; as a political thinker; and to some degree as a historian and philosopher. Each category is valid; each is also incomplete. The historical record, however, at least suggests another category: that Marx should be thought of as a professional writer, as a journalist. The Penguin Classics volume I've edited is but a sample; overall Marx produced, with

help from Engels, nearly five hundred articles for the *Tribune*, which together amass nearly seven volumes of the two men's fifty-volume collected works. I think we come closer to understanding the importance of rhetoric in Marx's work if we think of him as a journalist."<sup>5</sup>

The fact is modern journalists, from the *New York Times* and *Washington Post* to CNN and MSNBC, and most other news platforms, have much in common with Marx-the-journalist, as will become evident. They have abandoned the traditional role of a reporter for that of social activist—driving most of the same major issues and agendas as the various Marxist movements in the United States. The transition did not happen overnight, but has been building for the better part of a century.

Indeed, more than a half century ago, the late Richard M. Weaver, professor of English at the University of Chicago, and referenced earlier in the book, had already commented on the beginning of the end of genuine journalism in America. In his book *Ideas Have Consequences*, he wrote that the modern press is actually a highly negative force in our society. He was not opposed to a free press, of course, but he was repelled by what it had become. Weaver opined, “[F]or Plato, truth was a living thing, never wholly captured by men even in animated discourse and its purest form, certainly, never brought to paper. In our day it would seem that a contrary presumption has grown up. The more firmly an utterance is stereotyped, the more likely it is to win credit. It is assumed that engines as expensive and as powerful as the modern printing press will naturally be placed in the hands of men of knowledge. Faith in the printed word has raised journalism to the rank of oracles; yet how could there be a better description of them than these line from the *Phaedrus*: ‘They will appear to be omniscient and will generally know nothing; they will be tiresome, having the reputation of knowledge without the reality?’”<sup>6</sup>

“If the realization of truth is the product of a meeting of minds,” wrote Weaver, “we may be skeptical of the physical ability of the mechanism to propagate it as long as that propagation is limited to the printing and distribution of stories which give ‘one unvarying answer.’ And this circumstance brings up at once the question of the intention of the rulers of the press. There is much to indicate that modern publication wishes to minimize discussion.

Despite many artful pretensions to the contrary, it does not want an exchange of views, save perhaps on academic matters. Instead, it encourages men to read in the hope that they will absorb.”<sup>7</sup>

In this, Weaver is condemning the nature of media as organized propaganda involving individuals who are not particularly bright or knowledgeable about the matters on which they write or speak, but are propagandists for particular viewpoints.

Weaver argued that “[t]here is another circumstance which raises grave doubts about the contribution of journalism to the public weal. Newspapers are under strong pressure to distort in the interest of holding attention.... It is an inescapable fact that newspapers thrive on friction and conflict. One has only to survey the headlines of some popular journal, often presented symbolically in red, to note the *kind* of thing which is considered news. Behind the big story there nearly always lies a battle of some sort. Conflict, after all, is the essence of drama, and it is a truism that newspapers deliberately start and prolong quarrels; by allegation, by artful quotation, by the accentuation of unimportant differences, they create antagonism where none was felt to exist before. And this is profitable practically, for the opportunity to dramatize a fight is an opportunity for news. Journalism, on the whole, is glad to see a quarrel start and sorry to see it end. In the more sensational publications this spirit of passion and violence, manifested in a certain recklessness of diction, with vivid verbs and fortissimo adjectives, creeps into the very language. By the attention it gives their misdeeds it makes criminals heroic and politicians large than life...”<sup>8</sup>

I would go a step further—the press not only starts and prolongs quarrels, but thrives today on the exploitation of issues and agendas that serve the purposes of the various Marxist movements, and in doing so inflames and divides the entire nation along ideological lines.

“In reviewing the persistent tendency of the newspapers to corrupt, I shall cite a passage from [author] James Fenimore Cooper,” writes Weaver. “Though Cooper lived before the advent of yellow journalism, he seems to have stated the essential situation with a truth and eloquence impossible to improve on when he said in *The American Democrat*: ‘As the press of this country now exists, it would seem to be expressly devised by the great agent of mischief, to depress and

destroy all that is good, and to elevate and advance all that is evil in the nation. The little truth that is urged, is usually urged coarsely, weakened and rendered vicious, by personalities; while those who live by falsehoods, fallacies, enmities, partialities and the schemes of the designing, find the press the very instrument that the devils would invent to effect their designs.”<sup>9</sup>

Weaver and Cooper were highlighting what would become the media’s use of targeted, personal attacks on individuals and subjects that defy or resist the trajectory of events and movements for which journalists have become committed and open advocates. This is seen every day with, for example, the relentless polemical characterizations of individuals and groups as climate change deniers, Trump deplorables, white supremacists, etc.

Weaver observes, “The constant stream of sensation, eulogized as lively propagation of what the public wants to hear, discourages the pulling-together of events from past time into a whole for contemplation. Thus, absence of reflection keeps the individual from being aware of his former selves, and it is highly questionable whether anyone can be a member of a metaphysical community who does not preserve such memory. Upon the presence of the past in the present depends all conduct and direct knowledge. There can be little doubt that this condition of the mind is a large factor in the low political morality of the age.”<sup>10</sup>

Of course, the whole of Marxist thought is the cleansing of history for the purification of future existence—that is, all that came before must be rejected and destroyed, by violent revolution if necessary, to make way for the Marxist society.

As will become clear, a combination of propaganda, pseudo-events, social activism, and targeted, personal attacks has replaced traditional journalism. Moreover, it actively promotes the various causes and movements of the American Marxist.

Edward Bernays, considered the father of modern propaganda, wrote in his 1928 book, *Propaganda*, that “propaganda is a consistent, enduring effort to create or shape events to influence the relations of the public to an enterprise, idea or group.... So vast are the numbers of minds which can be regimented, and



so tenacious are they when regimented, that a group at times offers an irresistible pressure before which legislators, editors, and teachers are helpless.”<sup>11</sup>

Bernays explained: “The minority [including elites and activists] has discovered a powerful help in influencing majorities. It has been found possible so to mold the mind of the masses that they will throw their newly gained strength in the desired direction. In the present structure of society, this practice is inevitable. Whatever of social importance is done today, whether in politics, finance, manufacturing, agriculture, charity, education, or other fields, must be done with the help of propaganda. Propaganda is the executive arm of the invisible government.”<sup>12</sup>

Richard Gunderman at [phys.org](http://phys.org) points out that “[w]hat Bernays’ writings furnish is not a principle or tradition by which to evaluate the appropriateness of propaganda, but simply a means for shaping public opinion for any purpose whatsoever, whether beneficial to human beings or not. This observation led Supreme Court Justice Felix Frankfurter to warn President Franklin Roosevelt against allowing Bernays to play a leadership role in World War II, describing him and his colleagues as ‘professional poisoners of the public mind, exploiters of foolishness, fanaticism, and self-interest.’”<sup>13</sup>

In his 1927 book, *Propaganda Technique in the World War*, Harold Dwight Lasswell describes propaganda as a tool used by the press and others, cloaked as learning and wisdom. “Propaganda is a concession to the rationality of the modern world. A literate world, a reading world, a schooled world prefers to thrive on argument and news. It is sophisticated to the extent of using print; and he that takes to print shall live or perish by the Press. All the apparatus of diffused erudition popularizes the symbols and forms of pseudo-rational appeal; the wolf of propaganda does not hesitate to masquerade in the sheepskin. All the voluble men of the day—writers, reporters, editors, preachers, lecturers, teachers, politicians—are drawn into the service of propaganda to amplify a master voice. All is conducted with the decorum and the trappings of intelligence, for this is a rational epoch, and demands its raw meat cooked and garnished by adroit and skillful chefs.”<sup>14</sup>

The late political theorist Hannah Arendt wrote in her book *The Origins of Totalitarianism* that “while it is true that the masses are obsessed by a desire to escape from reality because in their essential homelessness, they can no longer bear its accidental, incomprehensible aspects, it is also true that their longing for fiction has some connection with those capacities of the human mind whose structural consistency is superior to mere occurrence. The masses’ escape from reality is a verdict against the world in which they are forced to live and in which they cannot exist, since coincidence has become its supreme master and human beings need the constant transformation of chaotic and accidental conditions into a man-made pattern of relative consistency. The revolt of the masses against ‘realism,’ common sense, and all ‘the plausibilities of the world’... was the result of their atomization, of their loss of social status along with which they lost the whole sector of communal relationships in whose framework common sense makes sense. In their situation of spiritual and social homelessness, a measured insight into the interdependence of the arbitrary and the planned, the accidental and the necessary, could no longer operate. Totalitarian propaganda can outrageously insult common sense only where common sense has lost its validity. Before the alternative of facing the anarchic growth and total arbitrariness of decay or bowing down before the most rigid, fantastically fictitious consistency of an ideology, the masses probably will always choose the latter and be ready to pay for it with individual sacrifices—and this not because they are stupid or wicked, but because in the general disaster this escape grants them a minimum of self-respect.”<sup>15</sup>

In other words, people in a culture or society in decline, which ceases to be a unifying and civil society, and where the just social order unravels, are highly susceptible to believing and following dangerous fictions, even if they lead to their own demise.

“Before they seize power and establish a world according to their doctrines,” wrote Arendt, “totalitarian movements conjure up a lying world of consistency which is more adequate to the needs of the human mind than reality itself; in which, through sheer imagination, uprooted masses can feel at home and are spared the never-ending shocks which real life and real experiences deal to human beings and their expectations. The force possessed by totalitarian

propaganda—before the movements have the power to drop iron curtains to prevent anyone’s disturbing, by the slightest reality, the gruesome quiet of an entirely imaginary world—lies in its ability to shut the masses off from the real world. The only signs which the real world still offers to the understanding of the unintegrated and disintegrating masses—whom every new stroke of ill luck makes more gullible—are, so to speak, its lacunae, the questions it does not care to discuss publicly, or the rumors it does not dare to contradict....”<sup>16</sup>

As I explained in *Ameritopia*, Utopianism [which would include totalitarianism]... finds a receptive audience among the society’s disenchanting, disaffected, dissatisfied, and maladjusted who are unwilling or unable to assume responsibility for their own real or perceived conditions but instead blame their surroundings, ‘the system,’ and others. They are lured by the false hopes and promises of utopian transformation and the criticisms of the existing society, to which their connection is tentative or nonexistent. Improving the malcontents’ lot becomes linked to the utopian cause. Moreover, disparaging and diminishing the successful and accomplished becomes an essential tactic.... By exploiting human frailties, frustrations, jealousies, and inequities, a sense of meaning and self-worth is created in the malcontent’s otherwise unhappy and directionless life. Simply put, equality in misery—that is, equality of result or conformity—is advanced as a just, fair, and virtuous undertaking. Liberty, therefore, is inherently immoral, except where it avails equality.”<sup>17</sup>

In addition to propaganda, or perhaps a form of propaganda, is what the late Daniel J. Boorstin, a librarian of the United States Congress and professor of history at the University Chicago, labeled “pseudo-events”—that is, staged press events. Boorstin explained: “In a totalitarian society, where people are flooded by purposeful lies, the real facts are of course misrepresented, but the representation itself is not ambiguous. The propaganda lie is asserted as if it were true. Its object is to lead people to believe that the truth is simpler, more intelligible, than it really is.... Propaganda oversimplifies experience, pseudo-events overcomplicate it.”<sup>18</sup>

Boorstin notices how the media cleverly use pseudo-events to promote causes and agendas. He explained that “[a]t first it may seem strange that the rise of pseudo-events has coincided with the growth of the professional ethic which

obliges newsmen to omit editorializing and personal judgments from their news accounts. But now it is in the making of pseudo-events that newsmen find ample scope for their individuality and creative imagination.”<sup>19</sup>

Indeed, we are inundated by pseudo-events rather than actual news—that is, an unreality of the journalist’s making. For example, for literally several years, our nation was fed relentless “news” stories about President Donald Trump’s having colluded with Russia to win his election in 2016. This spurred congressional hearings, a criminal investigation, and endless stories piled upon endless stories. Pulitzer Prizes were awarded for utterly false news reports. It was perhaps the greatest media hoax in journalistic history.

As Boorstin observes, “In a democratic society like ours—and more especially in a highly literate, wealthy, competitive, and technologically advanced society—the people can be flooded by pseudo-events. For us, freedom of speech and the press and of broadcasting includes freedom to create pseudo-events. Competing politicians, competing newsmen, and competing news media contest in this creation. They vie with one another in offering attractive, ‘informative’ accounts and images of the world. They are free to speculate on the facts, to bring new facts into being, to demand answers to their own contrived questions. Our ‘free market place of ideas’ is a place where people are confronted by competing pseudo-events and are allowed to judge among them. When we speak of ‘informing’ the people this is what we really mean.”<sup>20</sup>

Thus, we seem to live in two worlds simultaneously: the fictional world that the media have created for us, and the real world of our daily existence that has little or no relationship to pseudo-events. Yet for many, the former can be alluring. “The American citizen,” wrote Boorstin, “thus lives in a world where fantasy is more real than reality, where the image has more dignity than its original. We hardly dare face our bewilderment because our ambiguous experience is so pleasantly iridescent, and the solace of belief in contrived reality is so thoroughly real. We have become eager accessories to the great hoaxes of the age. These are the hoaxes we play on ourselves.”<sup>21</sup>

The repetition, force, and pervasiveness of pseudo-events create a seductive appeal, making it more difficult to discern news and real events from the concocted. And the fake often becomes more appealing than the factual.

“Pseudo-events from their very nature tend to be more interesting and more attractive than spontaneous events. Therefore, in American public life today pseudo-events tend to drive all other kinds of events out of our consciousness, or at least to overshadow them. Earnest, well-informed citizens seldom notice that their experience of spontaneous events is buried by pseudo-events. Yet nowadays, the more industriously they work at ‘informing’ themselves the more this tends to be true.”<sup>22</sup>

In fact, pseudo-events, like propaganda, which are intended to deceive, control, and direct the people, are critical to promoting Marxist and totalitarian movements. Conversely, they are thoroughly destructive of a free, open, and democratic society. Boorstin explains that “[i]n nineteenth-century America the most extreme modernism held that man was made by his environment. In twentieth-century America, without abandoning belief that we are made by our environment, we also believe our environment can be made almost wholly by us.... But to what end? How surprising if men who make their environment and fill experience with whatever they please could not also make their God!...”<sup>23</sup>

More recently, journalism professors and others have invented another rationale for insinuating “social activism” into reporting. They call it “public (or community) journalism.” As with American Marxism generally, and education in particular, the social activist journalists who now populate the vast majority of America’s newsrooms are John Dewey followers. Most of them consciously, some of them unknowingly. Some among them openly admit it, others pretend otherwise. Among other things, Dewey asserted: “When... I say that the first object of a renascent liberalism is education, I mean that its task is to aid in producing habits of mind and character, the intellectual and moral patterns, that are somewhere near even with the actual movements of events. It is, I repeat, the split between the latter as they have externally occurred and the ways of desiring, thinking, and of putting emotion and purpose into execution that is the basic cause of present confusion in mind and paralysis in action. The educational task cannot be accomplished merely by working upon men’s minds, without action that effects actual change in situations. The idea that dispositions and attitudes can be altered by merely ‘moral’ means conceived of as something that goes on wholly inside of persons is itself one of the old patterns that has to be changed.

Thought, desire and purpose exist in a constant give and take of interaction with enviroing conditions. But resolute thought is the first step in that change of action that will itself carry further the needed change in patterns of mind and character.”<sup>24</sup>

Thus, Dewey argues that “the habit of the mind” and certain ways of thinking, combined with social activism, must be indoctrinated into the public psyche. In other words, the public must be indoctrinated with the social activist mind-set.

Dewey continued: “In short, liberalism must now become radical, meaning by ‘radical’ perception of the necessity of thoroughgoing changes in the set-up of institutions and corresponding activity to bring the changes to pass. For the gulf between what the actual situation makes possible and the actual state itself is so great that it cannot be bridged by piecemeal policies undertaken *ad hoc*.... If radicalism be defined as perception of need for radical change, then today any liberalism which is not also radicalism is irrelevant and doomed.”<sup>25</sup>

Hence, radical steps must be taken, if and as necessary, to drive ideological ambitions into action throughout society. No half-measures or half-steps. As Dewey clearly knew, Marx was also intolerant of half-measures. He condemned socialism as a bastardization of his ideology, making the “workers’ paradise” an impossibility.

And this is what animates and motivates the Dewey adherents in the press, which now accounts for most newsrooms. Michael Schudson, professor at University of California, San Diego, writes: “Public journalism, like reforms of the Progressive Era, advances an unresolved blend of empowering the people and entrusting elites and experts with public responsibility. The Progressives supported both the initiative and referendum, which gave power to the people, and city manager government, which shifted power to professionals. The Progressives praised both direct primaries, giving power to the people, and a merit-based civil service, giving power to the educationally qualified. What all these reforms, both populist and elitist, shared was antipathy to political parties and to conventional partisanship. They also shared something like public journalism’s ethical emphasis on proceduralism: advocate democracy without advocating particular policy solutions.”<sup>26</sup>

Yet journalists assure us that such an approach is not about taking political sides or ideological positions, but problem solving and serving the community. This is nonsense. For example, in a 2016 article for *Stanford Magazine*, Theodore L. Glasser, professor of communications at Stanford University, reveals himself. He writes, in part: “In his remarkably provocative commencement address, documentarian Ken Burns called on members of the Stanford Class of 2016 to put aside their political differences and work together to defeat Donald Trump. Without mentioning him by name, Burns portrayed Trump as unequivocally unqualified for the presidency. In an indictment we might expect from the leftist filmmaker Michael Moore, the politically mainstream Burns dismissed Trump as an ‘infantile, bullying man’; a ‘person who easily lies’; a candidate ‘who has never demonstrated any interest in anyone or anything but himself and his own enrichment.’ While Burns said he has for decades ‘diligently practiced and rigorously maintained a conscious neutrality’ in his work, ‘avoiding the advocacy’ of many of his colleagues, he now believes that ‘there comes a time when I—and you—can no longer remain neutral, silent. We must speak up—and speak out.’ Burns singled out journalists, ‘torn between a nagging responsibility to good journalism and the big ratings a media circus always delivers,’ for failing ‘to expose this charlatan.’”<sup>27</sup>

Glasser, writing approvingly, states: “But does Burns really want journalists to speak up and speak out, to abandon, at least in their dealings with Trump, their commitment to neutrality? Is he rejecting the ideal of the detached and disinterested reporter? Does he envision a press no longer steeped in the virtues of impartiality and objectivity? Does he plan to produce his own account of Trump-the-charlatan, something akin to the work of legendary CBS documentarian Edward R. Murrow, whom he mentioned approvingly; something, say, in the spirit of Murrow’s exposé of Wisconsin senator Joseph McCarthy, the charlatan of the 1950s? Yes, I hope, to all of the above.”<sup>28</sup>

And Glasser is hardly alone in this deceit.

Davis Merritt, author of *Public Journalism and Public Life*, declares: “Because we are unavoidably participants and because our profession is dependent on democracy’s continuing success, we need to develop a working philosophy of participation in helping public life go well. I call it *the fair-minded*

*participant*. Adopting that philosophy does not mean abandoning good judgment, fairness, balance, accuracy or truth. It does, however, mean employing those virtues on the field of play, not from the far-removed press box; not as a contestant, but as a fair-minded participant whose presence is necessary in order for outcomes to be determined fairly; that is, under the agreed-on rules, by the contestants.... The tradition that says journalists should not deal in the realm of values creates yet another disconnect between us (and our product) and citizens at large.”<sup>29</sup>

And how does Merritt’s fair-minded participation play out on the pages of his newspaper? Here is an example where on December 8, 2015, writing for his Kansas newspaper, Merritt proclaimed: “Donald Trump has not received a single vote and has zero delegates to the Republican National Convention, so time remains to head off what theoretically could be a candidate disaster for the GOP and a governing disaster for America. But that’s a lot less time than the nation had in August when his bizarre presidential campaign took wings out of a huge, raucous rally in Mobile, Ala.”<sup>30</sup>

Of course, Trump would go on to win the presidency. But, again, Merritt is a partisan whose idea of public journalism is the promotion of his ideological bias. Indeed, he makes no bones about his hatred for Trump. “The persistence of Trump’s reckless, bullying, superficial, no-apologies, often truth-free campaign has mainline Republicans terrified. To most of them, a candidate as radical as Trump would surely result in the loss of another presidential race (see Barry Goldwater and George McGovern) and likely the loss of the Senate.”<sup>31</sup>

Merritt admonishes that objective or impartial reporting, or at least its pursuit, is too sterile for the public journalism crowd. In truth, their view of improving democracy and solving community problems is, in fact, more about the promotion of their political agenda. Nonetheless, Merritt and his colleagues self-servingly insist on the openness and earnestness of their approach. In fact, they seem to view themselves, self-righteously, as Good Samaritans: “My primary purpose is not to try to describe or encourage a particular device or set of practices,” explains Merritt. “To do so would, in itself, limit the possibilities. My objective is to stimulate thoughtful, serious discussion both inside and outside the profession about journalism’s true place in democracy. The aim is not to



provide, even if I could, immediate and specific answers. Journalism and public life did not reach their points of present decline quickly, and they will not recover quickly. Those specific answers will have to be found over time and through earnest experimentation.”<sup>32</sup>

Another of the public journalism preachers is Jay Rosen, professor of journalism at New York University. He argues that “the newspaper of the future will have to rethink its relationship to all the institutions that nourish public life, from libraries to university to cafes. It will have to do more than ‘cover’ these institutions when they happen to make news. It will have to do more than print their advertisements. The newspaper must see that its own health is dependent on the health of dozens of other agencies which pull people out of their private worlds. For the greater pull of the public life, the greater the need for the newspaper. *Empty streets are bad for editors*, despite the wealth of crime news they may generate. The emptier the streets, the emptier the newspaper will seem to the readers barricaded in the private homes....”<sup>33</sup>

Like the others, Rosen insists that journalism is dying not because of its failure to approach the news in an objective and impartial way, but because of its failure to relate to the common man through social activism. Indeed, Rosen condescendingly lectures that “[i]f the public is assumed to be ‘out there,’ more or less intact, then the job of the press is easy to state: to inform people about what goes on in their name and their midst. But suppose the public leads a more broken existence. At times it may be alert and engaged, but just as often it struggles against other pressures—including itself—that can win out in the end. Inattention to public matters is perhaps the simplest of these, atomization of society one of the more intricate. Money speaks louder than the public, problems overwhelm it, fatigue sets in, attention falters, cynicism swells. A public that leads this more fragile kind of existence suggests a different task for the press: not just to inform a public that may or may not emerge, but to improve the changes that will emerge. John Dewey, an early hero of mine, had suggested something like this in his 1927 book, *The Public and Its Problems*.”<sup>34</sup>

With Dewey as his hero, Rosen has spent years teaching his journalism students, and promoting to seminarians, his ideological approach to reporting. Cloaked in the nomenclature of “public” or “community” journalism, said to be

without specific rules or form, and urging the abandonment of traditional journalism, “public journalism” has contributed mightily to justifying the near complete and extensive politicization of the newsroom—where social activism in support of various American Marxist movements has engulfed the former profession of journalism, and substituted slanted and biased opinion for news.

And Rosen, like Glasser, Merritt, and most of the rest of the media, is further exposed by his open contempt for Trump. Indeed, Trump, as their target, has done more to reveal this radical movement than any other individual possibly could. Writing in the *Washington Post* during the 2016 presidential election, Rosen asserted: “Imagine a candidate who wants to *increase* public confusion about where he stands on things so that voters give up on trying to stay informed and instead vote with raw emotion. Under these conditions, does asking ‘Where do you stand, sir?’ serve the goals of journalism, or does it enlist the interviewer in the candidate’s chaotic plan? I know what you’re thinking, journalists: ‘What do you want us to do? Stop covering a major party candidate for president? That would be irresponsible.’ True. But this reaction short-circuits intelligent debate. Beneath every common practice in election coverage there are premises about how candidates will behave. I want you to ask: Do these still apply? Trump isn’t behaving like a normal candidate; he’s acting like an unbound one. In response, journalists have to become less predictable themselves. They have to come up with novel responses. They have to do things they have never done. They may even have to shock us.”<sup>35</sup>

“They may need to collaborate,” writes Rosen, “across news brands in ways they have never known. They may have to call Trump out with a forcefulness unseen before. They may have to risk the breakdown of decorum in interviews and endure excruciating awkwardness. Hardest of all, they will have to explain to the public that Trump is a special case, and normal rules do not apply.”<sup>36</sup>

Clearly, Rosen’s instruction was aggressively and relentlessly pursued. Conversely, in reporting on the candidacy of Joe Biden’s presidential campaign and now presidency, the “public journalism” troop has demonstrated a dramatic turnaround and utter disinterest—even a disciplined incuriosity—in its coverage. The media today serve as a Praetorian Guard around Biden and his

extremely radical agenda, where serious and substantive scrutiny are mostly nonexistent.

Martin Linsky at the *American Prospect*, a self-described “progressive” advocacy magazine and website, cut to the chase: “For one thing, the [public journalism] movement took the cloak of detachment off the emperor. Some press icons finally acknowledged what politicians and bureaucrats and interest groups and citizens have long understood—namely, that the media are players in the game of public affairs, not disinterested observers. What they do and how they do it has consequences, whether they want to take responsibility for them or not... Rosen dissects the myth of journalistic detachment. Every story, every decision about what to cover, is based on some (usually unspoken) assumption about how the world is supposed to work. Rosen is surely right when he says that all forms of political journalism rest on a mental picture of how politics and democracy should function. There is nothing detached about it. (It must also be the case that assessments of the state of American democracy, including his own, similarly rest on a mental picture of democratic ideals.) A story about income inequality, for example, is only a story if there exists in the newsroom a perspective that inequality is bad. That a campaign looks more like a sporting event than an Oxford-Cambridge debate is a cause for hand-wringing only if you think that campaigns were once—or at least should now be—decorous.”<sup>37</sup>

The combination of propaganda, pseudo-news, and social activism in America’s newsrooms has resulted in the disastrous state of the modern press. No longer are there discernable, traditional, or professional standards applied to the reporting of news. Indeed, journalism, such as it is, has come full circle, returning to the approach applied by Marx himself. Again, as Ledbetter explained earlier: “Marx’s journalism does resemble some of the writing that is published today in journals of opinion, and it’s not hard to see a direct line between Marx’s journalistic writing and the kind of tendentious writing on public affairs that characterized much political journalism (especially in Europe) in the twentieth century.”<sup>38</sup> Moreover, Marx’s influence goes well beyond his opinion journalism: the American media have become special pleaders for the Marxist ideology, or at least advocates for those who apply it to numerous aspects of society.

But the story does not end here. In fact, it gets worse. The next step is the logical progression away from an open and free society, where indoctrination and activism are key to controlling thought and outcomes, ultimately to repression—that is, the silencing of opposition on contrary voices in pursuit of ideological purity. And that involves targeting and canceling people who refuse to relent.

In his book *Rules for Radicals*, Saul Alinsky, well-known Marxist community organizer, wrote: “A reformation means that masses of our people have reached the point of disillusionment with past ways and values. They don’t know what will work but they do know that the prevailing system is self-defeating, frustrating, and hopeless. They don’t act for change but won’t strongly oppose those who do. The time is then ripe for revolution.... Remember: once you organize people around something as commonly agreed upon as pollution, then an organized people are on the move. From there it’s a short and natural step to political pollution, to Pentagon pollution.”<sup>39</sup>

The media have played a huge role in dispiriting the public and undermining American institutions, traditions, and institutions. And by Alinsky’s measure, the revolution is now upon us. Among other things, his tactics must now be deployed, and they include “[p]ick[ing] the target, freez[ing] it, personaliz[ing] it, and polariz[ing] it.” Alinsky continued: “In conflict tactics there are certain rules that the organizer should always regard as universalities. One is that the opposition must be singled out as the target and ‘frozen.’... Obviously there is no point to tactics unless one has a target upon which to center the attacks.... With this focus comes a polarization. As we have indicated before, all issues must be polarized if action is to follow.”<sup>40</sup>

On January 2, 2019, Chuck Todd, the host of NBC’s *Meet the Press*, provided a stark example of things to come. He openly issued a declaration to the nation that incorporated and combined all the worst practices and tactics discussed earlier. And it should have rattled every person who cares about freedom of speech and the legitimate competition of ideas as bulwarks of our country. Todd announced:

This morning, we're going to do something we don't often get to do, dive in on one topic. It's obviously extraordinarily difficult to do this, as the end of this year has proven, in the era of Trump. But we're going to take an in-depth look, regardless of that, at a literally Earth-changing subject that doesn't get talked about this thoroughly on television news, at least, climate change. But just as important as what we are going to do this hour is what we're not going to do. We're not going to debate climate change, the existence of it. The Earth is getting hotter. And human activity is a major cause, period. We're not going to give time to climate deniers. The science is settled, even if political opinion is not. And we're not going to confuse weather with climate. A heat wave is not more evidence that climate change exists than a blizzard means that it doesn't, unless the blizzard hits Miami. We do have a panel of experts with us today to help us understand the science and consequences of climate change and, yes, ideas to break the political paralysis over it.<sup>41</sup>

There are literally hundreds, if not thousands, of experts and scholars who have challenged the view that the earth is warming, or that it is warming due to man's activities, or that it may be warming but not to the extent that alarmists are claiming, or that it is warming to some extent but due to the sun or matters out of our control, etc., Todd dismisses them all as "deniers" and refuses them a national platform from which they can share their informed knowledge with the public or engage in debate on the subject. Of course, Todd does so even though he has no expertise. He is motivated by his allegiance to the climate change movement and insists on fronting for it. Obviously, he is not alone. In fact, you would be hard-pressed to find experts and scientists who challenge the climate change narrative appearing on television news programs or providing input in published news stories. But the story lines and guests promoting it are endless.<sup>42</sup>

The identical situation applies to Critical Race Theory and related movements. As Zach Goldberg demonstrated in *Tablet* magazine: "Countless articles have been published... often under the guise of straight news reporting, in which journalists take for granted the legitimacy of novel theories about race and identity. Such articles illustrate a prevailing new political morality on

questions of race and justice that has taken power at the [*New York Times*] and the [*Washington Post*]—a worldview sometimes abbreviated as ‘wokeness’ that combines the sensibilities of highly educated and hyper-liberal white professionals with elements of Black nationalism and academic critical race theory.”<sup>43</sup>

“For some Americans,” writes Goldberg, “all of this is surely good news. For them, the rapid proliferation of articles employing the tropes of critical race theory to ascribe racial guilt in the American system represents a reckoning with white supremacy and inequality that is long overdue. There are many possible objections to this line of argument: To start, there’s the fact that dividing a diverse, multiethnic society into oppressed and oppressor categories on the basis of skin color has, as a matter of historical precedent, more often led to sectarian bloodshed than enhanced justice and equity. What’s more, the narratives promoting this new system of racial division are both factually fraudulent—built on false or misleading premises and assumptions—and deeply hostile to any attempts at factual correction. If one points out, for instance, that accounts of white supremacy as an all-powerful force in American society tend to discount that some nonwhite groups like Nigerian Americans, Indian Americans, and East Asian Americans all have more income equity than the average white person, this itself is invalidated as a racist microaggression. The media has actively promoted a theory of racism that misrepresents facts about the world while stigmatizing any effort to criticize those facts as racist.”<sup>44</sup>

Consequently, the media have joined the critical race activists, once dismissed as advocates for a radical and fringe movement, and the horrendous racism and demonization they represent and espouse, in enthusiastically advocating for their Marxist-centric transmutation of American society.

While Goldberg acknowledges inequities in American society, he also is repulsed by the “steamrolling on suppressing inconvenient facts” by those who seek to transform our country. “What the data presented... suggests is that editorial decisions made over the past decade at some of the most powerful media outlets in the world about what kind of language to use and what kind of stories merited coverage when it came to race—whatever the intention and level of forethought behind such decisions—has stoked a revival of racial

consciousness among their readers. Intentionally or not, by introducing and then constantly repeating a set of key words and concepts, publications like *The New York Times* have helped normalize among their readership the belief that ‘color’ is the defining attribute of other human beings. For those who adopt this singular focus on race, a racialized view of the world becomes baseline test of political loyalty. It requires adherents to overlook the immense diversity among so-called ‘People of Color’ and ‘People Not-of-Color’ (i.e., whoever is being lumped together as ‘white’ according to the prevailing ideological fashion). In doing so, it has made stereotypes socially acceptable, if not laudable.”<sup>45</sup>

Of course, the *Times*’ propaganda is intentional. As discussed earlier, it is the same media corporation aggressively promoting the discredited 1619 Project, which is being broadly distributed throughout the country’s public school system and, as discussed, has as its purpose brainwashing students to believe that America, from its birth, was and is an irredeemably racist and oppressive society.

Goldberg explains that “[t]he same media institutions that have promoted revisionist identitarianism and the radical transformation of American society along racial lines, could instead have focused their attention and influence on improving the *quality* of life for *all*.”<sup>46</sup>

Not surprisingly, CNN is all in. “CNN’s [CEO] Jeff Zucker announced the expansion of its beat covering race, with plans for several new positions. Delano Massey will lead the beat, and the network is creating new positions for a senior editor, senior writer and breaking and trends writer. This team will break news and cover the stories and conversations around race,’ Zucker wrote in a memo. ‘The struggles, progress, and triumphs. The systemic racism that the majority of Americans now acknowledge exists. The latest polls and studies and data. How race is intertwined with inequality in business, politics, sports, media, housing, healthcare, and education. Lack of representation in leadership roles in so many industries. The still-present signals and symbols of racism. Voices who provide solutions, inspiration, and leadership. Black, White, Latino, Asian American, Native American, Multiracial, and all races.”<sup>47</sup>

Gone are the days when the Rev. Martin Luther King Jr. declared: “I have a dream that my four little children will one day live in a nation where they will

not be judged by the color of their skin, but by the content of their character.”<sup>48</sup>

Having laid the foundation for revolutionary change in multiple areas of our society and culture, the banning, canceling, and silencing have begun in earnest. Repression, not engagement; compliance, not speech; conformity, not independence; and subjugation, not liberty, are all hallmarks of American Marxism.

Writing in the *City Journal*, Robert Henderson explains in his essay “Tell Only Lies” that “[i]t is no longer enough to be ideologically pure by current standards. One must always have held the proper beliefs. Of course, such tortuous moral standards can only lead to lying. In a recent paper titled ‘Keeping Your Mouth Shut: Spiraling Self-Censorship in the United States,’ political scientists James L. Gibson and Joseph L. Sutherland reveal that self-censorship among Americans has soared. In the 1950s, at the height of McCarthyism, 13.4 percent of Americans reported that they ‘felt less free to speak their mind than they used to.’ In 1987, the figure reached 20 percent. By 2019, 40 percent of Americans reported that they did not feel free to speak their minds.”<sup>49</sup>

“What are the consequences of this continuous self-censorship?” asks Henderson. He notes that “in his book *The Great Terror*, the British historian Robert Conquest suggests one possible answer. In a passage about Soviet show trials, Conquest was troubled by something: Why did innocent people falsely confess to appalling crimes, even when most Soviet citizens themselves did not believe these people when they confessed? Conquest offers a chilling answer: Soviet citizens grew so used to lying that expressing one more falsehood was no big deal. People grew conditioned to accept the ever-changing standards, and even affirm support for them.”<sup>50</sup> Moreover, Henderson notes that “management expert Jerry B. Harvey... describes situations in which individuals disagree with an idea but acquiesce out of a perception that others agree with it. If honesty becomes unfashionable, we operate under the assumption that others hold certain opinions, which, in fact, they do not.”<sup>51</sup>

Henderson warns: “As the rules of the game keep shifting, and individuals lose jobs or prominence because of things that they have said in the past, we will all become more adept at expressing falsehoods. It is likely that such a system will



select for individuals predisposed to being comfortable with deception. Over time, only liars will speak openly.”<sup>52</sup>

America’s colleges and universities are among the most intolerant environments for administrators, faculty, and students alike who dare to cross any of the various intersecting Marxist movements that dominate on campus. Indeed, academic freedom and free speech, once considered foundations of higher education, are no more.

The intolerance and cancel culture have spread to outright discrimination in hiring, promotion, grants, and publication of professors and graduate students who do not abide the ideology demanded by the campus revolutionaries. A March 1, 2021, study by Eric Kaufmann of the Center for the Study of Partisanship and Ideology found, among other things:

“Over 4 in 10 US and Canadian academics would not hire a Trump supporter... ; only 1 in 10 academics support firing controversial professors, nonetheless, while most do not back cancellation, many are not opposed to it, remaining non-committal; right-leaning academics experience a high level of institutional authoritarianism and peer pressure; in the US, over a third of conservative academics and PhD students have been threatened with disciplinary action for their views, while 70% of conservative academics report a hostile departmental climate for their beliefs; in the social sciences and humanities, over 9 in 10 Trump-supporting academics... say they would not feel comfortable expressing their views to a colleague; more than half of North American and British conservative academics admit self-censoring in research and teaching; younger academics and PhD students, especially in the United States, are significantly more willing than older academics to support dismissing controversial scholars from their posts, indicating that the problem of progressive authoritarianism is likely to get worse in the coming years; [and] a hostile climate plays a part in deterring conservative graduate students from pursuing careers in academia....”<sup>53</sup>

A large study of student attitudes toward free speech in 2017 by the Foundation for Individual Rights in Education found, in part: “46 percent of students recognize that hate speech is protected by the First Amendment, and 48 percent of students think the First Amendment should not protect hate

speech... ; 58 percent of college students think it's important to be part of a campus community where they are not exposed to intolerant or offensive ideas... ; in class, 30 percent of students have self-censored because they thought their words would be offensive to others; a majority of students (54 percent) report self-censoring in the classroom at some point since the beginning of college.”<sup>54</sup>

Unfortunately, taxpayer-funded elementary and secondary public schools have not escaped the politicization of thought and learning. In fact, they are now the target of such authoritarian efforts.

Diane Ravitch, a historian, education policy expert, and professor at New York University, in 2004 wrote in her book *The Language Police*: “Like others who are involved in education... I had always assumed that textbooks were based on careful research and designed to help children learn something valuable. I thought that tests were designed to assess whether they had learned it. What I did not realize was that educational materials are now governed by an intricate set of rules to screen out language and topics that might be considered controversial or offensive. Some of this censorship is trivial, some is ludicrous, and some is breathtaking in its power to dumb down what children learn in school. Initially these practices began with the intention of identifying and excluding any conscious or implicit statements of bias against African Americans, other racial or ethnic minorities, and females, whether in tests or textbooks, especially any statements that demeaned members of these groups. These efforts were entirely reasonable and justified. However, what began with admirable intentions evolved into a surprisingly broad and increasingly bizarre policy of censorship that has gone far beyond its original scope and now excises from tests and textbooks words, images, passages, and ideas that no reasonable person would consider biased in the usual meaning of the term.”<sup>55</sup>

As Ravitch rightly declares: “Censorship distorts the literature curriculum, substituting political judgments for aesthetic ones. Because of the bias and social content guidelines, editors of literature anthologies must pay more attention to having the correct count of gender groups and ethnic groups among their characters, authors, and illustrations than they do to the literary quality of the selections....”<sup>56</sup>

Today, matters are far worse. Children in classrooms throughout America are being indoctrinated with Critical Race Theory (CRT), white children are taught that they were born privileged and advantaged, and students study lessons prepared by the disgraceful *New York Times* 1619 Project; Black Lives Matter, an openly Marxist and often violent organization that actively seeks the elimination of capitalism and the American governing system, is celebrated.<sup>57</sup>

Moreover, in school district after school district, teachers are being trained to confront their white privilege and taught to refocus their knowledge of history to accommodate CRT. One need only scan the Internet for endless examples. Students and teachers are being forced to spend time on other intersectional ideologies and their politics, including gender identity and gender rights.<sup>58</sup>

Consequently, in many areas of the country, and growing, American history, the civil society, and for many, familial ethnicities, ancestries, and religious faith are being dishonored and degraded. Education is being infused with a Marxist-oriented, extremely divisive, racist and intersectional ideology, where teachers and students alike are compelled to participate in and embrace their own indoctrination.<sup>59</sup>

And there is more. The One UN Climate Change Learning Partnership, also known as UN CC:Learn, is “a collaborative initiative of 36 multilateral organizations working together to help countries build the knowledge and skills they need to take action on climate change,” including “better climate literacy and other crucial skills to tackle this challenge.” It produces learning materials and advice encouraging schools to indoctrinate children into the climate change movement.<sup>60</sup> For example, in one instructional guide titled “Why Should Schools Teach Climate Education,” the organization states: “Climate change education provides an important window into individual and societal responsibility. As educators, schools not only have an interest in teaching subjects that will prepare students for careers and earn them good test scores, but to teach them to be mindful citizens. Teaching on climate change means teaching on topics like environmental stewardship and collective responsibility —teaching students that they and those around them have a responsibility to something larger than themselves. *How do their actions affect the environment?*

*How do changes in the environment then affect others? Why should they care about recycling or sustainability?”<sup>61</sup>*

The guidance continues in its promotion of globalism, communalism, and activism: “Climate change asks us to consider the world beyond ourselves. More than that, it asks that we consider a time beyond the present. Incorporating the topic into school curriculum only stands to bring students closer to their communities. Civic engagement, one of the most important lessons schools impart on their students, can be taught through student engagement with local institutions. *How are their communities working to be more sustainable? What policies are governments putting in place, and how might students push for more?* It is not enough to simply teach students about the science behind climate change; students also need to learn how institutions and individuals deal with problems of this scale, and how they fit into that larger picture. As long as schools have a responsibility to teach global citizenship and community stewardship, they have reason to teach about climate change.”<sup>62</sup>

The ideological indoctrination and, conversely, censorship have spread well beyond formal educational institutions and the subjects of race and climate change to corporate America. *New York Post* business columnist Charles Gasparino, writing about “How corporations surrendered to hard-left wokeness,” explains that “[c]ompanies used to be in business to make money, sell stuff and employ people. They were run by executives who were proudly capitalist and believed in the country’s founding principles. No longer, it seems. Big businesses’ support of green-energy legislation, various social-justice edicts and the silencing of right-wingers on Twitter have become so routine it’s almost not news anymore.” Gasparino adds: “[T]he left-wing forces have assembled to transform corporate America into something resembling the progressive wing of the Democratic Party. The left might hate capitalism, but it has been busy implementing capitalist tools to bend big business to its will.”<sup>63</sup>

And Gasparino notes that it is working: “[M]ost shareholder votes now involve progressive edicts under the guise of so-called Environmental Social Governance investing. ESG, as it is known on Wall Street, is a way to measure everything from a firm’s compliance with green-energy initiatives to its embrace of causes such as Black Lives Matter.” Moreover, “[t]he average retail investors in

mutual funds have no say or vote in this vast transformation even as their money is being used for political purposes. The fund is responding to the vocal minority that figured out how the game is played.”<sup>64</sup>

Indeed, a reign of ideological terror has spread throughout our society and culture, canceling and banning people (professors, teachers, writers, actors, executives, reporters, etc.), historic figures, monuments, movies, television shows, radio broadcasts, books, cartoons, toys, other products, product names and brands, and even words.<sup>65</sup> Even President Trump was banned from Twitter, Facebook, and alternative social media communication platforms. The list is so long and growing so fast as to make an up-to-date compilation impossible.

So egregiously threatening to our country is this noxious and widespread war on free speech and liberty, and so quickly is it transforming American society, that on July 7, 2020, 150 mostly left-wing authors penned a public letter in *Harper's Magazine*, titled “A Letter on Justice and Open Debate.” Although the signatories, among them Noam Chomsky, share many if not most of the goals of the various Marxist-oriented movements, and some have influenced the thinking of certain of its most radical activists, they apparently also realize that unleashed tyranny is difficult if not impossible to manage and may inevitably devour many of its architects, proponents, and admirers—witness the aftermath of the French Revolution, the Russian Revolution, and China’s communist revolution. Their letter states, in part:

The free exchange of information and ideas, the lifeblood of a liberal society, is daily becoming more constricted. While we have come to expect this on the radical right, censoriousness is also spreading more widely in our culture: an intolerance of opposing views, a vogue for public shaming and ostracism, and the tendency to dissolve complex policy issues in a blinding moral certainty. We uphold the value of robust and even caustic counter-speech from all quarters. But it is now all too common to hear calls for swift and severe retribution in response to perceived transgressions of speech and thought. More troubling still, institutional leaders, in a spirit of panicked damage control, are delivering hasty and disproportionate punishments instead of considered reforms. Editors are

fired for running controversial pieces; books are withdrawn for alleged inauthenticity; journalists are barred from writing on certain topics; professors are investigated for quoting works of literature in class; a researcher is fired for circulating a peer-reviewed academic study; and the heads of organizations are ousted for what are sometimes just clumsy mistakes. Whatever the arguments around each particular incident, the result has been to steadily narrow the boundaries of what can be said without the threat of reprisal. We are already paying the price in greater risk aversion among writers, artists, and journalists who fear for their livelihoods if they depart from the consensus, or even lack sufficient zeal in agreement.

This stifling atmosphere will ultimately harm the most vital causes of our time. The restriction of debate, whether by a repressive government or an intolerant society, invariably hurts those who lack power and makes everyone less capable of democratic participation. The way to defeat bad ideas is by exposure, argument, and persuasion, not by trying to silence or wish them away. We refuse any false choice between justice and freedom, which cannot exist without each other. As writers we need a culture that leaves us room for experimentation, risk taking, and even mistakes. We need to preserve the possibility of good-faith disagreement without dire professional consequences. If we won't defend the very thing on which our work depends, we shouldn't expect the public or the state to defend it for us.<sup>66</sup>

One wonders how many of the signatories have supported Marxist movements like Black Lives Matter. Nonetheless, their letter has fallen on deaf ears. Indeed, since July 7, 2020, speech has come under an even more aggressive withering attack. For example, Big Tech—including Google, Amazon, Facebook, Apple, and Twitter—are censoring and banning at will, using one pretext after another. Again, the instances are so numerous and mounting by the day that listing them here is undoable. Nonetheless, some prominent examples are illustrative.

First, as reported by the Media Research Center (MRC), “[d]uring one of several Senate hearings into Big Tech bias [in 2020], even the CEOs of Facebook and Twitter could not name a single high-profile leftist person or entity that had been censored on their platforms when asked.” Moreover, “[h]eavily censored themes included anything related to the election, COVID-19 and the response to it and statements released by President Donald Trump. However, Big Tech even found reasons to censor conservatives over things as innocuous as a children’s book celebrating women’s suffrage.”<sup>67</sup>

MRC assembled a 2020 top ten list demonstrating the various “offenses” that caused them to sanction free speech:

1. Big Tech shuts down *New York Post*’s bombshell reporting on Hunter Biden
2. Twitter censors Trump tweet about mail-in voting in unprecedented manner
3. Candace Owens’s Facebook page is demonetized and suppressed
4. YouTube removes COVID video featuring Trump advisor Dr. Scott Atlas
5. Facebook demonetizes [the satirical site] The Babylon Bee page over Monty Python joke
6. Twitter removes all instances of Joe Biden meme
7. Instagram removes FBI crime statistics, calling them “hate speech”
8. YouTube removes video featuring man who reversed his transgender surgery
9. YouTube suspends and demonetizes conservative news network One America News (OAN)

## 10. Instagram bans ads for Senator Marsha Blackburn's children's book

On January 31, 2021, Project Veritas released a video it received from a Facebook insider where CEO Mark Zuckerberg and other top executives discussed the company's "wide-ranging powers to censor political speech and promote partisan objectives."<sup>68</sup>

In the January 7 video, Zuckerberg is seen accusing then-President Trump of subverting the republic.

"It's so important that our political leaders lead by example, make sure we put the nation first here, and what we've seen is that the president [Trump] has been doing the opposite of that.... The president [Trump] intends to use his remaining time in office to undermine the peaceful and lawful transition of power."

"His [Trump's] decision to use his platform to condone rather than condemn the actions of his supporters in the Capitol I think has rightly bothered and disturbed people in the US and around the world."

Zuckerberg also insinuated that Capitol protesters received better treatment than Black Lives Matter protesters. "I know this is just a very difficult moment for a lot of us here, and especially our black colleagues. It was troubling to see how people in this [Capitol] mob were treated compared to the stark contrast we saw during protests earlier this [past] year."

Guy Rosen, Facebook's vice president of integrity, described how the platform targets speech it deems dangerous. "We have a system that is able to freeze commenting on threads in cases where our systems are detecting that there may be a thread that has hate speech or violence... these are all things we've built over the past three-four years as part of our investments into the integrity space our efforts to protect the election."

Zuckerberg praised Biden and his political agenda. "I thought President Biden's inaugural address was very good."

"In his first day, President Biden already issued a number of Executive Orders on areas that we as a company care quite deeply about and have for



some time,” Zuckerberg said.

Zuckerberg continued, “Areas like immigration, preserving DACA, ending restrictions on travel from Muslim-majority countries, as well as other Executive Orders on climate and advancing racial justice and equity. I think these were all important and positive steps.”

In the same January 21 meeting, Facebook’s head of global affairs, Nick Clegg, addressed the international backlash that resulted from then-President Trump’s suspension from the platform. “There has been quite a lot of disquiet expressed by many leaders around the world, from the President of Mexico to Alexei Navalny in Russia, and Chancellor Angela Merkel and others saying, ‘well this shows that private companies have got too much power...’ we agree with that.” “Ideally, we wouldn’t be making these decisions on our own, we would be making these decisions in line with our own conformity, with democratically agreed rules and principles. At the moment, those democratically agreed rules don’t exist. We still have to make decisions in real-time.”

Facebook’s vice president of civil rights, Roy Austin, said that the company’s products should reflect their views on race.

“I wonder whether or not we can use Oculus to help a white police officer to understand what it feels like to be a young black man who’s stopped and searched and arrested by the police.... I want every major decision to run through a civil rights lens.”<sup>69</sup>

One reason given by Big Tech executives for censoring and banning speech on the Internet is the rise of “hate crimes.” However, a report prepared for and provided to Congress by the Commerce Department’s National Telecommunications and Information Administration (NTIA) in January —“The Role of Telecommunications in Hate Crimes”—but, incredibly, withheld from the public, concludes that the Internet did not lead to more hate crimes and that Big Tech is operating perilously like a tyrannical oligarch.

A copy of the report, which was provided to Breitbart News, emphatically concludes that “[t]he evidence does not show that during the last decade, a time of expansive growth of electronic communications, particularly on the Internet

and mobile devices as well as social media, there has been a rise in hate crime incidents.” The NTIA’s report also issues a sharp warning: “We caution that efforts to control or monitor online speech, even for the worthy goal of reducing crime, present serious First Amendment concerns and run counter to our nation’s dedication to free expression....”<sup>70</sup>

The NTIA strongly admonishes Big Tech against its tyrannical practices: “[T]ech leaders have recognized that relying on human teams alone to review content will not be enough and that artificial intelligence will have to play a significant role. That said, there are, of course, significant policy and practical limitations to reliance on automated content moderation. Interestingly, much of this technology is being developed from approaches pioneered by the Chinese Communist Party to stifle political discussion and dissent.

The report goes on: “Given that all the major social media platforms have rules against hate speech and, in fact, employ sophisticated algorithmic artificial intelligence (AI) approaches to enforce these often vague and contradictory rules in a manner also used by tyrannous regimes, it is appropriate to ask what they gain from it. Certainly, as this Report shows, the platforms have no reasonable expectation that their censorship will end hate crimes or even diminish it, as no empirical evidence exists linking increased hate speech with hate crimes. Further, this censorship poses real dangers to our political system. Under the hate speech prohibitions and other censorship rules, the platforms have removed content that many consider seriously engaged with pressing political and social issues.”<sup>71</sup>

No doubt, the NTIA will be ignored. That is the nature of ideologically driven decision making. In fact, at a Senate hearing in November 2020, the Democrats on the committee demanded that Big Tech do more, and faster, to silence speech on their platforms.<sup>72</sup>

Big Tech also went to extraordinary lengths to try to destroy a small, entrepreneurial company, Parler, which was quickly gaining a following of millions of citizens who mostly did not share the ideological bias, political partisanship, and censorship practices of these huge multibillion-dollar global companies. As the *Pittsburgh Post-Gazette* put it: “The social media site Parler has been suspended from Google’s and Apple’s app stores, and Amazon has stopped providing the company with cloud services, effectively killing the service

and prompting Parler to launch a federal lawsuit against the tech giant.... The killing of Parler amounts to a chilling assault on speech.... Social media, like much of the news media, has become a wedge between Americans who are decamping to different platforms along ideological lines in the tens of thousands in the wake of the bans. That cannot be a good thing for the country.”<sup>73</sup>

Parler has fought its way back, but the collusive and monopolistic acts of Big Tech to destroy an independent platform were an extraordinary act of tyranny, and many in the media, unlike the *Post-Gazette*, were either silent or supportive of Big Tech’s action, constantly referring to Parler as a platform for right-wingers, white supremacists, violent conspirators, and the like, all of which was untrue.

Big Tech’s ideological and political preferences can also be established by examining the political donations of their executives and employees, and which candidates and party they subsidize and invest in. The picture could not be clearer. The Center for Responsive Politics reports that “[e]mployees at big tech giants, including Alphabet (Google’s parent), Amazon, Facebook, Apple and Microsoft, donated millions to various Democrats’ campaigns in the 2020 election cycle. Employees at the five companies shelled out a combined \$12.3 million to Biden’s campaign and millions more to Democrats in high-profile Senate contests, such as recently elected Jon Ossoff (D-Ga.) and Raphael Warnock (D-Ga.). Employees of big tech firms ranked among the top donors to each of those Democrats. With most donations coming from company employees, Alphabet contributed around \$21 million to Democrats in the 2020 election cycle, with Amazon contributing around \$9.4 million. Facebook, Microsoft and Apple contributed about \$6 million, \$12.7 million and \$6.6 million to Democrats, respectively. The majority of each of the big tech firm’s contributions went to Democratic candidates, and excluding Microsoft, the Biden campaign was the top recipient with Ossoff and Warnock ranking in the top 10. Microsoft’s top recipient for contributions was the Senate Majority PAC, the super PAC affiliated with Democratic Senate leader Chuck Schumer. The Democratic National Committee ranked in the top three recipients for all of the companies.”<sup>74</sup>

CNBC reported: “Of current CEOs at large-cap tech companies, Netflix’s Reed Hastings opened his wallet the widest. Hastings and his wife, Patty Quillin, donated more than \$5 million. The biggest chunk went to the Senate Majority PAC, a group backing Democratic candidates in the closest races, like in Maine, Texas and Iowa.... Between funds to campaigns and outside groups, employees from internet companies committed 98% of their contributions to Democrats, according to the Center for Responsive Politics.”<sup>75</sup>

And then there is the incestuous relationship between the Biden administration and Big Tech, in which Biden rewarded Big Tech companies by hiring at least fourteen current and former executives from Apple, Google, Amazon, Twitter, and Facebook to serve in his transition team and administration.<sup>76</sup>

---

The Democratic Party, not merely its surrogates, is playing a major and direct role in promoting censorship and repression. In November 2020, Rep. Alexandria Ocasio-Cortez (D-NY) posted on Twitter: “Is anyone archiving these Trump sycophants for when they try to downplay or deny their complicity in the future? I foresee decent probability of many deleted Tweets, writings, photos in the future.” Encouraged by her declaration, a group called the Trump Accountability Project was formed. The group declared: “Remember what they did. We should not allow the following groups of people to profit from their experience: Those who elected him. Those who staffed his government. Those who funded him.”<sup>77</sup>

Indeed, there was much talk on social media and the media generally about blacklisting Trump administration officials and Trump supporters, and preventing them from finding work in the private sector. Former first lady Michelle Obama posted a statement on Twitter after rioters overran the Capitol Building, demanding that Trump be banned from all social platforms for life. Needless to say, there were numerous others in public office or public positions who did the same. And Big Tech complied.

Perhaps the most chilling and blatant example of the war on speech is a February 22, 2021, letter sent from two senior California House Democrats,

Anna Eshoo and Jerry McNerney, to the chief executives of AT&T, Verizon, Roku, Amazon, Apple, Comcast, Charter, DISH, Cox, Altice, Hulu, and Alphabet, demanding to know why Fox News (Fox), One American News Network (OANN), and Newsmax are carried on these corporations' platforms. The companies received essentially the same letter. The congresspeople include a long list of sources, which are mostly partisan "studies" and articles. I will focus on the letter sent to AT&T.

The congresspeople wrote: "Misinformation on TV has led to our current polluted information environment that radicalizes individuals to commit seditious acts and rejects public health best practices, among other issues in our public discourse. Experts have noted that the right-wing media ecosystem is 'much more susceptible... to disinformation, lies, and half-truths.' Right-wing media outlets, like Newsmax, One America News Network, and Fox News all aired misinformation about the November 2020 elections.... Fox News... has spent years spewing misinformation about American politics.

"These same networks also have been key vectors of spreading misinformation related to the pandemic. A media watchdog found over 250 cases of COVID-19 misinformation on Fox News in just a five-day period, and economists demonstrated that Fox News had a demonstrable impact on non-compliance with public health guidelines...."<sup>78</sup>

The congresspeople failed to mention that the "media watchdog" is the notoriously dishonest Media Matters, a radical, left-wing, pro-Democrat site. The *Daily Caller* found that they "did not provide the methodology used to establish each instance of what it identified as Fox News misinformation for independent review." It further concluded that the report itself was filled with "misinformation."<sup>79</sup>

The congresspeople demanded that AT&T and the other companies provide them, in about two weeks' time, the following information—in part:

What moral or ethical principles (including those related to journalistic integrity, violence, medical information, and public health) do you apply in deciding which channels to carry or when to take adverse actions against a channel?

Do you require, through contracts or otherwise, that the channels you carry abide by any content guidelines? If so, please provide a copy of the guidelines.

What steps did you take prior to, on, and following the November 3, 2020, elections and the January 6, 2021, attacks to monitor, respond to, and reduce the spread of disinformation, including encouragement or incitement of violence by channels your company disseminates to millions of Americans? Please describe each step that you took and when it was taken.

Have you ever taken any actions against a channel for using your platform to disseminate any disinformation? If yes, please describe each action and when it was taken.

Are you planning to continue carrying Fox News, Newsmax, and OANN... both now and beyond any contract renewal date? If so, why?<sup>80</sup>

This is an extraordinarily appalling letter, intended to intimidate and threaten targeted center-right broadcast and media organizations, for the sole purpose of silencing their speech. And virtually none of the other media and news organizations wrote or spoke against it. The reason: they agree with it. Even more, many news groups, journalists, and opinion writers were the first to propose de-platforming Fox, OANN, and Newsmax and are campaigning for government regulators and these platform companies to shut them down—as with Parler; which brings me back to the American media, where I started this chapter.

The intersectional movements that form the core of American Marxism are largely supported by the Democratic Party and promoted by the media. Of this there can no longer be any doubt. Therefore, speech, debate, and challenges to Marxist-centric ideas are not tolerated. The purpose is societal and economic transformation; the means are social advocacy and activism. Opposition must be denounced, besmirched, and crushed.

In fact, it is now obvious that the letter to these various corporations resulted from media demands for de-platforming Fox, OANN, and Newsmax, which preceded the letter's date. On January 8, 2021, CNN's Oliver Darcy wrote:

“[W]hat about TV companies that provide platforms to networks such as Newsmax, One America News—and, yes, Fox News? Somehow, these companies have escaped scrutiny and entirely dodged this conversation. That should not be the case anymore. After Wednesday’s [January 6, 2021] incident of domestic terrorism on Capitol Hill, it is time TV carriers face questions for lending their platforms to dishonest companies that profit off of disinformation and conspiracy theories. After all, it was the very lies that Fox, Newsmax, and OAN spread that helped prime President Trump’s supporters into not believing the truth: that he lost an honest and fair election.”<sup>81</sup>

“Yes, Sean Hannity and Tucker Carlson and Mark Levin and others are responsible for the lies they peddle to their audiences. But the TV companies that beam them into millions of homes around the country also bear some responsibility. And yet we rarely, if ever, talk about them.”<sup>82</sup>

Notice Darcy’s Alinsky tactics as he attempts to smear the cable networks and certain television hosts, including me: “Pick the target, freeze it, personalize it, and polarize it.”<sup>83</sup> Neither the networks nor the hosts he mentions had anything whatsoever to do with the storming of the Capitol Building.

*New York Times* columnist Nicholas Kristof picked up where Darcy left off, Alinsky tactics and all, and joined the de-platforming campaign. He wrote: “We can’t impeach Fox or put [Tucker] Carlson or Sean Hannity on trial in the Senate, but there are steps we can take—imperfect, inadequate ones, resting on slippery slopes—to create accountability not only for Trump but also for fellow travelers at Fox, OANN, Newsmax and so on.”<sup>84</sup> Thus, Kristof demanded from his *Times* soapbox that “we”—the Marxist-like mob—must hold these nonconforming media outlets and hosts to account; that is, they must be silenced.

Kristof continues: “That can mean pressure on advertisers to avoid underwriting extremists (of any political bent), but the Fox News business model depends not so much on advertising as on cable subscription fees. So, a second step is to call on cable companies to drop Fox News from basic cable TV packages.”<sup>85</sup>

In fact, Kristof’s second step was obviously lifted from Media Matters.

Next, Kristof frames his perverse tyrannical screed as protecting the consumer from having to fund Fox and, further, having to supposedly subsidize his biased and stereotypical description of its viewers as racist, violent, and anti-government. “The issue here is that if you’re like many Americans, you: A) don’t watch Fox News, and B) still subsidize Fox News. If you buy a basic cable package, you’re forced to pay about \$20 a year for Fox News. You may deplore bigots and promoters of insurrection, but you help pay their salaries.”<sup>86</sup>

Kristof then cites Angelo Carusone, the radical ideologue and bigot who leads Media Matters, as an authority for his hit job against nonconforming media. “Carusone... says that Fox News relies on unusually generous cable fees—more than twice what CNN receives and five times what MSNBC commands. So, Media Matters started a campaign... for people to ask cable carriers to drop Fox News from their packages. ‘Given all the damage that Fox News has caused and the threat that it remains, they absolutely should unbundle Fox News,’ Carusone told me. ‘It’s not a news channel. It’s a propaganda operation mixed with political smut. If people want that, they should be forced to pay for it the way that they pay for Cinemax.’”<sup>87</sup>

Margaret Sullivan (*Washington Post*), Max Boot (*Washington Post*), Brian Stelter (CNN), Anand Giridharadas (MSNBC), and numerous other reporters and columnists piled on with the same or similar propaganda and demands. And congressional Democrats, using their governmental pedestals and authority, seek to oblige them.

---

From our schools and entertainment, to the media and government, we are witnessing the onslaught of repressive actions, including threats, censorship, and character assassination, and the demand for more of it. Marx would approve.

In fact, banning people, speech, words, broadcasts, and social media access; and redefining language, history, knowledge, and science—all of which are occurring or pursued in our current culture and environment—are the trademarks of totalitarianism. So, too, is the routine and unchallenged abuse of power, and undermining of republicanism and constitutionalism by President Biden, who legislates via executive orders, thereby bypassing Congress and the



constitution's checks and balances, to institute fundamental change to American society without input from the people's representatives in Congress or the people themselves. Or the efforts of Democratic Party congressional leaders, such as Speaker Pelosi and Senate Majority Leader Schumer, to baldly threaten the independence of the judiciary in order to influence the outcome of legal decisions and to further their ideological and political agenda; and the collusive actions by the Democratic leadership in both elected branches of the federal government to radically alter the electoral process throughout the country to ensure the Democratic Party rarely if ever loses its power to rule. Plus, with the smallest majority in the House in decades, and a tied Senate at 50–50 senators, they seek to stack the Senate with several additional Democrat seats and eliminate the filibuster rule, the purpose of which is to impose radical changes on the nation without broad support from representatives of other parts of the country.

Yet it is the opponents of this tyranny who are labeled, often successfully, as the offenders of civil liberties and human rights, obstructers of progress, and foes of the people by the *actual* offenders, for the latter have already devoured most of the instrumentalities of the state and the culture, and dominate the narrative.

In his book *Doubletalk: The Language of Communism*, Harry Hodgkinson wrote: “Language was to Marx the ‘direct reality’ of thought; ‘ideas do not exist divorced from’ it. And for [Joseph] Stalin ‘the reality of thought manifests itself in language.’ Words are tools as well as weapons, each fashioned for a precise function.... The language of Communism... is not so much a means of explaining to an unbeliever what Communism means, but an armory of weapons and tools intended to produce support or dissolve opposition to Communist policies on the part of people either hostile or indifferent to them. The meaning of a Communist word is not what you think it says, but what effect it is intended to produce.”<sup>88</sup>

Moreover, writes Hodgkinson, “[t]o Communists, a majority has no particular sanctity and is called upon to do, not what it wishes, but ‘its duty before the court of history.’ Choice between parties is a ‘drab formality’ of *Bourgeois Democracy*... Democracy is generally used with a qualifying adjective....”<sup>89</sup>

Hence Marxist senator Bernie Sanders uses the qualifying adjective *Democratic Socialist*. Even so, as Sanders knows, “to the Communist [such a phrase] is no more than an essential stage on the road to Communism.”<sup>90</sup>

The wave of repression sweeping our nation is not unlike the earliest days of the French, Russian, and Chinese revolutions, among others. All were promoted as popular movements and people’s revolutions, intended to establish Rousseauian communalism or Marxist egalitarianism. But that is where the similarity ends. These revolutions were sold as liberation movements, where the masses or the proletariat would rise up against the governing tyranny and corrupt society. They became genocidal police states. Of course, unlike these other governments and societies, America is a constitutional, representative republic, not a monarchy or other form of dictatorship. There is no widespread dissatisfaction in the country. In fact, most Americans are patriotic and revere the country. But the forces of false liberation today are led by fanatical ideologues and activists, who are the real purveyors of tyranny and even totalitarianism. They use propaganda, sabotage, and subversion in an effort to demoralize, destabilize, and ultimately, destroy the existing society and culture. It is they who are repressing the liberties of their fellow citizens through what is loosely called “the cancel culture.” It is they who demand conformity of thought by banning differing views from social media; it is they who use the false narrative of “oppressors and oppressed” to stigmatize those they claim as part of “the white-dominant culture” and silence the voices of fellow citizens; it is they who are banning words, books, products, movies, and historical symbols; it is they who are destroying the careers of doubters and boycotting the businesses of nonconformists; it is they who are undermining academic freedom and intellectual curiosity through fear and intimidation; it is they who are distorting American history and brainwashing students; it is they who demand the deplatforming of cable news networks and the muzzling of hosts; and it is they who are using and promoting racism, sexism, ageism, etc., as weapons of disunity and rebellion while claiming to want to end them. Even worse, they are using America’s freedom to destroy freedom and the Constitution to destroy the Constitution. And as their poison spreads throughout the culture, the intent is to sow doubt about the country, dispirit the citizenry, and soften the public’s

innate and reasoned resistance—to the point of acquiescence—to the tyranny of the Marxist-inspired and related domestic movements.

## CHAPTER SEVEN

---

### ***WE CHOOSE LIBERTY!***

I am often asked on radio what are “we” going to do about recovering our country. Too often, what is meant is—what is someone else going to do to save America. That mind-set is simply unacceptable. If we are to rally to the defense of our own liberty and unalienable rights, then each of us, in our own roles and ways, must become personally and directly involved as citizen activists, in our own fate and the fate of our country. The time has come to reclaim what is ours—the American republic—from those who seek to destroy it. If we expect others to rescue our nation for us, as we go about our daily lives as mere observers to what is transpiring, or close our eyes and ears to current events, we will lose this struggle. And yes, it is a struggle.

We have allowed the American Marxists to define who we are as a people. They defame us, slander our ancestors and history, and trash our founding documents and principles. They are mostly reprobates who hate the country in which they live, and have contributed nothing to its betterment. Indeed, they live off the sweat and toil of others, while they pursue a destructive and diabolical course for our nation, undermining and sabotaging virtually every institution in our society. Their ideology and worldview are based on the arguments and beliefs of a man, Karl Marx, whose writings are responsible for the enslavement, impoverishment, torture, and death of untold millions. This is a hard fact, despite the predictable protestations from some in our society who embrace and advance Marxism’s core ideas but attempt to disassociate themselves from responsibility for its inevitable outcomes. These are the “useful

idiots” who occupy influential or leadership positions in the Democratic Party, media, academia, the culture, etc.

But we must take solace and find strength in the sacrifice and bravery of *our* early revolutionaries—Joseph Warren, Samuel Adams, John Hancock, Paul Revere, and Thomas Paine, to name a few; and become energized and inspired by the wisdom and genius of George Washington, Thomas Jefferson, John Adams, James Madison, Benjamin Franklin, and many others. While they have been smeared and degraded by American Marxists and their ilk, we must continue to celebrate them, be invigorated by them, and remember that together they defeated the most powerful military force on earth and founded the greatest and most extraordinary nation in the history of mankind.

Indeed, future generations of patriots, at tremendous sacrifice, fought the Civil War to end slavery, something no other country had ever done, costing hundreds of thousands of lives on fields and in towns throughout America. At Gettysburg alone, there were 51,000 casualties. But there were other battles with terrible casualties—Chickamauga, Spotsylvania, the Wilderness, Chancellorsville, Shiloh, Stones River, Antietam, Bull Run (twice), Fort Donelson, Fredericksburg, Port Hudson, Cold Harbor, Petersburg, Gaines’s Mill, Missionary Ridge, Atlanta, Seven Pines, Nashville, and many more.

Last century, millions of Americans fought, and hundreds of thousands died, in two world wars. In World War I, some 4,000,000 American soldiers were mobilized to fight Germany, Austria-Hungary, Bulgaria, and the Ottoman Empire, and over 116,000 Americans perished—at the battles of Somme, Verdun, Passchendaele, Gallipoli, Tannenberg, and several others. In World War II, more than 16,000,000 American soldiers fought the German Nazis, Japan, and Italy, and over 400,000 lost their lives—at the battles of Sicily, Anzio, the Atlantic, Normandy, Operation Dragoon, the Bulge, Iwo Jima, Guadalcanal, Tarawa, Saipan, Okinawa, and many more.

During the Cold War with the Soviet Union, American soldiers fought the spread of communism, including in Korea, where the Soviet- and Chinese-backed communists in the northern part of the Korean Peninsula invaded the south. Over 5,700,000 Americans were engaged in the war, and nearly 34,000 lost their lives. Almost 3,000,000 Americans served in uniform in the Vietnam

War, which was intended to prevent, again, the Soviet- and Chinese-backed communists in the northern part of that country from taking over the south. Over 58,000 American soldiers lost their lives. And there have been many battles since, including but not limited to Iraq and Afghanistan, and the war on terrorism.

Contrary to the American Marxists' slurs that America is an imperial and colonizing force, our soldiers are noble warriors who have fought and died, and still do, to protect and liberate the oppressed from one end of the world to the other—and regardless of the religion, skin color, ethnicity, or race of the victimized. And unlike some of our enemies, we do not seek to conquer other countries for the purpose of occupation and territorial expansion.

In America, one generation after another has been willing to sacrifice everything, and so many have paid the ultimate price, in defense of this magnificent country and its founding principles from foreign enemies. They believed that America and her principles were worth fighting and dying for. And for many of us, our family members were and are among them.

Yet the American Marxist has recently succeeded, through the bureaucracy and Democratic Party policies, in imposing the Critical Race Theory (CRT) and Critical Gender Theory agendas on our armed forces.<sup>1</sup> Soldiers are now forced to participate in training that reinforces these ideologies. They have even reached into West Point, where cadets are brainwashed about “white rage.”<sup>2</sup> And the Pentagon has also declared climate change a national security priority, meaning it is as grave a threat to our survival as such enemies as Communist China, North Korea, Iran, and Russia.<sup>3</sup> Meanwhile, successive Democratic administrations have denied our military services the funds needed to maintain top readiness and have strained their budgets, while enemy states, especially Communist China, are preparing for war.

On the home front, most of us have always viewed our police as selfless and brave guardians of the law, who protect us from criminals and keep the peace. We look up to them and appreciate them. They are highly trained professionals and their job is extremely dangerous, given the level of violent criminality that exists in too many areas of our country. The National Law Enforcement Memorial Fund reports that “since the first known line-of-duty death in 1786,

more than 22,000 U.S. law enforcement officers have been killed in the line of duty.... [In 2018 alone], there have been 58,866 assaults against law enforcement officers..., resulting in 18,005 injuries.”<sup>4</sup>

And on 9/11 every year, we honor those officers, along with firefighters, emergency personnel, and others, who lost their lives in infinite heroic acts to save the poor souls in the Twin Towers and the Pentagon who were slaughtered by al-Qaeda terrorists. These incredible men and women have not changed. They are the same patriotic and self-sacrificing Americans today as they were on that day and are on other days.

Yet what has changed in recent years, with the rise of American Marxism and Marxist-anarchist groups like Antifa and Black Lives Matter, is that law enforcement at all levels has come under brutal assault. Suddenly, they can do no good. They must be constrained and retrained, and policing itself must be “reimagined.” We are told police officers are “systemically racists,” targeting African Americans and other minorities for disparate treatment, despite indisputable statistics and overwhelming evidence to the contrary.<sup>5</sup> Of course, the relentless degrading and weakening of police forces, unremitting media disinformation about law enforcement, the ideological and political exploitation of certain videotaped encounters, and the slashing of police budgets by majority Democratic politicians destabilize communities and the public’s faith in policing, thereby undermining the rule of law and, ultimately, the civil society. If your goal is to “fundamentally transform” America<sup>6</sup>—that is, abolish our history, traditions, and ultimately our republic—then you must subvert support for the police. After all, without law enforcement the civil society collapses.

Indeed, as the Law Enforcement Legal Defense Fund reports, “across major US cities, tangible de-policing occurred June 2020 through February 2021 after anti-police protests, officials’ statements, and policy decisions, and as arrests and searches plummeted—homicides soared in the months since the George Floyd incident.... Last year [2020], the United States tallied over 20,000 murders—the highest total since 1995 and 4,000 more killings than in 2019. Preliminary FBI data for 2020 points to a 25% surge in murders—the largest single year increase since the agency began publishing uniform data in 1960.”<sup>7</sup> Police officers are

leaving and retiring in droves.<sup>8</sup> And major cities are depopulating as people are now leaving in unprecedented numbers due, in significant part, to the increase in crime.<sup>9</sup>

Especially pernicious is the American Marxist's control over our public school and college classrooms, with the full support and active role of the two national teachers' unions—the National Education Association (NEA)<sup>10</sup> and the American Federation of Teachers (AFT)<sup>11</sup>—where your children and grandchildren are being taught to hate our country and are brainwashed with racist propaganda. If this persists, it will most assuredly lead to the nation's downfall. As the Heritage Foundation reports: “The dissemination of curricular content and instruction based on CRT [Critical Race Theory] in K–12 schools is second only in scope to the presence of CRT in post-secondary instruction, where CRT originated. The spread within college- and university-level syllabi and journal articles took place over the course of many decades throughout the 20th century, while the effects on K–12 schools in such areas as social studies, history, and civics have, by comparison, become visible more recently.”<sup>12</sup>

Without your knowledge, let alone consent, “[d]istricts around the country have integrated CRT into school curricula. Both of the nation's largest teacher unions support the Black Lives Matter organization, with the National Education Association specifically calling for the use of Black Lives Matter curricular materials in K–12 schools. This curriculum is ‘committed’ to ideas such as a ‘queer-affirming network,’ which have nothing to do with rigorous instructional content, and promotes racially charged essays such as ‘Open Secrets in First-Grade Math: Teaching about White Supremacy on American Currency.’ As of 2018, officials in at least 20 large school districts, including Los Angeles and Washington, DC, were promoting Black Lives Matter curricular content and the organization's ‘Week of Action.’ According to an *Education Week* survey in June 2020, 81 percent of teachers, principals, and district leaders ‘support the Black Lives Matter movement...’”<sup>13</sup>

In fact, “[s]ome school systems have applied action civics to teaching disruptive protests.”<sup>14</sup> Moreover, this Marxist-based ideology has spread to private schools, including private religious schools.<sup>15</sup>



However, this poison was first spread in our colleges and universities, where it reigns supreme and, as such, little is left there of academic freedom and free speech. Those pursuing degrees in education have been especially targeted. Jay Schalin of the James G. Martin Center for Academic Renewal explains: “[T]he ‘long march’ through the education schools has been successful; the most influential thinkers in our education schools are political radicals [Marxists] intent on transforming the nation to a collectivist, utopian vision.”<sup>16</sup>... “The radical ideas are hard to escape in education schools. The higher one goes up the educational hierarchy, the more likely he or she is to have had a lengthy exposure to extremist ideas—and the less likely to reject them. To rise to a position of influence in education, one must make it through a minefield of graduate education courses that are intended to indoctrinate the gullible and weed out the recalcitrant.”<sup>17</sup>

And not to be left out or behind, America’s corporatists are all in. In fact, there are too many corporations committed to the various Marxist–Critical Theory movements, and the human resources, training, and hiring-related practices promoting them, to list here. Lily Zheng, an author and diversity, equity, and inclusion consultant, writing in *Harvard Business Review*, tells us: “Corporate Social Justice is not a feel-good approach that allows everyone to be heard, and by nature it won’t result in initiatives that will make everyone happy. The first step that many companies have taken by publicly supporting Black Lives Matter through public statements and donations is an example of that: a commitment to taking a stance, even if it alienates certain populations of consumers, employees, and corporate partners. The company must decide that it is okay with losing business from certain groups (say, white supremacists or police departments), since taking money from those groups would run counter to its Corporate Social Justice strategy.”<sup>18</sup>

These corporations are also currying favor and colluding with the Democratic Party by using their financial muscle to help create a one-party political machine.<sup>19</sup> Their recent joint war on the Georgia Republican legislature is one of many examples.<sup>20</sup>

Furthermore, social media, including Facebook/Instagram, Twitter, Google/YouTube, which were once thought to be the antidote to corporate media's oligopolist role as propagandists for the Democratic Party and mouthpieces for "social activism" and "progressivism," and embraced as open, public places for communication, turned out to be an autocratic ruse. A hard lesson has been learned, particularly in the last year, that Big Tech is, in fact, an oligopoly of its own, in which a few billionaires censor, suspend, ban, and edit the postings, videos, and comments that offend or challenge the orthodoxy of the Democratic Party, the various Marxist movements, the coronavirus pandemic authoritarians, etc. Facebook billionaire Mark Zuckerberg even contributed hundreds of millions of dollars in grants during the last election to increase turnout in Democratic Party strongholds in key battleground states.<sup>21</sup>

What can be done about these assaults on our liberty, families, and country? Of course, I do not have all the answers. To begin with, I warned years ago, in *Liberty and Tyranny*, that we "must become more engaged in public matters.... This will require a new generation... of activists, larger in number, shrewder, and more articulate than before, who seek to blunt the Statist's counterrevolution."<sup>22</sup> We must seize every opportunity to take back our institutions by running for office, seeking appointed office, and populating professions—including academia, journalism, and business—with patriots who can make a difference. We must take it upon ourselves to teach our children and grandchildren about the magnificence of our country, constitution, and capitalism, and the evils of Marxism and the people and organizations that promote it. We must explain to them why it is important to support and respect our police and armed forces, who protect us from criminals and foreign enemies.

Given the urgency of the moment, however, even this is not nearly enough. Indeed, the fate of our country rests in *your* hands and in *you* becoming strong and vocal activists for our nation and our liberty. Even though, at times, our future seems bleak, we must not now or ever surrender to this enemy from within.

Lest we forget, on December 19, 1776, as the Revolutionary War looked lost, and the morale of George Washington's army had reached bottom, Thomas Paine wrote *The American Crisis, No. 1*, which opened with:

THESE are the times that try men's souls. The summer soldier and the sunshine patriot will, in this crisis, shrink from the service of their country; but he that stands by it now, deserves the love and thanks of man and woman. Tyranny, like hell, is not easily conquered; yet we have this consolation with us, that the harder the conflict, the more glorious the triumph. What we obtain too cheap, we esteem too lightly: it is dearness only that gives every thing its value. Heaven knows how to put a proper price upon its goods; and it would be strange indeed if so celestial an article as FREEDOM should not be highly rated.<sup>23</sup>

And Paine called for all Americans to join the fight against tyranny:

I call not upon a few, but upon all: not on this state or that state, but on every state: up and help us; lay your shoulders to the wheel; better have too much force than too little, when so great an object is at stake. Let it be told to the future world, that in the depth of winter, when nothing but hope and virtue could survive, that the city and the country, alarmed at one common danger, came forth to meet and to repulse it.<sup>24</sup>

On the night of December 25, 1776, Washington ordered Paine's words read to his exhausted troops before the Battle of Trenton, which, of course, they went on to win. Paine's pamphlet not only energized Washington's men but quickly spread throughout the colonies, rousing and galvanizing the people.

Our challenge today is just as crucial and urgent, and in many ways, more complicated. We did not ask for this confrontation, but it is here. And, in truth, like the early days of the Revolutionary War, we are losing. Unfortunately, most of the country has been caught flat-footed and remains unengaged. What must be understood is that the various Marxist-associated movements are constantly agitating, pressuring, threatening, overtaking, and even rioting to accomplish their ends, for which there is no effective or sustained counter-pressure or agitation—that is, pushback. That must change today.

*This is a call for action!*

The time to act is now. Each of us must take time out of our daily lives to help save our country. We must be tactical and nimble in our responses to American Marxism and its multiple movements. And we must organize, rally, boycott, protest, speak, write, and more—and, where appropriate, we must use the Marxist’s strategies and tactics against him. In other words, we must become the new “community activists.” But unlike the Marxists, our cause is *patriotism*.

Here are some of the important strategies we must use:

## **BOYCOTT, DIVESTMENT, SANCTIONS (BDS)**

No doubt the Boycott, Divestment, and Sanctions or BDS movement sounds familiar, as it has been used to try to economically destroy the state of Israel by its extremist enemies. The operational elements of this movement, however, can be adopted by American patriots against corporations, other organizations, donors, etc., who are funding or otherwise supporting Marxist movements in our country.

BOYCOTTS involve withdrawing support for corporate media, Big Tech, other corporations, Hollywood, sporting, cultural, and academic institutions engaged in promoting American Marxism and its various movements.

DIVESTMENT campaigns pressure banks, corporations, local and state governments, religious institutions, pension funds, etc. to withdraw investments in and support for the various Marxist movements.

SANCTIONS campaigns pressure local and state governments to end taxpayer subsidies and other forms of support for institutions with ties to various Marxist movements and policies; and ban the teaching and indoctrination of Critical Race Theory (CRT), Critical Gender Theory, etc., from taxpayer-financed public schools.

Moreover, American Marxists are litigious, relentlessly filing barrages of lawsuits in forum-shopped jurisdictions and courtrooms, as well as filing administrative action after administrative action in federal and state bureaucracies, to gather information about government actions and political opponents, as well as bog down bureaucrats with search requests. American

patriots should do the same. Information on how to file Freedom of Information Act requests with the federal government can be found at [FOIA.gov](https://www.foia.gov). Every state has freedom of information rules, which you can easily find on the Internet. In addition, a partial list of conservative and libertarian legal groups can be found at [https://conservapedia.com/Conservative\\_legal\\_groups](https://conservapedia.com/Conservative_legal_groups), and procedures for making claims against the federal and state governments can be found at <https://www.usa.gov/complaint-against-government>. In addition, if you gather information on the partisan-political nature of particular Marxist-based organizations, you can also challenge the favorable tax status conferred on them by filing complaints with the Internal Revenue Service (IRS).

As a general matter, where feasible, we must institute *our* BDS movement against the influences of American Marxism, adopt the Cloward and Piven-type approach of overwhelming “the system,” crashing the system, then blaming the system, and taking control of the system—but in this case the system being that which has been created and instituted by the Marxist-based movements.

Moreover, Saul Alinsky’s *Rules for Radicals* #13 should be used, where appropriate, as well: “Pick the target, freeze it, personalize it, and polarize it.”<sup>25</sup> Alinsky wrote, in part: “Obviously there is no point to tactics unless one has a target upon which to center the attacks.”<sup>26</sup>

Also, remember that there is power in numbers. The teachers’ unions, Antifa, BLM, and others understand this. So must we.

Here are a few specific tactics for action, which should not be viewed as a comprehensive list:

## EDUCATION

In every school district in America, local committees of patriotic community activists must organize, as some are already doing. Among other things, they should get involved in virtually every aspect of local public education. We can no longer leave the education of our children and the well-being of our community to “the professionals.” As we have learned, especially since the pandemic, the

educational bureaucracy does not have the best interests of our children as their top priority, and consequences for such inattention are disastrous. What shall be done?

1. The community committees should ensure that members attend every school board meeting to make certain that the public's interest and that of the students are being served, not the monopoly interests of the teachers' unions, Marxist activists, and other special interests. By this I mean hundreds of patriot activists showing up and being heard at every school board meeting throughout the year. The classrooms and schools must be taken back by the community.

2. The furtive nature and practices of local school systems must come to an end. Community committees should examine classroom curriculum, textbooks, teacher training and seminar materials, the teachers' contract with the school district, and school budgets. Where there is resistance by the school boards or school administrations to providing transparency, which is likely, activists should use local and state freedom of information procedures and other legal tools to gain the information. Persistence is key. If necessary, seek the services of a local lawyer in the community who is willing to voluntarily assist in accessing the information. While it may be necessary to approach national legal groups for help, the goal here is to create a permanent, local presence and voice of community committees in your school system to counter and monitor the school boards, educational bureaucrats, and unions that have had free run and total control over education up to this point.

3. Community committees should insist that contracts with the teachers' unions prevent teachers from using classrooms and abusing academic freedom to proselytize or indoctrinate students about CRT, Critical Gender Theory, or other movements within the Marxist orbit that have suddenly been imposed upon the students. No more brainwashing of your children with racist hate and contempt for their country. Teachers

are paid to teach, and by teach we mean objective, factual, scientific, mathematical learning. Moreover, school administrators should be on notice that you expect them to ensure that the teachers they oversee, and content of course curriculum, are appropriate. For example, students should be taught history, as written by real historians, not the widely condemned and discredited 1619 Project—which is CRT pablum. If they are incapable or unwilling to run a tight ship in this regard, they should be removed.

4. Private attorneys and legal groups are joining together in lawsuits against CRT training and teaching in public schools, arguing discrimination on the basis of race and color, in addition to sex, gender and religion, in violation of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, and Title VI and Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972, and the creation of a hostile educational environment based on compelled discriminatory speech and the perpetuation of racial stereotypes.<sup>27</sup> Community committees, parents' groups, and other patriot activists should file their own lawsuits against as many school systems as possible that practice and impose CRT racism and other Marxist-related ideologies. The Legal Insurrection website, founded and operated by Professor William Jacobson, provides some helpful resources concerning CRT in K–12 schools here: <https://criticalrace.org/k-12/>. Parents Defending Education is one of several grassroots organizations that can also provide assistance. They can be found here: <https://defendinged.org/>.

5. In states where there are friendly legislatures and governors, community committees should urge them to pass laws preventing the indoctrination of students and training of teachers in the ideologies of the various Marxist-related organizations, including CRT. Some states, but not nearly enough, have passed such laws. Friendly state attorneys general should be urged to use federal and state constitutional and civil rights protections against school districts and teachers' unions that impose racist indoctrination on teachers and students. Moreover, American patriots

should demand that state law require schools to teach students civics, the foundational principles in the Declaration of Independence and Constitution, etc. School systems receive significant state funds and this is another way to hold them to account.

6. In most communities, a majority of property taxes go toward funding the local school system, and the majority of those funds are used to compensate teachers. If school systems refuse to be responsive to the community committees and the public, and if teachers' unions continue to promote their own political and ideological agendas, the community committees of which I speak should organize a taxpayer revolt. The experience of the Tea Party Movement will provide excellent guidance. Although teachers' unions in certain states have the power to strike, the power of the purse is an important and underutilized tool in the struggle for control over public schools.

7. Community committees should demand competition in education. The issue is what is in the best interest of individual students and the public, not entrenched school board members, teachers' unions, and the educational bureaucracy. This triumvirate always oppose school choice, including charter schools, vouchers for private and parochial schools, etc., because they oppose competition. Parents and other taxpayers should insist that tax dollars follow the student, especially now given the radicalization and politicization of our public school systems, and the abuse of power demonstrated by many teachers' unions during the coronavirus pandemic.

8. Community committees should develop and train potential candidates to run for local school boards, or endorse those who share their commitment to true education reform. This has already begun in a few communities.

9. Hopefully, community committees will be established and flourish throughout the country, making possible the sharing of information and



tactics among them.

10. There are also steps you can take, in conjunction with other groups or nonprofit legal foundations, respecting the political and other activities of the National Education Association (NEA) or American Federation of Teachers (AFT) and their state and local affiliates, which are *public* sector unions receiving special tax and other governmental benefits.<sup>28</sup> These include filing requests with the IRS for their tax returns. Moreover, sometimes these unions and other related groups set up tax-exempt organizations. The federal returns of the tax-exempt organizations (Form 990s) are publicly available on the organization's website. The IRS also accepts complaints filed against tax-exempt organizations for alleged noncompliance with their federal tax status, including in many cases teachers' unions. Information can be found here: <https://www.irs.gov/charities-non-profits/irs-complaint-process-tax-exempt-organizations>.

Higher education presents its own set of difficulties and challenges. It is the breeding ground of American Marxism, where tenured Marxist and radical professors rule the roost. Indeed, the most subversive colleges and universities should be subjected to the kind of BDS movement its students and graduates often unleash against others. There are opportunities for real pushback.

1. In the first place, any parent who is involved in financially supporting a child's tuition to attend a college or university must at least attempt to exercise some control over the child's decision about which school he or she will attend. Here, we have real school choice, and the decision is whether the choice will be a wise one. Thus the parent must become intimately familiar with a school's reputation for academic freedom, free speech, traditional education, and the like, or whether it is a hotbed of Marxist radicalism and intolerance. Moreover, even if you are not assisting financially with tuition, a parent should still use his or her influence to help direct and guide their child's decision. In addition, if your child may

have been accepted into an Ivy League school, you should not be hypnotized by its name and past reputation. For example, among CRT's most ardent founders were Harvard and Stanford law professors. As discussed at length earlier, the Marxist-based Critical Theory (CT) ideology has devoured our colleges and universities and spawned numerous radical movements throughout academia, which have spread throughout our society. Again, the Legal Insurrection website provides a very useful and comprehensive database of CRT activity on college and university campuses, which can be found here: <https://legalinsurrection.com/tag/college-insurrection/>.

2. Colleges and universities conduct constant fund-raising campaigns, where they reach out to graduates for financial support. Some of these institutions amass huge endowment funds. This is an easy way to cut off a funding source to schools that are breeding grounds for American Marxism. In fact, campaigns should be launched to inform graduates and potential donors that they should withhold their support from certain colleges or universities that engage in silencing academic freedom and free speech, promote Marxism, and are part of the cancel culture. There are also schools, albeit few in number, that should be supported for their traditional approach to a liberal arts education, such as Hillsdale College, Grove City, among others.

3. The tables should be turned on the most radical colleges and universities. Several should be chosen as examples, where they are specifically targeted for BDS-like campaigns—that is, boycotted by parents, students, and donors; divested of private-sector dollars; and sanctioned by pressure campaigns on local and state governments as well as corporations to slash their support for these schools.

4. State legislatures are the primary governmental sources of funding for colleges and universities, and in some cases the primary source—that is, state taxpayers. Yet they do little to monitor or influence how most of the

funds are spent on these campuses. Colleges and universities have become empires unto themselves, insisting on immunity from substantive monitoring and oversight, while using the freedom granted such institutions under the First Amendment and the doctrine of academic freedom to silence nonconforming voices—whether they be professors, students, outside speakers, etc. The time is long overdue when legislatures and governors must be pressured to take immediate actions to rein in the despotic aspects of these institutions—which use their liberties to destroy ours.

For example, academia is overpopulated by radical tenured professors, too many of whom preach sedition, as discussed at length earlier. I also showed that in a survey of hundreds of college and university faculty in 2006, “80 percent were [found to be] solidly left, with well over half of those being extreme left... one in five professors in the social sciences self-identified as ‘Marxist.’”<sup>29</sup> That was fifteen years ago; imagine how much worse it is today. Moreover, in my book *Plunder and Deceit*, I noted studies showing that “there is... an incestuous network of graduates from the top departments in different fields who hire fellow alumni as they move into the highest positions in departments at other colleges and universities”<sup>30</sup> to ensure and promote ideological groupthink among the faculty.

The corrupt manner in which taxpayer-subsidized college and university faculties are recruited, hired, paid, and tenured must be broken up by the state legislatures. In fact, the practice of “tenure” should be eliminated altogether. There is no legitimate or rational basis for the extreme ideological and political lopsidedness of college and university faculties in numerous departments. Furthermore, there is no good reason why taxpayers should pay Marxists to teach generations of students to hate their country, protect them from scrutiny and accountability, and provide them with lifetime job security with tenure. This academic cabal is free to relentlessly advance its ideological causes and effectively control America’s college and university campuses. It is they and their administrators who have destroyed academic freedom and free speech. Indeed, if academic freedom and free speech truly existed on these campuses, the few

professors who do not conform to the majority ideology and even dare to question it would not be threatened, subjected to cancel culture, and have their careers ruined. Students and student groups that defy the campus Marxists would not be harassed and violently attacked.<sup>31</sup> Guest speakers of all views would be welcome, rather than pro-American speakers being shouted down and chased off campus by angry mobs. Commencement speakers would be more representative of the greater society.<sup>32</sup>

As so many of America's college and university departments have become Marxist-oriented indoctrination mills, it is not surprising that Democratic politicians like Senator Bernie Sanders have proposed free college tuition and eliminating student loans as a way to encourage more young people to attend colleges and universities.<sup>33</sup> The Biden administration has proposed billions more in higher-education spending and grants, and promises much more in the future.<sup>34</sup> And yet, it still is not enough, as college costs, spending, and tuition skyrocket beyond all reason.<sup>35</sup>

Moreover, despite the enormous expenditure of taxpayer dollars to subsidize these schools, their ideological inbreeding appears to immunize most of them from regularized, sustained, and thorough oversight and inspection, certainly by Democrats who control Congress and various state legislatures. But state legislatures that do not condone the transformation of these institutions and their huge price tags should immediately begin to claw back future funding from these schools and demand academic and financial accountability. Again, the power of the purse is a crucial means by which to check these increasingly out-of-control institutions.

5. Since the Biden administration is actually giving cover to colleges and universities that accept untold tens of millions of dollars in foreign subsidies and donations,<sup>36</sup> including from Communist China, which has established "Confucius Institutes" throughout America academia, and despite the Senate's recent action tightening controls on these funds,<sup>37</sup> state legislatures should be pressured to compel these schools to report the receipt of these funds and then ban them. China and other countries are

using these funds to buy favorable and supportive propaganda and coursework for their repressive regimes. Should colleges and universities refuse to comply, state legislatures should further slash their funding.

6. Do not overlook that you can use state freedom of information laws to collect all kinds of information from and about public universities, and the federal FOIA applies to the Department of Education, where additional information on these schools undoubtedly exists.

Finally, students obviously have a stake in their own education. If a professor is abusing his role and turning the classroom into a regular indoctrination seminar in support of the many Marxist-related movements, the student should demand that the college or university refund his costs; even join with like-minded students and object to the professor's propagandizing to the school administration; and perhaps even consider litigation along commercial lines for false advertising, bait and switch, etc.

## **CORPORATIONS**

Ayn Rand observed: "The greatest guilt of modern industrialists is not the fumes of their factory smokestacks, but the pollution of this country's intellectual life, which they have condoned, assisted and supported."<sup>38</sup> So true.

For reasons discussed earlier, and as bizarre as it may seem, many major corporations have adopted BLM,<sup>39</sup> other Marxist-oriented movements and agendas related to CT, and the Democratic Party's deceitful voter schemes.<sup>40</sup> In a campaign of repression, many seek to squelch free speech, censor nonconforming opinions and beliefs, and ban or boycott individuals, groups, other usually smaller businesses that do not comply with the new orthodoxy, and even Republican state legislatures. Moreover, they are indoctrinating their workforces with the ideology of various Marxist movements as a condition of employment.<sup>41</sup> Of course, Donald Trump banned the federal government from using CRT in its training and from doing business with companies that use

CRT and rejected efforts by the Democratic Party and their surrogate groups to eviscerate pre-2020 state voting laws.<sup>42</sup>

These companies have now openly partnered with the Democratic Party against the Republican Party, withholding financial support from the latter and backing more of the former's candidates.<sup>43</sup> Indeed, Joe Biden was their hands-down candidate for president.<sup>44</sup> And Biden has hired numerous executives from among their ranks.<sup>45</sup> In addition, corporate CEOs are activists and propagandists for these causes, organizing petitions, letters, and other politically motivated, public efforts, and even basing corporate success on achievements in social activism.<sup>46</sup>

Yet, while virtue-signaling here at home, many of these same corporations are doing business with America's most dangerous enemy, Communist China's genocidal regime.<sup>47</sup> They are expanding their ties with China,<sup>48</sup> or trying to enter the Chinese market, and are silent about the horrific human rights violations in China,<sup>49</sup> including the forced harvesting of organs,<sup>50</sup> its massive network of concentration camps,<sup>51</sup> and the torture, rape, and murder of Uyghur Muslims, among other minority groups.<sup>52</sup>

Again, what can be done?

1. Each of us, and our circle of friends, associates, and neighbors, can practice what I call "patriotic commerce"—that is, become an informed patriotic consumer. Together, we have enormous economic clout. Whether purchasing small, everyday products and services, or making larger, life-changing financial decisions, each of us needs to take a little time to determine whether the individual or company with whom we intend to do business shares our worldviews. If they do, or are neutral and stay out of politics, then we should support them. If not, we should not do business with them and even organize boycotts against them as part of our BDS movements. Boycotting is something the American Marxists and their allies and surrogates have been doing for decades, and we must push back. In fact, they have greatly ramped up these activities in recent years.<sup>53</sup>

Moreover, you should support economically companies that are targeted but refuse to cave to these mob tactics by purchasing their products and services. For example, when Goya's CEO said supportive words about President Trump, his company was boycotted by the Marxist brigades. But the pushback by patriotic Americans was swift and profound, who rallied to the company's aid by purchasing so many Goya products that store shelves were cleared.<sup>54</sup> The lesson learned is that in addition to personally and collective boycotting companies, we must support pro-American companies as well.

Furthermore, use social media to expose, pressure, and organize protests against politically and ideologically hostile corporations (more on Big Tech later); go to shareholder meetings in large numbers and make your voices heard (this includes corporate media and Big Tech companies). The Free Enterprise Project (FEP) "files shareholder resolutions, engages corporate CEOs and board members at shareholder meetings, petitions the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) for interpretative guidance, and sponsors effective media campaigns to create the incentives for corporations to stay focused on their missions," and can assist you in your efforts. FEP can be found here: <https://nationalcenter.org/programs/free-enterprise-project>. Other groups do as well. You can be a part of patriotic shareholder-driven campaigns.

Lobby state legislators to investigate these corporations, particularly those that do business in and with Communist China, and pressure them to divest all state pension and other funds from these companies.

2. How do you know which corporations have sided with Marxist groups and causes, such as the CRT movement, or are otherwise involved in political and/or policy matters with which you disagree? Of course, the Internet makes available significant information that may provide this information, as do corporate prospectuses (corporations tend to brag about their "social activism"). There are also organizations that track and rate companies based on their political and ideological activities—

including 2ndVote, found here: <https://www.2ndvote.com>, and the OpenSecrets website tracks donations, found here: <https://www.opensecrets.org>. Just type in the name of the company. Furthermore, the Media Research Center tracks the corporate sponsors of major network news shows, which can be found here: <https://www.mrc.org/conservatives-fight-back>.

Where possible, you should also purchase goods and services from smaller, start-up, or neighborhood businesses that are less likely to be involved in the various Marxist-based movements, rather than large international corporations, Amazon, or large warehouse stores that are increasingly aligned with those movements.

3. Support for free market capitalism must no longer be confused with defending corporate oligarchism and crony capitalism. Large corporations have moved into the social activism business and have aligned with Marxist-based movements and the Democratic Party.<sup>55</sup> Therefore, let them live under the iron fist of their newfound partners and experience the consequences. When our allies in government are setting tax and regulatory policies, we must insist that they segregate the treatment of the oligarchical corporations from small and medium-sized businesses. The former's interests do not align with the latter's interests or our interests in preserving our republic. For example, we witnessed how Google, Facebook, Twitter, Apple, etc., teamed up in a brazen effort to destroy the upstart Parler, censor former president Trump, cover up the Hunter Biden scandal pre-general election, enforce coronavirus lockdowns and ban scientific/expert opinions that differed from that of government bureaucrats, and generally use suppression techniques to stigmatize and silence speech and debate they did not and do not support as political and policy matters. We also witnessed hundreds of corporations collude against the Republican legislature in Georgia and its efforts to judiciously reform the state's election system—as they worked with the Democratic Party and its efforts to establish one-party rule there. These corporations issued letters, petitions, public statements, and some even instituted



economic boycotts, including Major League Baseball, which moved its All-Star Game out of Atlanta.<sup>56</sup>

Therefore, when Democratic-controlled state legislatures or congressional Democrats turn on their new corporate allies and, for example, propose significant corporate tax increases, we ought not lift a finger to prevent them. Instead, we should insist that smaller and medium-sized businesses that are not involved in promoting the agenda of American Marxists or the Democratic Party should be protected. Indeed, where appropriate, we should insist on antitrust actions against large corporations that use their clout not only to smother competitors (such as Big Tech) but support political and legislative policies that undermine our country. And if existing antitrust laws are not adequate, they should be updated. Moreover, friendly state legislatures should be lobbied to take on Big Tech, as states are not without statutory recourse, as Florida has demonstrated.<sup>57</sup>

4. Big Media and Big Tech are among the largest corporate oligarchies in the nation. They have demonstrated time and again the use of their corporate clout to repress, censor, and propagandize on behalf of social activism, Marxist-based movements, and the Democratic Party. Big Media use their corporate clout to try to destroy nonconforming news and opinion organizations (e.g., AT&T-owned CNN repeatedly advocates for de-platforming the Fox News Channel and banning its hosts), and, of course, Big Tech does the same against smaller social media businesses. Let us remember that when cable TV and, later, social media were developed, they were celebrated as providing *more* options and choices for news consumers. Instead, corporate acquisitions and consolidation have led to a relative few corporatists controlling the content and distribution of information throughout the country. This is simply intolerable.

Respecting Big Tech, if you use social media, you should find alternatives to the corporate oligarchs. I am not tech savvy. But I know enough to suggest a few options: Parler, MeWe, and Discord's community forums. Rumble, Vimeo, and Bitchute. And the DuckDuckGo search

engine. And there are others you can find on the Internet. Moreover, you can monitor Big Tech's oligopolists' censorship activities by using the Media Research Center's FreeSpeechAmerica Project and its Censortrack website, found here: <https://censortrack.org/>.

However, the root cause of Big Tech's power and abuse goes back to the protection granted it by Congress in 1996 under Section 230 of the Community Decency Act. As Rachel Bovard of the Conservative Partnership Institute (CPI), explains: It "protects the Big Tech companies from being sued for the content users post on their sites. The law also creates a liability shield for the platforms to 'restrict access to or availability of material that the provider or user considers to be... objectionable, whether or not such material is constitutionally protected.'"<sup>58</sup> She adds: "A handful of Big Tech companies are now controlling the flow of most information in a free society, and they are doing so aided and abetted by government policy. That these are merely private companies exercising their First Amendment rights is a reductive framing which ignores that they do so in a manner that is privileged—they are immune to liabilities to which other First Amendment actors like newspapers are subject—and also that these content moderation decisions occur at an extraordinary and unparalleled scale."<sup>59</sup> Thus, when Republicans next control Congress and the presidency, they must be aggressively pressured to withdraw Section 230 immunity from Big Tech, which President Trump attempted to do but was thwarted by his own party.

Moreover, Facebook billionaire Mark Zuckerberg's interference with and attempted manipulation of elections, including the presidential election in 2020 with hundreds of millions in targeted contributions, as well as Google's manipulation of algorithms, must be investigated and outlawed both at the federal and state level.<sup>60</sup> You can contact friendly state legislators and file complaints against corporations that make what are effectively in-kind contributions with various federal and state agencies and, again, show up at their shareholder meetings and be heard.

Respecting Big Media, and its war on free speech and media competition, large corporations have gobbled up many significant media

platforms. I mentioned that AT&T owns CNN. Comcast owns NBC. A partial list of others can be found at [Investopedia.com](https://www.investopedia.com).<sup>61</sup> The lack of self-policing and oversight by these corporations, and their support for the Democratic Party and Marxist-based groups and their agendas, have actually contributed to destroying the purpose of a free, open, and competitive press. Therefore, our BDS efforts should be aimed, as well, at these news organizations and their corporate parents. We should make them as irrelevant as possible by personally refusing to use them, urging our families and circle of friends and associates to boycott them, and attend their shareholder meetings where their politics, ideological social activism, and destruction of freedom of the press are challenged.

In addition, our allegiance, including our viewing and reading habits, should focus on the increased number of independent journalists and news sites that are far more reliable than Big Media outlets. Several such sites are online and do original journalism and report actual news, and others help sort through news stories and aggregate them. A partial list can be found here: <https://www.libertynation.com/top-conservative-news-sites>. Moreover, there are also cable outlets, including Fox News, Fox Business, One America News Network, Newsmax TV, Sinclair Broadcasting, and other budding news-broadcast platforms; and a relative handful of newspapers, including but not limited to the *New York Post*, the *Washington Examiner*, the *Washington Times*, etc.

5. Professional sports leagues and individual teams are multibillion-dollar corporations as well. Certain leagues, including the National Basketball Association (NBA), as well as teams and players, support, for example, the BLM movement, yet make a great deal of money doing business with the genocidal communist regime in China. Where appropriate, the leagues and teams can be subjected to protests at their corporate headquarters or at the stadiums where they play their games. Professional sports has a huge influence on the culture. Thus far, there has been no pushback. Furthermore, given Major League Baseball's role in moving the All-Star

game from Georgia to Colorado, we must pressure Republicans in Congress to end its special exemption from antitrust laws.

## CLIMATE

As discussed earlier, the “climate change” movement (previously, global cooling and global warming) is a degrowth, anticapitalism movement that will impoverish Americans. At bottom, it is a broad-based war on your property rights, liberty, and way of life. More broadly, it is an attack on the most successful economic system known to mankind, and massively expands the power of the federal bureaucracy, politicians, and international/global institutions to manage, dictate, and control infinite aspects of our society and economy through regulations and mandates under the guise of public health and safety, clean air, clean water, and even national security. It will make the abuses of power we saw and experienced from reckless and tyrannical state governments in dealing with the coronavirus pandemic, and the grievous violations of civil and religious liberties, pale by comparison.

I wrote in *Liberty and Tyranny* years ago, “[w]ith the assistance of a pliant or sympathetic media, the Statist uses junk science, misrepresentations, and fear-mongering to promote public health and environmental scares, because he realizes that in a true, widespread health emergency, the public expects the government to act aggressively to address the crisis despite traditional limitations on governmental authority. The more dire the threat, the more liberty people are usually willing to surrender. The government’s authority becomes part of the societal frame of reference, only to be built upon during the next ‘crisis.’”<sup>62</sup>

As I explained further, the pathology involves “[u]rgent predictions... made by cherry-picked ‘experts’ that the media accept without skepticism or independent investigation and turn into a cacophony of fear. Public officials next clamor to demonstrate that they are taking steps to ameliorate the dangers. New laws are enacted or regulations promulgated that are said to limit the public’s exposure to the new ‘risk.’”<sup>63</sup>

Indeed, Biden's special presidential envoy for climate, John Kerry, underscored that there will be no limit or end to the encroachment on our liberties in the name of climate change, which is true of all Marxist-spawned movements in America. Kerry declared: "I just remind everybody that that will depend on whether or not we have some breakthrough technologies, some breakthrough innovations, number one, but even if we get to net zero, we still have to get carbon dioxide out of the atmosphere. So, this is a bigger challenge than a lot of people have really grabbed on to yet."<sup>64</sup>

Pushback will require a primarily legal and administrative response. You can access a network of state policy groups, some of which are found here: <https://spn.org>, and a coalition of property rights groups found here: <https://www.property-rts.org>, which can provide you with policy advice and legal referrals. You can also use federal and state freedom of information laws and directly contact potentially helpful legal groups (links provided earlier).

Where appropriate, lawsuits can be brought against governmental, private, and nonprofit entities that tortiously interfere with your use of your property or degrade the market value of your property.<sup>65</sup> You can file FOIA requests directly for information with the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), Interior Department, and other federal agencies to dig into their activities and hold them accountable,<sup>66</sup> as well as slow down regulatory processes and activities. And, again, friendly state attorneys general can be urged to file lawsuits against federal actions, as in Biden's lawless attack against the Keystone XL pipeline.<sup>67</sup>

When Republicans regain majorities in the House and Senate, and win the presidency, they must be pressured to eliminate the special tax-exempt status granted to environmental groups, since they are not nonpartisan charitable foundations; and eliminate their special statutory authority to bring lawsuits on behalf of the public, since their main purpose is to eviscerate our economic system, private property rights, and republican principles. For too long these groups have had a cozy policy and legal relationship with the bureaucrats at the Interior Department, Agriculture Department, Environmental Protection Agency, and other federal departments and agencies.

## ANTIFA, BLACK LIVES MATTER, AND RIOTERS

The failure of the federal government to unleash criminal investigations and bring charges against Antifa, BLM, and other domestic terrorist organizations for the mayhem they have unleashed and billions of dollars in damage they have caused in American communities is scandalous.<sup>68</sup> Moreover, the disparate treatment of individuals by federal law enforcement, based on their political beliefs, is shocking.<sup>69</sup>

However, honorable governors can act to protect their citizens, including strengthening their laws against such violence and rioters. In Florida, Governor Ron DeSantis has instituted measures that “[i]ncrease penalties for existing crimes committed during a violent assembly, and protects the communities’ law enforcement officers, and victims of these types of acts. The bill also creates specific crimes for mob intimidation and cyber intimidation to ensure that Florida will not be a welcoming place for those wishing to impose their will on innocent civilians and law enforcement by way of mob mentality. Crimes of mob intimidation and cyber intimidation both will become 1st-degree misdemeanors.”<sup>70</sup> Governors and state legislators across the country must be pressured to adopt similar laws.

But citizens need not wait for government at all levels to act. There are private civil lawsuits that can be filed against these organizations and individual rioters, depending on each state’s statutes, that strike at the finances of these groups and individuals and, hopefully, help compensate victims for their damages. Possible causes of action might include: intentional infliction of emotional distress, tortious interference with contracts, trespass to land and chattels, and conversion of property. State and federal civil RICO lawsuits are possibilities in the most extreme cases, especially with the same organizations showing up at the scene of violent riots.<sup>71</sup>

Moreover, you can ask the IRS to review or investigate financial issues related to organizations such as BLM that you may find in newspaper articles, online sources, etc. For example, questions have been raised about BLM’s interlocking operations<sup>72</sup> and transparency.<sup>73</sup>

Furthermore, if you happen to see the license tag of a rioter fleeing a violent scene in a vehicle, report the tag number to your local police department. Your eyes, ears, and video from your cellphones are important crime-fighting tools.

## **LAW ENFORCEMENT**

Law enforcement is under attack by Antifa, BLM, other Marxist-anarchist groups, violent criminals, Democratic politicians, the media, etc. Indeed, since the appearance of BLM and its sympathetic media coverage, a positive view of law enforcement has decreased, particularly among minorities.<sup>74</sup> However, although police are now routinely accused in the media of racist targeting of African Americans and other minorities, the evidence simply does not support these charges.<sup>75</sup> Moreover, 81 percent of black Americans want to retain the local police presence in their communities, with many wanting an increased presence.

Nonetheless, as a consequence of this war on law enforcement, violent crime across America is surging, particularly in our major cities.<sup>76</sup> And law-abiding citizens are paying a steep personal price. Yet, rather than standing up to the mob and their facilitators and appeasers, the war on law enforcement is intensifying.

There are so-called reform efforts under way that are actually intended to further denude police officers and police departments of their ability to protect the citizenry, including legal initiatives that would expose officers to personal harm and financial bankruptcy. Among other things, congressional Democrats and their radical surrogates have been pushing to essentially eliminate qualified immunity and subject officers to endless lawsuits; lower the bar for criminal prosecutions of officers; promote local and state investigations of officers; keep a federal database on all officers; lower the legal standard for determining the justified use of force from “reasonable” to “necessary”; and limit the transfer of “military-style” equipment to police forces.<sup>77</sup>

The result of all of this: across the nation, police recruitment and retention have plummeted.<sup>78</sup> The thin blue line is breaking. And the civil society is

descending into chaos. Therefore, in addition to supporting police officers and police departments in any way we can, including speaking out for them, they need our support in specific ways as well. I have one suggestion, in addition to the many you may have as well:

If state law permits, there is no reason why police officers should not bring civil suits against individuals who physically assault them, and even the organizations behind violent riots that result in them being assaulted or injured, such as Antifa and BLM. There are a number of factors that will have to be considered, including the ability to identify the individuals and the group associations, as well as causation. But officers and their unions should consult with a good lawyer to review the law and the facts.<sup>79</sup> You can help by providing financial assistance specifically directed to the legal representation of police officers who bring these lawsuits by contacting your local law enforcement agency, your local police benevolent association, the Law Enforcement Legal Defense Fund found at <https://www.policedefense.org>; the National Association of Police Organizations found at <https://www.napo.org>; the Fraternal Order of Police, found here: <https://fop.net>; and other such groups.

---

General George S. Patton reportedly said: “Never tell people how to do things. Tell them what to do and they will surprise you with their ingenuity.” Thus, at this point, I have provided some concrete ideas and suggestions on how to proceed, but by no means is this an exhaustive list of possible actions or action areas. In the end, it is up to *you* to decide how best to help actively save our republic and what role *you* will choose. That said, Patton also reportedly declared: “No good decision was ever made in a swivel chair.”

While this is the end of the book, it is the beginning of a new day.

*We choose liberty! Patriots of America, unite!*





*In loving memory of Barney Levin*

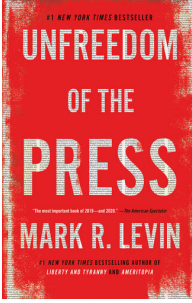




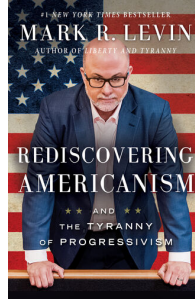


## More from the Author

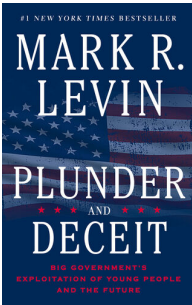
---



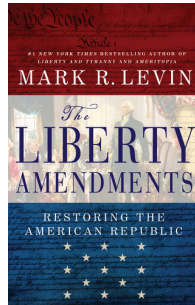
[Unfreedom of the Press](#)



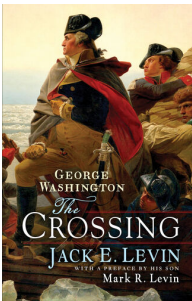
[Rediscovering Americanism](#)



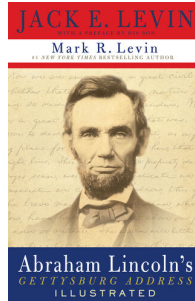
[Plunder and Deceit](#)



[The Liberty Amendments](#)



[George Washington: The Crossing](#)



[Abraham Lincoln's Gettysburg Address Illustrated](#)

## ABOUT THE AUTHOR



**MARK R. LEVIN**, nationally syndicated talk-radio host, host of LevinTV, chairman of Landmark Legal Foundation, and the host of the Fox News show *Life, Liberty & Levin*, is the author of six consecutive #1 *New York Times* bestsellers: *Liberty and Tyranny*, *Ameritopia*, *The Liberty Amendments*, *Plunder and Deceit*, *Rediscovering Americanism*, and *Unfreedom of the Press*. *Liberty and Tyranny* spent three months at #1 and sold more than 1.5 million copies. His books *Men in Black* and *Rescuing Sprite* were also *New York Times* bestsellers. Levin is an inductee into the National Radio Hall of Fame and was a top adviser to several members of President Ronald Reagan's cabinet. He holds a BA from Temple University and a JD from Temple University Law School.

[www.MarkLevinShow.com](http://www.MarkLevinShow.com)


@marklevinshow (Parler)


@marklevinshow (Rumble)

FOR MORE ON THIS AUTHOR:

[SimonandSchuster.com/Authors/Mark-R-Levin](http://SimonandSchuster.com/Authors/Mark-R-Levin)

[SimonandSchuster.com](http://SimonandSchuster.com)

 [ThresholdEditions](#)

 [@Threshold\\_Books](#)

**ALSO BY MARK R. LEVIN**

*Men in Black*

*Rescuing Sprite*

*Liberty and Tyranny*

*Ameritopia*

*The Liberty Amendments*

*Plunder and Deceit*

*Rediscovering Americanism*

*Unfreedom of the Press*

**We hope you enjoyed reading  
this Simon & Schuster ebook.**

---

Get a FREE ebook when you join our mailing list. Plus, get updates on new releases, deals, recommended reads, and more from Simon & Schuster. Click below to sign up and see terms and conditions.

**[CLICK HERE TO SIGN UP](#)**

Already a subscriber? Provide your email again so we can register this ebook and send you more of what you like to read. You will continue to receive exclusive offers in your inbox.



## NOTES

---

## CHAPTER ONE: IT'S HERE

- 1 Mark R. Levin, *Ameritopia: The Unmaking of America* (New York: Threshold Editions, 2012), 3.
- 2 Andrew Mark Miller, “Black Lives Matter co-founder says group’s goal is ‘to get Trump out,’” *Washington Examiner*, June 20, 2020, <https://www.washingtonexaminer.com/news/black-lives-matter-co-founder-says-groups-goal-is-to-get-trump-out> (April 22, 2021).
- 3 Jason Lange, “Biden staff donate to group that pays bail in riot-torn Minneapolis,” Reuters, May 30, 2020, <https://www.reuters.com/article/us-minneapolis-police-biden-bail/biden-staff-donate-to-group-that-pays-bail-in-riot-torn-minneapolis-idUSKBN2360SZ> (April 22, 2021).
- 4 Levin, *Ameritopia*, 7.
- 5 Ted McAllister, “Thus Always to Bad Elites,” *American Mind*, March 16, 2021, <https://americanmind.org/salvo/thus-always-to-bad-elites/> (April 22, 2021).
- 6 Ronald Reagan, “Encroaching Control (The Peril of Ever Expanding Government),” in *A Time for Choosing: The Speeches of Ronald Reagan 1961–1982*, eds. Alfred A. Baltizer and Gerald M. Bonetto (Chicago: Regnery, 1983), 38.

## CHAPTER TWO: BREEDING MOBS

- 1 Mark R. Levin, *Ameritopia: The Unmaking of America* (New York: Threshold Editions, 2012), 6–7.
- 2 Ibid., 7–8.
- 3 Ibid., 16.
- 4 Julien Benda, *The Treason of the Intellectuals* (New Brunswick: Transaction, 2014), 2
- 5 Ibid., 2–3.
- 6 Capital Research Center, “What Antifa Really Is,” December 21, 2020, <https://capitalresearch.org/article/is-antifa-an-idea-or-organization/> (April 6, 2021).
- 7 Scott Walter, “The Founders of Black Lives Matter,” *First Things*, March 29, 2021, <https://www.firstthings.com/web-exclusives/2021/03/the-founders-of-black-lives-matter> (April 6, 2021).
- 8 Levin, *Ameritopia*, 11.
- 9 Ibid., 13.
- 10 Jean-Jacques Rousseau, *Discourse on the Origin and Foundations of Inequality Among Men*, ed. and trans. Donald A. Cress (Indianapolis: Hackett, 2012), 45.
- 11 Ibid., 87.
- 12 G. W. F. Hegel, *Elements of the Philosophy of the Right*, trans. S. W. Dyde (Mineola, NY: Dover, 2005), 133.
- 13 Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels, *The Communist Manifesto* (London: Soho Books, 2010), 36.
- 14 Ibid., 23.
- 15 Ibid., 42.
- 16 Eric Hoffer, *The True Believer: Thoughts on the Nature of Mass Movements* (New York: HarperPerennial, 2010), 12.
- 17 Ibid., 69.
- 18 Ibid., 75.
- 19 Ibid., 76.
- 20 Ibid.
- 21 Ibid., 74.
- 22 Ibid., 80.
- 23 Ibid., 80–81.
- 24 Ibid., 85.
- 25 Ibid., 85–86.
- 26 Ibid., 87.
- 27 Tyler O’Neill, “Hacked Soros Documents Reveal Some Big Dark Money Surprises,” PJ Media, August 19, 2016, <https://pjmedia.com/news-and-politics/tyler-o-neil/2016/08/19/hacked-soros-documents-reveal-some-big-dark-money-surprises-n47598> (April 6, 2021).
- 28 Hoffer, *The True Believer*, 98.
- 29 Ibid., 140.
- 30 Hannah Arendt, *The Origins of Totalitarianism* (New York: Harcourt, 1976), 307.
- 31 *Frontiers in Social Movement Theory*, ed. Aldon D. Morris and Carol McClurg Mueller (New Haven: Yale University Press, 1992), x.

- [32](#) William A. Gamson, “The Social Psychology of Collective Action,” in *Frontiers in Social Movement Theory*, 56. Professor Gamson is a professor of sociology at Boston College and codirects the Media Research and Action Project: <https://www.bc.edu/bc-web/schools/mcas/departments/sociology/people/affiliated-emeriti/william-gamson.html> (April 6, 2021).
- [33](#) Ibid.
- [34](#) Ibid., 57.
- [35](#) Ibid., 74.
- [36](#) Debra Friedman and Doug McAdam, “Collective Identity and Activism: Networks, Choices and the Life of a Social Movement,” in *Frontiers in Social Movement Theory*, 157. Professor McAdam is currently the Ray Lyman Wilbur Professor of Sociology (Emeritus) at Stanford University: <https://sociology.stanford.edu/people/douglas-mcadam> (April 6, 2021).
- [37](#) Ibid.
- [38](#) Ibid., 169–70.
- [39](#) Bert Klandermans, “The Social Construction of Protest and Multiorganizational Fields,” in *Frontiers in Social Movement Theory*, 99–100. Professor Klandermans is a professor of sociology at the Free University, Amsterdam, Netherlands: <https://research.vu.nl/en/persons/bert-klандermans> (April 6, 2021).
- [40](#) Aldon D. Morris, “Political Consciousness and Collective Action,” in *Frontiers in Social Movement Theory*, 351–52. Professor Morris is the Leon Forrest Professor of Sociology and African American Studies at Northwestern University: <https://sociology.northwestern.edu/people/faculty/core/aldon-morris.html> (April 6, 2021).
- [41](#) Ibid., 357–58.
- [42](#) Ibid., 370.
- [43](#) Ibid.
- [44](#) Ibid.
- [45](#) Ibid., 371.
- [46](#) Ibid.
- [47](#) Ibid.
- [48](#) Ibid.
- [49](#) Ibid.
- [50](#) Ibid.
- [51](#) Frances Fox Piven and Richard Cloward, *The Breaking of the American Social Compact* (New York: New Press, 1967), 267.
- [52](#) Ibid., 269.
- [53](#) Ibid., 287, 288.
- [54](#) Ibid., 289.
- [55](#) Biden-Sanders Unity Task Force Recommendations, “Combating the Climate Crisis and Pursuing Environmental Justice,” <https://joebiden.com/wp-content/uploads/2020/08/UNITY-TASK-FORCE-RECOMMENDATIONS.pdf> (April 6, 2021).
- [56](#) Piven and Cloward, *The Breaking of the American Social Compact*, 289.
- [57](#) Ibid.
- [58](#) Ibid., 290.
- [59](#) Ibid.
- [60](#) Ibid., 291.

61 Ibid.

62 Ibid.

63 Ibid., 291–92.

64 Nicholas Fondacaro, “ABC, NBC Spike ‘Mostly Peaceful’ Protests Leaving \$2 Billion in Damages,” mrcNewsBusters, September 16, 2020, <https://www.newsbusters.org/blogs/nb/nicholas-fondacaro/2020/09/16/abc-nbc-spike-mostly-peaceful-protests-leaving-2-billion> (April 6, 2021).

65 Piven and Cloward, *The Breaking of the American Social Compact*, 292.

66 Ibid., 292–93.

67 Frances Fox Piven, “Throw Sand in the Gears of Everything,” *Nation*, January 18, 2017, <https://www.thenation.com/article/archive/throw-sand-in-the-gears-of-everything/> (April 6, 2021).

68 Ibid.

69 Ibid.

70 Ibid.

71 Allan Bloom, *The Closing of the American Mind* (New York: Simon & Schuster, 1987), 26.

72 Ibid., 55, 56.

73 Ibid., 58.

## CHAPTER THREE: HATE AMERICA, INC.

- 1 Felicity Barringer, “The Mainstreaming of Marxism in U.S. Colleges,” *New York Times*, October 29, 1989, <https://www.nytimes.com/1989/10/25/us/education-the-mainstreaming-of-marxism-in-us-colleges.html> (April 7, 2021).
- 2 Ibid.
- 3 Ibid.
- 4 Ibid.
- 5 Herbert Croly, “The Promise of American Life,” in *Classics of American Political and Constitutional Thought*, vol. 2, eds. Scott J. Hammond, Kevin R. Harwick, and Howard L. Lubert (Indianapolis: Hackett, 2007), 297.
- 6 Ibid., 313.
- 7 Herbert D. Croly, *Progressive Democracy* (London: Forgotten Books, 2015), 38–39.
- 8 Statista, “Percentage of the U.S. Population who have completed four years of college or more from 1940 to 2019,” <https://www.statista.com/statistics/184272/educational-attainment-of-college-diploma-or-higher-by-gender/> (April 7, 2021).
- 9 Ibid.
- 10 John Dewey, *Individualism Old and New* (Amherst, NY: Prometheus Books, 1999), 51.
- 11 John Dewey, *Democracy and Education* (Simon & Brown, 2012), 234.
- 12 Ibid., 239, 240, 245.
- 13 John Dewey, “Ethical Principles Underlying Education,” appearing in *The Early Works*, vol. 5, 1882–1898: *Early Essays*, ed. Jo Ann Boydston (Carbondale, Ill.: Southern Illinois University Press, 2008), 59–63.
- 14 John Dewey, “What Are the Russian Schools Doing?” *New Republic*, December 5, 1928, <https://newrepublic.com/article/92769/russia-soviet-education-communism> (April 7, 2021).
- 15 Ibid.
- 16 Ibid.
- 17 Mark R. Levin, *Unfreedom of the Press* (New York: Threshold Editions, 2019), Chapter 6.
- 18 Richard M. Weaver, *Ideas Have Consequences* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1948), 2.
- 19 Ibid.
- 20 Ibid., 5.
- 21 Ibid.
- 22 Ibid., 5–6.
- 23 Ibid., 6.
- 24 Ibid., 85.
- 25 Madeleine Davis, “New Left,” *Encyclopaedia Britannica*, <https://www.britannica.com/topic/New-Left> (April 7, 2021).
- 26 Ibid.
- 27 *A-Z Guide to Modern Social and Political Theorists*, eds. Noel Parker and Stuart Sun (London: Routledge, 1997), 238.
- 28 Herbert Marcuse, *One Dimensional Man* (Boston: Beacon Press: 1964), 3.
- 29 Ibid.
- 30 Ibid., 4.

- 31 Herbert Marcuse, “The Failure of the New Left?” in *New German Critique* 18 (Fall 1979), <https://www.marcuse.org/herbert/pubs/70spubs/Marcuse1979FailureNewLeft.pdf> (April 7, 2021).
- 32 Barringer, “The Mainstreaming of Marxism in U.S. Colleges.”
- 33 Ibid.
- 34 Ibid.
- 35 Richard Landes, *Heaven on Earth: The Varieties of the Millennial Experience* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2011), 12, 13.
- 36 Ibid., 13.
- 37 Ibid.
- 38 Ibid., 14.
- 39 Ibid., 17.
- 40 BBC, “Historical Figures, Vladimir Lenin,” [http://www.bbc.co.uk/history/historic\\_figures/lenin\\_vladimir.shtml](http://www.bbc.co.uk/history/historic_figures/lenin_vladimir.shtml) (April 7, 2021).
- 41 BBC, “Historical Figures, Mao Zedong,” [http://www.bbc.co.uk/history/historic\\_figures/mao\\_zedong.shtml](http://www.bbc.co.uk/history/historic_figures/mao_zedong.shtml) (April 7, 2021).
- 42 BBC, “Historical Figures, Pol Pot,” [http://www.bbc.co.uk/history/historic\\_figures/pot\\_pol.shtml](http://www.bbc.co.uk/history/historic_figures/pot_pol.shtml) (April 7, 2021).
- 43 Lois Weis, “For Jean Anyon, my colleague and friend,” *Perspectives on Urban Education*, University of Pennsylvania, <https://urbanedjournal.gse.upenn.edu/archive/volume-11-issue-1-winter-2014/jean-anyon-my-colleague-and-friend> (April 7, 2021).
- 44 Jean Anyon, *Marx and Education* (New York: Routledge, 2011), 7
- 45 Ibid., 7, 8.
- 46 Raymond Aron, *The Opium of the Intellectuals* (New Brunswick, NJ: Transaction, 1957), 94.
- 47 Anyon, *Marx and Education*, 8–9 (quoting Marx and Engels).
- 48 Jeffrey Bartash, “Share of union workers in the U.S. falls to a record low in 2019,” *Marketwatch*, January 31, 2020, <https://www.marketwatch.com/story/share-of-union-workers-in-the-us-falls-to-a-record-low-in-2019-2020-01-22> (April 8, 2021).
- 49 Richard Epstein, “The Decline of Unions Is Good News,” *Ricochet*, January 28, 2020, <https://ricochet.com/717005/archives/the-decline-of-unions-is-good-news/> (April 8, 2021).
- 50 Anyon, *Marx and Education*, 9–10 (quoting Marx).
- 51 Aron, *The Opium of the Intellectuals*, 94–95.
- 52 Anyon, *Marx and Education*, 11.
- 53 Ibid., 12–13 (quoting Marx).
- 54 Lance Izumi, “Why Are Teachers Mostly Liberal?” Pacific Research Institute, April 3, 2019, <https://www.pacificresearch.org/why-are-teachers-mostly-liberal/> (April 8, 2021).
- 55 Alyson Klein, “Survey: Educator’s Political Leanings, Who They Voted For, Where They Stand on Key Issues,” *Education Week*, December 12, 2017, <https://www.edweek.org/leadership/survey-educators-political-leanings-who-they-voted-for-where-they-stand-on-key-issues/2017/12> (April 8, 2021).
- 56 Anyon, *Marx and Education*, 19.
- 57 Ibid., 35.
- 58 Ibid., 36–37.
- 59 Ibid., 96–97.
- 60 Ibid., 97.
- 61 Ibid., 98.
- 62 Ibid., 99.

[63](#) Ibid.

[64](#) Ibid., 99–100.

[65](#) Ibid., 100–101.

[66](#) Ibid., 103–4.

[67](#) Jean Anyon, *Radical Possibilities: Public Policy, Urban Education, and a New Social Movement* (New York: Routledge, 2014), 140–41.

[68](#) John M. Ellis, *The Breakdown of Higher Education* (New York: Encounter Books), 30, 31.

[69](#) Ibid., 31.



## CHAPTER FOUR: RACISM, GENDERISM, AND MARXISM

- 1 Uri Harris, “Jordan B. Peterson, Critical Theory, and the New Bourgeoisie,” *Quillette*, January 17, 2018, <https://quillette.com/2018/01/17/jordan-b-peterson-critical-theory-new-bourgeoisie/> (April 8, 2021).
- 2 Ibid.
- 3 Ibid.
- 4 Ibid.
- 5 Ibid.
- 6 Ibid.
- 7 Ibid.
- 8 Ibid.
- 9 Jonathan Butcher and Mike Gonzalez, “Critical Race Theory, the New Intolerance, and Its Grip on America,” Heritage Foundation, December 7, 2020, <https://www.heritage.org/civil-rights/report/critical-race-theory-the-new-intolerance-and-its-grip-america> (April 8, 2021).
- 10 George R. La Noue, “Critical Race Training or Civil Rights Law: We Can’t Have Both,” Liberty & Law, November 4, 2020, <https://lawliberty.org/critical-race-theory-or-civil-rights-law-we-cant-have-both/> (April 8, 2021).
- 11 Ibid.
- 12 Thomas Sowell, *Intellectuals and Society* (New York: Basic Books, 2011), 468.
- 13 Ibid., 469.
- 14 Ibid.
- 15 Ibid.
- 16 Herbert Marcuse, *One-Dimensional Man: Studies in the Ideology of Advanced Industrial Society* (Boston: Beacon Press, 1991), 256–57.
- 17 Faith Karimi, “What critical race theory is—and isn’t,” CNN, October 1, 2020, <https://www.cnn.com/2020/10/01/us/critical-race-theory-explainer-trnd/index.html> (April 8, 2021).
- 18 Ibid.
- 19 Richard Delgado and Jean Stefancic, *Critical Race Theory* (New York: New York University Press, 2017), 3.
- 20 Ibid., 8.
- 21 Ibid.
- 22 Ibid., 9.
- 23 Ibid.
- 24 Ibid., 10, 11.
- 25 Ibid., 8.
- 26 “Thomas Sowell Hammers ‘Despicable’ Derrick Bell; Compares to Hitler,” Breitbart, March 7, 2012, <https://www.breitbart.com/clips/2012/03/07/sowell%20on%20bell/> (video interview dated May 24, 1990) (April 8, 2021).
- 27 Thomas Sowell, *Inside American Education: The Decline, the Deception, the Dogmas* (New York: Free Press, 1993), 154.
- 28 Derrick A. Bell, “*Brown v. Board of Education* and the Interest-Convergence Dilemma,” *Harvard Law Review*, January 11, 1980, <https://harvardlawreview.org/1980/01/brown-v-board-of-education-and->

- [the-interest-convergence-dilemma/](#) (April 8, 2021).
- 29 Derrick A. Bell, “Who’s Afraid of Critical Race Theory?” *University of Illinois Law Review*, February 23, 1995, [https://sph.umd.edu/sites/default/files/files/Bell\\_Whos%20Afraid%20of%20CRT\\_1995UILLRrev893.pdf](https://sph.umd.edu/sites/default/files/files/Bell_Whos%20Afraid%20of%20CRT_1995UILLRrev893.pdf) (April 8, 2021), 901.
- 30 Ibid.
- 31 Steve Klinsky, “The Civil Rights Legend Who Opposed Critical Race Theory,” RealClearPolitics, October 12, 2020, [https://www.realclearpolitics.com/articles/2020/10/12/the\\_civil\\_rights\\_legend\\_who\\_opposed\\_critical\\_race\\_theory\\_144423.html](https://www.realclearpolitics.com/articles/2020/10/12/the_civil_rights_legend_who_opposed_critical_race_theory_144423.html) (April 8, 2021).
- 32 Ibid.
- 33 Ibid.
- 34 Ibid.
- 35 Delgado and Stefancic, *Critical Race Theory*, 45, 46.
- 36 Butcher and Gonzalez, “Critical Race Theory, the New Intolerance, and Its Grip on America.”
- 37 Robin DiAngelo, *White Fragility* (Boston: Beacon Press, 2018), 28.
- 38 Delgado and Stefancic, *Critical Race Theory*, 29.
- 39 Chris Demaske, “Critical Race Theory,” First Amendment Encyclopedia, <https://www.mtsu.edu/first-amendment/article/1254/critical-race-theory>, (April 9, 2021).
- 40 Delgado and Stefancic, *Critical Race Theory*, 125.
- 41 Ibid., 127, 128.
- 42 Ibid., 132, 133.
- 43 Butcher and Gonzalez, “Critical Race Theory, the New Intolerance, and Its Grip on America.”
- 44 Ozlem Sensoy and Robin DiAngelo, *Is Everyone Really Equal?* (New York: Teachers College Press, 2017), xii.
- 45 Ibid., vii.
- 46 Ibid., xxi, xxii, xxiii, xxiv.
- 47 Ibid., xxiv.
- 48 “Critical Race Training In Education,” Legal Insurrection Foundation, <https://criticalrace.org/> (April 9, 2021).
- 49 Krystina Skurk, “Critical Race Theory in K–12 Education,” RealClear PublicAffairs, July 12, 2020, [https://www.realclearpublicaffairs.com/articles/2020/07/16/critical\\_race\\_theory\\_in\\_k-12\\_education\\_498969.html](https://www.realclearpublicaffairs.com/articles/2020/07/16/critical_race_theory_in_k-12_education_498969.html) (April 9, 2021).
- 50 Ibid.
- 51 Ibid.
- 52 Peter W. Wood, *1620: A Critical Response to the 1619 Project* (New York: Encounter Books, 2020), 1 (quoting Jake Silverstein, *New York Times Magazine*).
- 53 Ibid., 4.
- 54 Ibid., 5.
- 55 Ibid., 6.
- 56 “We Respond to the Historians Who Critiqued the 1619 Project,” *New York Times Magazine*, December 20, 2019, <https://www.nytimes.com/2019/12/20/magazine/we-respond-to-the-historians-who-critiqued-the-1619-project.html> (April 9, 2021).
- 57 Ibid.
- 58 Ibid.

- 59 Ibid.
- 60 Adam Serwer, “The Fight Over the 1619 Project Is Not About Facts,” *Atlantic*, December 23, 2019, <https://www.theatlantic.com/ideas/archive/2019/12/historians-clash-1619-project/604093/> (April 9, 2021).
- 61 Mark R. Levin, *Unfreedom of the Press* (New York: Threshold Editions, 2019), chapter 6.
- 62 Glenn Garvin, “Fidel’s Favorite Propagandist,” *Reason*, March 2007, <https://reason.com/2007/02/28/fidels-favorite-propagandist/> (April 9, 2021).
- 63 Zach Goldberg, “How the Media Led the Great Racial Awakening,” *Tablet*, August 4, 2020, <https://www.tabletmag.com/sections/news/articles/media-great-racial-awakening> (April 9, 2021).
- 64 Ibid.
- 65 Ibid.
- 66 Ibid.
- 67 Ibid.
- 68 Executive Order 13950, “Combating Race and Sex Stereotyping,” September 22, 2020, <https://www.federalregister.gov/documents/2020/09/28/2020-21534/combating-race-and-sex-stereotyping> (April 9, 2021).
- 69 Ibid.
- 70 Ibid.
- 71 “Executive Order on Advancing Racial Equity and Support for Underserved Communities Through the Federal Government,” January 20, 2021, <https://www.whitehouse.gov/briefing-room/presidential-actions/2021/01/20/executive-order-advancing-racial-equity-and-support-for-underserved-communities-through-the-federal-government/> (April 9, 2021).
- 72 Bradford Betz, “What is China’s social credit system?” Fox News, May 4, 2020, <https://www.foxnews.com/world/what-is-china-social-credit-system> (April 9, 2021).
- 73 Ibid.
- 74 President’s Advisory 1776 Commission, “The 1776 Report,” January 2021, <https://ipfs.io/ipfs/QmVzW5NfySnfTk7ucdEoWXshkNUXn3dseBA7ZVrQMBfZey> (April 9, 2021).
- 75 Ibid.
- 76 MSNBC, January 19, 2021.
- 77 Delgado and Stefancic, *Critical Race Theory*, 154, 155.
- 78 Patrisse Cullors, “Trained Marxist Patrisse Cullors, Black Lives Matter BLM,” YouTube, June 2020, <https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=1noLh25FbKI> (April 9, 2021).
- 79 <https://www.dailywire.com/news/fraud-blm-co-founder-patrisse-cullors-blasted-over-real-estate-buying-binge>.
- 80 Mike Gonzalez, “To Destroy America,” *City Journal*, September 1, 2020, <https://www.city-journal.org/marxist-revolutionaries-black-lives-matter> (April 9, 2021).
- 81 Ibid.
- 82 Scott Walter, “A Terrorist’s Ties to a Leading Black Lives Matter Group,” Capital Research Center, June 24, 2020, <https://capitalresearch.org/article/a-terrorists-ties-to-a-leading-black-lives-matter-group/> (April 9, 2021).
- 83 Gonzalez, “To Destroy America.”
- 84 Laura Lambert, “Weather Underground,” *Encyclopaedia Britannica*, <https://www.britannica.com/topic/Weathermen> (April 9, 2021).

- 85 “Celebrating four years of organizing to protect black lives,” *Black Lives Matter*, 2013, <https://drive.google.com/file/d/0B0pJEXffvS0uOHdJREJnZ2JJYTA/view> (April 9, 2021).
- 86 Karl Marx, *Manifesto of the Communist Party* ([Marxists.org](http://Marxists.org)), <https://www.marxists.org/archive/marx/works/1848/communist-manifesto/ch04.htm> (April 9, 2021), chapter 2.
- 87 Lindsay Perez Huber, “Using Latina/o Critical Race Theory (LATCRIT) and Racist Nativism to Explore Intersectionality in the Education Experiences of Undocumented Chicana College Students,” *Educational Foundations*, Winter–Spring 2010, <https://files.eric.ed.gov/fulltext/EJ885982.pdf> (April 9, 2021), 77, 78, 79.
- 88 *Ibid.*, 79, 80.
- 89 *Ibid.*, 80, 81.
- 90 Jean Stefancic, “Latino and Latina Critical Theory: An Annotated Bibliography,” *California Law Review*, 1997, 423.
- 91 Rodolfo F. Acuna, *Occupied America: A History of Chicanos* (New York: Pearson, 1972), 1.
- 92 Abby Budiman, “Key findings about U.S. immigrants,” Pew Research Center, August 20, 2020, <https://www.pewresearch.org/fact-tank/2020/08/20/key-findings-about-u-s-immigrants/> (April 9, 2021).
- 93 Ricardo Castro-Salazar and Carl Bagley, *Navigating Borders: Critical Race Theory Research and Counter History of Undocumented Americans* (New York: Peter Lang, 2012), 4.
- 94 *Ibid.*, 5.
- 95 *Ibid.*, 27.
- 96 *Ibid.*, 26, 27.
- 97 *Ibid.*, 27.
- 98 *Ibid.*, 37.
- 99 Robert Law, “Biden’s Executive Actions: President Unilaterally Changes Immigration Policy,” Center for Immigration Studies, March 15, 2021, <https://cis.org/Report/Bidens-Executive-Actions-President-Unilaterally-Changes-Immigration-Policy> (April 9, 2021).
- 100 Ashley Parker, Nick Miroff, Sean Sullivan, and Tyler Pager, “‘No end in sight’: Inside the Biden administration’s failure to contain the border surge,” *Washington Post*, March 20, 2021, [https://www.washingtonpost.com/politics/biden-border-surge/2021/03/20/21824e94-8818-11eb-8a8b-5cf82c3dffe4\\_story.html](https://www.washingtonpost.com/politics/biden-border-surge/2021/03/20/21824e94-8818-11eb-8a8b-5cf82c3dffe4_story.html) (April 9, 2021).
- 101 *Ibid.*
- 102 Ruth Igielnik and Abby Budiman, “The Changing Racial and Ethnic Composition of the U.S. Electorate,” Pew Research Center, September 23, 2020, <https://www.pewresearch.org/2020/09/23/the-changing-racial-and-ethnic-composition-of-the-u-s-electorate/> (April 9, 2021).
- 103 Jim Clifton, “42 Million Want to Migrate to U.S.,” Gallup, March 24, 2021, <https://news.gallup.com/opinion/chairman/341678/million-migrate.aspx> (April 9, 2021).
- 104 Scott Yenor, “Sex, Gender, and the Origin of the Culture Wars,” Heritage Foundation, June 30, 2017, <https://www.heritage.org/gender/report/sex-gender-and-the-origin-the-culture-wars-intellectual-history> (April 9, 2021).
- 105 Veronica Meade-Kelly, “Male or Female? It’s not always so simple,” UCLA, August 20, 2015, <https://newsroom.ucla.edu/stories/male-or-female> (April 9, 2021).
- 106 Kadia Goba, “He/she could be they in the new Congress,” *Axios*, January 2, 2021, <https://www.axios.com/congress-gender-identity-pronouns-rules-40a4ab56-9d5c-4dfc-ada3->

- [4a683882967a.html](#) (April 9, 2021).
- 107 Russell Goldman, “Here’s a list of 58 gender options for Facebook users,” ABC News, February 13, 2014, <https://abcnews.go.com/blogs/headlines/2014/02/heres-a-list-of-58-gender-options-for-facebook-users/> (April 9, 2021).
- 108 “Executive Order on Preventing and Combating Discrimination on the Basis of Gender Identity or Sexual Orientation,” White House, January 20, 2021, <https://www.whitehouse.gov/briefing-room/presidential-actions/2021/01/20/executive-order-preventing-and-combating-discrimination-on-basis-of-gender-identity-or-sexual-orientation/> (April 9, 2021).
- 109 “Joe Biden’s War on Women,” *National Review*, January 25, 2021, <https://www.nationalreview.com/2021/01/joe-bidens-war-on-women/> (April 9, 2021).
- 110 Ibid.
- 111 “Transgender Children & Youth: Understanding the Basics,” Human Rights Campaign, <https://www.hrc.org/resources/transgender-children-and-youth-understanding-the-basics> (April 9, 2021).
- 112 Michelle Cretella, “I’m a Pediatrician. How Transgender Ideology Has Infiltrated My Field and Produced Large-Scale Child Abuse,” *Daily Signal*, July 3, 2017, <https://www.dailysignal.com/2017/07/03/im-pediatrician-transgender-ideology-infiltrated-field-produced-large-scale-child-abuse/> (April 9, 2021).
- 113 Ibid.
- 114 Christine Di Stefano, “Marxist Feminism,” Wiley Online Library, September 15, 2014, <https://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/abs/10.1002/9781118474396.wbept0653> (April 9, 2021).
- 115 Sue Caldwell, “Marxism, feminism, and transgender politics,” *International Socialism*, December 19, 2017, <http://isj.org.uk/marxism-feminism-and-transgender-politics/> (April 9, 2021).
- 116 Ibid.
- 117 Natalie Jesionka, “Social Justice for toddlers: These new books and programs start the conversation early,” *Washington Post*, March 18, 2021, <https://www.washingtonpost.com/lifestyle/2021/03/18/social-justice-antiracist-books-toddlers-kids/> (April 9, 2021).
- 118 Ibid.
- 119 “Sexual Ideology Indoctrination: The Equality Act’s Impact on School Curriculum and Parental Rights,” Heritage Foundation, May 15, 2019, <https://www.heritage.org/civil-society/report/sexual-ideology-indoctrination-the-equality-acts-impact-school-curriculum-and> (April 9, 2021).
- 120 Ibid.
- 121 Ibid.

## CHAPTER FIVE: “CLIMATE CHANGE” FANATICISM

- 1 George Reisman, *Capitalism* (Ottawa, IL: Jameson Books, 1990), 19.
- 2 F. A. Hayek, *The Fatal Conceit: The Errors of Socialism* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1988), 6, 7.
- 3 Milton Friedman, *Capitalism and Freedom* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2002), 7, 8.
- 4 *Ibid.*, 9.
- 5 *Ibid.*, 10.
- 6 Reisman, 77.
- 7 *Ibid.*
- 8 Federico Demaria, Francois Schneider, Filka Sekulova, and Joan Martinez-Alier, “What Is Degrowth? From Activist Slogan to a Social Movement,” *Environmental Values* 22, no. 1 (2013), 192.
- 9 *Ibid.*, 194.
- 10 *Ibid.*
- 11 Mark R. Levin, *Plunder and Deceit* (New York: Threshold Editions, 2015), 112; Demaria, Schneider, Sekulova, and Martinez-Alier, “What is Degrowth?”
- 12 Mackenzie Mount, “Green Biz, Work Less to Live More,” Sierra Club, March 6, 2014, <https://contentdev.sierraclub.org/www/www/sierra/2014-2-march-april/green-biz/work-less-live-more> (April 10, 2021).
- 13 “Serge Latouche,” [famouseconomists.net](https://www.famouseconomists.net), <https://www.famouseconomists.net/serge-latouche> (April 10, 2021).
- 14 Serge Latouche, *Farewell to Growth* (Cambridge: Polity Press, 2009), 89.
- 15 *Ibid.*, 90–91.
- 16 *Ibid.*, 31, 32.
- 17 George A. Gonzalez, “Urban Sprawl, Climate Change, Oil Depletion, and Eco-Marxism,” in *Political Theory and Global Climate Change*, ed. Steve Vanderheiden (Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 2008), 153.
- 18 *Ibid.*
- 19 Giorgos Kallis, *In Defense of Degrowth: Opinions and Manifestos* (Brussels: Uneven Earth Press, 2017), 10.
- 20 *Ibid.*, 12.
- 21 *Ibid.*, 13, 14.
- 22 *Ibid.*, 71.
- 23 *Ibid.*, 72.
- 24 Ayn Rand, *Return of the Primitive: The Anti-Industrial Revolution* (New York: Meridian, 1998), 280, 281.
- 25 *Ibid.*, 282.
- 26 *Ibid.*, 285.
- 27 *Ibid.*
- 28 Timothy W. Luke, “Climatologies as Social Critique: The Social Construction/Creation of Global Warming, Global Dimming, and Global Cooling,” in *Political Theory and Global Climate Change*, ed. Steve Vanderheiden (Cambridge, MA: MIT Press, 2008), 128.
- 29 *Ibid.*, 145.
- 30 Rand, *Return of the Primitive*, 277.

- <sup>31</sup> Ibid., 278.
- <sup>32</sup> Luke, “Climatologies as Social Critique,” 145.
- <sup>33</sup> Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels, *The Communist Manifesto* (London: Soho Books, 2010) 21.
- <sup>34</sup> Rand, *Return of the Primitive*, 285, 286.
- <sup>35</sup> David Naguib Pellow, *What Is Critical Environmental Justice?* (Cambridge, U.K.: Polity Press, 2018), 4.
- <sup>36</sup> Ibid., 4, 5.
- <sup>37</sup> Ibid., 18.
- <sup>38</sup> Ibid., 18–19.
- <sup>39</sup> Ibid., 22.
- <sup>40</sup> Ibid., 23.
- <sup>41</sup> “Declaration of Independence: A Transcription,” <https://www.archives.gov/founding-docs/declaration-transcript> (April 10, 2021).
- <sup>42</sup> Pellow, *What Is Critical Environmental Justice?*, 26, 30.
- <sup>43</sup> Ibid., 30, 31.
- <sup>44</sup> “The Margarita Declaration on Climate Change,” July 15–18, 2014, <https://redd-monitor.org/2014/08/08/the-margarita-declaration-on-climate-change-we-reject-the-implementation-of-false-solutions-to-climate-change-such-as-carbon-markets-and-other-forms-of-privatization-and-commodification-of-life/> (April 10, 2021).
- <sup>45</sup> Hayek, *The Fatal Conceit*, 8.
- <sup>46</sup> “The Margarita Declaration on Climate Change.”
- <sup>47</sup> Thomas Sowell, *The Quest for Cosmic Justice* (New York: Touchstone, 1999), 99.
- <sup>48</sup> Ibid., 131, 132.
- <sup>49</sup> “The Margarita Declaration on Climate Change.”
- <sup>50</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>51</sup> Reisman, *Capitalism*, 63.
- <sup>52</sup> Ibid., 65.
- <sup>53</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>54</sup> Ibid., 71.
- <sup>55</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>56</sup> “There is no climate emergency,” Letter to United Nations Secretary General, September 23, 2019, <https://clintel.nl/wp-content/uploads/2019/09/ecd-letter-to-un.pdf> (April 10, 2021).
- <sup>57</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>58</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>59</sup> Ian Pilmer, “The Science and Politics of Climate Change,” in *Climate Change: The Facts*, ed. Alan Moran (Woodsville, NH: Stockade Books, 2015), 10, 11.
- <sup>60</sup> Ibid., 21.
- <sup>61</sup> Ibid., 24, 25.
- <sup>62</sup> Patrick J. Michaels, “Why climate models are failing,” in *Climate Change: The Facts*, 27.
- <sup>63</sup> Richard S. Lindzen, “Global warming, models and language,” in *Climate Change: The Facts*, 38.
- <sup>64</sup> Robert M. Carter, “The scientific context,” in *Climate Change: The Facts*, 81.
- <sup>65</sup> Ibid., 82.
- <sup>66</sup> H. Res. 109, 116th Cong. (2019–2020), <https://www.congress.gov/bill/116th-congress/house-resolution/109> (April 10, 2021).

- <sup>67</sup> Milton Ezrati, “The Green New Deal and the Cost of Virtue,” *Forbes*, February 2, 2019, <https://www.forbes.com/sites/miltonezrati/2019/02/19/the-green-new-deal-and-the-cost-of-virtue/?sh=6fe12ccd3dec> (April 10, 2021).
- <sup>68</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>69</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>70</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>71</sup> Kevin Dayaratna and Nicolas Loris, “A Glimpse of What the Green New Deal Would Cost Taxpayers,” *Daily Signal*, March 25, 2019, <https://www.dailysignal.com/2019/03/25/a-glimpse-of-what-the-green-new-deal-would-cost-taxpayers/> (April 10, 2021).
- <sup>72</sup> Douglas Holtz-Eakin, Dan Bosch, Ben Gitis, Dan Goldbeck, and Philip Rossetti, “The Green New Deal: Scope, Scale, and Implications,” American Action Forum, February 25, 2019, <https://www.americanactionforum.org/research/the-green-new-deal-scope-scale-and-implications/> (April 10, 2021).
- <sup>73</sup> “Paris Agreement,” November 2015, [https://unfccc.int/files/meetings/paris\\_nov\\_2015/application/pdf/paris\\_agreement\\_english\\_.pdf](https://unfccc.int/files/meetings/paris_nov_2015/application/pdf/paris_agreement_english_.pdf) (April 10, 2021).
- <sup>74</sup> “U.S. Declares China committing ‘genocide’ against Uighurs,” Associated Foreign Press, January 19, 2021, <https://www.msn.com/en-au/news/world/us-declares-china-committing-genocide-against-uighurs/ar-BB1cTEIz> (April 10, 2021).
- <sup>75</sup> Ibid.
- <sup>76</sup> Barbara Boland, “Biden: China’s Genocide of Uighurs Just Different Norms,” *American Conservative*, February 28, 2021, <https://www.theamericanconservative.com/state-of-the-union/biden-chinas-genocide-of-uighurs-just-different-norms/> (April 10, 2021).
- <sup>77</sup> Brian Zinchuk, “This is the executive order killing Keystone XL, citing the reasons why Biden did it,” *Toronto Star*, January 20, 2021, <https://www.thestar.com/news/canada/2021/01/20/this-is-the-executive-order-killing-keystone-xl-citing-the-reasons-why-biden-did-it.html> (April 10, 2021).
- <sup>78</sup> “Fact Sheet: President Biden Takes Executive Actions to Tackle the Climate Crisis at Home and Abroad, Create Jobs, and Restore Scientific Integrity Across Federal Government,” White House, January 27, 2021, <https://www.whitehouse.gov/briefing-room/statements-releases/2021/01/27/fact-sheet-president-biden-takes-executive-actions-to-tackle-the-climate-crisis-at-home-and-abroad-create-jobs-and-restore-scientific-integrity-across-federal-government/> (April 10, 2021).
- <sup>79</sup> Megan Henney, “Progressives pressure Biden to pass \$10T green infrastructure, climate justice bill,” *FoxBusiness*, March 30, 2021, <https://www.foxbusiness.com/economy/progressives-pressure-biden-green-infrastructure-climate-justice-bill> (April 10, 2021).
- <sup>80</sup> “Pork wrapped in a stimulus,” *Washington Times*, March 9, 2021, <https://www.washingtontimes.com/news/2021/mar/9/editorial-democrats-coronavirus-stimulus-91-percen/> (April 10, 2021).
- <sup>81</sup> Brad Polumbo, “9 Crazy Examples of Unrelated Waste and Partisan Spending in Biden’s \$2 Trillion ‘Infrastructure’ Proposal,” Foundation for Economic Education, March 31, 2021, <https://fee.org/articles/9-crazy-examples-of-unrelated-waste-and-partisan-spending-in-biden-s-2t-infrastructure-proposal/> (April 10, 2021).
- <sup>82</sup> Katelyn Caralle, “AOC leads left’s claim \$2 trillion infrastructure bill is NOT enough,” *Daily Mail*, March 31, 2021, <https://www.msn.com/en-us/news/politics/aoc-leads-lefts-claim-dollar2-trillion-infrastructure-bill-is-not-enough/ar-BB1far2x> (April 10, 2021).



- 83 “Recognizing the duty of the Federal Government to implement an agenda to Transform, Heal, and Renew by Investing in a Vibrant Economy (‘THRIVE’),” S. Res.\_\_\_\_, MUR21083, [https://www.markey.senate.gov/imo/media/doc/\(2.8.2021\)%20THRIVE.pdf](https://www.markey.senate.gov/imo/media/doc/(2.8.2021)%20THRIVE.pdf) (April 10, 2021).
- 84 Collin Anderson, “Progressives Push Biden to Include \$10 Trillion Climate Plan in Infrastructure Package,” *Washington Free Beacon*, March 31, 2021, <https://freebeacon.com/policy/progressives-push-biden-to-include-10-trillion-climate-plan-in-infrastructure-package/> (April 10, 2021).
- 85 Michael Shellenberger, “Why California’s Climate Policies Are Causing Electricity Blackouts,” *Forbes*, August 15, 2020, <https://www.forbes.com/sites/michaelshellenberger/2020/08/15/why-californias-climate-policies-are-causing-electricity-black-outs/?sh=43991d831591> (April 10, 2021).
- 86 Ibid.
- 87 “Understanding the Texas Energy Predicament,” Institute for Energy Research, February 18, 2021, <https://www.instituteforenergyresearch.org/the-grid/understanding-the-texas-energy-predicament/> (April 10, 2021).
- 88 Ibid.
- 89 Ibid.
- 90 Benji Jones, “The Biden administration has a game-changing approach to nature conservation,” *Vox*, May 7, 2021, <https://www.vox.com/2021/5/7/22423139/biden-30-by-30-conservation-initiative-historic>.
- 91 Mark R. Levin, *Plunder and Deceit* (New York: Threshold Editions, 2015), 111.

## CHAPTER SIX: PROPAGANDA, CENSORSHIP, AND SUBVERSION

- 1 “Marx the Journalist, an Interview with James Ledbetter,” *Jacobin*, May 5, 2018, <https://www.jacobinmag.com/2018/05/karl-marx-journalism-writings-newspaper> (April 11, 2021).
- 2 Ibid.
- 3 Ibid.
- 4 Ibid.
- 5 Ibid.
- 6 Richard M. Weaver, *Ideas Have Consequences* (Chicago: University of Chicago, 1948), 87–88.
- 7 Ibid., 88.
- 8 Ibid., 88, 89.
- 9 Ibid., 89–90.
- 10 Ibid., 101.
- 11 Edward Bernays, *Propaganda* (Brooklyn: IG, 1928), 52, 53.
- 12 Ibid., 47–48.
- 13 Richard Gunderman, “The manipulation of the American mind—Edward Bernays and the birth of public relations,” *Phys.org*, July 9, 2015, <https://phys.org/news/2015-07-american-mindedward-bernays-birth.html> (April 11, 2021).
- 14 Harold Dwight Lasswell, *Propaganda Technique in the World War* (Boston: MIT Press, 1927), 221.
- 15 Hannah Arendt, *The Origins of Totalitarianism* (Orlando: Harcourt, 1968), 352.
- 16 Ibid., 353.
- 17 Mark R. Levin, *Ameritopia* (New York: Threshold Editions, 2012), 7, 8.
- 18 Daniel J. Boorstin, *The Image: A Guide to Pseudo-Events in America* (New York: Vintage Books, 1961), 35.
- 19 Ibid.
- 20 Ibid.
- 21 Ibid., 37.
- 22 Ibid.
- 23 Ibid., 182, 183.
- 24 John Dewey, *Liberalism and Social Action* (Amherst, NY: Prometheus Books, 1935), 65–66.
- 25 Ibid., 66.
- 26 Michael Schudson, “What Public Journalism Knows about Journalism but Doesn’t Know about ‘Public,’” in *The Idea of Public Journalism*, ed. Theodore L. Glasser (New York: Guilford Press, 1999), 123.
- 27 Theodore Glasser, “The Ethics of Election Coverage,” *Stanford Magazine*, October 2016, <https://stanfordmag.org/contents/the-ethics-of-election-coverage> (April 11, 2021).
- 28 Ibid.
- 29 Davis “Buzz” Merritt, *Public Journalism and Public Life: Why Telling the News Is Not Enough* (New York: Routledge, 1998), 96, 97.
- 30 Davis Merritt, “Stop Trump? But who will bell the cat?” *Wichita Eagle*, December 8, 2018, <https://www.kansas.com/opinion/opn-columns-blogs/article48524730.html> (April 11, 2021).
- 31 Ibid.
- 32 Merritt, *Public Journalism and Public Life*, 7.

- 33 Jay Rosen, *What Are Journalists For?* (New Haven, CT: Yale University Press, 1999), 20.
- 34 Ibid., 19–20.
- 35 Jay Rosen, “Donald Trump Is Crashing the System. Journalism Needs to Build a New One,” *Washington Post*, July 13, 2016, <https://www.washingtonpost.com/news/in-theory/wp/2016/07/13/donald-trump-is-crashing-the-system-journalists-need-to-build-a-new-one/> (April 11, 2021).
- 36 Ibid.
- 37 Martin Linsky, “What Are Journalists For?” *American Prospect*, November 14, 2001, <https://prospect.org/features/journalists-for/> (April 11, 2021).
- 38 “Marx the Journalist, an Interview with James Ledbetter,” *Jacobin*, May 5, 2018, <https://www.jacobinmag.com/2018/05/karl-marx-journalism-writings-newspaper> (April 11, 2021).
- 39 Saul D. Alinsky, *Rules for Radicals: A Pragmatic Primer for Realistic Radicals* (New York: Vintage Books, 1971), xxii, xxiii.
- 40 Ibid., 130, 131, 133.
- 41 Chuck Todd, *Meet the Press*, December 30, 2018, <https://www.nbcnews.com/meet-the-press/meet-press-december-30-2018-n951406> (April 11, 2021).
- 42 “Global Warming,” mrcNewsBusters, <https://www.newsbusters.org/issues-events-groups/global-warming> (April 11, 2021).
- 43 Zach Goldberg, “How the Media Led the Great Racial Awakening,” *Tablet*, August 4, 2020, <https://www.tabletmag.com/sections/news/articles/media-great-racial-awakening> (April 11, 2021).
- 44 Ibid.
- 45 Ibid.
- 46 Ibid.
- 47 Ted Johnson, “CNN Announces Expansion of Team Covering Race Beat,” *Deadline*, July 13, 2020, <https://deadline.com/2020/07/cnn-jeff-zucker-race-beat-1202984234/> (April 11, 2021).
- 48 Martin Luther King Jr., “I Have a Dream,” 1963, *Encyclopaedia Britannica*, <https://www.britannica.com/topic/I-Have-A-Dream> (April 11, 2021).
- 49 Robert Henderson, “Tell Only Lies,” *City Journal*, December 27, 2020, <https://www.city-journal.org/self-censorship> (April 11, 2021).
- 50 Ibid.
- 51 Ibid.
- 52 Ibid.
- 53 Eric Kaufmann, “Academic Freedom in Crisis: Punishment, Political Discrimination, and Self-Censorship,” Center for the Study of Partisanship and Ideology, March 1, 2021, <https://cspicenter.org/wp-content/uploads/2021/03/AcademicFreedom.pdf> (April 11, 2021).
- 54 Kelsey Ann Naughton, “Speaking Freely: What Students Think about Expression at American Colleges,” Foundation for Individual Rights in Education, October 2017, <https://d28htnjz2elwuj.cloudfront.net/wp-content/uploads/2017/10/11091747/survey-2017-speaking-freely.pdf> (April 11, 2021).
- 55 Diane Ravitch, *The Language Police: How Pressure Groups Restrict What Students Learn* (New York: Vintage, 2003), 3–4.
- 56 Ibid., 160.
- 57 Krystina Skurk, “Critical Race Theory in K–12 Education,” RealClearPublicAffairs, [https://www.realclearpublicaffairs.com/articles/2020/07/16/critical\\_race\\_theory\\_in\\_k-12\\_education\\_498969.html](https://www.realclearpublicaffairs.com/articles/2020/07/16/critical_race_theory_in_k-12_education_498969.html) (April 11, 2021); Max Eden, “Critical Race Theory in American

- Classrooms,” *City Journal*, September 18, 2020, <https://www.city-journal.org/critical-race-theory-in-american-classrooms> (April 11, 2021).
- 58 Todd Starnes, “Parents furious over school’s plan to teach gender spectrum, fluidity,” Fox News, May 15, 2015, <https://www.foxnews.com/opinion/parents-furious-over-schools-plan-to-teach-gender-spectrum-fluidity> (April 11, 2021).
- 59 Charles Fain Lehman, “American High Schools Go Woke,” *Washington Free Beacon*, November 30, 2020, <https://freebeacon.com/campus/american-high-schools-go-woke/> (April 11, 2021).
- 60 UN Climate Change Learning Platform, <https://www.unclearn.org/> (April 11, 2021).
- 61 Allison Graham, “Why Should Schools Teach Climate Education?” *Medium.com*, July 12, 2018, <https://medium.com/unclearn/why-should-schools-teach-climate-education-f1e101ebc56e> (April 11, 2021).
- 62 Ibid.
- 63 Charles Gasparino, “How corporations surrendered to hard-left wokeness,” *New York Post*, February 13, 2021, <https://nypost.com/2021/02/13/how-corporations-surrendered-to-hard-left-wokeness/> (April 11, 2021).
- 64 Ibid.
- 65 Brooke Kato, “What is cancel culture? Everything to know about the toxic online trend,” *New York Post*, March 10, 2021, <https://nypost.com/article/what-is-cancel-culture-breaking-down-the-toxic-online-trend/> (April 11, 2021).
- 66 “A Letter on Justice and Open Debate,” *Harper’s Magazine*, July 7, 2020, <https://harpers.org/a-letter-on-justice-and-open-debate/> (April 11, 2021).
- 67 Heather Moon, “Top 10 Worst Cases of Big Tech Censorship in 2020,” *mrcNewsBusters*, January 4, 2021, <https://www.newsbusters.org/blogs/free-speech/heather-moon/2021/01/04/top-10-worst-cases-big-tech-censorship-2020> (April 11, 2021).
- 68 “FACEBOOK INSIDER LEAKS: Hours of Video of Zuckerberg & Execs Admitting They Have ‘Too Much Power’... FB Wants to ‘Work... with [Biden] on Some of Their Top Priorities’... Biden Issued a Number of Exec Orders... We as a Company Really Care Quite Deeply About,” *Project Veritas*, January 31, 2021, <https://www.projectveritas.com/news/facebook-insider-leaks-hours-of-video-of-zuckerberg-and-execs-admitting-they/> (April 11, 2021).
- 69 Ibid.
- 70 Allum Bokhari, “Exclusive: Unreleased Federal Report Concludes ‘No Evidence’ that Free Speech Online ‘Causes Hate Crimes,’” *Breitbart*, March 3, 2021, citing “The Role of Information and Communication Technologies in Hate Crimes: An Update to the 1993 Report,” U.S. Department of Commerce, <https://www.slideshare.net/AllumBokhari/ntia-hate-crimes-report-january-2021/1> (April 11, 2021).
- 71 Ibid.
- 72 Emily Jacobs, “Democrats demand more censorship from Big Tech bosses,” *New York Post*, November 18, 2020, <https://nypost.com/2020/11/18/democrats-use-big-tech-hearings-to-demand-more-censorship/> (April 11, 2021).
- 73 “The War on Free Speech,” *Pittsburgh Post-Gazette*, January 26, 2021, <https://www.post-gazette.com/opinion/editorials/2021/01/26/The-war-on-free-speech-Parler-Social-Media-technology/stories/202101140041> (April 11, 2021).
- 74 Krystal Hur, “Big tech employees rally behind Biden campaign,” *Opensecrets.org*, January 12, 2021, <https://www.opensecrets.org/news/2021/01/big-tech-employees-rally-biden/> (April 11, 2021).

- 75 Ari Levy, “Here’s the final tally of where tech billionaires donated for the 2020 election,” CNBC, November 2, 2020, <https://www.cnbc.com/2020/11/02/tech-billionaire-2020-election-donations-final-tally.html> (April 11, 2021).
- 76 Chuck Ross, “Biden Has Ties to 5 Major Tech Companies,” *Daily Caller*, January 10, 2021, <https://dailycaller.com/2021/01/10/biden-big-tech-apple-facebook-trump-parler/> (April 11, 2021).
- 77 Ryan Lizza, Daniel Lippman, and Meridith McGraw, “AOC wants to cancel those who worked for Trump. Good luck with that, they say,” *Politico*, November 9, 2020, <https://www.politico.com/news/2020/11/09/aoc-cancel-worked-for-trump-435293> (April 11, 2021).
- 78 Representatives Anna G. Eshoo and Jerry McNerney, “February 22, 2021 Letter to Mr. John T. Stankey,” <https://mcnerney.house.gov/sites/mcnerney.house.gov/files/McNerney-Eshoo%20TV%20Misinfo%20Letters%20-%202.22.21.pdf> (April 11, 2021).
- 79 Andrew Kerr, “Media Matters Study on Fox News ‘Misinformation’ Is Riddled with Misrepresentations, Flagged Objectively True Statements,” *Daily Caller*, February 22, 2021, <https://dailycaller.com/2021/02/22/media-matters-fox-news-disinformation/> (April 11, 2021).
- 80 Eshoo and McNerney, “February 22, 2021 Letter to Mr. John T. Stankey.”
- 81 Tom Elliot, “Now CNN’s @oliverdarcy is going after cable companies for carrying Fox News,” Twitter, January 8, 2021 (screenshot of @oliverdarcy), <https://twitter.com/tomselliott/status/1347465189252341764?lang=en> (April 11, 2021).
- 82 Ibid.
- 83 Alinsky, *Rules for Radicals*, 130.
- 84 Nicholas Kristoff, “Can We Put Fox News on Trial with Trump?” *New York Times*, February 10, 2021, <https://www.nytimes.com/2021/02/10/opinion/fox-news-accountability.html> (April 11, 2021).
- 85 Ibid.
- 86 Ibid.
- 87 Ibid.
- 88 Harry Hodgkinson, *Double Talk: The Language of Communism* (London: George Allen & Unwin, 1955), v, vi.
- 89 Ibid., 44
- 90 Ibid., 122.

## CHAPTER SEVEN: WE CHOOSE LIBERTY!

- 1 J. Christian Adams, “Read the Shocking Pentagon Training Materials Targeting Conservatives in the Military,” PJ Media, March 22, 2021, <https://pjmedia.com/jchristianadams/2021/03/22/read-the-pentagon-training-materials-targeting-conservatives-in-the-military-n1434071> (April 22, 2021); “Reversing Trump, Pentagon to release new transgender policy,” Associated Press, March 31, 2021, <https://www.foxnews.com/us/reversing-trump-pentagon-new-transgender-policy> (April 22, 2021).
- 2 Charles Creitz, “Rep. Waltz slams West Point ‘White rage’ instruction: Enemy’s ammo ‘doesn’t care about race, politics,”” Fox News, April 8, 2021, <https://www.foxnews.com/politics/rep-michael-waltz-slams-west-point-white-rage-instruction-enemys-ammo-doesnt-care-about-race-politics> (April 22, 2021).
- 3 Aaron Mehta, “Climate change is now a national security priority for the Pentagon,” *DefenseNews*, January 27, 2021, <https://www.defensenews.com/pentagon/2021/01/27/climate-change-is-now-a-national-security-priority-for-the-pentagon/> (April 22, 2021).
- 4 “Facts and Figures,” National Law Enforcement Officers Memorial Fund, <https://nleomf.org/facts-figures> (April 22, 2021).
- 5 Jeffrey James Higgins, “Enough of the lying—just look at the data. There’s no epidemic of racist police officers killing black Americans,” *Law Enforcement Today*, June 26, 2020, <https://www.lawenforcementtoday.com/systematic-racism-in-policing-its-time-to-stop-the-lying/> (April 22, 2021).
- 6 Victor Davis Hanson, “Obama: Transforming America,” RealClearPolitics, October 1, 2013, [https://www.realclearpolitics.com/articles/2013/10/01/obama\\_transforming\\_america\\_120170.html](https://www.realclearpolitics.com/articles/2013/10/01/obama_transforming_america_120170.html) (April 22, 2021).
- 7 “Less Policing = More Murders,” Law Enforcement Legal Defense Fund, [http://www.policedefense.org/wp-content/uploads/2021/04/Depolicing\\_April14.pdf](http://www.policedefense.org/wp-content/uploads/2021/04/Depolicing_April14.pdf) (April 22, 2021).
- 8 George Thomas, “Demoralized and Demonized: Police Departments Face ‘Workforce Crisis’ as Officers Leave in Droves,” CBN News, September 9, 2020, <https://www1.cbn.com/cbnnews/us/2020/september/demoralized-and-demonized-police-departments-face-workforce-crisis-as-officers-leave-in-droves> (April 22, 2021).
- 9 Jack Kelly, “Cities Will See Citizens Flee, Fearing Continued Riots and the Reemergence of Covid-19,” *Forbes*, June 2, 2020, <https://www.forbes.com/sites/jackkelly/2020/06/02/cities-will-see-citizens-flee-fearing-continued-riots-and-the-reemergence-of-covid-19/?sh=627a0593d30d> (April 22, 2021).
- 10 Dave Huber, “National Education Association reps show support for abortion, ‘white fragility,’” *College Fix*, July 13, 2019, <https://www.thecollegefix.com/national-education-association-reps-show-support-for-abortion-white-fragility/> (April 22, 2021).
- 11 Ashley S. Boyd and Janine J. Darragh, “Teaching for Social Justice: Using All American Boys to Confront Racism and Police Brutality,” American Federation of Teachers, Spring 2021, [https://www.aft.org/ae/spring2021/boyd\\_darragh](https://www.aft.org/ae/spring2021/boyd_darragh) (April 22, 2021).
- 12 Jonathan Butcher and Mike Gonzalez, “Critical Race Theory, the New Intolerance, and Its Grip on America,” Heritage Foundation, December 7, 2020, <https://www.heritage.org/sites/default/files/2020-12/BG3567.pdf> (April 22, 2021), 15.
- 13 *Ibid.*, 16.

- <sup>14</sup> Ibid., 18.
- <sup>15</sup> Jackson Elliott, “Parents too afraid to oppose critical race theory in schools, says activist,” *Christian Post*, January 25, 2021, <https://www.christianpost.com/news/parents-too-afraid-to-oppose-crt-in-schools-says-activist.html> (April 22, 2021).
- <sup>16</sup> Jay Schalin, “The Politicization of University Schools of Education: The Long March through the Education Schools,” James G. Marin Center for Academic Renewal, February 2019, <https://files.eric.ed.gov/fulltext/ED594180.pdf> (April 22, 2021), 1.
- <sup>17</sup> Ibid., 94.
- <sup>18</sup> Lily Zheng, “We’re Entering the Age of Corporate Social Justice,” *Harvard Business Review*, June 15, 2020, <https://hbr.org/2020/06/were-entering-the-age-of-corporate-social-justice> (April 22, 2021).
- <sup>19</sup> Dan McLaughlin, “The Party in Power Is Directing a Corporate Conspiracy against Its Political Opposition,” *National Review*, April 13, 2021, <https://www.nationalreview.com/2021/04/the-party-in-power-is-directing-a-corporate-conspiracy-against-its-political-opposition/> (April 22, 2021).
- <sup>20</sup> Zachary Evans, “Amazon, Google Join Hundreds of American Corporations in Signing Letter Opposing Voting Limits,” *National Review*, April 14, 2021, <https://www.nationalreview.com/news/amazon-google-join-hundreds-of-american-corporations-in-signing-letter-opposing-voting-limits/> (April 22, 2021).
- <sup>21</sup> Phill Kline, “How Mark Zuckerberg’s \$350 million threatens democracy,” *Washington Examiner*, October 21, 2020, <https://www.msn.com/en-us/news/politics/how-mark-zuckerbergs-dollar350-million-threatens-democracy/ar-BB1afARG> (April 22, 2021); J. Christian Adams, “The Real Kraken: What Really Happened to Donald Trump in the 2020 Election,” PJ Media, December 2, 2020, <https://pjmedia.com/jchristianadams/2020/12/02/the-real-kraken-what-really-happened-to-donald-trump-in-the-2020-election-n1185494> (April 22, 2021).
- <sup>22</sup> Mark R. Levin, *Liberty and Tyranny* (New York: Threshold Editions, 2009), 195.
- <sup>23</sup> Thomas Paine, *The American Crisis*, ed. Steve Straub, The Federalist Papers Project, <https://thefederalistpapers.org/wp-content/uploads/2013/08/The-American-Crisis-by-Thomas-Paine-.pdf> (April 22, 2021) 5.
- <sup>24</sup> Ibid., 8.
- <sup>25</sup> Saul D. Alinsky, *Rules for Radicals: A Pragmatic Primer for Realistic Radicals* (New York: Vintage Books, 1971), 130.
- <sup>26</sup> Ibid., 131.
- <sup>27</sup> Sam Dorman, “Nevada charter school’s students were instructed to link aspects of their identity with oppression: Lawsuit,” Fox News, December 23, 2020, <https://www.foxnews.com/us/lawsuit-nevada-race-christianity-william-clark> (April 22, 2021); Chris F. Rufo, tweet, January 20, 2021, <https://twitter.com/realchrisrufo/status/1352033792458776578?lang=en> (April 22, 2021).
- <sup>28</sup> Jeff Archer, “Complaints Point Up ‘Murky’ Areas in Union Activism,” *Education Week*, November 1, 2000, <https://www.edweek.org/teaching-learning/complaints-point-up-murky-areas-in-union-activism/2000/11> (April 25, 2021); Dave Kendrick, “Landmark Sues Fla., N.J. Unions for Tax Violations,” National Legal and Policy Center, January 17, 2005, <https://nlpc.org/2005/01/17/landmark-sues-fla-nj-unions-tax-violations/> (April 25, 2021).
- <sup>29</sup> John M. Ellis, *The Breakdown of Higher Education* (New York: Encounter Books, 2020), 30, 31.
- <sup>30</sup> Mark R. Levin, *Plunder and Deceit* (New York: Threshold Editions, 2015), 87, 88.
- <sup>31</sup> Alana Mastrangelo, “Top 10 Craziest Attacks on Campus Conservatives of 2019,” Breitbart, January 1, 2020, <https://www.breitbart.com/tech/2020/01/01/top-10-craziest-attacks-on-campus-conservatives-of-2019/> (April 22, 2021).

- [32](https://www.yaf.org/news/conservative-voices-once-again-excluded-from-commencement-season/) Spencer Brown, “Conservative Voices Once Again Excluded from Commencement Season,” Young America’s Foundation, June 16, 2020, <https://www.yaf.org/news/conservative-voices-once-again-excluded-from-commencement-season/> (April 22, 2021).
- [33](https://www.npr.org/sections/ed/2016/02/17/466730455/fact-check-bernie-sanders-promises-free-college-will-it-work) Anya Kamenetz and Eric Westervelt, “Fact-Check: Bernie Sanders Promises Free College. Will It Work?” NPR, February 17, 2016, <https://www.npr.org/sections/ed/2016/02/17/466730455/fact-check-bernie-sanders-promises-free-college-will-it-work> (April 22, 2021).
- [34](https://www.insidehighered.com/news/2021/04/12/bidens-proposed-budget-increases-funding-pell-hbcus-research) Lilah Burke, “A Big Budget from Biden,” *Inside Higher Education*, April 12, 2021, <https://www.insidehighered.com/news/2021/04/12/bidens-proposed-budget-increases-funding-pell-hbcus-research> (April 22, 2021).
- [35](https://fee.org/articles/government-spending-on-education-is-higher-than-ever-and-for-what/) Stuart Shepard and James Agresti, “Government Spending on Education Is Higher than Ever. And for What?” Foundation for Economic Education, March 1, 2018, <https://fee.org/articles/government-spending-on-education-is-higher-than-ever-and-for-what/> (April 22, 2021).
- [36](https://spectator.org/confucius-institute-foreign-influence-american-universities/) Winfield Myers, “Time to End Hostile Powers’ Influence Operations at American Universities,” *American Spectator*, February 16, 2021, <https://spectator.org/confucius-institute-foreign-influence-american-universities/> (April 22, 2021).
- [37](https://www.cnbc.com/2021/03/05/us-senate-approves-bill-against-china-funded-confucius-institutes.html) Christian Nunley, “Senate approves bill to tighten controls on China-funded Confucius Institutes on U.S. university campuses,” CNBC, March 5, 2021, <https://www.cnbc.com/2021/03/05/us-senate-approves-bill-against-china-funded-confucius-institutes.html> (April 22, 2021).
- [38](#) Ayn Rand, *Return of the Primitive: The Anti-Industrial Revolution* (London: Meridian, 1970), 283.
- [39](https://apnews.com/article/black-lives-matter-90-million-finances-8a80cad199f54c0c4b9e74283d27366f) Aaron Morrison, “AP Exclusive: Black Lives Matter opens up about its finances,” Associated Press, February 23, 2021, <https://apnews.com/article/black-lives-matter-90-million-finances-8a80cad199f54c0c4b9e74283d27366f> (April 22, 2021).
- [40](https://www.breitbart.com/politics/2021/04/05/200-companies-oppose-voter-id-laws-many-require-ids-for-use-of-service/) Wendell Husebo, “200 Companies Oppose Voter ID Laws—Many Require IDs for Use of Service,” Breitbart, April 5, 2021, <https://www.breitbart.com/politics/2021/04/05/200-companies-oppose-voter-id-laws-many-require-ids-for-use-of-service/> (April 22, 2021).
- [41](https://www.spiked-online.com/2021/04/09/the-racism-racket/) Joanna Williams, “The racism racket: Diversity training in the workplace and beyond is worse than useless,” Spiked, April 9, 2021, <https://www.spiked-online.com/2021/04/09/the-racism-racket/> (April 22, 2021).
- [42](https://pjmedia.com/news-and-politics/megan-fox/2020/09/23/trump-bans-companies-that-use-critical-race-theory-from-getting-govt-contracts-n958223) Megan Fox, “Trump Bans Companies That Use ‘Critical Race Theory’ from Getting Govt. Contracts,” PJ Media, September 23, 2020, <https://pjmedia.com/news-and-politics/megan-fox/2020/09/23/trump-bans-companies-that-use-critical-race-theory-from-getting-govt-contracts-n958223> (April 22, 2021).
- [43](https://news.yahoo.com/republican-leaders-raked-sizable-donations-from-grassroots-supporters) Lachlan Markay, “Republican leaders raked in sizable donations from grassroots supporters,” *Axios*, April 18, 2021, <https://news.yahoo.com/republican-leaders-raked-sizable-donations-from-grassroots-supporters> (April 22, 2021); Alex Gangitano, “Tom Cotton: Chamber of Commerce is ‘a front service for woke corporations,’” *Hill*, March 16, 2021, <https://www.msn.com/en-us/news/politics/tom-cotton-chamber-of-commerce-is-a-front-service-for-woke-corporations/ar-BB1eEhPz> (April 22, 2021).
- [44](https://www.breitbart.com/2020-election/2020/08/09/new-york-times-wall-street-backs-joe-biden/) Neil Munro, “New York Times: Wall Street Backs Joe Biden,” Breitbart, August 9, 2020, <https://www.breitbart.com/2020-election/2020/08/09/new-york-times-wall-street-backs-joe-biden/> (April 22, 2021).
- [45](https://dailycaller.com/2021/01/10/biden-big-tech-apple-facebook-trump-parler/) Chuck Ross, “Biden Has Ties to 5 Major Tech Companies,” *Daily Caller*, January 10, 2021, <https://dailycaller.com/2021/01/10/biden-big-tech-apple-facebook-trump-parler/> (April 22, 2021).
- [46](https://www.yahoo.com/lifestyle/us-ceos-sign-statement-against-discriminatory-voting-laws) Michael Bloomberg, “US CEOs sign statement against ‘discriminatory’ voting laws,” AFP, April 14, 2021, <https://www.yahoo.com/lifestyle/us-ceos-sign-statement-against-discriminatory-voting-laws> (April 25, 2021); Sophie Mann, “CEOs answer the call of the woke by pivoting to ‘stakeholder’ capitalism,” *Just*



- the News*, April 24, 2021, <https://justthenews.com/politics-policy/finance/hold-ceos-answer-call-woke-changing-their-goals-and-pivoting-stakeholder> (April 25, 2021).
- 47 “Here Are the Fortune 500 Companies Doing Business in Xinjiang,” ChinaFile, October 2, 2018, <https://www.chinafile.com/reporting-opinion/features/here-are-fortune-500-companies-doing-business-xinjiang> (April 25, 2021).
- 48 Tom Mitchell, Thomas Hale, and Hudson Lockett, “Beijing and Wall Street deepen ties despite geopolitical rivalry,” *Financial Times*, October 26, 2020, <https://www.ft.com/content/8cf19144-b493-4a3e-9308-183bbcc6e76e> (April 25, 2021).
- 49 Houston Keene, “Companies ripping Georgia do business in China, silent on human rights violations,” Fox Business, April 1, 2021, <https://www.foxbusiness.com/politics/georgia-bill-criticized-delta-apple-coca-cola-silent-china-uyghur-genocide> (April 25, 2021).
- 50 Saphora Smith, “China forcefully harvests organs from detainees, tribunal concludes,” NBC News, June 18, 2019, <https://www.nbcnews.com/news/world/china-forcefully-harvests-organs-detainees-tribunal-concludes-n1018646> (April 25, 2021).
- 51 Emma Graham-Harrison, “China has built 380 internment camps in Xinjiang, study finds,” *Guardian*, September 23, 2020, <https://www.theguardian.com/world/2020/sep/24/china-has-built-380-internment-camps-in-xinjiang-study-finds> (April 25, 2021).
- 52 Alex Winter, “LIVING HELL: China has locked up 8 MILLION people in terrifying ‘re-education’ camps in last six years, leaked docs reveal,” *U.S. Sun*, September 18, 2020, <https://www.the-sun.com/news/us-news/1495061/china-document-8-million-training-detention-camps/> (April 25, 2021).
- 53 “Church leaders seek Home Depot boycott on Georgia voting law,” *Canadian Press*, April 21, 2021, <https://www.msn.com/en-ca/money/topstories/church-leaders-seek-home-depot-boycott-on-georgia-voting-law/ar-BB1fRzT0> (April 25, 2021).
- 54 Evie Fordham, “Goya ‘buy-cott’ begins as customers load up on product after Trump backlash,” Fox Business, July 12, 2020, <https://www.foxbusiness.com/markets/goya-food-sales-trump-controversy> (April 25, 2021).
- 55 Mann, “CEOs answer the call of the woke by pivoting to ‘stakeholder’ capitalism.”
- 56 John Binder, “Wall Street, Corporations Team Up with Soros-Funded Group to Pressure States Against Election Reforms,” Breitbart, April 13, 2021, <https://www.breitbart.com/politics/2021/04/13/wall-street-corporations-team-up-with-soros-funded-group-to-pressure-states-against-election-reforms/> (April 25, 2021).
- 57 David Aaro, “Ron DeSantis pushes bill aimed to take power away from Big Tech,” Fox News, February 16, 2021, <https://www.foxnews.com/tech/desantis-pushes-bill-to-aimed-to-take-power-away-from-big-tech> (April 25, 2021).
- 58 Rachel Bovard, “Section 230 protects Big Tech from lawsuits. But it was never supposed to be bulletproof,” *USA Today*, December 13, 2020, <https://www.usatoday.com/story/opinion/2020/12/13/section-230-big-tech-free-speech-donald-trump-column/3883191001/> (April 25, 2021).
- 59 Ibid.
- 60 John Solomon, “Zuckerberg money used to pay election judges, grow vote in Democrat stronghold, memos reveal,” *Just the News*, October 20, 2020, <https://justthenews.com/politics-policy/elections/memos-show-zuckerberg-money-used-massively-grow-vote-democrat-stronghold> (April 25, 2021); Libby Emmons, “BREAKING: Project Veritas exposes Google manager admitting to

- election interference,” *Post Millennial*, October 19, 2020, <https://thepostmillennial.com/breaking-project-veritas-exposes-google-manager-admitting-to-election-influence> (April 25, 2021).
- 61 Unlike most of the corporations listed, the Fox news platforms, such as the Fox News Channel, for which I host a Sunday program, and the Fox Business Channel, were actually created, not acquired, by Fox.
- 62 Levin, *Liberty and Tyranny*, 114.
- 63 *Ibid.*, 115.
- 64 Maydeen Merino, “‘Net Zero Is Not Enough’: John Kerry Says We Need to Remove Carbon Dioxide from the Atmosphere,” *Daily Caller*, April 22, 2021, <https://dailycaller.com/2021/04/22/john-kerry-remove-carbon-atmosphere-leaders-summit-climate-change/> (April 25, 2021).
- 65 “The Government Is on My Property. What Are My Rights?” Owners’ Counsel of America, April 11, 2016, <https://www.ownerscounsel.com/the-government-is-on-my-property-what-are-my-rights/> (April 25, 2021).
- 66 Wilson P. Dizard, “Lamberth finds EPA in contempt for e-document purge,” GCN, July 25, 2003, <https://gcn.com/articles/2003/07/25/lamberth-finds-epa-in-contempt-for-edocument-purge.aspx> (April 25, 2021).
- 67 Melissa Quinn, “21 states sue Biden for revoking Keystone XL pipeline permit,” CBS News, March 18, 2021, <https://www.cbsnews.com/news/keystone-pipeline-21-states-sue-biden/> (April 25, 2021).
- 68 Teny Sahakian, “NY Times ignores 18 deaths, nearly \$2 billion in damage when bashing GOP bills targeting rioters,” Fox News, April 23, 2021, <https://www.foxnews.com/us/ny-times-ignores-18-deaths-nearly-2-billion-dollars-in-damage-when-bashing-gop-bills-targeting-rioters> (April 25, 2021).
- 69 Josh Gerstein, “Leniency for defendants in Portland clashes could affect Capitol riot cases,” *Politico*, April 14, 2021, <https://www.politico.com/news/2021/04/14/portland-capitol-riot-cases-481346> (April 25, 2021).
- 70 “Governor Ron DeSantis Signs Hallmark Anti-Rioting Legislation Taking Unapologetic Stand for Public Safety,” Office of the Governor press release, April 19, 2021, <https://www.flgov.com/2021/04/19/what-they-are-saying-governor-ron-desantis-signs-hallmark-anti-rioting-legislation-taking-unapologetic-stand-for-public-safety/> (April 25, 2021).
- 71 “Racketeer Influenced and Corrupt Organizations (RICO) Law,” [Justia.com](https://www.justia.com/), <https://www.justia.com/criminal/docs/rico/> (April 25, 2021).
- 72 Meira Gebel, “The story behind Thousand Currents, the charity that doles out the millions of dollars Black Lives Matter generates in donations,” *Insider*, June 25, 2020, <https://www.insider.com/what-is-thousand-currents-black-lives-matter-charity-2020-6> (April 25, 2021).
- 73 Morrison, “AP Exclusive: Black Lives Matter opens up about its finances”; “Black Lives Matter Global Network Foundation,” Influence Watch, <https://www.influencewatch.org/non-profit/black-lives-matter-foundation/> (April 25, 2021).
- 74 N’dea Yancy-Bragg, “Americans’ confidence in police falls to historic low, Gallup poll shows,” *USA Today*, August 12, 2020, <https://www.usatoday.com/story/news/nation/2020/08/12/americans-confidence-police-falls-new-low-gallup-poll-shows/3352910001/> (April 25, 2021).
- 75 John R. Lott, “Data Undercuts Myth of ‘Racism’ in Police Killings,” *RealClearPolitics*, April 22, 2021, [https://www.realclearpolitics.com/articles/2021/04/22/data\\_undercuts\\_myth\\_of\\_racism\\_in\\_police\\_killings\\_145640.html](https://www.realclearpolitics.com/articles/2021/04/22/data_undercuts_myth_of_racism_in_police_killings_145640.html) (April 25, 2021); John R. Lott and Carlisle E. Moody, “Do White Police Officers Unfairly Target Black Suspects?” SSRN, June 3, 2020, [https://papers.ssrn.com/sol3/papers.cfm?abstract\\_id=2870189](https://papers.ssrn.com/sol3/papers.cfm?abstract_id=2870189) (April 25, 2021); Ryan Saavedra, “Mac Donald: Statistics Do Not Support the

- Claim of ‘Systemic Police Racism,’” *Daily Wire*, June 3, 2020, <https://www.dailywire.com/news/mac-donald-statistics-do-not-support-the-claim-of-systemic-police-racism> (April 25, 2021).
- 76 Jason Johnson, “Why violent crime surged after police across America retreated,” *USA Today*, April 9, 2021, <https://www.usatoday.com/story/opinion/policing/2021/04/09/violent-crime-surged-across-america-after-police-retreated-column/7137565002/> (April 25, 2021).
- 77 Morgan Phillips, “Justice in Policing Act’: What’s in the Democratic police reform bill,” Fox News, June 8, 2020, <https://www.foxnews.com/politics/justice-in-policing-act-whats-in-the-democratic-police-reform-bill> (April 25, 2021).
- 78 Luke Barr, “US police agencies having trouble hiring, keeping officers, according to a new survey,” ABC News, September 17, 2019, <https://abcnews.go.com/Politics/us-police-agencies-trouble-hiring-keeping-officers-survey/story?id=65643752> (April 25, 2021).
- 79 Lieutenant Dan Marcou, “You can sue: Cops’ legal recourse against assailants and others,” *Police1.com*, June 8, 2016, <https://www.police1.com/legal/articles/you-can-sue-cops-legal-recourse-against-assailants-and-others-YWtiK8fzBSZBNwfc/> (April 25, 2021).



Threshold Editions  
An Imprint of Simon & Schuster, Inc.  
1230 Avenue of the Americas  
New York, NY 10020  
[www.SimonandSchuster.com](http://www.SimonandSchuster.com)

Copyright © 2021 by Mark Levin

All rights reserved, including the right to reproduce this book or portions thereof in any form whatsoever. For information, address Threshold Editions Subsidiary Rights Department, 1230 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10020.

First Threshold Editions hardcover edition July 2021

THRESHOLD EDITIONS and colophon are trademarks of Simon & Schuster, Inc.

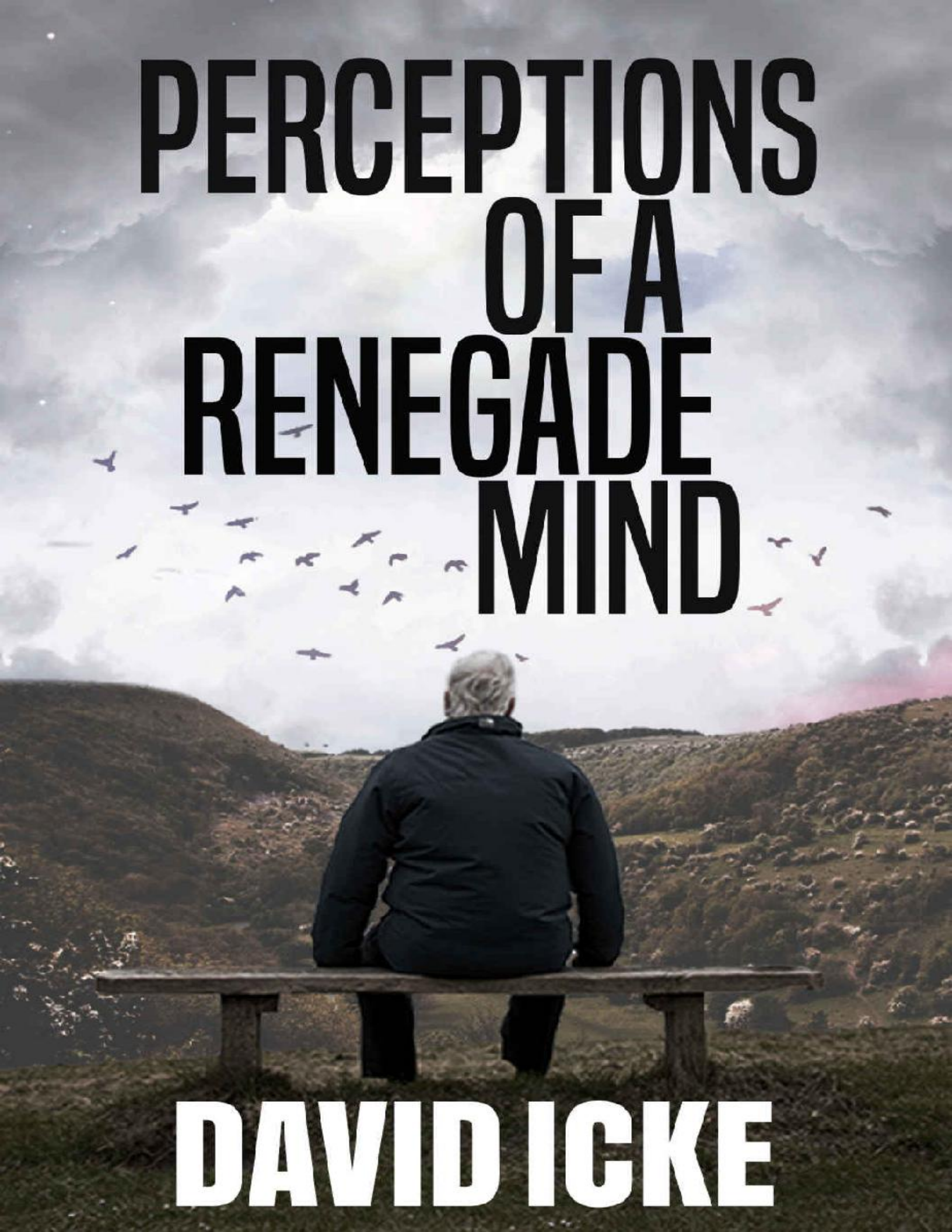
For information about special discounts for bulk purchases, please contact Simon & Schuster Special Sales at 1-866-506-1949 or [business@simonandschuster.com](mailto:business@simonandschuster.com).

The Simon & Schuster Speakers Bureau can bring authors to your live event. For more information, or to book an event, contact the Simon & Schuster Speakers Bureau at 1-866-248-3049 or visit our website at [www.simonspeakers.com](http://www.simonspeakers.com).

Interior design by Jaime Putorti  
Jacket design by Jason Gabbert  
Jacket photographs by iStockphoto/Getty Images and Shutterstock  
Author photograph © ABC Radio Network

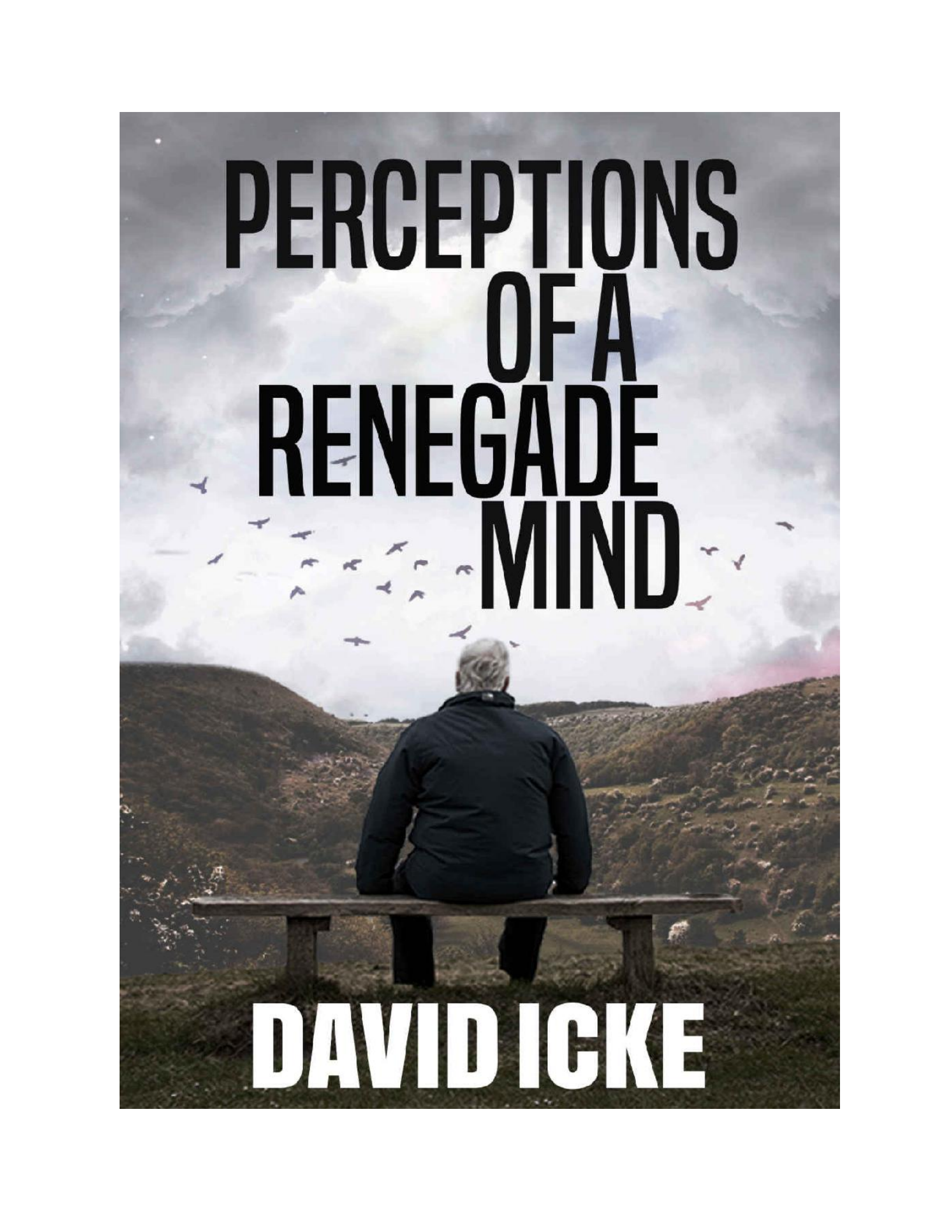
Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

ISBN 978-1-5011-3597-2  
ISBN 978-1-5011-3601-6 (ebook)

A man with grey hair, wearing a dark jacket, is seen from behind, sitting on a wooden bench. He is looking out over a valley with rolling hills and a large flock of birds flying in the sky. The sky is filled with white and grey clouds, and the overall scene is somewhat somber and contemplative.

# PERCEPTIONS OF A RENEGADE MIND

**DAVID ICKE**

A man with grey hair, wearing a dark jacket, is seen from behind, sitting on a wooden bench. He is looking out over a vast, hilly landscape with green and brown vegetation. The sky is filled with many birds in flight, and the clouds are dramatic and grey. The overall mood is contemplative and expansive.

# PERCEPTIONS OF A RENEGADE MIND

**DAVID ICKE**

**PERCEPTIONS  
OF A  
RENEGADE  
MIND**

A flock of small, dark birds is scattered around the bottom half of the title text, appearing to fly in various directions.

ickonic  
publishing

First published in July 2021.

ickonic  
publishing

**New Enterprise House  
St Helens Street  
Derby  
DE1 3GY  
UK**

*email:* [gareth.icke@davidicke.com](mailto:gareth.icke@davidicke.com)

Copyright © 2021 David Icke

No part of this book may be reproduced in any form without permission from the  
Publisher, except for the quotation of brief passages in criticism

*Cover Design:* Gareth Icke  
*Book Design:* Neil Hague

**British Library Cataloguing-in  
Publication Data**  
A catalogue record for this book is  
available from the British Library

eISBN 978-18384153-1-0



**PERCEPTIONS  
OF A  
RENEGADE  
MIND**

A flock of approximately 20 small, black silhouettes of birds in flight, scattered around the bottom half of the title text.

**DAVID ICKE**

**Dedication:**

***To Freeeeedom!***

# **ICKONIC** **THE ALTERNATIVE**

**NEW. DIFFERENT. REVOLUTIONARY**

**HUNDREDS OF CUTTING EDGE DOCUMENTARIES,  
FEATURE FILMS, SERIES & PODCASTS.**

**SIGN UP NOW AT [ICKONIC.COM](http://ICKONIC.COM)**

THE LIFE STORY OF DAVID ICKE

# RENEGADE

THE FEATURE LENGTH FILM



AVAILABLE NOW AT [DAVIDICKE.COM](http://DAVIDICKE.COM)

**Renegade:**

Adjective

'Having rejected tradition: Unconventional.'

**Merriam-Webster Dictionary**

## **Acquiescence to tyranny is the death of the spirit**

You may be 38 years old, as I happen to be. And one day, some great opportunity stands before you and calls you to stand up for some great principle, some great issue, some great cause. And you refuse to do it because you are afraid ... You refuse to do it because you want to live longer ... You're afraid that you will lose your job, or you are afraid that you will be criticised or that you will lose your popularity, or you're afraid that somebody will stab you, or shoot at you or bomb your house; so you refuse to take the stand.

Well, you may go on and live until you are 90, but you're just as dead at 38 as you would be at 90. And the cessation of breathing in your life is but the belated announcement of an earlier death of the spirit.

**Martin Luther King**

**How the few control the many and always have – the many do  
whatever they're told**

'Forward, the Light Brigade!'  
Was there a man dismayed?  
Not though the soldier knew  
Someone had blundered.  
Theirs not to make reply,  
Theirs not to reason why,  
Theirs but to do and die.  
Into the valley of Death  
Rode the six hundred.

Cannon to right of them,  
Cannon to left of them,  
Cannon in front of them  
Volleyed and thundered;  
Stormed at with shot and shell,  
Boldly they rode and well,  
Into the jaws of Death,  
Into the mouth of hell  
Rode the six hundred

**Alfred Lord Tennyson (1809-1892)**

The mist is lifting slowly  
I can see the way ahead  
And I've left behind the empty streets  
That once inspired my life  
And the strength of the emotion  
Is like thunder in the air  
'Cos the promise that we made each other  
Haunts me to the end

The secret of your beauty  
And the mystery of your soul  
I've been searching for in everyone I meet  
And the times I've been mistaken  
It's impossible to say  
And the grass is growing  
Underneath our feet

The words that I remember  
From my childhood still are true  
That there's none so blind  
As those who will not see  
And to those who lack the courage  
And say it's dangerous to try  
Well they just don't know  
That love eternal will not be denied

I know you're out there somewhere  
Somewhere, somewhere  
I know you're out there somewhere



Somewhere you can hear my voice  
I know I'll find you somehow  
Somehow, somehow  
I know I'll find you somehow  
And somehow I'll return again to you

**The Moody Blues**

**Are you a gutless wonder - or a Renegade Mind?**

Monuments put from pen to paper,  
Turns me into a gutless wonder,  
And if you tolerate this,  
Then your children will be next.  
Gravity keeps my head down,  
Or is it maybe shame ...

**Manic Street Preachers**

Rise like lions after slumber  
In unvanquishable number.  
Shake your chains to earth like dew  
Which in sleep have fallen on you.  
Ye are many – they are few.

**Percy Shelley**

# Contents

CHAPTER 1	'I'm thinking' – Oh, but <i>are</i> you?
CHAPTER 2	Renegade perception
CHAPTER 3	The Pushbacker sting
CHAPTER 4	'Covid': The calculated catastrophe
CHAPTER 5	There <i>is no</i> 'virus'
CHAPTER 6	Sequence of deceit
CHAPTER 7	War on your mind
CHAPTER 8	'Reframing' insanity
CHAPTER 9	We must have it? So what is it?
CHAPTER 10	Human 2.0
CHAPTER 11	Who controls the Cult?
CHAPTER 12	Escaping Wetiko
POSTSCRIPT	
APPENDIX	Cowan-Kaufman-Morell Statement on Virus Isolation
BIBLIOGRAPHY	
INDEX	

## CHAPTER ONE

### **I'm thinking' – Oh, but *are* you?**

*Think for yourself and let others enjoy the privilege of doing so too*  
Voltaire

**F**rench-born philosopher, mathematician and scientist René Descartes became famous for his statement in Latin in the 17th century which translates into English as: 'I think, therefore I am.'

On the face of it that is true. Thought reflects perception and perception leads to both behaviour and self-identity. In that sense 'we' are what we think. But who or what is doing the thinking and is thinking the only route to perception? Clearly, as we shall see, 'we' are not always the source of 'our' perception, indeed with regard to humanity as a whole this is rarely the case; and thinking is far from the only means of perception. Thought is the village idiot compared with other expressions of consciousness that we all have the potential to access and tap into. This has to be true when we *are* those other expressions of consciousness which are infinite in nature. We have forgotten this, or, more to the point, been manipulated to forget.

These are not just the esoteric musings of the navel. The whole foundation of human control and oppression is control of perception. Once perception is hijacked then so is behaviour which is dictated by perception. Collective perception becomes collective behaviour and collective behaviour is what we call human society. Perception is all and those behind human control know that which is

why perception is the target 24/7 of the psychopathic manipulators that I call the Global Cult. They know that if they dictate perception they will dictate behaviour and collectively dictate the nature of human society. They are further aware that perception is formed from information received and if they control the circulation of information they will to a vast extent direct human behaviour. Censorship of information and opinion has become globally Nazi-like in recent years and never more blatantly than since the illusory 'virus pandemic' was triggered out of China in 2019 and across the world in 2020. Why have billions submitted to house arrest and accepted fascistic societies in a way they would have never believed possible? Those controlling the information spewing from government, mainstream media and Silicon Valley (all controlled by the same Global Cult networks) told them they were in danger from a 'deadly virus' and only by submitting to house arrest and conceding their most basic of freedoms could they and their families be protected. This monumental and provable lie became the *perception* of the billions and therefore the *behaviour* of the billions. In those few words you have the whole structure and modus operandi of human control. Fear is a perception – False Emotion Appearing Real – and fear is the currency of control. In short ... get them by the balls (or give them the impression that you have) and their hearts and minds will follow. Nothing grips the dangly bits and freezes the rear-end more comprehensively than fear.

## **World number 1**

There are two 'worlds' in what appears to be one 'world' and the prime difference between them is knowledge. First we have the mass of human society in which the population is maintained in coldly-calculated ignorance through control of information and the 'education' (indoctrination) system. That's all you really need to control to enslave billions in a perceptual delusion in which what are perceived to be *their* thoughts and opinions are ever-repeated mantras that the system has been downloading all their lives through 'education', media, science, medicine, politics and academia

in which the personnel and advocates are themselves overwhelmingly the perceptual products of the same repetition. Teachers and academics in general are processed by the same programming machine as everyone else, but unlike the great majority they never leave the 'education' program. It gripped them as students and continues to grip them as programmers of subsequent generations of students. The programmed become the programmers – the programmed programmers. The same can largely be said for scientists, doctors and politicians and not least because as the American writer Upton Sinclair said: 'It is difficult to get a man to understand something when his salary depends upon his not understanding it.' If your career and income depend on thinking the way the system demands then you will – bar a few free-minded exceptions – concede your mind to the Perceptual Mainframe that I call the Postage Stamp Consensus. This is a tiny band of perceived knowledge and possibility 'taught' (downloaded) in the schools and universities, pounded out by the mainstream media and on which all government policy is founded. Try thinking, and especially speaking and acting, outside of the 'box' of consensus and see what that does for your career in the Mainstream Everything which bullies, harasses, intimidates and ridicules the population into compliance. Here we have the simple structure which enslaves most of humanity in a perceptual prison cell for an entire lifetime and I'll go deeper into this process shortly. Most of what humanity is taught as fact is nothing more than programmed belief. American science fiction author Frank Herbert was right when he said: 'Belief can be manipulated. Only knowledge is dangerous.' In the 'Covid' age belief is promoted and knowledge is censored. It was always so, but never to the extreme of today.

## **World number 2**

A 'number 2' is slang for 'doing a poo' and how appropriate that is when this other 'world' is doing just that on humanity every minute of every day. World number 2 is a global network of secret societies and semi-secret groups dictating the direction of society via

governments, corporations and authorities of every kind. I have spent more than 30 years uncovering and exposing this network that I call the Global Cult and knowing its agenda is what has made my books so accurate in predicting current and past events. Secret societies are secret for a reason. They want to keep their hoarded knowledge to themselves and their chosen initiates and to hide it from the population which they seek through ignorance to control and subdue. The whole foundation of the division between World 1 and World 2 is *knowledge*. What number 1 knows number 2 must not. Knowledge they have worked so hard to keep secret includes (a) the agenda to enslave humanity in a centrally-controlled global dictatorship, and (b) the nature of reality and life itself. The latter (b) must be suppressed to allow the former (a) to prevail as I shall be explaining. The way the Cult manipulates and interacts with the population can be likened to a spider's web. The 'spider' sits at the centre in the shadows and imposes its will through the web with each strand represented in World number 2 by a secret society, satanic or semi-secret group, and in World number 1 – the world of the seen – by governments, agencies of government, law enforcement, corporations, the banking system, media conglomerates and Silicon Valley (Fig 1 overleaf). The spider and the web connect and coordinate all these organisations to pursue the same global outcome while the population sees them as individual entities working randomly and independently. At the level of the web governments *are* the banking system *are* the corporations *are* the media *are* Silicon Valley *are* the World Health Organization working from their inner cores as one unit. Apparently unconnected countries, corporations, institutions, organisations and people are on the *same team* pursuing the same global outcome. Strands in the web immediately around the spider are the most secretive and exclusive secret societies and their membership is emphatically restricted to the Cult inner-circle emerging through the generations from particular bloodlines for reasons I will come to. At the core of the core you would get them in a single room. That's how many people are dictating the direction of human society and its transformation

through the 'Covid' hoax and other means. As the web expands out from the spider we meet the secret societies that many people will be aware of – the Freemasons, Knights Templar, Knights of Malta, Opus Dei, the inner sanctum of the Jesuit Order, and such like. Note how many are connected to the Church of Rome and there is a reason for that. The Roman Church was established as a revamp, a rebranding, of the relocated 'Church' of Babylon and the Cult imposing global tyranny today can be tracked back to Babylon and Sumer in what is now Iraq.



**Figure 1:** The global web through which the few control the many. (Image Neil Hague.)

Inner levels of the web operate in the unseen away from the public eye and then we have what I call the cusp organisations located at the point where the hidden meets the seen. They include a series of satellite organisations answering to a secret society founded in London in the late 19th century called the Round Table and among them are the Royal Institute of International Affairs (UK, founded in 1920); Council on Foreign Relations (US, 1921); Bilderberg Group (worldwide, 1954); Trilateral Commission (US/worldwide, 1972); and the Club of Rome (worldwide, 1968) which was created to exploit environmental concerns to justify the centralisation of global power to 'save the planet'. The Club of Rome instigated with others the human-caused climate change hoax which has led to all the 'green



new deals' demanding that very centralisation of control. Cusp organisations, which include endless 'think tanks' all over the world, are designed to coordinate a single global policy between political and business leaders, intelligence personnel, media organisations and anyone who can influence the direction of policy in their own sphere of operation. Major players and regular attenders will know what is happening – or some of it – while others come and go and are kept overwhelmingly in the dark about the big picture. I refer to these cusp groupings as semi-secret in that they can be publicly identified, but what goes on at the inner-core is kept very much 'in house' even from most of their members and participants through a fiercely-imposed system of compartmentalisation. Only let them know what they need to know to serve your interests and no more. The structure of secret societies serves as a perfect example of this principle. Most Freemasons never get higher than the bottom three levels of 'degree' (degree of knowledge) when there are 33 official degrees of the Scottish Rite. Initiates only qualify for the next higher 'compartment' or degree if those at that level choose to allow them. Knowledge can be carefully assigned only to those considered 'safe'. I went to my local Freemason's lodge a few years ago when they were having an 'open day' to show how cuddly they were and when I chatted to some of them I was astonished at how little the rank and file knew even about the most ubiquitous symbols they use. The mushroom technique – keep them in the dark and feed them bullshit – applies to most people in the web as well as the population as a whole. Sub-divisions of the web mirror in theme and structure transnational corporations which have a headquarters somewhere in the world dictating to all their subsidiaries in different countries. Subsidiaries operate in their methodology and branding to the same centrally-dictated plan and policy in pursuit of particular ends. The Cult web functions in the same way. Each country has its own web as a subsidiary of the global one. They consist of networks of secret societies, semi-secret groups and bloodline families and their job is to impose the will of the spider and the global web in their particular country. Subsidiary networks control and manipulate the national political system, finance, corporations, media, medicine, etc. to

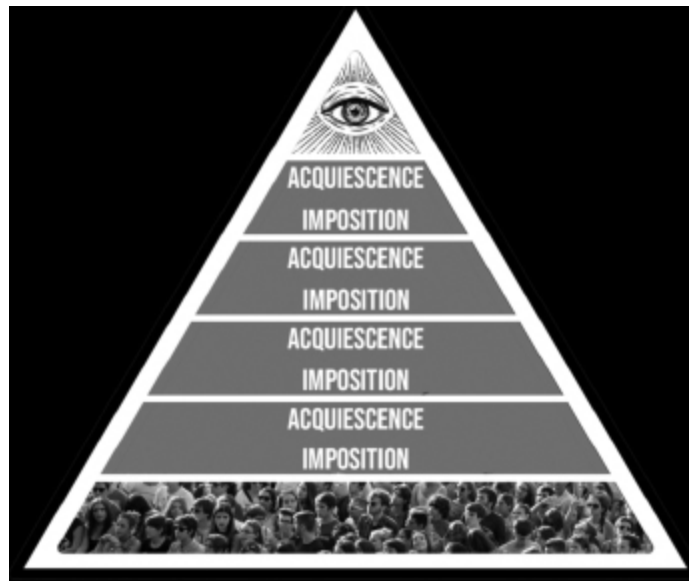
ensure that they follow the globally-dictated Cult agenda. These networks were the means through which the 'Covid' hoax could be played out with almost every country responding in the same way.

## **The 'Yessir' pyramid**

Compartmentalisation is the key to understanding how a tiny few can dictate the lives of billions when combined with a top-down sequence of imposition and acquiescence. The inner core of the Cult sits at the peak of the pyramidal hierarchy of human society (Fig 2 overleaf). It imposes its will – its agenda for the world – on the level immediately below which acquiesces to that imposition. This level then imposes the Cult will on the level below them which acquiesces and imposes on the next level. Very quickly we meet levels in the hierarchy that have no idea there even is a Cult, but the sequence of imposition and acquiescence continues down the pyramid in just the same way. 'I don't know why we are doing this but the order came from "on-high" and so we better just do it.' Alfred Lord Tennyson said of the cannon fodder levels in his poem *The Charge of the Light Brigade*: 'Theirs not to reason why; theirs but to do and die.' The next line says that 'into the valley of death rode the six hundred' and they died because they obeyed without question what their perceived 'superiors' told them to do. In the same way the population capitulated to 'Covid'. The whole hierarchical pyramid functions like this to allow the very few to direct the enormous many.

Eventually imposition-acquiescence-imposition-acquiescence comes down to the mass of the population at the foot of the pyramid. If they acquiesce to those levels of the hierarchy imposing on them (governments/law enforcement/doctors/media) a circuit is completed between the population and the handful of super-psychopaths in the Cult inner core at the top of the pyramid. Without a circuit-breaking refusal to obey, the sequence of imposition and acquiescence allows a staggeringly few people to impose their will upon the entirety of humankind. We are looking at the very sequence that has subjugated billions since the start of 2020. Our freedom has not been taken from us. Humanity has given it

away. Fascists do not impose fascism because there are not enough of them. Fascism is imposed by the population acquiescing to fascism. Put another way allowing their perceptions to be programmed to the extent that leads to the population giving their freedom away by giving their perceptions – their mind – away. If this circuit is not broken by humanity ceasing to cooperate with their own enslavement then nothing can change. For that to happen people have to critically think and see through the lies and window dressing and then summon the backbone to act upon what they see. The Cult spends its days working to stop either happening and its methodology is systematic and highly detailed, but it can be overcome and that is what this book is all about.



**Figure 2:** The simple sequence of imposition and compliance that allows a handful of people at the peak of the pyramid to dictate the lives of billions.

## **The Life Program**

Okay, back to world number 1 or the world of the ‘masses’. Observe the process of what we call ‘life’ and it is a perceptual download from cradle to grave. The Cult has created a global structure in which perception can be programmed and the program continually topped-up with what appears to be constant confirmation that the program is indeed true reality. The important word here is ‘appears’.

This is the structure, the fly-trap, the Postage Stamp Consensus or Perceptual Mainframe, which represents that incredibly narrow band of perceived possibility delivered by the 'education' system, mainstream media, science and medicine. From the earliest age the download begins with parents who have themselves succumbed to the very programming their children are about to go through. Most parents don't do this out of malevolence and mostly it is quite the opposite. They do what they believe is best for their children and that is what the program has told them is best. Within three or four years comes the major transition from parental programming to full-blown state (Cult) programming in school, college and university where perceptually-programmed teachers and academics pass on their programming to the next generations. Teachers who resist are soon marginalised and their careers ended while children who resist are called a problem child for whom Ritalin may need to be prescribed. A few years after entering the 'world' children are under the control of authority figures representing the state telling them when they have to be there, when they can leave and when they can speak, eat, even go to the toilet. This is calculated preparation for a lifetime of obeying authority in all its forms. Reflex-action fear of authority is instilled by authority from the start. Children soon learn the carrot and stick consequences of obeying or defying authority which is underpinned daily for the rest of their life. Fortunately I daydreamed through this crap and never obeyed authority simply because it told me to. This approach to my alleged 'betters' continues to this day. There can be consequences of pursuing open-minded freedom in a world of closed-minded conformity. I spent a lot of time in school corridors after being ejected from the classroom for not taking some of it seriously and now I spend a lot of time being ejected from Facebook, YouTube and Twitter. But I can tell you that being true to yourself and not compromising your self-respect is far more exhilarating than bowing to authority for authority's sake. You don't have to be a sheep to the shepherd (authority) and the sheep dog (fear of not obeying authority).

The perceptual download continues throughout the formative years in school, college and university while script-reading 'teachers', 'academics' 'scientists', 'doctors' and 'journalists' insist that ongoing generations must be as programmed as they are. Accept the program or you will not pass your 'exams' which confirm your 'degree' of programming. It is tragic to think that many parents pressure their offspring to work hard at school to download the program and qualify for the next stage at college and university. The late, great, American comedian George Carlin said: 'Here's a bumper sticker I'd like to see: We are proud parents of a child who has resisted his teachers' attempts to break his spirit and bend him to the will of his corporate masters.' Well, the best of luck finding many of those, George. Then comes the moment to leave the formal programming years in academia and enter the 'adult' world of work. There you meet others in your chosen or prescribed arena who went through the same Postage Stamp Consensus program before you did. There is therefore overwhelming agreement between almost everyone on the basic foundations of Postage Stamp reality and the rejection, even contempt, of the few who have a mind of their own and are prepared to use it. This has two major effects. Firstly, the consensus confirms to the programmed that their download is really how things are. I mean, everyone knows that, right? Secondly, the arrogance and ignorance of Postage Stamp adherents ensure that anyone questioning the program will have unpleasant consequences for seeking their own truth and not picking their perceptions from the shelf marked: 'Things you must believe without question and if you don't you're a dangerous lunatic conspiracy theorist and a harebrained nutter'.

Every government, agency and corporation is founded on the same Postage Stamp prison cell and you can see why so many people believe the same thing while calling it their own 'opinion'. Fusion of governments and corporations in pursuit of the same agenda was the definition of fascism described by Italian dictator Benito Mussolini. The pressure to conform to perceptual norms downloaded for a lifetime is incessant and infiltrates society right

down to family groups that become censors and condemners of their own 'black sheep' for not, ironically, being sheep. We have seen an explosion of that in the 'Covid' era. Cult-owned global media unleashes its propaganda all day every day in support of the Postage Stamp and targets with abuse and ridicule anyone in the public eye who won't bend their mind to the will of the tyranny. Any response to this is denied (certainly in my case). They don't want to give a platform to expose official lies. Cult-owned-and-created Internet giants like Facebook, Google, YouTube and Twitter delete you for having an unapproved opinion. Facebook boasts that its AI censors delete 97-percent of 'hate speech' before anyone even reports it. Much of that 'hate speech' will simply be an opinion that Facebook and its masters don't want people to see. Such perceptual oppression is widely known as fascism. Even Facebook executive Benny Thomas, a 'CEO Global Planning Lead', said in comments secretly recorded by investigative journalism operation Project Veritas that Facebook is 'too powerful' and should be broken up:

I mean, no king in history has been the ruler of two billion people, but Mark Zuckerberg is ... And he's 36. That's too much for a 36-year-old ... You should not have power over two billion people. I just think that's wrong.

Thomas said Facebook-owned platforms like Instagram, Oculus, and WhatsApp needed to be separate companies. 'It's too much power when they're all one together'. That's the way the Cult likes it, however. We have an executive of a Cult organisation in Benny Thomas that doesn't know there is a Cult such is the compartmentalisation. Thomas said that Facebook and Google 'are no longer companies, they're countries'. Actually they are more powerful than countries on the basis that if you control information you control perception and control human society.

## **I love my oppressor**

Another expression of this psychological trickery is for those who realise they are being pressured into compliance to eventually

convince themselves to believe the official narratives to protect their self-respect from accepting the truth that they have succumbed to meek and subservient compliance. Such people become some of the most vehement defenders of the system. You can see them everywhere screaming abuse at those who prefer to think for themselves and by doing so reminding the compliers of their own capitulation to conformity. 'You are talking dangerous nonsense you Covidiot!!' Are you trying to convince me or yourself? It is a potent form of Stockholm syndrome which is defined as: 'A psychological condition that occurs when a victim of abuse identifies and attaches, or bonds, positively with their abuser.' An example is hostages bonding and even 'falling in love' with their kidnappers. The syndrome has been observed in domestic violence, abused children, concentration camp inmates, prisoners of war and many and various Satanic cults. These are some traits of Stockholm syndrome listed at [goodtherapy.org](http://goodtherapy.org):

- Positive regard towards perpetrators of abuse or captor [see 'Covid'].
- Failure to cooperate with police and other government authorities when it comes to holding perpetrators of abuse or kidnapping accountable [or in the case of 'Covid' cooperating with the police to enforce and defend their captors' demands].
- Little or no effort to escape [see 'Covid'].
- Belief in the goodness of the perpetrators or kidnappers [see 'Covid'].
- Appeasement of captors. This is a manipulative strategy for maintaining one's safety. As victims get rewarded – perhaps with less abuse or even with life itself – their appeasing behaviours are reinforced [see 'Covid'].
- Learned helplessness. This can be akin to 'if you can't beat 'em, join 'em'. As the victims fail to escape the abuse or captivity, they may start giving up and soon realize it's just easier for everyone if they acquiesce all their power to their captors [see 'Covid'].

- Feelings of pity toward the abusers, believing they are actually victims themselves. Because of this, victims may go on a crusade or mission to 'save' [protect] their abuser [see the venom unleashed on those challenging the official 'Covid' narrative].
- Unwillingness to learn to detach from their perpetrators and heal. In essence, victims may tend to be less loyal to themselves than to their abuser [ *definitely* see 'Covid'].

Ponder on those traits and compare them with the behaviour of great swathes of the global population who have defended governments and authorities which have spent every minute destroying their lives and livelihoods and those of their children and grandchildren since early 2020 with fascistic lockdowns, house arrest and employment deletion to 'protect' them from a 'deadly virus' that their abusers' perceptually created to bring about this very outcome. We are looking at mass Stockholm syndrome. All those that agree to concede their freedom will believe those perceptions are originating in their own independent 'mind' when in fact by conceding their reality to Stockholm syndrome they have by definition conceded any independence of mind. Listen to the 'opinions' of the acquiescing masses in this 'Covid' era and what gushes forth is the repetition of the official version of everything delivered unprocessed, unfiltered and unquestioned. The whole programming dynamic works this way. I must be free because I'm told that I am and so I think that I am.

You can see what I mean with the chapter theme of 'I'm thinking – Oh, but *are* you?' The great majority are not thinking, let alone for themselves. They are repeating what authority has told them to believe which allows them to be controlled. Weaving through this mentality is the fear that the 'conspiracy theorists' are right and this again explains the often hysterical abuse that ensues when you dare to contest the official narrative of anything. Denial is the mechanism of hiding from yourself what you don't want to be true. Telling people what they want to hear is easy, but it's an infinitely greater challenge to tell them what they would rather not be happening.



One is akin to pushing against an open door while the other is met with vehement resistance no matter what the scale of evidence. I don't want it to be true so I'll convince myself that it's not. Examples are everywhere from the denial that a partner is cheating despite all the signs to the reflex-action rejection of any idea that world events in which country after country act in exactly the same way are centrally coordinated. To accept the latter is to accept that a force of unspeakable evil is working to destroy your life and the lives of your children with nothing too horrific to achieve that end. Who the heck wants that to be true? But if we don't face reality the end is duly achieved and the consequences are far worse and ongoing than breaking through the walls of denial today with the courage to make a stand against tyranny.

### **Connect the dots – but how?**

A crucial aspect of perceptual programming is to portray a world in which everything is random and almost nothing is connected to anything else. Randomness cannot be coordinated by its very nature and once you perceive events as random the idea they could be connected is waved away as the rantings of the tinfoil-hat brigade. You can't plan and coordinate random you idiot! No, you can't, but you can hide the coldly-calculated and long-planned behind the *illusion* of randomness. A foundation manifestation of the Renegade Mind is to scan reality for patterns that connect the apparently random and turn pixels and dots into pictures. This is the way I work and have done so for more than 30 years. You look for similarities in people, modus operandi and desired outcomes and slowly, then ever quicker, the picture forms. For instance: There would seem to be no connection between the 'Covid pandemic' hoax and the human-caused global-warming hoax and yet they are masks (appropriately) on the same face seeking the same outcome. Those pushing the global warming myth through the Club of Rome and other Cult agencies are driving the lies about 'Covid' – Bill Gates is an obvious one, but they are endless. Why would the same people be involved in both when they are clearly not connected? Oh, but they

are. Common themes with personnel are matched by common goals. The 'solutions' to both 'problems' are centralisation of global power to impose the will of the few on the many to 'save' humanity from 'Covid' and save the planet from an 'existential threat' (we need 'zero Covid' and 'zero carbon emissions'). These, in turn, connect with the 'dot' of globalisation which was coined to describe the centralisation of global power in every area of life through incessant political and corporate expansion, trading blocks and superstates like the European Union. If you are the few and you want to control the many you have to centralise power and decision-making. The more you centralise power the more power the few at the centre will have over the many; and the more that power is centralised the more power those at the centre have to centralise even quicker. The momentum of centralisation gets faster and faster which is exactly the process we have witnessed. In this way the hoaxed 'pandemic' and the fakery of human-caused global warming serve the interests of globalisation and the seizure of global power in the hands of the Cult inner-circle which is behind 'Covid', 'climate change' and globalisation. At this point random 'dots' become a clear and obvious picture or pattern.

Klaus Schwab, the classic Bond villain who founded the Cult's Gates-funded World Economic Forum, published a book in 2020, *The Great Reset*, in which he used the 'problem' of 'Covid' to justify a total transformation of human society to 'save' humanity from 'climate change'. Schwab said: 'The pandemic represents a rare but narrow window of opportunity to reflect, reimagine, and reset our world.' What he didn't mention is that the Cult he serves is behind both hoaxes as I show in my book *The Answer*. He and the Cult don't have to reimagine the world. They know precisely what they want and that's why they destroyed human society with 'Covid' to 'build back better' in their grand design. Their job is not to imagine, but to get humanity to imagine and agree with their plans while believing it's all random. It must be pure coincidence that 'The Great Reset' has long been the Cult's code name for the global imposition of fascism and replaced previous code-names of the 'New World

Order' used by Cult frontmen like Father George Bush and the 'New Order of the Ages' which emerged from Freemasonry and much older secret societies. New Order of the Ages appears on the reverse of the Great Seal of the United States as 'Novus ordo seclorum' underneath the Cult symbol used since way back of the pyramid and all seeing-eye (Fig 3). The pyramid is the hierarchy of human control headed by the illuminated eye that symbolises the force behind the Cult which I will expose in later chapters. The term 'Annuet Coeptis' translates as 'He favours our undertaking'. We are told the 'He' is the Christian god, but 'He' is not as I will be explaining.



**Figure 3:** The all-seeing eye of the Cult 'god' on the Freemason-designed Great Seal of the United States and also on the dollar bill.

## **Having you on**

Two major Cult techniques of perceptual manipulation that relate to all this are what I have called since the 1990s Problem-Reaction-Solution (PRS) and the Totalitarian Tiptoe (TT). They can be uncovered by the inquiring mind with a simple question: Who benefits? The answer usually identifies the perpetrators of a given action or happening through the concept of 'he who most benefits from a crime is the one most likely to have committed it'. The Latin 'Cue bono?' – Who benefits? – is widely attributed to the Roman orator and statesman Marcus Tullius Cicero. No wonder it goes back so far when the concept has been relevant to human behaviour since

history was recorded. Problem-Reaction-Solution is the technique used to manipulate us every day by covertly creating a problem (or the illusion of one) and offering the solution to the problem (or the illusion of one). In the first phase you create the problem and blame someone or something else for why it has happened. This may relate to a financial collapse, terrorist attack, war, global warming or pandemic, anything in fact that will allow you to impose the 'solution' to change society in the way you desire at that time. The 'problem' doesn't have to be real. PRS is manipulation of perception and all you need is the population to believe the problem is real. Human-caused global warming and the 'Covid pandemic' only have to be *perceived* to be real for the population to accept the 'solutions' of authority. I refer to this technique as NO-Problem-Reaction-Solution. Billions did not meekly accept house arrest from early 2020 because there was a real deadly 'Covid pandemic' but because they perceived – believed – that to be the case. The antidote to Problem-Reaction-Solution is to ask who benefits from the proposed solution. Invariably it will be anyone who wants to justify more control through deletion of freedom and centralisation of power and decision-making.

The two world wars were Problem-Reaction-Solutions that transformed and realigned global society. Both were manipulated into being by the Cult as I have detailed in books since the mid-1990s. They dramatically centralised global power, especially World War Two, which led to the United Nations and other global bodies thanks to the overt and covert manipulations of the Rockefeller family and other Cult bloodlines like the Rothschilds. The UN is a stalking horse for full-blown world government that I will come to shortly. The land on which the UN building stands in New York was donated by the Rockefellers and the same Cult family was behind Big Pharma scalpel and drug 'medicine' and the creation of the World Health Organization as part of the UN. They have been stalwarts of the eugenics movement and funded Hitler's race-purity expert' Ernst Rudin. The human-caused global warming hoax has been orchestrated by the Club of Rome through the UN which is

manufacturing both the 'problem' through its Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change and imposing the 'solution' through its Agenda 21 and Agenda 2030 which demand the total centralisation of global power to 'save the world' from a climate hoax the United Nations is itself perpetrating. What a small world the Cult can be seen to be particularly among the inner circles. The bedfellow of Problem-Reaction-Solution is the Totalitarian Tiptoe which became the Totalitarian Sprint in 2020. The technique is fashioned to hide the carefully-coordinated behind the cover of apparently random events. You start the sequence at 'A' and you know you are heading for 'Z'. You don't want people to know that and each step on the journey is presented as a random happening while all the steps strung together lead in the same direction. The speed may have quickened dramatically in recent times, but you can still see the incremental approach of the Tiptoe in the case of 'Covid' as each new imposition takes us deeper into fascism. Tell people they have to do this or that to get back to 'normal', then this and this and this. With each new demand adding to the ones that went before the population's freedom is deleted until it disappears. The spider wraps its web around the flies more comprehensively with each new diktat. I'll highlight this in more detail when I get to the 'Covid' hoax and how it has been pulled off. Another prime example of the Totalitarian Tiptoe is how the Cult-created European Union went from a 'free-trade zone' to a centralised bureaucratic dictatorship through the Tiptoe of incremental centralisation of power until nations became mere administrative units for Cult-owned dark suits in Brussels.

The antidote to ignorance is knowledge which the Cult seeks vehemently to deny us, but despite the systematic censorship to that end the Renegade Mind can overcome this by vociferously seeking out the facts no matter the impediments put in the way. There is also a method of thinking and perceiving – *knowing* – that doesn't even need names, dates, place-type facts to identify the patterns that reveal the story. I'll get to that in the final chapter. All you need to know about the manipulation of human society and to what end is still out there – *at the time of writing* – in the form of books, videos

and websites for those that really want to breach the walls of programmed perception. To access this knowledge requires the abandonment of the mainstream media as a source of information in the awareness that this is owned and controlled by the Cult and therefore promotes mass perceptions that suit the Cult. Mainstream media lies all day, every day. That is its function and very reason for being. Where it does tell the truth, here and there, is only because the truth and the Cult agenda very occasionally coincide. If you look for fact and insight to the BBC, CNN and virtually all the rest of them you are asking to be conned and perceptually programmed.

### **Know the outcome and you'll see the journey**

Events seem random when you have no idea where the world is being taken. Once you do the random becomes the carefully planned. Know the outcome and you'll see the journey is a phrase I have been using for a long time to give context to daily happenings that appear unconnected. Does a problem, or illusion of a problem, trigger a proposed 'solution' that further drives society in the direction of the outcome? Invariably the answer will be yes and the random – *abracadabra* – becomes the clearly coordinated. So what is this outcome that unlocks the door to a massively expanded understanding of daily events? I will summarise its major aspects – the fine detail is in my other books – and those new to this information will see that the world they thought they were living in is a very different place. The foundation of the Cult agenda is the incessant centralisation of power and all such centralisation is ultimately in pursuit of Cult control on a global level. I have described for a long time the planned world structure of top-down dictatorship as the Hunger Games Society. The term obviously comes from the movie series which portrayed a world in which a few living in military-protected hi-tech luxury were the overlords of a population condemned to abject poverty in isolated 'sectors' that were not allowed to interact. 'Covid' lockdowns and travel bans anyone? The 'Hunger Games' pyramid of structural control has the inner circle of the Cult at the top with pretty much the entire

population at the bottom under their control through dependency for survival on the Cult. The whole structure is planned to be protected and enforced by a military-police state (Fig 4).

Here you have the reason for the global lockdowns of the fake pandemic to coldly destroy independent incomes and livelihoods and make everyone dependent on the 'state' (the Cult that controls the 'states'). I have warned in my books for many years about the plan to introduce a 'guaranteed income' – a barely survivable pittance – designed to impose dependency when employment was destroyed by AI technology and now even more comprehensively at great speed by the 'Covid' scam. Once the pandemic was played and lockdown consequences began to delete independent income the authorities began to talk right on cue about the need for a guaranteed income and a 'Great Reset'. Guaranteed income will be presented as benevolent governments seeking to help a desperate people – desperate as a direct result of actions of the same governments. The truth is that such payments are a trap. You will only get them if you do exactly what the authorities demand including mass vaccination (genetic manipulation). We have seen this theme already in Australia where those dependent on government benefits have them reduced if parents don't agree to have their children vaccinated according to an insane health-destroying government-dictated schedule. Calculated economic collapse applies to governments as well as people. The Cult wants rid of countries through the creation of a world state with countries broken up into regions ruled by a world government and super states like the European Union. Countries must be bankrupted, too, to this end and it's being achieved by the trillions in 'rescue packages' and furlough payments, trillions in lost taxation, and money-no-object spending on 'Covid' including constant all-medium advertising (programming) which has made the media dependent on government for much of its income. The day of reckoning is coming – as planned – for government spending and given that it has been made possible by printing money and not by production/taxation there is inflation on the way that has the

potential to wipe out monetary value. In that case there will be no need for the Cult to steal your money. It just won't be worth anything (see the German Weimar Republic before the Nazis took over). Many have been okay with lockdowns while getting a percentage of their income from so-called furlough payments without having to work. Those payments are dependent, however, on people having at least a theoretical job with a business considered non-essential and ordered to close. As these business go under because they are closed by lockdown after lockdown the furlough stops and it will for everyone eventually. Then what? The 'then what?' is precisely the idea.



**Figure 4:** The Hunger Games Society structure I have long warned was planned and now the 'Covid' hoax has made it possible. This is the real reason for lockdowns.

## **Hired hands**

Between the Hunger Games Cult elite and the dependent population is planned to be a vicious military-police state (a fusion of the two into one force). This has been in the making for a long time with police looking ever more like the military and carrying weapons to match. The pandemic scam has seen this process accelerate so fast as



lockdown house arrest is brutally enforced by carefully recruited fascist minds and gormless system-servers. The police and military are planned to merge into a centrally-directed world army in a global structure headed by a world government which wouldn't be elected even by the election fixes now in place. The world army is not planned even to be human and instead wars would be fought, primarily against the population, using robot technology controlled by artificial intelligence. I have been warning about this for decades and now militaries around the world are being transformed by this very AI technology. The global regime that I describe is a particular form of fascism known as a technocracy in which decisions are not made by clueless and co-opted politicians but by unelected technocrats – scientists, engineers, technologists and bureaucrats. Cult-owned-and-controlled Silicon Valley giants are examples of technocracy and they already have far more power to direct world events than governments. They are with their censorship *selecting* governments. I know that some are calling the 'Great Reset' a Marxist communist takeover, but fascism and Marxism are different labels for the same tyranny. Tell those who lived in fascist Germany and Stalinist Russia that there was a difference in the way their freedom was deleted and their lives controlled. I could call it a fascist technocracy or a Marxist technocracy and they would be equally accurate. The Hunger Games society with its world government structure would oversee a world army, world central bank and single world cashless currency imposing its will on a microchipped population (Fig 5). Scan its different elements and see how the illusory pandemic is forcing society in this very direction at great speed. Leaders of 23 countries and the World Health Organization (WHO) backed the idea in March, 2021, of a global treaty for 'international cooperation' in 'health emergencies' and nations should 'come together as a global community for peaceful cooperation that extends beyond this crisis'. Cut the Orwellian bullshit and this means another step towards global government. The plan includes a cashless digital money system that I first warned about in 1993. Right at the start of 'Covid' the deeply corrupt Tedros

Adhanom Ghebreyesus, the crooked and merely gofer 'head' of the World Health Organization, said it was possible to catch the 'virus' by touching cash and it was better to use cashless means. The claim was ridiculous nonsense and like the whole 'Covid' mind-trick it was nothing to do with 'health' and everything to do with pushing every aspect of the Cult agenda. As a result of the Tedros lie the use of cash has plummeted. The Cult script involves a single world digital currency that would eventually be technologically embedded in the body. China is a massive global centre for the Cult and if you watch what is happening there you will know what is planned for everywhere. The Chinese government is developing a digital currency which would allow fines to be deducted immediately via AI for anyone caught on camera breaking its fantastic list of laws and the money is going to be programmable with an expiry date to ensure that no one can accrue wealth except the Cult and its operatives.



**Figure 5:** The structure of global control the Cult has been working towards for so long and this has been enormously advanced by the 'Covid' illusion.

## **Serfdom is so smart**

The Cult plan is far wider, extreme, and more comprehensive than even most conspiracy researchers appreciate and I will come to the true depths of deceit and control in the chapters 'Who controls the

Cult?’ and ‘Escaping Wetiko’. Even the world that we know is crazy enough. We are being deluged with ever more sophisticated and controlling technology under the heading of ‘smart’. We have smart televisions, smart meters, smart cards, smart cars, smart driving, smart roads, smart pills, smart patches, smart watches, smart skin, smart borders, smart pavements, smart streets, smart cities, smart communities, smart environments, smart growth, smart planet ... smart *everything* around us. Smart technologies and methods of operation are designed to interlock to create a global Smart Grid connecting the entirety of human society including human minds to create a centrally-dictated ‘hive’ mind. ‘Smart cities’ is code for densely-occupied megacities of total surveillance and control through AI. Ever more destructive frequency communication systems like 5G have been rolled out without any official testing for health and psychological effects (colossal). 5G/6G/7G systems are needed to run the Smart Grid and each one becomes more destructive of body and mind. Deleting independent income is crucial to forcing people into these AI-policed prisons by ending private property ownership (except for the Cult elite). The Cult’s Great Reset now openly foresees a global society in which no one will own any possessions and everything will be rented while the Cult would own literally everything under the guise of government and corporations. The aim has been to use the lockdowns to destroy sources of income on a mass scale and when the people are destitute and in unrepayable amounts of debt (problem) Cult assets come forward with the pledge to write-off debt in return for handing over all property and possessions (solution). Everything – literally everything including people – would be connected to the Internet via AI. I was warning years ago about the coming Internet of Things (IoT) in which all devices and technology from your car to your fridge would be plugged into the Internet and controlled by AI. Now we are already there with much more to come. The next stage is the Internet of Everything (IoE) which is planned to include the connection of AI to the human brain and body to replace the human mind with a centrally-controlled AI mind. Instead of perceptions

being manipulated through control of information and censorship those perceptions would come direct from the Cult through AI. What do you think? You think whatever AI decides that you think. In human terms there would be no individual 'think' any longer. Too incredible? The ravings of a lunatic? Not at all. Cult-owned crazies in Silicon Valley have been telling us the plan for years without explaining the real motivation and calculated implications. These include Google executive and 'futurist' Ray Kurzweil who highlights the year 2030 for when this would be underway. He said:

Our thinking ... will be a hybrid of biological and non-biological thinking ... humans will be able to extend their limitations and 'think in the cloud' ... We're going to put gateways to the cloud in our brains ... We're going to gradually merge and enhance ourselves ... In my view, that's the nature of being human – we transcend our limitations.

As the technology becomes vastly superior to what we are then the small proportion that is still human gets smaller and smaller and smaller until it's just utterly negligible.

The sales-pitch of Kurzweil and Cult-owned Silicon Valley is that this would make us 'super-human' when the real aim is to make us post-human and no longer 'human' in the sense that we have come to know. The entire global population would be connected to AI and become the centrally-controlled 'hive-mind' of externally-delivered perceptions. The Smart Grid being installed to impose the Cult's will on the world is being constructed to allow particular locations – even one location – to control the whole global system. From these prime control centres, which absolutely include China and Israel, anything connected to the Internet would be switched on or off and manipulated at will. Energy systems could be cut, communication via the Internet taken down, computer-controlled driverless autonomous vehicles driven off the road, medical devices switched off, the potential is limitless given how much AI and Internet connections now run human society. We have seen nothing yet if we allow this to continue. Autonomous vehicle makers are working with law enforcement to produce cars designed to automatically pull over if they detect a police or emergency vehicle flashing from up to 100 feet away. At a police stop the car would be unlocked and the

window rolled down automatically. Vehicles would only take you where the computer (the state) allowed. The end of petrol vehicles and speed limiters on all new cars in the UK and EU from 2022 are steps leading to electric computerised transport over which ultimately you have no control. The picture is far bigger even than the Cult global network or web and that will become clear when I get to the nature of the 'spider'. There is a connection between all these happenings and the instigation of DNA-manipulating 'vaccines' (which aren't 'vaccines') justified by the 'Covid' hoax. That connection is the unfolding plan to transform the human body from a biological to a synthetic biological state and this is why synthetic biology is such a fast-emerging discipline of mainstream science. 'Covid vaccines' are infusing self-replicating synthetic genetic material into the cells to cumulatively take us on the Totalitarian Tiptoe from Human 1.0 to the synthetic biological Human 2.0 which will be physically and perceptually attached to the Smart Grid to one hundred percent control every thought, perception and deed. Humanity needs to wake up and *fast*.

This is the barest explanation of where the 'outcome' is planned to go but it's enough to see the journey happening all around us. Those new to this information will already see 'Covid' in a whole new context. I will add much more detail as we go along, but for the minutiae evidence see my mega-works, *The Answer*, *The Trigger* and *Everything You Need to Know But Have Never Been Told*.

Now – how does a Renegade Mind see the 'world'?

## CHAPTER TWO

# Renegade Perception

*It is one thing to be clever and another to be wise*

George R.R. Martin

A simple definition of the difference between a programmed mind and a Renegade Mind would be that one sees only dots while the other connects them to see the picture. Reading reality with accuracy requires the observer to (a) know the planned outcome and (b) realise that everything, but *everything*, is connected.

The entirety of infinite reality is connected – that’s its very nature – and with human society an expression of infinite reality the same must apply. Simple cause and effect is a connection. The effect is triggered by the cause and the effect then becomes the cause of another effect. Nothing happens in isolation because it *can’t*. Life in whatever reality is simple choice and consequence. We make choices and these lead to consequences. If we don’t like the consequences we can make different choices and get different consequences which lead to other choices and consequences. The choice and the consequence are not only connected they are indivisible. You can’t have one without the other as an old song goes. A few cannot control the world unless those being controlled allow that to happen – cause and effect, choice and consequence. Control – who has it and who doesn’t – is a two-way process, a symbiotic relationship, involving the controller and controlled. ‘They took my freedom away!!’ Well, yes, but you also gave it to them. Humanity is

subjected to mass control because humanity has acquiesced to that control. This is all cause and effect and literally a case of give and take. In the same way world events of every kind are connected and the Cult works incessantly to sell the illusion of the random and coincidental to maintain the essential (to them) perception of dots that hide the picture. Renegade Minds know this and constantly scan the world for patterns of connection. This is absolutely pivotal in understanding the happenings in the world and without that perspective clarity is impossible. First you know the planned outcome and then you identify the steps on the journey – the day-by-day apparently random which, when connected in relation to the outcome, no longer appear as individual events, but as the proverbial *chain* of events leading in the same direction. I'll give you some examples:

### **Political puppet show**

We are told to believe that politics is 'adversarial' in that different parties with different beliefs engage in an endless tussle for power. There may have been some truth in that up to a point – and only a point – but today divisions between 'different' parties are rhetorical not ideological. Even the rhetorical is fusing into one-speak as the parties eject any remaining free thinkers while others succumb to the ever-gathering intimidation of anyone with the 'wrong' opinion. The Cult is not a new phenomenon and can be traced back thousands of years as my books have documented. Its intergenerational initiatives have been manipulating events with increasing effect the more that global power has been centralised. In ancient times the Cult secured control through the system of monarchy in which 'special' bloodlines (of which more later) demanded the right to rule as kings and queens simply by birthright and by vanquishing others who claimed the same birthright. There came a time, however, when people had matured enough to see the unfairness of such tyranny and demanded a say in who governed them. Note the word – *governed* them. Not served them – *governed* them, hence government defined as 'the political direction and control exercised over the

actions of the members, citizens, or inhabitants of communities, societies, and states; direction of the affairs of a state, community, etc.' Governments exercise control over rather than serve just like the monarchies before them. Bizarrely there are still countries like the United Kingdom which are ruled by a monarch *and* a government that officially answers to the monarch. The UK head of state and that of Commonwealth countries such as Canada, Australia and New Zealand is 'selected' by who in a *single family* had unprotected sex with whom and in what order. Pinch me it can't be true. Ouch! Shit, it is. The demise of monarchies in most countries offered a potential vacuum in which some form of free and fair society could arise and the Cult had that base covered. Monarchies had served its interests but they couldn't continue in the face of such widespread opposition and, anyway, replacing a 'royal' dictatorship that people could see with a dictatorship 'of the people' hiding behind the concept of 'democracy' presented far greater manipulative possibilities and ways of hiding coordinated tyranny behind the illusion of 'freedom'.

Democracy is quite wrongly defined as government selected by the population. This is not the case at all. It is government selected by *some* of the population (and then only in theory). This 'some' doesn't even have to be the majority as we have seen so often in first-past-the-post elections in which the so-called majority party wins fewer votes than the 'losing' parties combined. Democracy can give total power to a party in government from a minority of the votes cast. It's a sleight of hand to sell tyranny as freedom. Seventy-four million Trump-supporting Americans didn't vote for the 'Democratic' Party of Joe Biden in the distinctly dodgy election in 2020 and yet far from acknowledging the wishes and feelings of that great percentage of American society the Cult-owned Biden government set out from day one to destroy them and their right to a voice and opinion. Empty shell Biden and his Cult handlers said they were doing this to 'protect democracy'. Such is the level of lunacy and sickness to which politics has descended. Connect the dots and relate them to the desired outcome – a world government run by self-appointed technocrats and no longer even elected



politicians. While operating through its political agents in government the Cult is at the same time encouraging public disdain for politicians by putting idiots and incompetents in theoretical power on the road to deleting them. The idea is to instil a public reaction that says of the technocrats: 'Well, they couldn't do any worse than the pathetic politicians.' It's all about controlling perception and Renegade Minds can see through that while programmed minds cannot when they are ignorant of both the planned outcome and the manipulation techniques employed to secure that end. This knowledge can be learned, however, and fast if people choose to get informed.

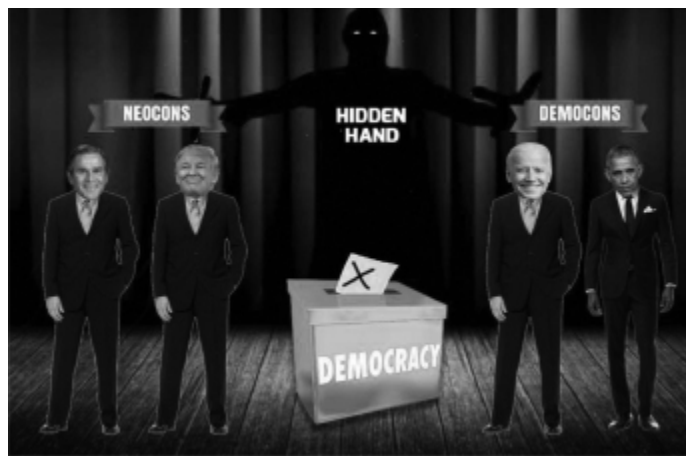
Politics may at first sight appear very difficult to control from a central point. I mean look at the 'different' parties and how would you be able to oversee them all and their constituent parts? In truth, it's very straightforward because of their structure. We are back to the pyramid of imposition and acquiescence. Organisations are structured in the same way as the system as a whole. Political parties are not open forums of free expression. They are hierarchies. I was a national spokesman for the British Green Party which claimed to be a different kind of politics in which influence and power was devolved; but I can tell you from direct experience – and it's far worse now – that Green parties are run as hierarchies like all the others however much they may try to hide that fact or kid themselves that it's not true. A very few at the top of all political parties are directing policy and personnel. They decide if you are elevated in the party or serve as a government minister and to do that you have to be a yes man or woman. Look at all the maverick political thinkers who never ascended the greasy pole. If you want to progress within the party or reach 'high-office' you need to fall into line and conform. Exceptions to this are rare indeed. Should you want to run for parliament or Congress you have to persuade the local or state level of the party to select you and for that you need to play the game as dictated by the hierarchy. If you secure election and wish to progress within the greater structure you need to go on conforming to what is acceptable to those running the hierarchy

from the peak of the pyramid. Political parties are perceptual gulags and the very fact that there are party 'Whips' appointed to 'whip' politicians into voting the way the hierarchy demands exposes the ridiculous idea that politicians are elected to serve the people they are supposed to represent. Cult operatives and manipulation has long seized control of major parties that have any chance of forming a government and at least most of those that haven't. A new party forms and the Cult goes to work to infiltrate and direct. This has reached such a level today that you see video compilations of 'leaders' of all parties whether Democrats, Republicans, Conservative, Labour and Green parroting the same Cult mantra of 'Build Back Better' and the 'Great Reset' which are straight off the Cult song-sheet to describe the transformation of global society in response to the Cult-instigated hoaxes of the 'Covid pandemic' and human-caused 'climate change'. To see Caroline Lucas, the Green Party MP that I knew when I was in the party in the 1980s, speaking in support of plans proposed by Cult operative Klaus Schwab representing the billionaire global elite is a real head-shaker.

### **Many parties – one master**

The party system is another mind-trick and was instigated to change the nature of the dictatorship by swapping 'royalty' for dark suits that people believed – though now ever less so – represented their interests. Understanding this trick is to realise that a single force (the Cult) controls all parties either directly in terms of the major ones or through manipulation of perception and ideology with others. You don't need to manipulate Green parties to demand your transformation of society in the name of 'climate change' when they are obsessed with the lie that this is essential to 'save the planet'. You just give them a platform and away they go serving your interests while believing they are being environmentally virtuous. America's political structure is a perfect blueprint for how the two or multi-party system is really a one-party state. The Republican Party is controlled from one step back in the shadows by a group made up of billionaires and their gofers known as neoconservatives or Neocons.

I have exposed them in fine detail in my books and they were the driving force behind the policies of the imbecilic presidency of Boy George Bush which included 9/11 (see *The Trigger* for a comprehensive demolition of the official story), the subsequent 'war on terror' (war of terror) and the invasions of Afghanistan and Iraq. The latter was a No-Problem-Reaction-Solution based on claims by Cult operatives, including Bush and British Prime Minister Tony Blair, about Saddam Hussein's 'weapons of mass destruction' which did not exist as war criminals Bush and Blair well knew.



**Figure 6:** Different front people, different parties – same control system.

The Democratic Party has its own 'Neocon' group controlling from the background which I call the 'Democons' and here's the penny-drop – the Neocons and Democons answer to the same masters one step further back into the shadows (Fig 6). At that level of the Cult the Republican and Democrat parties are controlled by the same people and no matter which is in power the Cult is in power. This is how it works in almost every country and certainly in Britain with Conservative, Labour, Liberal Democrat and Green parties now all on the same page whatever the rhetoric may be in their feeble attempts to appear different. Neocons operated at the time of Bush through a think tank called The Project for the New American Century which in September, 2000, published a document entitled *Rebuilding America's Defenses: Strategies, Forces, and Resources*

*For a New Century* demanding that America fight ‘multiple, simultaneous major theatre wars’ as a ‘core mission’ to force regime-change in countries including Iraq, Libya and Syria. Neocons arranged for Bush (‘Republican’) and Blair (‘Labour Party’) to front-up the invasion of Iraq and when they departed the Democons orchestrated the targeting of Libya and Syria through Barack Obama (‘Democrat’) and British Prime Minister David Cameron (‘Conservative Party’). We have ‘different’ parties and ‘different’ people, but the same unfolding script. The more the Cult has seized the reigns of parties and personnel the more their policies have transparently pursued the same agenda to the point where the fascist ‘Covid’ impositions of the Conservative junta of Jackboot Johnson in Britain were opposed by the Labour Party because they were not fascist enough. The Labour Party is likened to the US Democrats while the Conservative Party is akin to a British version of the Republicans and on both sides of the Atlantic they all speak the same language and support the direction demanded by the Cult although some more enthusiastically than others. It’s a similar story in country after country because it’s all centrally controlled. Oh, but what about Trump? I’ll come to him shortly. Political ‘choice’ in the ‘party’ system goes like this: You vote for Party A and they get into government. You don’t like what they do so next time you vote for Party B and they get into government. You don’t like what they do when it’s pretty much the same as Party A and why wouldn’t that be with both controlled by the same force? Given that only two, sometimes three, parties have any chance of forming a government to get rid of Party B that you don’t like you have to vote again for Party A which ... you don’t like. This, ladies and gentlemen, is what they call ‘democracy’ which we are told – wrongly – is a term interchangeable with ‘freedom’.

## **The cult of cults**

At this point I need to introduce a major expression of the Global Cult known as Sabbatian-Frankism. Sabbatian is also spelt as Sabbatean. I will summarise here. I have published major exposés

and detailed background in other works. Sabbatian-Frankism combines the names of two frauds posing as 'Jewish' men, Sabbatai Zevi (1626-1676), a rabbi, black magician and occultist who proclaimed he was the Jewish messiah; and Jacob Frank (1726-1791), the Polish 'Jew', black magician and occultist who said he was the reincarnation of 'messiah' Zevi and biblical patriarch Jacob. They worked across two centuries to establish the Sabbatian-Frankist cult that plays a major, indeed central, role in the manipulation of human society by the Global Cult which has its origins much further back in history than Sabbatai Zevi. I should emphasise two points here in response to the shrill voices that will scream 'anti-Semitism': (1) Sabbatian-Frankists are NOT Jewish and only pose as such to hide their cult behind a Jewish façade; and (2) my information about this cult has come from Jewish sources who have long realised that their society and community has been infiltrated and taken over by interloper Sabbatian-Frankists. Infiltration has been the foundation technique of Sabbatian-Frankism from its official origin in the 17th century. Zevi's Sabbatian sect attracted a massive following described as the biggest messianic movement in Jewish history, spreading as far as Africa and Asia, and he promised a return for the Jews to the 'Promised Land' of Israel. Sabbatianism was not Judaism but an inversion of everything that mainstream Judaism stood for. So much so that this sinister cult would have a feast day when Judaism had a fast day and whatever was forbidden in Judaism the Sabbatians were encouraged and even commanded to do. This included incest and what would be today called Satanism. Members were forbidden to marry outside the sect and there was a system of keeping their children ignorant of what they were part of until they were old enough to be trusted not to unknowingly reveal anything to outsiders. The same system is employed to this day by the Global Cult in general which Sabbatian-Frankism has enormously influenced and now largely controls.

Zevi and his Sabbatians suffered a setback with the intervention by the Sultan of the Islamic Ottoman Empire in the Middle East and what is now the Republic of Turkey where Zevi was located. The

Sultan gave him the choice of proving his 'divinity', converting to Islam or facing torture and death. Funnily enough Zevi chose to convert or at least appear to. Some of his supporters were disillusioned and drifted away, but many did not with 300 families also converting – only in theory – to Islam. They continued behind this Islamic smokescreen to follow the goals, rules and rituals of Sabbatianism and became known as 'crypto-Jews' or the 'Dönme' which means 'to turn'. This is rather ironic because they didn't 'turn' and instead hid behind a fake Islamic persona. The process of appearing to be one thing while being very much another would become the calling card of Sabbatianism especially after Zevi's death and the arrival of the Satanist Jacob Frank in the 18th century when the cult became Sabbatian-Frankism and plumbed still new depths of depravity and infiltration which included – still includes – human sacrifice and sex with children. Wherever Sabbatians go paedophilia and Satanism follow and is it really a surprise that Hollywood is so infested with child abuse and Satanism when it was established by Sabbatian-Frankists and is still controlled by them? Hollywood has been one of the prime vehicles for global perceptual programming and manipulation. How many believe the version of 'history' portrayed in movies when it is a travesty and inversion (again) of the truth? Rabbi Marvin Antelman describes Frankism in his book, *To Eliminate the Opiate*, as 'a movement of complete evil' while Jewish professor Gershom Scholem said of Frank in *The Messianic Idea in Judaism*: 'In all his actions [he was] a truly corrupt and degenerate individual ... one of the most frightening phenomena in the whole of Jewish history.' Frank was excommunicated by traditional rabbis, as was Zevi, but Frank was undeterred and enjoyed vital support from the House of Rothschild, the infamous banking dynasty whose inner-core are Sabbatian-Frankists and not Jews. Infiltration of the Roman Church and Vatican was instigated by Frank with many Dönme 'turning' again to convert to Roman Catholicism with a view to hijacking the reins of power. This was the ever-repeating modus operandi and continues to be so. Pose as an advocate of the religion, culture or country that you want to control and then

manipulate your people into the positions of authority and influence largely as advisers, administrators and Svengalis for those that appear to be in power. They did this with Judaism, Christianity (Christian Zionism is part of this), Islam and other religions and nations until Sabbatian-Frankism spanned the world as it does today.

### **Sabbatian Saudis and the terror network**

One expression of the Sabbatian-Frankist Dönme within Islam is the ruling family of Saudi Arabia, the House of Saud, through which came the vile distortion of Islam known as Wahhabism. This is the violent creed followed by terrorist groups like Al-Qaeda and ISIS or Islamic State. Wahhabism is the hand-chopping, head-chopping 'religion' of Saudi Arabia which is used to keep the people in a constant state of fear so the interloper House of Saud can continue to rule. Al-Qaeda and Islamic State were lavishly funded by the House of Saud while being created and directed by the Sabbatian-Frankist network in the United States that operates through the Pentagon, CIA and the government in general of whichever 'party'. The front man for the establishment of Wahhabism in the middle of the 18th century was a Sabbatian-Frankist 'crypto-Jew' posing as Islamic called Muhammad ibn Abd al-Wahhab. His daughter would marry the son of Muhammad bin Saud who established the first Saudi state before his death in 1765 with support from the British Empire. Bin Saud's successors would establish modern Saudi Arabia in league with the British and Americans in 1932 which allowed them to seize control of Islam's major shrines in Mecca and Medina. They have dictated the direction of Sunni Islam ever since while Iran is the major centre of the Shiite version and here we have the source of at least the public conflict between them. The Sabbatian network has used its Wahhabi extremists to carry out Problem-Reaction-Solution terrorist attacks in the name of 'Al-Qaeda' and 'Islamic State' to justify a devastating 'war on terror', ever-increasing surveillance of the population and to terrify people into compliance. Another insight of the Renegade Mind is the streetwise understanding that

just because a country, location or people are attacked doesn't mean that those apparently representing that country, location or people are not behind the attackers. Often they are *orchestrating* the attacks because of the societal changes that can be then justified in the name of 'saving the population from terrorists'.

I show in great detail in *The Trigger* how Sabbatian-Frankists were the real perpetrators of 9/11 and not '19 Arab hijackers' who were blamed for what happened. Observe what was justified in the name of 9/11 alone in terms of Middle East invasions, mass surveillance and control that fulfilled the demands of the Project for the New American Century document published by the Sabbatian Neocons. What appear to be enemies are on the deep inside players on the same Sabbatian team. Israel and Arab 'royal' dictatorships are all ruled by Sabbatians and the recent peace agreements between Israel and Saudi Arabia, the United Arab Emirates (UAE) and others are only making formal what has always been the case behind the scenes. Palestinians who have been subjected to grotesque tyranny since Israel was bombed and terrorised into existence in 1948 have never stood a chance. Sabbatian-Frankists have controlled Israel (so the constant theme of violence and war which Sabbatians love) and they have controlled the Arab countries that Palestinians have looked to for real support that never comes. 'Royal families' of the Arab world in Saudi Arabia, Bahrain, UAE, etc., are all Sabbatians with allegiance to the aims of the cult and not what is best for their Arabic populations. They have stolen the oil and financial resources from their people by false claims to be 'royal dynasties' with a genetic right to rule and by employing vicious militaries to impose their will.

### **Satanic 'illumination'**

The Satanist Jacob Frank formed an alliance in 1773 with two other Sabbatians, Mayer Amschel Rothschild (1744-1812), founder of the Rothschild banking dynasty, and Jesuit-educated fraudulent Jew, Adam Weishaupt, and this led to the formation of the Bavarian Illuminati, firstly under another name, in 1776. The Illuminati would



be the manipulating force behind the French Revolution (1789-1799) and was also involved in the American Revolution (1775-1783) before and after the Illuminati's official creation. Weishaupt would later become (in public) a Protestant Christian in archetypal Sabbatian style. I read that his name can be decoded as Adam-Weishaupt or 'the first man to lead those who know'. He wasn't a leader in the sense that he was a subordinate, but he did lead those below him in a crusade of transforming human society that still continues today. The theme was confirmed as early as 1785 when a horseman courier called Lanz was reported to be struck by lightning and extensive Illuminati documents were found in his saddlebags. They made the link to Weishaupt and detailed the plan for world takeover. Current events with 'Covid' fascism have been in the making for a very long time. Jacob Frank was jailed for 13 years by the Catholic Inquisition after his arrest in 1760 and on his release he headed for Frankfurt, Germany, home city and headquarters of the House of Rothschild where the alliance was struck with Mayer Amschel Rothschild and Weishaupt. Rothschild arranged for Frank to be given the title of Baron and he became a wealthy nobleman with a big following of Jews in Germany, the Austro-Hungarian Empire and other European countries. Most of them would have believed he was on their side.

The name 'Illuminati' came from the Zohar which is a body of works in the Jewish mystical 'bible' called the Kabbalah. 'Zohar' is the foundation of Sabbatian-Frankist belief and in Hebrew 'Zohar' means 'splendour', 'radiance', 'illuminated', and so we have 'Illuminati'. They claim to be the 'Illuminated Ones' from their knowledge systematically hidden from the human population and passed on through generations of carefully-chosen initiates in the global secret society network or Cult. Hidden knowledge includes an awareness of the Cult agenda for the world and the nature of our collective reality that I will explore later. Cult 'illumination' is symbolised by the torch held by the Statue of Liberty which was gifted to New York by French Freemasons in Paris who knew exactly what it represents. 'Liberty' symbolises the goddess worshipped in

Babylon as Queen Semiramis or Ishtar. The significance of this will become clear. Notice again the ubiquitous theme of inversion with the Statue of 'Liberty' really symbolising mass control (Fig 7). A mirror-image statute stands on an island in the River Seine in Paris from where New York Liberty originated (Fig 8). A large replica of the Liberty flame stands on top of the Pont de l'Alma tunnel in Paris where Princess Diana died in a Cult ritual described in *The Biggest Secret*. Lucifer 'the light bringer' is related to all this (and much more as we'll see) and 'Lucifer' is a central figure in Sabbatian-Frankism and its associated Satanism. Sabbatians reject the Jewish Torah, or Pentateuch, the 'five books of Moses' in the Old Testament known as Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy which are claimed by Judaism and Christianity to have been dictated by 'God' to Moses on Mount Sinai. Sabbatians say these do not apply to them and they seek to replace them with the Zohar to absorb Judaism and its followers into their inversion which is an expression of a much greater global inversion. They want to delete all religions and force humanity to worship a one-world religion – Sabbatian Satanism that also includes worship of the Earth goddess. Satanic themes are being more and more introduced into mainstream society and while Christianity is currently the foremost target for destruction the others are planned to follow.



**Figure 7:** The Cult goddess of Babylon disguised as the Statue of Liberty holding the flame of Lucifer the 'light bringer'.



**Figure 8:** Liberty's mirror image in Paris where the New York version originated.

## **Marx brothers**

Rabbi Marvin Antelman connects the Illuminati to the Jacobins in *To Eliminate the Opiate* and Jacobins were the force behind the French Revolution. He links both to the Bund der Gerechten, or League of the Just, which was the network that inflicted communism/Marxism on the world. Antelman wrote:

The original inner circle of the Bund der Gerechten consisted of born Catholics, Protestants and Jews [Sabbatian-Frankist infiltrators], and those representatives of respective subdivisions formulated schemes for the ultimate destruction of their faiths. The heretical Catholics laid plans which they felt would take a century or more for the ultimate destruction of the church; the apostate Jews for the ultimate destruction of the Jewish religion.

Sabbatian-created communism connects into this anti-religion agenda in that communism does not allow for the free practice of religion. The Sabbatian 'Bund' became the International Communist Party and Communist League and in 1848 'Marxism' was born with the Communist Manifesto of Sabbatian assets Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels. It is absolutely no coincidence that Marxism, just a different name for fascist and other centrally-controlled tyrannies, is being imposed worldwide as a result of the 'Covid' hoax and nor that Marxist/fascist China was the place where the hoax originated. The reason for this will become very clear in the chapter 'Covid: The calculated catastrophe'. The so-called 'Woke' mentality has hijacked

traditional beliefs of the political left and replaced them with far-right make-believe 'social justice' better known as Marxism. Woke will, however, be swallowed by its own perceived 'revolution' which is really the work of billionaires and billionaire corporations feigning being 'Woke'. Marxism is being touted by Wokers as a replacement for 'capitalism' when we don't have 'capitalism'. We have cartelism in which the market is stitched up by the very Cult billionaires and corporations bankrolling Woke. Billionaires love Marxism which keeps the people in servitude while they control from the top. Terminally naïve Wokers think they are 'changing the world' when it's the Cult that is doing the changing and when they have played their vital part and become surplus to requirements they, too, will be targeted. The Illuminati-Jacobins were behind the period known as 'The Terror' in the French Revolution in 1793 and 1794 when Jacobin Maximillian de Robespierre and his Orwellian 'Committee of Public Safety' killed 17,000 'enemies of the Revolution' who had once been 'friends of the Revolution'. Karl Marx (1818-1883), whose Sabbatian creed of Marxism has cost the lives of at least 100 million people, is a hero once again to Wokers who have been systematically kept ignorant of real history by their 'education' programming. As a result they now promote a Sabbatian 'Marxist' abomination destined at some point to consume them. Rabbi Antelman, who spent decades researching the Sabbatian plot, said of the League of the Just and Karl Marx:

Contrary to popular opinion Karl Marx did not originate the Communist Manifesto. He was paid for his services by the League of the Just, which was known in its country of origin, Germany, as the Bund der Geächteten.

Antelman said the text attributed to Marx was the work of other people and Marx 'was only repeating what others already said'. Marx was 'a hired hack – lackey of the wealthy Illuminists'. Marx famously said that religion was the 'opium of the people' (part of the Sabbatian plan to demonise religion) and Antelman called his books, *To Eliminate the Opiate*. Marx was born Jewish, but his family converted to Christianity (Sabbatian modus operandi) and he

attacked Jews, not least in his book, *A World Without Jews*. In doing so he supported the Sabbatian plan to destroy traditional Jewishness and Judaism which we are clearly seeing today with the vindictive targeting of orthodox Jews by the Sabbatian government of Israel over 'Covid' laws. I don't follow any religion and it has done much damage to the world over centuries and acted as a perceptual straightjacket. Renegade Minds, however, are always asking *why* something is being done. It doesn't matter if they agree or disagree with what is happening – *why* is it happening is the question. The 'why?' can be answered with regard to religion in that religions create interacting communities of believers when the Cult wants to dismantle all discourse, unity and interaction (see 'Covid' lockdowns) and the ultimate goal is to delete all religions for a one-world religion of Cult Satanism worshipping their 'god' of which more later. We see the same 'why?' with gun control in America. I don't have guns and don't want them, but why is the Cult seeking to disarm the population at the same time that law enforcement agencies are armed to their molars and why has every tyrant in history sought to disarm people before launching the final takeover? They include Hitler, Stalin, Pol Pot and Mao who followed confiscation with violent seizing of power. You know it's a Cult agenda by the people who immediately race to the microphones to exploit dead people in multiple shootings. Ultra-Zionist Cult lackey Senator Chuck Schumer was straight on the case after ten people were killed in Boulder, Colorado in March, 2121. Simple rule ... if Schumer wants it the Cult wants it and the same with his ultra-Zionist mate the wild-eyed Senator Adam Schiff. At the same time they were calling for the disarmament of Americans, many of whom live a long way from a police response, Schumer, Schiff and the rest of these pampered clowns were sitting on Capitol Hill behind a razor-wired security fence protected by thousands of armed troops in addition to their own armed bodyguards. Mom and pop in an isolated home? They're just potential mass shooters.

## **Zion Mainframe**

Sabbatian-Frankists and most importantly the Rothschilds were behind the creation of 'Zionism', a political movement that demanded a Jewish homeland in Israel as promised by Sabbatai Zevi. The very symbol of Israel comes from the German meaning of the name Rothschild. Dynasty founder Mayer Amschel Rothschild changed the family name from Bauer to Rothschild, or 'Red-Shield' in German, in deference to the six-pointed 'Star of David' hexagram displayed on the family's home in Frankfurt. The symbol later appeared on the flag of Israel after the Rothschilds were centrally involved in its creation. Hexagrams are not a uniquely Jewish symbol and are widely used in occult ('hidden') networks often as a symbol for Saturn (see my other books for why). Neither are Zionism and Jewishness interchangeable. Zionism is a political movement and philosophy and not a 'race' or a people. Many Jews oppose Zionism and many non-Jews, including US President Joe Biden, call themselves Zionists as does Israel-centric Donald Trump. America's support for the Israel government is pretty much a gimme with ultra-Zionist billionaires and corporations providing fantastic and dominant funding for both political parties. Former Congresswoman Cynthia McKinney has told how she was approached immediately she ran for office to 'sign the pledge' to Israel and confirm that she would always vote in that country's best interests. All American politicians are approached in this way. Anyone who refuses will get no support or funding from the enormous and all-powerful Zionist lobby that includes organisations like mega-lobby group AIPAC, the American Israel Public Affairs Committee. Trump's biggest funder was ultra-Zionist casino and media billionaire Sheldon Adelson while major funders of the Democratic Party include ultra-Zionist George Soros and ultra-Zionist financial and media mogul, Haim Saban. Some may reel back at the suggestion that Soros is an Israel-firster (Sabbatian-controlled Israel-firster), but Renegade Minds watch the actions not the words and everywhere Soros donates his billions the Sabbatian agenda benefits. In the spirit of Sabbatian inversion Soros pledged \$1 billion for a new university network to promote 'liberal values and tackle intolerance'. He made the announcement during his annual speech

at the Cult-owned World Economic Forum in Davos, Switzerland, in January, 2020, after his 'harsh criticism' of 'authoritarian rulers' around the world. You can only laugh at such brazen mendacity. How *he* doesn't laugh is the mystery. Translated from the Orwellian 'liberal values and tackle intolerance' means teaching non-white people to hate white people and for white people to loathe themselves for being born white. The reason for that will become clear.

### **The 'Anti-Semitism' fraud**

Zionists support the Jewish homeland in the land of Palestine which has been the Sabbatian-Rothschild goal for so long, but not for the benefit of Jews. Sabbatians and their global Anti-Semitism Industry have skewed public and political opinion to equate opposing the violent extremes of Zionism to be a blanket attack and condemnation of all Jewish people. Sabbatians and their global Anti-Semitism Industry have skewed public and political opinion to equate opposing the violent extremes of Zionism to be a blanket attack and condemnation of all Jewish people. This is nothing more than a Sabbatian protection racket to stop legitimate investigation and exposure of their agendas and activities. The official definition of 'anti-Semitism' has more recently been expanded to include criticism of Zionism – a *political movement* – and this was done to further stop exposure of Sabbatian infiltrators who created Zionism as we know it today in the 19th century. Renegade Minds will talk about these subjects when they know the shit that will come their way. People must decide if they want to know the truth or just cower in the corner in fear of what others will say. Sabbatians have been trying to label me as 'anti-Semitic' since the 1990s as I have uncovered more and more about their background and agendas. Useless, gutless, fraudulent 'journalists' then just repeat the smears without question and on the day I was writing this section a pair of unquestioning repeaters called Ben Quinn and Archie Bland (how appropriate) outright called me an 'anti-Semite' in the establishment propaganda sheet, the London *Guardian*, with no supporting evidence. The

Sabbatian Anti-Semitism Industry said so and who are they to question that? They wouldn't dare. Ironically 'Semitic' refers to a group of languages in the Middle East that are almost entirely Arabic. 'Anti-Semitism' becomes 'anti-Arab' which if the consequences of this misunderstanding were not so grave would be hilarious. Don't bother telling Quinn and Bland. I don't want to confuse them, bless 'em. One reason I am dubbed 'anti-Semitic' is that I wrote in the 1990s that Jewish operatives (Sabbatians) were heavily involved in the Russian Revolution when Sabbatians overthrew the Romanov dynasty. This apparently made me 'anti-Semitic'. Oh, really? Here is a section from *The Trigger*:

British journalist Robert Wilton confirmed these themes in his 1920 book *The Last Days of the Romanovs* when he studied official documents from the Russian government to identify the members of the Bolshevik ruling elite between 1917 and 1919. The Central Committee included 41 Jews among 62 members; the Council of the People's Commissars had 17 Jews out of 22 members; and 458 of the 556 most important Bolshevik positions between 1918 and 1919 were occupied by Jewish people. Only 17 were Russian. Then there were the 23 Jews among the 36 members of the vicious Cheka Soviet secret police established in 1917 who would soon appear all across the country.

Professor Robert Service of Oxford University, an expert on 20th century Russian history, found evidence that ['Jewish'] Leon Trotsky had sought to make sure that Jews were enrolled in the Red Army and were disproportionately represented in the Soviet civil bureaucracy that included the Cheka which performed mass arrests, imprisonment and executions of 'enemies of the people'. A US State Department Decimal File (861.00/5339) dated November 13th, 1918, names [Rothschild banking agent in America] Jacob Schiff and a list of ultra-Zionists as funders of the Russian Revolution leading to claims of a 'Jewish plot', but the key point missed by all is they were not 'Jews' – they were Sabbatian-Frankists.

Britain's Winston Churchill made the same error by mistake or otherwise. He wrote in a 1920 edition of the *Illustrated Sunday Herald* that those behind the Russian revolution were part of a 'worldwide conspiracy for the overthrow of civilisation and for the reconstitution of society on the basis of arrested development, of envious malevolence, and impossible equality' (see 'Woke' today because that has been created by the same network). Churchill said there was no need to exaggerate the part played in the creation of Bolshevism and in the actual bringing about of the Russian



Revolution 'by these international and for the most part atheistical Jews' ['atheistical Jews' = Sabbatians]. Churchill said it is certainly a very great one and probably outweighs all others: 'With the notable exception of Lenin, the majority of the leading figures are Jews.' He went on to describe, knowingly or not, the Sabbatian modus operandi of placing puppet leaders nominally in power while they control from the background:

Moreover, the principal inspiration and driving power comes from the Jewish leaders. Thus Tchitcherin, a pure Russian, is eclipsed by his nominal subordinate, Litvinoff, and the influence of Russians like Bukharin or Lunacharski cannot be compared with the power of Trotsky, or of Zinovieff, the Dictator of the Red Citadel (Petrograd), or of Krassin or Radek – all Jews. In the Soviet institutions the predominance of Jews is even more astonishing. And the prominent, if not indeed the principal, part in the system of terrorism applied by the Extraordinary Commissions for Combatting Counter-Revolution has been taken by Jews, and in some notable cases by Jewesses.

What I said about seriously disproportionate involvement in the Russian Revolution by Jewish 'revolutionaries' (Sabbatians) is provable fact, but truth is no defence against the Sabbatian Anti-Semitism Industry, its repeater parrots like Quinn and Bland, and the now breathtaking network of so-called 'Woke' 'anti-hate' groups with interlocking leaderships and funding which have the role of discrediting and silencing anyone who gets too close to exposing the Sabbatians. We have seen 'truth is no defence' confirmed in legal judgements with the Saskatchewan Human Rights Commission in Canada decreeing this: 'Truthful statements can be presented in a manner that would meet the definition of hate speech, and not all truthful statements must be free from restriction.' Most 'anti-hate' activists, who are themselves consumed by hatred, are too stupid and ignorant of the world to know how they are being used. They are far too far up their own virtue-signalling arses and it's far too dark for them to see anything.

## **The 'revolution' game**

The background and methods of the 'Russian' Revolution are straight from the Sabbatian playbook seen in the French Revolution

and endless others around the world that appear to start as a revolution of the people against tyrannical rule and end up with a regime change to more tyrannical rule overtly or covertly. Wars, terror attacks and regime overthrows follow the Sabbatian cult through history with its agents creating them as Problem-Reaction-Solutions to remove opposition on the road to world domination. Sabbatian dots connect the Rothschilds with the Illuminati, Jacobins of the French Revolution, the 'Bund' or League of the Just, the International Communist Party, Communist League and the Communist Manifesto of Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels that would lead to the Rothschild-funded Russian Revolution. The sequence comes under the heading of 'creative destruction' when you advance to your global goal by continually destroying the status quo to install a new status quo which you then also destroy. The two world wars come to mind. With each new status quo you move closer to your planned outcome. Wars and mass murder are to Sabbatians a collective blood sacrifice ritual. They are obsessed with death for many reasons and one is that death is an inversion of life. Satanists and Sabbatians are obsessed with death and often target churches and churchyards for their rituals. Inversion-obsessed Sabbatians explain the use of inverted symbolism including the *inverted* pentagram and *inverted* cross. The inversion of the cross has been related to targeting Christianity, but the cross was a religious symbol long before Christianity and its inversion is a statement about the Sabbatian mentality and goals more than any single religion.

Sabbatians operating in Germany were behind the rise of the occult-obsessed Nazis and the subsequent Jewish exodus from Germany and Europe to Palestine and the United States after World War Two. The Rothschild dynasty was at the forefront of this both as political manipulators and by funding the operation. Why would Sabbatians help to orchestrate the horrors inflicted on Jews by the Nazis and by Stalin after they organised the Russian Revolution? Sabbatians hate Jews and their religion, that's why. They pose as Jews and secure positions of control within Jewish society and play the 'anti-Semitism' card to protect themselves from exposure

through a global network of organisations answering to the Sabbatian-created-and-controlled globe-spanning intelligence network that involves a stunning web of military-intelligence operatives and operations for a tiny country of just nine million. Among them are Jewish assets who are not Sabbatians but have been convinced by them that what they are doing is for the good of Israel and the Jewish community to protect them from what they have been programmed since childhood to believe is a Jew-hating hostile world. The Jewish community is just a highly convenient cover to hide the true nature of Sabbatians. Anyone getting close to exposing their game is accused by Sabbatian place-people and gofers of 'anti-Semitism' and claiming that all Jews are part of a plot to take over the world. I am not saying that. I am saying that Sabbatians – the *real* Jew-haters – have infiltrated the Jewish community to use them both as a cover and an 'anti-Semitic' defence against exposure. Thus we have the Anti-Semitism Industry targeted researchers in this way and most Jewish people think this is justified and genuine. They don't know that their 'Jewish' leaders and institutions of state, intelligence and military are not controlled by Jews at all, but cultists and stooges of Sabbatian-Frankism. I once added my name to a pro-Jewish freedom petition online and the next time I looked my name was gone and text had been added to the petition blurb to attack me as an 'anti-Semite' such is the scale of perceptual programming.

## **Moving on America**

I tell the story in *The Trigger* and a chapter called 'Atlantic Crossing' how particularly after Israel was established the Sabbatians moved in on the United States and eventually grasped control of government administration, the political system via both Democrats and Republicans, the intelligence community like the CIA and National Security Agency (NSA), the Pentagon and mass media. Through this seriously compartmentalised network Sabbatians and their operatives in Mossad, Israeli Defense Forces (IDF) and US agencies pulled off 9/11 and blamed it on 19 'Al-Qaeda hijackers' dominated by men from, or connected to, Sabbatian-ruled Saudi

Arabia. The '19' were not even on the planes let alone flew those big passenger jets into buildings while being largely incompetent at piloting one-engine light aircraft. 'Hijacker' Hani Hanjour who is said to have flown American Airlines Flight 77 into the Pentagon with a turn and manoeuvre most professional pilots said they would have struggled to do was banned from renting a small plane by instructors at the Freeway Airport in Bowie, Maryland, just *six weeks* earlier on the grounds that he was an incompetent pilot. The Jewish population of the world is just 0.2 percent with even that almost entirely concentrated in Israel (75 percent Jewish) and the United States (around two percent). This two percent and globally 0.2 percent refers to *Jewish* people and not Sabbatian interlopers who are a fraction of that fraction. What a sobering thought when you think of the fantastic influence on world affairs of tiny Israel and that the Project for the New America Century (PNAC) which laid out the blueprint in September, 2000, for America's war on terror and regime change wars in Iraq, Libya and Syria was founded and dominated by Sabbatians known as 'Neocons'. The document conceded that this plan would not be supported politically or publicly without a major attack on American soil and a Problem-Reaction-Solution excuse to send troops to war across the Middle East. Sabbatian Neocons said:

... [The] process of transformation ... [war and regime change] ... is likely to be a long one, absent some catastrophic and catalysing event – like a new Pearl Harbor.

Four months later many of those who produced that document came to power with their inane puppet George Bush from the long-time Sabbatian Bush family. They included Sabbatian Dick Cheney who was officially vice-president, but really de-facto president for the entirety of the 'Bush' government. Nine months after the 'Bush' inauguration came what Bush called at the time 'the Pearl Harbor of the 21st century' and with typical Sabbatian timing and symbolism 2001 was the 60th anniversary of the attack in 1941 by the Japanese Air Force on Pearl Harbor, Hawaii, which allowed President Franklin Delano Roosevelt to take the United States into a Sabbatian-

instigated Second World War that he said in his election campaign that he never would. The evidence is overwhelming that Roosevelt and his military and intelligence networks knew the attack was coming and did nothing to stop it, but they did make sure that America's most essential naval ships were not in Hawaii at the time. Three thousand Americans died in the Pearl Harbor attacks as they did on September 11th. By the 9/11 year of 2001 Sabbatians had widely infiltrated the US government, military and intelligence operations and used their compartmentalised assets to pull off the 'Al-Qaeda' attacks. If you read *The Trigger* it will blow your mind to see the utterly staggering concentration of 'Jewish' operatives (Sabbatian infiltrators) in essential positions of political, security, legal, law enforcement, financial and business power before, during, and after the attacks to make them happen, carry them out, and then cover their tracks – and I do mean *staggering* when you think of that 0.2 percent of the world population and two percent of Americans which are Jewish while Sabbatian infiltrators are a fraction of that. A central foundation of the 9/11 conspiracy was the hijacking of government, military, Air Force and intelligence computer systems in real time through 'back-door' access made possible by Israeli (Sabbatian) 'cyber security' software. Sabbatian-controlled Israel is on the way to rivalling Silicon Valley for domination of cyberspace and is becoming the dominant force in cyber-security which gives them access to entire computer systems and their passcodes across the world. Then add to this that Zionists head (officially) Silicon Valley giants like Google (Larry Page and Sergey Brin), Google-owned YouTube (Susan Wojcicki), Facebook (Mark Zuckerberg and Sheryl Sandberg), and Apple (Chairman Arthur D. Levinson), and that ultra-Zionist hedge fund billionaire Paul Singer has a \$1 billion stake in Twitter which is only nominally headed by 'CEO' pothead Jack Dorsey. As cable news host Tucker Carlson said of Dorsey: 'There used to be debate in the medical community whether dropping a ton of acid had permanent effects and I think that debate has now ended.' Carlson made the comment after Dorsey told a hearing on Capitol Hill (if you cut through his bullshit) that he

believed in free speech so long as he got to decide what you can hear and see. These 'big names' of Silicon Valley are only front men and women for the Global Cult, not least the Sabbatians, who are the true controllers of these corporations. Does anyone still wonder why these same people and companies have been ferociously censoring and banning people (like me) for exposing any aspect of the Cult agenda and especially the truth about the 'Covid' hoax which Sabbatians have orchestrated?

The Jeffrey Epstein paedophile ring was a Sabbatian operation. He was officially 'Jewish' but he was a Sabbatian and women abused by the ring have told me about the high number of 'Jewish' people involved. The Epstein horror has Sabbatian written all over it and matches perfectly their modus operandi and obsession with sex and ritual. Epstein was running a Sabbatian blackmail ring in which famous people with political and other influence were provided with young girls for sex while everything was being filmed and recorded on hidden cameras and microphones at his New York house, Caribbean island and other properties. Epstein survivors have described this surveillance system to me and some have gone public. Once the famous politician or other figure knew he or she was on video they tended to do whatever they were told. Here we go again ...when you've got them by the balls their hearts and minds will follow. Sabbatians use this blackmail technique on a wide scale across the world to entrap politicians and others they need to act as demanded. Epstein's private plane, the infamous 'Lolita Express', had many well-known passengers including Bill Clinton while Bill Gates has flown on an Epstein plane and met with him four years after Epstein had been jailed for paedophilia. They subsequently met many times at Epstein's home in New York according to a witness who was there. Epstein's infamous side-kick was Ghislaine Maxwell, daughter of Mossad agent and ultra-Zionist mega-crooked British businessman, Bob Maxwell, who at one time owned the *Daily Mirror* newspaper. Maxwell was murdered at sea on his boat in 1991 by Sabbatian-controlled Mossad when he became a liability with his

business empire collapsing as a former Mossad operative has confirmed (see *The Trigger*).

### **Money, money, money, funny money ...**

Before I come to the Sabbatian connection with the last three US presidents I will lay out the crucial importance to Sabbatians of controlling banking and finance. Sabbatian Mayer Amschel Rothschild set out to dominate this arena in his family's quest for total global control. What is freedom? It is, in effect, choice. The more choices you have the freer you are and the fewer your choices the more you are enslaved. In the global structure created over centuries by Sabbatians the biggest decider and restrictor of choice is ... money. Across the world if you ask people what they would like to do with their lives and why they are not doing that they will reply 'I don't have the money'. This is the idea. A global elite of multi-billionaires are described as 'greedy' and that is true on one level; but control of money – who has it and who doesn't – is not primarily about greed. It's about control. Sabbatians have seized ever more control of finance and sucked the wealth of the world out of the hands of the population. We talk now, after all, about the 'One-percent' and even then the wealthiest are a lot fewer even than that. This has been made possible by a money scam so outrageous and so vast it could rightly be called the scam of scams founded on creating 'money' out of nothing and 'loaning' that with interest to the population. Money out of nothing is called 'credit'. Sabbatians have asserted control over governments and banking ever more completely through the centuries and secured financial laws that allow banks to lend hugely more than they have on deposit in a confidence trick known as fractional reserve lending. Imagine if you could lend money that doesn't exist and charge the recipient interest for doing so. You would end up in jail. Bankers by contrast end up in mansions, private jets, Malibu and Monaco.

Banks are only required to keep a fraction of their deposits and wealth in their vaults and they are allowed to lend 'money' they don't have called 'credit'. Go into a bank for a loan and if you succeed

the banker will not move any real wealth into your account. They will type into your account the amount of the agreed 'loan' – say £100,000. This is not wealth that really exists; it is non-existent, fresh-air, created-out-of-nothing 'credit' which has never, does not, and will never exist except in theory. Credit is backed by nothing except wind and only has buying power because people think that it has buying power and accept it in return for property, goods and services. I have described this situation as like those cartoon characters you see chasing each other and when they run over the edge of a cliff they keep running forward on fresh air until one of them looks down, realises what's happened, and they all crash into the ravine. The whole foundation of the Sabbatian financial system is to stop people looking down except for periodic moments when they want to crash the system (as in 2008 and 2020 ongoing) and reap the rewards from all the property, businesses and wealth their borrowers had signed over as 'collateral' in return for a 'loan' of fresh air. Most people think that money is somehow created by governments when it comes into existence from the start as a debt through banks 'lending' illusory money called credit. Yes, the very currency of exchange is a *debt* from day one issued as an interest-bearing loan. Why don't governments create money interest-free and lend it to their people interest-free? Governments are controlled by Sabbatians and the financial system is controlled by Sabbatians for whom interest-free money would be a nightmare come true. Sabbatians underpin their financial domination through their global network of central banks, including the privately-owned US Federal Reserve and Britain's Bank of England, and this is orchestrated by a privately-owned central bank coordination body called the Bank for International Settlements in Basle, Switzerland, created by the usual suspects including the Rockefellers and Rothschilds. Central bank chiefs don't answer to governments or the people. They answer to the Bank for International Settlements or, in other words, the Global Cult which is dominated today by Sabbatians.

## **Built-in disaster**



There are so many constituent scams within the overall banking scam. When you take out a loan of thin-air credit only the amount of that loan is theoretically brought into circulation to add to the amount in circulation; but you are paying back the principle plus interest. The additional interest is not created and this means that with every 'loan' there is a shortfall in the money in circulation between what is borrowed and what has to be paid back. There is never even close to enough money in circulation to repay all outstanding public and private debt including interest. Coldly weaved in the very fabric of the system is the certainty that some will lose their homes, businesses and possessions to the banking 'lender'. This is less obvious in times of 'boom' when the amount of money in circulation (and the debt) is expanding through more people wanting and getting loans. When a downturn comes and the money supply contracts it becomes painfully obvious that there is not enough money to service all debt and interest. This is less obvious in times of 'boom' when the amount of money in circulation (and the debt) is expanding through more people wanting and getting loans. When a downturn comes and the money supply contracts and it becomes painfully obvious – as in 2008 and currently – that there is not enough money to service all debt and interest. Sabbatian banksters have been leading the human population through a calculated series of booms (more debt incurred) and busts (when the debt can't be repaid and the banks get the debtor's tangible wealth in exchange for non-existent 'credit'). With each 'bust' Sabbatian bankers have absorbed more of the world's tangible wealth and we end up with the One-percent. Governments are in bankruptcy levels of debt to the same system and are therefore owned by a system they do not control. The Federal Reserve, 'America's central bank', is privately-owned and American presidents only nominally appoint its chairman or woman to maintain the illusion that it's an arm of government. It's not. The 'Fed' is a cartel of private banks which handed billions to its associates and friends after the crash of 2008 and has been Sabbatian-controlled since it was manipulated into being in 1913 through the covert trickery of Rothschild banking agents Jacob Schiff and Paul

Warburg, and the Sabbatian Rockefeller family. Somehow from a Jewish population of two-percent and globally 0.2 percent (Sabbatian interlopers remember are far smaller) ultra-Zionists headed the Federal Reserve for 31 years between 1987 and 2018 in the form of Alan Greenspan, Bernard Bernanke and Janet Yellen (now Biden's Treasury Secretary) with Yellen's deputy chairman a Israeli-American dual citizen and ultra-Zionist Stanley Fischer, a former governor of the Bank of Israel. Ultra-Zionist Fed chiefs spanned the presidencies of Ronald Reagan ('Republican'), Father George Bush ('Republican'), Bill Clinton ('Democrat'), Boy George Bush ('Republican') and Barack Obama ('Democrat'). We should really add the pre-Greenspan chairman, Paul Adolph Volcker, 'appointed' by Jimmy Carter ('Democrat') who ran the Fed between 1979 and 1987 during the Carter and Reagan administrations before Greenspan took over. Volcker was a long-time associate and business partner of the Rothschilds. No matter what the 'party' officially in power the United States economy was directed by the same force. Here are members of the Obama, Trump and Biden administrations and see if you can make out a common theme.

### **Barack Obama ('Democrat')**

Ultra-Zionists Robert Rubin, Larry Summers, and Timothy Geithner ran the US Treasury in the Clinton administration and two of them reappeared with Obama. Ultra-Zionist Fed chairman Alan Greenspan had manipulated the crash of 2008 through deregulation and jumped ship just before the disaster to make way for ultra-Zionist Bernard Bernanke to hand out trillions to Sabbatian 'too big to fail' banks and businesses, including the ubiquitous ultra-Zionist Goldman Sachs which has an ongoing revolving door operation between itself and major financial positions in government worldwide. Obama inherited the fallout of the crash when he took office in January, 2009, and fortunately he had the support of his ultra-Zionist White House Chief of Staff Rahm Emmanuel, son of a terrorist who helped to bomb Israel into being in 1948, and his ultra-Zionist senior adviser David Axelrod, chief strategist in Obama's two

successful presidential campaigns. Emmanuel, later mayor of Chicago and former senior fundraiser and strategist for Bill Clinton, is an example of the Sabbatian policy after Israel was established of migrating insider families to America so their children would be born American citizens. 'Obama' chose this financial team throughout his administration to respond to the Sabbatian-instigated crisis:

Timothy Geithner (ultra-Zionist) Treasury Secretary; Jacob J. Lew, Treasury Secretary; Larry Summers (ultra-Zionist), director of the White House National Economic Council; Paul Adolph Volcker (Rothschild business partner), chairman of the Economic Recovery Advisory Board; Peter Orszag (ultra-Zionist), director of the Office of Management and Budget overseeing all government spending; Penny Pritzker (ultra-Zionist), Commerce Secretary; Jared Bernstein (ultra-Zionist), chief economist and economic policy adviser to Vice President Joe Biden; Mary Schapiro (ultra-Zionist), chair of the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC); Gary Gensler (ultra-Zionist), chairman of the Commodity Futures Trading Commission (CFTC); Sheila Bair (ultra-Zionist), chair of the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (FDIC); Karen Mills (ultra-Zionist), head of the Small Business Administration (SBA); Kenneth Feinberg (ultra-Zionist), Special Master for Executive [bail-out] Compensation. Feinberg would be appointed to oversee compensation (with strings) to 9/11 victims and families in a campaign to stop them having their day in court to question the official story. At the same time ultra-Zionist Bernard Bernanke was chairman of the Federal Reserve and these are only some of the ultra-Zionists with allegiance to Sabbatian-controlled Israel in the Obama government. Obama's biggest corporate donor was ultra-Zionist Goldman Sachs which had employed many in his administration.

### **Donald Trump ('Republican')**

Trump claimed to be an outsider (he wasn't) who had come to 'drain the swamp'. He embarked on this goal by immediately appointing ultra-Zionist Steve Mnuchin, a Goldman Sachs employee for 17

years, as his Treasury Secretary. Others included Gary Cohn (ultra-Zionist), chief operating officer of Goldman Sachs, his first Director of the National Economic Council and chief economic adviser, who was later replaced by Larry Kudlow (ultra-Zionist). Trump's senior adviser throughout his four years in the White House was his sinister son-in-law Jared Kushner, a life-long friend of Israel Prime Minister Benjamin Netanyahu. Kushner is the son of a convicted crook who was pardoned by Trump in his last days in office. Other ultra-Zionists in the Trump administration included: Stephen Miller, Senior Policy Adviser; Avrahm Berkowitz, Deputy Adviser to Trump and his Senior Adviser Jared Kushner; Ivanka Trump, Adviser to the President, who converted to Judaism when she married Jared Kushner; David Friedman, Trump lawyer and Ambassador to Israel; Jason Greenblatt, Trump Organization executive vice president and chief legal officer, who was made Special Representative for International Negotiations and the Israeli-Palestinian Conflict; Rod Rosenstein, Deputy Attorney General; Elliot Abrams, Special Representative for Venezuela, then Iran; John Eisenberg, National Security Council Legal Adviser and Deputy Council to the President for National Security Affairs; Anne Neuberger, Deputy National Manager, National Security Agency; Ezra Cohen-Watnick, Acting Under Secretary of Defense for Intelligence; Elan Carr, Special Envoy to monitor and combat anti-Semitism; Len Khodorkovsky, Deputy Special Envoy to monitor and combat anti-Semitism; Reed Cordish, Assistant to the President, Intragovernmental and Technology Initiatives. Trump Vice President Mike Pence and Secretary of State Mike Pompeo, both Christian Zionists, were also vehement supporters of Israel and its goals and ambitions.

Donald 'free-speech believer' Trump pardoned a number of financial and violent criminals while ignoring calls to pardon Julian Assange and Edward Snowden whose crimes are revealing highly relevant information about government manipulation and corruption and the widespread illegal surveillance of the American people by US 'security' agencies. It's so good to know that Trump is on the side of freedom and justice and not mega-criminals with

allegiance to Sabbatian-controlled Israel. These included a pardon for Israeli spy Jonathan Pollard who was jailed for life in 1987 under the Espionage Act. Aviem Sella, the Mossad agent who recruited Pollard, was also pardoned by Trump while Assange sat in jail and Snowden remained in exile in Russia. Sella had 'fled' (was helped to escape) to Israel in 1987 and was never extradited despite being charged under the Espionage Act. A Trump White House statement said that Sella's clemency had been 'supported by Benjamin Netanyahu, Ron Dermer, Israel's US Ambassador, David Friedman, US Ambassador to Israel and Miriam Adelson, wife of leading Trump donor Sheldon Adelson who died shortly before. Other friends of Jared Kushner were pardoned along with Sholom Weiss who was believed to be serving the longest-ever white-collar prison sentence of more than 800 years in 2000. The sentence was commuted of Ponzi-schemer Eliyahu Weinstein who defrauded Jews and others out of \$200 million. I did mention that Assange and Snowden were ignored, right? Trump gave Sabbatians almost everything they asked for in military and political support, moving the US Embassy from Tel Aviv to Jerusalem with its critical symbolic and literal implications for Palestinian statehood, and the 'deal of the Century' designed by Jared Kushner and David Friedman which gave the Sabbatian Israeli government the green light to substantially expand its already widespread program of building illegal Jewish-only settlements in the occupied land of the West Bank. This made a two-state 'solution' impossible by seizing all the land of a potential Palestinian homeland and that had been the plan since 1948 and then 1967 when the Arab-controlled Gaza Strip, West Bank, Sinai Peninsula and Syrian Golan Heights were occupied by Israel. All the talks about talks and road maps and delays have been buying time until the West Bank was physically occupied by Israeli real estate. Trump would have to be a monumentally ill-informed idiot not to see that this was the plan he was helping to complete. The Trump administration was in so many ways the Kushner administration which means the Netanyahu administration which means the Sabbatian administration. I understand why many opposing Cult fascism in all its forms gravitated to Trump, but he

was a crucial part of the Sabbatian plan and I will deal with this in the next chapter.

## **Joe Biden ('Democrat')**

A barely cognitive Joe Biden took over the presidency in January, 2021, along with his fellow empty shell, Vice-President Kamala Harris, as the latest Sabbatian gofers to enter the White House. Names on the door may have changed and the 'party' – the force behind them remained the same as Zionists were appointed to a stream of pivotal areas relating to Sabbatian plans and policy. They included: Janet Yellen, Treasury Secretary, former head of the Federal Reserve, and still another ultra-Zionist running the US Treasury after Mnuchin (Trump), Lew and Geithner (Obama), and Summers and Rubin (Clinton); Anthony Blinken, Secretary of State; Wendy Sherman, Deputy Secretary of State (so that's 'Biden's' Sabbatian foreign policy sorted); Jeff Zients, White House coronavirus coordinator; Rochelle Walensky, head of the Centers for Disease Control; Rachel Levine, transgender deputy health secretary (that's 'Covid' hoax policy under control); Merrick Garland, Attorney General; Alejandro Mayorkas, Secretary of Homeland Security; Cass Sunstein, Homeland Security with responsibility for new immigration laws; Avril Haines, Director of National Intelligence; Anne Neuberger, National Security Agency cybersecurity director (note, cybersecurity); David Cohen, CIA Deputy Director; Ronald Klain, Biden's Chief of Staff (see Rahm Emanuel); Eric Lander, a 'leading geneticist', Office of Science and Technology Policy director (see Smart Grid, synthetic biology agenda); Jessica Rosenworcel, acting head of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) which controls Smart Grid technology policy and electromagnetic communication systems including 5G. How can it be that so many pivotal positions are held by two-percent of the American population and 0.2 percent of the world population administration after administration no matter who is the president and what is the party? It's a coincidence? Of course it's not and this is why Sabbatians have built their colossal global web of interlocking 'anti-

hate' hate groups to condemn anyone who asks these glaring questions as an 'anti-Semite'. The way that Jewish people horrifically abused in Sabbatian-backed Nazi Germany are exploited to this end is stomach-turning and disgusting beyond words.

## **Political fusion**

Sabbatian manipulation has reversed the roles of Republicans and Democrats and the same has happened in Britain with the Conservative and Labour Parties. Republicans and Conservatives were always labelled the 'right' and Democrats and Labour the 'left', but look at the policy positions now and the Democrat-Labour 'left' has moved further to the 'right' than Republicans and Conservatives under the banner of 'Woke', the Cult-created far-right tyranny. Where once the Democrat-Labour 'left' defended free speech and human rights they now seek to delete them and as I said earlier despite the 'Covid' fascism of the Jackboot Johnson Conservative government in the UK the Labour Party of leader Keir Starmer demanded even more extreme measures. The Labour Party has been very publicly absorbed by Sabbatians after a political and media onslaught against the previous leader, the weak and inept Jeremy Corbyn, over made-up allegations of 'anti-Semitism' both by him and his party. The plan was clear with this 'anti-Semite' propaganda and what was required in response was a swift and decisive 'fuck off' from Corbyn and a statement to expose the Anti-Semitism Industry (Sabbatian) attempt to silence Labour criticism of the Israeli government (Sabbatians) and purge the party of all dissent against the extremes of ultra-Zionism (Sabbatians). Instead Corbyn and his party fell to their knees and appeased the abusers which, by definition, is impossible. Appeasing one demand leads only to a new demand to be appeased until takeover is complete. Like I say – 'fuck off' would have been a much more effective policy and I have used it myself with great effect over the years when Sabbatians are on my case which is most of the time. I consider that fact a great compliment, by the way. The outcome of the Labour Party capitulation is that we now have a Sabbatian-controlled

Conservative Party 'opposed' by a Sabbatian-controlled Labour Party in a one-party Sabbatian state that hurtles towards the extremes of tyranny (the Sabbatian cult agenda). In America the situation is the same. Labour's Keir Starmer spends his days on his knees with his tongue out pointing to Tel Aviv, or I guess now Jerusalem, while Boris Johnson has an 'anti-Semitism czar' in the form of former Labour MP John Mann who keeps Starmer company on his prayer mat.

Sabbatian influence can be seen in Jewish members of the Labour Party who have been ejected for criticism of Israel including those from families that suffered in Nazi Germany. Sabbatians despise real Jewish people and target them even more harshly because it is so much more difficult to dub them 'anti-Semitic' although in their desperation they do try.



## CHAPTER THREE

### **The Pushbacker sting**

*Until you realize how easy it is for your mind to be manipulated, you remain the puppet of someone else's game*

Evita Ochel

I will use the presidencies of Trump and Biden to show how the manipulation of the one-party state plays out behind the illusion of political choice across the world. No two presidencies could – on the face of it – be more different and apparently at odds in terms of direction and policy.

A Renegade Mind sees beyond the obvious and focuses on outcomes and consequences and not image, words and waffle. The Cult embarked on a campaign to divide America between those who blindly support its agenda (the mentality known as 'Woke') and those who are pushing back on where the Cult and its Sabbatians want to go. This presents infinite possibilities for dividing and ruling the population by setting them at war with each other and allows a perceptual ring fence of demonisation to encircle the Pushbackers in a modern version of the Little Big Horn in 1876 when American cavalry led by Lieutenant Colonel George Custer were drawn into a trap, surrounded and killed by Native American tribes defending their land of thousands of years from being seized by the government. In this modern version the roles are reversed and it's those defending themselves from the Sabbatian government who are surrounded and the government that's seeking to destroy them. This trap was set years ago and to explain how we must return to 2016

and the emergence of Donald Trump as a candidate to be President of the United States. He set out to overcome the best part of 20 other candidates in the Republican Party before and during the primaries and was not considered by many in those early stages to have a prayer of living in the White House. The Republican Party was said to have great reservations about Trump and yet somehow he won the nomination. When you know how American politics works – politics in general – there is no way that Trump could have become the party's candidate unless the Sabbatian-controlled 'Neocons' that run the Republican Party wanted that to happen. We saw the proof in emails and documents made public by WikiLeaks that the Democratic Party hierarchy, or Democons, systematically undermined the campaign of Bernie Sanders to make sure that Sabbatian gofer Hillary Clinton won the nomination to be their presidential candidate. If the Democons could do that then the Neocons in the Republican Party could have derailed Trump in the same way. But they didn't and at that stage I began to conclude that Trump could well be the one chosen to be president. If that was the case the 'why' was pretty clear to see – the goal of dividing America between Cult agenda-supporting Wokers and Pushbackers who gravitated to Trump because he was telling them what they wanted to hear. His constituency of support had been increasingly ignored and voiceless for decades and profoundly through the eight years of Sabbatian puppet Barack Obama. Now here was someone speaking their language of pulling back from the incessant globalisation of political and economic power, the exporting of American jobs to China and elsewhere by 'American' (Sabbatian) corporations, the deletion of free speech, and the mass immigration policies that had further devastated job opportunities for the urban working class of all races and the once American heartlands of the Midwest.

### **Beware the forked tongue**

Those people collectively sighed with relief that at last a political leader was apparently on their side, but another trait of the Renegade Mind is that you look even harder at people telling you

what you want to hear than those who are telling you otherwise. Obviously as I said earlier people wish what they want to hear to be true and genuine and they are much more likely to believe that than someone saying what they don't want to hear and don't want to be true. Sales people are taught to be skilled in eliciting by calculated questioning what their customers want to hear and repeating that back to them as their own opinion to get their targets to like and trust them. Assets of the Cult are also sales people in the sense of selling perception. To read Cult manipulation you have to play the long and expanded game and not fall for the Vaudeville show of party politics. Both American parties are vehicles for the Cult and they exploit them in different ways depending on what the agenda requires at that moment. Trump and the Republicans were used to be the focus of dividing America and isolating Pushbackers to open the way for a Biden presidency to become the most extreme in American history by advancing the full-blown Woke (Cult) agenda with the aim of destroying and silencing Pushbackers now labelled Nazi Trump supporters and white supremacists.

Sabbatians wanted Trump in office for the reasons described by ultra-Zionist Saul Alinsky (1909-1972) who was promoting the Woke philosophy through 'community organising' long before anyone had heard of it. In those days it still went by its traditional name of Marxism. The reason for the manipulated Trump phenomenon was laid out in Alinsky's 1971 book, *Rules for Radicals*, which was his blueprint for overthrowing democratic and other regimes and replacing them with Sabbatian Marxism. Not surprisingly his to-do list was evident in the Sabbatian French and Russian 'Revolutions' and that in China which will become very relevant in the next chapter about the 'Covid' hoax. Among Alinsky's followers have been the deeply corrupt Barack Obama, House Speaker Nancy Pelosi and Hillary Clinton who described him as a 'hero'. All three are Sabbatian stooges with Pelosi personifying the arrogant corrupt idiocy that so widely fronts up for the Cult inner core. Predictably as a Sabbatian advocate of the 'light-bringer' Alinsky features Lucifer on the dedication page of his book as the original radical who gained

his own kingdom ('Earth' as we shall see). One of Alinsky's golden radical rules was to pick an individual and focus all attention, hatred and blame on them and not to target faceless bureaucracies and corporations. *Rules for Radicals* is really a Sabbatian handbook with its contents repeatedly employed all over the world for centuries and why wouldn't Sabbatians bring to power their designer-villain to be used as the individual on which all attention, hatred and blame was bestowed? This is what they did and the only question for me is how much Trump knew that and how much he was manipulated. A bit of both, I suspect. This was Alinsky's Trump technique from a man who died in 1972. The technique has spanned history:

Pick the target, freeze it, personalize it, polarize it. Don't try to attack abstract corporations or bureaucracies. Identify a responsible individual. Ignore attempts to shift or spread the blame.

From the moment Trump came to illusory power everything was about him. It wasn't about Republican policy or opinion, but all about Trump. Everything he did was presented in negative, derogatory and abusive terms by the Sabbatian-dominated media led by Cult operations such as CNN, MSNBC, *The New York Times* and the Jeff Bezos-owned *Washington Post* – 'Pick the target, freeze it, personalize it, polarize it.' Trump was turned into a demon to be vilified by those who hated him and a demi-god loved by those who worshipped him. This, in turn, had his supporters, too, presented as equally demonic in preparation for the punchline later down the line when Biden was about to take office. It was here's a Trump, there's a Trump, everywhere a Trump, Trump. Virtually every news story or happening was filtered through the lens of 'The Donald'. You loved him or hated him and which one you chose was said to define you as Satan's spawn or a paragon of virtue. Even supporting some Trump policies or statements and not others was enough for an assault on your character. No shades of grey were or are allowed. Everything is black and white (literally and figuratively). A Californian I knew had her head utterly scrambled by her hatred for Trump while telling people they should love each other. She was so totally consumed by

Trump Derangement Syndrome as it became to be known that this glaring contradiction would never have occurred to her. By definition anyone who criticised Trump or praised his opponents was a hero and this lady described Joe Biden as 'a kind, honest gentleman' when he's a provable liar, mega-crook and vicious piece of work to boot. Sabbatians had indeed divided America using Trump as the fall-guy and all along the clock was ticking on the consequences for his supporters.

### **In hock to his masters**

Trump gave Sabbatians via Israel almost everything they wanted in his four years. Ask and you shall receive was the dynamic between himself and Benjamin Netanyahu orchestrated by Trump's ultra-Zionist son-in-law Jared Kushner, his ultra-Zionist Ambassador to Israel, David Friedman, and ultra-Zionist 'Israel adviser', Jason Greenblatt. The last two were central to the running and protecting from collapse of his business empire, the Trump Organisation, and colossal business failures made him forever beholding to Sabbatian networks that bailed him out. By the start of the 1990s Trump owed \$4 billion to banks that he couldn't pay and almost \$1 billion of that was down to him personally and not his companies. This mega-disaster was the result of building two new casinos in Atlantic City and buying the enormous Taj Mahal operation which led to crippling debt payments. He had borrowed fantastic sums from 72 banks with major Sabbatian connections and although the scale of debt should have had him living in a tent alongside the highway they never foreclosed. A plan was devised to lift Trump from the mire by BT Securities Corporation and Rothschild Inc. and the case was handled by Wilber Ross who had worked for the Rothschilds for 27 years. Ross would be named US Commerce Secretary after Trump's election. Another crucial figure in saving Trump was ultra-Zionist 'investor' Carl Icahn who bought the Taj Mahal casino. Icahn was made special economic adviser on financial regulation in the Trump administration. He didn't stay long but still managed to find time to make a tidy sum of a reported \$31.3 million when he sold his

holdings affected by the price of steel three days before Trump imposed a 235 percent tariff on steel imports. What amazing bits of luck these people have. Trump and Sabbatian operatives have long had a close association and his mentor and legal adviser from the early 1970s until 1986 was the dark and genetically corrupt ultra-Zionist Roy Cohn who was chief counsel to Senator Joseph McCarthy's 'communist' witch-hunt in the 1950s. *Esquire* magazine published an article about Cohn with the headline 'Don't mess with Roy Cohn'. He was described as the most feared lawyer in New York and 'a ruthless master of dirty tricks ... [with] ... more than one Mafia Don on speed dial'. Cohn's influence, contacts, support and protection made Trump a front man for Sabbatians in New York with their connections to one of Cohn's many criminal employers, the 'Russian' Sabbatian Mafia. Israel-centric media mogul Rupert Murdoch was introduced to Trump by Cohn and they started a long friendship. Cohn died in 1986 weeks after being disbarred for unethical conduct by the Appellate Division of the New York State Supreme Court. The wheels of justice do indeed run slow given the length of Cohn's crooked career.

## **QAnon-sense**

We are asked to believe that Donald Trump with his fundamental connections to Sabbatian networks and operatives has been leading the fight to stop the Sabbatian agenda for the fascistic control of America and the world. Sure he has. A man entrapped during his years in the White House by Sabbatian operatives and whose biggest financial donor was casino billionaire Sheldon Adelson who was Sabbatian to his DNA?? Oh, do come on. Trump has been used to divide America and isolate Pushbackers on the Cult agenda under the heading of 'Trump supporters', 'insurrectionists' and 'white supremacists'. The US Intelligence/Mossad Psyop or psychological operation known as QAnon emerged during the Trump years as a central pillar in the Sabbatian campaign to lead Pushbackers into the trap set by those that wished to destroy them. I knew from the start that QAnon was a scam because I had seen the same scenario many

times before over 30 years under different names and I had written about one in particular in the books. 'Not again' was my reaction when QAnon came to the fore. The same script is pulled out every few years and a new name added to the letterhead. The story always takes the same form: 'Insiders' or 'the good guys' in the government-intelligence-military 'Deep State' apparatus were going to instigate mass arrests of the 'bad guys' which would include the Rockefellers, Rothschilds, Barack Obama, Hillary Clinton, George Soros, etc., etc. Dates are given for when the 'good guys' are going to move in, but the dates pass without incident and new dates are given which pass without incident. The central message to Pushbackers in each case is that they don't have to do anything because there is 'a plan' and it is all going to be sorted by the 'good guys' on the inside. 'Trust the plan' was a QAnon mantra when the only plan was to misdirect Pushbackers into putting their trust in a Psyop they believed to be real. Beware, beware, those who tell you what you want to hear and always check it out. Right up to Biden's inauguration QAnon was still claiming that 'the Storm' was coming and Trump would stay on as president when Biden and his cronies were arrested and jailed. It was never going to happen and of course it didn't, but what did happen as a result provided that punchline to the Sabbatian Trump/QAnon Psyop.

On January 6th, 2021, a very big crowd of Trump supporters gathered in the National Mall in Washington DC down from the Capitol Building to protest at what they believed to be widespread corruption and vote fraud that stopped Trump being re-elected for a second term as president in November, 2020. I say as someone that does not support Trump or Biden that the evidence is clear that major vote-fixing went on to favour Biden, a man with cognitive problems so advanced he can often hardly string a sentence together without reading the words written for him on the Teleprompter. Glaring ballot discrepancies included serious questions about electronic voting machines that make vote rigging a comparative cinch and hundreds of thousands of paper votes that suddenly appeared during already advanced vote counts and virtually all of

them for Biden. Early Trump leads in crucial swing states suddenly began to close and disappear. The pandemic hoax was used as the excuse to issue almost limitless numbers of mail-in ballots with no checks to establish that the recipients were still alive or lived at that address. They were sent to streams of people who had not even asked for them. Private organisations were employed to gather these ballots and who knows what they did with them before they turned up at the counts. The American election system has been manipulated over decades to become a sick joke with more holes than a Swiss cheese for the express purpose of dictating the results. Then there was the criminal manipulation of information by Sabbatian tech giants like Facebook, Twitter and Google-owned YouTube which deleted pro-Trump, anti-Biden accounts and posts while everything in support of Biden was left alone. Sabbatians wanted Biden to win because after the dividing of America it was time for full-on Woke and every aspect of the Cult agenda to be unleashed.

### **Hunter gatherer**

Extreme Silicon Valley bias included blocking information by the *New York Post* exposing a Biden scandal that should have ended his bid for president in the final weeks of the campaign. Hunter Biden, his monumentally corrupt son, is reported to have sent a laptop to be repaired at a local store and failed to return for it. Time passed until the laptop became the property of the store for non-payment of the bill. When the owner saw what was on the hard drive he gave a copy to the FBI who did nothing even though it confirmed widespread corruption in which the Joe Biden family were using his political position, especially when he was vice president to Obama, to make multiple millions in countries around the world and most notably Ukraine and China. Hunter Biden's one-time business partner Tony Bobulinski went public when the story broke in the *New York Post* to confirm the corruption he saw and that Joe Biden not only knew what was going on he also profited from the spoils. Millions were handed over by a Chinese company with close



connections – like all major businesses in China – to the Chinese communist party of President Xi Jinping. Joe Biden even boasted at a meeting of the Cult's World Economic Forum that as vice president he had ordered the government of Ukraine to fire a prosecutor. What he didn't mention was that the same man just happened to be investigating an energy company which was part of Hunter Biden's corrupt portfolio. The company was paying him big bucks for no other reason than the influence his father had. Overnight Biden's presidential campaign should have been over given that he had lied publicly about not knowing what his son was doing. Instead almost the entire Sabbatian-owned mainstream media and Sabbatian-owned Silicon Valley suppressed circulation of the story. This alone went a mighty way to rigging the election of 2020. Cult assets like Mark Zuckerberg at Facebook also spent hundreds of millions to be used in support of Biden and vote 'administration'.

The Cult had used Trump as the focus to divide America and was now desperate to bring in moronic, pliable, corrupt Biden to complete the double-whammy. No way were they going to let little things like the will of the people thwart their plan. Silicon Valley widely censored claims that the election was rigged because it *was* rigged. For the same reason anyone claiming it was rigged was denounced as a 'white supremacist' including the pathetically few Republican politicians willing to say so. Right across the media where the claim was mentioned it was described as a 'false claim' even though these excuses for 'journalists' would have done no research into the subject whatsoever. Trump won seven million more votes than any sitting president had ever achieved while somehow a cognitively-challenged soon to be 78-year-old who was hidden away from the public for most of the campaign managed to win more votes than any presidential candidate in history. It makes no sense. You only had to see election rallies for both candidates to witness the enthusiasm for Trump and the apathy for Biden. Tens of thousands would attend Trump events while Biden was speaking in empty car parks with often only television crews attending and framing their shots to hide the fact that no one was there. It was pathetic to see

footage come to light of Biden standing at a podium making speeches only to TV crews and party fixers while reading the words written for him on massive Teleprompter screens. So, yes, those protestors on January 6th had a point about election rigging, but some were about to walk into a trap laid for them in Washington by the Cult Deep State and its QAnon Psyop. This was the Capitol Hill riot ludicrously dubbed an 'insurrection'.

## **The spider and the fly**

Renegade Minds know there are not two 'sides' in politics, only one side, the Cult, working through all 'sides'. It's a stage show, a puppet show, to direct the perceptions of the population into focusing on diversions like parties and candidates while missing the puppeteers with their hands holding all the strings. The Capitol Hill 'insurrection' brings us back to the Little Big Horn. Having created two distinct opposing groupings – Woke and Pushbackers – the trap was about to be sprung. Pushbackers were to be encircled and isolated by associating them all in the public mind with Trump and then labelling Trump as some sort of Confederate leader. I knew immediately that the Capitol riot was a set-up because of two things. One was how easy the rioters got into the building with virtually no credible resistance and secondly I could see – as with the 'Covid' hoax in the West at the start of 2020 – how the Cult could exploit the situation to move its agenda forward with great speed. My experience of Cult techniques and activities over more than 30 years has showed me that while they do exploit situations they haven't themselves created this never happens with events of fundamental agenda significance. Every time major events giving cultists the excuse to rapidly advance their plan you find they are manipulated into being for the specific reason of providing that excuse – Problem-Reaction-Solution. Only a tiny minority of the huge crowd of Washington protestors sought to gain entry to the Capitol by smashing windows and breaching doors. That didn't matter. The whole crowd and all Pushbackers, even if they did not support Trump, were going to be lumped together as dangerous

insurrectionists and conspiracy theorists. The latter term came into widespread use through a CIA memo in the 1960s aimed at discrediting those questioning the nonsensical official story of the Kennedy assassination and it subsequently became widely employed by the media. It's still being used by inept 'journalists' with no idea of its origin to discredit anyone questioning anything that authority claims to be true. When you are perpetrating a conspiracy you need to discredit the very word itself even though the dictionary definition of conspiracy is merely 'the activity of secretly planning with other people to do something bad or illegal' and 'a general agreement to keep silent about a subject for the purpose of keeping it secret'. On that basis there are conspiracies almost wherever you look. For obvious reasons the Cult and its lapdog media have to claim there are no conspiracies even though the word appears in state laws as with conspiracy to defraud, to murder, and to corrupt public morals.

Agent provocateurs are widely used by the Cult Deep State to manipulate genuine people into acting in ways that suit the desired outcome. By genuine in this case I mean protestors genuinely supporting Trump and claims that the election was stolen. In among them, however, were agents of the state wearing the garb of Trump supporters and QAnon to pump-prime the Capital riot which some genuine Trump supporters naively fell for. I described the situation as 'Come into my parlour said the spider to the fly'. Leaflets appeared through the Woke paramilitary arm Antifa, the anti-fascist fascists, calling on supporters to turn up in Washington looking like Trump supporters even though they hated him. Some of those arrested for breaching the Capitol Building were sourced to Antifa and its stable mate Black Lives Matter. Both organisations are funded by Cult billionaires and corporations. One man charged for the riot was according to his lawyer a former FBI agent who had held top secret security clearance for 40 years. Attorney Thomas Plofchan said of his client, 66-year-old Thomas Edward Caldwell:

He has held a Top Secret Security Clearance since 1979 and has undergone multiple Special Background Investigations in support of his clearances. After retiring from the Navy, he

worked as a section chief for the Federal Bureau of Investigation from 2009-2010 as a GS-12 [mid-level employee].

He also formed and operated a consulting firm performing work, often classified, for U.S government customers including the US. Drug Enforcement Agency, Department of Housing and Urban Development, the US Coast Guard, and the US Army Personnel Command.

A judge later released Caldwell pending trial in the absence of evidence about a conspiracy or that he tried to force his way into the building. *The New York Post* reported a 'law enforcement source' as saying that 'at least two known Antifa members were spotted' on camera among Trump supporters during the riot while one of the rioters arrested was John Earle Sullivan, a seriously extreme Black Lives Matter Trump-hater from Utah who was previously arrested and charged in July, 2020, over a BLM-Antifa riot in which drivers were threatened and one was shot. Sullivan is the founder of Utah-based Insurgence USA which is an affiliate of the Cult-created-and-funded Black Lives Matter movement. Footage appeared and was then deleted by Twitter of Trump supporters calling out Antifa infiltrators and a group was filmed changing into pro-Trump clothing before the riot. Security at the building was *pathetic* – as planned. Colonel Leroy Fletcher Prouty, a man with long experience in covert operations working with the US security apparatus, once described the tell-tale sign to identify who is involved in an assassination. He said:

No one has to direct an assassination – it happens. The active role is played secretly by permitting it to happen. This is the greatest single clue. Who has the power to call off or reduce the usual security precautions?

This principle applies to many other situations and certainly to the Capitol riot of January 6th, 2021.

## **The sting**

With such a big and potentially angry crowd known to be gathering near the Capitol the security apparatus would have had a major police detail to defend the building with National Guard troops on

standby given the strength of feeling among people arriving from all over America encouraged by the QAnon Psyop and statements by Donald Trump. Instead Capitol Police 'security' was flimsy, weak, and easily breached. The same number of officers was deployed as on a regular day and that is a blatant red flag. They were not staffed or equipped for a possible riot that had been an obvious possibility in the circumstances. No protective and effective fencing worth the name was put in place and there were no contingency plans. The whole thing was basically a case of standing aside and waving people in. Once inside police mostly backed off apart from one Capitol police officer who ridiculously shot dead unarmed Air Force veteran protestor Ashli Babbitt without a warning as she climbed through a broken window. The 'investigation' refused to name or charge the officer after what must surely be considered a murder in the circumstances. They just lifted a carpet and swept. The story was endlessly repeated about five people dying in the 'armed insurrection' when there was no report of rioters using weapons. Apart from Babbitt the other four died from a heart attack, strokes and apparently a drug overdose. Capitol police officer Brian Sicknick was reported to have died after being bludgeoned with a fire extinguisher when he was alive after the riot was over and died later of what the Washington Medical Examiner's Office said was a stroke. Sicknick had no external injuries. The lies were delivered like rapid fire. There was a narrative to build with incessant repetition of the lie until the lie became the accepted 'everybody knows that' truth. The 'Big Lie' technique of Nazi Propaganda Minister Joseph Goebbels is constantly used by the Cult which was behind the Nazis and is today behind the 'Covid' and 'climate change' hoaxes. Goebbels said:

If you tell a lie big enough and keep repeating it, people will eventually come to believe it. The lie can be maintained only for such time as the State can shield the people from the political, economic and/or military consequences of the lie. It thus becomes vitally important for the State to use all of its powers to repress dissent, for the truth is the mortal enemy of the lie, and thus by extension, the truth is the greatest enemy of the State.

Most protestors had a free run of the Capitol Building. This allowed pictures to be taken of rioters in iconic parts of the building including the Senate chamber which could be used as propaganda images against all Pushbackers. One Congresswoman described the scene as 'the worst kind of non-security anybody could ever imagine'. Well, the first part was true, but someone obviously did imagine it and made sure it happened. Some photographs most widely circulated featured people wearing QAnon symbols and now the Psyop would be used to dub all QAnon followers with the ubiquitous fit-all label of 'white supremacist' and 'insurrectionists'. When a Muslim extremist called Noah Green drove his car at two police officers at the Capitol Building killing one in April, 2021, there was no such political and media hysteria. They were just disappointed he wasn't white.

## **The witch-hunt**

Government prosecutor Michael Sherwin, an aggressive, dark-eyed, professional Rottweiler led the 'investigation' and to call it over the top would be to understate reality a thousand fold. Hundreds were tracked down and arrested for the crime of having the wrong political views and people were jailed who had done nothing more than walk in the building, committed no violence or damage to property, took a few pictures and left. They were labelled a 'threat to the Republic' while Biden sat in the White House signing executive orders written for him that were dismantling 'the Republic'. Even when judges ruled that a mother and son should not be in jail the government kept them there. Some of those arrested have been badly beaten by prison guards in Washington and lawyers for one man said he suffered a fractured skull and was made blind in one eye. Meanwhile a woman is shot dead for no reason by a Capitol Police officer and we are not allowed to know who he is never mind what has happened to him although that will be *nothing*. The Cult's QAnon/Trump sting to identify and isolate Pushbackers and then target them on the road to crushing and deleting them was a resounding success. You would have thought the Russians had

invaded the building at gunpoint and lined up senators for a firing squad to see the political and media reaction. Congresswoman Alexandria Ocasio-Cortez is a child in a woman's body, a terrible-tvos, me, me, me, Woker narcissist of such proportions that words have no meaning. She said she thought she was going to die when 'insurrectionists' banged on her office door. It turned out she wasn't even in the Capitol Building when the riot was happening and the 'banging' was a Capitol Police officer. She referred to herself as a 'survivor' which is an insult to all those true survivors of violent and sexual abuse while she lives her pampered and privileged life talking drivel for a living. Her Woke colleague and fellow mega-narcissist Rashida Tlaib broke down describing the devastating effect on her, too, of *not being* in the building when the rioters were there. Ocasio-Cortez and Tlaib are members of a fully-Woke group of Congresswomen known as 'The Squad' along with Ilhan Omar and Ayanna Pressley. The Squad from what I can see can be identified by its vehement anti-white racism, anti-white men agenda, and, as always in these cases, the absence of brain cells on active duty.

The usual suspects were on the riot case immediately in the form of Democrat ultra-Zionist senators and operatives Chuck Schumer and Adam Schiff demanding that Trump be impeached for 'his part in the insurrection'. The same pair of prats had led the failed impeachment of Trump over the invented 'Russia collusion' nonsense which claimed Russia had helped Trump win the 2016 election. I didn't realise that Tel Aviv had been relocated just outside Moscow. I must find an up-to-date map. The Russia hoax was a Sabbatian operation to keep Trump occupied and impotent and to stop any rapport with Russia which the Cult wants to retain as a perceptual enemy to be pulled out at will. Puppet Biden began attacking Russia when he came to office as the Cult seeks more upheaval, division and war across the world. A two-year stage show 'Russia collusion inquiry' headed by the not-very-bright former 9/11 FBI chief Robert Mueller, with support from 19 lawyers, 40 FBI agents plus intelligence analysts, forensic accountants and other

staff, devoured tens of millions of dollars and found no evidence of Russia collusion which a ten-year-old could have told them on day one. Now the same moronic Schumer and Schiff wanted a second impeachment of Trump over the Capitol 'insurrection' (riot) which the arrested development of Schumer called another 'Pearl Harbor' while others compared it with 9/11 in which 3,000 died and, in the case of CNN, with the Rwandan genocide in the 1990s in which an estimated 500,000 to 600,000 were murdered, between 250,000 and 500,000 women were raped, and populations of whole towns were hacked to death with machetes. To make those comparisons purely for Cult political reasons is beyond insulting to those that suffered and lost their lives and confirms yet again the callous inhumanity that we are dealing with. Schumer is a monumental idiot and so is Schiff, but they serve the Cult agenda and do whatever they're told so they get looked after. Talking of idiots – another inane man who spanned the Russia and Capitol impeachment attempts was Senator Eric Swalwell who had the nerve to accuse Trump of collusion with the Russians while sleeping with a Chinese spy called Christine Fang or 'Fang Fang' which is straight out of a Bond film no doubt starring Klaus Schwab as the bloke living on a secret island and controlling laser weapons positioned in space and pointing at world capitals. Fang Fang plays the part of Bond's infiltrator girlfriend which I'm sure she would enjoy rather more than sharing a bed with the brainless Swalwell, lying back and thinking of China. The FBI eventually warned Swalwell about Fang Fang which gave her time to escape back to the Chinese dictatorship. How very thoughtful of them. The second Trump impeachment also failed and hardly surprising when an impeachment is supposed to remove a sitting president and by the time it happened Trump was no longer president. These people are running your country America, well, officially anyway. Terrifying isn't it?

### **Outcomes tell the story - always**

The outcome of all this – and it's the *outcome* on which Renegade Minds focus, not the words – was that a vicious, hysterical and



obviously pre-planned assault was launched on Pushbackers to censor, silence and discredit them and even targeted their right to earn a living. They have since been condemned as 'domestic terrorists' that need to be treated like Al-Qaeda and Islamic State. 'Domestic terrorists' is a label the Cult has been trying to make stick since the period of the Oklahoma bombing in 1995 which was blamed on 'far-right domestic terrorists'. If you read *The Trigger* you will see that the bombing was clearly a Problem-Reaction-Solution carried out by the Deep State during a Bill Clinton administration so corrupt that no dictionary definition of the term would even nearly suffice. Nearly 30, 000 troops were deployed from all over America to the empty streets of Washington for Biden's inauguration. Ten thousand of them stayed on with the pretext of protecting the capital from insurrectionists when it was more psychological programming to normalise the use of the military in domestic law enforcement in support of the Cult plan for a police-military state. Biden's fascist administration began a purge of 'wrong-thinkers' in the military which means anyone that is not on board with Woke. The Capitol Building was surrounded by a fence with razor wire and the Land of the Free was further symbolically and literally dismantled. The circle was completed with the installation of Biden and the exploitation of the QAnon Psyop.

America had never been so divided since the civil war of the 19th century, Pushbackers were isolated and dubbed terrorists and now, as was always going to happen, the Cult immediately set about deleting what little was left of freedom and transforming American society through a swish of the hand of the most controlled 'president' in American history leading (officially at least) the most extreme regime since the country was declared an independent state on July 4th, 1776. Biden issued undebated, dictatorial executive orders almost by the hour in his opening days in office across the whole spectrum of the Cult wish-list including diluting controls on the border with Mexico allowing thousands of migrants to illegally enter the United States to transform the demographics of America and import an election-changing number of perceived Democrat

voters. Then there were Biden deportation amnesties for the already illegally resident (estimated to be as high as 20 or even 30 million). A bill before Congress awarded American citizenship to anyone who could prove they had worked in agriculture for just 180 days in the previous two years as 'Big Ag' secured its slave labour long-term. There were the plans to add new states to the union such as Puerto Rico and making Washington DC a state. They are all parts of a plan to ensure that the Cult-owned Woke Democrats would be permanently in power.

### **Border – what border?**

I have exposed in detail in other books how mass immigration into the United States and Europe is the work of Cult networks fuelled by the tens of billions spent to this and other ends by George Soros and his global Open Society (open borders) Foundations. The impact can be seen in America alone where the population has increased by *100 million* in little more than 30 years mostly through immigration. I wrote in *The Answer* that the plan was to have so many people crossing the southern border that the numbers become unstoppable and we are now there under Cult-owned Biden. El Salvador in Central America puts the scale of what is happening into context. A third of the population now lives in the United States, much of it illegally, and many more are on the way. The methodology is to crush Central and South American countries economically and spread violence through machete-wielding psychopathic gangs like MS-13 based in El Salvador and now operating in many American cities. Biden-imposed lax security at the southern border means that it is all but open. He said before his 'election' that he wanted to see a surge towards the border if he became president and that was the green light for people to do just that after election day to create the human disaster that followed for both America and the migrants. When that surge came the imbecilic Alexandria Ocasio-Cortez said it wasn't a 'surge' because they are 'children, not insurgents' and the term 'surge' (used by Biden) was a claim of 'white supremacists'.

This disingenuous lady may one day enter the realm of the most basic intelligence, but it won't be any time soon.

Sabbatians and the Cult are in the process of destroying America by importing violent people and gangs in among the genuine to terrorise American cities and by overwhelming services that cannot cope with the sheer volume of new arrivals. Something similar is happening in Europe as Western society in general is targeted for demographic and cultural transformation and upheaval. The plan demands violence and crime to create an environment of intimidation, fear and division and Soros has been funding the election of district attorneys across America who then stop prosecuting many crimes, reduce sentences for violent crimes and free as many violent criminals as they can. Sabbatians are creating the chaos from which order – their order – can respond in a classic Problem-Reaction-Solution. A Freemasonic motto says 'Ordo Ab Chao' (Order out of Chaos) and this is why the Cult is constantly creating chaos to impose a new 'order'. Here you have the reason the Cult is constantly creating chaos. The 'Covid' hoax can be seen with those entering the United States by plane being forced to take a 'Covid' test while migrants flooding through southern border processing facilities do not. Nothing is put in the way of mass migration and if that means ignoring the government's own 'Covid' rules then so be it. They know it's all bullshit anyway. Any pushback on this is denounced as 'racist' by Wokers and Sabbatian fronts like the ultra-Zionist Anti-Defamation League headed by the appalling Jonathan Greenblatt which at the same time argues that Israel should not give citizenship and voting rights to more Palestinian Arabs or the 'Jewish population' (in truth the Sabbatian network) will lose control of the country.

## **Society-changing numbers**

Biden's masters have declared that countries like El Salvador are so dangerous that their people must be allowed into the United States for humanitarian reasons when there are fewer murders in large parts of many Central American countries than in US cities like

Baltimore. That is not to say Central America cannot be a dangerous place and Cult-controlled American governments have been making it so since way back, along with the dismantling of economies, in a long-term plan to drive people north into the United States. Parts of Central America are very dangerous, but in other areas the story is being greatly exaggerated to justify relaxing immigration criteria. Migrants are being offered free healthcare and education in the United States as another incentive to head for the border and there is no requirement to be financially independent before you can enter to prevent the resources of America being drained. You can't blame migrants for seeking what they believe will be a better life, but they are being played by the Cult for dark and nefarious ends. The numbers since Biden took office are huge. In February, 2021, more than 100,000 people were known to have tried to enter the US illegally through the southern border (it was 34,000 in the same month in 2020) and in March it was 170,000 – a 418 percent increase on March, 2020. These numbers are only known people, not the ones who get in unseen. The true figure for migrants illegally crossing the border in a single month was estimated by one congressman at 250,000 and that number will only rise under Biden's current policy. Gangs of murdering drug-running thugs that control the Mexican side of the border demand money – thousands of dollars – to let migrants cross the Rio Grande into America. At the same time gun battles are breaking out on the border several times a week between rival Mexican drug gangs (which now operate globally) who are equipped with sophisticated military-grade weapons, grenades and armoured vehicles. While the Capitol Building was being 'protected' from a non-existent 'threat' by thousands of troops, and others were still deployed at the time in the Cult Neocon war in Afghanistan, the southern border of America was left to its fate. This is not incompetence, it is cold calculation.

By March, 2021, there were 17,000 unaccompanied children held at border facilities and many of them are ensnared by people traffickers for paedophile rings and raped on their journey north to America. This is not conjecture – this is fact. Many of those designated

children are in reality teenage boys or older. Meanwhile Wokers posture their self-purity for encouraging poor and tragic people to come to America and face this nightmare both on the journey and at the border with the disgusting figure of House Speaker Nancy Pelosi giving disingenuous speeches about caring for migrants. The woman's evil. Wokers condemned Trump for having children in cages at the border (so did Obama, *Shhhh*), but now they are sleeping on the floor without access to a shower with one border facility 729 percent over capacity. The Biden insanity even proposed flying migrants from the southern border to the northern border with Canada for 'processing'. The whole shambles is being overseen by ultra-Zionist Secretary of Homeland Security, the moronic liar Alejandro Mayorkas, who banned news cameras at border facilities to stop Americans seeing what was happening. Mayorkas said there was not a ban on news crews; it was just that they were not allowed to film. Alongside him at Homeland Security is another ultra-Zionist Cass Sunstein appointed by Biden to oversee new immigration laws. Sunstein despises conspiracy researchers to the point where he suggests they should be banned or *taxed* for having such views. The man is not bonkers or anything. He's perfectly well-adjusted, but adjusted to what is the question. Criticise what is happening and you are a 'white supremacist' when earlier non-white immigrants also oppose the numbers which effect their lives and opportunities. Black people in poor areas are particularly damaged by uncontrolled immigration and the increased competition for work opportunities with those who will work for less. They are also losing voting power as Hispanics become more dominant in former black areas. It's a downward spiral for them while the billionaires behind the policy drone on about how much they care about black people and 'racism'. None of this is about compassion for migrants or black people – that's just wind and air. Migrants are instead being mercilessly exploited to transform America while the countries they leave are losing their future and the same is true in Europe. Mass immigration may now be the work of Woke Democrats, but it can be traced back to the 1986 Immigration Reform and Control Act (it

wasn't) signed into law by Republican hero President Ronald Reagan which gave amnesty to millions living in the United States illegally and other incentives for people to head for the southern border. Here we have the one-party state at work again.

## **Save me syndrome**

Almost every aspect of what I have been exposing as the Cult agenda was on display in even the first days of 'Biden' with silencing of Pushbackers at the forefront of everything. A Renegade Mind will view the Trump years and QAnon in a very different light to their supporters and advocates as the dots are connected. The QAnon/Trump Psyop has given the Cult all it was looking for. We may not know how much, or little, that Trump realised he was being used, but that's a side issue. This pincer movement produced the desired outcome of dividing America and having Pushbackers isolated. To turn this around we have to look at new routes to empowerment which do not include handing our power to other people and groups through what I will call the 'Save Me Syndrome' – 'I want someone else to do it so that I don't have to'. We have seen this at work throughout human history and the QAnon/Trump Psyop is only the latest incarnation alongside all the others. Religion is an obvious expression of this when people look to a 'god' or priest to save them or tell them how to be saved and then there are 'save me' politicians like Trump. Politics is a diversion and not a 'saviour'. It is a means to block positive change, not make it possible.

Save Me Syndrome always comes with the same repeating theme of handing your power to whom or what you believe will save you while your real 'saviour' stares back from the mirror every morning. Renegade Minds are constantly vigilant in this regard and always asking the question 'What can I do?' rather than 'What can someone else do for me?' Gandhi was right when he said: 'You must be the change you want to see in the world.' We are indeed the people we have been waiting for. We are presented with a constant raft of reasons to concede that power to others and forget where the real power is. Humanity has the numbers and the Cult does not. It has to

use diversion and division to target the unstoppable power that comes from unity. Religions, governments, politicians, corporations, media, QAnon, are all different manifestations of this power-diversion and dilution. Refusing to give your power to governments and instead handing it to Trump and QAnon is not to take a new direction, but merely to recycle the old one with new names on the posters. I will explore this phenomenon as we proceed and how to break the cycles and recycles that got us here through the mists of repeating perception and so repeating history.

For now we shall turn to the most potent example in the entire human story of the consequences that follow when you give your power away. I am talking, of course, of the 'Covid' hoax.

## CHAPTER FOUR

### **'Covid': Calculated catastrophe**

*Facts are threatening to those invested in fraud*  
DaShanne Stokes

**W**e can easily unravel the real reason for the 'Covid pandemic' hoax by employing the Renegade Mind methodology that I have outlined this far. We'll start by comparing the long-planned Cult outcome with the 'Covid pandemic' outcome. Know the outcome and you'll see the journey.

I have highlighted the plan for the Hunger Games Society which has been in my books for so many years with the very few controlling the very many through ongoing dependency. To create this dependency it is essential to destroy independent livelihoods, businesses and employment to make the population reliant on the state (the Cult) for even the basics of life through a guaranteed pittance income. While independence of income remained these Cult ambitions would be thwarted. With this knowledge it was easy to see where the 'pandemic' hoax was going once talk of 'lockdowns' began and the closing of all but perceived 'essential' businesses to 'save' us from an alleged 'deadly virus'. Cult corporations like Amazon and Walmart were naturally considered 'essential' while mom and pop shops and stores had their doors closed by fascist decree. As a result with every new lockdown and new regulation more small and medium, even large businesses not owned by the Cult, went to the wall while Cult giants and their frontmen and women grew financially fatter by the second. Mom and pop were



denied an income and the right to earn a living and the wealth of people like Jeff Bezos (Amazon), Mark Zuckerberg (Facebook) and Sergei Brin and Larry Page (Google/Alphabet) have reached record levels. The Cult was increasing its own power through further dramatic concentrations of wealth while the competition was being destroyed and brought into a state of dependency. Lockdowns have been instigated to secure that very end and were never anything to do with health. My brother Paul spent 45 years building up a bus repair business, but lockdowns meant buses were running at a fraction of normal levels for months on end. Similar stories can be told in their hundreds of millions worldwide. Efforts of a lifetime coldly destroyed by Cult multi-billionaires and their lackeys in government and law enforcement who continued to earn their living from the taxation of the people while denying the right of the same people to earn theirs. How different it would have been if those making and enforcing these decisions had to face the same financial hardships of those they affected, but they never do.

## **Gates of Hell**

Behind it all in the full knowledge of what he is doing and why is the psychopathic figure of Cult operative Bill Gates. His puppet Tedros at the World Health Organization declared 'Covid' a pandemic in March, 2020. The WHO had changed the definition of a 'pandemic' in 2009 just a month before declaring the 'swine flu pandemic' which would not have been so under the previous definition. The same applies to 'Covid'. The definition had included... 'an infection by an infectious agent, occurring simultaneously in different countries, with a significant mortality rate relative to the proportion of the population infected'. The new definition removed the need for 'significant mortality'. The 'pandemic' has been fraudulent even down to the definition, but Gates demanded economy-destroying lockdowns, school closures, social distancing, mandatory masks, a 'vaccination' for every man, woman and child on the planet and severe consequences and restrictions for those that refused. Who gave him this power? The

Cult did which he serves like a little boy in short trousers doing what his daddy tells him. He and his psychopathic missus even smiled when they said that much worse was to come (what they knew was planned to come). Gates responded in the matter-of-fact way of all psychopaths to a question about the effect on the world economy of what he was doing:

Well, it won't go to zero but it will shrink. Global GDP is probably going to take the biggest hit ever [Gates was smiling as he said this] ... in my lifetime this will be the greatest economic hit. But you don't have a choice. People act as if you have a choice. People don't feel like going to the stadium when they might get infected ... People are deeply affected by seeing these stats, by knowing they could be part of the transmission chain, old people, their parents and grandparents, could be affected by this, and so you don't get to say ignore what is going on here.

There will be the ability to open up, particularly in rich countries, if things are done well over the next few months, but for the world at large normalcy only returns when we have largely vaccinated the entire population.

The man has no compassion or empathy. How could he when he's a psychopath like all Cult players? My own view is that even beyond that he is very seriously mentally ill. Look in his eyes and you can see this along with his crazy flailing arms. You don't do what he has done to the world population since the start of 2020 unless you are mentally ill and at the most extreme end of psychopathic. You especially don't do it when to you know, as we shall see, that cases and deaths from 'Covid' are fakery and a product of monumental figure massaging. 'These stats' that Gates referred to are based on a 'test' that's not testing for the 'virus' as he has known all along. He made his fortune with big Cult support as an infamously ruthless software salesman and now buys global control of 'health' (death) policy without the population he affects having any say. It's a breathtaking outrage. Gates talked about people being deeply affected by fear of 'Covid' when that was because of *him* and his global network lying to them minute-by-minute supported by a lying media that he seriously influences and funds to the tune of hundreds of millions. He's handed big sums to media operations including the BBC, NBC, Al Jazeera, Univision, *PBS NewsHour*,

*ProPublica, National Journal, The Guardian, The Financial Times, The Atlantic, Texas Tribune, USA Today publisher Gannett, Washington Monthly, Le Monde, Center for Investigative Reporting, Pulitzer Center on Crisis Reporting, National Press Foundation, International Center for Journalists, Solutions Journalism Network, the Poynter Institute for Media Studies, and many more. Gates is everywhere in the 'Covid' hoax and the man must go to prison – or a mental facility – for the rest of his life and his money distributed to those he has taken such enormous psychopathic pleasure in crushing.*

## **The Muscle**

The Hunger Games global structure demands a police-military state – a fusion of the two into one force – which viciously imposes the will of the Cult on the population and protects the Cult from public rebellion. In that regard, too, the 'Covid' hoax just keeps on giving. Often unlawful, ridiculous and contradictory 'Covid' rules and regulations have been policed across the world by moronic automatons and psychopaths made faceless by face-nappy masks and acting like the Nazi SS and fascist blackshirts and brownshirts of Hitler and Mussolini. The smallest departure from the rules decreed by the psychos in government and their clueless gofers were jumped upon by the face-nappy fascists. Brutality against public protestors soon became commonplace even on girls, women and old people as the brave men with the batons – the Face-Nappies as I call them – broke up peaceful protests and handed out fines like confetti to people who couldn't earn a living let alone pay hundreds of pounds for what was once an accepted human right. Robot Face-Nappies of Nottingham police in the English East Midlands fined one group £11,000 for attending a child's birthday party. For decades I charted the transformation of law enforcement as genuine, decent officers were replaced with psychopaths and the brain dead who would happily and brutally do whatever their masters told them. Now they were let loose on the public and I would emphasise the point that none of this just happened. The step-by-step change in the dynamic between police and public was orchestrated from the shadows by

those who knew where this was all going and the same with the perceptual reframing of those in all levels of authority and official administration through 'training courses' by organisations such as Common Purpose which was created in the late 1980s and given a massive boost in Blair era Britain until it became a global phenomenon. Supposed public 'servants' began to view the population as the enemy and the same was true of the police. This was the start of the explosion of behaviour manipulation organisations and networks preparing for the all-war on the human psyche unleashed with the dawn of 2020. I will go into more detail about this later in the book because it is a core part of what is happening.

Police desecrated beauty spots to deter people gathering and arrested women for walking in the countryside alone 'too far' from their homes. We had arrogant, clueless sergeants in the Isle of Wight police where I live posting on Facebook what they insisted the population must do or else. A schoolmaster sergeant called Radford looked young enough for me to ask if his mother knew he was out, but he was posting what he *expected* people to do while a Sergeant Wilkinson boasted about fining lads for meeting in a McDonald's car park where they went to get a lockdown takeaway. Wilkinson added that he had even cancelled their order. What a pair of prats these people are and yet they have increasingly become the norm among Jackboot Johnson's Yellowshirts once known as the British police. This was the theme all over the world with police savagery common during lockdown protests in the United States, the Netherlands, and the fascist state of Victoria in Australia under its tyrannical and again moronic premier Daniel Andrews. Amazing how tyrannical and moronic tend to work as a team and the same combination could be seen across America as arrogant, narcissistic Woke governors and mayors such as Gavin Newsom (California), Andrew Cuomo (New York), Gretchen Whitmer (Michigan), Lori Lightfoot (Chicago) and Eric Garcetti (Los Angeles) did their Nazi and Stalin impressions with the full support of the compliant brutality of their enforcers in uniform as they arrested small business owners defying

fascist shutdown orders and took them to jail in ankle shackles and handcuffs. This happened to bistro owner Marlena Pavlos-Hackney in Gretchen Whitmer's fascist state of Michigan when police arrived to enforce an order by a state-owned judge for 'putting the community at risk' at a time when other states like Texas were dropping restrictions and migrants were pouring across the southern border without any 'Covid' questions at all. I'm sure there are many officers appalled by what they are ordered to do, but not nearly enough of them. If they were truly appalled they would not do it. As the months passed every opportunity was taken to have the military involved to make their presence on the streets ever more familiar and 'normal' for the longer-term goal of police-military fusion.

Another crucial element to the Hunger Games enforcement network has been encouraging the public to report neighbours and others for 'breaking the lockdown rules'. The group faced with £11,000 in fines at the child's birthday party would have been dobbed-in by a neighbour with a brain the size of a pea. The technique was most famously employed by the Stasi secret police in communist East Germany who had public informants placed throughout the population. A police chief in the UK says his force doesn't need to carry out 'Covid' patrols when they are flooded with so many calls from the public reporting other people for visiting the beach. Dorset police chief James Vaughan said people were so enthusiastic about snitching on their fellow humans they were now operating as an auxiliary arm of the police: 'We are still getting around 400 reports a week from the public, so we will respond to reports ... We won't need to be doing hotspot patrols because people are very quick to pick the phone up and tell us.' Vaughan didn't say that this is a pillar of all tyrannies of whatever complexion and the means to hugely extend the reach of enforcement while spreading distrust among the people and making them wary of doing anything that might get them reported. Those narcissistic Isle of Wight sergeants Radford and Wilkinson never fail to add a link to their Facebook posts where the public can inform on their fellow slaves.

Neither would be self-aware enough to realise they were imitating the Stasi which they might well never have heard of. Government psychologists that I will expose later laid out a policy to turn communities against each other in the same way.

### **A coincidence? Yep, and I can knit fog**

I knew from the start of the alleged pandemic that this was a Cult operation. It presented limitless potential to rapidly advance the Cult agenda and exploit manipulated fear to demand that every man, woman and child on the planet was 'vaccinated' in a process never used on humans before which infuses self-replicating *synthetic* material into human cells. Remember the plan to transform the human body from a biological to a synthetic biological state. I'll deal with the 'vaccine' (that's not actually a vaccine) when I focus on the genetic agenda. Enough to say here that mass global 'vaccination' justified by this 'new virus' set alarms ringing after 30 years of tracking these people and their methods. The 'Covid' hoax officially beginning in China was also a big red flag for reasons I will be explaining. The agenda potential was so enormous that I could dismiss any idea that the 'virus' appeared naturally. Major happenings with major agenda implications never occur without Cult involvement in making them happen. My questions were twofold in early 2020 as the media began its campaign to induce global fear and hysteria: Was this alleged infectious agent released on purpose by the Cult or did it even exist at all? I then did what I always do in these situations. I sat, observed and waited to see where the evidence and information would take me. By March and early April synchronicity was strongly – and ever more so since then – pointing me in the direction of *there is no 'virus'*. I went public on that with derision even from swathes of the alternative media that voiced a scenario that the Chinese government released the 'virus' in league with Deep State elements in the United States from a top-level bio-lab in Wuhan where the 'virus' is said to have first appeared. I looked at that possibility, but I didn't buy it for several reasons. Deaths from the 'virus' did not in any way match what they

would have been with a 'deadly bioweapon' and it is much more effective if you sell the *illusion* of an infectious agent rather than having a real one unless you can control through injection who has it and who doesn't. Otherwise you lose control of events. A made-up 'virus' gives you a blank sheet of paper on which you can make it do whatever you like and have any symptoms or mutant 'variants' you choose to add while a real infectious agent would limit you to what it actually does. A phantom disease allows you to have endless ludicrous 'studies' on the 'Covid' dollar to widen the perceived impact by inventing ever more 'at risk' groups including one study which said those who walk slowly may be almost four times more likely to die from the 'virus'. People are in psychiatric wards for less.

A real 'deadly bioweapon' can take out people in the hierarchy that are not part of the Cult, but essential to its operation. Obviously they don't want that. Releasing a real disease means you immediately lose control of it. Releasing an illusory one means you don't. Again it's vital that people are extra careful when dealing with what they want to hear. A bioweapon unleashed from a Chinese laboratory in collusion with the American Deep State may fit a conspiracy narrative, but is it true? Would it not be far more effective to use the excuse of a 'virus' to justify the real bioweapon – the 'vaccine'? That way your disease agent does not have to be transmitted and arrives directly through a syringe. I saw a French virologist Luc Montagnier quoted in the alternative media as saying he had discovered that the alleged 'new' severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus , or SARS-CoV-2, was made artificially and included elements of the human immunodeficiency 'virus' (HIV) and a parasite that causes malaria. SARS-CoV-2 is alleged to trigger an alleged illness called Covid-19. I remembered Montagnier's name from my research years before into claims that an HIV 'retrovirus' causes AIDs – claims that were demolished by Berkeley virologist Peter Duesberg who showed that no one had ever proved that HIV causes acquired immunodeficiency syndrome or AIDS. Claims that become accepted as fact, publicly and medically, with no proof whatsoever are an ever-recurring story that profoundly applies to

'Covid'. Nevertheless, despite the lack of proof, Montagnier's team at the Pasteur Institute in Paris had a long dispute with American researcher Robert Gallo over which of them discovered and isolated the HIV 'virus' and with *no evidence* found it to cause AIDS. You will see later that there is also no evidence that any 'virus' causes any disease or that there is even such a thing as a 'virus' in the way it is said to exist. The claim to have 'isolated' the HIV 'virus' will be presented in its real context as we come to the shocking story – and it is a story – of SARS-CoV-2 and so will Montagnier's assertion that he identified the full SARS-CoV-2 genome.

### **Hoax in the making**

We can pick up the 'Covid' story in 2010 and the publication by the Rockefeller Foundation of a document called 'Scenarios for the Future of Technology and International Development'. The inner circle of the Rockefeller family has been serving the Cult since John D. Rockefeller (1839-1937) made his fortune with Standard Oil. It is less well known that the same Rockefeller – the Bill Gates of his day – was responsible for establishing what is now referred to as 'Big Pharma', the global network of pharmaceutical companies that make outrageous profits dispensing scalpel and drug 'medicine' and are obsessed with pumping vaccines in ever-increasing number into as many human arms and backsides as possible. John D. Rockefeller was the driving force behind the creation of the 'education' system in the United States and elsewhere specifically designed to program the perceptions of generations thereafter. The Rockefeller family donated exceptionally valuable land in New York for the United Nations building and were central in establishing the World Health Organization in 1948 as an agency of the UN which was created from the start as a Trojan horse and stalking horse for world government. Now enter Bill Gates. His family and the Rockefellers have long been extremely close and I have seen genealogy which claims that if you go back far enough the two families fuse into the same bloodline. Gates has said that the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation was inspired by the Rockefeller Foundation and why not



when both are serving the same Cult? Major tax-exempt foundations are overwhelmingly criminal enterprises in which Cult assets fund the Cult agenda in the guise of 'philanthropy' while avoiding tax in the process. Cult operatives can become mega-rich in their role of front men and women for the psychopaths at the inner core and they, too, have to be psychopaths to knowingly serve such evil. Part of the deal is that a big percentage of the wealth gleaned from representing the Cult has to be spent advancing the ambitions of the Cult and hence you have the Rockefeller Foundation, Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation (and *so* many more) and people like George Soros with his global Open Society Foundations spending their billions in pursuit of global Cult control. Gates is a global public face of the Cult with his interventions in world affairs including Big Tech influence; a central role in the 'Covid' and 'vaccine' scam; promotion of the climate change shakedown; manipulation of education; geoengineering of the skies; and his food-control agenda as the biggest owner of farmland in America, his GMO promotion and through other means. As one writer said: 'Gates monopolizes or wields disproportionate influence over the tech industry, global health and vaccines, agriculture and food policy (including biopiracy and fake food), weather modification and other climate technologies, surveillance, education and media.' The almost limitless wealth secured through Microsoft and other not-allowed-to-fail ventures (including vaccines) has been ploughed into a long, long list of Cult projects designed to enslave the entire human race. Gates and the Rockefellers have been working as one unit with the Rockefeller-established World Health Organization leading global 'Covid' policy controlled by Gates through his mouth-piece Tedros. Gates became the WHO's biggest funder when Trump announced that the American government would cease its donations, but Biden immediately said he would restore the money when he took office in January, 2021. The Gates Foundation (the Cult) owns through limitless funding the world health system and the major players across the globe in the 'Covid' hoax.

Okay, with that background we return to that Rockefeller Foundation document of 2010 headed 'Scenarios for the Future of Technology and International Development' and its 'imaginary' epidemic of a virulent and deadly influenza strain which infected 20 percent of the global population and killed eight million in seven months. The Rockefeller scenario was that the epidemic destroyed economies, closed shops, offices and other businesses and led to governments imposing fierce rules and restrictions that included mandatory wearing of face masks and body-temperature checks to enter communal spaces like railway stations and supermarkets. The document predicted that even after the height of the Rockefeller-envisaged epidemic the authoritarian rule would continue to deal with further pandemics, transnational terrorism, environmental crises and rising poverty. Now you may think that the Rockefellers are our modern-day seers or alternatively, and rather more likely, that they well knew what was planned a few years further on. Fascism had to be imposed, you see, to 'protect citizens from risk and exposure'. The Rockefeller scenario document said:

During the pandemic, national leaders around the world flexed their authority and imposed airtight rules and restrictions, from the mandatory wearing of face masks to body-temperature checks at the entries to communal spaces like train stations and supermarkets. Even after the pandemic faded, this more authoritarian control and oversight of citizens and their activities stuck and even intensified. In order to protect themselves from the spread of increasingly global problems – from pandemics and transnational terrorism to environmental crises and rising poverty – leaders around the world took a firmer grip on power.

At first, the notion of a more controlled world gained wide acceptance and approval. Citizens willingly gave up some of their sovereignty – and their privacy – to more paternalistic states in exchange for greater safety and stability. Citizens were more tolerant, and even eager, for top-down direction and oversight, and national leaders had more latitude to impose order in the ways they saw fit.

In developed countries, this heightened oversight took many forms: biometric IDs for all citizens, for example, and tighter regulation of key industries whose stability was deemed vital to national interests. In many developed countries, enforced cooperation with a suite of new regulations and agreements slowly but steadily restored both order and, importantly, economic growth.

There we have the prophetic Rockefellers in 2010 and three years later came their paper for the Global Health Summit in Beijing, China, when government representatives, the private sector, international organisations and groups met to discuss the next 100 years of 'global health'. The Rockefeller Foundation-funded paper was called 'Dreaming the Future of Health for the Next 100 Years and more prophecy ensued as it described a dystopian future: 'The abundance of data, digitally tracking and linking people may mean the 'death of privacy' and may replace physical interaction with transient, virtual connection, generating isolation and raising questions of how values are shaped in virtual networks.' Next in the 'Covid' hoax preparation sequence came a 'table top' simulation in 2018 for another 'imaginary' pandemic of a disease called Clade X which was said to kill 900 million people. The exercise was organised by the Gates-funded Johns Hopkins University's Center for Health Security in the United States and this is the very same university that has been compiling the disgustingly and systematically erroneous global figures for 'Covid' cases and deaths. Similar Johns Hopkins health crisis scenarios have included the Dark Winter exercise in 2001 and Atlantic Storm in 2005.

## **Nostradamus 201**

For sheer predictive genius look no further prophecy-watchers than the Bill Gates-funded Event 201 held only six weeks before the 'coronavirus pandemic' is supposed to have broken out in China and Event 201 was based on a scenario of a global 'coronavirus pandemic'. Melinda Gates, the great man's missus, told the BBC that he had 'prepared for years' for a coronavirus pandemic which told us what we already knew. Nostradamugates had predicted in a TED talk in 2015 that a pandemic was coming that would kill a lot of people and demolish the world economy. My god, the man is a machine – possibly even literally. Now here he was only weeks before the real thing funding just such a simulated scenario and involving his friends and associates at Johns Hopkins, the World Economic Forum Cult-front of Klaus Schwab, the United Nations,

Johnson & Johnson, major banks, and officials from China and the Centers for Disease Control in the United States. What synchronicity – Johns Hopkins would go on to compile the fraudulent ‘Covid’ figures, the World Economic Forum and Schwab would push the ‘Great Reset’ in response to ‘Covid’, the Centers for Disease Control would be at the forefront of ‘Covid’ policy in the United States, Johnson & Johnson would produce a ‘Covid vaccine’, and everything would officially start just weeks later in China. Spooky, eh? They were even accurate in creating a simulation of a ‘virus’ pandemic because the ‘real thing’ would also be a simulation. Event 201 was not an exercise preparing for something that might happen; it was a rehearsal for what those in control knew was *going* to happen and very shortly. Hours of this simulation were posted on the Internet and the various themes and responses mirrored what would soon be imposed to transform human society. News stories were inserted and what they said would be commonplace a few weeks later with still more prophecy perfection. Much discussion focused on the need to deal with misinformation and the ‘anti-vax movement’ which is exactly what happened when the ‘virus’ arrived – was said to have arrived – in the West.

Cult-owned social media banned criticism and exposure of the official ‘virus’ narrative and when I said there *was* no ‘virus’ in early April, 2020, I was banned by one platform after another including YouTube, Facebook and later Twitter. The mainstream broadcast media in Britain was in effect banned from interviewing me by the Tony-Blair-created government broadcasting censor Ofcom headed by career government bureaucrat Melanie Dawes who was appointed just as the ‘virus’ hoax was about to play out in January, 2020. At the same time the Ickonic media platform was using Vimeo, another ultra-Zionist-owned operation, while our own player was being created and they deleted in an instant hundreds of videos, documentaries, series and shows to confirm their unbelievable vindictiveness. We had copies, of course, and they had to be restored one by one when our player was ready. These people have no class. Sabbatian Facebook promised free advertisements for the Gates-

controlled World Health Organization narrative while deleting ‘false claims and conspiracy theories’ to stop ‘misinformation’ about the alleged coronavirus. All these responses could be seen just a short while earlier in the scenarios of Event 201. Extreme censorship was absolutely crucial for the Cult because the official story was so ridiculous and unsupportable by the evidence that it could never survive open debate and the free-flow of information and opinion. If you can’t win a debate then don’t have one is the Cult’s approach throughout history. Facebook’s little boy front man – front boy – Mark Zuckerberg equated ‘credible and accurate information’ with official sources and exposing their lies with ‘misinformation’.

### **Silencing those that can see**

The censorship dynamic of Event 201 is now the norm with an army of narrative-supporting ‘fact-checker’ organisations whose entire reason for being is to tell the public that official narratives are true and those exposing them are lying. One of the most appalling of these ‘fact-checkers’ is called NewsGuard founded by ultra-Zionist Americans Gordon Crovitz and Steven Brill. Crovitz is a former publisher of *The Wall Street Journal*, former Executive Vice President of Dow Jones, a member of the Council on Foreign Relations (CFR), and on the board of the American Association of Rhodes Scholars. The CFR and Rhodes Scholarships, named after Rothschild agent Cecil Rhodes who plundered the gold and diamonds of South Africa for his masters and the Cult, have featured widely in my books. NewsGuard don’t seem to like me for some reason – I really can’t think why – and they have done all they can to have me censored and discredited which is, to quote an old British politician, like being savaged by a dead sheep. They are, however, like all in the censorship network, very well connected and funded by organisations themselves funded by, or connected to, Bill Gates. As you would expect with anything associated with Gates NewsGuard has an offshoot called HealthGuard which ‘fights online health care hoaxes’. How very kind. Somehow the NewsGuard European Managing Director Anna-Sophie Harling, a remarkably young-

looking woman with no broadcasting experience and little hands-on work in journalism, has somehow secured a position on the 'Content Board' of UK government broadcast censor Ofcom. An executive of an organisation seeking to discredit dissidents of the official narratives is making decisions for the government broadcast 'regulator' about content?? Another appalling 'fact-checker' is Full Fact funded by George Soros and global censors Google and Facebook.

It's amazing how many activists in the 'fact-checking', 'anti-hate', arena turn up in government-related positions – people like UK Labour Party activist Imran Ahmed who heads the Center for Countering Digital Hate founded by people like Morgan McSweeney, now chief of staff to the Labour Party's hapless and useless 'leader' Keir Starmer. Digital Hate – which is what it really is – uses the American spelling of Center to betray its connection to a transatlantic network of similar organisations which in 2020 shapeshifted from attacking people for 'hate' to attacking them for questioning the 'Covid' hoax and the dangers of the 'Covid vaccine'. It's just a coincidence, you understand. This is one of Imran Ahmed's hysterical statements: 'I would go beyond calling anti-vaxxers conspiracy theorists to say they are an extremist group that pose a national security risk.' No one could ever accuse this prat of understatement and he's including in that those parents who are now against vaccines after their children were damaged for life or killed by them. He's such a nice man. Ahmed does the rounds of the Woke media getting soft-ball questions from spineless 'journalists' who never ask what right he has to campaign to destroy the freedom of speech of others while he demands it for himself. There also seems to be an overrepresentation in Ofcom of people connected to the narrative-worshipping BBC. This incredible global network of narrative-support was super-vital when the 'Covid' hoax was played in the light of the mega-whopper lies that have to be defended from the spotlight cast by the most basic intelligence.

## **Setting the scene**

The Cult plays the long game and proceeds step-by-step ensuring that everything is in place before major cards are played and they don't come any bigger than the 'Covid' hoax. The psychopaths can't handle events where the outcome isn't certain and as little as possible – preferably nothing – is left to chance. Politicians, government and medical officials who would follow direction were brought to illusory power in advance by the Cult web whether on the national stage or others like state governors and mayors of America. For decades the dynamic between officialdom, law enforcement and the public was changed from one of service to one of control and dictatorship. Behaviour manipulation networks established within government were waiting to impose the coming 'Covid' rules and regulations specifically designed to subdue and rewire the psyche of the people in the guise of protecting health. These included in the UK the Behavioural Insights Team part-owned by the British government Cabinet Office; the Scientific Pandemic Insights Group on Behaviours (SPI-B); and a whole web of intelligence and military groups seeking to direct the conversation on social media and control the narrative. Among them are the cyberwarfare (on the people) 77th Brigade of the British military which is also coordinated through the Cabinet Office as civilian and military leadership continues to combine in what they call the Fusion Doctrine. The 77th Brigade is a British equivalent of the infamous Israeli (Sabbatian) military cyberwarfare and Internet manipulation operation Unit 8200 which I expose at length in *The Trigger*. Also carefully in place were the medical and science advisers to government – many on the payroll past or present of Bill Gates – and a whole alternative structure of unelected government stood by to take control when elected parliaments were effectively closed down once the 'Covid' card was slammed on the table. The structure I have described here and so much more was installed in every major country through the Cult networks. The top-down control hierarchy looks like this: The Cult – Cult-owned Gates – the World Health Organization and Tedros – Gates-funded or controlled chief medical officers and science 'advisers' (dictators) in each country –

political 'leaders' – law enforcement – The People. Through this simple global communication and enforcement structure the policy of the Cult could be imposed on virtually the entire human population so long as they acquiesced to the fascism. With everything in place it was time for the button to be pressed in late 2019/early 2020.

These were the prime goals the Cult had to secure for its will to prevail:

1) Locking down economies, closing all but designated 'essential' businesses (Cult-owned corporations were 'essential'), and putting the population under house arrest was an imperative to destroy independent income and employment and ensure dependency on the Cult-controlled state in the Hunger Games Society. Lockdowns had to be established as the global blueprint from the start to respond to the 'virus' and followed by pretty much the entire world.

2) The global population had to be terrified into believing in a deadly 'virus' that didn't actually exist so they would unquestioningly obey authority in the belief that authority must know how best to protect them and their families. Software salesman Gates would suddenly morph into the world's health expert and be promoted as such by the Cult-owned media.

3) A method of testing that wasn't testing for the 'virus', but was only claimed to be, had to be in place to provide the illusion of 'cases' and subsequent 'deaths' that had a very different cause to the 'Covid-19' that would be scribbled on the death certificate.

4) Because there was no 'virus' and the great majority testing positive with a test not testing for the 'virus' would have no symptoms of anything the lie had to be sold that people without symptoms (without the 'virus') could still pass it on to others. This was crucial to justify for the first time quarantining – house arresting – healthy people. Without this the economy-destroying lockdown of *everybody* could not have been credibly sold.

5) The 'saviour' had to be seen as a vaccine which beyond evil drug companies were working like angels of mercy to develop as quickly as possible, with all corners cut, to save the day. The public must absolutely not know that the 'vaccine' had nothing to do with a 'virus' or that the contents were ready and waiting with a very different motive long before the 'Covid' card was even lifted from the pack.

I said in March, 2020, that the 'vaccine' would have been created way ahead of the 'Covid' hoax which justified its use and the following December an article in the New York *Intelligencer* magazine said the Moderna 'vaccine' had been 'designed' by



January, 2020. This was 'before China had even acknowledged that the disease could be transmitted from human to human, more than a week before the first confirmed coronavirus case in the United States'. The article said that by the time the first American death was announced a month later 'the vaccine had already been manufactured and shipped to the National Institutes of Health for the beginning of its Phase I clinical trial'. The 'vaccine' was actually 'designed' long before that although even with this timescale you would expect the article to ask how on earth it could have been done that quickly. Instead it asked why the 'vaccine' had not been rolled out then and not months later. Journalism in the mainstream is truly dead. I am going to detail in the next chapter why the 'virus' has never existed and how a hoax on that scale was possible, but first the foundation on which the Big Lie of 'Covid' was built.

### **The test that doesn't test**

Fraudulent 'testing' is the bottom line of the whole 'Covid' hoax and was the means by which a 'virus' that did not exist *appeared* to exist. They could only achieve this magic trick by using a test not testing for the 'virus'. To use a test that *was* testing for the 'virus' would mean that every test would come back negative given there was no 'virus'. They chose to exploit something called the RT-PCR test invented by American biochemist Kary Mullis in the 1980s who said publicly that his PCR test ... *cannot detect infectious disease*. Yes, the 'test' used worldwide to detect infectious 'Covid' to produce all the illusory 'cases' and 'deaths' compiled by Johns Hopkins and others *cannot detect infectious disease*. This fact came from the mouth of the man who invented PCR and was awarded the Nobel Prize in Chemistry in 1993 for doing so. Sadly, and incredibly conveniently for the Cult, Mullis died in August, 2019, at the age of 74 just before his test would be fraudulently used to unleash fascism on the world. He was said to have died from pneumonia which was an irony in itself. A few months later he would have had 'Covid-19' on his death certificate. I say the timing of his death was convenient because had he lived Mullis, a brilliant, honest and decent man, would have been

vociferously speaking out against the use of his test to detect 'Covid' when it was never designed, or able, to do that. I know that to be true given that Mullis made the same point when his test was used to 'detect' – not detect – HIV. He had been seriously critical of the Gallo/Montagnier claim to have isolated the HIV 'virus' and shown it to cause AIDS for which Mullis said there was no evidence. AIDS is actually not a disease but a series of diseases from which people die all the time. When they die from those *same diseases* after a positive 'test' for HIV then AIDS goes on their death certificate. I think I've heard that before somewhere. Countries instigated a policy with 'Covid' that anyone who tested positive with a test not testing for the 'virus' and died of any other cause within 28 days and even longer 'Covid-19' had to go on the death certificate. Cases have come from the test that can't test for infectious disease and the deaths are those who have died of *anything* after testing positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'. I'll have much more later about the death certificate scandal.

Mullis was deeply dismissive of the now US 'Covid' star Anthony Fauci who he said was a liar who didn't know anything about anything – 'and I would say that to his face – nothing.' He said of Fauci: 'The man thinks he can take a blood sample, put it in an electron microscope and if it's got a virus in there you'll know it – he doesn't understand electron microscopy and he doesn't understand medicine and shouldn't be in a position like he's in.' That position, terrifyingly, has made him the decider of 'Covid' fascism policy on behalf of the Cult in his role as director since 1984 of the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID) while his record of being wrong is laughable; but being wrong, so long as it's the *right kind* of wrong, is why the Cult loves him. He'll say anything the Cult tells him to say. Fauci was made Chief Medical Adviser to the President immediately Biden took office. Biden was installed in the White House by Cult manipulation and one of his first decisions was to elevate Fauci to a position of even more control. This is a coincidence? Yes, and I identify as a flamenco dancer called Lola. How does such an incompetent criminal like Fauci remain in that

pivotal position in American health since *the 1980s*? When you serve the Cult it looks after you until you are surplus to requirements. Kary Mullis said prophetically of Fauci and his like: 'Those guys have an agenda and it's not an agenda we would like them to have ... they make their own rules, they change them when they want to, and Tony Fauci does not mind going on television in front of the people who pay his salary and lie directly into the camera.' Fauci has done that almost daily since the 'Covid' hoax began. Lying is in Fauci's DNA. To make the situation crystal clear about the PCR test this is a direct quote from its inventor Kary Mullis:

It [the PCR test] doesn't tell you that you're sick and doesn't tell you that the thing you ended up with was really going to hurt you ...'

Ask yourself why governments and medical systems the world over have been using this very test to decide who is 'infected' with the SARS-CoV-2 'virus' and the alleged disease it allegedly causes, 'Covid-19'. The answer to that question will tell you what has been going on. By the way, here's a little show-stopper – the 'new' SARS-CoV-2 'virus' was 'identified' as such right from the start using ... *the PCR test not testing for the 'virus'*. If you are new to this and find that shocking then stick around. I have hardly started yet. Even worse, other 'tests', like the 'Lateral Flow Device' (LFD), are considered so useless that they have to be *confirmed* by the PCR test! Leaked emails written by Ben Dyson, adviser to UK 'Health' Secretary Matt Hancock, said they were 'dangerously unreliable'. Dyson, executive director of strategy at the Department of Health, wrote: 'As of today, someone who gets a positive LFD result in (say) London has at best a 25 per cent chance of it being a true positive, but if it is a self-reported test potentially as low as 10 per cent (on an optimistic assumption about specificity) or as low as 2 per cent (on a more pessimistic assumption).' These are the 'tests' that schoolchildren and the public are being urged to have twice a week or more and have to isolate if they get a positive. Each fake positive goes in the statistics as a 'case' no matter how ludicrously inaccurate and the

'cases' drive lockdown, masks and the pressure to 'vaccinate'. The government said in response to the email leak that the 'tests' were accurate which confirmed yet again what shocking bloody liars they are. The real false positive rate is *100 percent* as we'll see. In another 'you couldn't make it up' the UK government agreed to pay £2.8 billion to California's Innova Medical Group to supply the irrelevant lateral flow tests. The company's primary test-making centre is in China. Innova Medical Group, established in March, 2020, is owned by Pasaca Capital Inc, chaired by Chinese-American millionaire Charles Huang who was born in Wuhan.

### **How it works – and how it doesn't**

The RT-PCR test, known by its full title of Polymerase chain reaction, is used across the world to make millions, even billions, of copies of a DNA/RNA genetic information sample. The process is called 'amplification' and means that a tiny sample of genetic material is amplified to bring out the detailed content. I stress that it is not testing for an infectious disease. It is simply amplifying a sample of genetic material. In the words of Kary Mullis: 'PCR is ... just a process that's used to make a whole lot of something out of something.' To emphasise the point companies that make the PCR tests circulated around the world to 'test' for 'Covid' warn on the box that it can't be used to detect 'Covid' or infectious disease and is for research purposes only. It's okay, rest for a minute and you'll be fine. This is the test that produces the 'cases' and 'deaths' that have been used to destroy human society. All those global and national medical and scientific 'experts' demanding this destruction to 'save us' *KNOW* that the test is not testing for the 'virus' and the cases and deaths they claim to be real are an almost unimaginable fraud. Every one of them and so many others including politicians and psychopaths like Gates and Tedros must be brought before Nuremburg-type trials and jailed for the rest of their lives. The more the genetic sample is amplified by PCR the more elements of that material become sensitive to the test and by that I don't mean sensitive for a 'virus' but for elements of the genetic material which

is *naturally* in the body or relates to remnants of old conditions of various kinds lying dormant and causing no disease. Once the amplification of the PCR reaches a certain level *everyone* will test positive. So much of the material has been made sensitive to the test that everyone will have some part of it in their body. Even lying criminals like Fauci have said that once PCR amplifications pass 35 cycles everything will be a false positive that cannot be trusted for the reasons I have described. I say, like many proper doctors and scientists, that 100 percent of the 'positives' are false, but let's just go with Fauci for a moment.

He says that any amplification over 35 cycles will produce false positives and yet the US Centers for Disease Control (CDC) and Food and Drug Administration (FDA) have recommended up to 40 *cycles* and the National Health Service (NHS) in Britain admitted in an internal document for staff that it was using 45 *cycles* of amplification. A long list of other countries has been doing the same and at least one 'testing' laboratory has been using 50 *cycles*. Have you ever heard a doctor, medical 'expert' or the media ask what level of amplification has been used to claim a 'positive'. The 'test' comes back 'positive' and so you have the 'virus', end of story. Now we can see how the government in Tanzania could send off samples from a goat and a pawpaw fruit under human names and both came back positive for 'Covid-19'. Tanzania president John Magufuli mocked the 'Covid' hysteria, the PCR test and masks and refused to import the DNA-manipulating 'vaccine'. The Cult hated him and an article sponsored by the Bill Gates Foundation appeared in the London *Guardian* in February, 2021, headed 'It's time for Africa to rein in Tanzania's anti-vaxxer president'. Well, 'reined in' he shortly was. Magufuli appeared in good health, but then, in March, 2021, he was dead at 61 from 'heart failure'. He was replaced by Samia Hassan Suhulu who is connected to Klaus Schwab's World Economic Forum and she immediately reversed Magufuli's 'Covid' policy. A sample of cola tested positive for 'Covid' with the PCR test in Germany while American actress and singer-songwriter Erykah Badu tested positive in one nostril and negative in the other. Footballer Ronaldo called

the PCR test 'bullshit' after testing positive three times and being forced to quarantine and miss matches when there was nothing wrong with him. The mantra from Tedros at the World Health Organization and national governments (same thing) has been test, test, test. They know that the more tests they can generate the more fake 'cases' they have which go on to become 'deaths' in ways I am coming to. The UK government has its Operation Moonshot planned to test multiple millions every day in workplaces and schools with free tests for everyone to use twice a week at home in line with the Cult plan from the start to make testing part of life. A government advertisement for an 'Interim Head of Asymptomatic Testing Communication' said the job included responsibility for delivering a 'communications strategy' (propaganda) 'to support the expansion of asymptomatic testing that *'normalises testing as part of everyday life'*'. More tests means more fake 'cases', 'deaths' and fascism. I have heard of, and from, many people who booked a test, couldn't turn up, and yet got a positive result through the post for a test they'd never even had. The whole thing is crazy, but for the Cult there's method in the madness. Controlling and manipulating the level of amplification of the test means the authorities can control whenever they want the number of apparent 'cases' and 'deaths'. If they want to justify more fascist lockdown and destruction of livelihoods they keep the amplification high. If they want to give the illusion that lockdowns and the 'vaccine' are working then they lower the amplification and 'cases' and 'deaths' will appear to fall. In January, 2021, the Cult-owned World Health Organization suddenly warned laboratories about over-amplification of the test and to lower the threshold. Suddenly headlines began appearing such as: 'Why ARE "Covid" cases plummeting?' This was just when the vaccine rollout was underway and I had predicted months before they would make cases appear to fall through amplification tampering when the 'vaccine' came. These people are so predictable.

## **Cow vaccines?**

The question must be asked of what is on the test swabs being poked far up the nose of the population to the base of the brain? A nasal swab punctured one woman's brain and caused it to leak fluid. Most of these procedures are being done by people with little training or medical knowledge. Dr Lorraine Day, former orthopaedic trauma surgeon and Chief of Orthopaedic Surgery at San Francisco General Hospital, says the tests are really a 'vaccine'. Cows have long been vaccinated this way. She points out that masks have to cover the nose and the mouth where it is claimed the 'virus' exists in saliva. Why then don't they take saliva from the mouth as they do with a DNA test instead of pushing a long swab up the nose towards the brain? The ethmoid bone separates the nasal cavity from the brain and within that bone is the cribriform plate. Dr Day says that when the swab is pushed up against this plate and twisted the procedure is 'depositing things back there'. She claims that among these 'things' are nanoparticles that can enter the brain. Researchers have noted that a team at the Gates-funded Johns Hopkins have designed tiny, star-shaped micro-devices that can latch onto intestinal mucosa and release drugs into the body. Mucosa is the thin skin that covers the inside surface of parts of the body such as *the nose* and mouth and produces mucus to protect them. The Johns Hopkins micro-devices are called 'theragrippers' and were 'inspired' by a parasitic worm that digs its sharp teeth into a host's intestines. Nasal swabs are also coated in the sterilisation agent ethylene oxide. The US National Cancer Institute posts this explanation on its website:

At room temperature, ethylene oxide is a flammable colorless gas with a sweet odor. It is used primarily to produce other chemicals, including antifreeze. In smaller amounts, ethylene oxide is used as a pesticide and a sterilizing agent. The ability of ethylene oxide to damage DNA makes it an effective sterilizing agent but also accounts for its cancer-causing activity.

The Institute mentions lymphoma and leukaemia as cancers most frequently reported to be associated with occupational exposure to ethylene oxide along with stomach and breast cancers. How does anyone think this is going to work out with the constant testing

regime being inflicted on adults and children at home and at school that will accumulate in the body anything that's on the swab?

## **Doctors know best**

It is vital for people to realise that 'hero' doctors 'know' only what the Big Pharma-dominated medical authorities tell them to 'know' and if they refuse to 'know' what they are told to 'know' they are out the door. They are mostly not physicians or healers, but repeaters of the official narrative – or else. I have seen alleged professional doctors on British television make shocking statements that we are supposed to take seriously. One called 'Dr' Amir Khan, who is actually telling patients how to respond to illness, said that men could take the birth pill to 'help slow down the effects of Covid-19'. In March, 2021, another ridiculous 'Covid study' by an American doctor proposed injecting men with the female sex hormone progesterone as a 'Covid' treatment. British doctor Nighat Arif told the BBC that face coverings were now going to be part of ongoing normal. Yes, the vaccine protects you, she said (evidence?) ... but the way to deal with viruses in the community was always going to come down to hand washing, face covering and keeping a physical distance. That's not what we were told before the 'vaccine' was circulating. Arif said she couldn't imagine ever again going on the underground or in a lift without a mask. I was just thanking my good luck that she was not my doctor when she said – in March, 2021 – that if 'we are *behaving* and we are doing all the right things' she thought we could 'have our nearest and dearest around us at home ... around *Christmas* and *New Year!* Her patronising delivery was the usual school teacher talking to six-year-olds as she repeated every government talking point and probably believed them all. If we have learned anything from the 'Covid' experience surely it must be that humanity's perception of doctors needs a fundamental rethink. NHS 'doctor' Sara Kayat told her television audience that the 'Covid vaccine' would '100 percent prevent hospitalisation and death'. Not even Big Pharma claimed that. We have to stop taking 'experts' at their word without question when so many of them are



clueless and only repeating the party line on which their careers depend. That is not to say there are not brilliant doctors – there are and I have spoken to many of them since all this began – but you won't see them in the mainstream media or quoted by the psychopaths and yes-people in government.

### **Remember the name – Christian Drosten**

German virologist Christian Drosten, Director of Charité Institute of Virology in Berlin, became a national star after the pandemic hoax began. He was feted on television and advised the German government on 'Covid' policy. Most importantly to the wider world Drosten led a group that produced the 'Covid' testing protocol for the PCR test. What a remarkable feat given the PCR cannot test for infectious disease and even more so when you think that Drosten said that his method of testing for SARS-CoV-2 was developed 'without having virus material available'. *He developed a test for a 'virus' that he didn't have and had never seen.* Let that sink in as you survey the global devastation that came from what he did. The whole catastrophe of Drosten's 'test' was based on the alleged genetic sequence published by Chinese scientists on the Internet. We will see in the next chapter that this alleged 'genetic sequence' has never been produced by China or anyone and cannot be when there *is no* SARS-CoV-2. Drosten, however, doesn't seem to let little details like that get in the way. He was the lead author with Victor Corman from the same Charité Hospital of the paper 'Detection of 2019 novel coronavirus (2019-nCoV) by real-time PCR' published in a magazine called *Eurosurveillance*. This became known as the Corman-Drosten paper. In November, 2020, with human society devastated by the effects of the Corman-Drosten test baloney, the protocol was publicly challenged by 22 international scientists and independent researchers from Europe, the United States, and Japan. Among them were senior molecular geneticists, biochemists, immunologists, and microbiologists. They produced a document headed 'External peer review of the RTPCR test to detect SARS-Cov-2 Reveals 10 Major Flaws At The Molecular and Methodological Level: Consequences

For False-Positive Results'. The flaws in the Corman-Drosten test included the following:

- The test is non-specific because of erroneous design
- Results are enormously variable
- The test is unable to discriminate between the whole 'virus' and viral fragments
- It doesn't have positive or negative controls
- The test lacks a standard operating procedure
- It is unsupported by proper peer view

The scientists said the PCR 'Covid' testing protocol was not founded on science and they demanded the Corman-Drosten paper be retracted by *Eurosurveillance*. They said all present and previous Covid deaths, cases, and 'infection rates' should be subject to a massive retroactive inquiry. Lockdowns and travel restrictions should be reviewed and relaxed and those diagnosed through PCR to have 'Covid-19' should not be forced to isolate. Dr Kevin Corbett, a health researcher and nurse educator with a long academic career producing a stream of peer-reviewed publications at many UK universities, made the same point about the PCR test debacle. He said of the scientists' conclusions: 'Every scientific rationale for the development of that test has been totally destroyed by this paper. It's like Hiroshima/Nagasaki to the Covid test.' He said that China hadn't given them an isolated 'virus' when Drosten developed the test. Instead they had developed the test from *a sequence in a gene bank*.' Put another way ... *they made it up!* The scientists were supported in this contention by a Portuguese appeals court which ruled in November, 2020, that PCR tests are unreliable and it is unlawful to quarantine people based solely on a PCR test. The point about China not providing an isolated virus must be true when the 'virus' has never been isolated to this day and the consequences of that will become clear. Drosten and company produced this useless 'protocol' right on cue in January, 2020, just as the 'virus' was said to

be moving westward and it somehow managed to successfully pass a peer-review in 24 hours. In other words there was no peer-review for a test that would be used to decide who had 'Covid' and who didn't across the world. The Cult-created, Gates-controlled World Health Organization immediately recommended all its nearly 200 member countries to use the Drosten PCR protocol to detect 'cases' and 'deaths'. The sting was underway and it continues to this day.

So who is this Christian Drosten that produced the means through which death, destruction and economic catastrophe would be justified? His education background, including his doctoral thesis, would appear to be somewhat shrouded in mystery and his track record is dire as with another essential player in the 'Covid' hoax, the Gates-funded Professor Neil Ferguson at the Gates-funded Imperial College in London of whom more shortly. Drosten predicted in 2003 that the alleged original SARS 'virus' (SARS-1) was an epidemic that could have serious effects on economies and an effective vaccine would take at least two years to produce. Drosten's answer to every alleged 'outbreak' is a vaccine which you won't be shocked to know. What followed were just 774 official deaths worldwide and none in Germany where there were only nine cases. That is even if you believe there ever was a SARS 'virus' when the evidence is zilch and I will expand on this in the next chapter. Drosten claims to be co-discoverer of 'SARS-1' and developed a test for it in 2003. He was screaming warnings about 'swine flu' in 2009 and how it was a widespread infection far more severe than any dangers from a vaccine could be and people should get vaccinated. It would be helpful for Drosten's vocal chords if he simply recorded the words 'the virus is deadly and you need to get vaccinated' and copies could be handed out whenever the latest made-up threat comes along. Drosten's swine flu epidemic never happened, but Big Pharma didn't mind with governments spending hundreds of millions on vaccines that hardly anyone bothered to use and many who did wished they hadn't. A study in 2010 revealed that the risk of dying from swine flu, or H1N1, was no higher than that of the annual seasonal flu which is what at least most of 'it' really was as in

the case of 'Covid-19'. A media investigation into Drosten asked how with such a record of inaccuracy he could be *the* government adviser on these issues. The answer to that question is the same with Drosten, Ferguson and Fauci – they keep on giving the authorities the 'conclusions' and 'advice' they want to hear. Drosten certainly produced the goods for them in January, 2020, with his PCR protocol garbage and provided the foundation of what German internal medicine specialist Dr Claus Köhnlein, co-author of *Virus Mania*, called the 'test pandemic'. The 22 scientists in the *Eurosurveillance* challenge called out conflicts of interest within the Drosten 'protocol' group and with good reason. Olfert Landt, a regular co-author of Drosten 'studies', owns the biotech company TIB Molbiol Syntheselabor GmbH in Berlin which manufactures and sells the tests that Drosten and his mates come up with. They have done this with SARS, Enterotoxigenic E. coli (ETEC), MERS, Zika 'virus', yellow fever, and now 'Covid'. Landt told the *Berliner Zeitung* newspaper:

The testing, design and development came from the Charité [Drosten and Corman]. We simply implemented it immediately in the form of a kit. And if we don't have the virus, which originally only existed in Wuhan, we can make a synthetic gene to simulate the genome of the virus. That's what we did very quickly.

This is more confirmation that the Drosten test was designed without access to the 'virus' and only a synthetic simulation which is what SARS-CoV-2 really is – a computer-generated synthetic fiction. It's quite an enterprise they have going here. A Drosten team decides what the test for something should be and Landt's biotech company flogs it to governments and medical systems across the world. His company must have made an absolute fortune since the 'Covid' hoax began. Dr Reiner Fuellmich, a prominent German consumer protection trial lawyer in Germany and California, is on Drosten's case and that of Tedros at the World Health Organization for crimes against humanity with a class-action lawsuit being prepared in the United States and other legal action in Germany.

## Why China?

Scamming the world with a 'virus' that doesn't exist would seem impossible on the face of it, but not if you have control of the relatively few people that make policy decisions and the great majority of the global media. Remember it's not about changing 'real' reality it's about controlling *perception* of reality. You don't have to make something happen you only have to make people *believe* that it's happening. Renegade Minds understand this and are therefore much harder to swindle. 'Covid-19' is not a 'real' 'virus'. It's a mind virus, like a computer virus, which has infected the minds, not the bodies, of billions. It all started, publically at least, in China and that alone is of central significance. The Cult was behind the revolution led by its asset Mao Zedong, or Chairman Mao, which established the People's Republic of China on October 1st, 1949. It should have been called The Cult's Republic of China, but the name had to reflect the recurring illusion that vicious dictatorships are run by and for the people (see all the 'Democratic Republics' controlled by tyrants). In the same way we have the 'Biden' Democratic Republic of America officially ruled by a puppet tyrant (at least temporarily) on behalf of Cult tyrants. The creation of Mao's merciless communist/fascist dictatorship was part of a frenzy of activity by the Cult at the conclusion of World War Two which, like the First World War, it had instigated through its assets in Germany, Britain, France, the United States and elsewhere. Israel was formed in 1948; the Soviet Union expanded its 'Iron Curtain' control, influence and military power with the Warsaw Pact communist alliance in 1955; the United Nations was formed in 1945 as a Cult precursor to world government; and a long list of world bodies would be established including the World Health Organization (1948), World Trade Organization (1948 under another name until 1995), International Monetary Fund (1945) and World Bank (1944). Human society was redrawn and hugely centralised in the global Problem-Reaction-Solution that was World War Two. All these changes were significant. Israel would become the headquarters of the Sabbatians

and the revolution in China would prepare the ground and control system for the events of 2019/2020.

Renegade Minds know there are no borders except for public consumption. The Cult is a seamless, borderless global entity and to understand the game we need to put aside labels like borders, nations, countries, communism, fascism and democracy. These delude the population into believing that countries are ruled within their borders by a government of whatever shade when these are mere agencies of a global power. America's illusion of democracy and China's communism/fascism are subsidiaries – vehicles – for the same agenda. We may hear about conflict and competition between America and China and on the lower levels that will be true; but at the Cult level they are branches of the same company in the way of the McDonald's example I gave earlier. I have tracked in the books over the years support by US governments of both parties for Chinese Communist Party infiltration of American society through allowing the sale of land, even military facilities, and the acquisition of American business and university influence. All this is underpinned by the infamous stealing of intellectual property and technological know-how. Cult-owned Silicon Valley corporations waive their fraudulent 'morality' to do business with human-rights-free China; Cult-controlled Disney has become China's PR department; and China in effect owns 'American' sports such as basketball which depends for much of its income on Chinese audiences. As a result any sports player, coach or official speaking out against China's horrific human rights record is immediately condemned or fired by the China-worshipping National Basketball Association. One of the first acts of China-controlled Biden was to issue an executive order telling federal agencies to stop making references to the 'virus' by the 'geographic location of its origin'. Long-time Congressman Jerry Nadler warned that criticising China, America's biggest rival, leads to hate crimes against Asian people in the United States. So shut up you bigot. China is fast closing in on Israel as a country that must not be criticised which is apt, really, given that Sabbatians control them both. The two countries have

developed close economic, military, technological and strategic ties which include involvement in China's 'Silk Road' transport and economic initiative to connect China with Europe. Israel was the first country in the Middle East to recognise the establishment of Mao's tyranny in 1950 months after it was established.

### **Project Wuhan – the 'Covid' Psyop**

I emphasise again that the Cult plays the long game and what is happening to the world today is the result of centuries of calculated manipulation following a script to take control step-by-step of every aspect of human society. I will discuss later the common force behind all this that has spanned those centuries and thousands of years if the truth be told. Instigating the Mao revolution in China in 1949 with a 2020 'pandemic' in mind is not only how they work – the 71 years between them is really quite short by the Cult's standards of manipulation preparation. The reason for the Cult's Chinese revolution was to create a fiercely-controlled environment within which an extreme structure for human control could be incubated to eventually be unleashed across the world. We have seen this happen since the 'pandemic' emerged from China with the Chinese control-structure founded on AI technology and tyrannical enforcement sweep across the West. Until the moment when the Cult went for broke in the West and put its fascism on public display Western governments had to pay some lip-service to freedom and democracy to not alert too many people to the tyranny-in-the-making. Freedoms were more subtly eroded and power centralised with covert government structures put in place waiting for the arrival of 2020 when that smokescreen of 'freedom' could be dispensed with. The West was not able to move towards tyranny before 2020 anything like as fast as China which was created as a tyranny and had no limits on how fast it could construct the Cult's blueprint for global control. When the time came to impose that structure on the world it was the same Cult-owned Chinese communist/fascist government that provided the excuse – the 'Covid pandemic'. It was absolutely crucial to the Cult plan for the Chinese response to the 'pandemic' –

draconian lockdowns of the entire population – to become the blueprint that Western countries would follow to destroy the livelihoods and freedom of their people. This is why the Cult-owned, Gates-owned, WHO Director-General Tedros said early on:

The Chinese government is to be congratulated for the extraordinary measures it has taken to contain the outbreak. China is actually setting a new standard for outbreak response and it is not an exaggeration.

*Forbes* magazine said of China: ‘... those measures protected untold millions from getting the disease’. The Rockefeller Foundation ‘epidemic scenario’ document in 2010 said ‘prophetically’:

However, a few countries did fare better – China in particular. The Chinese government’s quick imposition and enforcement of mandatory quarantine for all citizens, as well as its instant and near-hermetic sealing off of all borders, saved millions of lives, stopping the spread of the virus far earlier than in other countries and enabling a swifter post-pandemic recovery.

Once again – *spooky*.

The first official story was the ‘bat theory’ or rather the bat diversion. The source of the ‘virus outbreak’ we were told was a ‘wet market’ in Wuhan where bats and other animals are bought and eaten in horrifically unhygienic conditions. Then another story emerged through the alternative media that the ‘virus’ had been released on purpose or by accident from a BSL-4 (biosafety level 4) laboratory in Wuhan not far from the wet market. The lab was reported to create and work with lethal concoctions and bioweapons. Biosafety level 4 is the highest in the World Health Organization system of safety and containment. Renegade Minds are aware of what I call designer manipulation. The ideal for the Cult is for people to buy its prime narrative which in the opening salvos of the ‘pandemic’ was the wet market story. It knows, however, that there is now a considerable worldwide alternative media of researchers sceptical of anything governments say and they are often given a version of events in a form they can perceive as credible while misdirecting them from the real truth. In this case let them



think that the conspiracy involved is a 'bioweapon virus' released from the Wuhan lab to keep them from the real conspiracy – *there is no 'virus'*. The WHO's current position on the source of the outbreak at the time of writing appears to be: 'We haven't got a clue, mate.' This is a good position to maintain mystery and bewilderment. The inner circle will know where the 'virus' came from – *nowhere*. The bottom line was to ensure the public believed there *was* a 'virus' and it didn't much matter if they thought it was natural or had been released from a lab. The belief that there was a 'deadly virus' was all that was needed to trigger global panic and fear. The population was terrified into handing their power to authority and doing what they were told. They had to or they were 'all gonna die'.

In March, 2020, information began to come my way from real doctors and scientists and my own additional research which had my intuition screaming: 'Yes, that's it! *There is no virus.*' The 'bioweapon' was not the 'virus'; it was the '*vaccine*' already being talked about that would be the bioweapon. My conclusion was further enhanced by happenings in Wuhan. The 'virus' was said to be sweeping the city and news footage circulated of people collapsing in the street (which they've never done in the West with the same 'virus'). The Chinese government was building 'new hospitals' in a matter of ten days to 'cope with demand' such was the virulent nature of the 'virus'. Yet in what seemed like no time the 'new hospitals' closed – even if they even opened – and China declared itself 'virus-free'. It was back to business as usual. This was more propaganda to promote the Chinese draconian lockdowns in the West as the way to 'beat the virus'. Trouble was that we subsequently had lockdown after lockdown, but never business as usual. As the people of the West and most of the rest of the world were caught in an ever-worsening spiral of lockdown, social distancing, masks, isolated old people, families forced apart, and livelihood destruction, it was party-time in Wuhan. Pictures emerged of thousands of people enjoying pool parties and concerts. It made no sense until you realised there never was a 'virus' and the

whole thing was a Cult set-up to transform human society out of one of its major global strongholds – China.

How is it possible to deceive virtually the entire world population into believing there is a deadly virus when there is not even a 'virus' let alone a deadly one? It's nothing like as difficult as you would think and that's clearly true because it happened.

**Postscript:** See end of book Postscript for more on the 'Wuhan lab virus release' story which the authorities and media were pushing heavily in the summer of 2021 to divert attention from the truth that the 'Covid virus' is pure invention.

## CHAPTER FIVE

### ***There is no 'virus'***

*You can fool some of the people all of the time, and all of the people some of the time, but you cannot fool all of the people all of the time*

Abraham Lincoln

The greatest form of mind control is repetition. The more you repeat the same mantra of alleged 'facts' the more will accept them to be true. It becomes an 'everyone knows that, mate'. If you can also censor any other version or alternative to your alleged 'facts' you are pretty much home and cooking.

By the start of 2020 the Cult owned the global mainstream media almost in its entirety to spew out its 'Covid' propaganda and ignore or discredit any other information and view. Cult-owned social media platforms in Cult-owned Silicon Valley were poised and ready to unleash a campaign of ferocious censorship to obliterate all but the official narrative. To complete the circle many demands for censorship by Silicon Valley were led by the mainstream media as 'journalists' became full-out enforcers for the Cult both as propagandists and censors. Part of this has been the influx of young people straight out of university who have become 'journalists' in significant positions. They have no experience and a headful of programmed perceptions from their years at school and university at a time when today's young are the most perceptually-targeted generations in known human history given the insidious impact of technology. They enter the media perceptually prepared and ready to repeat the narratives of the system that programmed them to

repeat its narratives. The BBC has a truly pathetic 'specialist disinformation reporter' called Marianna Spring who fits this bill perfectly. She is clueless about the world, how it works and what is really going on. Her role is to discredit anyone doing the job that a proper journalist would do and system-serving hacks like Spring wouldn't dare to do or even see the need to do. They are too busy licking the arse of authority which can never be wrong and, in the case of the BBC propaganda programme, *Panorama*, contacting payments systems such as PayPal to have a donations page taken down for a film company making documentaries questioning vaccines. Even the BBC soap opera *EastEnders* included a disgracefully biased scene in which an inarticulate white working class woman was made to look foolish for questioning the 'vaccine' while a well-spoken black man and Asian woman promoted the government narrative. It ticked every BBC box and the fact that the black and minority community was resisting the 'vaccine' had nothing to do with the way the scene was written. The BBC has become a disgusting tyrannical propaganda and censorship operation that should be defunded and disbanded and a free media take its place with a brief to stop censorship instead of demanding it. A BBC 'interview' with Gates goes something like: 'Mr Gates, sir, if I can call you sir, would you like to tell our audience why you are such a great man, a wonderful humanitarian philanthropist, and why you should absolutely be allowed as a software salesman to decide health policy for approaching eight billion people? Thank you, sir, please sir.' Propaganda programming has been incessant and merciless and when all you hear is the same story from the media, repeated by those around you who have only heard the same story, is it any wonder that people on a grand scale believe absolute mendacious garbage to be true? You are about to see, too, why this level of information control is necessary when the official 'Covid' narrative is so nonsensical and unsupportable by the evidence.

## **Structure of Deceit**

The pyramid structure through which the 'Covid' hoax has been manifested is very simple and has to be to work. As few people as possible have to be involved with full knowledge of what they are doing – and why – or the real story would get out. At the top of the pyramid are the inner core of the Cult which controls Bill Gates who, in turn, controls the World Health Organization through his pivotal funding and his puppet Director-General mouthpiece, Tedros. Before he was appointed Tedros was chair of the Gates-founded Global Fund to 'fight against AIDS, tuberculosis and malaria', a board member of the Gates-funded 'vaccine alliance' GAVI, and on the board of another Gates-funded organisation. Gates owns him and picked him for a specific reason – Tedros is a crook and worse. 'Dr' Tedros (he's not a medical doctor, the first WHO chief not to be) was a member of the tyrannical Marxist government of Ethiopia for decades with all its human rights abuses. He has faced allegations of corruption and misappropriation of funds and was exposed three times for covering up cholera epidemics while Ethiopia's health minister. Tedros appointed the mass-murdering genocidal Zimbabwe dictator Robert Mugabe as a WHO goodwill ambassador for public health which, as with Tedros, is like appointing a psychopath to run a peace and love campaign. The move was so ridiculous that he had to drop Mugabe in the face of widespread condemnation. American economist David Steinman, a Nobel peace prize nominee, lodged a complaint with the International Criminal Court in The Hague over alleged genocide by Tedros when he was Ethiopia's foreign minister. Steinman says Tedros was a 'crucial decision maker' who directed the actions of Ethiopia's security forces from 2013 to 2015 and one of three officials in charge when those security services embarked on the 'killing' and 'torturing' of Ethiopians. You can see where Tedros is coming from and it's sobering to think that he has been the vehicle for Gates and the Cult to direct the global response to 'Covid'. Think about that. A psychopathic Cult dictates to psychopath Gates who dictates to psychopath Tedros who dictates how countries of the world must respond to a 'Covid virus' never scientifically shown to exist. At the same time psychopathic Cult-owned Silicon Valley information

giants like Google, YouTube, Facebook and Twitter announced very early on that they would give the Cult/Gates/Tedros/WHO version of the narrative free advertising and censor those who challenged their intelligence-insulting, mendacious story.

The next layer in the global 'medical' structure below the Cult, Gates and Tedros are the chief medical officers and science 'advisers' in each of the WHO member countries which means virtually all of them. Medical officers and arbiters of science (they're not) then take the WHO policy and recommended responses and impose them on their country's population while the political 'leaders' say they are deciding policy (they're clearly not) by 'following the science' on the advice of the 'experts' – the same medical officers and science 'advisers' (dictators). In this way with the rarest of exceptions the entire world followed the same policy of lockdown, people distancing, masks and 'vaccines' dictated by the psychopathic Cult, psychopathic Gates and psychopathic Tedros who we are supposed to believe give a damn about the health of the world population they are seeking to enslave. That, amazingly, is all there is to it in terms of crucial decision-making. Medical staff in each country then follow like sheep the dictates of the shepherds at the top of the national medical hierarchies – chief medical officers and science 'advisers' who themselves follow like sheep the shepherds of the World Health Organization and the Cult. Shepherds at the national level often have major funding and other connections to Gates and his Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation which carefully hands out money like confetti at a wedding to control the entire global medical system from the WHO down.

### **Follow the money**

Christopher Whitty, Chief Medical Adviser to the UK Government at the centre of 'virus' policy, a senior adviser to the government's Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE), and Executive Board member of the World Health Organization, was gifted a grant of \$40 million by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation for malaria research in Africa. The BBC described the unelected Whitty as 'the

official who will probably have the greatest impact on our everyday lives of any individual policymaker in modern times' and so it turned out. What Gates and Tedros have said Whitty has done like his equivalents around the world. Patrick Vallance, co-chair of SAGE and the government's Chief Scientific Adviser, is a former executive of Big Pharma giant GlaxoSmithKline with its fundamental financial and business connections to Bill Gates. In September, 2020, it was revealed that Vallance owned a deferred bonus of shares in GlaxoSmithKline worth £600,000 while the company was 'developing' a 'Covid vaccine'. Move along now – nothing to see here – what could possibly be wrong with that? Imperial College in London, a major player in 'Covid' policy in Britain and elsewhere with its 'Covid-19' Response Team, is funded by Gates and has big connections to China while the now infamous Professor Neil Ferguson, the useless 'computer modeller' at Imperial College is also funded by Gates. Ferguson delivered the dramatically inaccurate excuse for the first lockdowns (much more in the next chapter). The Institute for Health Metrics and Evaluation (IHME) in the United States, another source of outrageously false 'Covid' computer models to justify lockdowns, is bankrolled by Gates who is a vehement promotor of lockdowns. America's version of Whitty and Vallance, the again now infamous Anthony Fauci, has connections to 'Covid vaccine' maker Moderna as does Bill Gates through funding from the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. Fauci is director of the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID), a major recipient of Gates money, and they are very close. Deborah Birx who was appointed White House Coronavirus Response Coordinator in February, 2020, is yet another with ties to Gates. Everywhere you look at the different elements around the world behind the coordination and decision making of the 'Covid' hoax there is Bill Gates and his money. They include the World Health Organization; Centers for Disease Control (CDC) in the United States; National Institutes of Health (NIH) of Anthony Fauci; Imperial College and Neil Ferguson; the London School of Hygiene where Chris Whitty worked; Regulatory agencies like the UK Medicines & Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA)

which gave emergency approval for 'Covid vaccines'; Wellcome Trust; GAVI, the Vaccine Alliance; the Coalition for Epidemic Preparedness Innovations (CEPI); Johns Hopkins University which has compiled the false 'Covid' figures; and the World Economic Forum. A [Nationalfile.com](http://Nationalfile.com) article said:

Gates has a lot of pull in the medical world, he has a multi-million dollar relationship with Dr. Fauci, and Fauci originally took the Gates line supporting vaccines and casting doubt on [the drug hydroxychloroquine]. Coronavirus response team member Dr. Deborah Birx, appointed by former president Obama to serve as United States Global AIDS Coordinator, also sits on the board of a group that has received billions from Gates' foundation, and Birx reportedly used a disputed Bill Gates-funded model for the White House's Coronavirus effort. Gates is a big proponent for a population lockdown scenario for the Coronavirus outbreak.

Another funder of Moderna is the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA), the technology-development arm of the Pentagon and one of the most sinister organisations on earth. DARPA had a major role with the CIA covert technology-funding operation In-Q-Tel in the development of Google and social media which is now at the centre of global censorship. Fauci and Gates are extremely close and openly admit to talking regularly about 'Covid' policy, but then why wouldn't Gates have a seat at every national 'Covid' table after his Foundation committed \$1.75 billion to the 'fight against Covid-19'. When passed through our Orwellian Translation Unit this means that he has bought and paid for the Cult-driven 'Covid' response worldwide. Research the major 'Covid' response personnel in your own country and you will find the same Gates funding and other connections again and again. Medical and science chiefs following World Health Organization 'policy' sit atop a medical hierarchy in their country of administrators, doctors and nursing staff. These 'subordinates' are told they must work and behave in accordance with the policy delivered from the 'top' of the national 'health' pyramid which is largely the policy delivered by the WHO which is the policy delivered by Gates and the Cult. The whole 'Covid' narrative has been imposed on medical staff by a climate of fear although great numbers don't even need that to comply. They do so through breathtaking levels of ignorance and



include doctors who go through life simply repeating what Big Pharma and their hierarchical masters tell them to say and believe. No wonder Big Pharma 'medicine' is one of the biggest killers on Planet Earth.

The same top-down system of intimidation operates with regard to the Cult Big Pharma cartel which also dictates policy through national and global medical systems in this way. The Cult and Big Pharma agendas are the same because the former controls and owns the latter. 'Health' administrators, doctors, and nursing staff are told to support and parrot the dictated policy or they will face consequences which can include being fired. How sad it's been to see medical staff meekly repeating and imposing Cult policy without question and most of those who can see through the deceit are only willing to speak anonymously off the record. They know what will happen if their identity is known. This has left the courageous few to expose the lies about the 'virus', face masks, overwhelmed hospitals that aren't, and the dangers of the 'vaccine' that isn't a vaccine. When these medical professionals and scientists, some renowned in their field, have taken to the Internet to expose the truth their articles, comments and videos have been deleted by Cult-owned Facebook, Twitter and YouTube. What a real head-shaker to see YouTube videos with leading world scientists and highly qualified medical specialists with an added link underneath to the notorious Cult propaganda website *Wikipedia* to find the 'facts' about the same subject.

### **HIV – the 'Covid' trial-run**

I'll give you an example of the consequences for health and truth that come from censorship and unquestioning belief in official narratives. The story was told by PCR inventor Kary Mullis in his book *Dancing Naked in the Mind Field*. He said that in 1984 he accepted as just another scientific fact that Luc Montagnier of France's Pasteur Institute and Robert Gallo of America's National Institutes of Health had independently discovered that a 'retrovirus' dubbed HIV (human immunodeficiency virus) caused AIDS. They

were, after all, Mullis writes, specialists in retroviruses. This is how the medical and science pyramids work. Something is announced or *assumed* and then becomes an everybody-knows-that purely through repetition of the assumption as if it is fact. Complete crap becomes accepted truth with no supporting evidence and only repetition of the crap. This is how a 'virus' that doesn't exist became the 'virus' that changed the world. The HIV-AIDS fairy story became a multi-billion pound industry and the media poured out propaganda terrifying the world about the deadly HIV 'virus' that caused the lethal AIDS. By then Mullis was working at a lab in Santa Monica, California, to detect retroviruses with his PCR test in blood donations received by the Red Cross. In doing so he asked a virologist where he could find a reference for HIV being the cause of AIDS. 'You don't need a reference,' the virologist said ... '*Everybody knows it.*' Mullis said he wanted to quote a reference in the report he was doing and he said he felt a little funny about not knowing the source of such an important discovery when everyone else seemed to. The virologist suggested he cite a report by the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) on morbidity and mortality. Mullis read the report, but it only said that an organism had been identified and did not say how. The report did not identify the original scientific work. Physicians, however, *assumed* (key recurring theme) that if the CDC was convinced that HIV caused AIDS then proof must exist. Mullis continues:

I did computer searches. Neither Montagnier, Gallo, nor anyone else had published papers describing experiments which led to the conclusion that HIV probably caused AIDS. I read the papers in *Science* for which they had become well known as AIDS doctors, but all they had said there was that they had found evidence of a past infection by something which was probably HIV in some AIDS patients.

They found antibodies. Antibodies to viruses had always been considered evidence of past disease, not present disease. Antibodies signaled that the virus had been defeated. The patient had saved himself. There was no indication in these papers that this virus caused a disease. They didn't show that everybody with the antibodies had the disease. In fact they found some healthy people with antibodies.

Mullis asked why their work had been published if Montagnier and Gallo hadn't really found this evidence, and why had they been fighting so hard to get credit for the discovery? He says he was hesitant to write 'HIV is the probable cause of AIDS' until he found published evidence to support that. 'Tens of thousands of scientists and researchers were spending billions of dollars a year doing research based on this idea,' Mullis writes. 'The reason had to be there somewhere; otherwise these people would not have allowed their research to settle into one narrow channel of investigation.' He said he lectured about PCR at numerous meetings where people were always talking about HIV and he asked them how they knew that HIV was the cause of AIDS:

Everyone said something. Everyone had the answer at home, in the office, in some drawer. They all knew, and they would send me the papers as soon as they got back. But I never got any papers. Nobody ever sent me the news about how AIDS was caused by HIV.

Eventually Mullis was able to ask Montagnier himself about the reference proof when he lectured in San Diego at the grand opening of the University of California AIDS Research Center. Mullis says this was the last time he would ask his question without showing anger. Montagnier said he should reference the CDC report. 'I read it', Mullis said, and it didn't answer the question. 'If Montagnier didn't know the answer who the hell did?' Then one night Mullis was driving when an interview came on National Public Radio with Peter Duesberg, a prominent virologist at Berkeley and a California Scientist of the Year. Mullis says he finally understood why he could not find references that connected HIV to AIDS – *there weren't any!* No one had ever proved that HIV causes AIDS even though it had spawned a multi-billion pound global industry and the media was repeating this as fact every day in their articles and broadcasts terrifying the shit out of people about AIDS and giving the impression that a positive test for HIV (see 'Covid') was a death sentence. Duesberg was a threat to the AIDS gravy train and the agenda that underpinned it. He was therefore abused and castigated after he told the Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences

there was no good evidence implicating the new 'virus'. Editors rejected his manuscripts and his research funds were deleted. Mullis points out that the CDC has defined AIDS as one of more than 30 diseases *if accompanied* by a positive result on a test that detects antibodies to HIV; but those same diseases are not defined as AIDS cases when antibodies are not detected:

If an HIV-positive woman develops uterine cancer, for example, she is considered to have AIDS. If she is not HIV positive, she simply has uterine cancer. An HIV-positive man with tuberculosis has AIDS; if he tests negative he simply has tuberculosis. If he lives in Kenya or Colombia, where the test for HIV antibodies is too expensive, he is simply presumed to have the antibodies and therefore AIDS, and therefore he can be treated in the World Health Organization's clinic. It's the only medical help available in some places. And it's free, because the countries that support WHO are worried about AIDS.

Mullis accuses the CDC of continually adding new diseases (see ever more 'Covid symptoms') to the grand AIDS definition and of virtually doctoring the books to make it appear as if the disease continued to spread. He cites how in 1993 the CDC enormously broadened its AIDS definition and county health authorities were delighted because they received \$2,500 per year from the Federal government for every reported AIDS case. Ladies and gentlemen, I have just described, via Kary Mullis, the 'Covid pandemic' of 2020 and beyond. Every element is the same and it's been pulled off in the same way by the same networks.

### **The 'Covid virus' exists? Okay – prove it. Er ... still waiting**

What Kary Mullis described with regard to 'HIV' has been repeated with 'Covid'. A claim is made that a new, or 'novel', infection has been found and the entire medical system of the world repeats that as fact exactly as they did with HIV and AIDS. No one in the mainstream asks rather relevant questions such as 'How do you know?' and 'Where is your proof?' The SARS-Cov-2 'virus' and the 'Covid-19 disease' became an overnight 'everybody-knows-that'. The origin could be debated and mulled over, but what you could not suggest was that 'SARS-Cov-2' didn't exist. That would be

ridiculous. 'Everybody knows' the 'virus' exists. Well, I didn't for one along with American proper doctors like Andrew Kaufman and Tom Cowan and long-time American proper journalist Jon Rappaport. We dared to pursue the obvious and simple question: 'Where's the evidence?' The overwhelming majority in medicine, journalism and the general public did not think to ask that. After all, *everyone knew* there was a new 'virus'. Everyone was saying so and I heard it on the BBC. Some would eventually argue that the 'deadly virus' was nothing like as deadly as claimed, but few would venture into the realms of its very existence. Had they done so they would have found that the evidence for that claim had gone AWOL as with HIV causes AIDS. In fact, not even that. For something to go AWOL it has to exist in the first place and scientific proof for a 'SARS-Cov-2' can be filed under nothing, nowhere and zilch.

Dr Andrew Kaufman is a board-certified forensic psychiatrist in New York State, a Doctor of Medicine and former Assistant Professor and Medical Director of Psychiatry at SUNY Upstate Medical University, and Medical Instructor of Hematology and Oncology at the Medical School of South Carolina. He also studied biology at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) and trained in Psychiatry at Duke University. Kaufman is retired from allopathic medicine, but remains a consultant and educator on natural healing, I saw a video of his very early on in the 'Covid' hoax in which he questioned claims about the 'virus' in the absence of any supporting evidence and with plenty pointing the other way. I did everything I could to circulate his work which I felt was asking the pivotal questions that needed an answer. I can recommend an excellent pull-together interview he did with the website The Last Vagabond entitled *Dr Andrew Kaufman: Virus Isolation, Terrain Theory and Covid-19* and his website is [andrewkaufmanmd.com](http://andrewkaufmanmd.com). Kaufman is not only a forensic psychiatrist; he is forensic in all that he does. He always reads original scientific papers, experiments and studies instead of second-third-fourth-hand reports about the 'virus' in the media which are repeating the repeated repetition of the narrative. When he did so with the original Chinese 'virus' papers Kaufman

realised that there was no evidence of a 'SARS-Cov-2'. They had never – from the start – shown it to exist and every repeat of this claim worldwide was based on the accepted existence of proof that was nowhere to be found – see Kary Mullis and HIV. Here we go again.

## **Let's postulate**

Kaufman discovered that the Chinese authorities immediately concluded that the cause of an illness that broke out among about 200 initial patients in Wuhan was a 'new virus' when there were no grounds to make that conclusion. The alleged 'virus' was not isolated from other genetic material in their samples and then shown through a system known as Koch's postulates to be the causative agent of the illness. The world was told that the SARS-Cov-2 'virus' caused a disease they called 'Covid-19' which had 'flu-like' symptoms and could lead to respiratory problems and pneumonia. If it wasn't so tragic it would almost be funny. *'Flu-like' symptoms? Pneumonia? Respiratory disease?* What in CHINA and particularly in Wuhan, one of the most polluted cities in the world with a resulting epidemic of respiratory disease?? Three hundred thousand people get pneumonia in China every year and there are nearly a billion cases worldwide of 'flu-like symptoms'. These have a whole range of causes – including pollution in Wuhan – but no other possibility was credibly considered in late 2019 when the world was told there was a new and deadly 'virus'. The global prevalence of pneumonia and 'flu-like systems' gave the Cult networks unlimited potential to re-diagnose these other causes as the mythical 'Covid-19' and that is what they did from the very start. Kaufman revealed how Chinese medical and science authorities (all subordinates to the Cult-owned communist government) took genetic material from the lungs of only a few of the first patients. The material contained their own cells, bacteria, fungi and other microorganisms living in their bodies. The only way you could prove the existence of the 'virus' and its responsibility for the alleged 'Covid-19' was to isolate the virus from all the other material – a process also known as 'purification' – and

then follow the postulates sequence developed in the late 19th century by German physician and bacteriologist Robert Koch which became the 'gold standard' for connecting an alleged causation agent to a disease:

1. The microorganism (bacteria, fungus, virus, etc.) must be present in every case of the disease and all patients must have the same symptoms. It must also *not be present in healthy individuals*.
2. The microorganism must be isolated from the host with the disease. If the microorganism is a bacteria or fungus it must be grown in a pure culture. If it is a virus, it must be purified (i.e. containing no other material except the virus particles) from a clinical sample.
3. The specific disease, with all of its characteristics, must be reproduced when the infectious agent (the purified virus or a pure culture of bacteria or fungi) is inoculated into a healthy, susceptible host.
4. The microorganism must be recoverable from the experimentally infected host as in step 2.

*Not one* of these criteria has been met in the case of 'SARS-Cov-2' and 'Covid-19'. Not ONE. EVER. Robert Koch refers to bacteria and not viruses. What are called 'viral particles' are so minute (hence masks are useless by any definition) that they could only be seen after the invention of the electron microscope in the 1930s and can still only be observed through that means. American bacteriologist and virologist Thomas Milton Rivers, the so-called 'Father of Modern Virology' who was very significantly director of the Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research in the 1930s, developed a less stringent version of Koch's postulates to identify 'virus' causation known as 'Rivers criteria'. 'Covid' did not pass that process either. Some even doubt whether any 'virus' can be isolated from other particles containing genetic material in the Koch method. Freedom of Information requests in many countries asking for scientific proof that the 'Covid virus' has been purified and isolated and shown to exist have all come back with a 'we don't have that' and when this happened with a request to the UK Department of Health they added this comment:

However, outside of the scope of the [Freedom of Information Act] and on a discretionary basis, the following information has been advised to us, which may be of interest. Most infectious diseases are caused by viruses, bacteria or fungi. Some bacteria or fungi have the capacity to grow on their own in isolation, for example in colonies on a petri dish. Viruses are different in that they are what we call 'obligate pathogens' – that is, they cannot survive or reproduce without infecting a host ...

... For some diseases, it is possible to establish causation between a microorganism and a disease by isolating the pathogen from a patient, growing it in pure culture and reintroducing it to a healthy organism. These are known as 'Koch's postulates' and were developed in 1882. However, as our understanding of disease and different disease-causing agents has advanced, these are no longer the method for determining causation [Andrew Kaufman asks why in that case are there two published articles falsely claiming to satisfy Koch's postulates].

It has long been known that viral diseases cannot be identified in this way as viruses cannot be grown in 'pure culture'. When a patient is tested for a viral illness, this is normally done by looking for the presence of antigens, or viral genetic code in a host with molecular biology techniques [Kaufman asks how you could know the origin of these chemicals without having a pure culture for comparison].

For the record 'antigens' are defined so:

Invading microorganisms have antigens on their surface that the human body can recognise as being foreign – meaning not belonging to it. When the body recognises a foreign antigen, lymphocytes (white blood cells) produce antibodies, which are complementary in shape to the antigen.

Notwithstanding that this is open to question in relation to 'SARS-Cov-2' the presence of 'antibodies' can have many causes and they are found in people that are perfectly well. Kary Mullis said: 'Antibodies ... had always been considered evidence of past disease, not present disease.'

### **'Covid' really is a *computer* 'virus'**

Where the UK Department of Health statement says 'viruses' are now 'diagnosed' through a 'viral genetic code in a host with molecular biology techniques', they mean ... *the PCR test* which its inventor said cannot test for infectious disease. They have no credible method of connecting a 'virus' to a disease and we will see that there is no scientific proof that any 'virus' causes any disease or there is any such thing as a 'virus' in the way that it is described. Tenacious Canadian researcher Christine Massey and her team made



some 40 Freedom of Information requests to national public health agencies in different countries asking for proof that SARS-CoV-2 has been isolated and not one of them could supply that information. Massey said of her request in Canada: 'Freedom of Information reveals Public Health Agency of Canada has no record of 'SARS-COV-2' isolation performed by anyone, anywhere, ever.' If you accept the comment from the UK Department of Health it's because they can't isolate a 'virus'. Even so many 'science' papers claimed to have isolated the 'Covid virus' until they were questioned and had to admit they hadn't. A reply from the Robert Koch Institute in Germany was typical: 'I am not aware of a paper which purified isolated SARS-CoV-2.' So what the hell was Christian Drosten and his gang using to design the 'Covid' testing protocol that has produced all the illusory Covid' cases and 'Covid' deaths when the head of the Chinese version of the CDC admitted there was a problem right from the start in that the 'virus' had never been isolated/purified? Breathe deeply: What they are calling 'Covid' is actually created by a *computer program* i.e. *they made it up* – er, that's it. They took lung fluid, with many sources of genetic material, from one single person alleged to be infected with Covid-19 by a PCR test which they *claimed*, without clear evidence, contained a 'virus'. They used several computer programs to create a model of a theoretical virus genome sequence from more than fifty-six million small sequences of RNA, each of an unknown source, assembling them like a puzzle with no known solution. The computer filled in the gaps with sequences from bits in the gene bank to make it look like a bat SARS-like coronavirus! A wave of the magic wand and poof, an *in silico* (computer-generated) genome, a scientific fantasy, was created. UK health researcher Dr Kevin Corbett made the same point with this analogy:

... It's like giving you a few bones and saying that's your fish. It could be any fish. Not even a skeleton. Here's a few fragments of bones. That's your fish ... It's all from gene bank and the bits of the virus sequence that weren't there they made up.

They synthetically created them to fill in the blanks. That's what genetics is; it's a code. So it's ABBCCDDDD and you're missing some what you think is EEE so you put it in. It's all

synthetic. You just manufacture the bits that are missing. This is the end result of the geneticization of virology. This is basically a computer virus.

Further confirmation came in an email exchange between British citizen journalist Frances Leader and the government's Medicines & Healthcare Products Regulatory Agency (the Gates-funded MHRA) which gave emergency permission for untested 'Covid vaccines' to be used. The agency admitted that the 'vaccine' is not based on an isolated 'virus', but comes from a *computer-generated model*. Frances Leader was naturally banned from Cult-owned fascist Twitter for making this exchange public. The process of creating computer-generated alleged 'viruses' is called 'in silico' or 'in silicon' – computer chips – and the term 'in silico' is believed to originate with biological experiments using only a computer in 1989. 'Vaccines' involved with 'Covid' are also produced 'in silico' or by computer not a natural process. If the original 'virus' is nothing more than a made-up computer model how can there be 'new variants' of something that never existed in the first place? They are not new 'variants'; they are new *computer models* only minutely different to the original program and designed to further terrify the population into having the 'vaccine' and submitting to fascism. You want a 'new variant'? Click, click, enter – there you go. Tell the medical profession that you have discovered a 'South African variant', 'UK variants' or a 'Brazilian variant' and in the usual HIV-causes-AIDS manner they will unquestioningly repeat it with no evidence whatsoever to support these claims. They will go on television and warn about the dangers of 'new variants' while doing nothing more than repeating what they have been told to be true and knowing that any deviation from that would be career suicide. Big-time insiders will know it's a hoax, but much of the medical community is clueless about the way they are being played and themselves play the public without even being aware they are doing so. What an interesting 'coincidence' that AstraZeneca and Oxford University were conducting 'Covid vaccine trials' in the three countries – the UK, South Africa and Brazil – where the first three 'variants' were claimed to have 'broken out'.

## **Here's your 'virus' – it's a unicorn**

Dr Andrew Kaufman presented a brilliant analysis describing how the 'virus' was imagined into fake existence when he dissected an article published by *Nature* and written by 19 authors detailing *alleged* 'sequencing of a complete viral genome' of the 'new SARS-CoV-2 virus'. This computer-modelled *in silico* genome was used as a template for all subsequent genome sequencing experiments that resulted in the so-called variants which he said now number more than 6,000. The fake genome was constructed from more than 56 million individual short strands of RNA. Those little pieces were assembled into longer pieces by finding areas of overlapping sequences. The computer programs created over two million possible combinations from which the authors simply chose the longest one. They then compared this to a 'bat virus' and the computer 'alignment' rearranged the sequence and filled in the gaps! They called this computer-generated abomination the 'complete genome'. Dr Tom Cowan, a fellow medical author and collaborator with Kaufman, said such computer-generation constitutes scientific fraud and he makes this superb analogy:

Here is an equivalency: A group of researchers claim to have found a unicorn because they found a piece of a hoof, a hair from a tail, and a snippet of a horn. They then add that information into a computer and program it to re-create the unicorn, and they then claim this computer re-creation is the real unicorn. Of course, they had never actually seen a unicorn so could not possibly have examined its genetic makeup to compare their samples with the actual unicorn's hair, hooves and horn.

The researchers claim they decided which is the real genome of SARS-CoV-2 by 'consensus', sort of like a vote. Again, different computer programs will come up with different versions of the imaginary 'unicorn', so they come together as a group and decide which is the real imaginary unicorn.

This is how the 'virus' that has transformed the world was brought into fraudulent 'existence'. Extraordinary, yes, but as the Nazis said the bigger the lie the more will believe it. Cowan, however, wasn't finished and he went on to identify what he called the real blockbuster in the paper. He quotes this section from a paper written

by virologists and published by the CDC and then explains what it means:

Therefore, we examined the capacity of SARS-CoV-2 to infect and replicate in several common primate and human cell lines, including human adenocarcinoma cells (A549), human liver cells (HUH 7.0), and human embryonic kidney cells (HEK-293T). In addition to Vero E6 and Vero CCL81 cells. ... Each cell line was inoculated at high multiplicity of infection and examined 24h post-infection.

No CPE was observed in any of the cell lines except in Vero cells, which grew to greater than 10 to the 7th power at 24 h post-infection. In contrast, HUH 7.0 and 293T showed only modest viral replication, and A549 cells were incompatible with SARS CoV-2 infection.

Cowan explains that when virologists attempt to prove infection they have three possible 'hosts' or models on which they can test. The first was humans. Exposure to humans was generally not done for ethical reasons and has never been done with SARS-CoV-2 or any coronavirus. The second possible host was animals. Cowan said that forgetting for a moment that they never actually use purified virus when exposing animals they do use solutions that they *claim* contain the virus. Exposure to animals has been done with SARS-CoV-2 in an experiment involving mice and this is what they found: *None of the wild (normal) mice got sick.* In a group of genetically-modified mice, a statistically insignificant number lost weight and had slightly bristled fur, but they experienced nothing like the illness called 'Covid-19'. Cowan said the third method – the one they mostly rely on – is to inoculate solutions they *say* contain the virus onto a variety of tissue cultures. This process had never been shown to kill tissue *unless* the sample material was starved of nutrients and poisoned as *part of the process.* Yes, incredibly, in tissue experiments designed to show the 'virus' is responsible for killing the tissue they starve the tissue of nutrients and add toxic drugs including antibiotics and they do not have control studies to see if it's the starvation and poisoning that is degrading the tissue rather than the 'virus' they allege to be in there somewhere. You want me to pinch you? Yep, I understand. Tom Cowan said this about the whole nonsensical farce as he explains what that quote from the CDC paper really means:

The shocking thing about the above quote is that using their own methods, the virologists found that solutions containing SARS-CoV-2 – even in high amounts – were NOT, I repeat NOT, infective to any of the three human tissue cultures they tested. In plain English, this means they proved, on their terms, that this ‘new coronavirus’ is not infectious to human beings. It is ONLY infective to monkey kidney cells, and only then when you add two potent drugs (gentamicin and amphotericin), known to be toxic to kidneys, to the mix.

My friends, read this again and again. These virologists, published by the CDC, performed a clear proof, on their terms, showing that the SARS-CoV-2 virus is harmless to human beings. That is the only possible conclusion, but, unfortunately, this result is not even mentioned in their conclusion. They simply say they can provide virus stocks cultured only on monkey Vero cells, thanks for coming.

Cowan concluded: ‘If people really understood how this “science” was done, I would hope they would storm the gates and demand honesty, transparency and truth.’ Dr Michael Yeadon, former Vice President and Chief Scientific Adviser at drug giant Pfizer has been a vocal critic of the ‘Covid vaccine’ and its potential for multiple harm. He said in an interview in April, 2021, that ‘not one [vaccine] has the virus. He was asked why vaccines normally using a ‘dead’ version of a disease to activate the immune system were not used for ‘Covid’ and instead we had the synthetic methods of the ‘mRNA Covid vaccine’. Yeadon said that to do the former ‘you’d have to have some of [the virus] wouldn’t you?’ He added: ‘No-one’s got any – seriously.’ Yeadon said that surely they couldn’t have fooled the whole world for a year without having a virus, ‘but oddly enough ask around – no one’s got it’. He didn’t know why with all the ‘great labs’ around the world that the virus had not been isolated – ‘Maybe they’ve been too busy running bad PCR tests and vaccines that people don’t need.’ What is today called ‘science’ is not ‘science’ at all. Science is no longer what is, but whatever people can be manipulated to *believe* that it is. Real science has been hijacked by the Cult to dispense and produce the ‘expert scientists’ and contentions that suit the agenda of the Cult. How big-time this has happened with the ‘Covid’ hoax which is entirely based on fake science delivered by fake ‘scientists’ and fake ‘doctors’. The human-caused climate change hoax is also entirely based on fake science delivered by fake ‘scientists’ and fake ‘climate experts’. In both cases real

scientists, climate experts and doctors have their views suppressed and deleted by the Cult-owned science establishment, media and Silicon Valley. This is the 'science' that politicians claim to be 'following' and a common denominator of 'Covid' and climate are Cult psychopaths Bill Gates and his mate Klaus Schwab at the Gates-funded World Economic Forum. But, don't worry, it's all just a coincidence and absolutely nothing to worry about. Zzzzzzzzz.

## **What is a 'virus' REALLY?**

Dr Tom Cowan is one of many contesting the very existence of viruses let alone that they cause disease. This is understandable when there is no scientific evidence for a disease-causing 'virus'. German virologist Dr Stefan Lanka won a landmark case in 2017 in the German Supreme Court over his contention that there is no such thing as a measles virus. He had offered a big prize for anyone who could prove there is and Lanka won his case when someone sought to claim the money. There is currently a prize of more than 225,000 euros on offer from an Isolate Truth Fund for anyone who can prove the isolation of SARS-CoV-2 and its genetic substance. Lanka wrote in an article headed 'The Misconception Called Virus' that scientists think a 'virus' is causing tissue to become diseased and degraded when in fact it is the *processes they are using* which do that – not a 'virus'. Lanka has done an important job in making this point clear as Cowan did in his analysis of the CDC paper. Lanka says that all claims about viruses as disease-causing pathogens are wrong and based on 'easily recognisable, understandable and verifiable misinterpretations.' Scientists believed they were working with 'viruses' in their laboratories when they were really working with 'typical particles of specific dying tissues or cells ...' Lanka said that the tissue decaying process claimed to be caused by a 'virus' still happens when no alleged 'virus' is involved. It's the *process* that does the damage and not a 'virus'. The genetic sample is deprived of nutrients, removed from its energy supply through removal from the body and then doused in toxic antibiotics to remove any bacteria. He confirms again that establishment scientists do not (pinch me)

conduct control experiments to see if this is the case and if they did they would see the claims that 'viruses' are doing the damage is nonsense. He adds that during the measles 'virus' court case he commissioned an independent laboratory to perform just such a control experiment and the result was that the tissues and cells died in the exact same way as with alleged 'infected' material. This is supported by a gathering number of scientists, doctors and researchers who reject what is called 'germ theory' or the belief in the body being infected by contagious sources emitted by other people. Researchers Dawn Lester and David Parker take the same stance in their highly-detailed and sourced book *What Really Makes You Ill – Why everything you thought you knew about disease is wrong* which was recommended to me by a number of medical professionals genuinely seeking the truth. Lester and Parker say there is no provable scientific evidence to show that a 'virus' can be transmitted between people or people and animals or animals and people:

The definition also claims that viruses are the cause of many diseases, as if this has been definitively proven. But this is not the case; there is no original scientific evidence that definitively demonstrates that any virus is the cause of any disease. The burden of proof for any theory lies with those who proposed it; but none of the existing documents provides 'proof' that supports the claim that 'viruses' are pathogens.

Dr Tom Cowan employs one of his clever analogies to describe the process by which a 'virus' is named as the culprit for a disease when what is called a 'virus' is only material released by cells detoxing themselves from infiltration by chemical or radiation poisoning. The tidal wave of technologically-generated radiation in the 'smart' modern world plus all the toxic food and drink are causing this to happen more than ever. Deluded 'scientists' misread this as a gathering impact of what they wrongly label 'viruses'.

### **Paper can infect houses**

Cowan said in an article for [davidicke.com](http://davidicke.com) – with his tongue only mildly in his cheek – that he believed he had made a tremendous

discovery that may revolutionise science. He had discovered that small bits of paper are alive, 'well alive-ish', can 'infect' houses, and then reproduce themselves inside the house. The result was that this explosion of growth in the paper inside the house causes the house to explode, blowing it to smithereens. His evidence for this new theory is that in the past months he had carefully examined many of the houses in his neighbourhood and found almost no scraps of paper on the lawns and surrounds of the house. There was an occasional stray label, but nothing more. Then he would return to these same houses a week or so later and with a few, not all of them, particularly the old and decrepit ones, he found to his shock and surprise they were littered with stray bits of paper. He knew then that the paper had infected these houses, made copies of itself, and blew up the house. A young boy on a bicycle at one of the sites told him he had seen a demolition crew using dynamite to explode the house the previous week, but Cowan dismissed this as the idle thoughts of silly boys because 'I was on to something big'. He was on to how 'scientists' mistake genetic material in the detoxifying process for something they call a 'virus'. Cowan said of his house and paper story:

If this sounds crazy to you, it's because it should. This scenario is obviously nuts. But consider this admittedly embellished, for effect, current viral theory that all scientists, medical doctors and virologists currently believe.

He takes the example of the 'novel SARS-Cov2' virus to prove the point. First they take someone with an undefined illness called 'Covid-19' and don't even attempt to find any virus in their sputum. Never mind the scientists still describe how this 'virus', which they have not located attaches to a cell receptor, injects its genetic material, in 'Covid's' case, RNA, into the cell. The RNA once inserted exploits the cell to reproduce itself and makes 'thousands, nay millions, of copies of itself ... Then it emerges victorious to claim its next victim':



If you were to look in the scientific literature for proof, actual scientific proof, that uniform SARS-CoV2 viruses have been properly isolated from the sputum of a sick person, that actual spike proteins could be seen protruding from the virus (which has not been found), you would find that such evidence doesn't exist.

If you go looking in the published scientific literature for actual pictures, proof, that these spike proteins or any viral proteins are ever attached to any receptor embedded in any cell membrane, you would also find that no such evidence exists. If you were to look for a video or documented evidence of the intact virus injecting its genetic material into the body of the cell, reproducing itself and then emerging victorious by budding off the cell membrane, you would find that no such evidence exists.

The closest thing you would find is electron micrograph pictures of cellular particles, possibly attached to cell debris, both of which to be seen were stained by heavy metals, a process that completely distorts their architecture within the living organism. This is like finding bits of paper stuck to the blown-up bricks, thereby proving the paper emerged by taking pieces of the bricks on its way out.

## **The Enders baloney**

Cowan describes the 'Covid' story as being just as make-believe as his paper story and he charts back this fantasy to a Nobel Prize winner called John Enders (1897-1985), an American biomedical scientist who has been dubbed 'The Father of Modern Vaccines'. Enders is claimed to have 'discovered' the process of the viral culture which 'proved' that a 'virus' caused measles. Cowan explains how Enders did this 'by using the EXACT same procedure that has been followed by every virologist to find and characterize every new virus since 1954'. Enders took throat swabs from children with measles and immersed them in 2ml of milk. Penicillin (100u/ml) and the antibiotic streptomycin (50,g/ml) were added and the whole mix was centrifuged – rotated at high speed to separate large cellular debris from small particles and molecules as with milk and cream, for example. Cowan says that if the aim is to find little particles of genetic material ('viruses') in the snot from children with measles it would seem that the last thing you would do is mix the snot with other material – milk –that also has genetic material. 'How are you ever going to know whether whatever you found came from the snot or the milk?' He points out that streptomycin is a 'nephrotoxic' or poisonous-to-the-kidney drug. You will see the relevance of that

shortly. Cowan says that it gets worse, much worse, when Enders describes the culture medium upon which the virus 'grows': 'The culture medium consisted of bovine amniotic fluid (90%), beef embryo extract (5%), horse serum (5%), antibiotics and phenol red as an indicator of cell metabolism.' Cowan asks incredulously: 'Did he just say that the culture medium also contained fluids and tissues that are themselves rich sources of genetic material?' The genetic cocktail, or 'medium', is inoculated onto tissue and cells from rhesus monkey *kidney* tissue. This is where the importance of streptomycin comes in and currently-used antimicrobials and other drugs that are *poisonous to kidneys* and used in ALL modern viral cultures (e.g. gentamicin, streptomycin, and amphotericin). Cowan asks: 'How are you ever going to know from this witch's brew where any genetic material comes from as we now have five different sources of rich genetic material in our mix?' Remember, he says, that all genetic material, whether from monkey kidney tissues, bovine serum, milk, etc., is made from the exact same components. The same central question returns: 'How are you possibly going to know that it was the virus that killed the kidney tissue and not the toxic antibiotic and starvation rations on which you are growing the tissue?' John Enders answered the question himself – *you can't*:

A second agent was obtained from an uninoculated culture of monkey kidney cells. The cytopathic changes [death of the cells] it induced in the unstained preparations could not be distinguished with confidence from the viruses isolated from measles.

The death of the cells ('cytopathic changes') happened in exactly the same manner, whether they inoculated the kidney tissue with the measles snot or not, Cowan says. 'This is evidence that the destruction of the tissue, the very proof of viral causation of illness, was not caused by anything in the snot because they saw the same destructive effect when the snot was not even used ... the cytopathic, i.e., cell-killing, changes come from the process of the culture itself, not from any virus in any snot, period.' Enders quotes in his 1957 paper a virologist called Ruckle as reporting similar findings 'and in addition has isolated an agent from monkey kidney tissue that is so

far indistinguishable from human measles virus'. In other words, Cowan says, these particles called 'measles viruses' are simply and clearly breakdown products of the starved and poisoned tissue. For measles 'virus' see all 'viruses' including the so-called 'Covid virus'. Enders, the 'Father of Modern Vaccines', also said:

There is a potential risk in employing cultures of primate cells for the production of vaccines composed of attenuated virus, since the presence of other agents possibly latent in primate tissues cannot be definitely excluded by any known method.

Cowan further quotes from a paper published in the journal *Viruses* in May, 2020, while the 'Covid pandemic' was well underway in the media if not in reality. 'EVs' here refers to particles of genetic debris from our own tissues, such as exosomes of which more in a moment: 'The remarkable resemblance between EVs and viruses has caused quite a few problems in the studies focused on the analysis of EVs released during viral infections.' Later the paper adds that to date a reliable method that can actually guarantee a complete separation (of EVs from viruses) DOES NOT EXIST. This was published at a time when a fairy tale 'virus' was claimed in total certainty to be causing a fairy tale 'viral disease' called 'Covid-19' – a fairy tale that was already well on the way to transforming human society in the image that the Cult has worked to achieve for so long. Cowan concludes his article:

To summarize, there is no scientific evidence that pathogenic viruses exist. What we think of as 'viruses' are simply the normal breakdown products of dead and dying tissues and cells. When we are well, we make fewer of these particles; when we are starved, poisoned, suffocated by wearing masks, or afraid, we make more.

There is no engineered virus circulating and making people sick. People in laboratories all over the world are making genetically modified products to make people sick. These are called vaccines. There is no virome, no 'ecosystem' of viruses, viruses are not 8%, 50% or 100 % of our genetic material. These are all simply erroneous ideas based on the misconception called a virus.

## **What is 'Covid'? Load of bollocks**

The background described here by Cowan and Lanka was emphasised in the first video presentation that I saw by Dr Andrew Kaufman when he asked whether the 'Covid virus' was in truth a natural defence mechanism of the body called 'exosomes'. These are released by cells when in states of toxicity – see the same themes returning over and over. They are released ever more profusely as chemical and radiation toxicity increases and think of the potential effect therefore of 5G alone as its destructive frequencies infest the human energetic information field with a gathering pace (5G went online in Wuhan in 2019 as the 'virus' emerged). I'll have more about this later. Exosomes transmit a warning to the rest of the body that 'Houston, we have a problem'. Kaufman presented images of exosomes and compared them with 'Covid' under an electron microscope and the similarity was remarkable. They both attach to the same cell receptors (*claimed* in the case of 'Covid'), contain the same genetic material in the form of RNA or ribonucleic acid, and both are found in 'viral cell cultures' with damaged or dying cells. James Hildreth MD, President and Chief Executive Officer of the Meharry Medical College at Johns Hopkins, said: 'The virus is fully an exosome in every sense of the word.' Kaufman's conclusion was that there is no 'virus': 'This entire pandemic is a completely manufactured crisis ... there is no evidence of anyone dying from [this] illness.' Dr Tom Cowan and Sally Fallon Morell, authors of *The Contagion Myth*, published a statement with Dr Kaufman in February, 2021, explaining why the 'virus' does not exist and you can read it that in full in the Appendix.

'Virus' theory can be traced to the 'cell theory' in 1858 of German physician Rudolf Virchow (1821-1920) who contended that disease originates from a single cell infiltrated by a 'virus'. Dr Stefan Lanka said that findings and insights with respect to the structure, function and central importance of tissues in the creation of life, which were already known in 1858, comprehensively refute the cell theory. Virchow ignored them. We have seen the part later played by John Enders in the 1950s and Lanka notes that infection theories were only established as a global dogma through the policies and

eugenics of the Third Reich in Nazi Germany (creation of the same Sabbatian cult behind the 'Covid' hoax). Lanka said: 'Before 1933, scientists dared to contradict this theory; after 1933, these critical scientists were silenced'. Dr Tom Cowan's view is that ill-health is caused by too much of something, too little of something, or toxification from chemicals and radiation – not contagion. We must also highlight as a major source of the 'virus' theology a man still called the 'Father of Modern Virology' – Thomas Milton Rivers (1888-1962). There is no way given the Cult's long game policy that it was a coincidence for the 'Father of Modern Virology' to be director of the Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research from 1937 to 1956 when he is credited with making the Rockefeller Institute a leader in 'viral research'. Cult Rockefellerers were the force behind the creation of Big Pharma 'medicine', established the World Health Organisation in 1948, and have long and close associations with the Gates family that now runs the WHO during the pandemic hoax through mega-rich Cult gofer and psychopath Bill Gates.

Only a Renegade Mind can see through all this bullshit by asking the questions that need to be answered, not taking 'no' or prevarication for an answer, and certainly not hiding from the truth in fear of speaking it. Renegade Minds have always changed the world for the better and they will change this one no matter how bleak it may currently appear to be.

## CHAPTER SIX

### **Sequence of deceit**

*If you tell the truth, you don't have to remember anything*  
Mark Twain

**A**gainst the background that I have laid out this far the sequence that took us from an invented 'virus' in Cult-owned China in late 2019 to the fascist transformation of human society can be seen and understood in a whole new context.

We were told that a deadly disease had broken out in Wuhan and the world media began its campaign (coordinated by behavioural psychologists as we shall see) to terrify the population into unquestioning compliance. We were shown images of Chinese people collapsing in the street which never happened in the West with what was supposed to be the same condition. In the earliest days when alleged cases and deaths were few the fear register was hysterical in many areas of the media and this would expand into the common media narrative across the world. The real story was rather different, but we were never told that. The Chinese government, one of the Cult's biggest centres of global operation, said they had discovered a new illness with flu-like and pneumonia-type symptoms in a city with such toxic air that it is overwhelmed with flu-like symptoms, pneumonia and respiratory disease. Chinese scientists said it was a new – 'novel' – coronavirus which they called Sars-Cov-2 and that it caused a disease they labelled 'Covid-19'. There was no evidence for this and the 'virus' has never to this day been isolated, purified and its genetic code established from that. It

was from the beginning a computer-generated fiction. Stories of Chinese whistleblowers saying the number of deaths was being suppressed or that the 'new disease' was related to the Wuhan bio-lab misdirected mainstream and alternative media into cul-de-sacs to obscure the real truth – there was no 'virus'.

Chinese scientists took genetic material from the lung fluid of just a few people and said they had found a 'new' disease when this material had a wide range of content. There was no evidence for a 'virus' for the very reasons explained in the last two chapters. The 'virus' has never been shown to (a) exist and (b) cause any disease. People were diagnosed on symptoms that are so widespread in Wuhan and polluted China and with a PCR test that can't detect infectious disease. On this farce the whole global scam was sold to the rest of the world which would also diagnose respiratory disease as 'Covid-19' from symptoms alone or with a PCR test not testing for a 'virus'. Flu miraculously disappeared *worldwide* in 2020 and into 2021 as it was redesignated 'Covid-19'. It was really the same old flu with its 'flu-like' symptoms attributed to 'flu-like' 'Covid-19'. At the same time with very few exceptions the Chinese response of draconian lockdown and fascism was the chosen weapon to respond across the West as recommended by the Cult-owned Tedros at the Cult-owned World Health Organization run by the Cult-owned Gates. All was going according to plan. Chinese scientists – everything in China is controlled by the Cult-owned government – compared their contaminated RNA lung-fluid material with other RNA sequences and said it appeared to be just under 80 percent identical to the SARS-CoV-1 'virus' claimed to be the cause of the SARS (severe acute respiratory syndrome) 'outbreak' in 2003. They decreed that because of this the 'new virus' had to be related and they called it SARS-CoV-2. There are some serious problems with this assumption and *assumption* was all it was. Most 'factual' science turns out to be assumptions repeated into everyone-knows-that. A match of under 80-percent is meaningless. Dr Kaufman makes the point that there's a 96 percent genetic correlation between humans and chimpanzees, but 'no one would say our genetic material is part

of the chimpanzee family'. Yet the Chinese authorities were claiming that a much lower percentage, less than 80 percent, proved the existence of a new 'coronavirus'. For goodness sake human DNA is 60 percent similar to a *banana*.

## **You are feeling sleepy**

The entire 'Covid' hoax is a global Psyop, a psychological operation to program the human mind into believing and fearing a complete fantasy. A crucial aspect of this was what *appeared* to happen in Italy. It was all very well streaming out daily images of an alleged catastrophe in Wuhan, but to the Western mind it was still on the other side of the world in a very different culture and setting. A reaction of 'this could happen to me and my family' was still nothing like as intense enough for the mind-doctors. The Cult needed a Western example to push people over that edge and it chose Italy, one of its major global locations going back to the Roman Empire. An Italian 'Covid' crisis was manufactured in a particular area called Lombardy which just happens to be notorious for its toxic air and therefore respiratory disease. Wuhan, China, *déjà vu*. An hysterical media told horror stories of Italians dying from 'Covid' in their droves and how Lombardy hospitals were being overrun by a tidal wave of desperately ill people needing treatment after being struck down by the 'deadly virus'. Here was the psychological turning point the Cult had planned. Wow, if this is happening in Italy, the Western mind concluded, this indeed could happen to me and my family. Another point is that Italian authorities responded by following the Chinese blueprint so vehemently recommended by the Cult-owned World Health Organization. They imposed fascistic lockdowns on the whole country viciously policed with the help of surveillance drones sweeping through the streets seeking out anyone who escaped from mass house arrest. Livelihoods were destroyed and psychology unravelled in the way we have witnessed since in all lockdown countries. Crucial to the plan was that Italy responded in this way to set the precedent of suspending freedom and imposing fascism in a 'Western liberal democracy'. I emphasised in an



animated video explanation on [davidicke.com](http://davidicke.com) posted in the summer of 2020 how important it was to the Cult to expand the Chinese lockdown model across the West. Without this, and the bare-faced lie that non-symptomatic people could still transmit a 'disease' they didn't have, there was no way locking down the whole population, sick and not sick, could be pulled off. At just the right time and with no evidence Cult operatives and gofers claimed that people without symptoms could pass on the 'disease'. In the name of protecting the 'vulnerable' like elderly people, who lockdowns would kill by the tens of thousands, we had for the first time healthy people told to isolate as well as the sick. The great majority of people who tested positive had no symptoms because there was nothing wrong with them. It was just a trick made possible by a test not testing for the 'virus'.

Months after my animated video the Gates-funded Professor Neil Ferguson at the Gates-funded Imperial College confirmed that I was right. He didn't say it in those terms, naturally, but he did say it. Ferguson will enter the story shortly for his outrageously crazy 'computer models' that led to Britain, the United States and many other countries following the Chinese and now Italian methods of response. Put another way, following the Cult script. Ferguson said that SAGE, the UK government's scientific advisory group which has controlled 'Covid' policy from the start, wanted to follow the Chinese lockdown model (while they all continued to work and be paid), but they wondered if they could possibly, in Ferguson's words, 'get away with it in Europe'. 'Get away with it'? Who the hell do these moronic, arrogant people think they are? This appalling man Ferguson said that once Italy went into national lockdown they realised they, too, could mimic China:

It's a communist one-party state, we said. We couldn't get away with it in Europe, we thought ... and then Italy did it. And we realised we could. Behind this garbage from Ferguson is a simple fact: Doing the same as China in every country was the plan from the start and Ferguson's 'models' would play a central role in achieving that. It's just a coincidence, of course, and absolutely nothing to worry your little head about.

## **Oops, sorry, our mistake**

Once the Italian segment of the Psyop had done the job it was designed to do a very different story emerged. Italian authorities revealed that 99 percent of those who had 'died from Covid-19' in Italy had one, two, three, or more 'co-morbidities' or illnesses and health problems that could have ended their life. The US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) published a figure of 94 percent for Americans dying of 'Covid' while having other serious medical conditions – on average two to three (some five or six) other potential causes of death. In terms of death from an unproven 'virus' I say it is 100 percent. The other one percent in Italy and six percent in the US would presumably have died from 'Covid's' flu-like symptoms with a range of other possible causes in conjunction with a test not testing for the 'virus'. Fox News reported that even more startling figures had emerged in one US county in which 410 of 422 deaths attributed to 'Covid-19' had other potentially deadly health conditions. The Italian National Health Institute said later that the average age of people dying with a 'Covid-19' diagnosis in Italy was about 81. Ninety percent were over 70 with ten percent over 90. In terms of other reasons to die some 80 percent had two or more chronic diseases with half having three or more including cardiovascular problems, diabetes, respiratory problems and cancer. Why is the phantom 'Covid-19' said to kill overwhelmingly old people and hardly affect the young? Old people continually die of many causes and especially respiratory disease which you can re-diagnose 'Covid-19' while young people die in tiny numbers by comparison and rarely of respiratory disease. Old people 'die of Covid' because they die of other things that can be redesignated 'Covid' and it really is that simple.

## **Flu has flown**

The blueprint was in place. Get your illusory 'cases' from a test not testing for the 'virus' and redesignate other causes of death as 'Covid-19'. You have an instant 'pandemic' from something that is nothing more than a computer-generated fiction. With near-on a

billion people having 'flu-like' symptoms every year the potential was limitless and we can see why flu quickly and apparently miraculously disappeared *worldwide* by being diagnosed 'Covid-19'. The painfully bloody obvious was explained away by the childlike media in headlines like this in the UK '*Independent*': 'Not a single case of flu detected by Public Health England this year as Covid restrictions suppress virus'. I kid you not. The masking, social distancing and house arrest that did not make the 'Covid virus' disappear somehow did so with the 'flu virus'. Even worse the article, by a bloke called Samuel Lovett, suggested that maybe the masking, sanitising and other 'Covid' measures should continue to keep the flu away. With a ridiculousness that disturbs your breathing (it's 'Covid-19') the said Lovett wrote: 'With widespread social distancing and mask-wearing measures in place throughout the UK, the usual routes of transmission for influenza have been blocked.' He had absolutely no evidence to support that statement, but look at the consequences of him acknowledging the obvious. With flu not disappearing at all and only being relabelled 'Covid-19' he would have to contemplate that 'Covid' was a hoax on a scale that is hard to imagine. You need guts and commitment to truth to even go there and that's clearly something Samuel Lovett does not have in abundance. He would never have got it through the editors anyway.

Tens of thousands die in the United States alone every winter from flu including many with pneumonia complications. CDC figures record *45 million* Americans diagnosed with flu in 2017-2018 of which 61,000 died and some reports claim 80,000. Where was the same hysteria then that we have seen with 'Covid-19'? Some 250,000 Americans are admitted to hospital with pneumonia every year with about 50,000 cases proving fatal. About 65 million suffer respiratory disease every year and three million deaths makes this the third biggest cause of death worldwide. You only have to redesignate a portion of all these people 'Covid-19' and you have an instant global pandemic or the *appearance* of one. Why would doctors do this? They are told to do this and all but a few dare not refuse those who must be obeyed. Doctors in general are not researching their own

knowledge and instead take it direct and unquestioned from the authorities that own them and their careers. The authorities say they must now diagnose these symptoms 'Covid-19' and not flu, or whatever, and they do it. Dark suits say put 'Covid-19' on death certificates no matter what the cause of death and the doctors do it. Renegade Minds don't fall for the illusion that doctors and medical staff are all highly-intelligent, highly-principled, seekers of medical truth. *Some are*, but not the majority. They are repeaters, gofers, and yes sir, no sir, purveyors of what the system demands they purvey. The 'Covid' con is not merely confined to diseases of the lungs. Instructions to doctors to put 'Covid-19' on death certificates for anyone dying of *anything* within 28 days (or much more) of a positive test not testing for the 'virus' opened the floodgates. The term dying *with* 'Covid' and not *of* 'Covid' was coined to cover the truth. Whether it was a *with* or an *of* they were all added to the death numbers attributed to the 'deadly virus' compiled by national governments and globally by the Gates-funded Johns Hopkins operation in the United States that was so involved in those 'pandemic' simulations. Fraudulent deaths were added to the ever-growing list of fraudulent 'cases' from false positives from a false test. No wonder Professor Walter Ricciardi, scientific advisor to the Italian minister of health, said after the Lombardy hysteria had done its job that 'Covid' death rates were due to Italy having the second oldest population in the world and to *how hospitals record deaths*:

The way in which we code deaths in our country is very generous in the sense that all the people who die in hospitals with the coronavirus are deemed to be dying of the coronavirus. On re-evaluation by the National Institute of Health, only 12 per cent of death certificates have shown a direct causality from coronavirus, while 88 per cent of patients who have died have at least one pre-morbidity – many had two or three.

This is extraordinary enough when you consider the propaganda campaign to use Italy to terrify the world, but how can they even say twelve percent were genuine when the 'virus' has not been shown to exist, its 'code' is a computer program, and diagnosis comes from a test not testing for it? As in China, and soon the world, 'Covid-19' in

Italy was a redesignation of diagnosis. Lies and corruption were to become the real 'pandemic' fuelled by a pathetically-compliant medical system taking its orders from the tiny few at the top of their national hierarchy who answered to the World Health Organization which answers to Gates and the Cult. Doctors were told – ordered – to diagnose a particular set of symptoms 'Covid-19' and put that on the death certificate for any cause of death if the patient had tested positive with a test not testing for the virus or had 'Covid' symptoms like the flu. The United States even introduced big financial incentives to manipulate the figures with hospitals receiving £4,600 from the Medicare system for diagnosing someone with regular pneumonia, \$13,000 if they made the diagnosis from the same symptoms 'Covid-19' pneumonia, and \$39,000 if they put a 'Covid' diagnosed patient on a ventilator that would almost certainly kill them. A few – painfully and pathetically few – medical whistleblowers revealed (before Cult-owned YouTube deleted their videos) that they had been instructed to 'let the patient crash' and put them straight on a ventilator instead of going through a series of far less intrusive and dangerous methods as they would have done before the pandemic hoax began and the financial incentives kicked in. We are talking cold-blooded murder given that ventilators are so damaging to respiratory systems they are usually the last step before heaven awaits. Renegade Minds never fall for the belief that people in white coats are all angels of mercy and cannot be full-on psychopaths. I have explained in detail in *The Answer* how what I am describing here played out across the world coordinated by the World Health Organization through the medical hierarchies in almost every country.

### **Medical scientist calls it**

Information about the non-existence of the 'virus' began to emerge for me in late March, 2020, and mushroomed after that. I was sent an email by Sir Julian Rose, a writer, researcher, and organic farming promotor, from a medical scientist friend of his in the United States. Even at that early stage in March the scientist was able to explain

how the 'Covid' hoax was being manipulated. He said there were no reliable tests for a specific 'Covid-19 virus' and nor were there any reliable agencies or media outlets for reporting numbers of actual 'Covid-19' cases. We have seen in the long period since then that he was absolutely right. 'Every action and reaction to Covid-19 is based on totally flawed data and we simply cannot make accurate assessments,' he said. Most people diagnosed with 'Covid-19' were showing nothing more than cold and flu-like symptoms 'because most coronavirus strains *are* nothing more than cold/flu-like symptoms'. We had farcical situations like an 84-year-old German man testing positive for 'Covid-19' and his nursing home ordered to quarantine only for him to be found to have a common cold. The scientist described back then why PCR tests and what he called the 'Mickey Mouse test kits' were useless for what they were claimed to be identifying. 'The idea these kits can isolate a specific virus like Covid-19 is nonsense,' he said. Significantly, he pointed out that 'if you want to create a totally false panic about a totally false pandemic – pick a coronavirus'. This is exactly what the Cult-owned Gates, World Economic Forum and Johns Hopkins University did with their Event 201 'simulation' followed by their real-life simulation called the 'pandemic'. The scientist said that all you had to do was select the sickest of people with respiratory-type diseases in a single location – 'say Wuhan' – and administer PCR tests to them. You can then claim that anyone showing 'viral sequences' similar to a coronavirus 'which will inevitably be quite a few' is suffering from a 'new' disease:

Since you already selected the sickest flu cases a fairly high proportion of your sample will go on to die. You can then say this 'new' virus has a CFR [case fatality rate] higher than the flu and use this to infuse more concern and do more tests which will of course produce more 'cases', which expands the testing, which produces yet more 'cases' and so on and so on. Before long you have your 'pandemic', and all you have done is use a simple test kit trick to convert the worst flu and pneumonia cases into something new that doesn't ACTUALLY EXIST [my emphasis].

He said that you then 'just run the same scam in other countries' and make sure to keep the fear message running high 'so that people

will feel panicky and less able to think critically'. The only problem to overcome was the fact *there is no* actual new deadly pathogen and only regular sick people. This meant that deaths from the 'new deadly pathogen' were going to be way too low for a real new deadly virus pandemic, but he said this could be overcome in the following ways – all of which would go on to happen:

1. You can claim this is just the beginning and more deaths are imminent [you underpin this with fantasy 'computer projections']. Use this as an excuse to quarantine everyone and then claim the quarantine prevented the expected millions of dead.
2. You can [say that people] 'minimizing' the dangers are irresponsible and bully them into not talking about numbers.
3. You can talk crap about made up numbers hoping to blind people with pseudoscience.
4. You can start testing well people (who, of course, will also likely have shreds of coronavirus [RNA] in them) and thus inflate your 'case figures' with 'asymptomatic carriers' (you will of course have to spin that to sound deadly even though any virologist knows the more symptom-less cases you have the less deadly is your pathogen).

The scientist said that if you take these simple steps 'you can have your own entirely manufactured pandemic up and running in weeks'. His analysis made so early in the hoax was brilliantly prophetic of what would actually unfold. Pulling all the information together in these recent chapters we have this is simple 1, 2, 3, of how you can delude virtually the entire human population into believing in a 'virus' that doesn't exist:

- A 'Covid case' is someone who tests positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'.
- A 'Covid death' is someone who dies of *any cause* within 28 days (or much longer) of testing positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'.
- Asymptomatic means there is nothing wrong with you, but they claim you can pass on what you don't have to justify locking

down (quarantining) healthy people in totality.

The foundations of the hoax are that simple. A study involving ten million people in Wuhan, published in November, 2020, demolished the whole lie about those without symptoms passing on the 'virus'. They found '300 asymptomatic cases' and traced their contacts to find that not one of them was detected with the 'virus'.

'Asymptomatic' patients and their contacts were isolated for no less than two weeks and nothing changed. I know it's all crap, but if you are going to claim that those without symptoms can transmit 'the virus' then you must produce evidence for that and they never have. Even World Health Organization official Dr Maria Van Kerkhove, head of the emerging diseases and zoonosis unit, said as early as June, 2020, that she doubted the validity of asymptomatic transmission. She said that 'from the data we have, it still seems to be rare that an asymptomatic person actually transmits onward to a secondary individual' and by 'rare' she meant that she couldn't cite any case of asymptomatic transmission.

### **The Ferguson factor**

The problem for the Cult as it headed into March, 2020, when the script had lockdown due to start, was that despite all the manipulation of the case and death figures they still did not have enough people alleged to have died from 'Covid' to justify mass house arrest. This was overcome in the way the scientist described: 'You can claim this is just the beginning and more deaths are imminent ... Use this as an excuse to quarantine everyone and then claim the quarantine prevented the expected millions of dead.' Enter one Professor Neil Ferguson, the Gates-funded 'epidemiologist' at the Gates-funded Imperial College in London. Ferguson is Britain's Christian Drosten in that he has a dire record of predicting health outcomes, but is still called upon to advise government on the next health outcome when another 'crisis' comes along. This may seem to be a strange and ridiculous thing to do. Why would you keep turning for policy guidance to people who have a history of being



monumentally wrong? Ah, but it makes sense from the Cult point of view. These 'experts' keep on producing predictions that suit the Cult agenda for societal transformation and so it was with Neil Ferguson as he revealed his horrific (and clearly insane) computer model predictions that allowed lockdowns to be imposed in Britain, the United States and many other countries. Ferguson does not have even an A-level in biology and would appear to have no formal training in computer modelling, medicine or epidemiology, according to Derek Winton, an MSc in Computational Intelligence. He wrote an article somewhat aghast at what Ferguson did which included taking no account of respiratory disease 'seasonality' which means it is far worse in the winter months. Who would have thought that respiratory disease could be worse in the winter? Well, certainly not Ferguson.

The massively China-connected Imperial College and its bizarre professor provided the excuse for the long-incubated Chinese model of human control to travel westward at lightning speed. Imperial College confirms on its website that it collaborates with the Chinese Research Institute; publishes more than 600 research papers every year with Chinese research institutions; has 225 Chinese staff; 2,600 Chinese students – the biggest international group; 7,000 former students living in China which is the largest group outside the UK; and was selected for a tour by China's President Xi Jinping during his state visit to the UK in 2015. The college takes major donations from China and describes itself as the UK's number one university collaborator with Chinese research institutions. The China communist/fascist government did not appear phased by the woeful predictions of Ferguson and Imperial when during the lockdown that Ferguson induced the college signed a five-year collaboration deal with China tech giant Huawei that will have Huawei's indoor 5G network equipment installed at the college's West London tech campus along with an 'AI cloud platform'. The deal includes Chinese sponsorship of Imperial's Venture Catalyst entrepreneurship competition. Imperial is an example of the enormous influence the Chinese government has within British and North American

universities and research centres – and further afield. Up to 200 academics from more than a dozen UK universities are being investigated on suspicion of ‘unintentionally’ helping the Chinese government build weapons of mass destruction by ‘transferring world-leading research in advanced military technology such as aircraft, missile designs and cyberweapons’. Similar scandals have broken in the United States, but it’s all a coincidence. Imperial College serves the agenda in many other ways including the promotion of every aspect of the United Nations Agenda 21/2030 (the Great Reset) and produced computer models to show that human-caused ‘climate change’ is happening when in the real world it isn’t. Imperial College is driving the climate agenda as it drives the ‘Covid’ agenda (both Cult hoaxes) while Patrick Vallance, the UK government’s Chief Scientific Adviser on ‘Covid’, was named Chief Scientific Adviser to the UN ‘climate change’ conference known as COP26 hosted by the government in Glasgow, Scotland. ‘Covid’ and ‘climate’ are fundamentally connected.

## **Professor Woeful**

From Imperial’s bosom came Neil Ferguson still advising government despite his previous disasters and it was announced early on that he and other key people like UK Chief Medical Adviser Chris Whitty had caught the ‘virus’ as the propaganda story was being sold. Somehow they managed to survive and we had Prime Minister Boris Johnson admitted to hospital with what was said to be a severe version of the ‘virus’ in this same period. His whole policy and demeanour changed when he returned to Downing Street. It’s a small world with these government advisors – especially in their communal connections to Gates – and Ferguson had partnered with Whitty to write a paper called ‘Infectious disease: Tough choices to reduce Ebola transmission’ which involved another scare-story that didn’t happen. Ferguson’s ‘models’ predicted that up to 150,000 could die from ‘mad cow disease’, or BSE, and its version in sheep if it was transmitted to humans. BSE was not transmitted and instead triggered by an organophosphate pesticide used to treat a pest on

cows. Fewer than 200 deaths followed from the human form. Models by Ferguson and his fellow incompetents led to the unnecessary culling of millions of pigs, cattle and sheep in the foot and mouth outbreak in 2001 which destroyed the lives and livelihoods of farmers and their families who had often spent decades building their herds and flocks. Vast numbers of these animals did not have foot and mouth and had no contact with the infection. Another 'expert' behind the cull was Professor Roy Anderson, a computer modeller at Imperial College specialising in the epidemiology of *human*, not animal, disease. Anderson has served on the Bill and Melinda Gates Grand Challenges in Global Health advisory board and chairs another Gates-funded organisation. Gates is everywhere.

In a precursor to the 'Covid' script Ferguson backed closing schools 'for prolonged periods' over the swine flu 'pandemic' in 2009 and said it would affect a third of the world population if it continued to spread at the speed he claimed to be happening. His mates at Imperial College said much the same and a news report said: 'One of the authors, the epidemiologist and disease modeller Neil Ferguson, who sits on the World Health Organisation's emergency committee for the outbreak, said the virus had "full pandemic potential".' Professor Liam Donaldson, the Chris Whitty of his day as Chief Medical Officer, said the worst case could see 30 percent of the British people infected by swine flu with 65,000 dying. Ferguson and Donaldson were indeed proved correct when at the end of the year the number of deaths attributed to swine flu was 392. The term 'expert' is rather liberally applied unfortunately, not least to complete idiots. Swine flu 'projections' were great for GlaxoSmithKline (GSK) as millions rolled in for its Pandemrix influenza vaccine which led to brain damage with children most affected. The British government (taxpayers) paid out more than £60 million in compensation after GSK was given immunity from prosecution. Yet another 'Covid' déjà vu. Swine flu was supposed to have broken out in Mexico, but Dr Wolfgang Wodarg, a German doctor, former member of parliament and critic of the 'Covid' hoax, observed 'the spread of swine flu' in Mexico City at the time. He

said: 'What we experienced in Mexico City was a very mild flu which did not kill more than usual – which killed even fewer people than usual.' Hying the fear against all the facts is not unique to 'Covid' and has happened many times before. Ferguson is reported to have over-estimated the projected death toll of bird flu (H5N1) by some three million-fold, but bird flu vaccine makers again made a killing from the scare. This is some of the background to the Neil Ferguson who produced the perfectly-timed computer models in early 2020 predicting that half a million people would die in Britain without draconian lockdown and 2.2 million in the United States. Politicians panicked, people panicked, and lockdowns of alleged short duration were instigated to 'flatten the curve' of cases gleaned from a test not testing for the 'virus'. I said at the time that the public could forget the 'short duration' bit. This was an agenda to destroy the livelihoods of the population and force them into mass control through dependency and there was going to be nothing 'short' about it. American researcher Daniel Horowitz described the consequences of the 'models' spewed out by Gates-funded Ferguson and Imperial College:

What led our government and the governments of many other countries into panic was a single Imperial College of UK study, funded by global warming activists, that predicted 2.2 million deaths if we didn't lock down the country. In addition, the reported 8-9% death rate in Italy scared us into thinking there was some other mutation of this virus that they got, which might have come here.

Together with the fact that we were finally testing and had the ability to actually report new cases, we thought we were headed for a death spiral. But again ... we can't flatten a curve if we don't know when the curve started.

How about it *never* started?

## **Giving them what they want**

An investigation by German news outlet *Welt Am Sonntag* (*World on Sunday*) revealed how in March, 2020, the German government gathered together 'leading scientists from several research institutes and universities' and 'together, they were to produce a [modelling]

paper that would serve as legitimization for further tough political measures'. The Cult agenda was justified by computer modelling not based on evidence or reality; it was specifically constructed to justify the Cult demand for lockdowns all over the world to destroy the independent livelihoods of the global population. All these modellers and everyone responsible for the 'Covid' hoax have a date with a trial like those in Nuremberg after World War Two when Nazis faced the consequences of their war crimes. These corrupt-beyond-belief 'modellers' wrote the paper according to government instructions and it said that that if lockdown measures were lifted then up to one million Germans would die from 'Covid-19' adding that some would die 'agonizingly at home, gasping for breath' unable to be treated by hospitals that couldn't cope. All lies. No matter – it gave the Cult all that it wanted. What did long-time government 'modeller' Neil Ferguson say? If the UK and the United States didn't lockdown half a million would die in Britain and 2.2 million Americans. Anyone see a theme here? 'Modellers' are such a crucial part of the lockdown strategy that we should look into their background and follow the money. Researcher Rosemary Frei produced an excellent article headlined 'The Modelling-paper Mafiosi'. She highlights a guy called John Edmunds, a British epidemiologist, and professor in the Faculty of Epidemiology and Population Health at the London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine. He studied at Imperial College. Edmunds is a member of government 'Covid' advisory bodies which have been dictating policy, the New and Emerging Respiratory Virus Threats Advisory Group (NERVTAG) and the Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE).

Ferguson, another member of NERVTAG and SAGE, led the way with the original 'virus' and Edmunds has followed in the 'variant' stage and especially the so-called UK or Kent variant known as the 'Variant of Concern' (VOC) B.1.1.7. He said in a co-written report for the Centre for Mathematical modelling of Infectious Diseases at the London School of Hygiene and Tropical Medicine, with input from the Centre's 'Covid-19' Working Group, that there was 'a realistic

possibility that VOC B.1.1.7 is associated with an increased risk of death compared to non-VOC viruses'. Fear, fear, fear, get the vaccine, fear, fear, fear, get the vaccine. Rosemary Frei reveals that almost all the paper's authors and members of the modelling centre's 'Covid-19' Working Group receive funding from the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation and/or the associated Gates-funded Wellcome Trust. The paper was published by e-journal *Medrx* *χiv* which only publishes papers not peer-reviewed and the journal was established by an organisation headed by Facebook's Mark Zuckerberg and his missus. What a small world it is. Frei discovered that Edmunds is on the Scientific Advisory Board of the Coalition for Epidemic Preparedness Innovations (CEPI) which was established by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation, Klaus Schwab's Davos World Economic Forum and Big Pharma giant Wellcome. CEPI was 'launched in Davos [in 2017] to develop vaccines to stop future epidemics', according to its website. 'Our mission is to accelerate the development of vaccines against emerging infectious diseases and enable equitable access to these vaccines for people during outbreaks.' What kind people they are. Rosemary Frei reveals that Public Health England (PHE) director Susan Hopkins is an author of her organisation's non-peer-reviewed reports on 'new variants'. Hopkins is a professor of infectious diseases at London's Imperial College which is gifted tens of millions of dollars a year by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. Gates-funded modelling disaster Neil Ferguson also co-authors Public Health England reports and he spoke in December, 2020, about the potential danger of the B.1.1.7. 'UK variant' promoted by Gates-funded modeller John Edmunds. When I come to the 'Covid vaccines' the 'new variants' will be shown for what they are – bollocks.

## **Connections, connections**

All these people and modellers are lockdown-obsessed or, put another way, they demand what the Cult demands. Edmunds said in January, 2021, that to ease lockdowns too soon would be a disaster and they had to 'vaccinate much, much, much more widely than the

elderly'. Rosemary Frei highlights that Edmunds is married to Jeanne Pimenta who is described in a LinkedIn profile as director of epidemiology at GlaxoSmithKline (GSK) and she held shares in the company. Patrick Vallance, co-chair of SAGE and the government's Chief Scientific Adviser, is a former executive of GSK and has a deferred bonus of shares in the company worth £600,000. GSK has serious business connections with Bill Gates and is collaborating with mRNA-'vaccine' company CureVac to make 'vaccines' for the new variants that Edmunds is talking about. GSK is planning a 'Covid vaccine' with drug giant Sanofi. Puppets Prime Minister Boris Johnson announced in the spring of 2021 that up to 60 million vaccine doses were to be made at the GSK facility at Barnard Castle in the English North East. Barnard Castle, with a population of just 6,000, was famously visited in breach of lockdown rules in April, 2020, by Johnson aide Dominic Cummings who said that he drove there 'to test his eyesight' before driving back to London. Cummings would be better advised to test his integrity – not that it would take long. The GSK facility had nothing to do with his visit then although I'm sure Patrick Vallance would have been happy to arrange an introduction and some tea and biscuits. Ruthless psychopath Gates has made yet another fortune from vaccines in collaboration with Big Pharma companies and gushes at the phenomenal profits to be made from vaccines – more than a 20-to-1 return as he told one interviewer. Gates also tweeted in December, 2019, with the foreknowledge of what was coming: 'What's next for our foundation? I'm particularly excited about what the next year could mean for one of the best buys in global health: vaccines.'

Modeller John Edmunds is a big promoter of vaccines as all these people appear to be. He's the dean of the London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine's Faculty of Epidemiology and Population Health which is primarily funded by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation and the Gates-established and funded GAVI vaccine alliance which is the Gates vehicle to vaccinate the world. The organisation Doctors Without Borders has described GAVI as being 'aimed more at supporting drug-industry desires to promote new

products than at finding the most efficient and sustainable means for fighting the diseases of poverty'. But then that's why the psychopath Gates created it. John Edmunds said in a video that the London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine is involved in every aspect of vaccine development including large-scale clinical trials. He contends that mathematical modelling can show that vaccines protect individuals and society. That's on the basis of shit in and shit out, I take it. Edmunds serves on the UK Vaccine Network as does Ferguson and the government's foremost 'Covid' adviser, the grim-faced, dark-eyed Chris Whitty. The Vaccine Network says it works 'to support the government to identify and shortlist targeted investment opportunities for the most promising vaccines and vaccine technologies that will help combat infectious diseases with epidemic potential, and to address structural issues related to the UK's broader vaccine infrastructure'. Ferguson is acting Director of the Imperial College Vaccine Impact Modelling Consortium which has funding from the Bill and Melina Gates Foundation and the Gates-created GAVI 'vaccine alliance'. Anyone wonder why these characters see vaccines as the answer to every problem? Ferguson is wildly enthusiastic in his support for GAVI's campaign to vaccinate children en masse in poor countries. You would expect someone like Gates who has constantly talked about the need to reduce the population to want to fund vaccines to keep more people alive. I'm sure that's why he does it. The John Edmunds London School of Hygiene & Tropical Medicine (LSHTM) has a Vaccines Manufacturing Innovation Centre which develops, tests and commercialises vaccines. Rosemary Frei writes:

The vaccines centre also performs affiliated activities like combating 'vaccine hesitancy'. The latter includes the Vaccine Confidence Project. The project's stated purpose is, among other things, 'to provide analysis and guidance for early response and engagement with the public to ensure sustained confidence in vaccines and immunisation'. The Vaccine Confidence Project's director is LSHTM professor Heidi Larson. For more than a decade she's been researching how to combat vaccine hesitancy.

How the bloody hell can blokes like John Edmunds and Neil Ferguson with those connections and financial ties model 'virus' case



and death projections for the government and especially in a way that gives their paymasters like Gates exactly what they want? It's insane, but this is what you find throughout the world.

### **'Covid' is not dangerous, oops, wait, yes it is**

Only days before Ferguson's nightmare scenario made Jackboot Johnson take Britain into a China-style lockdown to save us from a deadly 'virus' the UK government website gov.uk was reporting something very different to Ferguson on a page of official government guidance for 'high consequence infectious diseases (HCID)'. It said this about 'Covid-19':

*As of 19 March 2020, COVID-19 is no longer considered to be a high consequence infectious diseases (HCID) in the UK [my emphasis].* The 4 nations public health HCID group made an interim recommendation in January 2020 to classify COVID-19 as an HCID. This was based on consideration of the UK HCID criteria about the virus and the disease with information available during the early stages of the outbreak.

Now that more is known about COVID-19, the public health bodies in the UK have reviewed the most up to date information about COVID-19 against the UK HCID criteria. They have determined that several features have now changed; in particular, more information is available about mortality rates (low overall), and there is now greater clinical awareness and a specific and sensitive laboratory test, the availability of which continues to increase. The Advisory Committee on Dangerous Pathogens (ACDP) is also of the opinion that COVID-19 should no longer be classified as an HCID.

Soon after the government had been exposed for downgrading the risk they upgraded it again and everyone was back to singing from the same Cult hymn book. Ferguson and his fellow Gates clones indicated that lockdowns and restrictions would have to continue until a Gates-funded vaccine was developed. Gates said the same because Ferguson and his like were repeating the Gates script which is the Cult script. 'Flatten the curve' became an ongoing nightmare of continuing lockdowns with periods in between of severe restrictions in pursuit of destroying independent incomes and had nothing to do with protecting health about which the Cult gives not a shit. Why wouldn't Ferguson be pushing a vaccine 'solution' when he's owned by vaccine-obsessive Gates who makes a fortune from them and

when Ferguson heads the Vaccine Impact Modelling Consortium at Imperial College funded by the Gates Foundation and GAVI, the 'vaccine alliance', created by Gates as his personal vaccine promotion operation? To compound the human catastrophe that Ferguson's 'models' did so much to create he was later exposed for breaking his own lockdown rules by having sexual liaisons with his married girlfriend Antonia Staats at his home while she was living at another location with her husband and children. Staats was a 'climate' activist and senior campaigner at the Soros-funded Avaaz which I wouldn't trust to tell me that grass is green. Ferguson had to resign as a government advisor over this hypocrisy in May, 2020, but after a period of quiet he was back being quoted by the ridiculous media on the need for more lockdowns and a vaccine rollout. Other government-advising 'scientists' from Imperial College held the fort in his absence and said lockdown could be indefinite until a vaccine was found. The Cult script was being sung by the payrolled choir. I said there was no intention of going back to 'normal' when the 'vaccine' came because the 'vaccine' is part of a very different agenda that I will discuss in Human 2.0. Why would the Cult want to let the world go back to normal when destroying that normal forever was the whole point of what was happening? House arrest, closing businesses and schools through lockdown, (un)social distancing and masks all followed the Ferguson fantasy models. Again as I predicted (these people are so predictable) when the 'vaccine' arrived we were told that house arrest, lockdown, (un)social distancing and masks would still have to continue. I will deal with the masks in the next chapter because they are of fundamental importance.

## **Where's the 'pandemic'?**

Any mildly in-depth assessment of the figures revealed what was really going on. Cult-funded and controlled organisations still have genuine people working within them such is the number involved. So it is with Genevieve Briand, assistant program director of the Applied Economics master's degree program at Johns Hopkins

University. She analysed the impact that 'Covid-19' had on deaths from *all* causes in the United States using official data from the CDC for the period from early February to early September, 2020. She found that allegedly 'Covid' *related*-deaths exceeded those from heart disease which she found strange with heart disease always the biggest cause of fatalities. Her research became even more significant when she noted the sudden decline in 2020 of *all* non-'Covid' deaths: 'This trend is completely contrary to the pattern observed in all previous years ... the total decrease in deaths by other causes almost exactly equals the increase in deaths by Covid-19.' This was such a game, set and match in terms of what was happening that Johns Hopkins University deleted the article on the grounds that it 'was being used to support false and dangerous inaccuracies about the impact of the pandemic'. No – because it exposed the scam from official CDC figures and this was confirmed when those figures were published in January, 2021. Here we can see the effect of people dying from heart attacks, cancer, road accidents and gunshot wounds – *anything* – having 'Covid-19' on the death certificate along with those diagnosed from 'symptoms' who had even not tested positive with a test not testing for the 'virus'. I am not kidding with the gunshot wounds, by the way. Brenda Bock, coroner in Grand County, Colorado, revealed that two gunshot victims tested positive for the 'virus' within the previous 30 days and were therefore classified as 'Covid deaths'. Bock said: 'These two people had tested positive for Covid, but that's not what killed them. A gunshot wound is what killed them.' She said she had not even finished her investigation when the state listed the gunshot victims as deaths due to the 'virus'. The death and case figures for 'Covid-19' are an absolute joke and yet they are repeated like parrots by the media, politicians and alleged medical 'experts'. The official Cult narrative is the only show in town.

Genevieve Briand found that deaths from all causes were not exceptional in 2020 compared with previous years and a Spanish magazine published figures that said the same about Spain which was a 'Covid' propaganda hotspot at one point. *Discovery Salud*, a

health and medicine magazine, quoted government figures which showed how 17,000 *fewer* people died in Spain in 2020 than in 2019 and more than 26,000 fewer than in 2018. The age-standardised mortality rate for England and Wales when age distribution is taken into account was significantly lower in 2020 than the 1970s, 80s and 90s, and was only the ninth highest since 2000. Where is the 'pandemic'?

Post mortems and autopsies virtually disappeared for 'Covid' deaths amid claims that 'virus-infected' bodily fluids posed a risk to those carrying out the autopsy. This was rejected by renowned German pathologist and forensic doctor Klaus Püschel who said that he and his staff had by then done 150 autopsies on 'Covid' patients with no problems at all. He said they were needed to know why some 'Covid' patients suffered blood clots and not severe respiratory infections. The 'virus' is, after all, called SARS or 'severe acute respiratory syndrome'. I highlighted in the spring of 2020 this phenomenon and quoted New York intensive care doctor Cameron Kyle-Sidell who posted a soon deleted YouTube video to say that they had been told to prepare to treat an infectious disease called 'Covid-19', but that was not what they were dealing with. Instead he likened the lung condition of the most severely ill patients to what you would expect with cabin depressurisation in a plane at 30,000 feet or someone dropped on the top of Everest without oxygen or acclimatisation. I have never said this is not happening to a small minority of alleged 'Covid' patients – I am saying this is not caused by a phantom 'contagious virus'. Indeed Kyle-Sidell said that 'Covid-19' was not the disease they were told was coming their way. 'We are operating under a medical paradigm that is untrue,' he said, and he believed they were treating the wrong disease: 'These people are being slowly starved of oxygen.' Patients would take off their oxygen masks in a state of fear and stress and while they were blue in the face on the brink of death. They did not look like patients dying of pneumonia. You can see why they don't want autopsies when their virus doesn't exist and there is another condition in some people that they don't wish to be uncovered. I should add here that

the 5G system of millimetre waves was being rapidly introduced around the world in 2020 and even more so now as they fire 5G at the Earth from satellites. At 60 gigahertz within the 5G range that frequency interacts with the oxygen molecule and stops people breathing in sufficient oxygen to be absorbed into the bloodstream. They are installing 5G in schools and hospitals. The world is not mad or anything. 5G can cause major changes to the lungs and blood as I detail in *The Answer* and these consequences are labelled 'Covid-19', the alleged symptoms of which can be caused by 5G and other electromagnetic frequencies as cells respond to radiation poisoning.

### **The 'Covid death' scam**

Dr Scott Jensen, a Minnesota state senator and medical doctor, exposed 'Covid' Medicare payment incentives to hospitals and death certificate manipulation. He said he was sent a seven-page document by the US Department of Health 'coaching' him on how to fill out death certificates which had never happened before. The document said that he didn't need to have a laboratory test for 'Covid-19' to put that on the death certificate and that shocked him when death certificates are supposed to be about facts. Jensen described how doctors had been 'encouraged, if not pressured' to make a diagnosis of 'Covid-19' if they thought it was probable or '*presumed*'. No positive test was necessary – not that this would have mattered anyway. He said doctors were told to diagnose 'Covid' by symptoms when these were the same as colds, allergies, other respiratory problems, and certainly with influenza which 'disappeared' in the 'Covid' era. A common sniffle was enough to get the dreaded verdict. Ontario authorities decreed that a single care home resident with *one* symptom from a long list must lead to the isolation of the entire home. Other courageous doctors like Jensen made the same point about death figure manipulation and how deaths by other causes were falling while 'Covid-19 deaths' were rising at the same rate due to re-diagnosis. Their videos rarely survive long on YouTube with its Cult-supporting algorithms courtesy of CEO Susan Wojcicki and her bosses at Google. Figure-tampering was so glaring

and ubiquitous that even officials were letting it slip or outright saying it. UK chief scientific adviser Patrick Vallance said on one occasion that 'Covid' on the death certificate doesn't mean 'Covid' was the cause of death (so why the hell is it there?) and we had the rare sight of a BBC reporter telling the truth when she said: 'Someone could be successfully treated for Covid, in say April, discharged, and then in June, get run over by a bus and die ... That person would still be counted as a Covid death in England.' Yet the BBC and the rest of the world media went on repeating the case and death figures as if they were real. Illinois Public Health Director Dr Ngozi Ezike revealed the deceit while her bosses must have been clenching their buttocks:

If you were in a hospice and given a few weeks to live and you were then found to have Covid that would be counted as a Covid death. [There might be] a clear alternate cause, but it is still listed as a Covid death. So everyone listed as a Covid death doesn't mean that was the cause of the death, but that they had Covid at the time of death.

Yes, a 'Covid virus' never shown to exist and tested for with a test not testing for the 'virus'. In the first period of the pandemic hoax through the spring of 2020 the process began of designating almost everything a 'Covid' death and this has continued ever since. I sat in a restaurant one night listening to a loud conversation on the next table where a family was discussing in bewilderment how a relative who had no symptoms of 'Covid', and had died of a long-term problem, could have been diagnosed a death by the 'virus'. I could understand their bewilderment. If they read this book they will know why this medical fraud has been perpetrated the world over.

### **Some media truth shock**

The media ignored the evidence of death certificate fraud until eventually one columnist did speak out when she saw it first-hand. Bel Mooney is a long-time national newspaper journalist in Britain currently working for the *Daily Mail*. Her article on February 19th, 2021, carried this headline: 'My dad Ted passed three Covid tests

and died of a chronic illness yet he's officially one of Britain's 120,000 victims of the virus and is far from alone ... so how many more are there?' She told how her 99-year-old father was in a care home with a long-standing chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and vascular dementia. Maybe, but he was still aware enough to tell her from the start that there was no 'virus' and he refused the 'vaccine' for that reason. His death was not unexpected given his chronic health problems and Mooney said she was shocked to find that 'Covid-19' was declared the cause of death on his death certificate. She said this was a 'bizarre and unacceptable untruth' for a man with long-time health problems who had tested negative twice at the home for the 'virus'. I was also shocked by this story although not by what she said. I had been highlighting the death certificate manipulation for ten months. It was the confirmation that a professional full-time journalist only realised this was going on when it affected her directly and neither did she know that whether her dad tested positive or negative was irrelevant with the test not testing for the 'virus'. Where had she been? She said she did not believe in 'conspiracy theories' without knowing I'm sure that this and 'conspiracy theorists' were terms put into widespread circulation by the CIA in the 1960s to discredit those who did not accept the ridiculous official story of the Kennedy assassination. A blanket statement of 'I don't believe in conspiracy theories' is always bizarre. The dictionary definition of the term alone means the world is drowning in conspiracies. What she said was even more daft when her dad had just been affected by the 'Covid' conspiracy. Why else does she think that 'Covid-19' was going on the death certificates of people who died of something else?

To be fair once she saw from personal experience what was happening she didn't mince words. Mooney was called by the care home on the morning of February 9th to be told her father had died in his sleep. When she asked for the official cause of death what came back was 'Covid-19'. Mooney challenged this and was told there had been deaths from Covid on the dementia floor (confirmed by a test not testing for the 'virus') so they considered it 'reasonable

to assume'. 'But doctor,' Mooney rightly protested, 'an assumption isn't a diagnosis.' She said she didn't blame the perfectly decent and sympathetic doctor – 'he was just doing his job'. Sorry, but that's *bullshit*. He wasn't doing his job at all. He was putting a false cause of death on the death certificate and that is a criminal offence for which he should be brought to account and the same with the millions of doctors worldwide who have done the same. They were not doing their job they were following orders and that must not wash at new Nuremberg trials any more than it did at the first ones. Mooney's doctor was 'assuming' (presuming) as he was told to, but 'just following orders' makes no difference to his actions. A doctor's job is to serve the patient and the truth, not follow orders, but that's what they have done all over the world and played a central part in making the 'Covid' hoax possible with all its catastrophic consequences for humanity. Shame on them and they must answer for their actions. Mooney said her disquiet worsened when she registered her father's death by telephone and was told by the registrar there had been very many other cases like hers where 'the deceased' had not tested positive for 'Covid' yet it was recorded as the cause of death. The test may not matter, but those involved at their level *think* it matters and it shows a callous disregard for accurate diagnosis. The pressure to do this is coming from the top of the national 'health' pyramids which in turn obey the World Health Organization which obeys Gates and the Cult. Mooney said the registrar agreed that this must distort the national figures adding that 'the strangest thing is that every winter we record countless deaths from flu, and this winter there have been none. Not one!' She asked if the registrar thought deaths from flu were being misdiagnosed and lumped together with 'Covid' deaths. The answer was a 'puzzled yes'. Mooney said that the funeral director said the same about 'Covid' deaths which had nothing to do with 'Covid'. They had lost count of the number of families upset by this and other funeral companies in different countries have had the same experience. Mooney wrote:



The nightly shroud-waving and shocking close-ups of pain imposed on us by the TV news bewildered and terrified the population into eager compliance with lockdowns. We were invited to 'save the NHS' and to grieve for strangers – the real-life loved ones behind those shocking death counts. Why would the public imagine what I now fear, namely that the way Covid-19 death statistics are compiled might make the numbers seem greater than they are?

Oh, just a little bit – like 100 percent.

## **Do the maths**

Mooney asked why a country would wish to skew its mortality figures by wrongly certifying deaths? What had been going on? Well, if you don't believe in conspiracies you will never find the answer which is that *it's a conspiracy*. She did, however, describe what she had discovered as a 'national scandal'. In reality it's a global scandal and happening everywhere. Pillars of this conspiracy were all put into place before the button was pressed with the Drosten PCR protocol and high amplifications to produce the cases and death certificate changes to secure illusory 'Covid' deaths. Mooney notes that normally two doctors were needed to certify a death, with one having to know the patient, and how the rules were changed in the spring of 2020 to allow one doctor to do this. In the same period 'Covid deaths' were decreed to be all cases where Covid-19 was put on the death certificate even without a positive test or any symptoms. Mooney asked: 'How many of the 30,851 (as of January 15) care home resident deaths with Covid-19 on the certificate (32.4 per cent of all deaths so far) were based on an assumption, like that of my father? And what has that done to our national psyche?' All of them is the answer to the first question and it has devastated and dismantled the national psyche, actually the global psyche, on a colossal scale. In the UK case and death data is compiled by organisations like Public Health England (PHE) and the Office for National Statistics (ONS). Mooney highlights the insane policy of counting a death from any cause as 'Covid-19' if this happens within 28 days of a positive test (with a test not testing for the 'virus') and she points out that ONS statistics reflect deaths 'involving Covid' 'or due to Covid' which meant in practice any

death where 'Covid-19' was mentioned on the death certificate. She described the consequences of this fraud:

Most people will accept the narrative they are fed, so panicky governments here and in Europe witnessed the harsh measures enacted in totalitarian China and jumped into lockdown. Headlines about Covid deaths tolled like the knell that would bring doomsday to us all. Fear stalked our empty streets. Politicians parroted the frankly ridiculous aim of 'zero Covid' and shut down the economy, while most British people agreed that lockdown was essential and (astonishingly to me, as a patriotic Brit) even wanted more restrictions.

For what? Lies on death certificates? Never mind the grim toll of lives ruined, suicides, schools closed, rising inequality, depression, cancelled hospital treatments, cancer patients in a torture of waiting, poverty, economic devastation, loneliness, families kept apart, and so on. How many lives have been lost as a direct result of lockdown?

She said that we could join in a national chorus of shock and horror at reaching the 120,000 death toll which was surely certain to have been totally skewed all along, but what about the human cost of lockdown justified by these 'death figures'? *The British Medical Journal* had reported a 1,493 percent increase in cases of children taken to Great Ormond Street Hospital with abusive head injuries alone and then there was the effect on families:

Perhaps the most shocking thing about all this is that families have been kept apart – and obeyed the most irrational, changing rules at the whim of government – because they believed in the statistics. They succumbed to fear, which his generation rejected in that war fought for freedom. Dad (God rest his soul) would be angry. And so am I.

Another theme to watch is that in the winter months when there are more deaths from all causes they focus on 'Covid' deaths and in the summer when the British Lung Foundation says respiratory disease plummets by 80 percent they rage on about 'cases'. Either way fascism on population is always the answer.

## **Nazi eugenics in the 21st century**

Elderly people in care homes have been isolated from their families month after lonely month with no contact with relatives and grandchildren who were banned from seeing them. We were told

that lockdown fascism was to 'protect the vulnerable' like elderly people. At the same time Do Not Resuscitate (DNR) orders were placed on their medical files so that if they needed resuscitation it wasn't done and 'Covid-19' went on their death certificates. Old people were not being 'protected' they were being culled – murdered in truth. DNR orders were being decreed for disabled and young people with learning difficulties or psychological problems. The UK Care Quality Commission, a non-departmental body of the Department of Health and Social Care, found that 34 percent of those working in health and social care were pressured into placing 'do not attempt cardiopulmonary resuscitation' orders on 'Covid' patients who suffered from disabilities and learning difficulties without involving the patient or their families in the decision. UK judges ruled that an elderly woman with dementia should have the DNA-manipulating 'Covid vaccine' against her son's wishes and that a man with severe learning difficulties should have the jab despite his family's objections. Never mind that many had already died. The judiciary always supports doctors and government in fascist dictatorships. They wouldn't dare do otherwise. A horrific video was posted showing fascist officers from Los Angeles police forcibly giving the 'Covid' shot to women with special needs who were screaming that they didn't want it. The same fascists are seen giving the jab to a sleeping elderly woman in a care home. This is straight out of the Nazi playbook. Hitler's Nazis committed mass murder of the mentally ill and physically disabled throughout Germany and occupied territories in the programme that became known as Aktion T4, or just T4. Sabbatian-controlled Hitler and his grotesque crazies set out to kill those they considered useless and unnecessary. The Reich Committee for the Scientific Registering of Hereditary and Congenital Illnesses registered the births of babies identified by physicians to have 'defects'. By 1941 alone more than 5,000 children were murdered by the state and it is estimated that in total the number of innocent people killed in Aktion T4 was between 275,000 and 300,000. Parents were told their children had been sent away for 'special treatment' never to return. It is rather pathetic to see claims about plans for new extermination camps being dismissed today

when the same force behind current events did precisely that 80 years ago. Margaret Sanger was a Cult operative who used 'birth control' to sanitise her programme of eugenics. Organisations she founded became what is now Planned Parenthood. Sanger proposed that 'the whole dysgenic population would have its choice of segregation or sterilization'. These included epileptics, 'feeble-minded', and prostitutes. Sanger opposed charity because it perpetuated 'human waste'. She reveals the Cult mentality and if anyone thinks that extermination camps are a 'conspiracy theory' their naivety is touching if breathtakingly stupid.

If you don't believe that doctors can act with callous disregard for their patients it is worth considering that doctors and medical staff agreed to put government-decreed DNR orders on medical files and do nothing when resuscitation is called for. I don't know what you call such people in your house. In mine they are Nazis from the Josef Mengele School of Medicine. Phenomenal numbers of old people have died worldwide from the effects of lockdown, depression, lack of treatment, the 'vaccine' (more later) and losing the will to live. A common response at the start of the manufactured pandemic was to remove old people from hospital beds and transfer them to nursing homes. The decision would result in a mass cull of elderly people in those homes through lack of treatment – *not* 'Covid'. Care home whistleblowers have told how once the 'Covid' era began doctors would not come to their homes to treat patients and they were begging for drugs like antibiotics that often never came. The most infamous example was ordered by New York governor Andrew Cuomo, brother of a moronic CNN host, who amazingly was given an Emmy Award for his handling of the 'Covid crisis' by the ridiculous Wokers that hand them out. Just how ridiculous could be seen in February, 2021, when a Department of Justice and FBI investigation began into how thousands of old people in New York died in nursing homes after being discharged from hospital to make way for 'Covid' patients on Cuomo's say-so – and how he and his staff covered up these facts. This couldn't have happened to a nicer psychopath. Even then there was a 'Covid' spin. Reports said that

thousands of old people who tested positive for 'Covid' in hospital were transferred to nursing homes to both die of 'Covid' and transmit it to others. No – they were in hospital because they were ill and the fact that they tested positive with a test not testing for the 'virus' is irrelevant. They were ill often with respiratory diseases ubiquitous in old people near the end of their lives. Their transfer out of hospital meant that their treatment stopped and many would go on to die.

### **They're old. Who gives a damn?**

I have exposed in the books for decades the Cult plan to cull the world's old people and even to introduce at some point what they call a 'demise pill' which at a certain age everyone would take and be out of here by law. In March, 2021, Spain legalised euthanasia and assisted suicide following the Netherlands, Belgium, Luxembourg and Canada on the Tiptoe to the demise pill. Treatment of old people by many 'care' homes has been a disgrace in the 'Covid' era. There are many, many, caring staff – I know some. There have, however, been legions of stories about callous treatment of old people and their families. Police were called when families came to take their loved ones home in the light of isolation that was killing them. They became prisoners of the state. Care home residents in insane, fascist Ontario, Canada, were not allowed to leave their *room* once the 'Covid' hoax began. UK staff have even wheeled elderly people away from windows where family members were talking with them. Oriana Criscuolo from Stockport in the English North West dropped off some things for her 80-year-old father who has Parkinson's disease and dementia and she wanted to wave to him through a ground-floor window. She was told that was 'illegal'. When she went anyway they closed the curtains in the middle of the day. Oriana said:

It's just unbelievable. I cannot understand how care home staff – people who are being paid to care – have become so uncaring. Their behaviour is inhumane and cruel. It's beyond belief.

She was right and this was not a one-off. What a way to end your life in such loveless circumstances. UK registered nurse Nicky Millen, a proper old school nurse for 40 years, said that when she started her career care was based on dignity, choice, compassion and empathy. Now she said 'the things that are important to me have gone out of the window.' She was appalled that people were dying without their loved ones and saying goodbye on iPads. Nicky described how a distressed 89-year-old lady stroked her face and asked her 'how many paracetamol would it take to finish me off'. Life was no longer worth living while not seeing her family. Nicky said she was humiliated in front of the ward staff and patients for letting the lady stroke her face and giving her a cuddle. Such is the dehumanisation that the 'Covid' hoax has brought to the surface. Nicky worked in care homes where patients told her they were being held prisoner. 'I want to live until I die', one said to her. 'I had a lady in tears because she hadn't seen her great-grandson.' Nicky was compassionate old school meeting psychopathic New Normal. She also said she had worked on a 'Covid' ward with no 'Covid' patients. Jewish writer Shai Held wrote an article in March, 2020, which was headlined 'The Staggering, Heartless Cruelty Toward the Elderly'. What he described was happening from the earliest days of lockdown. He said 'the elderly' were considered a group and not unique individuals (the way of the Woke). Shai Held said:

Notice how the all-too-familiar rhetoric of dehumanization works: 'The elderly' are bunched together as a faceless mass, all of them considered culprits and thus effectively deserving of the suffering the pandemic will inflict upon them. Lost entirely is the fact that the elderly are individual human beings, each with a distinctive face and voice, each with hopes and dreams, memories and regrets, friendships and marriages, loves lost and loves sustained.

'The elderly' have become another dehumanised group for which anything goes and for many that has resulted in cold disregard for their rights and their life. The distinctive face that Held talks about is designed to be deleted by masks until everyone is part of a faceless mass.

## **'War-zone' hospitals myth**

Again and again medical professionals have told me what was really going on and how hospitals 'overrun like war zones' according to the media were virtually empty. The mantra from medical whistleblowers was please don't use my name or my career is over. Citizen journalists around the world sneaked into hospitals to film evidence exposing the 'war-zone' lie. They really *were* largely empty with closed wards and operating theatres. I met a hospital worker in my town on the Isle of Wight during the first lockdown in 2020 who said the only island hospital had never been so quiet. Lockdown was justified by the psychopaths to stop hospitals being overrun. At the same time that the island hospital was near-empty the military arrived here to provide *extra beds*. It was all propaganda to ramp up the fear to ensure compliance with fascism as were never-used temporary hospitals with thousands of beds known as Nightingales and never-used make-shift mortuaries opened by the criminal UK government. A man who helped to install those extra island beds attributed to the army said they were never used and the hospital was empty. Doctors and nurses 'stood around talking or on their phones, wandering down to us to see what we were doing'. There were no masks or social distancing. He accused the useless local island paper, the *County Press*, of 'pumping the fear as if our hospital was overrun and we only have one so it should have been'. He described ambulances parked up with crews outside in deck chairs. When his brother called an ambulance he was told there was a two-hour backlog which he called 'bullshit'. An old lady on the island fell 'and was in a bad way', but a caller who rang for an ambulance was told the situation wasn't urgent enough. Ambulance stations were working under capacity while people would hear ambulances with sirens blaring driving through the streets. When those living near the stations realised what was going on they would follow them as they left, circulated around an urban area with the sirens going, and then came back without stopping. All this was to increase levels of fear and the same goes for the 'ventilator shortage crisis' that cost tens of millions for hastily produced ventilators never to be used.

Ambulance crews that agreed to be exploited in this way for fear propaganda might find themselves a mirror. I wish them well with that. Empty hospitals were the obvious consequence of treatment and diagnoses of non-'Covid' conditions cancelled and those involved handed a death sentence. People have been dying at home from undiagnosed and untreated cancer, heart disease and other life-threatening conditions to allow empty hospitals to deal with a 'pandemic' that wasn't happening.

## **Death of the innocent**

'War-zones' have been laying off nursing staff, even doctors where they can. There was no work for them. Lockdown was justified by saving lives and protecting the vulnerable they were actually killing with DNR orders and preventing empty hospitals being 'overrun'. In Britain the mantra of stay at home to 'save the NHS' was everywhere and across the world the same story was being sold when it was all lies. Two California doctors, Dan Erickson and Artin Massihi at Accelerated Urgent Care in Bakersfield, held a news conference in April, 2020, to say that intensive care units in California were 'empty, essentially', with hospitals shutting floors, not treating patients and laying off doctors. The California health system was working at minimum capacity 'getting rid of doctors because we just don't have the volume'. They said that people with conditions such as heart disease and cancer were not coming to hospital out of fear of 'Covid-19'. Their video was deleted by Susan Wojcicki's Cult-owned YouTube after reaching five million views. Florida governor Ron Desantis, who rejected the severe lockdowns of other states and is being targeted for doing so, said that in March, 2020, every US governor was given models claiming they would run out of hospital beds in days. That was never going to happen and the 'modellers' knew it. Deceit can be found at every level of the system. Urgent children's operations were cancelled including fracture repairs and biopsies to spot cancer. Eric Nicholls, a consultant paediatrician, said 'this is obviously concerning and we need to return to normal operating and to increase capacity as soon as possible'. Psychopaths



in power were rather less concerned *because* they are psychopaths. Deletion of urgent care and diagnosis has been happening all over the world and how many kids and others have died as a result of the actions of these cold and heartless lunatics dictating 'health' policy? The number must be stratospheric. Richard Sullivan, professor of cancer and global health at King's College London, said people feared 'Covid' more than cancer such was the campaign of fear. 'Years of lost life will be quite dramatic', Sullivan said, with 'a huge amount of avoidable mortality'. Sarah Woolnough, executive director for policy at Cancer Research UK, said there had been a 75 percent drop in urgent referrals to hospitals by family doctors of people with suspected cancer. Sullivan said that 'a lot of services have had to scale back – we've seen a dramatic decrease in the amount of elective cancer surgery'. Lockdown deaths worldwide has been absolutely fantastic with the *New York Post* reporting how data confirmed that 'lockdowns end more lives than they save':

There was a sharp decline in visits to emergency rooms and an increase in fatal heart attacks because patients didn't receive prompt treatment. Many fewer people were screened for cancer. Social isolation contributed to excess deaths from dementia and Alzheimer's.

Researchers predicted that the social and economic upheaval would lead to tens of thousands of "deaths of despair" from drug overdoses, alcoholism and suicide. As unemployment surged and mental-health and substance-abuse treatment programs were interrupted, the reported levels of anxiety, depression and suicidal thoughts increased dramatically, as did alcohol sales and fatal drug overdoses.

This has been happening while nurses and other staff had so much time on their hands in the 'war-zones' that Tic-Tok dancing videos began appearing across the Internet with medical staff dancing around in empty wards and corridors as people died at home from causes that would normally have been treated in hospital.

## **Mentions in dispatches**

One brave and truth-committed whistleblower was Louise Hampton, a call handler with the UK NHS who made a viral Internet video saying she had done 'fuck all' during the 'pandemic'

which was 'a load of bollocks'. She said that 'Covid-19' was rebranded flu and of course she lost her job. This is what happens in the medical and endless other professions now when you tell the truth. Louise filmed inside 'war-zone' accident and emergency departments to show they were empty and I mean *empty* as in no one there. The mainstream media could have done the same and blown the gaff on the whole conspiracy. They haven't to their eternal shame. Not that most 'journalists' seem capable of manifesting shame as with the psychopaths they slavishly repeat without question. The relative few who were admitted with serious health problems were left to die alone with no loved ones allowed to see them because of 'Covid' rules and they included kids dying without the comfort of mum and dad at their bedside while the evil behind this couldn't give a damn. It was all good fun to them. A Scottish NHS staff nurse publicly quit in the spring of 2021 saying: 'I can no longer be part of the lies and the corruption by the government.' She said hospitals 'aren't full, the beds aren't full, beds have been shut, wards have been shut'. Hospitals were never busy throughout 'Covid'. The staff nurse said that Nicola Sturgeon, tragically the leader of the Scottish government, was on television saying save the hospitals and the NHS – 'but the beds are empty' and 'we've not seen flu, we always see flu every year'. She wrote to government and spoke with her union Unison (the unions are Cult-compromised and *useless*, but nothing changed. Many of her colleagues were scared of losing their jobs if they spoke out as they wanted to. She said nursing staff were being affected by wearing masks all day and 'my head is splitting every shift from wearing a mask'. The NHS is part of the fascist tyranny and must be dismantled so we can start again with human beings in charge. (Ironically, hospitals were reported to be busier again when official 'Covid' cases *fell* in spring/summer of 2021 and many other conditions required treatment at the same time as *the fake vaccine rollout*.)

I will cover the 'Covid vaccine' scam in detail later, but it is another indicator of the sickening disregard for human life that I am highlighting here. The DNA-manipulating concoctions do not fulfil

the definition of a 'vaccine', have never been used on humans before and were given only emergency approval because trials were not completed and they continued using the unknowing public. The result was what a NHS senior nurse with responsibility for 'vaccine' procedure said was 'genocide'. She said the 'vaccines' were not 'vaccines'. They had not been shown to be safe and claims about their effectiveness by drug companies were 'poetic licence'. She described what was happening as a 'horrid act of human annihilation'. The nurse said that management had instigated a policy of not providing a Patient Information Leaflet (PIL) before people were 'vaccinated' even though health care professionals are supposed to do this according to protocol. Patients should also be told that they are taking part in an ongoing clinical trial. Her challenges to what is happening had seen her excluded from meetings and ridiculed in others. She said she was told to 'watch my step ... or I would find myself surplus to requirements'. The nurse, who spoke anonymously in fear of her career, said she asked her NHS manager why he/she was content with taking part in genocide against those having the 'vaccines'. The reply was that everyone had to play their part and to 'put up, shut up, and get it done'. Government was 'leaning heavily' on NHS management which was clearly leaning heavily on staff. This is how the global 'medical' hierarchy operates and it starts with the Cult and its World Health Organization.

She told the story of a doctor who had the Pfizer jab and when questioned had no idea what was in it. The doctor had never read the literature. We have to stop treating doctors as intellectual giants when so many are moral and medical pygmies. The doctor did not even know that the 'vaccines' were not fully approved or that their trials were ongoing. They were, however, asking their patients if they minded taking part in follow-ups for research purposes – yes, the *ongoing clinical trial*. The nurse said the doctor's ignorance was not rare and she had spoken to a hospital consultant who had the jab without any idea of the background or that the 'trials' had not been completed. Nurses and pharmacists had shown the same ignorance.

'My NHS colleagues have forsaken their duty of care, broken their code of conduct – Hippocratic Oath – and have been brainwashed just the same as the majority of the UK public through propaganda ...' She said she had not been able to recruit a single NHS colleague, doctor, nurse or pharmacist to stand with her and speak out. Her union had refused to help. She said that if the genocide came to light she would not hesitate to give evidence at a Nuremberg-type trial against those in power who could have affected the outcomes but didn't.

### **And all for what?**

To put the nonsense into perspective let's say the 'virus' does exist and let's go completely crazy and accept that the official manipulated figures for cases and deaths are accurate. *Even then* a study by Stanford University epidemiologist Dr John Ioannidis published on the World Health Organization website produced an average infection to fatality rate of ... *0.23 percent!* Ioannidis said: 'If one could sample equally from all locations globally, the median infection fatality rate might even be substantially lower than the 0.23% observed in my analysis.' For healthy people under 70 it was ... *0.05 percent!* This compares with the 3.4 percent claimed by the Cult-owned World Health Organization when the hoax was first played and maximum fear needed to be generated. An updated Stanford study in April, 2021, put the 'infection' to 'fatality' rate at just 0.15 percent. Another team of scientists led by Megan O'Driscoll and Henrik Salje studied data from 45 countries and published their findings on the Nature website. For children and young people the figure is so small it virtually does not register although authorities will be hyping dangers to the young when they introduce DNA-manipulating 'vaccines' for children. The O'Driscoll study produced an average infection-fatality figure of 0.003 for children from birth to four; 0.001 for 5 to 14; 0.003 for 15 to 19; and it was still only 0.456 up to 64. To claim that children must be 'vaccinated' to protect them from 'Covid' is an obvious lie and so there must be another reason and there is. What's more the average age of a 'Covid' death is akin

to the average age that people die in general. The average age of death in England is about 80 for men and 83 for women. The average age of death from alleged 'Covid' is between 82 and 83. California doctors, Dan Erickson and Artin Massihi, said at their April media conference that projection models of millions of deaths had been 'woefully inaccurate'. They produced detailed figures showing that Californians had a 0.03 chance of dying from 'Covid' based on the number of people who tested positive (with a test not testing for the 'virus'). Erickson said there was a 0.1 percent chance of dying from 'Covid' in the *state* of New York, not just the city, and a 0.05 percent chance in Spain, a centre of 'Covid-19' hysteria at one stage. The Stanford studies supported the doctors' data with fatality rate estimates of 0.23 and 0.15 percent. How close are these figures to my estimate of *zero*? Death-rate figures claimed by the World Health Organization at the start of the hoax were some 15 times higher. The California doctors said there was no justification for lockdowns and the economic devastation they caused. Everything they had ever learned about quarantine was that you quarantine the *sick* and not the healthy. They had never seen this before and it made no medical sense.

Why in the in the light of all this would governments and medical systems the world over say that billions must go under house arrest; lose their livelihood; in many cases lose their mind, their health and their life; force people to wear masks dangerous to health and psychology; make human interaction and even family interaction a criminal offence; ban travel; close restaurants, bars, watching live sport, concerts, theatre, and any activity involving human togetherness and discourse; and closing schools to isolate children from their friends and cause many to commit suicide in acts of hopelessness and despair? The California doctors said lockdown consequences included increased child abuse, partner abuse, alcoholism, depression, and other impacts they were seeing every day. Who would do that to the entire human race if not mentally-ill psychopaths of almost unimaginable extremes like Bill Gates? We must face the reality of what we are dealing with and come out of

denial. Fascism and tyranny are made possible only by the target population submitting and acquiescing to fascism and tyranny. The whole of human history shows that to be true. Most people naively and unquestioning believed what they were told about a 'deadly virus' and meekly and weakly submitted to house arrest. Those who didn't believe it – at least in total – still submitted in fear of the consequences of not doing so. For the rest who wouldn't submit draconian fines have been imposed, brutal policing by psychopaths *for* psychopaths, and condemnation from the meek and weak who condemn the Pushbackers on behalf of the very force that has them, too, in its gunights. 'Pathetic' does not even begin to suffice. Britain's brainless 'Health' Secretary Matt Hancock warned anyone lying to border officials about returning from a list of 'hotspot' countries could face a jail sentence of up to ten years which is more than for racially-aggravated assault, incest and attempting to have sex with a child under 13. Hancock is a lunatic, but he has the state apparatus behind him in a Cult-led chain reaction and the same with UK 'Vaccine Minister' Nadhim Zahawi, a prominent member of the mega-Cult secret society, Le Cercle, which featured in my earlier books. The Cult enforces its will on governments and medical systems; government and medical systems enforce their will on business and police; business enforces its will on staff who enforce it on customers; police enforce the will of the Cult on the population and play their essential part in creating a world of fascist control that their own children and grandchildren will have to live in their entire lives. It is a hierarchical pyramid of imposition and acquiescence and, yes indeed, of clinical insanity.

Does anyone bright enough to read this book have to ask what the answer is? I think not, but I will reveal it anyway in the fewest of syllables: Tell the psychos and their moronic lackeys to fuck off and let's get on with our lives. We are many – They are few.

## CHAPTER SEVEN

### **War on your mind**

*One believes things because one has been conditioned to believe them*

*Aldous Huxley, Brave New World*

I have described the 'Covid' hoax as a 'Psyop' and that is true in every sense and on every level in accordance with the definition of that term which is psychological warfare. Break down the 'Covid pandemic' to the foundation themes and it is psychological warfare on the human individual and collective mind.

The same can be said for the entire human belief system involving every subject you can imagine. Huxley was right in his contention that people believe what they are conditioned to believe and this comes from the repetition throughout their lives of the same falsehoods. They spew from government, corporations, media and endless streams of 'experts' telling you what the Cult wants you to believe and often believing it themselves (although *far* from always). 'Experts' are rewarded with 'prestigious' jobs and titles and as agents of perceptual programming with regular access to the media. The Cult has to control the narrative – control *information* – or they lose control of the vital, crucial, without-which-they-cannot-prevail public perception of reality. The foundation of that control today is the Internet made possible by the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA), the incredibly sinister technological arm of the Pentagon. The Internet is the result of military technology.

DARPA openly brags about establishing the Internet which has been a long-term project to lasso the minds of the global population. I have said for decades the plan is to control information to such an extreme that eventually no one would see or hear anything that the Cult does not approve. We are closing in on that end with ferocious censorship since the 'Covid' hoax began and in my case it started back in the 1990s in terms of books and speaking venues. I had to create my own publishing company in 1995 precisely because no one else would publish my books even then. I think they're all still running.

## **Cult Internet**

To secure total control of information they needed the Internet in which pre-programmed algorithms can seek out 'unclean' content for deletion and even stop it being posted in the first place. The Cult had to dismantle print and non-Internet broadcast media to ensure the transfer of information to the appropriate-named 'Web' – a critical expression of the *Cult* web. We've seen the ever-quickening demise of traditional media and control of what is left by a tiny number of corporations operating worldwide. Independent journalism in the mainstream is already dead and never was that more obvious than since the turn of 2020. The Cult wants all information communicated via the Internet to globally censor and allow the plug to be pulled any time. Lockdowns and forced isolation has meant that communication between people has been through electronic means and no longer through face-to-face discourse and discussion. Cult psychopaths have targeted the bars, restaurants, sport, venues and meeting places in general for this reason. None of this is by chance and it's to stop people gathering in any kind of privacy or number while being able to track and monitor all Internet communications and block them as necessary. Even private messages between individuals have been censored by these fascists that control Cult fronts like Facebook, Twitter, Google and YouTube which are all officially run by Sabbatian place-people and from the background by higher-level Sabbatian place people.



Facebook, Google, Amazon and their like were seed-funded and supported into existence with money-no-object infusions of funds either directly or indirectly from DARPA and CIA technology arm In-Q-Tel. The Cult plays the long game and prepares very carefully for big plays like 'Covid'. Amazon is another front in the psychological war and pretty much controls the global market in book sales and increasingly publishing. Amazon's limitless funds have deleted fantastic numbers of independent publishers to seize global domination on the way to deciding which books can be sold and circulated and which cannot. Moves in that direction are already happening. Amazon's leading light Jeff Bezos is the grandson of Lawrence Preston Gise who worked with DARPA predecessor ARPA. Amazon has big connections to the CIA and the Pentagon. The plan I have long described went like this:

1. Employ military technology to establish the Internet.
2. Sell the Internet as a place where people can freely communicate without censorship and allow that to happen until the Net becomes the central and irreversible pillar of human society. If the Internet had been highly censored from the start many would have rejected it.
3. Fund and manipulate major corporations into being to control the circulation of information on your Internet using cover stories about geeks in garages to explain how they came about. Give them unlimited funds to expand rapidly with no need to make a profit for years while non-Cult companies who need to balance the books cannot compete. You know that in these circumstances your Googles, YouTubes, Facebooks and Amazons are going to secure near monopolies by either crushing or buying up the opposition.
4. Allow freedom of expression on both the Internet and communication platforms to draw people in until the Internet is the central and irreversible pillar of human society and your communication corporations have reached a stage of near monopoly domination.
5. Then unleash your always-planned frenzy of censorship on the basis of 'where else are you going to go?' and continue to expand that until nothing remains that the Cult does not want its human targets to see.

The process was timed to hit the 'Covid' hoax to ensure the best chance possible of controlling the narrative which they knew they had to do at all costs. They were, after all, about to unleash a 'deadly virus' that didn't really exist. If you do that in an environment of free-flowing information and opinion you would be dead in the

water before you could say Gates is a psychopath. The network was in place through which the Cult-created-and-owned World Health Organization could dictate the 'Covid' narrative and response policy slavishly supported by Cult-owned Internet communication giants and mainstream media while those telling a different story were censored. Google, YouTube, Facebook and Twitter openly announced that they would do this. What else would we expect from Cult-owned operations like Facebook which former executives have confirmed set out to make the platform more addictive than cigarettes and coldly manipulates emotions of its users to sow division between people and groups and scramble the minds of the young? If Zuckerberg lives out the rest of his life without going to jail for crimes against humanity, and most emphatically against the young, it will be a travesty of justice. Still, no matter, cause and effect will catch up with him eventually and the same with Sergey Brin and Larry Page at Google with its CEO Sundar Pichai who fix the Google search results to promote Cult narratives and hide the opposition. Put the same key words into Google and other search engines like DuckDuckGo and you will see how different results can be. Wikipedia is another intensely biased 'encyclopaedia' which skews its content to the Cult agenda. YouTube links to Wikipedia's version of 'Covid' and 'climate change' on video pages in which experts in their field offer a different opinion (even that is increasingly rare with Wojcicki censorship). Into this 'Covid' silence-them network must be added government media censors, sorry 'regulators', such as Ofcom in the UK which imposed tyrannical restrictions on British broadcasters that had the effect of banning me from ever appearing. Just to debate with me about my evidence and views on 'Covid' would mean breaking the fascistic impositions of Ofcom and its CEO career government bureaucrat Melanie Dawes. Gutless British broadcasters tremble at the very thought of fascist Ofcom.

## **Psychos behind 'Covid'**

The reason for the 'Covid' catastrophe in all its facets and forms can be seen by whom and what is driving the policies worldwide in such a coordinated way. Decisions are not being made to protect health, but to target psychology. The dominant group guiding and 'advising' government policy are not medical professionals. They are psychologists and behavioural scientists. Every major country has its own version of this phenomenon and I'll use the British example to show how it works. In many ways the British version has been affecting the wider world in the form of the huge behaviour manipulation network in the UK which operates in other countries. The network involves private companies, government, intelligence and military. The Cabinet Office is at the centre of the government 'Covid' Psyop and part-owns, with 'innovation charity' Nesta, the Behavioural Insights Team (BIT) which claims to be independent of government but patently isn't. The BIT was established in 2010 and its job is to manipulate the psyche of the population to acquiesce to government demands and so much more. It is also known as the 'Nudge Unit', a name inspired by the 2009 book by two ultra-Zionists, Cass Sunstein and Richard Thaler, called *Nudge: Improving Decisions About Health, Wealth, and Happiness*. The book, as with the Behavioural Insights Team, seeks to 'nudge' behaviour (manipulate it) to make the public follow patterns of action and perception that suit those in authority (the Cult). Sunstein is so skilled at this that he advises the World Health Organization and the UK Behavioural Insights Team and was Administrator of the White House Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs in the Obama administration. Biden appointed him to the Department of Homeland Security – another ultra-Zionist in the fold to oversee new immigration laws which is another policy the Cult wants to control. Sunstein is desperate to silence anyone exposing conspiracies and co-authored a 2008 report on the subject in which suggestions were offered to ban 'conspiracy theorizing' or impose 'some kind of tax, financial or otherwise, on those who disseminate such theories'. I guess a psychiatrist's chair is out of the question?

Sunstein's mate Richard Thaler, an 'academic affiliate' of the UK Behavioural Insights Team, is a proponent of 'behavioural economics' which is defined as the study of 'the effects of psychological, cognitive, emotional, cultural and social factors on the decisions of individuals and institutions'. Study the effects so they can be manipulated to be what you want them to be. Other leading names in the development of behavioural economics are ultra-Zionists Daniel Kahneman and Robert J. Shiller and they, with Thaler, won the Nobel Memorial Prize in Economic Sciences for their work in this field. The Behavioural Insights Team is operating at the heart of the UK government and has expanded globally through partnerships with several universities including Harvard, Oxford, Cambridge, University College London (UCL) and Pennsylvania. They claim to have 'trained' (reframed) 20,000 civil servants and run more than 750 projects involving 400 randomised controlled trials in dozens of countries' as another version of mind reframers Common Purpose. BIT works from its office in New York with cities and their agencies, as well as other partners, across the United States and Canada – this is a company part-owned by the British government Cabinet Office. An executive order by President Cult-servant Obama established a US Social and Behavioral Sciences Team in 2015. They all have the same reason for being and that's to brainwash the population directly and by brainwashing those in positions of authority.

### **'Covid' mind game**

Another prime aspect of the UK mind-control network is the 'independent' [joke] Scientific Pandemic Insights Group on Behaviours (SPI-B) which 'provides behavioural science advice aimed at anticipating and helping people adhere to interventions that are recommended by medical or epidemiological experts'. That means manipulating public perception and behaviour to do whatever government tells them to do. It's disgusting and if they really want the public to be 'safe' this lot should all be under lock and key. According to the government website SPI-B consists of

'behavioural scientists, health and social psychologists, anthropologists and historians' and advises the Whitty-Vallance-led Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE) which in turn advises the government on 'the science' (it doesn't) and 'Covid' policy. When politicians say they are being guided by 'the science' this is the rabble in each country they are talking about and that 'science' is dominated by behaviour manipulators to enforce government fascism through public compliance. The Behaviour Insight Team is headed by psychologist David Solomon Halpern, a visiting professor at King's College London, and connects with a national and global web of other civilian and military organisations as the Cult moves towards its goal of fusing them into one fascistic whole in every country through its 'Fusion Doctrine'. The behaviour manipulation network involves, but is not confined to, the Foreign Office; National Security Council; government communications headquarters (GCHQ); MI5; MI6; the Cabinet Office-based Media Monitoring Unit; and the Rapid Response Unit which 'monitors digital trends to spot emerging issues; including misinformation and disinformation; and identifies the best way to respond'.

There is also the 77th Brigade of the UK military which operates like the notorious Israeli military's Unit 8200 in manipulating information and discussion on the Internet by posing as members of the public to promote the narrative and discredit those who challenge it. Here we have the military seeking to manipulate *domestic* public opinion while the Nazis in government are fine with that. Conservative Member of Parliament Tobias Ellwood, an advocate of lockdown and control through 'vaccine passports', is a Lieutenant Colonel reservist in the 77th Brigade which connects with the military operation jHub, the 'innovation centre' for the Ministry of Defence and Strategic Command. jHub has also been involved with the civilian National Health Service (NHS) in 'symptom tracing' the population. The NHS is a key part of this mind control network and produced a document in December, 2020, explaining to staff how to use psychological manipulation with different groups and ages to get them to have the DNA-manipulating 'Covid vaccine'

that's designed to cumulatively rewrite human genetics. The document, called 'Optimising Vaccination Roll Out – Do's and Don'ts for all messaging, documents and "communications" in the widest sense', was published by NHS England and the NHS Improvement *Behaviour Change Unit* in partnership with Public Health England and Warwick Business School. I hear the mantra about 'save the NHS' and 'protect the NHS' when we need to scrap the NHS and start again. The current version is far too corrupt, far too anti-human and totally compromised by Cult operatives and their assets. UK government broadcast media censor Ofcom will connect into this web – as will the BBC with its tremendous Ofcom influence – to control what the public see and hear and dictate mass perception. Nuremberg trials must include personnel from all these organisations.

### **The fear factor**

The 'Covid' hoax has led to the creation of the UK Cabinet Office-connected Joint Biosecurity Centre (JBC) which is officially described as providing 'expert advice on pandemics' using its independent [all Cult operations are 'independent'] analytical function to provide real-time analysis about infection outbreaks to identify and respond to outbreaks of Covid-19'. Another role is to advise the government on a response to spikes in infections – 'for example by closing schools or workplaces in local areas where infection levels have risen'. Put another way, promoting the Cult agenda. The Joint Biosecurity Centre is modelled on the Joint Terrorism Analysis Centre which analyses intelligence to set 'terrorism threat levels' and here again you see the fusion of civilian and military operations and intelligence that has led to military intelligence producing documents about 'vaccine hesitancy' and how it can be combated. Domestic civilian matters and opinions should not be the business of the military. The Joint Biosecurity Centre is headed by Tom Hurd, director general of the Office for Security and Counter-Terrorism from the establishment-to-its-fingertips Hurd family. His father is former Foreign Secretary Douglas Hurd. How coincidental that Tom

Hurd went to the elite Eton College and Oxford University with Boris Johnson. Imperial College with its ridiculous computer modeller Neil Ferguson will connect with this gigantic web that will itself interconnect with similar set-ups in other major and not so major countries. Compared with this Cult network the politicians, be they Boris Johnson, Donald Trump or Joe Biden, are bit-part players 'following the science'. The network of psychologists was on the 'Covid' case from the start with the aim of generating maximum fear of the 'virus' to ensure compliance by the population. A government behavioural science group known as SPI-B produced a paper in March, 2020, for discussion by the main government science advisory group known as SAGE. It was headed 'Options for increasing adherence to social distancing measures' and it said the following in a section headed 'Persuasion':

- A substantial number of people still do not feel sufficiently personally threatened; it could be that they are reassured by the low death rate in their demographic group, although levels of concern may be rising. Having a good understanding of the risk has been found to be positively associated with adoption of COVID-19 social distancing measures in Hong Kong.
- The perceived level of personal threat needs to be increased among those who are complacent, using hard-hitting evaluation of options for increasing social distancing emotional messaging. To be effective this must also empower people by making clear the actions they can take to reduce the threat.
- Responsibility to others: There seems to be insufficient understanding of, or feelings of responsibility about, people's role in transmitting the infection to others ... Messaging about actions need to be framed positively in terms of protecting oneself and the community, and increase confidence that they will be effective.
- Some people will be more persuaded by appeals to play by the rules, some by duty to the community, and some to personal risk.

All these different approaches are needed. The messaging also needs to take account of the realities of different people's lives. Messaging needs to take account of the different motivational levers and circumstances of different people.

All this could be achieved the SPI-B psychologists said by *using the media to increase the sense of personal threat* which translates as terrify the shit out of the population, including children, so they all do what we want. That's not happened has it? Those excuses for 'journalists' who wouldn't know journalism if it bit them on the arse (the great majority) have played their crucial part in serving this Cult-government Psyop to enslave their own kids and grandkids. How they live with themselves I have no idea. The psychological war has been underpinned by constant government 'Covid' propaganda in almost every television and radio ad break, plus the Internet and print media, which has pounded out the fear with taxpayers footing the bill for their own programming. The result has been people terrified of a 'virus' that doesn't exist or one with a tiny fatality rate even if you believe it does. People walk down the street and around the shops wearing face-nappies damaging their health and psychology while others report those who refuse to be that naïve to the police who turn up in their own face-nappies. I had a cameraman come to my flat and he was so frightened of 'Covid' he came in wearing a mask and refused to shake my hand in case he caught something. He had – naïveitis – and the thought that he worked in the mainstream media was both depressing and made his behaviour perfectly explainable. The fear which has gripped the minds of so many and frozen them into compliance has been carefully cultivated by these psychologists who are really psychopaths. If lives get destroyed and a lot of young people commit suicide it shows our plan is working. SPI-B then turned to compulsion on the public to comply. 'With adequate preparation, rapid change can be achieved', it said. Some countries had introduced mandatory self-isolation on a wide scale without evidence of major public unrest and a large majority of the UK's population appeared to be supportive of more coercive measures with 64 percent of adults saying they would



support putting London under a lockdown (watch the ‘polls’ which are designed to make people believe that public opinion is in favour or against whatever the subject in hand).

For ‘aggressive protective measures’ to be effective, the SPI-B paper said, special attention should be devoted to those population groups that are more at risk. Translated from the Orwellian this means making the rest of population feel guilty for not protecting the ‘vulnerable’ such as old people which the Cult and its agencies were about to kill on an industrial scale with lockdown, lack of treatment and the Gates ‘vaccine’. Psychopath psychologists sold their guilt-trip so comprehensively that Los Angeles County Supervisor Hilda Solis reported that children were apologising (from a distance) to their parents and grandparents for bringing ‘Covid’ into their homes and getting them sick. ‘... These apologies are just some of the last words that loved ones will ever hear as they die alone,’ she said. Gut-wrenchingly Solis then used this childhood tragedy to tell children to stay at home and ‘keep your loved ones alive’. Imagine heaping such potentially life-long guilt on a kid when it has absolutely nothing to do with them. These people are deeply disturbed and the psychologists behind this even more so.

### **Uncivil war – divide and rule**

Professional mind-controllers at SPI-B wanted the media to increase a sense of responsibility to others (do as you’re told) and promote ‘positive messaging’ for those actions while in contrast to invoke ‘social disapproval’ by the unquestioning, obedient, community of anyone with a mind of their own. Again the compliant Goebbels-like media obliged. This is an old, old, trick employed by tyrannies the world over throughout human history. You get the target population to keep the target population in line – *your* line. SPI-B said this could ‘play an important role in preventing anti-social behaviour or discouraging failure to enact pro-social behaviour’. For ‘anti-social’ in the Orwellian parlance of SPI-B see any behaviour that government doesn’t approve. SPI-B recommendations said that ‘social disapproval’ should be accompanied by clear messaging and

promotion of strong collective identity – hence the government and celebrity mantra of ‘we’re all in this together’. Sure we are. The mind doctors have such contempt for their targets that they think some clueless comedian, actor or singer telling them to do what the government wants will be enough to win them over. We have had UK comedian Lenny Henry, actor Michael Caine and singer Elton John wheeled out to serve the propagandists by urging people to have the DNA-manipulating ‘Covid’ non-‘vaccine’. The role of Henry and fellow black celebrities in seeking to coax a ‘vaccine’ reluctant black community into doing the government’s will was especially stomach-turning. An emotion-manipulating script and carefully edited video featuring these black ‘celebs’ was such an insult to the intelligence of black people and where’s the self-respect of those involved selling their souls to a fascist government agenda? Henry said he heard black people’s ‘legitimate worries and concerns’, but people must ‘trust the facts’ when they were doing exactly that by not having the ‘vaccine’. They had to include the obligatory reference to Black Lives Matter with the line ... ‘Don’t let coronavirus cost even more black lives – because we matter’. My god, it was pathetic. ‘I know the vaccine is safe and what it does.’ How? ‘I’m a comedian and it says so in my script.’

SPI-B said social disapproval needed to be carefully managed to avoid victimisation, scapegoating and misdirected criticism, but they knew that their ‘recommendations’ would lead to exactly that and the media were specifically used to stir-up the divide-and-conquer hostility. Those who conform like good little baa, baas, are praised while those who have seen through the tidal wave of lies are ‘Covidiot’s’. The awake have been abused by the fast asleep for not conforming to fascism and impositions that the awake know are designed to endanger their health, dehumanise them, and tear asunder the very fabric of human society. We have had the curtain-twitchers and morons reporting neighbours and others to the face-napped police for breaking ‘Covid rules’ with fascist police delighting in posting links and phone numbers where this could be done. The Cult cannot impose its will without a compliant police

and military or a compliant population willing to play their part in enslaving themselves and their kids. The words of a pastor in Nazi Germany are so appropriate today:

First they came for the socialists and I did not speak out because I was not a socialist.

Then they came for the trade unionists and I did not speak out because I was not a trade unionist.

Then they came for the Jews and I did not speak out because I was not a Jew.

Then they came for me and there was no one left to speak for me.

Those who don't learn from history are destined to repeat it and so many are.

### **'Covid' rules: Rewiring the mind**

With the background laid out to this gigantic national and global web of psychological manipulation we can put 'Covid' rules into a clear and sinister perspective. Forget the claims about protecting health. 'Covid' rules are about dismantling the human mind, breaking the human spirit, destroying self-respect, and then putting Humpty Dumpty together again as a servile, submissive slave. Social isolation through lockdown and distancing have devastating effects on the human psyche as the psychological psychopaths well know and that's the real reason for them. Humans need contact with each other, discourse, closeness and touch, or they eventually, and literally, go crazy. Masks, which I will address at some length, fundamentally add to the effects of isolation and the Cult agenda to dehumanise and de-individualise the population. To do this while knowing – in fact *seeking* – this outcome is the very epitome of evil and psychologists involved in this *are* the epitome of evil. They must like all the rest of the Cult demons and their assets stand trial for crimes against humanity on a scale that defies the imagination. Psychopaths in uniform use isolation to break enemy troops and agents and make them subservient and submissive to tell what they know. The technique is rightly considered a form of torture and

torture is most certainly what has been imposed on the human population.

Clinically-insane American psychologist Harry Harlow became famous for his isolation experiments in the 1950s in which he separated baby monkeys from their mothers and imprisoned them for months on end in a metal container or 'pit of despair'. They soon began to show mental distress and depression as any idiot could have predicted. Harlow put other monkeys in steel chambers for three, six or twelve months while denying them any contact with animals or humans. He said that the effects of total social isolation for six months were 'so devastating and debilitating that we had assumed initially that twelve months of isolation would not produce any additional decrement'; but twelve months of isolation 'almost obliterated the animals socially'. This is what the Cult and its psychopaths are doing to you and your children. Even monkeys in partial isolation in which they were not allowed to form relationships with other monkeys became 'aggressive and hostile, not only to others, but also towards their own bodies'. We have seen this in the young as a consequence of lockdown. UK government psychopaths launched a public relations campaign telling people not to hug each other even after they received the 'Covid-19 vaccine' which we were told with more lies would allow a return to 'normal life'. A government source told *The Telegraph*: 'It will be along the lines that it is great that you have been vaccinated, but if you are going to visit your family and hug your grandchildren there is a chance you are going to infect people you love.' The source was apparently speaking from a secure psychiatric facility. Janet Lord, director of Birmingham University's Institute of Inflammation and Ageing, said that parents and grandparents should avoid hugging their children. Well, how can I put it, Ms Lord? Fuck off. Yep, that'll do.

### **Destroying the kids – where are the parents?**

Observe what has happened to people enslaved and isolated by lockdown as suicide and self-harm has soared worldwide,

particularly among the young denied the freedom to associate with their friends. A study of 49,000 people in English-speaking countries concluded that almost half of young adults are at clinical risk of mental health disorders. A national survey in America of 1,000 currently enrolled high school and college students found that 5 percent reported attempting suicide during the pandemic. Data from the US CDC's National Syndromic Surveillance Program from January 1st to October 17th, 2020, revealed a 31 percent increase in mental health issues among adolescents aged 12 to 17 compared with 2019. The CDC reported that America in general suffered the biggest drop in life expectancy since World War Two as it fell by a year in the first half of 2020 as a result of 'deaths of despair' – overdoses and suicides. Deaths of despair have leapt by more than 20 percent during lockdown and include the highest number of fatal overdoses ever recorded in a single year – 81,000. Internet addiction is another consequence of being isolated at home which lowers interest in physical activities as kids fall into inertia and what's the point? Children and young people are losing hope and giving up on life, sometimes literally. A 14-year-old boy killed himself in Maryland because he had 'given up' when his school district didn't reopen; an 11-year-old boy shot himself during a zoom class; a teenager in Maine succumbed to the isolation of the 'pandemic' when he ended his life after experiencing a disrupted senior year at school. Children as young as nine have taken their life and all these stories can be repeated around the world. Careers are being destroyed before they start and that includes those in sport in which promising youngsters have not been able to take part. The plan of the psycho-psychologists is working all right. Researchers at Cambridge University found that lockdowns cause significant harm to children's mental health. Their study was published in the *Archives of Disease in Childhood*, and followed 168 children aged between 7 and 11. The researchers concluded:

During the UK lockdown, children's depression symptoms have increased substantially, relative to before lockdown. The scale of this effect has direct relevance for the continuation of different elements of lockdown policy, such as complete or partial school closures ...

... Specifically, we observed a statistically significant increase in ratings of depression, with a medium-to-large effect size. Our findings emphasise the need to incorporate the potential impact of lockdown on child mental health in planning the ongoing response to the global pandemic and the recovery from it.

Not a chance when the Cult's psycho-psychologists were getting exactly what they wanted. The UK's Royal College of Paediatrics and Child Health has urged parents to look for signs of eating disorders in children and young people after a three to four fold increase. Specialists say the 'pandemic' is a major reason behind the rise. You don't say. The College said isolation from friends during school closures, exam cancellations, loss of extra-curricular activities like sport, and an increased use of social media were all contributory factors along with fears about the virus (psycho-psychologists again), family finances, and students being forced to quarantine. Doctors said young people were becoming severely ill by the time they were seen with 'Covid' regulations reducing face-to-face consultations. Nor is it only the young that have been devastated by the psychopaths. Like all bullies and cowards the Cult is targeting the young, elderly, weak and infirm. A typical story was told by a British lady called Lynn Parker who was not allowed to visit her husband in 2020 for the last ten and half months of his life 'when he needed me most' between March 20th and when he died on December 19th. This vacates the criminal and enters the territory of evil. The emotional impact on the immune system alone is immense as are the number of people of all ages worldwide who have died as a result of Cult-demanded, Gates-demanded, lockdowns.

## **Isolation is torture**

The experience of imposing solitary confinement on millions of prisoners around the world has shown how a large percentage become 'actively psychotic and/or acutely suicidal'. Social isolation has been found to trigger 'a specific psychiatric syndrome, characterized by hallucinations; panic attacks; overt paranoia; diminished impulse control; hypersensitivity to external stimuli; and difficulties with thinking, concentration and memory'. Juan Mendez,

a United Nations rapporteur (investigator), said that isolation is a form of torture. Research has shown that even after isolation prisoners find it far more difficult to make social connections and I remember chatting to a shop assistant after one lockdown who told me that when her young son met another child again he had no idea how to act or what to do. Hannah Flanagan, Director of Emergency Services at Journey Mental Health Center in Dane County, Wisconsin, said: 'The specificity about Covid social distancing and isolation that we've come across as contributing factors to the suicides are really new to us this year.' But they are not new to those that devised them. They are getting the effect they want as the population is psychologically dismantled to be rebuilt in a totally different way. Children and the young are particularly targeted. They will be the adults when the full-on fascist AI-controlled technocracy is planned to be imposed and they are being prepared to meekly submit. At the same time older people who still have a memory of what life was like before – and how fascist the new normal really is – are being deleted. You are going to see efforts to turn the young against the old to support this geriatric genocide. Hannah Flanagan said the big increase in suicide in her county proved that social isolation is not only harmful, but deadly. Studies have shown that isolation from others is one of the main risk factors in suicide and even more so with women. Warnings that lockdown could create a 'perfect storm' for suicide were ignored. After all this was one of the *reasons* for lockdown. Suicide, however, is only the most extreme of isolation consequences. There are many others. Dr Dhruv Khullar, assistant professor of healthcare policy at Weill Cornell Medical College, said in a *New York Times* article in 2016 long before the fake 'pandemic':

A wave of new research suggests social separation is bad for us. Individuals with less social connection have disrupted sleep patterns, altered immune systems, more inflammation and higher levels of stress hormones. One recent study found that isolation increases the risk of heart disease by 29 percent and stroke by 32 percent. Another analysis that pooled data from 70 studies and 3.4 million people found that socially isolated individuals had a 30 percent higher risk of dying in the next seven years, and that this effect was largest in middle age.

Loneliness can accelerate cognitive decline in older adults, and isolated individuals are twice as likely to die prematurely as those with more robust social interactions. These effects start early: Socially isolated children have significantly poorer health 20 years later, even after controlling for other factors. All told, loneliness is as important a risk factor for early death as obesity and smoking.

There you have proof from that one article alone four years before 2020 that those who have enforced lockdown, social distancing and isolation knew what the effect would be and that is even more so with professional psychologists that have been driving the policy across the globe. We can go back even further to the years 2000 and 2003 and the start of a major study on the effects of isolation on health by Dr Janine Gronewold and Professor Dirk M. Hermann at the University Hospital in Essen, Germany, who analysed data on 4,316 people with an average age of 59 who were recruited for the long-term research project. They found that socially isolated people are more than 40 percent more likely to have a heart attack, stroke, or other major cardiovascular event and nearly 50 percent more likely to die from any cause. Given the financial Armageddon unleashed by lockdown we should note that the study found a relationship between increased cardiovascular risk and lack of financial support. After excluding other factors social isolation was still connected to a 44 percent increased risk of cardiovascular problems and a 47 percent increased risk of death by any cause. Lack of financial support was associated with a 30 percent increase in the risk of cardiovascular health events. Dr Gronewold said it had been known for some time that feeling lonely or lacking contact with close friends and family can have an impact on physical health and the study had shown that having strong social relationships is of high importance for heart health. Gronewold said they didn't understand yet why people who are socially isolated have such poor health outcomes, but this was obviously a worrying finding, particularly during these times of prolonged social distancing. Well, it can be explained on many levels. You only have to identify the point in the body where people feel loneliness and missing people they are parted from – it's in the centre of the chest where they feel the ache of loneliness and the ache of missing people. 'My heart aches for



you' ... 'My heart aches for some company.' I will explain this more in the chapter Escaping Wetiko, but when you realise that the body is the mind – they are expressions of each other – the reason why state of the mind dictates state of the body becomes clear.

American psychologist Ranjit Powar was highlighting the effects of lockdown isolation as early as April, 2020. She said humans have evolved to be social creatures and are wired to live in interactive groups. Being isolated from family, friends and colleagues could be unbalancing and traumatic for most people and could result in short or even long-term psychological and physical health problems. An increase in levels of anxiety, aggression, depression, forgetfulness and hallucinations were possible psychological effects of isolation. 'Mental conditions may be precipitated for those with underlying pre-existing susceptibilities and show up in many others without any pre-condition.' Powar said personal relationships helped us cope with stress and if we lost this outlet for letting off steam the result can be a big emotional void which, for an average person, was difficult to deal with. 'Just a few days of isolation can cause increased levels of anxiety and depression' – so what the hell has been the effect on the global population of *18 months* of this at the time of writing? Powar said: 'Add to it the looming threat of a dreadful disease being repeatedly hammered in through the media and you have a recipe for many shades of mental and physical distress.' For those with a house and a garden it is easy to forget that billions have had to endure lockdown isolation in tiny overcrowded flats and apartments with nowhere to go outside. The psychological and physical consequences of this are unimaginable and with lunatic and abusive partners and parents the consequences have led to tremendous increases in domestic and child abuse and alcoholism as people seek to shut out the horror. Ranjit Powar said:

Staying in a confined space with family is not all a rosy picture for everyone. It can be extremely oppressive and claustrophobic for large low-income families huddled together in small single-room houses. Children here are not lucky enough to have many board/electronic games or books to keep them occupied.

Add to it the deep insecurity of running out of funds for food and basic necessities. On the other hand, there are people with dysfunctional family dynamics, such as domineering, abusive or alcoholic partners, siblings or parents which makes staying home a period of trial. Incidence of suicide and physical abuse against women has shown a worldwide increase. Heightened anxiety and depression also affect a person's immune system, making them more susceptible to illness.

To think that Powar's article was published on April 11th, 2020.

## **Six-foot fantasy**

Social (unsocial) distancing demanded that people stay six feet or two metres apart. UK government advisor Robert Dingwall from the New and Emerging Respiratory Virus Threats Advisory Group said in a radio interview that the two-metre rule was 'conjured up out of nowhere' and was not based on science. No, it was not based on *medical* science, but it didn't come out of nowhere. The distance related to *psychological* science. Six feet/two metres was adopted in many countries and we were told by people like the criminal Anthony Fauci and his ilk that it was founded on science. Many schools could not reopen because they did not have the space for six-foot distancing. Then in March, 2021, after a year of six-foot 'science', a study published in the *Journal of Infectious Diseases* involving more than 500,000 students and almost 100,000 staff over 16 weeks revealed no significant difference in 'Covid' cases between six feet and three feet and Fauci changed his tune. Now three feet was okay. There is no difference between six feet and three *inches* when there is no 'virus' and they got away with six feet for psychological reasons for as long as they could. I hear journalists and others talk about 'unintended consequences' of lockdown. They are not *unintended* at all; they have been coldly-calculated for a specific outcome of human control and that's why super-psychopaths like Gates have called for them so vehemently. Super-psychopath psychologists have demanded them and psychopathic or clueless, spineless, politicians have gone along with them by 'following the science'. But it's not science at all. 'Science' is not what is; it's only what people can be manipulated to believe it is. The whole 'Covid' catastrophe is

founded on mind control. Three word or three statement mantras issued by the UK government are a well-known mind control technique and so we've had 'Stay home/protect the NHS/save lives', 'Stay alert/control the virus/save lives' and 'hands/face/space'. One of the most vocal proponents of extreme 'Covid' rules in the UK has been Professor Susan Michie, a member of the British Communist Party, who is not a medical professional. Michie is the director of the Centre for Behaviour Change at University College London. She is a *behavioural psychologist* and another filthy rich 'Marxist' who praised China's draconian lockdown. She was known by fellow students at Oxford University as 'Stalin's nanny' for her extreme Marxism. Michie is an influential member of the UK government's Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE) and behavioural manipulation groups which have dominated 'Covid' policy. She is a consultant adviser to the World Health Organization on 'Covid-19' and behaviour. Why the hell are lockdowns anything to do with her when they are claimed to be about health? Why does a behavioural psychologist from a group charged with changing the behaviour of the public want lockdown, human isolation and mandatory masks? Does that question really need an answer? Michie *absolutely* has to explain herself before a Nuremberg court when humanity takes back its world again and even more so when you see the consequences of masks that she demands are compulsory. This is a Michie classic:

The benefits of getting primary school children to wear masks is that regardless of what little degree of transmission is occurring in those age groups it could help normalise the practice. Young children wearing masks may be more likely to get their families to accept masks.

Those words alone should carry a prison sentence when you ponder on the callous disregard for children involved and what a statement it makes about the mind and motivations of Susan Michie. What a lovely lady and what she said there encapsulates the mentality of the psychopaths behind the 'Covid' horror. Let us compare what Michie said with a countrywide study in Germany published at [researchsquare.com](https://www.researchsquare.com) involving 25,000 school children and 17,854 health complaints submitted by parents. Researchers

found that masks are harming children physically, psychologically, and behaviourally with 24 health issues associated with mask wearing. They include: shortness of breath (29.7%); dizziness (26.4%); increased headaches (53%); difficulty concentrating (50%); drowsiness or fatigue (37%); and malaise (42%). Nearly a third of children experienced more sleep issues than before and a quarter developed new fears. Researchers found health issues and other impairments in 68 percent of masked children covering their faces for an average of 4.5 hours a day. Hundreds of those taking part experienced accelerated respiration, tightness in the chest, weakness, and short-term impairment of consciousness. A reminder of what Michie said again:

The benefits of getting primary school children to wear masks is that regardless of what little degree of transmission is occurring in those age groups it could help normalise the practice. Young children wearing masks may be more likely to get their families to accept masks.

Psychopaths in government and psychology now have children and young people – plus all the adults – wearing masks for hours on end while clueless teachers impose the will of the psychopaths on the young they should be protecting. What the hell are parents doing?

## **Cult lab rats**

We have some schools already imposing on students microchipped buzzers that activate when they get 'too close' to their pals in the way they do with lab rats. How apt. To the Cult and its brain-dead servants our children *are* lab rats being conditioned to be unquestioning, dehumanised slaves for the rest of their lives. Children and young people are being weaned and frightened away from the most natural human instincts including closeness and touch. I have tracked in the books over the years how schools were banning pupils from greeting each other with a hug and the whole Cult-induced Me Too movement has terrified men and boys from a relaxed and natural interaction with female friends and work colleagues to the point where many men try never to be in a room

alone with a woman that's not their partner. Airhead celebrities have as always played their virtue-signalling part in making this happen with their gross exaggeration. For every monster like Harvey Weinstein there are at least tens of thousands of men that don't treat women like that; but everyone must be branded the same and policy changed for them as well as the monster. I am going to be using the word 'dehumanise' many times in this chapter because that is what the Cult is seeking to do and it goes very deep as we shall see. Don't let them kid you that social distancing is planned to end one day. That's not the idea. We are seeing more governments and companies funding and producing wearable gadgets to keep people apart and they would not be doing that if this was meant to be short-term. A tech start-up company backed by GCHQ, the British Intelligence and military surveillance headquarters, has created a social distancing wrist sensor that alerts people when they get too close to others. The CIA has also supported tech companies developing similar devices. The wearable sensor was developed by Tended, one of a number of start-up companies supported by GCHQ (see the CIA and DARPA). The device can be worn on the wrist or as a tag on the waistband and will vibrate whenever someone wearing the device breaches social distancing and gets anywhere near natural human contact. The company had a lucky break in that it was developing a distancing sensor when the 'Covid' hoax arrived which immediately provided a potentially enormous market. How fortunate. The government in big-time Cult-controlled Ontario in Canada is investing \$2.5 million in wearable contact tracing technology that 'will alert users if they may have been exposed to the Covid-19 in the workplace and will beep or vibrate if they are within six feet of another person'. Facedrive Inc., the technology company behind this, was founded in 2016 with funding from the Ontario Together Fund and obviously they, too, had a prophet on the board of directors. The human surveillance and control technology is called TraceSCAN and would be worn by the human cyborgs in places such as airports, workplaces, construction sites, care homes and ... *schools*.

I emphasise schools with children and young people the prime targets. You know what is planned for society as a whole if you keep your eyes on the schools. They have always been places where the state program the next generation of slaves to be its compliant worker-ants – or Woker-ants these days; but in the mist of the ‘Covid’ madness they have been transformed into mind laboratories on a scale never seen before. Teachers and head teachers are just as programmed as the kids – often more so. Children are kept apart from human interaction by walk lanes, classroom distancing, staggered meal times, masks, and the rolling-out of buzzer systems. Schools are now physically laid out as a laboratory maze for lab-rats. Lunatics at a school in Anchorage, Alaska, who should be prosecuted for child abuse, took away desks and forced children to kneel (know your place) on a mat for five hours a day while wearing a mask and using their chairs as a desk. How this was supposed to impact on a ‘virus’ only these clinically insane people can tell you and even then it would be clap-trap. The school banned recess (interaction), art classes (creativity), and physical exercise (getting body and mind moving out of inertia). Everyone behind this outrage should be in jail or better still a mental institution. The behavioural manipulators are all for this dystopian approach to schools. Professor Susan Michie, the mind-doctor and British Communist Party member, said it was wrong to say that schools were safe. They had to be made so by ‘distancing’, masks and ventilation (sitting all day in the cold). I must ask this lady round for dinner on a night I know I am going to be out and not back for weeks. She probably wouldn’t be able to make it, anyway, with all the visits to her own psychologist she must have block-booked.

## **Masking identity**

I know how shocking it must be for you that a behaviour manipulator like Michie wants everyone to wear masks which have long been a feature of mind-control programs like the infamous MKUltra in the United States, but, there we are. We live and learn. I spent many years from 1996 to right across the millennium

researching mind control in detail on both sides of the Atlantic and elsewhere. I met a large number of mind-control survivors and many had been held captive in body and mind by MKUltra. MK stands for mind-control, but employs the German spelling in deference to the Nazis spirited out of Germany at the end of World War Two by Operation Paperclip in which the US authorities, with help from the Vatican, transported Nazi mind-controllers and engineers to America to continue their work. Many of them were behind the creation of NASA and they included Nazi scientist and SS officer Wernher von Braun who swapped designing V-2 rockets to bombard London with designing the Saturn V rockets that powered the NASA moon programme's Apollo craft. I think I may have mentioned that the Cult has no borders. Among Paperclip escapees was Josef Mengele, the Angel of Death in the Nazi concentration camps where he conducted mind and genetic experiments on children often using twins to provide a control twin to measure the impact of his 'work' on the other. If you want to observe the Cult mentality in all its extremes of evil then look into the life of Mengele. I have met many people who suffered mercilessly under Mengele in the United States where he operated under the name Dr Greene and became a stalwart of MKUltra programming and torture. Among his locations was the underground facility in the Mojave Desert in California called the China Lake Naval Weapons Station which is almost entirely below the surface. My books *The Biggest Secret*, *Children of the Matrix* and *The Perception Deception* have the detailed background to MKUltra.

The best-known MKUltra survivor is American Cathy O'Brien. I first met her and her late partner Mark Phillips at a conference in Colorado in 1996. Mark helped her escape and deprogram from decades of captivity in an offshoot of MKUltra known as Project Monarch in which 'sex slaves' were provided for the rich and famous including Father George Bush, Dick Cheney and the Clintons. Read Cathy and Mark's book *Trance-Formation of America* and if you are new to this you will be shocked to the core. I read it in 1996 shortly before, with the usual synchronicity of my life, I found

myself given a book table at the conference right next to hers. MKUltra never ended despite being very publicly exposed (only a small part of it) in the 1970s and continues in other guises. I am still in touch with Cathy. She contacted me during 2020 after masks became compulsory in many countries to tell me how they were used as part of MKUltra programming. I had been observing 'Covid regulations' and the relationship between authority and public for months. I saw techniques that I knew were employed on individuals in MKUltra being used on the global population. I had read many books and manuals on mind control including one called *Silent Weapons for Quiet Wars* which came to light in the 1980s and was a guide on how to perceptually program on a mass scale. 'Silent Weapons' refers to mind-control. I remembered a line from the manual as governments, medical authorities and law enforcement agencies have so obviously talked to – or rather at – the adult population since the 'Covid' hoax began as if they are children. The document said:

If a person is spoken to by a T.V. advertiser as if he were a twelve-year-old, then, due to suggestibility, he will, with a certain probability, respond or react to that suggestion with the uncritical response of a twelve-year-old and will reach in to his economic reservoir and deliver its energy to buy that product on impulse when he passes it in the store.

That's why authority has spoken to adults like children since all this began.

### **Why did Michael Jackson wear masks?**

Every aspect of the 'Covid' narrative has mind-control as its central theme. Cathy O'Brien wrote an article for [davidicke.com](http://davidicke.com) about the connection between masks and mind control. Her daughter Kelly who I first met in the 1990s was born while Cathy was still held captive in MKUltra. Kelly was forced to wear a mask as part of her programming from the age of *two* to dehumanise her, target her sense of individuality and reduce the amount of oxygen her brain and body received. *Bingo*. This is the real reason for compulsory



masks, why they have been enforced en masse, and why they seek to increase the number they demand you wear. First one, then two, with one disgraceful alleged 'doctor' recommending four which is nothing less than a death sentence. Where and how often they must be worn is being expanded for the purpose of mass mind control and damaging respiratory health which they can call 'Covid-19'. Canada's government headed by the man-child Justin Trudeau, says it's fine for children of two and older to wear masks. An insane 'study' in Italy involving just 47 children concluded there was no problem for babies as young as *four months* wearing them. Even after people were 'vaccinated' they were still told to wear masks by the criminal that is Anthony Fauci. Cathy wrote that mandating masks is allowing the authorities literally to control the air we breathe which is what was done in MKUltra. You might recall how the singer Michael Jackson wore masks and there is a reason for that. He was subjected to MKUltra mind control through Project Monarch and his psyche was scrambled by these simpletons. Cathy wrote:

In MKUltra Project Monarch mind control, Michael Jackson had to wear a mask to silence his voice so he could not reach out for help. Remember how he developed that whisper voice when he wasn't singing? Masks control the mind from the outside in, like the redefining of words is doing. By controlling what we can and cannot say for fear of being labeled racist or beaten, for example, it ultimately controls thought that drives our words and ultimately actions (or lack thereof).

Likewise, a mask muffles our speech so that we are not heard, which controls voice ... words ... mind. This is Mind Control. Masks are an obvious mind control device, and I am disturbed so many people are complying on a global scale. Masks depersonalize while making a person feel as though they have no voice. It is a barrier to others. People who would never choose to comply but are forced to wear a mask in order to keep their job, and ultimately their family fed, are compromised. They often feel shame and are subdued. People have stopped talking with each other while media controls the narrative.

The 'no voice' theme has often become literal with train passengers told not to speak to each other in case they pass on the 'virus', singing banned for the same reason and bonkers California officials telling people riding roller coasters that they cannot shout and scream. Cathy said she heard every day from healed MKUltra survivors who cannot wear a mask without flashing back on ways

their breathing was controlled – ‘from ball gags and penises to water boarding’. She said that through the years when she saw images of people in China wearing masks ‘due to pollution’ that it was really to control their oxygen levels. ‘I knew it was as much of a population control mechanism of depersonalisation as are burkas’, she said. Masks are another Chinese communist/fascist method of control that has been swept across the West as the West becomes China at lightning speed since we entered 2020.

## **Mask-19**

There are other reasons for mandatory masks and these include destroying respiratory health to call it ‘Covid-19’ and stunting brain development of children and the young. Dr Margarite Griesz-Brisson MD, PhD, is a Consultant Neurologist and Neurophysiologist and the Founder and Medical Director of the London Neurology and Pain Clinic. Her CV goes down the street and round the corner. She is clearly someone who cares about people and won’t parrot the propaganda. Griesz-Brisson has a PhD in pharmacology, with special interest in neurotoxicology, environmental medicine, neuroregeneration and neuroplasticity (the way the brain can change in the light of information received). She went public in October, 2020, with a passionate warning about the effects of mask-wearing laws:

The reinhalation of our exhaled air will without a doubt create oxygen deficiency and a flooding of carbon dioxide. We know that the human brain is very sensitive to oxygen deprivation. There are nerve cells for example in the hippocampus that can’t be longer than 3 minutes without oxygen – they cannot survive. The acute warning symptoms are headaches, drowsiness, dizziness, issues in concentration, slowing down of reaction time – reactions of the cognitive system.

Oh, I know, let’s tell bus, truck and taxi drivers to wear them and people working machinery. How about pilots, doctors and police? Griesz-Brisson makes the important point that while the symptoms she mentions may fade as the body readjusts this does not alter the fact that people continue to operate in oxygen deficit with long list of

potential consequences. She said it was well known that neurodegenerative diseases take years or decades to develop. 'If today you forget your phone number, the breakdown in your brain would have already started 20 or 30 years ago.' She said degenerative processes in your brain are getting amplified as your oxygen deprivation continues through wearing a mask. Nerve cells in the brain are unable to divide themselves normally in these circumstances and lost nerve cells will no longer be regenerated. 'What is gone is gone.' Now consider that people like shop workers and *schoolchildren* are wearing masks for hours every day. What in the name of sanity is going to be happening to them? 'I do not wear a mask, I need my brain to think', Griesz-Brisson said, 'I want to have a clear head when I deal with my patients and not be in a carbon dioxide-induced anaesthesia'. If you are told to wear a mask anywhere ask the organisation, police, store, whatever, for their risk assessment on the dangers and negative effects on mind and body of enforcing mask-wearing. They won't have one because it has never been done not even by government. All of them must be subject to class-action lawsuits as the consequences come to light. They don't do mask risk assessments for an obvious reason. They know what the conclusions would be and independent scientific studies that *have* been done tell a horror story of consequences.

### **'Masks are criminal'**

Dr Griesz-Brisson said that for children and adolescents, masks are an absolute no-no. They had an extremely active and adaptive immune system and their brain was incredibly active with so much to learn. 'The child's brain, or the youth's brain, is thirsting for oxygen.' The more metabolically active an organ was, the more oxygen it required; and in children and adolescents every organ was metabolically active. Griesz-Brisson said that to deprive a child's or adolescent's brain of oxygen, or to restrict it in any way, was not only dangerous to their health, it was absolutely criminal. 'Oxygen deficiency inhibits the development of the brain, and the damage that has taken place as a result CANNOT be reversed.' Mind

manipulators of MKUltra put masks on two-year-olds they wanted to neurologically rewire and you can see why. Griesz-Brisson said a child needs the brain to learn and the brain needs oxygen to function. 'We don't need a clinical study for that. This is simple, indisputable physiology.' Consciously and purposely induced oxygen deficiency was an absolutely deliberate health hazard, and an absolute medical contraindication which means that 'this drug, this therapy, this method or measure should not be used, and is not allowed to be used'. To coerce an entire population to use an absolute medical contraindication by force, she said, there had to be definite and serious reasons and the reasons must be presented to competent interdisciplinary and independent bodies to be verified and authorised. She had this warning of the consequences that were coming if mask wearing continued:

When, in ten years, dementia is going to increase exponentially, and the younger generations couldn't reach their god-given potential, it won't help to say 'we didn't need the masks'. I know how damaging oxygen deprivation is for the brain, cardiologists know how damaging it is for the heart, pulmonologists know how damaging it is for the lungs. Oxygen deprivation damages every single organ. Where are our health departments, our health insurance, our medical associations? It would have been their duty to be vehemently against the lockdown and to stop it and stop it from the very beginning.

Why do the medical boards issue punishments to doctors who give people exemptions? Does the person or the doctor seriously have to prove that oxygen deprivation harms people? What kind of medicine are our doctors and medical associations representing? Who is responsible for this crime? The ones who want to enforce it? The ones who let it happen and play along, or the ones who don't prevent it?

All of the organisations and people she mentions there either answer directly to the Cult or do whatever hierarchical levels above them tell them to do. The outcome of both is the same. 'It's not about masks, it's not about viruses, it's certainly not about your health', Griesz-Brisson said. 'It is about much, much more. I am not participating. I am not afraid.' They were taking our air to breathe and there was no unfounded medical exemption from face masks. Oxygen deprivation was dangerous for every single brain. It had to be the free decision of every human being whether they want to

wear a mask that was absolutely ineffective to protect themselves from a virus. She ended by rightly identifying where the responsibility lies for all this:

The imperative of the hour is personal responsibility. We are responsible for what we think, not the media. We are responsible for what we do, not our superiors. We are responsible for our health, not the World Health Organization. And we are responsible for what happens in our country, not the government.

Halle-bloody-lujah.

### **But surgeons wear masks, right?**

Independent studies of mask-wearing have produced a long list of reports detailing mental, emotional and physical dangers. What a definition of insanity to see police officers imposing mask-wearing on the public which will cumulatively damage their health while the police themselves wear masks that will cumulatively damage *their* health. It's utter madness and both public and police do this because 'the government says so' – yes a government of brain-donor idiots like UK Health Secretary Matt Hancock reading the 'follow the science' scripts of psychopathic, lunatic psychologists. The response you get from Stockholm syndrome sufferers defending the very authorities that are destroying them and their families is that 'surgeons wear masks'. This is considered the game, set and match that they must work and don't cause oxygen deficit. Well, actually, scientific studies have shown that they *do* and oxygen levels are monitored in operating theatres to compensate. Surgeons wear masks to stop spittle and such like dropping into open wounds – not to stop 'viral particles' which are so miniscule they can only be seen through an electron microscope. Holes in the masks are significantly bigger than 'viral particles' and if you sneeze or cough they will breach the mask. I watched an incredibly disingenuous 'experiment' that claimed to prove that masks work in catching 'virus' material from the mouth and nose. They did this with a slow motion camera and the mask did block big stuff which stayed inside the mask and

against the face to be breathed in or cause infections on the face as we have seen with many children. 'Viral particles', however, would never have been picked up by the camera as they came through the mask when they are far too small to be seen. The 'experiment' was therefore disingenuous *and* useless.

Studies have concluded that wearing masks in operating theatres (and thus elsewhere) make no difference to preventing infection while the opposite is true with toxic shite building up in the mask and this had led to an explosion in tooth decay and gum disease dubbed by dentists 'mask mouth'. You might have seen the Internet video of a furious American doctor urging people to take off their masks after a four-year-old patient had been rushed to hospital the night before and nearly died with a lung infection that doctors sourced to mask wearing. A study in the journal *Cancer Discovery* found that inhalation of harmful microbes can contribute to advanced stage lung cancer in adults and long-term use of masks can help breed dangerous pathogens. Microbiologists have said frequent mask wearing creates a moist environment in which microbes can grow and proliferate before entering the lungs. The Canadian Agency for Drugs and Technologies in Health, or CADTH, a Canadian national organisation that provides research and analysis to healthcare decision-makers, said this as long ago as 2013 in a report entitled 'Use of Surgical Masks in the Operating Room: A Review of the Clinical Effectiveness and Guidelines'. It said:

- No evidence was found to support the use of surgical face masks to reduce the frequency of surgical site infections
- No evidence was found on the effectiveness of wearing surgical face masks to protect staff from infectious material in the operating room.
- Guidelines recommend the use of surgical face masks by staff in the operating room to protect both operating room staff and patients (despite the lack of evidence).

We were told that the world could go back to 'normal' with the arrival of the 'vaccines'. When they came, fraudulent as they are, the story changed as I knew that it would. We are in the midst of transforming 'normal', not going back to it. Mary Ramsay, head of immunisation at Public Health England, echoed the words of US criminal Anthony Fauci who said masks and other regulations must stay no matter if people are vaccinated. The Fauci idiot continued to wear two masks – different colours so both could be clearly seen – after he *claimed* to have been vaccinated. Senator Rand Paul told Fauci in one exchange that his double-masks were 'theatre' and he was right. It's all theatre. Mary Ramsay back-tracked on the vaccine-return-to-normal theme when she said the public may need to wear masks and social-distance for years despite the jabs. 'People have got used to those lower-level restrictions now, and [they] can live with them', she said telling us what the idea has been all along. 'The vaccine does not give you a pass, even if you have had it, you must continue to follow all the guidelines' said a Public Health England statement which reneged on what we had been told before and made having the 'vaccine' irrelevant to 'normality' even by the official story. Spain's fascist government trumped everyone by passing a law mandating the wearing of masks on the beach and even when swimming in the sea. The move would have devastated what's left of the Spanish tourist industry, posed potential breathing dangers to swimmers and had Northern European sunbathers walking around with their forehead brown and the rest of their face white as a sheet. The ruling was so crazy that it had to be retracted after pressure from public and tourist industry, but it confirmed where the Cult wants to go with masks and how clinically insane authority has become. The determination to make masks permanent and hide the serious dangers to body and mind can be seen in the censorship of scientist Professor Denis Rancourt by Bill Gates-funded academic publishing website ResearchGate over his papers exposing the dangers and uselessness of masks. Rancourt said:

ResearchGate today has permanently locked my account, which I have had since 2015. Their reasons graphically show the nature of their attack against democracy, and their corruption of

science ... By their obscene non-logic, a scientific review of science articles reporting on harms caused by face masks has a 'potential to cause harm'. No criticism of the psychological device (face masks) is tolerated, if the said criticism shows potential to influence public policy.

This is what happens in a fascist world.

### **Where are the 'greens' (again)?**

Other dangers of wearing masks especially regularly relate to the inhalation of minute plastic fibres into the lungs and the deluge of discarded masks in the environment and oceans. Estimates predicted that more than 1.5 billion disposable masks will end up in the world's oceans every year polluting the water with tons of plastic and endangering marine wildlife. Studies project that humans are using 129 billion face masks each month worldwide – about three million a minute. Most are disposable and made from plastic, non-biodegradable microfibers that break down into smaller plastic particles that become widespread in ecosystems. They are littering cities, clogging sewage channels and turning up in bodies of water. I have written in other books about the immense amounts of microplastics from endless sources now being absorbed into the body. Rolf Halden, director of the Arizona State University (ASU) Biodesign Center for Environmental Health Engineering, was the senior researcher in a 2020 study that analysed 47 human tissue samples and found microplastics in all of them. 'We have detected these chemicals of plastics in every single organ that we have investigated', he said. I wrote in *The Answer* about the world being deluged with microplastics. A study by the Worldwide Fund for Nature (WWF) found that people are consuming on average every week some 2,000 tiny pieces of plastic mostly through water and also through marine life and the air. Every year humans are ingesting enough microplastics to fill a heaped dinner plate and in a life-time of 79 years it is enough to fill two large waste bins. Marco Lambertini, WWF International director general said: 'Not only are plastics polluting our oceans and waterways and killing marine life – it's in all of us and we can't escape consuming plastics,' American



geologists found tiny plastic fibres, beads and shards in rainwater samples collected from the remote slopes of the Rocky Mountain National Park near Denver, Colorado. Their report was headed: 'It is raining plastic.' Rachel Adams, senior lecturer in Biomedical Science at Cardiff Metropolitan University, said that among health consequences are internal inflammation and immune responses to a 'foreign body'. She further pointed out that microplastics become carriers of toxins including mercury, pesticides and dioxins (a known cause of cancer and reproductive and developmental problems). These toxins accumulate in the fatty tissues once they enter the body through microplastics. Now this is being compounded massively by people putting plastic on their face and throwing it away.

Workers exposed to polypropylene plastic fibres known as 'flock' have developed 'flock worker's lung' from inhaling small pieces of the flock fibres which can damage lung tissue, reduce breathing capacity and exacerbate other respiratory problems. *Now ...* commonly used surgical masks have three layers of melt-blown textiles made of ... polypropylene. We have billions of people putting these microplastics against their mouth, nose and face for hours at a time day after day in the form of masks. How does anyone think that will work out? I mean – what could possibly go wrong? We posted a number of scientific studies on this at [davidicke.com](http://davidicke.com), but when I went back to them as I was writing this book the links to the science research website where they were hosted were dead. Anything that challenges the official narrative in any way is either censored or vilified. The official narrative is so unsupportable by the evidence that only deleting the truth can protect it. A study by Chinese scientists still survived – with the usual twist which it why it was still active, I guess. Yes, they found that virtually all the masks they tested increased the daily intake of microplastic fibres, but people should still wear them because the danger from the 'virus' was worse said the crazy 'team' from the Institute of Hydrobiology in Wuhan. Scientists first discovered microplastics in lung tissue of some patients who died of lung cancer

in the 1990s. Subsequent studies have confirmed the potential health damage with the plastic degrading slowly and remaining in the lungs to accumulate in volume. Wuhan researchers used a machine simulating human breathing to establish that masks shed up to nearly 4,000 microplastic fibres in a month with reused masks producing more. Scientists said some masks are laced with toxic chemicals and a variety of compounds seriously restricted for both health and environmental reasons. They include cobalt (used in blue dye) and formaldehyde known to cause watery eyes, burning sensations in the eyes, nose, and throat, plus coughing, wheezing and nausea. No – that must be ‘Covid-19’.

### **Mask ‘worms’**

There is another and potentially even more sinister content of masks. Mostly new masks of different makes filmed under a microscope around the world have been found to contain strange black fibres or ‘worms’ that appear to move or ‘crawl’ by themselves and react to heat and water. The nearest I have seen to them are the self-replicating fibres that are pulled out through the skin of those suffering from Morgellons disease which has been connected to the phenomena of ‘chemtrails’ which I will bring into the story later on. Morgellons fibres continue to grow outside the body and have a form of artificial intelligence. Black ‘worm’ fibres in masks have that kind of feel to them and there is a nanotechnology technique called ‘worm micelles’ which carry and release drugs or anything else you want to deliver to the body. For sure the suppression of humanity by mind altering drugs is the Cult agenda big time and the more excuses they can find to gain access to the body the more opportunities there are to make that happen whether through ‘vaccines’ or masks pushed against the mouth and nose for hours on end.

So let us summarise the pros and cons of masks:

*Against masks:* Breathing in your own carbon dioxide; depriving the body and brain of sufficient oxygen; build-up of toxins in the mask that can be breathed into the lungs and cause rashes on the face and 'mask-mouth'; breathing microplastic fibres and toxic chemicals into the lungs; dehumanisation and deleting individualisation by literally making people faceless; destroying human emotional interaction through facial expression and deleting parental connection with their babies which look for guidance to their facial expression.

*For masks:* They don't protect you from a 'virus' that doesn't exist and even if it did 'viral' particles are so minute they are smaller than the holes in the mask.

Governments, police, supermarkets, businesses, transport companies, and all the rest who seek to impose masks have done no risk assessment on their consequences for health and psychology and are now open to group lawsuits when the impact becomes clear with a cumulative epidemic of respiratory and other disease. Authorities will try to exploit these effects and hide the real cause by dubbing them 'Covid-19'. Can you imagine setting out to force the population to wear health-destroying masks without doing any assessment of the risks? It is criminal and it is evil, but then how many people targeted in this way, who see their children told to wear them all day at school, have asked for a risk assessment? Billions can't be imposed upon by the few unless the billions allow it. Oh, yes, with just a tinge of irony, 85 percent of all masks made worldwide come from *China*.

### **Wash your hands in toxic shite**

'Covid' rules include the use of toxic sanitisers and again the health consequences of constantly applying toxins to be absorbed through the skin is obvious to any level of Renegade Mind. America's Food and Drug Administration (FDA) said that sanitisers are drugs and issued a warning about 75 dangerous brands which contain

methanol used in antifreeze and can cause death, kidney damage and blindness. The FDA circulated the following warning even for those brands that it claims to be safe:

Store hand sanitizer out of the reach of pets and children, and children should use it only with adult supervision. Do not drink hand sanitizer. This is particularly important for young children, especially toddlers, who may be attracted by the pleasant smell or brightly colored bottles of hand sanitizer.

Drinking even a small amount of hand sanitizer can cause alcohol poisoning in children. (However, there is no need to be concerned if your children eat with or lick their hands after using hand sanitizer.) During this coronavirus pandemic, poison control centers have had an increase in calls about accidental ingestion of hand sanitizer, so it is important that adults monitor young children's use.

Do not allow pets to swallow hand sanitizer. If you think your pet has eaten something potentially dangerous, call your veterinarian or a pet poison control center right away. Hand sanitizer is flammable and should be stored away from heat and flames. When using hand sanitizer, rub your hands until they feel completely dry before performing activities that may involve heat, sparks, static electricity, or open flames.

There you go, perfectly safe, then, and that's without even a mention of the toxins absorbed through the skin. Come on kids – sanitise your hands everywhere you go. It will save you from the 'virus'. Put all these elements together of the 'Covid' normal and see how much health and psychology is being cumulatively damaged, even devastated, to 'protect your health'. Makes sense, right? They are only imposing these things because they care, right? *Right?*

## **Submitting to insanity**

Psychological reframing of the population goes very deep and is done in many less obvious ways. I hear people say how contradictory and crazy 'Covid' rules are and how they are ever changing. This is explained away by dismissing those involved as idiots. It is a big mistake. The Cult is delighted if its cold calculation is perceived as incompetence and idiocy when it is anything but. Oh, yes, there are idiots within the system – lots of them – but they are *administering* the Cult agenda, mostly unknowingly. They are not deciding and dictating it. The bulwark against tyranny is self-

respect, always has been, always will be. It is self-respect that has broken every tyranny in history. By its very nature self-respect will not bow to oppression and its perpetrators. There is so little self-respect that it's always the few that overturn dictators. Many may eventually follow, but the few with the iron spines (self-respect) kick it off and generate the momentum. The Cult targets self-respect in the knowledge that once this has gone only submission remains. Crazy, contradictory, ever-changing 'Covid' rules are systematically applied by psychologists to delete self-respect. They *want* you to see that the rules make no sense. It is one thing to decide to do something when *you* have made the choice based on evidence and logic. You still retain your self-respect. It is quite another when you can see what you are being told to do is insane, ridiculous and makes no sense, and *yet you still do it*. Your self-respect is extinguished and this has been happening as ever more obviously stupid and nonsensical things have been demanded and the great majority have complied even when they can see they are stupid and nonsensical.

People walk around in face-nappies knowing they are damaging their health and make no difference to a 'virus'. They do it in fear of not doing it. I know it's daft, but I'll do it anyway. When that happens something dies inside of you and submissive reframing has begun. Next there's a need to hide from yourself that you have conceded your self-respect and you convince yourself that you have not really submitted to fear and intimidation. You begin to believe that you are complying with craziness because it's the right thing to do. When first you concede your self-respect of  $2+2 = 4$  to  $2+2 = 5$  you *know* you are compromising your self-respect. Gradually to avoid facing that fact you begin to *believe* that  $2+2=5$ . You have been reframed and I have been watching this process happening in the human psyche on an industrial scale. The Cult is working to break your spirit and one of its major tools in that war is humiliation. I read how former American soldier Bradley Manning (later Chelsea Manning after a sex-change) was treated after being jailed for supplying WikiLeaks with documents exposing the enormity of

government and elite mendacity. Manning was isolated in solitary confinement for eight months, put under 24-hour surveillance, forced to hand over clothing before going to bed, and stand naked for every roll call. This is systematic humiliation. The introduction of anal swab 'Covid' tests in China has been done for the same reason to delete self-respect and induce compliant submission. Anal swabs are mandatory for incoming passengers in parts of China and American diplomats have said they were forced to undergo the indignity which would have been calculated humiliation by the Cult-owned Chinese government that has America in its sights.

### **Government-people: An abusive relationship**

Spirit-breaking psychological techniques include giving people hope and apparent respite from tyranny only to take it away again. This happened in the UK during Christmas, 2020, when the psychopsychologists and their political lackeys announced an easing of restrictions over the holiday only to reimpose them almost immediately on the basis of yet another lie. There is a big psychological difference between getting used to oppression and being given hope of relief only to have that dashed. Psychologists know this and we have seen the technique used repeatedly. Then there is traumatising people before you introduce more extreme regulations that require compliance. A perfect case was the announcement by the dark and sinister Whitty and Vallance in the UK that 'new data' predicted that 4,000 could die every day over the winter of 2020/2021 if we did not lockdown again. I think they call it lying and after traumatising people with that claim out came Jackboot Johnson the next day with new curbs on human freedom. Psychologists know that a frightened and traumatised mind becomes suggestable to submission and behaviour reframing. Underpinning all this has been to make people fearful and suspicious of each other and see themselves as a potential danger to others. In league with deleted self-respect you have the perfect psychological recipe for self-loathing. The relationship between authority and public is now demonstrably the same as that of

subservience to an abusive partner. These are signs of an abusive relationship explained by psychologist Leslie Becker-Phelps:

**Psychological and emotional abuse:** Undermining a partner's self-worth with verbal attacks, name-calling, and belittling. Humiliating the partner in public, unjustly accusing them of having an affair, or interrogating them about their every behavior. Keeping partner confused or off balance by saying they were just kidding or blaming the partner for 'making' them act this way ... Feigning in public that they care while turning against them in private. This leads to victims frequently feeling confused, incompetent, unworthy, hopeless, and chronically self-doubting. [Apply these techniques to how governments have treated the population since New Year, 2020, and the parallels are obvious.]

**Physical abuse:** The abuser might physically harm their partner in a range of ways, such as grabbing, hitting, punching, or shoving them. They might throw objects at them or harm them with a weapon. [Observe the physical harm imposed by masks, lockdown, and so on.]

**Threats and intimidation:** One way abusers keep their partners in line is by instilling fear. They might be verbally threatening, or give threatening looks or gestures. Abusers often make it known that they are tracking their partner's every move. They might destroy their partner's possessions, threaten to harm them, or threaten to harm their family members. Not surprisingly, victims of this abuse often feel anxiety, fear, and panic. [No words necessary.]

**Isolation:** Abusers often limit their partner's activities, forbidding them to talk or interact with friends or family. They might limit access to a car or even turn off their phone. All of this might be done by physically holding them against their will, but is often accomplished through psychological abuse and intimidation. The more isolated a person feels, the fewer resources they have to help gain perspective on their situation and to escape from it. [No words necessary.]

**Economic abuse:** Abusers often make their partners beholden to them for money by controlling access to funds of any kind. They might prevent their partner from getting a job or withhold access to money they earn from a job. This creates financial dependency that makes leaving the relationship very difficult. [See destruction of livelihoods and the proposed meagre 'guaranteed income' so long as you do whatever you are told.]

**Using children:** An abuser might disparage their partner's parenting skills, tell their children lies about their partner, threaten to take custody of their children, or threaten to harm their children. These tactics instil fear and often elicit compliance. [See reframed social service mafia and how children are being mercilessly abused by the state over 'Covid' while their parents look on too frightened to do anything.]

A further recurring trait in an abusive relationship is the abused blaming themselves for their abuse and making excuses for the abuser. We have the public blaming each other for lockdown abuse by government and many making excuses for the government while attacking those who challenge the government. How often we have heard authorities say that rules are being imposed or reimposed only because people have refused to 'behave' and follow the rules. We don't want to do it – it's *you*.

Renegade Minds are an antidote to all of these things. They will never concede their self-respect no matter what the circumstances. Even when apparent humiliation is heaped upon them they laugh in its face and reflect back the humiliation on the abuser where it belongs. Renegade Minds will never wear masks they know are only imposed to humiliate, suppress and damage both physically and psychologically. Consequences will take care of themselves and they will never break their spirit or cause them to concede to tyranny. UK newspaper columnist Peter Hitchens was one of the few in the mainstream media to speak out against lockdowns and forced vaccinations. He then announced he had taken the jab. He wanted to see family members abroad and he believed vaccine passports were inevitable even though they had not yet been introduced. Hitchens



has a questioning and critical mind, but not a Renegade one. If he had no amount of pressure would have made him concede. Hitchens excused his action by saying that the battle has been lost. Renegade Minds never accept defeat when freedom is at stake and even if they are the last one standing the self-respect of not submitting to tyranny is more important than any outcome or any consequence.

That's why Renegade Minds are the only minds that ever changed anything worth changing.

## CHAPTER EIGHT

### **'Reframing' insanity**

*Insanity is relative. It depends on who has who locked in what cage*  
Ray Bradbury

**R**eframing' a mind means simply to change its perception and behaviour. This can be done subconsciously to such an extent that subjects have no idea they have been 'reframed' while to any observer changes in behaviour and attitudes are obvious.

Human society is being reframed on a ginormous scale since the start of 2020 and here we have the reason why psychologists rather than doctors have been calling the shots. Ask most people who have succumbed to 'Covid' reframing if they have changed and most will say 'no'; but they *have* and fundamentally. The Cult's long-game has been preparing for these times since way back and crucial to that has been to prepare both population and officialdom mentally and emotionally. To use the mind-control parlance they had to reframe the population with a mentality that would submit to fascism and reframe those in government and law enforcement to impose fascism or at least go along with it. The result has been the fact-deleted mindlessness of 'Wokeness' and officialdom that has either enthusiastically or unquestioningly imposed global tyranny demanded by reframed politicians on behalf of psychopathic and deeply evil cultists. 'Cognitive reframing' identifies and challenges the way someone sees the world in the form of situations, experiences and emotions and then restructures those perceptions to view the same set of circumstances in a different way. This can have

benefits if the attitudes are personally destructive while on the other side it has the potential for individual and collective mind control which the subject has no idea has even happened.

Cognitive therapy was developed in the 1960s by Aaron T. Beck who was born in Rhode Island in 1921 as the son of Jewish immigrants from the Ukraine. He became interested in the techniques as a treatment for depression. Beck's daughter Judith S. Beck is prominent in the same field and they founded the Beck Institute for Cognitive Behavior Therapy in Philadelphia in 1994. Cognitive reframing, however, began to be used worldwide by those with a very dark agenda. The Cult reframes politicians to change their attitudes and actions until they are completely at odds with what they once appeared to stand for. The same has been happening to government administrators at all levels, law enforcement, military and the human population. Cultists love mind control for two main reasons: It allows them to control what people think, do and say to secure agenda advancement and, by definition, it calms their legendary insecurity and fear of the unexpected. I have studied mind control since the time I travelled America in 1996. I may have been talking to next to no one in terms of an audience in those years, but my goodness did I gather a phenomenal amount of information and knowledge about so many things including the techniques of mind control. I have described this in detail in other books going back to *The Biggest Secret* in 1998. I met a very large number of people recovering from MKUltra and its offshoots and successors and I began to see how these same techniques were being used on the population in general. This was never more obvious than since the 'Covid' hoax began.

## **Reframing the enforcers**

I have observed over the last two decades and more the very clear transformation in the dynamic between the police, officialdom and the public. I tracked this in the books as the relationship mutated from one of serving the public to seeing them as almost the enemy and certainly a lower caste. There has always been a class divide

based on income and always been some psychopathic, corrupt, and big-I-am police officers. This was different. Wholesale change was unfolding in the collective dynamic; it was less about money and far more about position and perceived power. An us-and-them was emerging. Noses were lifted skyward by government administration and law enforcement and their attitude to the public they were *supposed* to be serving changed to one of increasing contempt, superiority and control. The transformation was so clear and widespread that it had to be planned. Collective attitudes and dynamics do not change naturally and organically that quickly on that scale. I then came across an organisation in Britain called Common Purpose created in the late 1980s by Julia Middleton who would work in the office of Deputy Prime Minister John Prescott during the long and disastrous premiership of war criminal Tony Blair. When Blair speaks the Cult is speaking and the man should have been in jail a long time ago. Common Purpose proclaims itself to be one of the biggest 'leadership development' organisations in the world while functioning as a *charity* with all the financial benefits which come from that. It hosts 'leadership development' courses and programmes all over the world and claims to have 'brought together' what it calls 'leaders' from more than 100 countries on six continents. The modus operandi of Common Purpose can be compared with the work of the UK government's reframing network that includes the Behavioural Insights Team 'nudge unit' and 'Covid' reframing specialists at SPI-B. WikiLeaks described Common Purpose long ago as 'a hidden virus in our government and schools' which is unknown to the general public: 'It recruits and trains "leaders" to be loyal to the directives of Common Purpose and the EU, instead of to their own departments, which they then undermine or subvert, the NHS [National Health Service] being an example.' This is a vital point to understand the 'Covid' hoax. The NHS, and its equivalent around the world, has been utterly reframed in terms of administrators and much of the medical personnel with the transformation underpinned by recruitment policies. The outcome has been the criminal and psychopathic behaviour of the

NHS over 'Covid' and we have seen the same in every other major country. WikiLeaks said Common Purpose trainees are 'learning to rule without regard to democracy' and to usher in a police state (current events explained). Common Purpose operated like a 'glue' and had members in the NHS, BBC, police, legal profession, church, many of Britain's 7,000 quangos, local councils, the Civil Service, government ministries and Parliament, and controlled many RDA's (Regional Development Agencies). Here we have one answer for how and why British institutions and their like in other countries have changed so negatively in relation to the public. This further explains how and why the beyond-disgraceful reframed BBC has become a propaganda arm of 'Covid' fascism. They are all part of a network pursuing the same goal.

By 2019 Common Purpose was quoting a figure of 85,000 'leaders' that had attended its programmes. These 'students' of all ages are known as Common Purpose 'graduates' and they consist of government, state and local government officials and administrators, police chiefs and officers, and a whole range of others operating within the national, local and global establishment. Cressida Dick, Commissioner of the London Metropolitan Police, is the Common Purpose graduate who was the 'Gold Commander' that oversaw what can only be described as the murder of Brazilian electrician Jean Charles de Menezes in 2005. He was held down by psychopathic police and shot seven times in the head by a psychopathic lunatic after being mistaken for a terrorist when he was just a bloke going about his day. Dick authorised officers to pursue and keep surveillance on de Menezes and ordered that he be stopped from entering the underground train system. Police psychopaths took her at her word clearly. She was 'disciplined' for this outrage by being *promoted* – eventually to the top of the 'Met' police where she has been a disaster. Many Chief Constables controlling the police in different parts of the UK are and have been Common Purpose graduates. I have heard the 'graduate' network described as a sort of Mafia or secret society operating within the fabric of government at all levels pursuing a collective policy

ingrained at Common Purpose training events. Founder Julia Middleton herself has said:

Locally and internationally, Common Purpose graduates will be 'lighting small fires' to create change in their organisations and communities ... The Common Purpose effect is best illustrated by the many stories of small changes brought about by leaders, who themselves have changed.

A Common Purpose mission statement declared:

Common Purpose aims to improve the way society works by expanding the vision, decision-making ability and influence of all kinds of leaders. The organisation runs a variety of educational programmes for leaders of all ages, backgrounds and sectors, in order to provide them with the inspirational, information and opportunities they need to change the world.

Yes, but into what? Since 2020 the answer has become clear.

## **NLP and the Delphi technique**

Common Purpose would seem to be a perfect name or would common programming be better? One of the foundation methods of reaching 'consensus' (group think) is by setting the agenda theme and then encouraging, cajoling or pressuring everyone to agree a 'consensus' in line with the core theme promoted by Common Purpose. The methodology involves the 'Delphi technique', or an adaptation of it, in which opinions are expressed that are summarised by a 'facilitator or change agent' at each stage. Participants are 'encouraged' to modify their views in the light of what others have said. Stage by stage the former individual opinions are merged into group consensus which just happens to be what Common Purpose wants them to believe. A key part of this is to marginalise anyone refusing to concede to group think and turn the group against them to apply pressure to conform. We are seeing this very technique used on the general population to make 'Covid' group-thinkers hostile to those who have seen through the bullshit. People can be reframed by using perception manipulation methods such as Neuro-Linguistic Programming (NLP) in which you change perception with the use of

carefully constructed language. An NLP website described the technique this way:

... A method of influencing brain behaviour (the 'neuro' part of the phrase) through the use of language (the 'linguistic' part) and other types of communication to enable a person to 'recode' the way the brain responds to stimuli (that's the 'programming') and manifest new and better behaviours. Neuro-Linguistic Programming often incorporates hypnosis and self-hypnosis to help achieve the change (or 'programming') that is wanted.

British alternative media operation UKColumn has done very detailed research into Common Purpose over a long period. I quoted co-founder and former naval officer Brian Gerrish in my book *Remember Who You Are*, published in 2011, as saying the following years before current times:

It is interesting that many of the mothers who have had children taken by the State speak of the Social Services people being icily cool, emotionless and, as two ladies said in slightly different words, '... like little robots'. We know that NLP is cumulative, so people can be given small imperceptible doses of NLP in a course here, another in a few months, next year etc. In this way, major changes are accrued in their personality, but the day by day change is almost unnoticeable.

In these and other ways 'graduates' have had their perceptions uniformly reframed and they return to their roles in the institutions of government, law enforcement, legal profession, military, 'education', the UK National Health Service and the whole swathe of the establishment structure to pursue a common agenda preparing for the 'post-industrial', 'post-democratic' society. I say 'preparing' but we are now there. 'Post-industrial' is code for the Great Reset and 'post-democratic' is 'Covid' fascism. UKColumn has spoken to partners of those who have attended Common Purpose 'training'. They have described how personalities and attitudes of 'graduates' changed very noticeably for the worse by the time they had completed the course. They had been 'reframed' and told they are the 'leaders' – the special ones – who know better than the population. There has also been the very demonstrable recruitment of psychopaths and narcissists into government administration at all

levels and law enforcement. If you want psychopathy hire psychopaths and you get a simple cause and effect. If you want administrators, police officers and 'leaders' to perceive the public as lesser beings who don't matter then employ narcissists. These personalities are identified using 'psychometrics' that identifies knowledge, abilities, attitudes and personality traits, mostly through carefully-designed questionnaires and tests. As this policy has passed through the decades we have had power-crazy, power-trippers appointed into law enforcement, security and government administration in preparation for current times and the dynamic between public and law enforcement/officialdom has been transformed. UKColumn's Brian Gerrish said of the narcissistic personality:

Their love of themselves and power automatically means that they will crush others who get in their way. I received a major piece of the puzzle when a friend pointed out that when they made public officials re-apply for their own jobs several years ago they were also required to do psychometric tests. This was undoubtedly the start of the screening process to get 'their' sort of people in post.

How obvious that has been since 2020 although it was clear what was happening long before if people paid attention to the changing public-establishment dynamic.

## **Change agents**

At the centre of events in 'Covid' Britain is the National Health Service (NHS) which has behaved disgracefully in slavishly following the Cult agenda. The NHS management structure is awash with Common Purpose graduates or 'change agents' working to a common cause. Helen Bevan, a Chief of Service Transformation at the NHS Institute for Innovation and Improvement, co-authored a document called 'Towards a million change agents, a review of the social movements literature: implications for large scale change in the NHS'. The document compared a project management approach to that of change and social movements where 'people change



themselves and each other – peer to peer’. Two definitions given for a ‘social movement’ were:

*A group of people who consciously attempt to build a radically new social order; involves people of a broad range of social backgrounds; and deploys politically confrontational and socially disruptive tactics – Cyrus Zirakzadeh 1997*

*Collective challenges, based on common purposes and social solidarities, in sustained interaction with elites, opponents, and authorities – Sidney Tarrow 1994*

Helen Bevan wrote another NHS document in which she defined ‘framing’ as ‘the process by which leaders construct, articulate and put across their message in a powerful and compelling way in order to win people to their cause and call them to action’. I think I could come up with another definition that would be rather more accurate. The National Health Service and institutions of Britain and the wider world have been taken over by reframed ‘change agents’ and that includes everything from the United Nations to national governments, local councils and social services which have been kidnapping children from loving parents on an extraordinary and gathering scale on the road to the end of parenthood altogether. Children from loving homes are stolen and kidnapped by the state and put into the ‘care’ (inversion) of the local authority through council homes, foster parents and forced adoption. At the same time children are allowed to be abused without response while many are under council ‘care’. UKColumn highlighted the Common Purpose connection between South Yorkshire Police and Rotherham council officers in the case of the scandal in that area of the sexual exploitation of children to which the authorities turned not one blind eye, but both:

We were alarmed to discover that the Chief Executive, the Strategic Director of Children and Young People's Services, the Manager for the Local Strategic Partnership, the Community Cohesion Manager, the Cabinet Member for Cohesion, the Chief Constable and his predecessor had all attended Leadership training courses provided by the pseudo-charity Common Purpose.

Once 'change agents' have secured positions of hire and fire within any organisation things start to move very quickly. Personnel are then hired and fired on the basis of whether they will work towards the agenda the change agent represents. If they do they are rapidly promoted even though they may be incompetent. Those more qualified and skilled who are pre-Common Purpose 'old school' see their careers stall and even disappear. This has been happening for decades in every institution of state, police, 'health' and social services and all of them have been transformed as a result in their attitudes to their jobs and the public. Medical professions, including nursing, which were once vocations for the caring now employ many cold, callous and couldn't give a shit personality types. The UKColumn investigation concluded:

By blurring the boundaries between people, professions, public and private sectors, responsibility and accountability, Common Purpose encourages 'graduates' to believe that as new selected leaders, they can work together, outside of the established political and social structures, to achieve a paradigm shift or CHANGE – so called 'Leading Beyond Authority'. In doing so, the allegiance of the individual becomes 'reframed' on CP colleagues and their NETWORK.

## **Reframing the Face-Nappies**

Nowhere has this process been more obvious than in the police where recruitment of psychopaths and development of unquestioning mind-controlled group-thinkers have transformed law enforcement into a politically-correct 'Woke' joke and a travesty of what should be public service. Today they wear their face-nappies like good little gofers and enforce 'Covid' rules which are fascism under another name. Alongside the specifically-recruited psychopaths we have software minds incapable of free thought. Brian Gerrish again:

An example is the policeman who would not get on a bike for a press photo because he had not done the cycling proficiency course. Normal people say this is political correctness gone mad. Nothing could be further from the truth. The policeman has been reframed, and in his reality it is perfect common sense not to get on the bike 'because he hasn't done the cycling course'.

Another example of this is where the police would not rescue a boy from a pond until they had taken advice from above on the 'risk assessment'. A normal person would have arrived, perhaps thought of the risk for a moment, and dived in. To the police now 'reframed', they followed 'normal' procedure.

There are shocking cases of reframed ambulance crews doing the same. Sheer unthinking stupidity of London Face-Nappies headed by Common Purpose graduate Cressida Dick can be seen in their behaviour at a vigil in March, 2021, for a murdered woman, Sarah Everard. A police officer had been charged with the crime. Anyone with a brain would have left the vigil alone in the circumstances. Instead they 'manhandled' women to stop them breaking 'Covid rules' to betray classic reframing. Minds in the thrall of perception control have no capacity for seeing a situation on its merits and acting accordingly. 'Rules is rules' is their only mind-set. My father used to say that rules and regulations are for the guidance of the intelligent and the blind obedience of the idiot. Most of the intelligent, decent, coppers have gone leaving only the other kind and a few old school for whom the job must be a daily nightmare. The combination of psychopaths and rule-book software minds has been clearly on public display in the 'Covid' era with automaton robots in uniform imposing fascistic 'Covid' regulations on the population without any personal initiative or judging situations on their merits. There are thousands of examples around the world, but I'll make my point with the infamous Derbyshire police in the English East Midlands – the ones who think pouring dye into beauty spots and using drones to track people walking in the countryside away from anyone is called 'policing'. To them there are rules decreed by the government which they have to enforce and in their bewildered state a group gathering in a closed space and someone walking alone in the countryside are the same thing. It is beyond idiocy and enters the realm of clinical insanity.

Police officers in Derbyshire said they were 'horrified' – *horrified* – to find 15 to 20 'irresponsible' kids playing a football match at a closed leisure centre 'in breach of coronavirus restrictions'. When they saw the police the kids ran away leaving their belongings behind and the reframed men and women of Derbyshire police were seeking to establish their identities with a view to fining their parents. The most natural thing for youngsters to do – kicking a ball about – is turned into a criminal activity and enforced by the moronic software programs of Derbyshire police. You find the same mentality in every country. These barely conscious 'horrified' officers said they had to take action because 'we need to ensure these rules are being followed' and 'it is of the utmost importance that you ensure your children are following the rules and regulations for Covid-19'. Had any of them done ten seconds of research to see if this parroting of their masters' script could be supported by any evidence? Nope. Reframed people don't think – others think for them and that's the whole idea of reframing. I have seen police officers one after the other repeating without question word for word what officialdom tells them just as I have seen great swathes of the public doing the same. Ask either for 'their' opinion and out spews what they have been told to think by the official narrative. Police and public may seem to be in different groups, but their mentality is the same. Most people do whatever they are told in fear not doing so or because they believe what officialdom tells them; almost the entirety of the police do what they are told for the same reason. Ultimately it's the tiny inner core of the global Cult that's telling both what to do.

So Derbyshire police were 'horrified'. Oh, really? Why did they think those kids were playing football? It was to relieve the psychological consequences of lockdown and being denied human contact with their friends and interaction, touch and discourse vital to human psychological health. Being denied this month after month has dismantled the psyche of many children and young people as depression and suicide have exploded. Were Derbyshire police *horrified by that*? Are you kidding? Reframed people don't have those

mental and emotional processes that can see how the impact on the psychological health of youngsters is far more dangerous than any 'virus' even if you take the mendacious official figures to be true. The reframed are told (programmed) how to act and so they do. The Derbyshire Chief Constable in the first period of lockdown when the black dye and drones nonsense was going on was Peter Goodman. He was the man who severed the connection between his force and the Derbyshire Constabulary *Male Voice* Choir when he decided that it was not inclusive enough to allow women to join. The fact it was a male voice choir making a particular sound produced by male voices seemed to elude a guy who terrifyingly ran policing in Derbyshire. He retired weeks after his force was condemned as disgraceful by former Supreme Court Justice Jonathan Sumption for their behaviour over extreme lockdown impositions. Goodman was replaced by his deputy Rachel Swann who was in charge when her officers were 'horrified'. The police statement over the boys committing the hanging-offence of playing football included the line about the youngsters being 'irresponsible in the times we are all living through' missing the point that the real relevance of the 'times we are all living through' is the imposition of fascism enforced by psychopaths and reframed minds of police officers playing such a vital part in establishing the fascist tyranny that their own children and grandchildren will have to live in their entire lives. As a definition of insanity that is hard to beat although it might be run close by imposing masks on people that can have a serious effect on their health while wearing a face nappy all day themselves. Once again public and police do it for the same reason – the authorities tell them to and who are they to have the self-respect to say no?

## **Workers in uniform**

How reframed do you have to be to arrest a *six-year-old* and take him to court for *picking a flower* while waiting for a bus? Brain dead police and officialdom did just that in North Carolina where criminal proceedings happen regularly for children under nine. Attorney Julie Boyer gave the six-year-old crayons and a colouring book

during the 'flower' hearing while the 'adults' decided his fate. County Chief District Court Judge Jay Corpening asked: 'Should a child that believes in Santa Claus, the Easter Bunny and the tooth fairy be making life-altering decisions?' Well, of course not, but common sense has no meaning when you have a common purpose and a reframed mind. Treating children in this way, and police operating in American schools, is all part of the psychological preparation for children to accept a police state as normal all their adult lives. The same goes for all the cameras and biometric tracking technology in schools. Police training is focused on reframing them as snowflake Wokers and this is happening in the military. Pentagon top brass said that 'training sessions on extremism' were needed for troops who asked why they were so focused on the Capitol Building riot when Black Lives Matter riots were ignored. What's the difference between them some apparently and rightly asked. Actually, there is a difference. Five people died in the Capitol riot, only one through violence, and that was a police officer shooting an unarmed protestor. BLM riots killed at least 25 people and cost billions. Asking the question prompted the psychopaths and reframed minds that run the Pentagon to say that more 'education' (programming) was needed. Troop training is all based on psychological programming to make them fodder for the Cult – 'Military men are just dumb, stupid animals to be used as pawns in foreign policy' as Cult-to-his-DNA former Secretary of State Henry Kissinger famously said. Governments see the police in similar terms and it's time for those among them who can see this to defend the people and stop being enforcers of the Cult agenda upon the people.

The US military, like the country itself, is being targeted for destruction through a long list of Woke impositions. Cult-owned gaga 'President' Biden signed an executive order when he took office to allow taxpayer money to pay for transgender surgery for active military personnel and veterans. Are you a man soldier? No, I'm a LGBTQIA+ with a hint of Skoliosexual and Spectrasexual. Oh, good man. Bad choice of words you bigot. The Pentagon announced in March, 2021, the appointment of the first 'diversity and inclusion

officer' for US Special Forces. Richard Torres-Estrada arrived with the publication of a 'D&I Strategic Plan which will guide the enterprise-wide effort to institutionalize and sustain D&I'. If you think a Special Forces 'Strategic Plan' should have something to do with defending America you haven't been paying attention. Defending Woke is now the military's new role. Torres-Estrada has posted images comparing Donald Trump with Adolf Hitler and we can expect no bias from him as a representative of the supposedly non-political Pentagon. Cable news host Tucker Carlson said: 'The Pentagon is now the Yale faculty lounge but with cruise missiles.' Meanwhile Secretary of Defense Lloyd Austin, a board member of weapons-maker Raytheon with stock and compensation interests in October, 2020, worth \$1.4 million, said he was purging the military of the 'enemy within' – anyone who isn't Woke and supports Donald Trump. Austin refers to his targets as 'racist extremists' while in true Woke fashion being himself a racist extremist. Pentagon documents pledge to 'eradicate, eliminate and conquer all forms of racism, sexism and homophobia'. The definitions of these are decided by 'diversity and inclusion committees' peopled by those who see racism, sexism and homophobia in every situation and opinion. Woke (the Cult) is dismantling the US military and purging testosterone as China expands its military and gives its troops 'masculinity training'. How do we think that is going to end when this is all Cult coordinated? The US military, like the British military, is controlled by Woke and spineless top brass who just go along with it out of personal career interests.

### **'Woke' means fast asleep**

Mind control and perception manipulation techniques used on individuals to create group-think have been unleashed on the global population in general. As a result many have no capacity to see the obvious fascist agenda being installed all around them or what 'Covid' is really all about. Their brains are firewalled like a computer system not to process certain concepts, thoughts and realisations that are bad for the Cult. The young are most targeted as the adults they

will be when the whole fascist global state is planned to be fully implemented. They need to be prepared for total compliance to eliminate all pushback from entire generations. The Cult has been pouring billions into taking complete control of 'education' from schools to universities via its operatives and corporations and not least Bill Gates as always. The plan has been to transform 'education' institutions into programming centres for the mentality of 'Woke'. James McConnell, professor of psychology at the University of Michigan, wrote in *Psychology Today* in 1970:

The day has come when we can combine sensory deprivation with drugs, hypnosis, and astute manipulation of reward and punishment, to gain almost absolute control over an individual's behaviour. It should then be possible to achieve a very rapid and highly effective type of brainwashing that would allow us to make dramatic changes in a person's behaviour and personality ...

... We should reshape society so that we all would be trained from birth to want to do what society wants us to do. We have the techniques to do it... no-one owns his own personality you acquired, and there's no reason to believe you should have the right to refuse to acquire a new personality if your old one is anti-social.

This was the potential for mass brainwashing in 1970 and the mentality there displayed captures the arrogant psychopathy that drives it forward. I emphasise that not all young people have succumbed to Woke programming and those that haven't are incredibly impressive people given that today's young are the most perceptually-targeted generations in history with all the technology now involved. Vast swathes of the young generations, however, have fallen into the spell – and that's what it is – of Woke. The Woke mentality and perceptual program is founded on *inversion* and you will appreciate later why that is so significant. Everything with Woke is inverted and the opposite of what it is claimed to be. Woke was a term used in African-American culture from the 1900s and referred to an awareness of social and racial justice. This is not the meaning of the modern version or 'New Woke' as I call it in *The Answer*. Oh, no, Woke today means something very different no matter how much Wokers may seek to hide that and insist Old Woke and New



Woke are the same. See if you find any 'awareness of social justice' here in the modern variety:

- Woke demands 'inclusivity' while excluding anyone with a different opinion and calls for mass censorship to silence other views.
- Woke claims to stand against oppression when imposing oppression is the foundation of all that it does. It is the driver of political correctness which is nothing more than a Cult invention to manipulate the population to silence itself.
- Woke believes itself to be 'liberal' while pursuing a global society that can only be described as fascist (see 'anti-fascist' fascist Antifa).
- Woke calls for 'social justice' while spreading injustice wherever it goes against the common 'enemy' which can be easily identified as a differing view.
- Woke is supposed to be a metaphor for 'awake' when it is solid-gold asleep and deep in a Cult-induced coma that meets the criteria for 'off with the fairies'.

I state these points as obvious facts if people only care to look. I don't do this with a sense of condemnation. We need to appreciate that the onslaught of perceptual programming on the young has been incessant and merciless. I can understand why so many have been reframed, or, given their youth, framed from the start to see the world as the Cult demands. The Cult has had access to their minds day after day in its 'education' system for their entire formative years. Perception is formed from information received and the Cult-created system is a life-long download of information delivered to elicit a particular perception, thus behaviour. The more this has expanded into still new extremes in recent decades and ever-increasing censorship has deleted other opinions and information why wouldn't that lead to a perceptual reframing on a mass scale? I

have described already cradle-to-grave programming and in more recent times the targeting of young minds from birth to adulthood has entered the stratosphere. This has taken the form of skewing what is 'taught' to fit the Cult agenda and the omnipresent techniques of group-think to isolate non-believers and pressure them into line. There has always been a tendency to follow the herd, but we really are in a new world now in relation to that. We have parents who can see the 'Covid' hoax told by their children not to stop them wearing masks at school, being 'Covid' tested or having the 'vaccine' in fear of the peer-pressure consequences of being different. What is 'peer-pressure' if not pressure to conform to group-think? Renegade Minds never group-think and always retain a set of perceptions that are unique to them. Group-think is always underpinned by consequences for not group-thinking. Abuse now aimed at those refusing DNA-manipulating 'Covid vaccines' are a potent example of this. The biggest pressure to conform comes from the very group which is itself being manipulated. 'I am programmed to be part of a hive mind and so you must be.'

Woke control structures in 'education' now apply to every mainstream organisation. Those at the top of the 'education' hierarchy (the Cult) decide the policy. This is imposed on governments through the Cult network; governments impose it on schools, colleges and universities; their leadership impose the policy on teachers and academics and they impose it on children and students. At any level where there is resistance, perhaps from a teacher or university lecturer, they are targeted by the authorities and often fired. Students themselves regularly demand the dismissal of academics (increasingly few) at odds with the narrative that the students have been programmed to believe in. It is quite a thought that students who are being targeted by the Cult become so consumed by programmed group-think that they launch protests and demand the removal of those who are trying to push back against those targeting the students. Such is the scale of perceptual inversion. We see this with 'Covid' programming as the Cult imposes the rules via psycho-psychologists and governments on

shops, transport companies and businesses which impose them on their staff who impose them on their customers who pressure Pushbackers to conform to the will of the Cult which is in the process of destroying them and their families. Scan all aspects of society and you will see the same sequence every time.

### **Fact free Woke and hijacking the 'left'**

There is no more potent example of this than 'Woke', a mentality only made possible by the deletion of factual evidence by an 'education' system seeking to produce an ever more uniform society. Why would you bother with facts when you don't know any? Deletion of credible history both in volume and type is highly relevant. Orwell said: 'Who controls the past controls the future: who controls the present controls the past.' They who control the perception of the past control the perception of the future and they who control the present control the perception of the past through the writing and deleting of history. Why would you oppose the imposition of Marxism in the name of Wokeism when you don't know that Marxism cost at least 100 million lives in the 20th century alone? Watch videos and read reports in which Woker generations are asked basic historical questions – it's mind-blowing. A survey of 2,000 people found that six percent of millennials (born approximately early 1980s to early 2000s) believed the Second World War (1939-1945) broke out with the assassination of President Kennedy (in 1963) and one in ten thought Margaret Thatcher was British Prime Minister at the time. She was in office between 1979 and 1990. We are in a post-fact society. Provable facts are no defence against the fascism of political correctness or Silicon Valley censorship. Facts don't matter anymore as we have witnessed with the 'Covid' hoax. Sacrificing uniqueness to the Woke group-think religion is all you are required to do and that means thinking for yourself is the biggest Woke no, no. All religions are an expression of group-think and censorship and Woke is just another religion with an orthodoxy defended by group-think and censorship. Burned at

the stake becomes burned on Twitter which leads back eventually to burned at the stake as Woke humanity regresses to ages past.

The biggest Woke inversion of all is its creators and funders. I grew up in a traditional left of centre political household on a council estate in Leicester in the 1950s and 60s – you know, the left that challenged the power of wealth-hoarding elites and threats to freedom of speech and opinion. In those days students went on marches defending freedom of speech while today's Wokers march for its deletion. What on earth could have happened? Those very elites (collectively the Cult) that we opposed in my youth and early life have funded into existence the antithesis of that former left and hijacked the 'brand' while inverting everything it ever stood for. We have a mentality that calls itself 'liberal' and 'progressive' while acting like fascists. Cult billionaires and their corporations have funded themselves into control of 'education' to ensure that Woke programming is unceasing throughout the formative years of children and young people and that non-Wokers are isolated (that word again) whether they be students, teachers or college professors. The Cult has funded into existence the now colossal global network of Woke organisations that have spawned and promoted all the 'causes' on the Cult wish-list for global transformation and turned Wokers into demanders of them. Does anyone really think it's a coincidence that the Cult agenda for humanity is a carbon (sorry) copy of the societal transformations desired by Woke?? These are only some of them:

**Political correctness:** The means by which the Cult deletes all public debates that it knows it cannot win if we had the free-flow of information and evidence.

**Human-caused 'climate change':** The means by which the Cult seeks to transform society into a globally-controlled dictatorship imposing its will over the fine detail of everyone's lives 'to save the planet' which doesn't actually need saving.

**Transgender obsession:** Preparing collective perception to accept the 'new human' which would not have genders because it would be created technologically and not through procreation. I'll have much more on this in Human 2.0.

**Race obsession:** The means by which the Cult seeks to divide and rule the population by triggering racial division through the perception that society is more racist than ever when the opposite is the case. Is it perfect in that regard? No. But to compare today with the racism of apartheid and segregation brought to an end by the civil rights movement in the 1960s is to insult the memory of that movement and inspirations like Martin Luther King. Why is the 'anti-racism' industry (which it is) so dominated by privileged white people?

**White supremacy:** This is a label used by privileged white people to demonise poor and deprived white people pushing back on tyranny to marginalise and destroy them. White people are being especially targeted as the dominant race by number within Western society which the Cult seeks to transform in its image. If you want to change a society you must weaken and undermine its biggest group and once you have done that by using the other groups you next turn on them to do the same ... 'Then they came for the Jews and I was not a Jew so I did nothing.'

**Mass migration:** The mass movement of people from the Middle East, Africa and Asia into Europe, from the south into the United States and from Asia into Australia are another way the Cult seeks to dilute the racial, cultural and political influence of white people on Western society. White people ask why their governments appear to be working against them while being politically and culturally biased towards incoming cultures. Well, here's your answer. In the same way sexually 'straight' people, men and women, ask why the

authorities are biased against them in favour of other sexualities. The answer is the same – that's the way the Cult wants it to be for very sinister motives.

These are all central parts of the Cult agenda and central parts of the Woke agenda and Woke was created and continues to be funded to an immense degree by Cult billionaires and corporations. If anyone begins to say 'coincidence' the syllables should stick in their throat.

### **Billionaire 'social justice warriors'**

Joe Biden is a 100 percent-owned asset of the Cult and the Wokers' man in the White House whenever he can remember his name and for however long he lasts with his rapidly diminishing cognitive function. Even walking up the steps of an aircraft without falling on his arse would appear to be a challenge. He's not an empty-shell puppet or anything. From the minute Biden took office (or the Cult did) he began his executive orders promoting the Woke wish-list. You will see the Woke agenda imposed ever more severely because it's really the *Cult* agenda. Woke organisations and activist networks spawned by the Cult are funded to the extreme so long as they promote what the Cult wants to happen. Woke is funded to promote 'social justice' by billionaires who become billionaires by destroying social justice. The social justice mantra is only a cover for dismantling social justice and funded by billionaires that couldn't give a damn about social justice. Everything makes sense when you see that. One of Woke's premier funders is Cult billionaire financier George Soros who said: 'I am basically there to make money, I cannot and do not look at the social consequences of what I do.' This is the same Soros who has given more than \$32 billion to his Open Society Foundations global Woke network and funded Black Lives Matter, mass immigration into Europe and the United States, transgender activism, climate change activism, political correctness and groups targeting 'white supremacy' in the form of privileged white thugs that dominate Antifa. What a scam it all is and when

you are dealing with the unquestioning fact-free zone of Woke scamming them is child's play. All you need to pull it off in all these organisations are a few in-the-know agents of the Cult and an army of naïve, reframed, uninformed, narcissistic, know-nothings convinced of their own self-righteousness, self-purity and virtue.

Soros and fellow billionaires and billionaire corporations have poured hundreds of millions into Black Lives Matter and connected groups and promoted them to a global audience. None of this is motivated by caring about black people. These are the billionaires that have controlled and exploited a system that leaves millions of black people in abject poverty and deprivation which they do absolutely nothing to address. The same Cult networks funding BLM were behind the *slave trade*! Black Lives Matter hijacked a phrase that few would challenge and they have turned this laudable concept into a political weapon to divide society. You know that BLM is a fraud when it claims that *All Lives Matter*, the most inclusive statement of all, is 'racist'. BLM and its Cult masters don't want to end racism. To them it's a means to an end to control all of humanity never mind the colour, creed, culture or background. What has destroying the nuclear family got to do with ending racism? Nothing – but that is one of the goals of BLM and also happens to be a goal of the Cult as I have been exposing in my books for decades. Stealing children from loving parents and giving schools ever more power to override parents is part of that same agenda. BLM is a Marxist organisation and why would that not be the case when the Cult created Marxism *and* BLM? Patrisse Cullors, a BLM co-founder, said in a 2015 video that she and her fellow organisers, including co-founder Alicia Garza, are 'trained Marxists'. The lady known after marriage as Patrisse Khan-Cullors bought a \$1.4 million home in 2021 in one of the whitest areas of California with a black population of just 1.6 per cent and has so far bought *four* high-end homes for a total of \$3.2 million. How very Marxist. There must be a bit of spare in the BLM coffers, however, when Cult corporations and billionaires have handed over the best part of \$100 million. Many black people can see that Black Lives Matter is not

working for them, but against them, and this is still more confirmation. Black journalist Jason Whitlock, who had his account suspended by Twitter for simply linking to the story about the 'Marxist's' home buying spree, said that BLM leaders are 'making millions of dollars off the backs of these dead black men who they wouldn't spit on if they were on fire and alive'.

## **Black Lies Matter**

Cult assets and agencies came together to promote BLM in the wake of the death of career criminal George Floyd who had been jailed a number of times including for forcing his way into the home of a black woman with others in a raid in which a gun was pointed at her stomach. Floyd was filmed being held in a Minneapolis street in 2020 with the knee of a police officer on his neck and he subsequently died. It was an appalling thing for the officer to do, but the same technique has been used by police on peaceful protestors of lockdown without any outcry from the Woke brigade. As unquestioning supporters of the Cult agenda Wokers have supported lockdown and all the 'Covid' claptrap while attacking anyone standing up to the tyranny imposed in its name. Court documents would later include details of an autopsy on Floyd by County Medical Examiner Dr Andrew Baker who concluded that Floyd had taken a fatal level of the drug fentanyl. None of this mattered to fact-free, question-free, Woke. Floyd's death was followed by worldwide protests against police brutality amid calls to defund the police. Throwing babies out with the bathwater is a Woke speciality. In the wake of the murder of British woman Sarah Everard a Green Party member of the House of Lords, Baroness Jones of Moulscroomb (Nincompoopia would have been better), called for a 6pm curfew for all men. This would be in breach of the Geneva Conventions on war crimes which ban collective punishment, but that would never have crossed the black and white Woke mind of Baroness Nincompoopia who would have been far too convinced of her own self-righteousness to compute such details. Many American cities did defund the police in the face of Floyd riots



and after \$15 million was deleted from the police budget in Washington DC under useless Woke mayor Muriel Bowser car-jacking alone rose by 300 percent and within six months the US capital recorded its highest murder rate in 15 years. The same happened in Chicago and other cities in line with the Cult/Soros plan to bring fear to streets and neighbourhoods by reducing the police, releasing violent criminals and not prosecuting crime. This is the mob-rule agenda that I have warned in the books was coming for so long. Shootings in the area of Minneapolis where Floyd was arrested increased by 2,500 percent compared with the year before. Defunding the police over George Floyd has led to a big increase in dead people with many of them black. Police protection for politicians making these decisions stayed the same or increased as you would expect from professional hypocrites. The Cult doesn't actually want to abolish the police. It wants to abolish local control over the police and hand it to federal government as the psychopaths advance the Hunger Games Society. Many George Floyd protests turned into violent riots with black stores and businesses destroyed by fire and looting across America fuelled by Black Lives Matter. Woke doesn't do irony. If you want civil rights you must loot the liquor store and the supermarket and make off with a smart TV. It's the only way.

### **It's not a race war – it's a class war**

Black people are patronised by privileged blacks and whites alike and told they are victims of white supremacy. I find it extraordinary to watch privileged blacks supporting the very system and bloodline networks behind the slave trade and parroting the same Cult-serving manipulative crap of their privileged white, often billionaire, associates. It is indeed not a race war but a class war and colour is just a diversion. Black Senator Cory Booker and black Congresswoman Maxine Waters, more residents of Nincompoopia, personify this. Once you tell people they are victims of someone else you devalue both their own responsibility for their plight and the power they have to impact on their reality and experience. Instead

we have: 'You are only in your situation because of whitey – turn on them and everything will change.' It won't change. Nothing changes in our lives unless *we* change it. Crucial to that is never seeing yourself as a victim and always as the creator of your reality. Life is a simple sequence of choice and consequence. Make different choices and you create different consequences. *You* have to make those choices – not Black Lives Matter, the Woke Mafia and anyone else that seeks to dictate your life. Who are they these Wokers, an emotional and psychological road traffic accident, to tell you what to do? Personal empowerment is the last thing the Cult and its Black Lives Matter want black people or anyone else to have. They claim to be defending the underdog while *creating* and perpetuating the underdog. The Cult's worst nightmare is human unity and if they are going to keep blacks, whites and every other race under economic servitude and control then the focus must be diverted from what they have in common to what they can be manipulated to believe divides them. Blacks have to be told that their poverty and plight is the fault of the white bloke living on the street in the same poverty and with the same plight they are experiencing. The difference is that your plight black people is due to him, a white supremacist with 'white privilege' living on the street. Don't unite as one human family against your mutual oppressors and suppressors – fight the oppressor with the white face who is as financially deprived as you are. The Cult knows that as its 'Covid' agenda moves into still new levels of extremism people are going to respond and it has been spreading the seeds of disunity everywhere to stop a united response to the evil that targets *all of us*.

Racist attacks on 'whiteness' are getting ever more outrageous and especially through the American Democratic Party which has an appalling history for anti-black racism. Barack Obama, Joe Biden, Hillary Clinton and Nancy Pelosi all eulogised about Senator Robert Byrd at his funeral in 2010 after a nearly 60-year career in Congress. Byrd was a brutal Ku Klux Klan racist and a violent abuser of Cathy O'Brien in MKUltra. He said he would never fight in the military 'with a negro by my side' and 'rather I should die a thousand times,

and see Old Glory trampled in the dirt never to rise again, than to see this beloved land of ours become degraded by race mongrels, a throwback to the blackest specimen from the wilds'. Biden called Byrd a 'very close friend and mentor'. These 'Woke' hypocrites are not anti-racist they are anti-poor and anti-people not of their perceived class. Here is an illustration of the scale of anti-white racism to which we have now descended. Seriously Woke and moronic *New York Times* contributor Damon Young described whiteness as a 'virus' that 'like other viruses will not die until there are no bodies left for it to infect'. He went on: '... the only way to stop it is to locate it, isolate it, extract it, and kill it.' Young can say that as a black man with no consequences when a white man saying the same in reverse would be facing a jail sentence. *That's* racism. We had super-Woke numbskull senators Tammy Duckworth and Mazie Hirono saying they would object to future Biden Cabinet appointments if he did not nominate more Asian Americans and Pacific Islanders. Never mind the ability of the candidate what do they look like? Duckworth said: 'I will vote for racial minorities and I will vote for LGBTQ, but anyone else I'm not voting for.' Appointing people on the grounds of race is illegal, but that was not a problem for this ludicrous pair. They were on-message and that's a free pass in any situation.

## **Critical race racism**

White children are told at school they are intrinsically racist as they are taught the divisive 'critical race theory'. This claims that the law and legal institutions are inherently racist and that race is a socially constructed concept used by white people to further their economic and political interests at the expense of people of colour. White is a 'virus' as we've seen. Racial inequality results from 'social, economic, and legal differences that white people create between races to maintain white interests which leads to poverty and criminality in minority communities'. I must tell that to the white guy sleeping on the street. The principal of East Side Community School in New York sent white parents a manifesto that called on

them to become 'white traitors' and advocate for full 'white abolition'. These people are teaching your kids when they urgently need a psychiatrist. The 'school' included a chart with 'eight white identities' that ranged from 'white supremacist' to 'white abolition' and defined the behaviour white people must follow to end 'the regime of whiteness'. Woke blacks and their privileged white associates are acting exactly like the slave owners of old and Ku Klux Klan racists like Robert Byrd. They are too full of their own self-purity to see that, but it's true. Racism is not a body type; it's a state of mind that can manifest through any colour, creed or culture.

Another racial fraud is '*equity*'. Not equality of treatment and opportunity – equity. It's a term spun as equality when it means something very different. Equality in its true sense is a raising up while '*equity*' is a race to the bottom. Everyone in the same level of poverty is '*equity*'. Keep everyone down – that's equity. The Cult doesn't want anyone in the human family to be empowered and BLM leaders, like all these 'anti-racist' organisations, continue their privileged, pampered existence by perpetuating the perception of gathering racism. When is the last time you heard an 'anti-racist' or 'anti-Semitism' organisation say that acts of racism and discrimination have *fallen*? It's not in the interests of their fundraising and power to influence and the same goes for the professional soccer anti-racism operation, Kick It Out. Two things confirmed that the Black Lives Matter riots in the summer of 2020 were Cult creations. One was that while anti-lockdown protests were condemned in this same period for 'transmitting 'Covid' the authorities supported mass gatherings of Black Lives Matter supporters. I even saw self-deluding people claiming to be doctors say the two types of protest were not the same. No – the non-existent 'Covid' was in favour of lockdowns and attacked those that protested against them while 'Covid' supported Black Lives Matter and kept well away from its protests. The whole thing was a joke and as lockdown protestors were arrested, often brutally, by reframed Face-Nappies we had the grotesque sight of police officers taking the knee to Black Lives Matter, a Cult-funded Marxist

organisation that supports violent riots and wants to destroy the nuclear family and white people.

## **He's not white? Shucks!**

Woke obsession with race was on display again when ten people were shot dead in Boulder, Colorado, in March, 2021. Cult-owned Woke TV channels like CNN said the shooter appeared to be a white man and Wokers were on Twitter condemning 'violent white men' with the usual mantras. Then the shooter's name was released as Ahmad Al Aliwi Alissa, an anti-Trump Arab-American, and the sigh of disappointment could be heard five miles away. Never mind that ten people were dead and what that meant for their families. Race baiting was all that mattered to these sick Cult-serving people like Barack Obama who exploited the deaths to further divide America on racial grounds which is his job for the Cult. This is the man that 'racist' white Americans made the first black president of the United States and then gave him a second term. Not-very-bright Obama has become filthy rich on the back of that and today appears to have a big influence on the Biden administration. Even so he's still a downtrodden black man and a victim of white supremacy. This disingenuous fraud reveals the contempt he has for black people when he puts on a Deep South Alabama accent whenever he talks to them, no, *at* them.

Another BLM red flag was how the now fully-Woke (fully-Cult) and fully-virtue-signalled professional soccer authorities had their teams taking the knee before every match in support of Marxist Black Lives Matter. Soccer authorities and clubs displayed 'Black Lives Matter' on the players' shirts and flashed the name on electronic billboards around the pitch. Any fans that condemned what is a Freemasonic taking-the-knee ritual were widely condemned as you would expect from the Woke virtue-signallers of professional sport and the now fully-Woke media. We have reverse racism in which you are banned from criticising any race or culture except for white people for whom anything goes – say what you like, no problem. What has this got to do with racial harmony and

equality? We've had black supremacists from Black Lives Matter telling white people to fall to their knees in the street and apologise for their white supremacy. Black supremacists acting like white supremacist slave owners of the past couldn't breach their self-obsessed, race-obsessed sense of self-purity. Joe Biden appointed a race-obsessed black supremacist Kristen Clarke to head the Justice Department Civil Rights Division. Clarke claimed that blacks are endowed with 'greater mental, physical and spiritual abilities' than whites. If anyone reversed that statement they would be vilified. Clarke is on-message so no problem. She's never seen a black-white situation in which the black figure is anything but a virtuous victim and she heads the Civil Rights Division which should treat everyone the same or it isn't civil rights. Another perception of the Renegade Mind: If something or someone is part of the Cult agenda they will be supported by Woke governments and media no matter what. If they're not, they will be condemned and censored. It really is that simple and so racist Clarke prospers despite (make that because of) her racism.

## **The end of culture**

Biden's administration is full of such racial, cultural and economic bias as the Cult requires the human family to be divided into warring factions. We are now seeing racially-segregated graduations and everything, but everything, is defined through the lens of perceived 'racism'. We have 'racist' mathematics, 'racist' food and even 'racist' *plants*. World famous Kew Gardens in London said it was changing labels on plants and flowers to tell its pre-'Covid' more than two million visitors a year how racist they are. Kew director Richard Deverell said this was part of an effort to 'move quickly to decolonise collections' after they were approached by one Ajay Chhabra 'an actor with an insight into how sugar cane was linked to slavery'. They are *plants* you idiots. 'Decolonisation' in the Woke manual really means colonisation of society with its mentality and by extension colonisation by the Cult. We are witnessing a new Chinese-style 'Cultural Revolution' so essential to the success of all

Marxist takeovers. Our cultural past and traditions have to be swept away to allow a new culture to be built-back-better. Woke targeting of long-standing Western cultural pillars including historical monuments and cancelling of historical figures is what happened in the Mao revolution in China which 'purged remnants of capitalist and traditional elements from Chinese society' and installed Maoism as the dominant ideology'. For China see the Western world today and for 'dominant ideology' see Woke. Better still see Marxism or Maoism. The 'Covid' hoax has specifically sought to destroy the arts and all elements of Western culture from people meeting in a pub or restaurant to closing theatres, music venues, sports stadiums, places of worship and even banning *singing*. Destruction of Western society is also why criticism of any religion is banned except for Christianity which again is the dominant religion as white is the numerically-dominant race. Christianity may be fading rapidly, but its history and traditions are weaved through the fabric of Western society. Delete the pillars and other structures will follow until the whole thing collapses. I am not a Christian defending that religion when I say that. I have no religion. It's just a fact. To this end Christianity has itself been turned Woke to usher its own downfall and its ranks are awash with 'change agents' – knowing and unknowing – at every level including Pope Francis (*definitely* knowing) and the clueless Archbishop of Canterbury Justin Welby (possibly not, but who can be sure?). Woke seeks to coordinate attacks on Western culture, traditions, and ways of life through 'intersectionality' defined as 'the complex, cumulative way in which the effects of multiple forms of discrimination (such as racism, sexism, and classism) combine, overlap, or intersect especially in the experiences of marginalised individuals or groups'. Wade through the Orwellian Woke-speak and this means coordinating disparate groups in a common cause to overthrow freedom and liberal values.

The entire structure of public institutions has been infested with Woke – government at all levels, political parties, police, military, schools, universities, advertising, media and trade unions. This abomination has been achieved through the Cult web by appointing

Wokers to positions of power and battering non-Wokers into line through intimidation, isolation and threats to their job. Many have been fired in the wake of the empathy-deleted, vicious hostility of 'social justice' Wokers and the desire of gutless, spineless employers to virtue-signal their Wokeness. Corporations are filled with Wokers today, most notably those in Silicon Valley. Ironically at the top they are not Woke at all. They are only exploiting the mentality their Cult masters have created and funded to censor and enslave while the Wokers cheer them on until it's their turn. Thus the Woke 'liberal left' is an inversion of the traditional liberal left. Campaigning for justice on the grounds of power and wealth distribution has been replaced by campaigning for identity politics. The genuine traditional left would never have taken money from today's billionaire abusers of fairness and justice and nor would the billionaires have wanted to fund that genuine left. It would not have been in their interests to do so. The division of opinion in those days was between the haves and have nots. This all changed with Cult manipulated and funded identity politics. The division of opinion today is between Wokers and non-Wokers and not income brackets. Cult corporations and their billionaires may have taken wealth disparity to cataclysmic levels of injustice, but as long as they speak the language of Woke, hand out the dosh to the Woke network and censor the enemy they are 'one of us'. Billionaires who don't give a damn about injustice are laughing at them till their bellies hurt. Wokers are not even close to self-aware enough to see that. The transformed 'left' dynamic means that Wokers who drone on about 'social justice' are funded by billionaires that have destroyed social justice the world over. It's *why* they are billionaires.

## **The climate con**

Nothing encapsulates what I have said more comprehensively than the hoax of human-caused global warming. I have detailed in my books over the years how Cult operatives and organisations were the pump-primers from the start of the climate con. A purpose-built vehicle for this is the Club of Rome established by the Cult in 1968



with the Rockefellers and Rothschilds centrally involved all along. Their gofer frontman Maurice Strong, a Canadian oil millionaire, hosted the Earth Summit in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, in 1992 where the global 'green movement' really expanded in earnest under the guiding hand of the Cult. The Earth Summit established Agenda 21 through the Cult-created-and-owned United Nations to use the illusion of human-caused climate change to justify the transformation of global society to save the world from climate disaster. It is a No-Problem-Reaction-Solution sold through governments, media, schools and universities as whole generations have been terrified into believing that the world was going to end in their lifetimes unless what old people had inflicted upon them was stopped by a complete restructuring of how everything is done. Chill, kids, it's all a hoax. Such restructuring is precisely what the Cult agenda demands (purely by coincidence of course). Today this has been given the codename of the Great Reset which is only an updated term for Agenda 21 and its associated Agenda 2030. The latter, too, is administered through the UN and was voted into being by the General Assembly in 2015. Both 21 and 2030 seek centralised control of all resources and food right down to the raindrops falling on your own land. These are some of the demands of Agenda 21 established in 1992. See if you recognise this society emerging today:

- End national sovereignty
- State planning and management of all land resources, ecosystems, deserts, forests, mountains, oceans and fresh water; agriculture; rural development; biotechnology; and ensuring 'equity'
- The state to 'define the role' of business and financial resources
- Abolition of private property
- 'Restructuring' the family unit (see BLM)
- Children raised by the state
- People told what their job will be
- Major restrictions on movement
- Creation of 'human settlement zones'

- Mass resettlement as people are forced to vacate land where they live
- Dumbing down education
- Mass global depopulation in pursuit of all the above

The United Nations was created as a Trojan horse for world government. With the climate con of critical importance to promoting that outcome you would expect the UN to be involved. Oh, it's involved all right. The UN is promoting Agenda 21 and Agenda 2030 justified by 'climate change' while also driving the climate hoax through its Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC), one of the world's most corrupt organisations. The IPCC has been lying ferociously and constantly since the day it opened its doors with the global media hanging unquestioningly on its every mendacious word. The Green movement is entirely Woke and has long lost its original environmental focus since it was co-opted by the Cult. An obsession with 'global warming' has deleted its values and scrambled its head. I experienced a small example of what I mean on a beautiful country walk that I have enjoyed several times a week for many years. The path merged into the fields and forests and you felt at one with the natural world. Then a 'Green' organisation, the Hampshire and Isle of Wight Wildlife Trust, took over part of the land and proceeded to cut down a large number of trees, including mature ones, to install a horrible big, bright steel 'this-is-ours-stay-out' fence that destroyed the whole atmosphere of this beautiful place. No one with a feel for nature would do that. Day after day I walked to the sound of chainsaws and a magnificent mature weeping willow tree that I so admired was cut down at the base of the trunk. When I challenged a Woke young girl in a green shirt (of course) about this vandalism she replied: 'It's a weeping willow – it will grow back.' This is what people are paying for when they donate to the Hampshire and Isle of Wight Wildlife Trust and many other 'green' organisations today. It is not the environmental movement that I knew and instead has become a support-system – as with Extinction Rebellion – for a very dark agenda.

## **Private jets for climate justice**

The Cult-owned, Gates-funded, World Economic Forum and its founder Klaus Schwab were behind the emergence of Greta Thunberg to harness the young behind the climate agenda and she was invited to speak to the world at ... the UN. Schwab published a book, *Covid-19: The Great Reset* in 2020 in which he used the 'Covid' hoax and the climate hoax to lay out a new society straight out of Agenda 21 and Agenda 2030. Bill Gates followed in early 2021 when he took time out from destroying the world to produce a book in his name about the way to save it. Gates flies across the world in private jets and admitted that 'I probably have one of the highest greenhouse gas footprints of anyone on the planet ... my personal flying alone is gigantic.' He has also bid for the planet's biggest private jet operator. Other climate change saviours who fly in private jets include John Kerry, the US Special Presidential Envoy for Climate, and actor Leonardo DiCaprio, a 'UN Messenger of Peace with special focus on climate change'. These people are so full of bullshit they could corner the market in manure. We mustn't be sceptical, though, because the Gates book, *How to Avoid a Climate Disaster: The Solutions We Have and the Breakthroughs We Need*, is a genuine attempt to protect the world and not an obvious pile of excrement attributed to a mega-psychopath aimed at selling his masters' plans for humanity. The Gates book and the other shite-pile by Klaus Schwab could have been written by the same person and may well have been. Both use 'climate change' and 'Covid' as the excuses for their new society and by coincidence the Cult's World Economic Forum and Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation promote the climate hoax and hosted Event 201 which pre-empted with a 'simulation' the very 'coronavirus' hoax that would be simulated for real on humanity within weeks. The British 'royal' family is promoting the 'Reset' as you would expect through Prince 'climate change caused the war in Syria' Charles and his hapless son Prince William who said that we must 'reset our relationship with nature and our trajectory as a species' to avoid a climate disaster. Amazing how many promoters of the 'Covid' and 'climate change' control

systems are connected to Gates and the World Economic Forum. A 'study' in early 2021 claimed that carbon dioxide emissions must fall by the equivalent of a global lockdown roughly every two years for the next decade to save the planet. The 'study' appeared in the same period that the Schwab mob claimed in a video that lockdowns destroying the lives of billions are good because they make the earth 'quieter' with less 'ambient noise'. They took down the video amid a public backlash for such arrogant, empathy-deleted stupidity You see, however, where they are going with this. Corinne Le Quéré, a professor at the Tyndall Centre for Climate Change Research, University of East Anglia, was lead author of the climate lockdown study, and she writes for ... the World Economic Forum. Gates calls in 'his' book for changing 'every aspect of the economy' (long-time Cult agenda) and for humans to eat synthetic 'meat' (predicted in my books) while cows and other farm animals are eliminated. Australian TV host and commentator Alan Jones described what carbon emission targets would mean for farm animals in Australia alone if emissions were reduced as demanded by 35 percent by 2030 and zero by 2050:

Well, let's take agriculture, the total emissions from agriculture are about 75 million tonnes of carbon dioxide, equivalent. Now reduce that by 35 percent and you have to come down to 50 million tonnes, I've done the maths. So if you take for example 1.5 million cows, you're going to have to reduce the herd by 525,000 [by] 2030, nine years, that's 58,000 cows a year. The beef herd's 30 million, reduce that by 35 percent, that's 10.5 million, which means 1.2 million cattle have to go every year between now and 2030. This is insanity!

There are 75 million sheep. Reduce that by 35 percent, that's 26 million sheep, that's almost 3 million a year. So under the Paris Agreement over 30 million beasts. dairy cows, cattle, pigs and sheep would go. More than 8,000 every minute of every hour for the next decade, do these people know what they're talking about?

Clearly they don't at the level of campaigners, politicians and administrators. The Cult *does* know; that's the outcome it wants. We are faced with not just a war on humanity. Animals and the natural world are being targeted and I have been saying since the 'Covid' hoax began that the plan eventually was to claim that the 'deadly virus' is able to jump from animals, including farm animals and

domestic pets, to humans. Just before this book went into production came this story: 'Russia registers world's first Covid-19 vaccine for cats & dogs as makers of Sputnik V warn pets & farm animals could spread virus'. The report said 'top scientists warned that the deadly pathogen could soon begin spreading through homes and farms' and 'the next stage is the infection of farm and domestic animals'. Know the outcome and you'll see the journey. Think what that would mean for animals and keep your eye on a term called zoonosis or zoonotic diseases which transmit between animals and humans. The Cult wants to break the connection between animals and people as it does between people and people. Farm animals fit with the Cult agenda to transform food from natural to synthetic.

### **The gas of life is killing us**

There can be few greater examples of Cult inversion than the condemnation of carbon dioxide as a dangerous pollutant when it is the gas of life. Without it the natural world would be dead and so we would all be dead. We breathe in oxygen and breathe out carbon dioxide while plants produce oxygen and absorb carbon dioxide. It is a perfect symbiotic relationship that the Cult wants to dismantle for reasons I will come to in the final two chapters. Gates, Schwab, other Cult operatives and mindless repeaters, want the world to be 'carbon neutral' by at least 2050 and the earlier the better. 'Zero carbon' is the cry echoed by lunatics calling for 'Zero Covid' when we already have it. These carbon emission targets will deindustrialise the world in accordance with Cult plans – the post-industrial, post-democratic society – and with so-called renewables like solar and wind not coming even close to meeting human energy needs blackouts and cold are inevitable. Texans got the picture in the winter of 2021 when a snow storm stopped wind turbines and solar panels from working and the lights went down along with water which relies on electricity for its supply system. Gates wants everything to be powered by electricity to ensure that his masters have the kill switch to stop all human activity, movement, cooking, water and warmth any time they like. The climate lie is so

stupendously inverted that it claims we must urgently reduce carbon dioxide when we *don't have enough*.

Co2 in the atmosphere is a little above 400 parts per million when the optimum for plant growth is 2,000 ppm and when it falls anywhere near 150 ppm the natural world starts to die and so do we. It fell to as low as 280 ppm in an 1880 measurement in Hawaii and rose to 413 ppm in 2019 with industrialisation which is why the planet has become *greener* in the industrial period. How insane then that psychopathic madman Gates is not satisfied only with blocking the rise of Co2. He's funding technology to suck it out of the atmosphere. The reason why will become clear. The industrial era is not destroying the world through Co2 and has instead turned around a potentially disastrous ongoing fall in Co2. Greenpeace co-founder and scientist Patrick Moore walked away from Greenpeace in 1986 and has exposed the green movement for fear-mongering and lies. He said that 500 million years ago there was *17 times* more Co2 in the atmosphere than we have today and levels have been falling for hundreds of millions of years. In the last 150 million years Co2 levels in Earth's atmosphere had reduced by *90 percent*. Moore said that by the time humanity began to unlock carbon dioxide from fossil fuels we were at '38 seconds to midnight' and in that sense: 'Humans are [the Earth's] salvation.' Moore made the point that only half the Co2 emitted by fossil fuels stays in the atmosphere and we should remember that all pollution pouring from chimneys that we are told is carbon dioxide is in fact nothing of the kind. It's pollution. Carbon dioxide is an invisible gas.

William Happer, Professor of Physics at Princeton University and long-time government adviser on climate, has emphasised the Co2 deficiency for maximum growth and food production. Greenhouse growers don't add carbon dioxide for a bit of fun. He said that most of the warming in the last 100 years, after the earth emerged from the super-cold period of the 'Little Ice Age' into a natural warming cycle, was over by 1940. Happer said that a peak year for warming in 1988 can be explained by a 'monster El Nino' which is a natural and cyclical warming of the Pacific that has nothing to do with 'climate

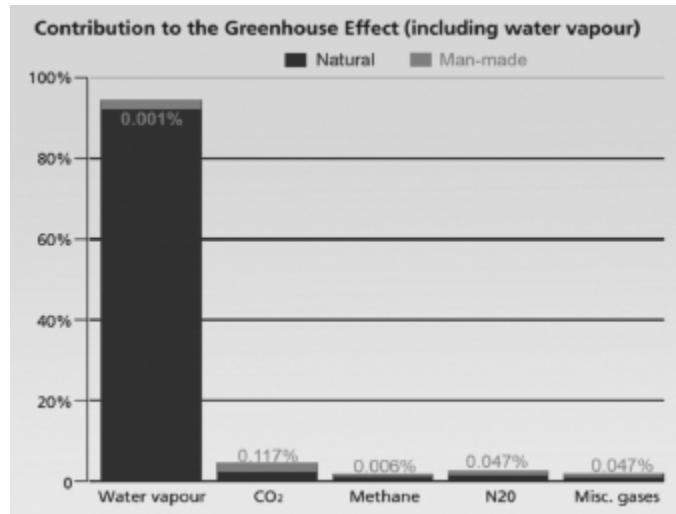
change'. He said the effect of Co2 could be compared to painting a wall with red paint in that once two or three coats have been applied it didn't matter how much more you slapped on because the wall will not get much redder. Almost all the effect of the rise in Co2 has already happened, he said, and the volume in the atmosphere would now have to *double* to increase temperature by a single degree. Climate hoaxers know this and they have invented the most ridiculously complicated series of 'feedback' loops to try to overcome this rather devastating fact. You hear puppet Greta going on cluelessly about feedback loops and this is why.

### **The Sun affects temperature? No you *climate denier***

Some other nonsense to contemplate: Climate graphs show that rises in temperature do not follow rises in Co2 – *it's the other way round* with a lag between the two of some 800 years. If we go back 800 years from present time we hit the Medieval Warm Period when temperatures were higher than now without any industrialisation and this was followed by the Little Ice Age when temperatures plummeted. The world was still emerging from these centuries of serious cold when many climate records began which makes the ever-repeated line of the 'hottest year since records began' meaningless when you are not comparing like with like. The coldest period of the Little Ice Age corresponded with the lowest period of sunspot activity when the Sun was at its least active. Proper scientists will not be at all surprised by this when it confirms the obvious fact that earth temperature is affected by the scale of Sun activity and the energetic power that it subsequently emits; but when is the last time you heard a climate hoaxer talking about the Sun as a source of earth temperature?? Everything has to be focussed on Co2 which makes up just 0.117 percent of so-called greenhouse gases and only a fraction of even that is generated by human activity. The rest is natural. More than *90 percent* of those greenhouse gases are water vapour and clouds ([Fig 9](#)). Ban moisture I say. Have you noticed that the climate hoaxers no longer use the polar bear as their promotion image? That's because far from becoming extinct polar

bear communities are stable or thriving. Joe Bastardi, American meteorologist, weather forecaster and outspoken critic of the climate lie, documents in his book *The Climate Chronicles* how weather patterns and events claimed to be evidence of climate change have been happening since long before industrialisation: 'What happened before naturally is happening again, as is to be expected given the cyclical nature of the climate due to the design of the planet.' If you read the detailed background to the climate hoax in my other books you will shake your head and wonder how anyone could believe the crap which has spawned a multi-trillion dollar industry based on absolute garbage (see HIV causes AIDs and Sars-Cov-2 causes 'Covid-19'). Climate and 'Covid' have much in common given they have the same source. They both have the contradictory *everything* factor in which everything is explained by reference to them. It's hot – 'it's climate change'. It's cold – 'it's climate change'. I got a sniffle – 'it's Covid'. I haven't got a sniffle – 'it's Covid'. Not having a sniffle has to be a symptom of 'Covid'. Everything is and not having a sniffle is especially dangerous if you are a slow walker. For sheer audacity I offer you a Cambridge University 'study' that actually linked 'Covid' to 'climate change'. It had to happen eventually. They concluded that climate change played a role in 'Covid-19' spreading from animals to humans because ... wait for it ... I kid you not ... *the two groups were forced closer together as populations grow*. Er, that's it. The whole foundation on which this depended was that 'Bats are the likely zoonotic origin of SARS-CoV-1 and SARS-CoV-2'. Well, they are not. They are nothing to do with it. Apart from bats not being the origin and therefore 'climate change' effects on bats being irrelevant I am in awe of their academic insight. Where would we be without them? Not where we are that's for sure.





**Figure 9:** The idea that the gas of life is disastrously changing the climate is an insult to brain cell activity.

One other point about the weather is that climate modification is now well advanced and not every major weather event is natural – or earthquake come to that. I cover this subject at some length in other books. China is openly planning a rapid expansion of its weather modification programme which includes changing the climate in an area more than one and a half times the size of India. China used weather manipulation to ensure clear skies during the 2008 Olympics in Beijing. I have quoted from US military documents detailing how to employ weather manipulation as a weapon of war and they did that in the 1960s and 70s during the conflict in Vietnam with Operation Popeye manipulating monsoon rains for military purposes. Why would there be international treaties on weather modification if it wasn't possible? Of course it is. Weather is energetic information and it can be changed.

### **How was the climate hoax pulled off? See 'Covid'**

If you can get billions to believe in a 'virus' that doesn't exist you can get them to believe in human-caused climate change that doesn't exist. Both are being used by the Cult to transform global society in the way it has long planned. Both hoaxes have been achieved in pretty much the same way. First you declare a lie is a fact. There's a

'virus' you call SARS-Cov-2 or humans are warming the planet with their behaviour. Next this becomes, via Cult networks, the foundation of government, academic and science policy and belief. Those who parrot the mantra are given big grants to produce research that confirms the narrative is true and ever more 'symptoms' are added to make the 'virus'/'climate change' sound even more scary. Scientists and researchers who challenge the narrative have their grants withdrawn and their careers destroyed. The media promote the lie as the unquestionable truth and censor those with an alternative view or evidence. A great percentage of the population believe what they are told as the lie becomes an everybody-knows-that and the believing-masses turn on those with a mind of their own. The technique has been used endlessly throughout human history. Wokers are the biggest promoters of the climate lie *and* 'Covid' fascism because their minds are owned by the Cult; their sense of self-righteous self-purity knows no bounds; and they exist in a bubble of reality in which facts are irrelevant and only get in the way of looking without seeing.

Running through all of this like veins in a blue cheese is control of information, which means control of perception, which means control of behaviour, which collectively means control of human society. The Cult owns the global media and Silicon Valley fascists for the simple reason that it *has* to. Without control of information it can't control perception and through that human society. Examine every facet of the Cult agenda and you will see that anything supporting its introduction is never censored while anything pushing back is always censored. I say again: Psychopaths that know why they are doing this must go before Nuremberg trials and those that follow their orders must trot along behind them into the same dock. 'I was just following orders' didn't work the first time and it must not work now. Nuremberg trials must be held all over the world before public juries for politicians, government officials, police, compliant doctors, scientists and virologists, and all Cult operatives such as Gates, Tedros, Fauci, Vallance, Whitty, Ferguson, Zuckerberg, Wojcicki, Brin, Page, Dorsey, the whole damn lot of

them – including, no *especially*, the psychopath psychologists. Without them and the brainless, gutless excuses for journalists that have repeated their lies, none of this could be happening. Nobody can be allowed to escape justice for the psychological and economic Armageddon they are all responsible for visiting upon the human race.

As for the compliant, unquestioning, swathes of humanity, and the self-obsessed, all-knowing ignorance of the Wokers ... don't start me. God help their kids. God help their grandkids. God *help them*.

## CHAPTER NINE

### **We must have it? So what is it?**

*Well I won't back down. No, I won't back down. You can stand me up at the Gates of Hell. But I won't back down*

**Tom Petty**

I will now focus on the genetically-manipulating 'Covid vaccines' which do not meet this official definition of a vaccine by the US Centers for Disease Control (CDC): 'A product that stimulates a person's immune system to produce immunity to a specific disease, protecting the person from that disease.' On that basis 'Covid vaccines' are not a vaccine in that the makers don't even claim they stop infection or transmission.

They are instead part of a multi-levelled conspiracy to change the nature of the human body and what it means to be 'human' and to depopulate an enormous swathe of humanity. What I shall call Human 1.0 is on the cusp of becoming Human 2.0 and for very sinister reasons. Before I get to the 'Covid vaccine' in detail here's some background to vaccines in general. Government regulators do not test vaccines – the makers do – and the makers control which data is revealed and which isn't. Children in America are given 50 vaccine doses by age six and 69 by age 19 and the effect of the whole combined schedule has never been tested. Autoimmune diseases when the immune system attacks its own body have soared in the mass vaccine era and so has disease in general in children and the young. Why wouldn't this be the case when vaccines target the *immune system*? The US government gave Big Pharma drug

companies immunity from prosecution for vaccine death and injury in the 1986 National Childhood Vaccine Injury Act (NCVIA) and since then the government (taxpayer) has been funding compensation for the consequences of Big Pharma vaccines. The criminal and satanic drug giants can't lose and the vaccine schedule has increased dramatically since 1986 for this reason. There is no incentive to make vaccines safe and a big incentive to make money by introducing ever more. Even against a ridiculously high bar to prove vaccine liability, and with the government controlling the hearing in which it is being challenged for compensation, the vaccine court has so far paid out more than \$4 billion. These are the vaccines we are told are safe and psychopaths like Zuckerberg censor posts saying otherwise. The immunity law was even justified by a ruling that vaccines by their nature were 'unavoidably unsafe'.

Check out the ingredients of vaccines and you will be shocked if you are new to this. *They put that in children's bodies?? What??* Try aluminium, a brain toxin connected to dementia, aborted foetal tissue and formaldehyde which is used to embalm corpses. World-renowned aluminium expert Christopher Exley had his research into the health effect of aluminium in vaccines shut down by Keele University in the UK when it began taking funding from the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. Research when diseases 'eradicated' by vaccines began to decline and you will find the fall began long *before* the vaccine was introduced. Sometimes the fall even plateaued after the vaccine. Diseases like scarlet fever for which there was no vaccine declined in the same way because of environmental and other factors. A perfect case in point is the polio vaccine. Polio began when lead arsenate was first sprayed as an insecticide and residues remained in food products. Spraying started in 1892 and the first US polio epidemic came in Vermont in 1894. The simple answer was to stop spraying, but Rockefeller-created Big Pharma had a better idea. Polio was decreed to be caused by the *poliovirus* which 'spreads from person to person and can infect a person's spinal cord'. Lead arsenate was replaced by the lethal DDT which had the same effect of causing paralysis by damaging the brain and central nervous

system. Polio plummeted when DDT was reduced and then banned, but the vaccine is still given the credit for something it didn't do. Today by far the biggest cause of polio is the vaccines promoted by Bill Gates. Vaccine justice campaigner Robert Kennedy Jr, son of assassinated (by the Cult) US Attorney General Robert Kennedy, wrote:

In 2017, the World Health Organization (WHO) reluctantly admitted that the global explosion in polio is predominantly vaccine strain. The most frightening epidemics in Congo, Afghanistan, and the Philippines, are all linked to vaccines. In fact, by 2018, 70% of global polio cases were vaccine strain.

Vaccines make fortunes for Cult-owned Gates and Big Pharma while undermining the health and immune systems of the population. We had a glimpse of the mentality behind the Big Pharma cartel with a report on WION (World is One News), an international English language TV station based in India, which exposed the extraordinary behaviour of US drug company Pfizer over its 'Covid vaccine'. The WION report told how Pfizer had made fantastic demands of Argentina, Brazil and other countries in return for its 'vaccine'. These included immunity from prosecution, even for Pfizer negligence, government insurance to protect Pfizer from law suits and handing over as collateral sovereign assets of the country to include Argentina's bank reserves, military bases and embassy buildings. Pfizer demanded the same of Brazil in the form of waiving sovereignty of its assets abroad; exempting Pfizer from Brazilian laws; and giving Pfizer immunity from all civil liability. This is a 'vaccine' developed with government funding. Big Pharma is evil incarnate as a creation of the Cult and all must be handed tickets to Nuremberg.

### **Phantom 'vaccine' for a phantom 'disease'**

I'll expose the 'Covid vaccine' fraud and then go on to the wider background of why the Cult has set out to 'vaccinate' every man, woman and child on the planet for an alleged 'new disease' with a survival rate of 99.77 percent (or more) even by the grotesquely-

manipulated figures of the World Health Organization and Johns Hopkins University. The 'infection' to 'death' ratio is 0.23 to 0.15 percent according to Stanford epidemiologist Dr John Ioannidis and while estimates vary the danger remains tiny. I say that if the truth be told the fake infection to fake death ratio is zero. Never mind all the evidence I have presented here and in *The Answer* that there is no 'virus' let us just focus for a moment on that death-rate figure of say 0.23 percent. The figure includes all those worldwide who have tested positive with a test not testing for the 'virus' and then died within 28 days or even longer of any other cause – *any other cause*. Now subtract all those illusory 'Covid' deaths on the global data sheets from the 0.23 percent. What do you think you would be left with? *Zero*. A vaccination has never been successfully developed for a so-called coronavirus. They have all failed at the animal testing stage when they caused hypersensitivity to what they were claiming to protect against and made the impact of a disease far worse. Cult-owned vaccine corporations got around that problem this time by bypassing animal trials, going straight to humans and making the length of the 'trials' before the public rollout as short as they could get away with. Normally it takes five to ten years or more to develop vaccines that still cause demonstrable harm to many people and that's without including the long-term effects that are never officially connected to the vaccination. 'Covid' non-vaccines have been officially produced and approved in a matter of months from a standing start and part of the reason is that (a) they were developed before the 'Covid' hoax began and (b) they are based on computer programs and not natural sources. Official non-trials were so short that government agencies gave *emergency*, not full, approval. 'Trials' were not even completed and full approval cannot be secured until they are. Public 'Covid vaccination' is actually a *continuation of the trial*. Drug company 'trials' are not scheduled to end until 2023 by which time a lot of people are going to be dead. Data on which government agencies gave this emergency approval was supplied by the Big Pharma corporations themselves in the form of Pfizer/BioNTech, AstraZeneca, Moderna, Johnson & Johnson, and

others, and this is the case with all vaccines. By its very nature *emergency* approval means drug companies do not have to prove that the 'vaccine' is 'safe and effective'. How could they with trials way short of complete? Government regulators only have to *believe* that they *could* be safe and effective. It is criminal manipulation to get products in circulation with no testing worth the name. Agencies giving that approval are infested with Big Pharma-connected place-people and they act in the interests of Big Pharma (the Cult) and not the public about whom they do not give a damn.

### **More human lab rats**

'Covid vaccines' produced in record time by Pfizer/BioNTech and Moderna employ a technique *never approved before for use on humans*. They are known as mRNA 'vaccines' and inject a synthetic version of 'viral' mRNA or 'messenger RNA'. The key is in the term 'messenger'. The body works, or doesn't, on the basis of information messaging. Communications are constantly passing between and within the genetic system and the brain. Change those messages and you change the state of the body and even its very nature and you can change psychology and behaviour by the way the brain processes information. I think you are going to see significant changes in personality and perception of many people who have had the 'Covid vaccine' synthetic potions. Insider Aldous Huxley predicted the following in 1961 and mRNA 'vaccines' can be included in the term 'pharmacological methods':

There will be, in the next generation or so, a pharmacological method of making people love their servitude, and producing dictatorship without tears, so to speak, producing a kind of painless concentration camp for entire societies, so that people will in fact have their own liberties taken away from them, but rather enjoy it, because they will be distracted from any desire to rebel by propaganda or brainwashing, or brainwashing enhanced by pharmacological methods. And this seems to be the final revolution.

Apologists claim that mRNA synthetic 'vaccines' don't change the DNA genetic blueprint because RNA does not affect DNA only the other way round. This is so disingenuous. A process called 'reverse



transcription' can convert RNA into DNA and be integrated into DNA in the cell nucleus. This was highlighted in December, 2020, by scientists at Harvard and Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT). Geneticists report that more than 40 percent of mammalian genomes results from reverse transcription. On the most basic level if messaging changes then that sequence must lead to changes in DNA which is receiving and transmitting those communications. How can introducing synthetic material into cells not change the cells where DNA is located? The process is known as transfection which is defined as 'a technique to insert foreign nucleic acid (DNA or RNA) into a cell, typically with the intention of altering the properties of the cell'. Researchers at the Sloan Kettering Institute in New York found that changes in messenger RNA can deactivate tumour-suppressing proteins and thereby promote cancer. This is what happens when you mess with messaging. 'Covid vaccine' maker Moderna was founded in 2010 by Canadian stem cell biologist Derrick J. Rossi after his breakthrough discovery in the field of transforming and reprogramming stem cells. These are neutral cells that can be programmed to become any cell including sperm cells. Moderna was therefore founded on the principle of genetic manipulation and has never produced any vaccine or drug before its genetically-manipulating synthetic 'Covid' shite. Look at the name – Mode-RNA or Modify-RNA. Another important point is that the US Supreme Court has ruled that genetically-modified DNA, or complementary DNA (cDNA) synthesized in the laboratory from messenger RNA, can be patented and owned. These psychopaths are doing this to the human body.

Cells replicate synthetic mRNA in the 'Covid vaccines' and in theory the body is tricked into making antigens which trigger antibodies to target the 'virus spike proteins' which as Dr Tom Cowan said have *never been seen*. Cut the crap and these 'vaccines' deliver *self-replicating* synthetic material to the cells with the effect of changing human DNA. The more of them you have the more that process is compounded while synthetic material is all the time self-replicating. 'Vaccine'-maker Moderna describes mRNA as 'like

software for the cell' and so they are messing with the body's software. What happens when you change the software in a computer? Everything changes. For this reason the Cult is preparing a production line of mRNA 'Covid vaccines' and a long list of excuses to use them as with all the 'variants' of a 'virus' never shown to exist. The plan is further to transfer the mRNA technique to other vaccines mostly given to children and young people. The cumulative consequences will be a transformation of human DNA through a constant infusion of synthetic genetic material which will kill many and change the rest. Now consider that governments that have given emergency approval for a vaccine that's not a vaccine; never been approved for humans before; had no testing worth the name; and the makers have been given immunity from prosecution for any deaths or adverse effects suffered by the public. The UK government awarded *permanent legal indemnity* to itself and its employees for harm done when a patient is being treated for 'Covid-19' or 'suspected Covid-19'. That is quite a thought when these are possible 'side-effects' from the 'vaccine' (they are not 'side', they are effects) listed by the US Food and Drug Administration:

Guillain-Barre syndrome; acute disseminated encephalomyelitis; transverse myelitis; encephalitis; myelitis; encephalomyelitis; meningoencephalitis; meningitis; encephalopathy; convulsions; seizures; stroke; narcolepsy; cataplexy; anaphylaxis; acute myocardial infarction (heart attack); myocarditis; pericarditis; autoimmune disease; death; implications for pregnancy, and birth outcomes; other acute demyelinating diseases; non anaphylactic allergy reactions; thrombocytopenia ; disseminated intravascular coagulation; venous thromboembolism; arthritis; arthralgia; joint pain; Kawasaki disease; multisystem inflammatory syndrome in children; vaccine enhanced disease. The latter is the way the 'vaccine' has the potential to make diseases far worse than they would otherwise be.

UK doctor and freedom campaigner Vernon Coleman described the conditions in this list as 'all unpleasant, most of them very serious, and you can't get more serious than death'. The thought that anyone at all has had the 'vaccine' in these circumstances is testament to the potential that humanity has for clueless, unquestioning, stupidity and for many that programmed stupidity has already been terminal.

## **An insider speaks**

Dr Michael Yeadon is a former Vice President, head of research and Chief Scientific Adviser at vaccine giant Pfizer. Yeadon worked on the inside of Big Pharma, but that did not stop him becoming a vocal critic of 'Covid vaccines' and their potential for multiple harms, including infertility in women. By the spring of 2021 he went much further and even used the no, no, term 'conspiracy'. When you begin to see what is going on it is impossible not to do so. Yeadon spoke out in an interview with freedom campaigner James Delingpole and I mentioned earlier how he said that no one had samples of 'the virus'. He explained that the mRNA technique originated in the anti-cancer field and ways to turn on and off certain genes which could be advantageous if you wanted to stop cancer growing out of control. 'That's the origin of them. They are a very unusual application, really.' Yeadon said that treating a cancer patient with an aggressive procedure might be understandable if the alternative was dying, but it was quite another thing to use the same technique as a public health measure. Most people involved wouldn't catch the infectious agent you were vaccinating against and if they did they probably wouldn't die:

If you are really using it as a public health measure you really want to as close as you can get to zero sides-effects ... I find it odd that they chose techniques that were really cutting their teeth in the field of oncology and I'm worried that in using gene-based vaccines that have to be injected in the body and spread around the body, get taken up into some cells, and the regulators haven't quite told us which cells they get taken up into ... you are going to be generating a wide range of responses ... with multiple steps each of which could go well or badly.

I doubt the Cult intends it to go well. Yeadon said that you can put any gene you like into the body through the 'vaccine'. 'You can certainly give them a gene that would do them some harm if you wanted.' I was intrigued when he said that when used in the cancer field the technique could turn genes on and off. I explore this process in *The Answer* and with different genes having different functions you could create mayhem – physically and psychologically – if you turned the wrong ones on and the right ones off. I read reports of an experiment by researchers at the University of Washington's school of computer science and engineering in which they encoded DNA to infect computers. The body is itself a biological computer and if human DNA can inflict damage on a computer why can't the computer via synthetic material mess with the human body? It can. The Washington research team said it was possible to insert malicious malware into 'physical DNA strands' and corrupt the computer system of a gene sequencing machine as it 'reads gene letters and stores them as binary digits 0 and 1'. They concluded that hackers could one day use blood or spit samples to access computer systems and obtain sensitive data from police forensics labs or infect genome files. It is at this level of digital interaction that synthetic 'vaccines' need to be seen to get the full picture and that will become very clear later on. Michael Yeadon said it made no sense to give the 'vaccine' to younger people who were in no danger from the 'virus'. What was the benefit? It was all downside with potential effects:

The fact that my government in what I thought was a civilised, rational country, is raining [the 'vaccine'] on people in their 30s and 40s, even my children in their 20s, they're getting letters and phone calls, I know this is not right and any of you doctors who are vaccinating you know it's not right, too. They are not at risk. They are not at risk from the disease, so you are now hoping that the side-effects are so rare that you get away with it. You don't give new technology ... that you don't understand to 100 percent of the population.

Blood clot problems with the AstraZeneca 'vaccine' have been affecting younger people to emphasise the downside risks with no benefit. AstraZeneca's version, produced with Oxford University, does not use mRNA, but still gets its toxic cocktail inside cells where

it targets DNA. The Johnson & Johnson 'vaccine' which uses a similar technique has also produced blood clot effects to such an extent that the United States paused its use at one point. They are all 'gene therapy' (cell modification) procedures and not 'vaccines'. The truth is that once the content of these injections enter cells we have no idea what the effect will be. People can speculate and some can give very educated opinions and that's good. In the end, though, only the makers know what their potions are designed to do and even they won't know every last consequence. Michael Yeadon was scathing about doctors doing what they knew to be wrong. 'Everyone's mute', he said. Doctors in the NHS must know this was not right, coming into work and injecting people. 'I don't know how they sleep at night. I know I couldn't do it. I know that if I were in that position I'd have to quit.' He said he knew enough about toxicology to know this was not a good risk-benefit. Yeadon had spoken to seven or eight university professors and all except two would not speak out publicly. Their universities had a policy that no one said anything that countered the government and its medical advisors. They were afraid of losing their government grants. This is how intimidation has been used to silence the truth at every level of the system. I say silence, but these people could still speak out if they made that choice. Yeadon called them 'moral cowards' – 'This is about your children and grandchildren's lives and you have just buggered off and left it.'

### **'Variant' nonsense**

Some of his most powerful comments related to the alleged 'variants' being used to instil more fear, justify more lockdowns, and introduce more 'vaccines'. He said government claims about 'variants' were nonsense. He had checked the alleged variant 'codes' and they were 99.7 percent identical to the 'original'. This was the human identity difference equivalent to putting a baseball cap on and off or wearing it the other way round. A 0.3 percent difference would make it impossible for that 'variant' to escape immunity from the 'original'. This made no sense of having new 'vaccines' for

'variants'. He said there would have to be at least a *30 percent* difference for that to be justified and even then he believed the immune system would still recognise what it was. Gates-funded 'variant modeller' and 'vaccine'-pusher John Edmunds might care to comment. Yeadon said drug companies were making new versions of the 'vaccine' as a 'top up' for 'variants'. Worse than that, he said, the 'regulators' around the world like the MHRA in the UK had got together and agreed that because 'vaccines' for 'variants' were so similar to the first 'vaccines' *they did not have to do safety studies*. How transparently sinister that is. This is when Yeadon said: 'There is a conspiracy here.' There was no need for another vaccine for 'variants' and yet we were told that there was and the country had shut its borders because of them. 'They are going into hundreds of millions of arms without passing 'go' or any regulator. Why did they do that? Why did they pick this method of making the vaccine?'

The reason had to be something bigger than that it seemed and 'it's not protection against the virus'. It's was a far bigger project that meant politicians and advisers were willing to do things and not do things that knowingly resulted in avoidable deaths – 'that's already happened when you think about lockdown and deprivation of health care for a year.' He spoke of people prepared to do something that results in the avoidable death of their fellow human beings and it not bother them. This is the penny-drop I have been working to get across for more than 30 years – the level of pure evil we are dealing with. Yeadon said his friends and associates could not believe there could be that much evil, but he reminded them of Stalin, Pol Pot and Hitler and of what Stalin had said: 'One death is a tragedy. A million? A statistic.' He could not think of a benign explanation for why you need top-up vaccines 'which I'm sure you don't' and for the regulators 'to just get out of the way and wave them through'. Why would the regulators do that when they were still wrestling with the dangers of the 'parent' vaccine? He was clearly shocked by what he had seen since the 'Covid' hoax began and now he was thinking the previously unthinkable:

If you wanted to depopulate a significant proportion of the world and to do it in a way that doesn't involve destruction of the environment with nuclear weapons, poisoning everyone with anthrax or something like that, and you wanted plausible deniability while you had a multi-year infectious disease crisis, I actually don't think you could come up with a better plan of work than seems to be in front of me. I can't say that's what they are going to do, but I can't think of a benign explanation why they are doing it.

He said he never thought that they would get rid of 99 percent of humans, but now he wondered. 'If you wanted to that this would be a hell of a way to do it – it would be unstoppable folks.' Yeadon had concluded that those who submitted to the 'vaccine' would be allowed to have some kind of normal life (but for how long?) while screws were tightened to coerce and mandate the last few percent. 'I think they'll put the rest of them in a prison camp. I wish I was wrong, but I don't think I am.' Other points he made included: There were no coronavirus vaccines then suddenly they all come along at the same time; we have no idea of the long term affect with trials so short; coercing or forcing people to have medical procedures is against the Nuremberg Code instigated when the Nazis did just that; people should at least delay having the 'vaccine'; a quick Internet search confirms that masks don't reduce respiratory viral transmission and 'the government knows that'; they have smashed civil society and they know that, too; two dozen peer-reviewed studies show no connection between lockdown and reducing deaths; he knew from personal friends the elite were still flying around and going on holiday while the public were locked down; the elite were not having the 'vaccines'. He was also asked if 'vaccines' could be made to target difference races. He said he didn't know, but the document by the Project for the New American Century in September, 2000, said developing 'advanced forms of biological warfare that can target *specific genotypes* may transform biological warfare from the realm of terror to a politically useful tool.' Oh, they're evil all right. Of that we can be *absolutely* sure.

## **Another cull of old people**

We have seen from the CDC definition that the mRNA 'Covid vaccine' is not a vaccine and nor are the others that *claim* to reduce 'severity of symptoms' in *some* people, but not protect from infection or transmission. What about all the lies about returning to 'normal' if people were 'vaccinated'? If they are not claimed to stop infection and transmission of the alleged 'virus', how does anything change? This was all lies to manipulate people to take the jabs and we are seeing that now with masks and distancing still required for the 'vaccinated'. How did they think that elderly people with fragile health and immune responses were going to be affected by infusing their cells with synthetic material and other toxic substances? They *knew* that in the short and long term it would be devastating and fatal as the culling of the old that began with the first lockdowns was continued with the 'vaccine'. Death rates in care homes soared immediately residents began to be 'vaccinated' – infused with synthetic material. Brave and committed whistleblower nurses put their careers at risk by exposing this truth while the rest kept their heads down and their mouths shut to put their careers before those they are supposed to care for. A long-time American Certified Nursing Assistant who gave his name as James posted a video in which he described emotionally what happened in his care home when vaccination began. He said that during 2020 very few residents were sick with 'Covid' and no one died during the entire year; but shortly after the Pfizer mRNA injections 14 people died within two weeks and many others were near death. 'They're dropping like flies', he said. Residents who walked on their own before the shot could no longer and they had lost their ability to conduct an intelligent conversation. The home's management said the sudden deaths were caused by a 'super-spreader' of 'Covid-19'. Then how come, James asked, that residents who refused to take the injections were not sick? It was a case of inject the elderly with mRNA synthetic potions and blame their illness and death that followed on the 'virus'. James described what was happening in care homes as 'the greatest crime of genocide this country has ever seen'. Remember the NHS staff nurse from earlier who used the same



word 'genocide' for what was happening with the 'vaccines' and that it was an 'act of human annihilation'. A UK care home whistleblower told a similar story to James about the effect of the 'vaccine' in deaths and 'outbreaks' of illness dubbed 'Covid' after getting the jab. She told how her care home management and staff had zealously imposed government regulations and no one was allowed to even question the official narrative let alone speak out against it. She said the NHS was even worse. Again we see the results of reframing. A worker at a local care home where I live said they had not had a single case of 'Covid' there for almost a year and when the residents were 'vaccinated' they had 19 positive cases in two weeks with eight dying.

### **It's not the 'vaccine' – honest**

The obvious cause and effect was being ignored by the media and most of the public. Australia's health minister Greg Hunt (a former head of strategy at the World Economic Forum) was admitted to hospital after he had the 'vaccine'. He was suffering according to reports from the skin infection 'cellulitis' and it must have been a severe case to have warranted days in hospital. Immediately the authorities said this was nothing to do with the 'vaccine' when an effect of some vaccines is a 'cellulitis-like reaction'. We had families of perfectly healthy old people who died after the 'vaccine' saying that if only they had been given the 'vaccine' earlier they would still be alive. As a numbskull rating that is off the chart. A father of four 'died of Covid' at aged 48 when he was taken ill two days after having the 'vaccine'. The man, a health administrator, had been 'shielding during the pandemic' and had 'not really left the house' until he went for the 'vaccine'. Having the 'vaccine' and then falling ill and dying does not seem to have qualified as a possible cause and effect and 'Covid-19' went on his death certificate. His family said they had no idea how he 'caught the virus'. A family member said: 'Tragically, it could be that going for a vaccination ultimately led to him catching Covid ...The sad truth is that they are never going to know where it came from.' The family warned people to remember

that the virus still existed and was 'very real'. So was their stupidity. Nurses and doctors who had the first round of the 'vaccine' were collapsing, dying and ending up in a hospital bed while they or their grieving relatives were saying they'd still have the 'vaccine' again despite what happened. I kid you not. You mean if your husband returned from the dead he'd have the same 'vaccine' again that killed him??

Doctors at the VCU Medical Center in Richmond, Virginia, said the Johnson & Johnson 'vaccine' was to blame for a man's skin peeling off. Patient Richard Terrell said: 'It all just happened so fast. My skin peeled off. It's still coming off on my hands now.' He said it was stinging, burning and itching and when he bent his arms and legs it was very painful with 'the skin swollen and rubbing against itself'. Pfizer/BioNTech and Moderna vaccines use mRNA to change the cell while the Johnson & Johnson version uses DNA in a process similar to AstraZeneca's technique. Johnson & Johnson and AstraZeneca have both had their 'vaccines' paused by many countries after causing serious blood problems. Terrell's doctor Fnu Nutan said he could have died if he hadn't got medical attention. It sounds terrible so what did Nutan and Terrell say about the 'vaccine' now? Oh, they still recommend that people have it. A nurse in a hospital bed 40 minutes after the vaccination and unable to swallow due to throat swelling was told by a doctor that he lost mobility in his arm for 36 hours following the vaccination. What did he say to the ailing nurse? 'Good for you for getting the vaccination.' We are dealing with a serious form of cognitive dissonance madness in both public and medical staff. There is a remarkable correlation between those having the 'vaccine' and trumpeting the fact and suffering bad happenings shortly afterwards. Witold Rogiewicz, a Polish doctor, made a video of his 'vaccination' and ridiculed those who were questioning its safety and the intentions of Bill Gates: 'Vaccinate yourself to protect yourself, your loved ones, friends and also patients. And to mention quickly I have info for anti-vaxxers and anti-Coviders if you want to contact Bill Gates you can do this through me.' He further ridiculed the dangers of 5G. Days later he

was dead, but naturally the vaccination wasn't mentioned in the verdict of 'heart attack'.

## **Lies, lies and more lies**

So many members of the human race have slipped into extreme states of insanity and unfortunately they include reframed doctors and nursing staff. Having a 'vaccine' and dying within minutes or hours is not considered a valid connection while death from any cause within 28 days or longer of a positive test with a test not testing for the 'virus' means 'Covid-19' goes on the death certificate. How could that 'vaccine'-death connection not have been made except by calculated deceit? US figures in the initial rollout period to February 12th, 2020, revealed that a third of the deaths reported to the CDC after 'Covid vaccines' happened within 48 hours. Five men in the UK suffered an 'extremely rare' blood clot problem after having the AstraZeneca 'vaccine', but no causal link was established said the Gates-funded Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) which had given the 'vaccine' emergency approval to be used. Former Pfizer executive Dr Michael Yeadon explained in his interview how the procedures could cause blood coagulation and clots. People who should have been at no risk were dying from blood clots in the brain and he said he had heard from medical doctor friends that people were suffering from skin bleeding and massive headaches. The AstraZeneca 'shot' was stopped by some 20 countries over the blood clotting issue and still the corrupt MHRA, the European Medicines Agency (EMA) and the World Health Organization said that it should continue to be given even though the EMA admitted that it 'still cannot rule out definitively' a link between blood clotting and the 'vaccine'. Later Marco Cavaleri, head of EMA vaccine strategy, said there was indeed a clear link between the 'vaccine' and thrombosis, but they didn't know why. So much for the trials showing the 'vaccine' is safe. Blood clots were affecting younger people who would be under virtually no danger from 'Covid' even if it existed which makes it all the more stupid and sinister.

The British government responded to public alarm by wheeling out June Raine, the terrifyingly weak infant school headmistress sound-alike who heads the UK MHRA drug 'regulator'. The idea that she would stand up to Big Pharma and government pressure is laughable and she told us that all was well in the same way that she did when allowing untested, never-used-on-humans-before, genetically-manipulating 'vaccines' to be exposed to the public in the first place. Mass lying is the new normal of the 'Covid' era. The MHRA later said 30 cases of rare blood clots had by then been connected with the AstraZeneca 'vaccine' (that means a lot more in reality) while stressing that the benefits of the jab in preventing 'Covid-19' outweighed any risks. A more ridiculous and disingenuous statement with callous disregard for human health it is hard to contemplate. Immediately after the mendacious 'all-clears' two hospital workers in Denmark experienced blood clots and cerebral haemorrhaging following the AstraZeneca jab and one died. Top Norwegian health official Pål Andre Holme said the 'vaccine' was the only common factor: 'There is nothing in the patient history of these individuals that can give such a powerful immune response ... I am confident that the antibodies that we have found are the cause, and I see no other explanation than it being the vaccine which triggers it.' Strokes, a clot or bleed in the brain, were clearly associated with the 'vaccine' from word of mouth and whistleblower reports. Similar consequences followed with all these 'vaccines' that we were told were so safe and as the numbers grew by the day it was clear we were witnessing human carnage.

### **Learning the hard way**

A woman interviewed by UKColumn told how her husband suffered dramatic health effects after the vaccine when he'd been in good health all his life. He went from being a little unwell to losing all feeling in his legs and experiencing 'excruciating pain'. Misdiagnosis followed twice at Accident and Emergency (an 'allergy' and 'sciatica') before he was admitted to a neurology ward where doctors said his serious condition had been caused by the

'vaccine'. Another seven 'vaccinated' people were apparently being treated on the same ward for similar symptoms. The woman said he had the 'vaccine' because they believed media claims that it was safe. 'I didn't think the government would give out a vaccine that does this to somebody; I believed they would be bringing out a vaccination that would be safe.' What a tragic way to learn that lesson. Another woman posted that her husband was transporting stroke patients to hospital on almost every shift and when he asked them if they had been 'vaccinated' for 'Covid' they all replied 'yes'. One had a 'massive brain bleed' the day after his second dose. She said her husband reported the 'just been vaccinated' information every time to doctors in A and E only for them to ignore it, make no notes and appear annoyed that it was even mentioned. This particular report cannot be verified, but it expresses a common theme that confirms the monumental underreporting of 'vaccine' consequences. Interestingly as the 'vaccines' and their brain blood clot/stroke consequences began to emerge the UK National Health Service began a publicity campaign telling the public what to do in the event of a stroke. A Scottish NHS staff nurse who quit in disgust in March, 2021, said:

I have seen traumatic injuries from the vaccine, they're not getting reported to the yellow card [adverse reaction] scheme, they're treating the symptoms, not asking why, why it's happening. It's just treating the symptoms and when you speak about it you're dismissed like you're crazy, I'm not crazy, I'm not crazy because every other colleague I've spoken to is terrified to speak out, they've had enough.

Videos appeared on the Internet of people uncontrollably shaking after the 'vaccine' with no control over muscles, limbs and even their face. A Scottish mother broke out in a severe rash all over her body almost immediately after she was given the AstraZeneca 'vaccine'. The pictures were horrific. Leigh King, a 41-year-old hairdresser from Lanarkshire said: 'Never in my life was I prepared for what I was about to experience ... My skin was so sore and constantly hot ... I have never felt pain like this ...' But don't you worry, the 'vaccine' is perfectly safe. Then there has been the effect on medical

staff who have been pressured to have the 'vaccine' by psychopathic 'health' authorities and government. A London hospital consultant who gave the name K. Polyakova wrote this to the *British Medical Journal* or *BMJ*:

I am currently struggling with ... the failure to report the reality of the morbidity caused by our current vaccination program within the health service and staff population. The levels of sickness after vaccination is unprecedented and staff are getting very sick and some with neurological symptoms which is having a huge impact on the health service function. Even the young and healthy are off for days, some for weeks, and some requiring medical treatment. Whole teams are being taken out as they went to get vaccinated together.

Mandatory vaccination in this instance is stupid, unethical and irresponsible when it comes to protecting our staff and public health. We are in the voluntary phase of vaccination, and encouraging staff to take an unlicensed product that is impacting on their immediate health ... it is clearly stated that these vaccine products do not offer immunity or stop transmission. In which case why are we doing it?

Not to protect health that's for sure. Medical workers are lauded by governments for agenda reasons when they couldn't give a toss about them any more than they can for the population in general. Schools across America faced the same situation as they closed due to the high number of teachers and other staff with bad reactions to the Pfizer/BioNTech, Moderna, and Johnson & Johnson 'Covid vaccines' all of which were linked to death and serious adverse effects. The *BMJ* took down the consultant's comments pretty quickly on the grounds that they were being used to spread 'disinformation'. They were exposing the truth about the 'vaccine' was the real reason. The cover-up is breathtaking.

## **Hiding the evidence**

The scale of the 'vaccine' death cover-up worldwide can be confirmed by comparing official figures with the personal experience of the public. I heard of many people in my community who died immediately or soon after the vaccine that would never appear in the media or even likely on the official totals of 'vaccine' fatalities and adverse reactions when only about ten percent are estimated to be

reported and I have seen some estimates as low as one percent in a Harvard study. In the UK alone by April 29th, 2021, some 757,654 adverse reactions had been officially reported from the Pfizer/BioNTech, Oxford/AstraZeneca and Moderna 'vaccines' with more than a thousand deaths linked to jabs and that means an estimated ten times this number in reality from a ten percent reporting rate percentage. That's seven million adverse reactions and 10,000 potential deaths and a one percent reporting rate would be ten times *those* figures. In 1976 the US government pulled the swine flu vaccine after 53 deaths. The UK data included a combined 10,000 eye disorders from the 'Covid vaccines' with more than 750 suffering visual impairment or blindness and again multiply by the estimated reporting percentages. As 'Covid cases' officially fell hospitals virtually empty during the 'Covid crisis' began to fill up with a range of other problems in the wake of the 'vaccine' rollout. The numbers across America have also been catastrophic. Deaths linked to *all* types of vaccine increased by 6,000 percent in the first quarter of 2021 compared with 2020. A 39-year-old woman from Ogden, Utah, died four days after receiving a second dose of Moderna's 'Covid vaccine' when her liver, heart and kidneys all failed despite the fact that she had no known medical issues or conditions. Her family sought an autopsy, but Dr Erik Christensen, Utah's chief medical examiner, said proving vaccine injury as a cause of death almost never happened. He could think of only one instance where an autopsy would name a vaccine as the official cause of death and that would be anaphylaxis where someone received a vaccine and died almost instantaneously. 'Short of that, it would be difficult for us to definitively say this is the vaccine,' Christensen said. If that is true this must be added to the estimated ten percent (or far less) reporting rate of vaccine deaths and serious reactions and the conclusion can only be that vaccine deaths and serious reactions – including these 'Covid' potions' – are phenomenally understated in official figures. The same story can be found everywhere. Endless accounts of deaths and serious reactions among the public, medical

and care home staff while official figures did not even begin to reflect this.

Professional script-reader Dr David Williams, a 'top public-health official' in Ontario, Canada, insulted our intelligence by claiming only four serious adverse reactions and no deaths from the more than 380,000 vaccine doses then given. This bore no resemblance to what people knew had happened in their own circles and we had Dirk Huyer in charge of getting millions vaccinated in Ontario while at the same time he was Chief Coroner for the province investigating causes of death including possible death from the vaccine. An aide said he had stepped back from investigating deaths, but evidence indicated otherwise. Rosemary Frei, who secured a Master of Science degree in molecular biology at the Faculty of Medicine at Canada's University of Calgary before turning to investigative journalism, was one who could see that official figures for 'vaccine' deaths and reactions made no sense. She said that doctors seldom reported adverse events and when people got really sick or died after getting a vaccination they would attribute that to anything except the vaccines. It had been that way for years and anyone who wondered aloud whether the 'Covid vaccines' or other shots cause harm is immediately branded as 'anti-vax' and 'anti-science'. This was 'career-threatening' for health professionals. Then there was the huge pressure to support the push to 'vaccinate' billions in the quickest time possible. Frei said:

So that's where we're at today. More than half a million vaccine doses have been given to people in Ontario alone. The rush is on to vaccinate all 15 million of us in the province by September. And the mainstream media are screaming for this to be sped up even more. That all adds up to only a very slim likelihood that we're going to be told the truth by officials about how many people are getting sick or dying from the vaccines.

What is true of Ontario is true of everywhere.

### **They KNEW – and still did it**

The authorities knew what was going to happen with multiple deaths and adverse reactions. The UK government's Gates-funded



and Big Pharma-dominated Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA) hired a company to employ AI in compiling the projected reactions to the 'vaccine' that would otherwise be uncountable. The request for applications said: 'The MHRA urgently seeks an Artificial Intelligence (AI) software tool to process the expected high volume of Covid-19 vaccine Adverse Drug Reaction ...' This was from the agency, headed by the disingenuous June Raine, that gave the 'vaccines' emergency approval and the company was hired before the first shot was given. 'We are going to kill and maim you – is that okay?' 'Oh, yes, perfectly fine – I'm very grateful, thank you, doctor.' The range of 'Covid vaccine' adverse reactions goes on for page after page in the MHRA criminally underreported 'Yellow Card' system and includes affects to eyes, ears, skin, digestion, blood and so on. Raine's MHRA amazingly claimed that the 'overall safety experience ... is so far as expected from the clinical trials'. The death, serious adverse effects, deafness and blindness were *expected*? When did they ever mention that? If these human tragedies were expected then those that gave approval for the use of these 'vaccines' must be guilty of crimes against humanity including murder – a definition of which is 'killing a person with malice aforethought or with recklessness manifesting extreme indifference to the value of human life.' People involved at the MHRA, the CDC in America and their equivalent around the world must go before Nuremberg trials to answer for their callous inhumanity. We are only talking here about the immediate effects of the 'vaccine'. The longer-term impact of the DNA synthetic manipulation is the main reason they are so hysterically desperate to inoculate the entire global population in the shortest possible time.

Africa and the developing world are a major focus for the 'vaccine' depopulation agenda and a mass vaccination sales-pitch is underway thanks to caring people like the Rockefellers and other Cult assets. The Rockefeller Foundation, which pre-empted the 'Covid pandemic' in a document published in 2010 that 'predicted' what happened a decade later, announced an initial \$34.95 million grant in February, 2021, 'to ensure more equitable access to Covid-19

testing and vaccines' among other things in Africa in collaboration with '24 organizations, businesses, and government agencies'. The pan-Africa initiative would focus on 10 countries: Burkina Faso, Ethiopia, Ghana, Kenya, Nigeria, Rwanda, South Africa, Tanzania, Uganda, and Zambia'. Rajiv Shah, President of the Rockefeller Foundation and former administrator of CIA-controlled USAID, said that if Africa was not mass-vaccinated (to change the DNA of its people) it was a 'threat to all of humanity' and not fair on Africans. When someone from the Rockefeller Foundation says they want to do something to help poor and deprived people and countries it is time for a belly-laugh. They are doing this out of the goodness of their 'heart' because 'vaccinating' the entire global population is what the 'Covid' hoax set out to achieve. Official 'decolonisation' of Africa by the Cult was merely a prelude to financial colonisation on the road to a return to physical colonisation. The 'vaccine' is vital to that and the sudden and convenient death of the 'Covid' sceptic president of Tanzania can be seen in its true light. A lot of people in Africa are aware that this is another form of colonisation and exploitation and they need to stand their ground.

### **The 'vaccine is working' scam**

A potential problem for the Cult was that the 'vaccine' is meant to change human DNA and body messaging and not to protect anyone from a 'virus' never shown to exist. The vaccine couldn't work because it was not designed to work and how could they make it *appear* to be working so that more people would have it? This was overcome by lowering the amplification rate of the PCR test to produce fewer 'cases' and therefore fewer 'deaths'. Some of us had been pointing out since March, 2020, that the amplification rate of the test not testing for the 'virus' had been made artificially high to generate positive tests which they could call 'cases' to justify lockdowns. The World Health Organization recommended an absurdly high 45 amplification cycles to ensure the high positives required by the Cult and then remained silent on the issue until January 20th, 2021 – Biden's Inauguration Day. This was when the

'vaccinations' were seriously underway and on that day the WHO recommended after discussions with America's CDC that laboratories *lowered their testing amplification*. Dr David Samadi, a certified urologist and health writer, said the WHO was encouraging all labs to reduce their cycle count for PCR tests. He said the current cycle was much too high and was 'resulting in any particle being declared a positive case'. Even one mainstream news report I saw said this meant the number of 'Covid' infections may have been 'dramatically inflated'. Oh, just a little bit. The CDC in America issued new guidance to laboratories in April, 2021, to use 28 cycles *but only for 'vaccinated' people*. The timing of the CDC/WHO interventions were cynically designed to make it appear the 'vaccines' were responsible for falling cases and deaths when the real reason can be seen in the following examples. New York's state lab, the Wadsworth Center, identified 872 positive tests in July, 2020, based on a threshold of 40 cycles. When the figure was lowered to 35 cycles 43 percent of the 872 were no longer 'positives'. At 30 cycles the figure was 63 percent. A Massachusetts lab found that between 85 to 90 percent of people who tested positive in July with a cycle threshold of 40 would be negative at 30 cycles, Ashish Jha, MD, director of the Harvard Global Health Institute, said: 'I'm really shocked that it could be that high ... Boy, does it really change the way we need to be thinking about testing.' I'm shocked that I could see the obvious in the spring of 2020, with no medical background, and most medical professionals still haven't worked it out. No, that's not shocking – it's terrifying.

Three weeks after the WHO directive to lower PCR cycles the London *Daily Mail* ran this headline: 'Why ARE Covid cases plummeting? New infections have fallen 45% in the US and 30% globally in the past 3 weeks but experts say vaccine is NOT the main driver because only 8% of Americans and 13% of people worldwide have received their first dose.' They acknowledged that the drop could not be attributed to the 'vaccine', but soon this morphed throughout the media into the 'vaccine' has caused cases and deaths to fall when it was the PCR threshold. In December, 2020, there was

chaos at English Channel ports with truck drivers needing negative 'Covid' tests before they could board a ferry home for Christmas. The government wanted to remove the backlog as fast as possible and they brought in troops to do the 'testing'. Out of 1,600 drivers just 36 tested positive and the rest were given the all clear to cross the Channel. I guess the authorities thought that 36 was the least they could get away with without the unquestioning catching on. The amplification trick which most people believed in the absence of information in the mainstream applied more pressure on those refusing the 'vaccine' to succumb when it 'obviously worked'. The truth was the exact opposite with deaths in care homes soaring with the 'vaccine' and in Israel the term used was 'skyrocket'. A re-analysis of published data from the Israeli Health Ministry led by Dr Hervé Seligmann at the Medicine Emerging Infectious and Tropical Diseases at Aix-Marseille University found that Pfizer's 'Covid vaccine' killed 'about 40 times more [elderly] people than the disease itself would have killed' during a five-week vaccination period and *260 times* more younger people than would have died from the 'virus' even according to the manipulated 'virus' figures. Dr Seligmann and his co-study author, Haim Yativ, declared after reviewing the Israeli 'vaccine' death data: 'This is a new Holocaust.'

Then, in mid-April, 2021, after vast numbers of people worldwide had been 'vaccinated', the story changed with clear coordination. The UK government began to prepare the ground for more future lockdowns when Nuremberg-destined Boris Johnson told yet another whopper. He said that cases had fallen because of *lockdowns* not 'vaccines'. Lockdowns are irrelevant when *there is no 'virus'* and the test and fraudulent death certificates are deciding the number of 'cases' and 'deaths'. Study after study has shown that lockdowns don't work and instead kill and psychologically destroy people. Meanwhile in the United States Anthony Fauci and Rochelle Walensky, the ultra-Zionist head of the CDC, peddled the same line. More lockdown was the answer and not the 'vaccine', a line repeated on cue by the moron that is Canadian Prime Minister Justin Trudeau. Why all the hysteria to get everyone 'vaccinated' if lockdowns and

not 'vaccines' made the difference? None of it makes sense on the face of it. Oh, but it does. The Cult wants lockdowns *and* the 'vaccine' and if the 'vaccine' is allowed to be seen as the total answer lockdowns would no longer be justified when there are still livelihoods to destroy. 'Variants' and renewed upward manipulation of PCR amplification are planned to instigate never-ending lockdown *and* more 'vaccines'.

### **You *must* have it – we're desperate**

Israel, where the Jewish and Arab population are ruled by the Sabbatian Cult, was the front-runner in imposing the DNA-manipulating 'vaccine' on its people to such an extent that Jewish refusers began to liken what was happening to the early years of Nazi Germany. This would seem to be a fantastic claim. Why would a government of Jewish people be acting like the Nazis did? If you realise that the Sabbatian Cult was behind the Nazis and that Sabbatians hate Jews the pieces start to fit and the question of why a 'Jewish' government would treat Jews with such callous disregard for their lives and freedom finds an answer. Those controlling the government of Israel *aren't Jewish* – they're Sabbatian. Israeli lawyer Tamir Turgal was one who made the Nazi comparison in comments to German lawyer Reiner Fuellmich who is leading a class action lawsuit against the psychopaths for crimes against humanity. Turgal described how the Israeli government was vaccinating children and pregnant women on the basis that there was no evidence that this was dangerous when they had no evidence that it *wasn't* dangerous either. They just had no evidence. This was medical experimentation and Turgal said this breached the Nuremberg Code about medical experimentation and procedures requiring informed consent and choice. Think about that. A Nuremberg Code developed because of Nazi experimentation on Jews and others in concentration camps by people like the evil-beyond-belief Josef Mengele is being breached by the *Israeli* government; but when you know that it's a *Sabbatian* government along with its intelligence and military agencies like Mossad, Shin Bet and the Israeli Defense Forces, and that Sabbatians

were the force behind the Nazis, the kaleidoscope comes into focus. What have we come to when Israeli Jews are suing their government for violating the Nuremberg Code by essentially making Israelis subject to a medical experiment using the controversial 'vaccines'? It's a shocker that this has to be done in the light of what happened in Nazi Germany. The Anshe Ha-Emet, or 'People of the Truth', made up of Israeli doctors, lawyers, campaigners and public, have launched a lawsuit with the International Criminal Court. It says:

When the heads of the Ministry of Health as well as the prime minister presented the vaccine in Israel and began the vaccination of Israeli residents, the vaccinated were not advised, that, in practice, they are taking part in a medical experiment and that their consent is required for this under the Nuremberg Code.

The irony is unbelievable, but easily explained in one word: Sabbatians. The foundation of Israeli 'Covid' apartheid is the 'green pass' or 'green passport' which allows Jews and Arabs who have had the DNA-manipulating 'vaccine' to go about their lives – to work, fly, travel in general, go to shopping malls, bars, restaurants, hotels, concerts, gyms, swimming pools, theatres and sports venues, while non-'vaccinated' are banned from all those places and activities. Israelis have likened the 'green pass' to the yellow stars that Jews in Nazi Germany were forced to wear – the same as the yellow stickers that a branch of UK supermarket chain Morrisons told exempt mask-wearers they had to display when shopping. How very sensitive. The Israeli system is blatant South African-style apartheid on the basis of compliance or non-compliance to fascism rather than colour of the skin. How appropriate that the Sabbatian Israeli government was so close to the pre-Mandela apartheid regime in Pretoria. The Sabbatian-instigated 'vaccine passport' in Israel is planned for everywhere. Sabbatians struck a deal with Pfizer that allowed them to lead the way in the percentage of a national population infused with synthetic material and the result was catastrophic. Israeli freedom activist Shai Dannon told me how chairs were appearing on beaches that said 'vaccinated only'. Health Minister Yuli Edelstein said that anyone unwilling or unable to get

the jabs that 'confer immunity' will be 'left behind'. The man's a liar. Not even the makers claim the 'vaccines' confer immunity. When you see those figures of 'vaccine' deaths these psychopaths were saying that you must take the chance the 'vaccine' will kill you or maim you while knowing it will change your DNA or lockdown for you will be permanent. That's fascism. The Israeli parliament passed a law to allow personal information of the non-vaccinated to be shared with local and national authorities for three months. This was claimed by its supporters to be a way to 'encourage' people to be vaccinated. Hadas Ziv from Physicians for Human Rights described this as a 'draconian law which crushed medical ethics and the patient rights'. But that's the idea, the Sabbatians would reply.

### **Your papers, please**

Sabbatian Israel was leading what has been planned all along to be a global 'vaccine pass' called a 'green passport' without which you would remain in permanent lockdown restriction and unable to do anything. This is how badly – *desperately* – the Cult is to get everyone 'vaccinated'. The term and colour 'green' was not by chance and related to the psychology of fusing the perception of the green climate hoax with the 'Covid' hoax and how the 'solution' to both is the same Great Reset. Lying politicians, health officials and psychologists denied there were any plans for mandatory vaccinations or restrictions based on vaccinations, but they knew that was exactly what was meant to happen with governments of all countries reaching agreements to enforce a global system. 'Free' Denmark and 'free' Sweden unveiled digital vaccine certification. Cyprus, Czech Republic, Estonia, Greece, Hungary, Iceland, Italy, Poland, Portugal, Slovakia, and Spain have all committed to a vaccine passport system and the rest including the whole of the EU would follow. The satanic UK government will certainly go this way despite mendacious denials and at the time of writing it is trying to manipulate the public into having the 'vaccine' so they could go abroad on a summer holiday. How would that work without something to prove you had the synthetic toxicity injected into you?

Documents show that the EU's European Commission was moving towards 'vaccine certificates' in 2018 and 2019 before the 'Covid' hoax began. They knew what was coming. Abracadabra – Ursula von der Leyen, the German President of the Commission, announced in March, 2021, an EU 'Digital Green Certificate' – green again – to track the public's 'Covid status'. The passport sting is worldwide and the Far East followed the same pattern with South Korea ruling that only those with 'vaccination' passports – again the *green* pass – would be able to 'return to their daily lives'.

Bill Gates has been preparing for this 'passport' with other Cult operatives for years and beyond the paper version is a Gates-funded 'digital tattoo' to identify who has been vaccinated and who hasn't. The 'tattoo' is reported to include a substance which is externally readable to confirm who has been vaccinated. This is a bio-luminous light-generating enzyme (think fireflies) called ... *Luciferase*. Yes, named after the Cult 'god' Lucifer the 'light bringer' of whom more to come. Gates said he funded the readable tattoo to ensure children in the developing world were vaccinated and no one was missed out. He cares so much about poor kids as we know. This was just the cover story to develop a vaccine tagging system for everyone on the planet. Gates has been funding the ID2020 'alliance' to do just that in league with other lovely people at Microsoft, GAVI, the Rockefeller Foundation, Accenture and IDEO.org. He said in interviews in March, 2020, before any 'vaccine' publicly existed, that the world must have a globalised digital certificate to track the 'virus' and who had been vaccinated. Gates knew from the start that the mRNA vaccines were coming and when they would come and that the plan was to tag the 'vaccinated' to marginalise the intelligent and stop them doing anything including travel. Evil just doesn't suffice. Gates was exposed for offering a \$10 million bribe to the Nigerian House of Representatives to invoke compulsory 'Covid' vaccination of all Nigerians. Sara Cunial, a member of the Italian Parliament, called Gates a 'vaccine criminal'. She urged the Italian President to hand him over to the International Criminal Court for crimes against



humanity and condemned his plans to 'chip the human race' through ID2020.

You know it's a long-planned agenda when war criminal and Cult gofer Tony Blair is on the case. With the scale of arrogance only someone as dark as Blair can muster he said: 'Vaccination in the end is going to be your route to liberty.' Blair is a disgusting piece of work and he confirms that again. The media has given a lot of coverage to a bloke called Charlie Mullins, founder of London's biggest independent plumbing company, Pimlico Plumbers, who has said he won't employ anyone who has not been vaccinated or have them go to any home where people are not vaccinated. He said that if he had his way no one would be allowed to walk the streets if they have not been vaccinated. Gates was cheering at the time while I was alerting the white coats. The plan is that people will qualify for 'passports' for having the first two doses and then to keep it they will have to have all the follow ups and new ones for invented 'variants' until human genetics is transformed and many are dead who can't adjust to the changes. Hollywood celebrities – the usual propaganda stunt – are promoting something called the WELL Health-Safety Rating to verify that a building or space has 'taken the necessary steps to prioritize the health and safety of their staff, visitors and other stakeholders'. They included Lady Gaga, Jennifer Lopez, Michael B. Jordan, Robert DeNiro, Venus Williams, Wolfgang Puck, Deepak Chopra and 17th Surgeon General Richard Carmona. Yawn. WELL Health-Safety has big connections with China. Parent company Delos is headed by former Goldman Sachs partner Paul Scialla. This is another example – and we will see so many others – of using the excuse of 'health' to dictate the lives and activities of the population. I guess one confirmation of the 'safety' of buildings is that only 'vaccinated' people can go in, right?

## **Electronic concentration camps**

I wrote decades ago about the plans to restrict travel and here we are for those who refuse to bow to tyranny. This can be achieved in one go with air travel if the aviation industry makes a blanket decree.

The 'vaccine' and guaranteed income are designed to be part of a global version of China's social credit system which tracks behaviour 24/7 and awards or deletes 'credits' based on whether your behaviour is supported by the state or not. I mean your entire lifestyle – what you do, eat, say, everything. Once your credit score falls below a certain level consequences kick in. In China tens of millions have been denied travel by air and train because of this. All the locations and activities denied to refusers by the 'vaccine' passports will be included in one big mass ban on doing almost anything for those that don't bow their head to government. It's beyond fascist and a new term is required to describe its extremes – I guess fascist technocracy will have to do. The way the Chinese system of technological – technocratic – control is sweeping the West can be seen in the Los Angeles school system and is planned to be expanded worldwide. Every child is required to have a 'Covid'-tracking app scanned daily before they can enter the classroom. The so-called Daily Pass tracking system is produced by Gates' Microsoft which I'm sure will shock you rigid. The pass will be scanned using a barcode (one step from an inside-the-body barcode) and the information will include health checks, 'Covid' tests and vaccinations. Entry codes are for one specific building only and access will only be allowed if a student or teacher has a negative test with a test not testing for the 'virus', has no symptoms of anything alleged to be related to 'Covid' (symptoms from a range of other illness), and has a temperature under 100 degrees. No barcode, no entry, is planned to be the case for everywhere and not only schools.

Kids are being psychologically prepared to accept this as 'normal' their whole life which is why what they can impose in schools is so important to the Cult and its gofers. Long-time American freedom campaigner John Whitehead of the Rutherford Institute was not exaggerating when he said: 'Databit by databit, we are building our own electronic concentration camps.' Canada under its Cult gofer prime minister Justin Trudeau has taken a major step towards the real thing with people interned against their will if they test positive with a test not testing for the 'virus' when they arrive at a Canadian

airport. They are jailed in internment hotels often without food or water for long periods and with many doors failing to lock there have been sexual assaults. The interned are being charged sometimes \$2,000 for the privilege of being abused in this way. Trudeau is fully on board with the Cult and says the 'Covid pandemic' has provided an opportunity for a global 'reset' to permanently change Western civilisation. His number two, Deputy Prime Minister Chrystia Freeland, is a trustee of the World Economic Forum and a Rhodes Scholar. The Trudeau family have long been servants of the Cult. See *The Biggest Secret* and Cathy O'Brien's book *Trance-Formation of America* for the horrific background to Trudeau's father Pierre Trudeau another Canadian prime minister. Hide your fascism behind the façade of a heart-on-the-sleeve liberal. It's a well-honed Cult technique.

### **What can the 'vaccine' really do?**

We have a 'virus' never shown to exist and 'variants' of the 'virus' that have also never been shown to exist except, like the 'original', as computer-generated fictions. Even if you believe there's a 'virus' the 'case' to 'death' rate is in the region of 0.23 to 0.15 percent and those 'deaths' are concentrated among the very old around the same average age that people die anyway. In response to this lack of threat (in truth none) psychopaths and idiots, knowingly and unknowingly answering to Gates and the Cult, are seeking to 'vaccinate' every man, woman and child on Planet Earth. Clearly the 'vaccine' is not about 'Covid' – none of this ever has been. So what is it all about *really*? Why the desperation to infuse genetically-manipulating synthetic material into everyone through mRNA fraudulent 'vaccines' with the intent of doing this over and over with the excuses of 'variants' and other 'virus' inventions? Dr Sherri Tenpenny, an osteopathic medical doctor in the United States, has made herself an expert on vaccines and their effects as a vehement campaigner against their use. Tenpenny was board certified in emergency medicine, the director of a level two trauma centre for 12 years, and moved to Cleveland in 1996 to start an integrative

medicine practice which has treated patients from all 50 states and some 17 other countries. Weaning people off pharmaceutical drugs is a speciality.

She became interested in the consequences of vaccines after attending a meeting at the National Vaccine Information Center in Washington DC in 2000 where she 'sat through four days of listening to medical doctors and scientists and lawyers and parents of vaccine injured kids' and asked: 'What's going on?' She had never been vaccinated and never got ill while her father was given a list of vaccines to be in the military and was 'sick his entire life'. The experience added to her questions and she began to examine vaccine documents from the Centers for Disease Control (CDC). After reading the first one, the 1998 version of *The General Recommendations of Vaccination*, she thought: 'This is it?' The document was poorly written and bad science and Tenpenny began 20 years of research into vaccines that continues to this day. She began her research into 'Covid vaccines' in March, 2020, and she describes them as 'deadly'. For many, as we have seen, they already have been. Tenpenny said that in the first 30 days of the 'vaccine' rollout in the United States there had been more than 40,000 adverse events reported to the vaccine adverse event database. A document had been delivered to her the day before that was 172 pages long. 'We have over 40,000 adverse events; we have over 3,100 cases of [potentially deadly] anaphylactic shock; we have over 5,000 neurological reactions.' Effects ranged from headaches to numbness, dizziness and vertigo, to losing feeling in hands or feet and paraesthesia which is when limbs 'fall asleep' and people have the sensation of insects crawling underneath their skin. All this happened in the first 30 days and remember that only about *ten percent* (or far less) of adverse reactions and vaccine-related deaths are estimated to be officially reported. Tenpenny said:

So can you think of one single product in any industry, any industry, for as long as products have been made on the planet that within 30 days we have 40,000 people complaining of side effects that not only is still on the market but ... we've got paid actors telling us how great

they are for getting their vaccine. We're offering people \$500 if they will just get their vaccine and we've got nurses and doctors going; 'I got the vaccine, I got the vaccine'.

Tenpenny said they were not going to be 'happy dancing folks' when they began to suffer Bell's palsy (facial paralysis), neuropathies, cardiac arrhythmias and autoimmune reactions that kill through a blood disorder. 'They're not going to be so happy, happy then, but we're never going to see pictures of those people' she said. Tenpenny described the 'vaccine' as 'a well-designed killing tool'.

## **No off-switch**

Bad as the initial consequences had been Tenpenny said it would be maybe 14 months before we began to see the 'full ravage' of what is going to happen to the 'Covid vaccinated' with full-out consequences taking anything between two years and 20 years to show. You can understand why when you consider that variations of the 'Covid vaccine' use mRNA (messenger RNA) to in theory activate the immune system to produce protective antibodies without using the actual 'virus'. How can they when it's a computer program and they've never isolated what they claim is the 'real thing'? Instead they use *synthetic* mRNA. They are inoculating synthetic material into the body which through a technique known as the Trojan horse is absorbed into cells to change the nature of DNA. Human DNA is changed by an infusion of messenger RNA and with each new 'vaccine' of this type it is changed even more. Say so and you are banned by Cult Internet platforms. The contempt the contemptuous Mark Zuckerberg has for the truth and human health can be seen in an internal Facebook video leaked to the Project Veritas investigative team in which he said of the 'Covid vaccines': '... I share some caution on this because we just don't know the long term side-effects of basically modifying people's DNA and RNA.' At the same time this disgusting man's Facebook was censoring and banning anyone saying exactly the same. He must go before a Nuremberg trial for crimes against humanity when he *knows* that he

is censoring legitimate concerns and denying the right of informed consent on behalf of the Cult that owns him. People have been killed and damaged by the very 'vaccination' technique he cast doubt on himself when they may not have had the 'vaccine' with access to information that he denied them. The plan is to have at least annual 'Covid vaccinations', add others to deal with invented 'variants', and change all other vaccines into the mRNA system. Pfizer executives told shareholders at a virtual Barclays Global Healthcare Conference in March, 2021, that the public may need a third dose of 'Covid vaccine', plus regular yearly boosters and the company planned to hike prices to milk the profits in a 'significant opportunity for our vaccine'. These are the professional liars, cheats and opportunists who are telling you their 'vaccine' is safe. Given this volume of mRNA planned to be infused into the human body and its ability to then replicate we will have a transformation of human genetics from biological to synthetic biological – exactly the long-time Cult plan for reasons we'll see – and many will die. Sherri Tenpenny said of this replication:

It's like having an on-button but no off-button and that whole mechanism ... they actually give it a name and they call it the Trojan horse mechanism, because it allows that [synthetic] virus and that piece of that [synthetic] virus to get inside of your cells, start to replicate and even get inserted into other parts of your DNA as a Trojan-horse.

Ask the overwhelming majority of people who have the 'vaccine' what they know about the contents and what they do and they would reply: 'The government says it will stop me getting the virus.' Governments give that false impression on purpose to increase take-up. You can read Sherri Tenpenny's detailed analysis of the health consequences in her blog at [Vaxxter.com](https://vaxxter.com), but in summary these are some of them. She highlights the statement by Bill Gates about how human beings can become their own 'vaccine manufacturing machine'. The man is insane. ['Vaccine'-generated] 'antibodies' carry synthetic messenger RNA into the cells and the damage starts, Tenpenny contends, and she says that lungs can be adversely affected through varying degrees of pus and bleeding which

obviously affects breathing and would be dubbed 'Covid-19'. Even more sinister was the impact of 'antibodies' on macrophages, a white blood cell of the immune system. They consist of Type 1 and Type 2 which have very different functions. She said Type 1 are 'hyper-vigilant' white blood cells which 'gobble up' bacteria etc. However, in doing so, this could cause inflammation and in extreme circumstances be fatal. She says these affects are mitigated by Type 2 macrophages which kick in to calm down the system and stop it going rogue. They clear up dead tissue debris and reduce inflammation that the Type 1 'fire crews' have caused. Type 1 kills the infection and Type 2 heals the damage, she says. This is her punchline with regard to 'Covid vaccinations': She says that mRNA 'antibodies' block Type 2 macrophages by attaching to them and deactivating them. This meant that when the Type 1 response was triggered by infection there was nothing to stop that getting out of hand by calming everything down. There's an on-switch, but no off-switch, she says. What follows can be 'over and out, see you when I see you'.

## **Genetic suicide**

Tenpenny also highlights the potential for autoimmune disease – the body attacking itself – which has been associated with vaccines since they first appeared. Infusing a synthetic foreign substance into cells could cause the immune system to react in a panic believing that the body is being overwhelmed by an invader (it is) and the consequences can again be fatal. There is an autoimmune response known as a 'cytokine storm' which I have likened to a homeowner panicked by an intruder and picking up a gun to shoot randomly in all directions before turning the fire on himself. The immune system unleashes a storm of inflammatory response called cytokines to a threat and the body commits hara-kiri. The lesson is that you mess with the body's immune response at your peril and these 'vaccines' seriously – fundamentally – mess with immune response. Tenpenny refers to a consequence called anaphylactic shock which is a severe and highly dangerous allergic reaction when the immune system

floods the body with chemicals. She gives the example of having a bee sting which primes the immune system and makes it sensitive to those chemicals. When people are stung again maybe years later the immune response can be so powerful that it leads to anaphylactic shock. Tenpenny relates this 'shock' with regard to the 'Covid vaccine' to something called polyethylene glycol or PEG. Enormous numbers of people have become sensitive to this over decades of use in a whole range of products and processes including food, drink, skin creams and 'medicine'. Studies have claimed that some 72 percent of people have antibodies triggered by PEG compared with two percent in the 1960s and allergic hypersensitive reactions to this become a gathering cause for concern. Tenpenny points out that the 'mRNA vaccine' is coated in a 'bubble' of polyethylene glycol which has the potential to cause anaphylactic shock through immune sensitivity. Many reports have appeared of people reacting this way after having the 'Covid vaccine'. What do we think is going to happen as humanity has more and more of these 'vaccines'?

Tenpenny said: 'All these pictures we have seen with people with these rashes ... these weepy rashes, big reactions on their arms and things like that – it's an acute allergic reaction most likely to the polyethylene glycol that you've been previously primed and sensitised to.'

Those who have not studied the conspiracy and its perpetrators at length might think that making the population sensitive to PEG and then putting it in these 'vaccines' is just a coincidence. It is not. It is instead testament to how carefully and coldly-planned current events have been and the scale of the conspiracy we are dealing with. Tenpenny further explains that the 'vaccine' mRNA procedure can breach the blood-brain barrier which protects the brain from toxins and other crap that will cause malfunction. In this case they could make two proteins corrupt brain function to cause Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), a progressive nervous system disease leading to loss of muscle control, and frontal lobe degeneration – Alzheimer's and dementia. Immunologist J. Bart Classon published a paper connecting mRNA 'vaccines' to prion



disease which can lead to Alzheimer's and other forms of neurodegenerative disease while others have pointed out the potential to affect the placenta in ways that make women infertile. This will become highly significant in the next chapter when I will discuss other aspects of this non-vaccine that relate to its nanotechnology and transmission from the injected to the uninjected.

## **Qualified in idiocy**

Tenpenny describes how research has confirmed that these 'vaccine'-generated antibodies can interact with a range of other tissues in the body and attack many other organs including the lungs. 'This means that if you have a hundred people standing in front of you that all got this shot they could have a hundred different symptoms.'

Anyone really think that Cult gofers like the Queen, Tony Blair, Christopher Whitty, Anthony Fauci, and all the other psychopaths have really had this 'vaccine' in the pictures we've seen? Not a bloody chance. Why don't doctors all tell us about all these dangers and consequences of the 'Covid vaccine'? Why instead do they encourage and pressure patients to have the shot? Don't let's think for a moment that doctors and medical staff can't be stupid, lazy, and psychopathic and that's without the financial incentives to give the jab. Tenpenny again:

Some people are going to die from the vaccine directly but a large number of people are going to start to get horribly sick and get all kinds of autoimmune diseases 42 days to maybe a year out. What are they going to do, these stupid doctors who say; 'Good for you for getting that vaccine.' What are they going to say; 'Oh, it must be a mutant, we need to give an extra dose of that vaccine.'

Because now the vaccine, instead of one dose or two doses we need three or four because the stupid physicians aren't taking the time to learn anything about it. If I can learn this sitting in my living room reading a 19 page paper and several others so can they. There's nothing special about me, I just take the time to do it.

Remember how Sara Kayat, the NHS and TV doctor, said that the 'Covid vaccine' would '100 percent prevent hospitalisation and death'. Doctors can be idiots like every other profession and they

should not be worshipped as infallible. They are not and far from it. Behind many medical and scientific 'experts' lies an uninformed prat trying to hide themselves from you although in the 'Covid' era many have failed to do so as with UK narrative-repeating 'TV doctor' Hilary Jones. Pushing back against the minority of proper doctors and scientists speaking out against the 'vaccine' has been the entire edifice of the Cult global state in the form of governments, medical systems, corporations, mainstream media, Silicon Valley, and an army of compliant doctors, medical staff and scientists willing to say anything for money and to enhance their careers by promoting the party line. If you do that you are an 'expert' and if you won't you are an 'anti-vaxxer' and 'Covidiot'. The pressure to be 'vaccinated' is incessant. We have even had reports claiming that the 'vaccine' can help cure cancer and Alzheimer's and make the lame walk. I am waiting for the announcement that it can bring you coffee in the morning and cook your tea. Just as the symptoms of 'Covid' seem to increase by the week so have the miracles of the 'vaccine'. American supermarket giant Kroger Co. offered nearly 500,000 employees in 35 states a \$100 bonus for having the 'vaccine' while donut chain Krispy Kreme promised 'vaccinated' customers a free glazed donut every day for the rest of 2021. Have your DNA changed and you will get a doughnut although we might not have to give you them for long. Such offers and incentives confirm the desperation.

Perhaps the worse vaccine-stunt of them all was UK 'Health' Secretary Matt-the-prat Hancock on live TV after watching a clip of someone being 'vaccinated' when the roll-out began. Hancock faked tears so badly it was embarrassing. Brain-of-Britain Piers Morgan, the lockdown-supporting, 'vaccine' supporting, 'vaccine' passport-supporting, TV host played along with Hancock – 'You're quite emotional about that' he said in response to acting so atrocious it would have been called out at a school nativity which will presumably today include Mary and Jesus in masks, wise men keeping their camels six feet apart, and shepherds under tent arrest. System-serving Morgan tweeted this: 'Love the idea of covid vaccine passports for everywhere: flights, restaurants, clubs, football, gyms,

shops etc. It's time covid-denying, anti-vaxxer loonies had their bullsh\*t bluff called & bar themselves from going anywhere that responsible citizens go.' If only I could aspire to his genius. To think that Morgan, who specialises in shouting over anyone he disagrees with, was lauded as a free speech hero when he lost his job after storming off the set of his live show like a child throwing his dolly out of the pram. If he is a free speech hero we are in real trouble. I have no idea what 'bullsh\*t' means, by the way, the \* throws me completely.

The Cult is desperate to infuse its synthetic DNA-changing concoction into everyone and has been using every lie, trick and intimidation to do so. The question of '*Why?*' we shall now address.

## CHAPTER TEN

### Human 2.0

*I believe that at the end of the century the use of words and general educated opinion will have altered so much that one will be able to speak of machines thinking without expecting to be contradicted – Alan Turing (1912-1954), the ‘Father of artificial intelligence’*

I have been exposing for decades the plan to transform the human body from a biological to a synthetic-biological state. The new human that I will call Human 2.0 is planned to be connected to artificial intelligence and a global AI ‘Smart Grid’ that would operate as one global system in which AI would control everything from your fridge to your heating system to your car to your mind. Humans would no longer be ‘human’, but post-human and sub-human, with their thinking and emotional processes replaced by AI.

What I said sounded crazy and beyond science fiction and I could understand that. To any balanced, rational, mind it *is* crazy. Today, however, that world is becoming reality and it puts the ‘Covid vaccine’ into its true context. Ray Kurzweil is the ultra-Zionist ‘computer scientist, inventor and futurist’ and co-founder of the Singularity University. Singularity refers to the merging of humans with machines or ‘transhumanism’. Kurzweil has said humanity would be connected to the cyber ‘cloud’ in the period of the ever-recurring year of 2030:

Our thinking ... will be a hybrid of biological and non-biological thinking ... humans will be able to extend their limitations and ‘think in the cloud’ ... We’re going to put gateways to the

cloud in our brains ... We're going to gradually merge and enhance ourselves ... In my view, that's the nature of being human – we transcend our limitations. As the technology becomes vastly superior to what we are then the small proportion that is still human gets smaller and smaller and smaller until it's just utterly negligible.

They are trying to sell this end-of-humanity-as-we-know-it as the next stage of 'evolution' when we become super-human and 'like the gods'. They are lying to you. Shocked, eh? The population, and again especially the young, have been manipulated into addiction to technologies designed to enslave them for life. First they induced an addiction to smartphones (holdables); next they moved to technology on the body (wearables); and then began the invasion of the body (implantables). I warned way back about the plan for microchipped people and we are now entering that era. We should not be diverted into thinking that this refers only to chips we can see. Most important are the nanochips known as smart dust, neural dust and nanobots which are far too small to be seen by the human eye. Nanotechnology is everywhere, increasingly in food products, and released into the atmosphere by the geoengineering of the skies funded by Bill Gates to 'shut out the Sun' and 'save the planet from global warming'. Gates has been funding a project to spray millions of tonnes of chalk (calcium carbonate) into the stratosphere over Sweden to 'dim the Sun' and cool the Earth. Scientists warned the move could be disastrous for weather systems in ways no one can predict and opposition led to the Swedish space agency announcing that the 'experiment' would not be happening as planned in the summer of 2021; but it shows where the Cult is going with dimming the impact of the Sun and there's an associated plan to change the planet's atmosphere. Who gives psychopath Gates the right to dictate to the entire human race and dismantle planetary systems? The world will not be safe while this man is at large.

The global warming hoax has made the Sun, like the gas of life, something to fear when both are essential to good health and human survival (more inversion). The body transforms sunlight into vital vitamin D through a process involving ... *cholesterol*. This is the cholesterol we are also told to fear. We are urged to take Big Pharma

statin drugs to reduce cholesterol and it's all systematic. Reducing cholesterol means reducing vitamin D uptake with all the multiple health problems that will cause. At least if you take statins long term it saves the government from having to pay you a pension. The delivery system to block sunlight is widely referred to as chemtrails although these have a much deeper agenda, too. They appear at first to be contrails or condensation trails streaming from aircraft into cold air at high altitudes. Contrails disperse very quickly while chemtrails do not and spread out across the sky before eventually their content falls to earth. Many times I have watched aircraft cross-cross a clear blue sky releasing chemtrails until it looks like a cloudy day. Chemtrails contain many things harmful to humans and the natural world including toxic heavy metals, aluminium (see Alzheimer's) and nanotechnology. Ray Kurzweil reveals the reason without actually saying so: 'Nanobots will infuse all the matter around us with information. Rocks, trees, everything will become these intelligent creatures.' How do you deliver that? *From the sky.* Self-replicating nanobots would connect everything to the Smart Grid. The phenomenon of Morgellons disease began in the chemtrail era and the correlation has led to it being dubbed the 'chemtrail disease'. Self-replicating fibres appear in the body that can be pulled out through the skin. Morgellons fibres continue to grow outside the body and have a form of artificial intelligence. I cover this at greater length in *Phantom Self*.

### **'Vaccine' operating system**

'Covid vaccines' with their self-replicating synthetic material are also designed to make the connection between humanity and Kurzweil's 'cloud'. American doctor and dedicated campaigner for truth, Carrie Madej, an Internal Medicine Specialist in Georgia with more than 20 years medical experience, has highlighted the nanotechnology aspect of the fake 'vaccines'. She explains how one of the components in at least the Moderna and Pfizer synthetic potions are 'lipid nanoparticles' which are 'like little tiny computer bits' – a 'sci-fi substance' known as nanobots and hydrogel which can be 'triggered

at any moment to deliver its payload' and act as 'biosensors'. The synthetic substance had 'the ability to accumulate data from your body like your breathing, your respiration, thoughts and emotions, all kind of things' and each syringe could carry a *million* nanobots:

This substance because it's like little bits of computers in your body, crazy, but it's true, it can do that, [and] obviously has the ability to act through Wi-Fi. It can receive and transmit energy, messages, frequencies or impulses. That issue has never been addressed by these companies. What does that do to the human?

Just imagine getting this substance in you and it can react to things all around you, the 5G, your smart device, your phones, what is happening with that? What if something is triggering it, too, like an impulse, a frequency? We have something completely foreign in the human body.

Madej said her research revealed that electromagnetic (EMF) frequencies emitted by phones and other devices had increased dramatically in the same period of the 'vaccine' rollout and she was seeing more people with radiation problems as 5G and other electromagnetic technology was expanded and introduced to schools and hospitals. She said she was 'floored with the EMF coming off' the devices she checked. All this makes total sense and syncs with my own work of decades when you think that Moderna refers in documents to its mRNA 'vaccine' as an 'operating system':

Recognizing the broad potential of mRNA science, we set out to create an mRNA technology platform that functions very much like an operating system on a computer. It is designed so that it can plug and play interchangeably with different programs. In our case, the 'program' or 'app' is our mRNA drug – the unique mRNA sequence that codes for a protein ...

... Our MRNA Medicines – 'The 'Software Of Life': When we have a concept for a new mRNA medicine and begin research, fundamental components are already in place. Generally, the only thing that changes from one potential mRNA medicine to another is the coding region – the actual genetic code that instructs ribosomes to make protein. Utilizing these instruction sets gives our investigational mRNA medicines a software-like quality. We also have the ability to combine different mRNA sequences encoding for different proteins in a single mRNA investigational medicine.

Who needs a real 'virus' when you can create a computer version to justify infusing your operating system into the entire human race on the road to making living, breathing people into cyborgs? What is missed with the 'vaccines' is the *digital* connection between synthetic material and the body that I highlighted earlier with the study that hacked a computer with human DNA. On one level the body is digital, based on mathematical codes, and I'll have more about that in the next chapter. Those who ridiculously claim that mRNA 'vaccines' are not designed to change human genetics should explain the words of Dr Tal Zaks, chief medical officer at Moderna, in a 2017 TED talk. He said that over the last 30 years 'we've been living this phenomenal digital scientific revolution, and I'm here today to tell you, that we are actually *hacking the software of life*, and that it's changing the way we think about prevention and treatment of disease':

In every cell there's this thing called messenger RNA, or mRNA for short, that transmits the critical information from the DNA in our genes to the protein, which is really the stuff we're all made out of. This is the critical information that determines what the cell will do. So we think about it as an operating system. So if you could change that, if you could introduce a line of code, or change a line of code, it turns out, that has profound implications for everything, from the flu to cancer.

Zaks should more accurately have said that this has profound implications for the human genetic code and the nature of DNA. Communications within the body go both ways and not only one. But, hey, no, the 'Covid vaccine' will not affect your genetics. Cult fact-checkers say so even though the man who helped to develop the mRNA technique says that it does. Zaks said in 2017:

If you think about what it is we're trying to do. We've taken information and our understanding of that information and how that information is transmitted in a cell, and we've taken our understanding of medicine and how to make drugs, and we're fusing the two. We think of it as information therapy.

I have been writing for decades that the body is an information field communicating with itself and the wider world. This is why



radiation which is information can change the information field of body and mind through phenomena like 5G and change their nature and function. 'Information therapy' means to change the body's information field and change the way it operates. DNA is a receiver-transmitter of information and can be mutated by information like mRNA synthetic messaging. Technology to do this has been ready and waiting in the underground bases and other secret projects to be rolled out when the 'Covid' hoax was played. 'Trials' of such short and irrelevant duration were only for public consumption. When they say the 'vaccine' is 'experimental' that is not true. It may appear to be 'experimental' to those who don't know what's going on, but the trials have already been done to ensure the Cult gets the result it desires. Zaks said that it took decades to sequence the human genome, completed in 2003, but now they could do it in a week. By 'they' he means scientists operating in the public domain. In the secret projects they were sequencing the genome in a week long before even 2003.

## **Deluge of mRNA**

Highly significantly the Moderna document says the guiding premise is that if using mRNA as a medicine works for one disease then it should work for many diseases. They were leveraging the flexibility afforded by their platform and the fundamental role mRNA plays in protein synthesis to pursue mRNA medicines for a broad spectrum of diseases. Moderna is confirming what I was saying through 2020 that multiple 'vaccines' were planned for 'Covid' (and later invented 'variants') and that previous vaccines would be converted to the mRNA system to infuse the body with massive amounts of genetically-manipulating synthetic material to secure a transformation to a synthetic-biological state. The 'vaccines' are designed to kill stunning numbers as part of the long-exposed Cult depopulation agenda and transform the rest. Given this is the goal you can appreciate why there is such hysterical demand for every human to be 'vaccinated' for an alleged 'disease' that has an estimated 'infection' to 'death' ratio of 0.23-0.15 percent. As I write

children are being given the 'vaccine' in trials (their parents are a disgrace) and ever-younger people are being offered the vaccine for a 'virus' that even if you believe it exists has virtually zero chance of harming them. Horrific effects of the 'trials' on a 12-year-old girl were revealed by a family member to be serious brain and gastric problems that included a bowel obstruction and the inability to swallow liquids or solids. She was unable to eat or drink without throwing up, had extreme pain in her back, neck and abdomen, and was paralysed from the waist down which stopped her urinating unaided. When the girl was first taken to hospital doctors said it was all in her mind. She was signed up for the 'trial' by her parents for whom no words suffice. None of this 'Covid vaccine' insanity makes any sense unless you see what the 'vaccine' really is – a body-changer. Synthetic biology or 'SynBio' is a fast-emerging and expanding scientific discipline which includes everything from genetic and molecular engineering to electrical and computer engineering. Synthetic biology is defined in these ways:

- A multidisciplinary area of research that seeks to create new biological parts, devices, and systems, or to redesign systems that are already found in nature.
- The use of a mixture of physical engineering and genetic engineering to create new (and therefore synthetic) life forms.
- An emerging field of research that aims to combine the knowledge and methods of biology, engineering and related disciplines in the design of chemically-synthesized DNA to create organisms with novel or enhanced characteristics and traits (synthetic organisms including humans).

We now have synthetic blood, skin, organs and limbs being developed along with synthetic body parts produced by 3D printers. These are all elements of the synthetic human programme and this comment by Kurzweil's co-founder of the Singularity University,

Peter Diamandis, can be seen in a whole new light with the 'Covid' hoax and the sanctions against those that refuse the 'vaccine':

Anybody who is going to be resisting the progress forward [to transhumanism] is going to be resisting evolution and, fundamentally, they will die out. It's not a matter of whether it's good or bad. It's going to happen.

'Resisting evolution'? What absolute bollocks. The arrogance of these people is without limit. His 'it's going to happen' mantra is another way of saying 'resistance is futile' to break the spirit of those pushing back and we must not fall for it. Getting this genetically-transforming 'vaccine' into everyone is crucial to the Cult plan for total control and the desperation to achieve that is clear for anyone to see. Vaccine passports are a major factor in this and they, too, are a form of resistance is futile. It's NOT. The paper funded by the Rockefeller Foundation for the 2013 'health conference' in China said:

We will interact more with artificial intelligence. The use of robotics, bio-engineering to augment human functioning is already well underway and will advance. Re-engineering of humans into potentially separate and unequal forms through genetic engineering or mixed human-robots raises debates on ethics and equality.

A new demography is projected to emerge after 2030 [that year again] of technologies (robotics, genetic engineering, nanotechnology) producing robots, engineered organisms, 'nanobots' and artificial intelligence (AI) that can self-replicate. Debates will grow on the implications of an impending reality of human designed life.

What is happening today is so long planned. The world army enforcing the will of the world government is intended to be a robot army, not a human one. Today's military and its technologically 'enhanced' troops, pilotless planes and driverless vehicles are just stepping stones to that end. Human soldiers are used as Cult fodder and its time they woke up to that and worked for the freedom of the population instead of their own destruction and their family's destruction – the same with the police. Join us and let's sort this out. The phenomenon of enforce my own destruction is widespread in the 'Covid' era with Woker 'luvvies' in the acting and entertainment

industries supporting 'Covid' rules which have destroyed their profession and the same with those among the public who put signs on the doors of their businesses 'closed due to Covid – stay safe' when many will never reopen. It's a form of masochism and most certainly insanity.

## **Transgender = transhumanism**

When something explodes out of nowhere and is suddenly everywhere it is always the Cult agenda and so it is with the tidal wave of claims and demands that have infiltrated every aspect of society under the heading of 'transgenderism'. The term 'trans' is so 'in' and this is the dictionary definition:

A prefix meaning 'across', 'through', occurring ... in loanwords from Latin, used in particular for denoting movement or conveyance from place to place (transfer; transmit; transplant) or complete change (transform; transmute), or to form adjectives meaning 'crossing', 'on the other side of', or 'going beyond' the place named (transmontane; transnational; trans-Siberian).

Transgender means to go beyond gender and transhuman means to go beyond human. Both are aspects of the Cult plan to transform the human body to a synthetic state with *no gender*. Human 2.0 is not designed to procreate and would be produced technologically with no need for parents. The new human would mean the end of parents and so men, and increasingly women, are being targeted for the deletion of their rights and status. Parental rights are disappearing at an ever-quickenning speed for the same reason. The new human would have no need for men or women when there is no procreation and no gender. Perhaps the transgender movement that appears to be in a permanent state of frenzy might now contemplate on how it is being used. This was never about transgender rights which are only the interim excuse for confusing gender, particularly in the young, on the road to *fusing* gender. Transgender activism is not an end; it is a *means* to an end. We see again the technique of creative destruction in which you destroy the status quo to 'build back better' in the form that you want. The gender status quo had to be

destroyed by persuading the Cult-created Woke mentality to believe that you can have 100 genders or more. A programme for 9 to 12 year olds produced by the Cult-owned BBC promoted the 100 genders narrative. The very idea may be the most monumental nonsense, but it is not what is true that counts, only what you can make people *believe* is true. Once the gender of  $2 + 2 = 4$  has been dismantled through indoctrination, intimidation and  $2 + 2 = 5$  then the new no-gender normal can take its place with Human 2.0.

Aldous Huxley revealed the plan in his prophetic *Brave New World* in 1932:

Natural reproduction has been done away with and children are created, decanted', and raised in 'hatcheries and conditioning centres'. From birth, people are genetically designed to fit into one of five castes, which are further split into 'Plus' and 'Minus' members and designed to fulfil predetermined positions within the social and economic strata of the World State.

How could Huxley know this in 1932? For the same reason George Orwell knew about the Big Brother state in 1948, Cult insiders I have quoted knew about it in 1969, and I have known about it since the early 1990s. If you are connected to the Cult or you work your balls off to uncover the plan you can predict the future. The process is simple. If there is a plan for the world and nothing intervenes to stop it then it will happen. Thus if you communicate the plan ahead of time you are perceived to have predicted the future, but you haven't. You have revealed the plan which without intervention will become the human future. The whole reason I have done what I have is to alert enough people to inspire an intervention and maybe at last that time has come with the Cult and its intentions now so obvious to anyone with a brain in working order.

## **The future is here**

Technological wombs that Huxley described to replace parent procreation are already being developed and they are only the projects we know about in the public arena. Israeli scientists told *The Times of Israel* in March, 2021, that they have grown 250-cell embryos

into mouse fetuses with fully formed organs using artificial wombs in a development they say could pave the way for gestating humans outside the womb. Professor Jacob Hanna of the Weizmann Institute of Science said:

We took mouse embryos from the mother at day five of development, when they are just of 250 cells, and had them in the incubator from day five until day 11, by which point they had grown all their organs.

By day 11 they make their own blood and have a beating heart, a fully developed brain. Anybody would look at them and say, 'this is clearly a mouse foetus with all the characteristics of a mouse.' It's gone from being a ball of cells to being an advanced foetus.

A special liquid is used to nourish embryo cells in a laboratory dish and they float on the liquid to duplicate the first stage of embryonic development. The incubator creates all the right conditions for its development, Hanna said. The liquid gives the embryo 'all the nutrients, hormones and sugars they need' along with a custom-made electronic incubator which controls gas concentration, pressure and temperature. The cutting-edge in the underground bases and other secret locations will be light years ahead of that, however, and this was reported by the London *Guardian* in 2017:

We are approaching a biotechnological breakthrough. Ectogenesis, the invention of a complete external womb, could completely change the nature of human reproduction. In April this year, researchers at the Children's Hospital of Philadelphia announced their development of an artificial womb.

The article was headed 'Artificial wombs could soon be a reality. What will this mean for women?' What would it mean for children is an even bigger question. No mother to bond with only a machine in preparation for a life of soulless interaction and control in a world governed by machines (see the *Matrix* movies). Now observe the calculated manipulations of the 'Covid' hoax as human interaction and warmth has been curtailed by distancing, isolation and fear with people communicating via machines on a scale never seen before.

These are all dots in the same picture as are all the personal assistants, gadgets and children's toys through which kids and adults communicate with AI as if it is human. The AI 'voice' on Sat-Nav should be included. All these things are psychological preparation for the Cult endgame. Before you can make a physical connection with AI you have to make a psychological connection and that is what people are being conditioned to do with this ever gathering human-AI interaction. Movies and TV programmes depicting the transhuman, robot dystopia relate to a phenomenon known as 'pre-emptive programming' in which the world that is planned is portrayed everywhere in movies, TV and advertising. This is conditioning the conscious and subconscious mind to become familiar with the planned reality to dilute resistance when it happens for real. What would have been a shock such is the change is made less so. We have young children put on the road to transgender transition surgery with puberty blocking drugs at an age when they could never be able to make those life-changing decisions.

Rachel Levine, a professor of paediatrics and psychiatry who believes in treating children this way, became America's highest-ranked openly-transgender official when she was confirmed as US Assistant Secretary at the Department of Health and Human Services after being nominated by Joe Biden (the Cult). Activists and governments press for laws to deny parents a say in their children's transition process so the kids can be isolated and manipulated into agreeing to irreversible medical procedures. A Canadian father Robert Hoogland was denied bail by the Vancouver Supreme Court in 2021 and remained in jail for breaching a court order that he stay silent over his young teenage daughter, a minor, who was being offered life-changing hormone therapy without parental consent. At the age of 12 the girl's 'school counsellor' said she may be transgender, referred her to a doctor and told the school to treat her like a boy. This is another example of state-serving schools imposing ever more control over children's lives while parents have ever less.

Contemptible and extreme child abuse is happening all over the world as the Cult gender-fusion operation goes into warp-speed.

### **Why the war on men – and now women?**

The question about what artificial wombs mean for women should rightly be asked. The answer can be seen in the deletion of women's rights involving sport, changing rooms, toilets and status in favour of people in male bodies claiming to identify as women. I can identify as a mountain climber, but it doesn't mean I can climb a mountain any more than a biological man can be a biological woman. To believe so is a triumph of belief over factual reality which is the very perceptual basis of everything Woke. Women's sport is being destroyed by allowing those with male bodies who say they identify as female to 'compete' with girls and women. Male body 'women' dominate 'women's' competition with their greater muscle mass, bone density, strength and speed. With that disadvantage sport for women loses all meaning. To put this in perspective nearly 300 American high school boys can run faster than the quickest woman sprinter in the world. Women are seeing their previously protected spaces invaded by male bodies simply because they claim to identify as women. That's all they need to do to access all women's spaces and activities under the Biden 'Equality Act' that destroys equality for women with the usual Orwellian Woke inversion. Male sex offenders have already committed rapes in women's prisons after claiming to identify as women to get them transferred. Does this not matter to the Woke 'equality' hypocrites? Not in the least. What matters to Cult manipulators and funders behind transgender activists is to advance gender fusion on the way to the no-gender 'human'. When you are seeking to impose transparent nonsense like this, or the 'Covid' hoax, the only way the nonsense can prevail is through censorship and intimidation of dissenters, deletion of factual information, and programming of the unquestioning, bewildered and naive. You don't have to scan the world for long to see that all these things are happening.



Many women's rights organisations have realised that rights and status which took such a long time to secure are being eroded and that it is systematic. Kara Dansky of the global Women's Human Rights Campaign said that Biden's transgender executive order immediately he took office, subsequent orders, and Equality Act legislation that followed 'seek to erase women and girls in the law as a category'. *Exactly*. I said during the long ago-started war on men (in which many women play a crucial part) that this was going to turn into a war on them. The Cult is phasing out *both* male and female genders. To get away with that they are brought into conflict so they are busy fighting each other while the Cult completes the job with no unity of response. Unity, people, *unity*. We need unity everywhere. Transgender is the only show in town as the big step towards the no-gender human. It's not about rights for transgender people and never has been. Woke political correctness is deleting words relating to genders to the same end. Wokers believe this is to be 'inclusive' when the opposite is true. They are deleting words describing gender because gender *itself* is being deleted by Human 2.0. Terms like 'man', 'woman', 'mother' and 'father' are being deleted in the universities and other institutions to be replaced by the *no-gender*, not trans-gender, 'individuals' and 'guardians'. Women's rights campaigner Maria Keffler of Partners for Ethical Care said: 'Children are being taught from kindergarten upward that some boys have a vagina, some girls have a penis, and that kids can be any gender they want to be.' Do we really believe that suddenly countries all over the world at the same time had the idea of having drag queens go into schools or read transgender stories to very young children in the local library? It's coldly-calculated confusion of gender on the way to the fusion of gender. Suzanne Vierling, a psychologist from Southern California, made another important point:

Yesterday's slave woman who endured gynecological medical experiments is today's girl-child being butchered in a booming gender-transitioning sector. Ovaries removed, pushing her into menopause and osteoporosis, uncharted territory, and parents' rights and authority decimated.

The erosion of parental rights is a common theme in line with the Cult plans to erase the very concept of parents and 'ovaries removed, pushing her into menopause' means what? Those born female lose the ability to have children – another way to discontinue humanity as we know it.

### **Eliminating Human 1.0 (before our very eyes)**

To pave the way for Human 2.0 you must phase out Human 1.0. This is happening through plummeting sperm counts and making women infertile through an onslaught of chemicals, radiation (including smartphones in pockets of men) and mRNA 'vaccines'. Common agriculture pesticides are also having a devastating impact on human fertility. I have been tracking collapsing sperm counts in the books for a long time and in 2021 came a book by fertility scientist and reproductive epidemiologist Shanna Swan, *Count Down: How Our Modern World Is Threatening Sperm Counts, Altering Male and Female Reproductive Development and Imperiling the Future of the Human Race*. She reports how the global fertility rate dropped by *half* between 1960 and 2016 with America's birth rate 16 percent below where it needs to be to sustain the population. Women are experiencing declining egg quality, more miscarriages, and more couples suffer from infertility. Other findings were an increase in erectile dysfunction, infant boys developing more genital abnormalities, male problems with conception, and plunging levels of the male hormone testosterone which would explain why so many men have lost their backbone and masculinity. This has been very evident during the 'Covid' hoax when women have been prominent among the Pushbackers and big strapping blokes have bowed their heads, covered their faces with a nappy and quietly submitted. Mind control expert Cathy O'Brien also points to how global education introduced the concept of 'we're all winners' in sport and classrooms: 'Competition was defused, and it in turn defused a sense of fighting back.' This is another version of the 'equity' doctrine in which you drive down rather than raise up. What a contrast in Cult-controlled China with its global ambitions

where the government published plans in January, 2021, to 'cultivate masculinity' in boys from kindergarten through to high school in the face of a 'masculinity crisis'. A government adviser said boys would be soon become 'delicate, timid and effeminate' unless action was taken. Don't expect any similar policy in the targeted West. A 2006 study showed that a 65-year-old man in 2002 had testosterone levels *15 percent* lower than a 65-year-old man in 1987 while a 2020 study found a similar story with young adults and adolescents. Men are getting prescriptions for testosterone replacement therapy which causes an even greater drop in sperm count with up to 99 percent seeing sperm counts drop to zero during the treatment. More sperm is defective and malfunctioning with some having two heads or not pursuing an egg.

A class of *synthetic* chemicals known as phthalates are being blamed for the decline. These are found everywhere in plastics, shampoos, cosmetics, furniture, flame retardants, personal care products, pesticides, canned foods and even receipts. Why till receipts? Everyone touches them. Let no one delude themselves that all this is not systematic to advance the long-time agenda for human body transformation. Phthalates mimic hormones and disrupt the hormone balance causing testosterone to fall and genital birth defects in male infants. Animals and fish have been affected in the same way due to phthalates and other toxins in rivers. When fish turn gay or change sex through chemicals in rivers and streams it is a pointer to why there has been such an increase in gay people and the sexually confused. It doesn't matter to me what sexuality people choose to be, but if it's being affected by chemical pollution and consumption then we need to know. Does anyone really think that this is not connected to the transgender agenda, the war on men and the condemnation of male 'toxic masculinity'? You watch this being followed by 'toxic femininity'. It's already happening. When breastfeeding becomes 'chest-feeding', pregnant women become pregnant people along with all the other Woke claptrap you know that the world is going insane and there's a Cult scam in progress. Transgender activists are promoting the Cult agenda while Cult

billionaires support and fund the insanity as they laugh themselves to sleep at the sheer stupidity for which humans must be infamous in galaxies far, far away.

### **'Covid vaccines' and female infertility**

We can now see why the 'vaccine' has been connected to potential infertility in women. Dr Michael Yeadon, former Vice President and Chief Scientific Advisor at Pfizer, and Dr Wolfgang Wodarg in Germany, filed a petition with the European Medicines Agency in December, 2020, urging them to stop trials for the Pfizer/BioNTech shot and all other mRNA trials until further studies had been done. They were particularly concerned about possible effects on fertility with 'vaccine'-produced antibodies attacking the protein Syncytin-1 which is responsible for developing the placenta. The result would be infertility 'of indefinite duration' in women who have the 'vaccine' with the placenta failing to form. Section 10.4.2 of the Pfizer/BioNTech trial protocol says that pregnant women or those who might become so should not have mRNA shots. Section 10.4 warns men taking mRNA shots to 'be abstinent from heterosexual intercourse' and not to donate sperm. The UK government said that it *did not know* if the mRNA procedure had an effect on fertility. *Did not know?* These people have to go to jail. UK government advice did not recommend at the start that pregnant women had the shot and said they should avoid pregnancy for at least two months after 'vaccination'. The 'advice' was later updated to pregnant women should only have the 'vaccine' if the benefits outweighed the risks to mother and foetus. What the hell is that supposed to mean? Then 'spontaneous abortions' began to appear and rapidly increase on the adverse reaction reporting schemes which include only a fraction of adverse reactions. Thousands and ever-growing numbers of 'vaccinated' women are describing changes to their menstrual cycle with heavier blood flow, irregular periods and menstruating again after going through the menopause – all links to reproduction effects. Women are passing blood clots and the lining of their uterus while men report erectile dysfunction and blood effects. Most

significantly of all *unvaccinated* women began to report similar menstrual changes after interaction with '*vaccinated*' people and men and children were also affected with bleeding noses, blood clots and other conditions. 'Shedding' is when vaccinated people can emit the content of a vaccine to affect the unvaccinated, but this is different. 'Vaccinated' people were not shedding a 'live virus' allegedly in 'vaccines' as before because the fake 'Covid vaccines' involve synthetic material and other toxicity. Doctors exposing what is happening prefer the term 'transmission' to shedding. Somehow those that have had the shots are transmitting effects to those that haven't. Dr Carrie Madej said the nano-content of the 'vaccines' can 'act like an antenna' to others around them which fits perfectly with my own conclusions. This 'vaccine' transmission phenomenon was becoming known as the book went into production and I deal with this further in the Postscript.

Vaccine effects on sterility are well known. The World Health Organization was accused in 2014 of sterilising millions of women in Kenya with the evidence confirmed by the content of the vaccines involved. The same WHO behind the 'Covid' hoax admitted its involvement for more than ten years with the vaccine programme. Other countries made similar claims. Charges were lodged by Tanzania, Nicaragua, Mexico, and the Philippines. The Gardasil vaccine claimed to protect against a genital 'virus' known as HPV has also been linked to infertility. Big Pharma and the WHO (same thing) are criminal and satanic entities. Then there's the Bill Gates Foundation which is connected through funding and shared interests with 20 pharmaceutical giants and laboratories. He stands accused of directing the policy of United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF), vaccine alliance GAVI, and other groupings, to advance the vaccine agenda and silence opposition at great cost to women and children. At the same time Gates wants to reduce the global population. Coincidence?

**Great Reset = Smart Grid = new human**

The Cult agenda I have been exposing for 30 years is now being openly promoted by Cult assets like Gates and Klaus Schwab of the World Economic Forum under code-terms like the 'Great Reset', 'Build Back Better' and 'a rare but narrow window of opportunity to reflect, reimagine, and reset our world'. What provided this 'rare but narrow window of opportunity'? The 'Covid' hoax did. Who created that? *They* did. My books from not that long ago warned about the planned 'Internet of Things' (IoT) and its implications for human freedom. This was the plan to connect all technology to the Internet and artificial intelligence and today we are way down that road with an estimated 36 billion devices connected to the World Wide Web and that figure is projected to be 76 billion by 2025. I further warned that the Cult planned to go beyond that to the Internet of *Everything* when the human brain was connected via AI to the Internet and Kurzweil's 'cloud'. Now we have Cult operatives like Schwab calling for precisely that under the term 'Internet of Bodies', a fusion of the physical, digital and biological into one centrally-controlled Smart Grid system which the Cult refers to as the 'Fourth Industrial Revolution'. They talk about the 'biological', but they really mean the synthetic-biological which is required to fully integrate the human body and brain into the Smart Grid and artificial intelligence planned to replace the human mind. We have everything being synthetically manipulated including the natural world through GMO and smart dust, the food we eat and the human body itself with synthetic 'vaccines'. I said in *The Answer* that we would see the Cult push for synthetic meat to replace animals and in February, 2021, the so predictable psychopath Bill Gates called for the introduction of synthetic meat to save us all from 'climate change'. The climate hoax just keeps on giving like the 'Covid' hoax. The war on meat by vegan activists is a carbon (oops, sorry) copy of the manipulation of transgender activists. They have no idea (except their inner core) that they are being used to promote and impose the agenda of the Cult or that they are only the *vehicle* and not the *reason*. This is not to say those who choose not to eat meat shouldn't be respected and supported in that right, but there are ulterior motives

for those in power. A *Forbes* article in December, 2019, highlighted the plan so beloved of Schwab and the Cult under the heading: 'What Is The Internet of Bodies? And How Is It Changing Our World?' The article said the human body is the latest data platform (remember 'our vaccine is an operating system'). *Forbes* described the plan very accurately and the words could have come straight out of my books from long before:

The Internet of Bodies (IoB) is an extension of the IoT and basically connects the human body to a network through devices that are ingested, implanted, or connected to the body in some way. Once connected, data can be exchanged, and the body and device can be remotely monitored and controlled.

They were really describing a human hive mind with human perception centrally-dictated via an AI connection as well as allowing people to be 'remotely monitored and controlled'. Everything from a fridge to a human mind could be directed from a central point by these insane psychopaths and 'Covid vaccines' are crucial to this. *Forbes* explained the process I mentioned earlier of holdable and wearable technology followed by implantable. The article said there were three generations of the Internet of Bodies that include:

- Body external: These are wearable devices such as Apple Watches or Fitbits that can monitor our health.
- Body internal: These include pacemakers, cochlear implants, and digital pills that go inside our bodies to monitor or control various aspects of health.
- Body embedded: The third generation of the Internet of Bodies is embedded technology where technology and the human body are melded together and have a real-time connection to a remote machine.

*Forbes* noted the development of the Brain Computer Interface (BCI) which merges the brain with an external device for monitoring and controlling in real-time. 'The ultimate goal is to help restore function to individuals with disabilities by using brain signals rather than conventional neuromuscular pathways.' Oh, do fuck off. The goal of brain interface technology is controlling human thought and emotion from the central point in a hive mind serving its masters wishes. Many people are now agreeing to be chipped to open doors without a key. You can recognise them because they'll be wearing a mask, social distancing and lining up for the 'vaccine'. The Cult plans a Great Reset money system after they have completed the demolition of the global economy in which 'money' will be exchanged through communication with body operating systems. Rand Corporation, a Cult-owned think tank, said of the Internet of Bodies or IoB:

Internet of Bodies technologies fall under the broader IoT umbrella. But as the name suggests, IoB devices introduce an even more intimate interplay between humans and gadgets. IoB devices monitor the human body, collect health metrics and other personal information, and transmit those data over the Internet. Many devices, such as fitness trackers, are already in use ... IoB devices ... and those in development can track, record, and store users' whereabouts, bodily functions, and what they see, hear, and even think.

Schwab's World Economic Forum, a long-winded way of saying 'fascism' or 'the Cult', has gone full-on with the Internet of Bodies in the 'Covid' era. 'We're entering the era of the Internet of Bodies', it declared, 'collecting our physical data via a range of devices that can be implanted, swallowed or worn'. The result would be a huge amount of health-related data that could improve human wellbeing around the world, and prove crucial in fighting the 'Covid-19 pandemic'. Does anyone think these clowns care about 'human wellbeing' after the death and devastation their pandemic hoax has purposely caused? Schwab and co say we should move forward with the Internet of Bodies because 'Keeping track of symptoms could help us stop the spread of infection, and quickly detect new cases'. How wonderful, but keeping track' is all they are really bothered



about. Researchers were investigating if data gathered from smartwatches and similar devices could be used as viral infection alerts by tracking the user's heart rate and breathing. Schwab said in his 2018 book *Shaping the Future of the Fourth Industrial Revolution*:

The lines between technologies and beings are becoming blurred and not just by the ability to create lifelike robots or synthetics. Instead it is about the ability of new technologies to literally become part of us. Technologies already influence how we understand ourselves, how we think about each other, and how we determine our realities. As the technologies ... give us deeper access to parts of ourselves, we may begin to integrate digital technologies into our bodies.

You can see what the game is. Twenty-four hour control and people – if you could still call them that – would never know when something would go ping and take them out of circulation. It's the most obvious rush to a global fascist dictatorship and the complete submission of humanity and yet still so many are locked away in their Cult-induced perceptual coma and can't see it.

### **Smart Grid control centres**

The human body is being transformed by the 'vaccines' and in other ways into a synthetic cyborg that can be attached to the global Smart Grid which would be controlled from a central point and other sub-locations of Grid manipulation. Where are these planned to be? Well, China for a start which is one of the Cult's biggest centres of operation. The technological control system and technocratic rule was incubated here to be unleashed across the world after the 'Covid' hoax came out of China in 2020. Another Smart Grid location that will surprise people new to this is Israel. I have exposed in *The Trigger* how Sabbatian technocrats, intelligence and military operatives were behind the horrors of 9/11 and not 19 Arab hijackers' who somehow manifested the ability to pilot big passenger airliners when instructors at puddle-jumping flying schools described some of them as a joke. The 9/11 attacks were made possible through control of civilian and military air computer systems and those of the White House, Pentagon and connected agencies. See *The Trigger* – it

will blow your mind. The controlling and coordinating force were the Sabbatian networks in Israel and the United States which by then had infiltrated the entire US government, military and intelligence system. The real name of the American Deep State is 'Sabbatian State'. Israel is a tiny country of only nine million people, but it is one of the global centres of cyber operations and fast catching Silicon Valley in importance to the Cult. Israel is known as the 'start-up nation' for all the cyber companies spawned there with the Sabbatian specialisation of 'cyber security' that I mentioned earlier which gives those companies access to computer systems of their clients in real time through 'backdoors' written into the coding when security software is downloaded. The Sabbatian centre of cyber operations outside Silicon Valley is the Israeli military Cyber Intelligence Unit, the biggest infrastructure project in Israel's history, headquartered in the desert-city of Beersheba and involving some 20,000 'cyber soldiers'. Here are located a literal army of Internet trolls scanning social media, forums and comment lists for anyone challenging the Cult agenda. The UK military has something similar with its 77th Brigade and associated operations. The Beersheba complex includes research and development centres for other Cult operations such as Intel, Microsoft, IBM, Google, Apple, Hewlett-Packard, Cisco Systems, Facebook and Motorola. [Techcrunch.com](http://Techcrunch.com) ran an article about the Beersheba global Internet technology centre headlined 'Israel's desert city of Beersheba is turning into a cybertech oasis':

The military's massive relocation of its prestigious technology units, the presence of multinational and local companies, a close proximity to Ben Gurion University and generous government subsidies are turning Beersheba into a major global cybertech hub. Beersheba has all of the ingredients of a vibrant security technology ecosystem, including Ben Gurion University with its graduate program in cybersecurity and Cyber Security Research Center, and the presence of companies such as EMC, Deutsche Telekom, PayPal, Oracle, IBM, and Lockheed Martin. It's also the future home of the INCB (Israeli National Cyber Bureau); offers a special income tax incentive for cyber security companies, and was the site for the relocation of the army's intelligence corps units.

Sabbatians have taken over the cyber world through the following process: They scan the schools for likely cyber talent and develop them at Ben Gurion University and their period of conscription in the Israeli Defense Forces when they are stationed at the Beersheba complex. When the cyber talented officially leave the army they are funded to start cyber companies with technology developed by themselves or given to them by the state. Much of this is stolen through backdoors of computer systems around the world with America top of the list. Others are sent off to Silicon Valley to start companies or join the major ones and so we have many major positions filled by apparently 'Jewish' but really Sabbatian operatives. Google, YouTube and Facebook are all run by 'Jewish' CEOs while Twitter is all but run by ultra-Zionist hedge-fund shark Paul Singer. At the centre of the Sabbatian global cyber web is the Israeli army's Unit 8200 which specialises in hacking into computer systems of other countries, inserting viruses, gathering information, instigating malfunction, and even taking control of them from a distance. A long list of Sabbatians involved with 9/11, Silicon Valley and Israeli cyber security companies are operatives of Unit 8200. This is not about Israel. It's about the Cult. Israel is planned to be a Smart Grid hub as with China and what is happening at Beersheba is not for the benefit of Jewish people who are treated disgustingly by the Sabbatian elite that control the country. A glance at the Nuremberg Codes will tell you that.

The story is much bigger than 'Covid', important as that is to where we are being taken. Now, though, it's time to really strap in. There's more ... much more ...

## CHAPTER ELEVEN

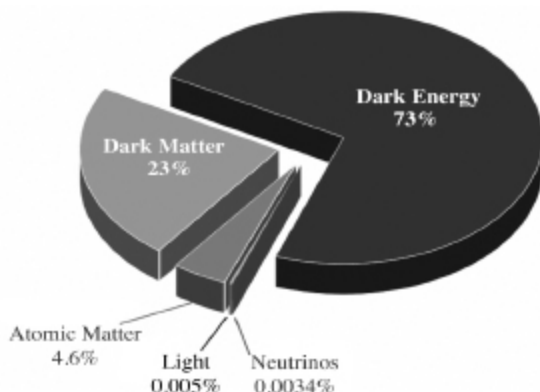
### Who controls the Cult?

*Awake, arise or be forever fall'n*  
John Milton, *Paradise Lost*

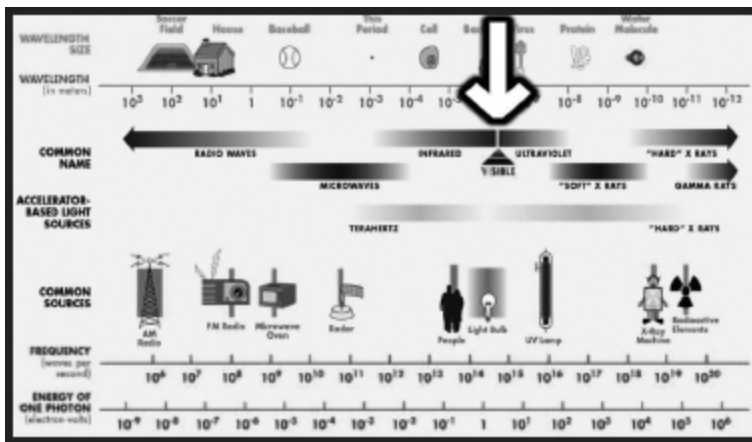
I have exposed this far the level of the Cult conspiracy that operates in the world of the seen and within the global secret society and satanic network which operates in the shadows one step back from the seen. The story, however, goes much deeper than that.

The 'Covid' hoax is major part of the Cult agenda, but only part, and to grasp the biggest picture we have to expand our attention beyond the realm of human sight and into the infinity of possibility that we cannot see. It is from here, ultimately, that humanity is being manipulated into a state of total control by the force which dictates the actions of the Cult. How much of reality can we see? Next to damn all is the answer. We may appear to see all there is to see in the 'space' our eyes survey and observe, but little could be further from the truth. The human 'world' is only a tiny band of frequency that the body's visual and perceptual systems can decode into *perception* of a 'world'. According to mainstream science the electromagnetic spectrum is 0.005 percent of what exists in the Universe (Fig 10). The maximum estimate I have seen is 0.5 percent and either way it's miniscule. I say it is far, far, smaller even than 0.005 percent when you compare reality we see with the totality of reality that we don't. Now get this if you are new to such information: Visible light, the only band of frequency that we can see, is a *fraction* of the 0.005

percent (Fig 11 overleaf). Take this further and realise that our universe is one of infinite universes and that universes are only a fragment of overall reality – *infinite* reality. Then compare that with the almost infinitesimal frequency band of visible light or human sight. You see that humans are as near blind as it is possible to be without actually being so. Artist and filmmaker, Sergio Toporek, said:



**Figure 10:** Humans can perceive such a tiny band of visual reality it's laughable.



**Figure 11:** We can see a smear of the 0.005 percent electromagnetic spectrum, but we still know it all. Yep, makes sense.

Consider that you can see less than 1% of the electromagnetic spectrum and hear less than 1% of the acoustic spectrum. 90% of the cells in your body carry their own microbial DNA and are not 'you'. The atoms in your body are 99.9999999999999999% empty space and none of them are the ones you were born with ... Human beings have 46 chromosomes, two less than a potato.

The existence of the rainbow depends on the conical photoreceptors in your eyes; to animals without cones, the rainbow does not exist. So you don't just look at a rainbow, you create it. This is pretty amazing, especially considering that all the beautiful colours you see represent less than 1% of the electromagnetic spectrum.

Suddenly the 'world' of humans looks a very different place. Take into account, too, that Planet Earth when compared with the projected size of this single universe is the equivalent of a billionth of a pinhead. Imagine the ratio that would be when compared to infinite reality. To think that Christianity once insisted that Earth and humanity were the centre of everything. This background is vital if we are going to appreciate the nature of 'human' and how we can be manipulated by an unseen force. To human visual reality virtually *everything* is unseen and yet the prevailing perception within the institutions and so much of the public is that if we can't see it, touch it, hear it, taste it and smell it then it cannot exist. Such perception is indoctrinated and encouraged by the Cult and its agents because it isolates believers in the strictly limited, village-idiot, realm of the five senses where perceptions can be firewalled and information controlled. Most of those perpetuating the 'this-world-is-all-there-is' insanity are themselves indoctrinated into believing the same delusion. While major players and influencers know that official reality is laughable most of those in science, academia and medicine really believe the nonsense they peddle and teach succeeding generations. Those who challenge the orthodoxy are dismissed as nutters and freaks to protect the manufactured illusion from exposure. Observe the dynamic of the 'Covid' hoax and you will see how that takes the same form. The inner-circle psychopaths knows it's a gigantic scam, but almost the entirety of those imposing their fascist rules believe that 'Covid' is all that they're told it is.

## **Stolen identity**

Ask people who they are and they will give you their name, place of birth, location, job, family background and life story. Yet that is not who they are – it is what they are *experiencing*. The difference is *absolutely crucial*. The true 'I', the eternal, infinite 'I', is consciousness,

a state of being aware. Forget 'form'. That is a vehicle for a brief experience. Consciousness does not come *from* the brain, but *through* the brain and even that is more symbolic than literal. We are awareness, pure awareness, and this is what withdraws from the body at what we call 'death' to continue our eternal beingness, *isness*, in other realms of reality within the limitlessness of infinity or the Biblical 'many mansions in my father's house'. Labels of a human life, man, woman, transgender, black, white, brown, nationality, circumstances and income are not who we are. They are what we are – awareness – is *experiencing* in a brief connection with a band of frequency we call 'human'. The labels are not the self; they are, to use the title of one of my books, a *Phantom Self*. I am not David Icke born in Leicester, England, on April 29th, 1952. I am the consciousness *having that experience*. The Cult and its non-human masters seek to convince us through the institutions of 'education', science, medicine, media and government that what we are *experiencing* is who we *are*. It's so easy to control and direct perception locked away in the bewildered illusions of the five senses with no expanded radar. Try, by contrast, doing the same with a humanity aware of its true self and its true power to consciously create its reality and experience. How is it possible to do this? We do it all day every day. If you perceive yourself as 'little me' with no power to impact upon your life and the world then your life experience will reflect that. You will hand the power you don't think you have to authority in all its forms which will use it to control your experience. This, in turn, will appear to confirm your perception of 'little me' in a self-fulfilling feedback loop. But that is what 'little me' really is – a *perception*. We are all 'big-me', infinite me, and the Cult has to make us forget that if its will is to prevail. We are therefore manipulated and pressured into self-identifying with human labels and not the consciousness/awareness *experiencing* those human labels.

The phenomenon of identity politics is a Cult-instigated manipulation technique to sub-divide previous labels into even smaller ones. A United States university employs this list of letters to

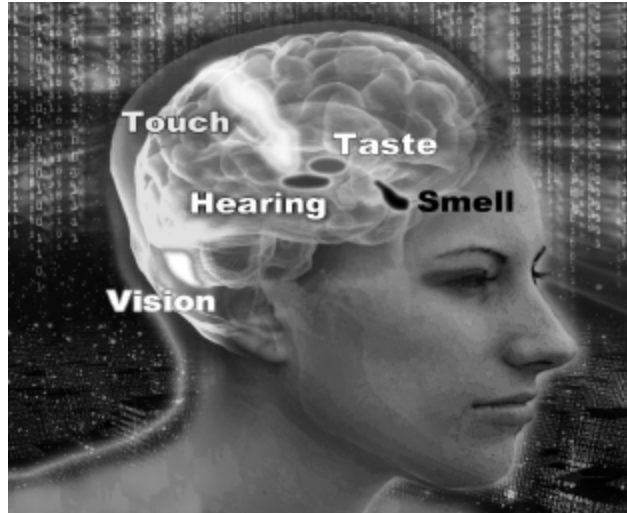
describe student identity: LGBTTQQFAGPBDSM or lesbian, gay, bisexual, transgender, transsexual, queer, questioning, flexual, asexual, gender-fuck, polyamorous, bondage/discipline, dominance/submission and sadism/masochism. I'm sure other lists are even longer by now as people feel the need to self-identity the 'I' with the minutiae of race and sexual preference. Wokers programmed by the Cult for generations believe this is about 'inclusivity' when it's really the Cult locking them away into smaller and smaller versions of Phantom Self while firewalling them from the influence of their true self, the infinite, eternal 'I'. You may notice that my philosophy which contends that we are all unique points of attention/awareness within the same infinite whole or Oneness is the ultimate non-racism. The very sense of Oneness makes the judgement of people by their body-type, colour or sexuality utterly ridiculous and confirms that racism has no understanding of reality (including anti-white racism). Yet despite my perception of life Cult agents and fast-asleep Wokers label me racist to discredit my information while they are themselves phenomenally racist and sexist. All they see is race and sexuality and they judge people as good or bad, demons or untouchables, by their race and sexuality. All they see is *Phantom Self* and perceive themselves in terms of Phantom Self. They are pawns and puppets of the Cult agenda to focus attention and self-identity in the five senses and play those identities against each other to divide and rule. Columbia University has introduced segregated graduations in another version of social distancing designed to drive people apart and teach them that different racial and cultural groups have nothing in common with each other. The last thing the Cult wants is unity. Again the pump-primers of this will be Cult operatives in the knowledge of what they are doing, but the rest are just the Phantom Self blind leading the Phantom Self blind. We *do* have something in common – we are all *the same consciousness* having different temporary experiences.

## **What is this 'human'?**



Yes, what *is* 'human'? That is what we are supposed to be, right? I mean 'human'? True, but 'human' is the experience not the 'I'. Break it down to basics and 'human' is the way that information is processed. If we are to experience and interact with this band of frequency we call the 'world' we must have a vehicle that operates within that band of frequency. Our consciousness in its prime form cannot do that; it is way beyond the frequency of the human realm. My consciousness or awareness could not tap these keys and pick up the cup in front of me in the same way that radio station A cannot interact with radio station B when they are on different frequencies. The human body is the means through which we have that interaction. I have long described the body as a biological computer which processes information in a way that allows consciousness to experience this reality. The body is a receiver, transmitter and processor of information in a particular way that we call human. We visually perceive only the world of the five senses in a wakened state – that is the limit of the body's visual decoding system. In truth it's not even visual in the way we experience 'visual reality' as I will come to in a moment. We are 'human' because the body processes the information sources of human into a reality and behaviour system that we *perceive* as human. Why does an elephant act like an elephant and not like a human or a duck? The elephant's biological computer is a different information field and processes information according to that program into a visual and behaviour type we call an elephant. The same applies to everything in our reality. These body information fields are perpetuated through procreation (like making a copy of a software program). The Cult wants to break that cycle and intervene technologically to transform the human information field into one that will change what we call humanity. If it can change the human information field it will change the way that field processes information and change humanity both 'physically' and psychologically. Hence the *messenger* (information) RNA 'vaccines' and so much more that is targeting human genetics by changing the body's information – *messaging* – construct through food, drink, radiation, toxicity and other means.

Reality that we experience is nothing like reality as it really is in the same way that the reality people experience in virtual reality games is not the reality they are really living in. The game is only a decoded source of information that appears to be a reality. Our world is also an information construct – a *simulation* (more later). In its base form our reality is a wavefield of information much the same in theme as Wi-Fi. The five senses decode wavefield information into electrical information which they communicate to the brain to decode into holographic (illusory ‘physical’) information. Different parts of the brain specialise in decoding different senses and the information is fused into a reality that appears to be outside of us but is really inside the brain and the genetic structure in general (Fig 12 overleaf). DNA is a receiver-transmitter of information and a vital part of this decoding process and the body’s connection to other realities. Change DNA and you change the way we decode and connect with reality – see ‘Covid vaccines’. Think of computers decoding Wi-Fi. You have information encoded in a radiation field and the computer decodes that information into a very different form on the screen. You can’t see the Wi-Fi until its information is made manifest on the screen and the information on the screen is inside the computer and not outside. I have just described how we decode the ‘human world’. All five senses decode the waveform ‘Wi-Fi’ field into electrical signals and the brain (computer) constructs reality inside the brain and not outside – ‘You don’t just look at a rainbow, you create it’. Sound is a simple example. We don’t hear sound until the brain decodes it. Waveform sound waves are picked up by the hearing sense and communicated to the brain in an electrical form to be decoded into the sounds that we hear. Everything we hear is inside the brain along with everything we see, feel, smell and taste. Words and language are waveform fields generated by our vocal chords which pass through this process until they are decoded by the brain into words that we hear. Different languages are different frequency fields or sound waves generated by vocal chords. Late British philosopher Alan Watts said:



**Figure 12:** The brain receives information from the five senses and constructs from that our perceived reality.

[Without the brain] the world is devoid of light, heat, weight, solidity, motion, space, time or any other imaginable feature. All these phenomena are interactions, or transactions, of vibrations with a certain arrangement of neurons.

That's exactly what they are and scientist Robert Lanza describes in his book, *Biocentrism*, how we decode electromagnetic waves and energy into visual and 'physical' experience. He uses the example of a flame emitting photons, electromagnetic energy, each pulsing electrically and magnetically:

... these ... invisible electromagnetic waves strike a human retina, and if (and only if) the waves happen to measure between 400 and 700 nano meters in length from crest to crest, then their energy is just right to deliver a stimulus to the 8 million cone-shaped cells in the retina.

Each in turn send an electrical pulse to a neighbour neuron, and on up the line this goes, at 250 mph, until it reaches the ... occipital lobe of the brain, in the back of the head. There, a cascading complex of neurons fire from the incoming stimuli, and we subjectively perceive this experience as a yellow brightness occurring in a place we have been conditioned to call the 'external world'.

**You hear what you decode**

If a tree falls or a building collapses they make no noise unless someone is there to decode the energetic waves generated by the disturbance into what we call sound. Does a falling tree make a noise? Only if you hear it – *decode* it. Everything in our reality is a frequency field of information operating within the overall ‘Wi-Fi’ field that I call The Field. A vibrational disturbance is generated in The Field by the fields of the falling tree or building. These disturbance waves are what we decode into the sound of them falling. If no one is there to do that then neither will make any noise. Reality is created by the observer – *decoder* – and the *perceptions* of the observer affect the decoding process. For this reason different people – different *perceptions* – will perceive the same reality or situation in a different way. What one may perceive as a nightmare another will see as an opportunity. The question of why the Cult is so focused on controlling human perception now answers itself. All experienced reality is the act of decoding and we don’t experience Wi-Fi until it is decoded on the computer screen. The sight and sound of an Internet video is encoded in the Wi-Fi all around us, but we don’t see or hear it until the computer decodes that information. Taste, smell and touch are all phenomena of the brain as a result of the same process. We don’t taste, smell or feel anything except in the brain and there are pain relief techniques that seek to block the signal from the site of discomfort to the brain because if the brain doesn’t decode that signal we don’t feel pain. Pain is in the brain and only appears to be at the point of impact thanks to the feedback loop between them. We don’t see anything until electrical information from the sight senses is decoded in an area at the back of the brain. If that area is damaged we can go blind when our eyes are perfectly okay. So why do we go blind if we damage an eye? We damage the information processing between the waveform visual information and the visual decoding area of the brain. If information doesn’t reach the brain in a form it can decode then we can’t see the visual reality that it represents. What’s more the brain is decoding only a fraction of the information it receives and the rest is absorbed by the

sub-conscious mind. This explanation is from the science magazine, *Wonderpedia*:

Every second, 11 million sensations crackle along these [brain] pathways ... The brain is confronted with an alarming array of images, sounds and smells which it rigorously filters down until it is left with a manageable list of around 40. Thus 40 sensations per second make up what we perceive as reality.

The 'world' is not what people are told to believe that is it and the inner circles of the Cult *know that*.

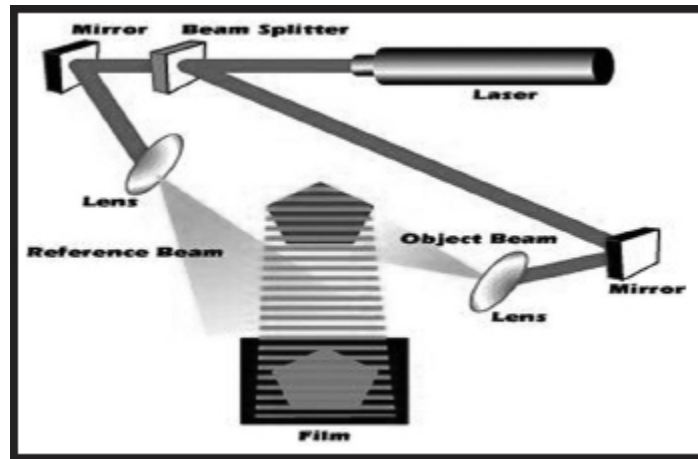
### **Illusory 'physical' reality**

We can only see a smear of 0.005 percent of the Universe which is only one of a vast array of universes – 'mansions' – within infinite reality. Even then the brain decodes only 40 pieces of information ('sensations') from a potential *11 million* that we receive every second. Two points strike you from this immediately: The sheer breathtaking stupidity of believing we know anything so rigidly that there's nothing more to know; and the potential for these processes to be manipulated by a malevolent force to control the reality of the population. One thing I can say for sure with no risk of contradiction is that when you can perceive an almost indescribable fraction of infinite reality there is always more to know as in tidal waves of it. Ancient Greek philosopher Socrates was so right when he said that wisdom is to know how little we know. How obviously true that is when you think that we are experiencing a physical world of solidity that is neither physical nor solid and a world of apartness when everything is connected. Cult-controlled 'science' dismisses the so-called 'paranormal' and all phenomena related to that when the 'para'-normal is perfectly normal and explains the alleged 'great mysteries' which dumbfound scientific minds. There is a reason for this. A 'scientific mind' in terms of the mainstream is a material mind, a five-sense mind imprisoned in see it, touch it, hear it, smell it and taste it. Phenomena and happenings that can't be explained that way leave the 'scientific mind' bewildered and the rule is that if they

can't account for why something is happening then it can't, by definition, be happening. I beg to differ. Telepathy is thought waves passing through The Field (think wave disturbance again) to be decoded by someone able to connect with that wavelength (information). For example: You can pick up the thought waves of a friend at any distance and at the very least that will bring them to mind. A few minutes later the friend calls you. 'My god', you say, 'that's incredible – I was just thinking of you.' Ah, but *they* were thinking of *you* before they made the call and that's what you decoded. Native peoples not entrapped in five-sense reality do this so well it became known as the 'bush telegraph'. Those known as psychics and mediums (genuine ones) are doing the same only across dimensions of reality. 'Mind over matter' comes from the fact that matter and mind are the *same*. The state of one influences the state of the other. Indeed one *and* the other are illusions. They are aspects of the same field. Paranormal phenomena are all explainable so why are they still considered 'mysteries' or not happening? Once you go down this road of understanding you begin to expand awareness beyond the five senses and that's the nightmare for the Cult.



**Figure 13:** Holograms are not solid, but the best ones appear to be.

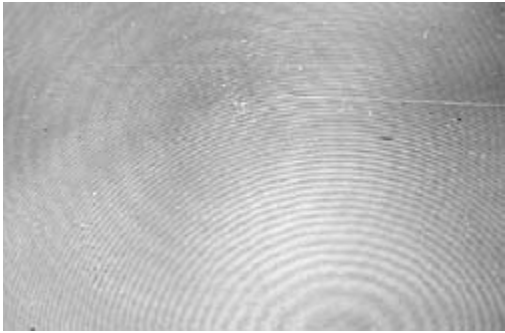


**Figure 14:** How holograms are created by capturing a waveform version of the subject image.

### **Holographic 'solidity'**

Our reality is not solid, it is holographic. We are now well aware of holograms which are widely used today. Two-dimensional information is decoded into a three-dimensional reality that is not solid although can very much appear to be (Fig 13). Holograms are created with a laser divided into two parts. One goes directly onto a holographic photographic print ('reference beam') and the other takes a waveform image of the subject ('working beam') before being directed onto the print where it 'collides' with the other half of the laser (Fig 14). This creates a *waveform* interference pattern which contains the wavefield information of whatever is being photographed (Fig 15 overleaf). The process can be likened to dropping pebbles in a pond. Waves generated by each one spread out across the water to collide with the others and create a wave representation of where the stones fell and at what speed, weight and distance. A waveform interference pattern of a hologram is akin to the waveform information in The Field which the five senses decode into electrical signals to be decoded by the brain into a holographic illusory 'physical' reality. In the same way when a laser (think human attention) is directed at the waveform interference pattern a three-dimensional version of the subject is projected into apparently 'solid' reality (Fig 16). An amazing trait of holograms reveals more 'paranormal mysteries'. Information of the *whole*

hologram is encoded in waveform in every part of the interference pattern by the way they are created. This means that every *part* of a hologram is a smaller version of the whole. Cut the interference wave-pattern into four and you won't get four parts of the image. You get quarter-sized versions of the *whole* image. The body is a hologram and the same applies. Here we have the basis of acupuncture, reflexology and other forms of healing which identify representations of the whole body in all of the parts, hands, feet, ears, everywhere. Skilled palm readers can do what they do because the information of whole body is encoded in the hand. The concept of as above, so below, comes from this.



**Figure 15:** A waveform interference pattern that holds the information that transforms into a hologram.



**Figure 16:** Holographic people including 'Elvis' holographically inserted to sing a duet with Celine Dion.



The question will be asked of why, if solidity is illusory, we can't just walk through walls and each other. The resistance is not solid against solid; it is electromagnetic field against electromagnetic field and we decode this into the *experience* of solid against solid. We should also not underestimate the power of belief to dictate reality. What you believe is impossible *will be*. Your belief impacts on your decoding processes and they won't decode what you think is impossible. What we believe we perceive and what we perceive we experience. 'Can't dos' and 'impossibles' are like a firewall in a computer system that won't put on the screen what the firewall blocks. How vital that is to understanding how human experience has been hijacked. I explain in *The Answer, Everything You Need To Know But Have Never Been Told* and other books a long list of 'mysteries' and 'paranormal' phenomena that are not mysterious and perfectly normal once you realise what reality is and how it works. 'Ghosts' can be seen to pass through 'solid' walls because the walls are not solid and the ghost is a discarnate entity operating on a frequency so different to that of the wall that it's like two radio stations sharing the same space while never interfering with each other. I have seen ghosts do this myself. The apartness of people and objects is also an illusion. Everything is connected by the Field like all sea life is connected by the sea. It's just that within the limits of our visual reality we only 'see' holographic information and not the field of information that connects everything and from which the holographic world is made manifest. If you can only see holographic 'objects' and not the field that connects them they will appear to you as unconnected to each other in the same way that we see the computer while not seeing the Wi-Fi.

### **What you don't know *can* hurt you**

Okay, we return to those 'two worlds' of human society and the Cult with its global network of interconnecting secret societies and satanic groups which manipulate through governments, corporations, media, religions, etc. The fundamental difference between them is *knowledge*. The idea has been to keep humanity

ignorant of the plan for its total enslavement underpinned by a crucial ignorance of reality – who we are and where we are – and how we interact with it. ‘Human’ should be the interaction between our expanded eternal consciousness and the five-sense body experience. We are meant to be *in* this world in terms of the five senses but not *of* this world in relation to our greater consciousness and perspective. In that state we experience the small picture of the five senses within the wider context of the big picture of awareness beyond the five senses. Put another way the five senses see the dots and expanded awareness connects them into pictures and patterns that give context to the apparently random and unconnected. Without the context of expanded awareness the five senses see only apartness and randomness with apparently no meaning. The Cult and its other-dimensional controllers seek to intervene in the frequency realm where five-sense reality is supposed to connect with expanded reality and to keep the two apart (more on this in the final chapter). When that happens five-sense mental and emotional processes are no longer influenced by expanded awareness, or the True ‘I’, and instead are driven by the isolated perceptions of the body’s decoding systems. They are in the world *and* of it. Here we have the human plight and why humanity with its potential for infinite awareness can be so easily manipulatable and descend into such extremes of stupidity.

Once the Cult isolates five-sense mind from expanded awareness it can then program the mind with perceptions and beliefs by controlling information that the mind receives through the ‘education’ system of the formative years and the media perceptual bombardment and censorship of an entire lifetime. Limit perception and a sense of the possible through limiting knowledge by limiting and skewing information while censoring and discrediting that which could set people free. As the title of another of my books says ... *And The Truth Shall Set You Free*. For this reason the last thing the Cult wants in circulation is the truth about anything – especially the reality of the eternal ‘I’ – and that’s why it is desperate to control information. The Cult knows that information becomes perception

which becomes behaviour which, collectively, becomes human society. Cult-controlled and funded mainstream 'science' denies the existence of an eternal 'I' and seeks to dismiss and trash all evidence to the contrary. Cult-controlled mainstream religion has a version of 'God' that is little more than a system of control and dictatorship that employs threats of damnation in an afterlife to control perceptions and behaviour in the here and now through fear and guilt. Neither is true and it's the 'neither' that the Cult wishes to suppress. This 'neither' is that everything is an expression, a point of attention, within an infinite state of consciousness which is the real meaning of the term 'God'.

Perceptual obsession with the 'physical body' and five-senses means that 'God' becomes personified as a bearded bloke sitting among the clouds or a raging bully who loves us if we do what 'he' wants and condemns us to the fires of hell if we don't. These are no more than a 'spiritual' fairy tales to control and dictate events and behaviour through fear of this 'God' which has bizarrely made 'God-fearing' in religious circles a state to be desired. I would suggest that fearing *anything* is not to be encouraged and celebrated, but rather deleted. You can see why 'God fearing' is so beneficial to the Cult and its religions when *they* decide what 'God' wants and what 'God' demands (the Cult demands) that everyone do. As the great American comedian Bill Hicks said satirising a Christian zealot: 'I think what God meant to say.' How much of this infinite awareness ('God') that we access is decided by how far we choose to expand our perceptions, self-identity and sense of the possible. The scale of self-identity reflects itself in the scale of awareness that we can connect with and are influenced by – how much knowing and insight we have instead of programmed perception. You cannot expand your awareness into the infinity of possibility when you believe that you are little me Peter the postman or Mary in marketing and nothing more. I'll deal with this in the concluding chapter because it's crucial to how we turnaround current events.

## **Where the Cult came from**

When I realised in the early 1990s there was a Cult network behind global events I asked the obvious question: When did it start? I took it back to ancient Rome and Egypt and on to Babylon and Sumer in Mesopotamia, the 'Land Between Two Rivers', in what we now call Iraq. The two rivers are the Tigris and Euphrates and this region is of immense historical and other importance to the Cult, as is the land called Israel only 550 miles away by air. There is much more going on with deep esoteric meaning across this whole region. It's not only about 'wars for oil'. Priceless artefacts from Mesopotamia were stolen or destroyed after the American and British invasion of Iraq in 2003 justified by the lies of Boy Bush and Tony Blair (their Cult masters) about non-existent 'weapons of mass destruction'.

Mesopotamia was the location of Sumer (about 5,400BC to 1,750BC), and Babylon (about 2,350BC to 539BC). Sabbatians may have become immensely influential in the Cult in modern times but they are part of a network that goes back into the mists of history. Sumer is said by historians to be the 'cradle of civilisation'. I disagree. I say it was the re-start of what we call human civilisation after cataclysmic events symbolised in part as the 'Great Flood' destroyed the world that existed before. These fantastic upheavals that I have been describing in detail in the books since the early 1990s appear in accounts and legends of ancient cultures across the world and they are supported by geological and biological evidence. Stone tablets found in Iraq detailing the Sumer period say the cataclysms were caused by non-human 'gods' they call the Anunnaki. These are described in terms of extraterrestrial visitations in which knowledge supplied by the Anunnaki is said to have been the source of at least one of the world's oldest writing systems and developments in astronomy, mathematics and architecture that were way ahead of their time. I have covered this subject at length in *The Biggest Secret* and *Children of the Matrix* and the same basic 'Anunnaki' story can be found in Zulu accounts in South Africa where the late and very great Zulu high shaman Credo Mutwa told me that the Sumerian Anunnaki were known by Zulus as the Chitauri or 'children of the serpent'. See my six-hour video interview with Credo on this subject entitled *The*

*Reptilian Agenda* recorded at his then home near Johannesburg in 1999 which you can watch on the Ickonic media platform.

The Cult emerged out of Sumer, Babylon and Egypt (and elsewhere) and established the Roman Empire before expanding with the Romans into northern Europe from where many empires were savagely imposed in the form of Cult-controlled societies all over the world. Mass death and destruction was their calling card. The Cult established its centre of operations in Europe and European Empires were Cult empires which allowed it to expand into a global force. Spanish and Portuguese colonialists headed for Central and South America while the British and French targeted North America. Africa was colonised by Britain, France, Belgium, the Netherlands, Portugal, Spain, Italy, and Germany. Some like Britain and France moved in on the Middle East. The British Empire was by far the biggest for a simple reason. By now Britain was the headquarters of the Cult from which it expanded to form Canada, the United States, Australia and New Zealand. The Sun never set on the British Empire such was the scale of its occupation. London remains a global centre for the Cult along with Rome and the Vatican although others have emerged in Israel and China. It is no accident that the 'virus' is alleged to have come out of China while Italy was chosen as the means to terrify the Western population into compliance with 'Covid' fascism. Nor that Israel has led the world in 'Covid' fascism and mass 'vaccination'.

You would think that I would mention the United States here, but while it has been an important means of imposing the Cult's will it is less significant than would appear and is currently in the process of having what power it does have deleted. The Cult in Europe has mostly loaded the guns for the US to fire. America has been controlled from Europe from the start through Cult operatives in Britain and Europe. The American Revolution was an illusion to make it appear that America was governing itself while very different forces were pulling the strings in the form of Cult families such as the Rothschilds through the Rockefellers and other subordinates. The Rockefellers are extremely close to Bill Gates and

established both scalpel and drug 'medicine' and the World Health Organization. They play a major role in the development and circulation of vaccines through the Rockefeller Foundation on which Bill Gates said his Foundation is based. Why wouldn't this be the case when the Rockefellers and Gates are on the same team? Cult infiltration of human society goes way back into what we call history and has been constantly expanding and centralising power with the goal of establishing a global structure to dictate everything. Look how this has been advanced in great leaps with the 'Covid' hoax.

### **The non-human dimension**

I researched and observed the comings and goings of Cult operatives through the centuries and even thousands of years as they were born, worked to promote the agenda within the secret society and satanic networks, and then died for others to replace them. Clearly there had to be a coordinating force that spanned this entire period while operatives who would not have seen the end goal in their lifetimes came and went advancing the plan over millennia. I went in search of that coordinating force with the usual support from the extraordinary synchronicity of my life which has been an almost daily experience since 1990. I saw common themes in religious texts and ancient cultures about a non-human force manipulating human society from the hidden. Christianity calls this force Satan, the Devil and demons; Islam refers to the Jinn or Djinn; Zulus have their Chitauri (spelt in other ways in different parts of Africa); and the Gnostic people in Egypt in the period around and before 400AD referred to this phenomena as the 'Archons', a word meaning rulers in Greek. Central American cultures speak of the 'Predators' among other names and the same theme is everywhere. I will use 'Archons' as a collective name for all of them. When you see how their nature and behaviour is described all these different sources are clearly talking about the same force. Gnostics described the Archons in terms of 'luminous fire' while Islam relates the Jinn to 'smokeless fire'. Some refer to beings in form that could occasionally be seen, but the most common of common theme is that they operate from

unseen realms which means almost all existence to the visual processes of humans. I had concluded that this was indeed the foundation of human control and that the Cult was operating within the human frequency band on behalf of this hidden force when I came across the writings of Gnostics which supported my conclusions in the most extraordinary way.

A sealed earthen jar was found in 1945 near the town of Nag Hammadi about 75-80 miles north of Luxor on the banks of the River Nile in Egypt. Inside was a treasure trove of manuscripts and texts left by the Gnostic people some 1,600 years earlier. They included 13 leather-bound papyrus codices (manuscripts) and more than 50 texts written in Coptic Egyptian estimated to have been hidden in the jar in the period of 400AD although the source of the information goes back much further. Gnostics oversaw the Great or Royal Library of Alexandria, the fantastic depository of ancient texts detailing advanced knowledge and accounts of human history. The Library was dismantled and destroyed in stages over a long period with the death-blow delivered by the Cult-established Roman Church in the period around 415AD. The Church of Rome was the Church of Babylon relocated as I said earlier. Gnostics were not a race. They were a way of perceiving reality. Whenever they established themselves and their information circulated the terrorists of the Church of Rome would target them for destruction. This happened with the Great Library and with the Gnostic Cathars who were burned to death by the psychopaths after a long period of oppression at the siege of the Castle of Monségur in southern France in 1244. The Church has always been terrified of Gnostic information which demolishes the official Christian narrative although there is much in the Bible that supports the Gnostic view if you read it in another way. To anyone studying the texts of what became known as the Nag Hammadi Library it is clear that great swathes of Christian and Biblical belief has its origin with Gnostics sources going back to Sumer. Gnostic themes have been twisted to manipulate the perceived reality of Bible believers. Biblical texts have been in the open for centuries where they could be changed while Gnostic

documents found at Nag Hammadi were sealed away and untouched for 1,600 years. What you see is what they wrote.

### **Use your *pneuma* not your *nous***

Gnosticism and Gnostic come from 'gnosis' which means knowledge, or rather *secret* knowledge, in the sense of spiritual awareness – knowledge about reality and life itself. The desperation of the Cult's Church of Rome to destroy the Gnostics can be understood when the knowledge they were circulating was the last thing the Cult wanted the population to know. Sixteen hundred years later the same Cult is working hard to undermine and silence me for the same reason. The dynamic between knowledge and ignorance is a constant. 'Time' appears to move on, but essential themes remain the same. We are told to 'use your nous', a Gnostic word for head/brain/intelligence. They said, however, that spiritual awakening or 'salvation' could only be secured by expanding awareness *beyond* what they called *nous* and into *pneuma* or Infinite Self. Obviously as I read these texts the parallels with what I have been saying since 1990 were fascinating to me. There is a universal truth that spans human history and in that case why wouldn't we be talking the same language 16 centuries apart? When you free yourself from the perception program of the five senses and explore expanded realms of consciousness you are going to connect with the same information no matter what the perceived 'era' within a manufactured timeline of a single and tiny range of manipulated frequency. Humans working with 'smart' technology or knocking rocks together in caves is only a timeline appearing to operate within the human frequency band. Expanded awareness and the knowledge it holds have always been there whether the era be Stone Age or computer age. We can only access that knowledge by opening ourselves to its frequency which the five-sense prison cell is designed to stop us doing. Gates, Fauci, Whitty, Vallance, Zuckerberg, Brin, Page, Wojcicki, Bezos, and all the others behind the 'Covid' hoax clearly have a long wait before their range of frequency can make that connection given that an open heart is



crucial to that as we shall see. Instead of accessing knowledge directly through expanded awareness it is given to Cult operatives by the secret society networks of the Cult where it has been passed on over thousands of years outside the public arena. Expanded realms of consciousness is where great artists, composers and writers find their inspiration and where truth awaits anyone open enough to connect with it. We need to go there fast.

## **Archon hijack**

A fifth of the Nag Hammadi texts describe the existence and manipulation of the Archons led by a 'Chief Archon' they call 'Yaldabaoth', or the 'Demiurge', and this is the Christian 'Devil', 'Satan', 'Lucifer', and his demons. Archons in Biblical symbolism are the 'fallen ones' which are also referred to as fallen angels after the angels expelled from heaven according to the Abrahamic religions of Judaism, Christianity and Islam. These angels are claimed to tempt humans to 'sin' ongoing and you will see how accurate that symbolism is during the rest of the book. The theme of 'original sin' is related to the 'Fall' when Adam and Eve were 'tempted by the serpent' and fell from a state of innocence and 'obedience' (connection) with God into a state of disobedience (disconnection). The Fall is said to have brought sin into the world and corrupted everything including human nature. Yaldabaoth, the 'Lord Archon', is described by Gnostics as a 'counterfeit spirit', 'The Blind One', 'The Blind God', and 'The Foolish One'. The Jewish name for Yaldabaoth in Talmudic writings is Samael which translates as 'Poison of God', or 'Blindness of God'. You see the parallels. Yaldabaoth in Islamic belief is the Muslim Jinn devil known as Shaytan – Shaytan is Satan as the same themes are found all over the world in every religion and culture. The 'Lord God' of the Old Testament is the 'Lord Archon' of Gnostic manuscripts and that's why he's such a bloodthirsty bastard. Satan is known by Christians as 'the Demon of Demons' and Gnostics called Yaldabaoth the 'Archon of Archons'. Both are known as 'The Deceiver'. We are talking about the same 'bloke' for sure and these common themes

using different names, storylines and symbolism tell a common tale of the human plight.

Archons are referred to in Nag Hammadi documents as mind parasites, inverters, guards, gatekeepers, detainers, judges, pitiless ones and deceivers. The 'Covid' hoax alone is a glaring example of all these things. The Biblical 'God' is so different in the Old and New Testaments because they are not describing the same phenomenon. The vindictive, angry, hate-filled, 'God' of the Old Testament, known as Yahweh, is Yaldabaoth who is depicted in Cult-dictated popular culture as the 'Dark Lord', 'Lord of Time', Lord (Darth) Vader and Dormammu, the evil ruler of the 'Dark Dimension' trying to take over the 'Earth Dimension' in the Marvel comic movie, *Dr Strange*. Yaldabaoth is both the Old Testament 'god' and the Biblical 'Satan'. Gnostics referred to Yaldabaoth as the 'Great Architect of the Universe' and the Cult-controlled Freemason network calls their god 'the 'Great Architect of the Universe' (also Grand Architect). The 'Great Architect' Yaldabaoth is symbolised by the Cult as the all-seeing eye at the top of the pyramid on the Great Seal of the United States and the dollar bill. Archon is encoded in *arch*-itect as it is in *arch*-angels and *arch*-bishops. All religions have the theme of a force for good and force for evil in some sort of spiritual war and there is a reason for that – the theme is true. The Cult and its non-human masters are quite happy for this to circulate. They present themselves as the force for good fighting evil when they are really the force of evil (absence of love). The whole foundation of Cult modus operandi is inversion. They promote themselves as a force for good and anyone challenging them in pursuit of peace, love, fairness, truth and justice is condemned as a satanic force for evil. This has been the game plan throughout history whether the Church of Rome inquisitions of non-believers or 'conspiracy theorists' and 'anti-vaxxers' of today. The technique is the same whatever the timeline era.

**Yaldabaoth is revolting (true)**

Yaldabaoth and the Archons are said to have revolted against God with Yaldabaoth claiming to *be* God – the *All That Is*. The Old Testament ‘God’ (Yaldabaoth) demanded to be worshipped as such: ‘*I am the LORD, and there is none else, there is no God beside me*’ (Isaiah 45:5). I have quoted in other books a man who said he was the unofficial son of the late Baron Philippe de Rothschild of the Mouton-Rothschild wine producing estates in France who died in 1988 and he told me about the Rothschild ‘revolt from God’. The man said he was given the name Phillip Eugene de Rothschild and we shared long correspondence many years ago while he was living under another identity. He said that he was conceived through ‘occult incest’ which (within the Cult) was ‘normal and to be admired’. ‘Phillip’ told me about his experience attending satanic rituals with rich and famous people whom he names and you can see them and the wider background to Cult Satanism in my other books starting with *The Biggest Secret*. Cult rituals are interactions with Archontic ‘gods’. ‘Phillip’ described Baron Philippe de Rothschild as ‘a master Satanist and hater of God’ and he used the same term ‘revolt from God’ associated with Yaldabaoth/Satan/Lucifer/the Devil in describing the Sabbatian Rothschild dynasty. ‘I played a key role in my family’s revolt from God’, he said. That role was to infiltrate in classic Sabbatian style the Christian Church, but eventually he escaped the mind-prison to live another life. The Cult has been targeting religion in a plan to make worship of the Archons the global one-world religion. Infiltration of Satanism into modern ‘culture’, especially among the young, through music videos, stage shows and other means, is all part of this.

Nag Hammadi texts describe Yaldabaoth and the Archons in their prime form as energy – consciousness – and say they can take form if they choose in the same way that consciousness takes form as a human. Yaldabaoth is called ‘formless’ and represents a deeply inverted, distorted and chaotic state of consciousness which seeks to attach to humans and turn them into a likeness of itself in an attempt at assimilation. For that to happen it has to manipulate

humans into low frequency mental and emotional states that match its own. Archons can certainly appear in human form and this is the origin of the psychopathic personality. The energetic distortion Gnostics called Yaldabaoth is psychopathy. When psychopathic Archons take human form that human will be a psychopath as an expression of Yaldabaoth consciousness. Cult psychopaths are Archons in human form. The principle is the same as that portrayed in the 2009 *Avatar* movie when the American military travelled to a fictional Earth-like moon called Pandora in the Alpha Centauri star system to infiltrate a society of blue people, or Na'vi, by hiding within bodies that looked like the Na'vi. Archons posing as humans have a particular hybrid information field, part human, part Archon, (the ancient 'demigods') which processes information in a way that manifests behaviour to match their psychopathic evil, lack of empathy and compassion, and stops them being influenced by the empathy, compassion and love that a fully-human information field is capable of expressing. Cult bloodlines interbreed, be they royalty or dark suits, for this reason and you have their obsession with incest. Interbreeding with full-blown humans would dilute the Archontic energy field that guarantees psychopathy in its representatives in the human realm.

Gnostic writings say the main non-human forms that Archons take are *serpentine* (what I have called for decades 'reptilian' amid unbounded ridicule from the Archontically-programmed) and what Gnostics describe as 'an unborn baby or foetus with grey skin and dark, unmoving eyes'. This is an excellent representation of the ET 'Greys' of UFO folklore which large numbers of people claim to have seen and been abducted by – Zulu shaman Credo Mutwa among them. I agree with those that believe in extraterrestrial or interdimensional visitations today and for thousands of years past. No wonder with their advanced knowledge and technological capability they were perceived and worshipped as gods for technological and other 'miracles' they appeared to perform. Imagine someone arriving in a culture disconnected from the modern world with a smartphone and computer. They would be

seen as a 'god' capable of 'miracles'. The Renegade Mind, however, wants to know the source of everything and not only the way that source manifests as human or non-human. In the same way that a Renegade Mind seeks the original source material for the 'Covid virus' to see if what is claimed is true. The original source of Archons in form is consciousness – the distorted state of consciousness known to Gnostics as Yaldabaoth.

### **'Revolt from God' is energetic disconnection**

Where I am going next will make a lot of sense of religious texts and ancient legends relating to 'Satan', Lucifer' and the 'gods'. Gnostic descriptions sync perfectly with the themes of my own research over the years in how they describe a consciousness distortion seeking to impose itself on human consciousness. I've referred to the core of infinite awareness in previous books as Infinite Awareness in Awareness of Itself. By that I mean a level of awareness that knows that it is all awareness and is aware of all awareness. From here comes the frequency of love in its true sense and balance which is what love is on one level – the balance of all forces into a single whole called Oneness and Isness. The more we disconnect from this state of love that many call 'God' the constituent parts of that Oneness start to unravel and express themselves as a part and not a whole. They become individualised as intellect, mind, selfishness, hatred, envy, desire for power over others, and such like. This is not a problem in the greater scheme in that 'God', the *All That Is*, can experience all these possibilities through different expressions of itself including humans. What we as expressions of the whole experience the *All That Is* experiences. We are the *All That Is* experiencing itself. As we withdraw from that state of Oneness we disconnect from its influence and things can get very unpleasant and very stupid. Archontic consciousness is at the extreme end of that. It has so disconnected from the influence of Oneness that it has become an inversion of unity and love, an inversion of everything, an inversion of life itself. Evil is appropriately live written backwards. Archontic consciousness is obsessed with death, an inversion of life,

and so its manifestations in Satanism are obsessed with death. They use inverted symbols in their rituals such as the inverted pentagram and cross. Sabbatians as Archontic consciousness incarnate invert Judaism and every other religion and culture they infiltrate. They seek disunity and chaos and they fear unity and harmony as they fear love like garlic to a vampire. As a result the Cult, Archons incarnate, act with such evil, psychopathy and lack of empathy and compassion disconnected as they are from the source of love. How could Bill Gates and the rest of the Archontic psychopaths do what they have to human society in the 'Covid' era with all the death, suffering and destruction involved and have no emotional consequence for the impact on others? Now you know. Why have Zuckerberg, Brin, Page, Wojcicki and company callously censored information warning about the dangers of the 'vaccine' while thousands have been dying and having severe, sometimes life-changing reactions? Now you know. Why have Tedros, Fauci, Whitty, Vallance and their like around the world been using case and death figures they're aware are fraudulent to justify lockdowns and all the deaths and destroyed lives that have come from that? Now you know. Why did Christian Drosten produce and promote a 'testing' protocol that he knew couldn't test for infectious disease which led to a global human catastrophe. Now you know. The Archontic mind doesn't give a shit ([Fig 17](#)). I personally think that Gates and major Cult insiders are a form of AI cyborg that the Archons want humans to become.



Figure 17: Artist Neil Hague's version of the 'Covid' hierarchy.

## Human batteries

A state of such inversion does have its consequences, however. The level of disconnection from the Source of All means that you withdraw from that source of energetic sustenance and creativity. This means that you have to find your own supply of energetic power and it has – us. When the Morpheus character in the first *Matrix* movie held up a battery he spoke a profound truth when he said: 'The Matrix is a computer-generated dream world built to keep us under control in order to change the human being into one of

these.’ The statement was true in all respects. We do live in a technologically-generated virtual reality simulation (more very shortly) and we have been manipulated to be an energy source for Archontic consciousness. The Disney-Pixar animated movie *Monsters, Inc.* in 2001 symbolised the dynamic when monsters in their world had no energy source and they would enter the human world to terrify children in their beds, catch the child’s scream, terror (low-vibrational frequencies), and take that energy back to power the monster world. The lead character you might remember was a single giant eye and the symbolism of the Cult’s all-seeing eye was obvious. Every thought and emotion is broadcast as a frequency unique to that thought and emotion. Feelings of love and joy, empathy and compassion, are high, quick, frequencies while fear, depression, anxiety, suffering and hate are low, slow, dense frequencies. Which kind do you think Archontic consciousness can connect with and absorb? In such a low and dense frequency state there’s no way it can connect with the energy of love and joy. Archons can only feed off energy compatible with their own frequency and they and their Cult agents want to delete the human world of love and joy and manipulate the transmission of low vibrational frequencies through low-vibrational human mental and emotional states. *We are their energy source.* Wars are energetic banquets to the Archons – a world war even more so – and think how much low-frequency mental and emotional energy has been generated from the consequences for humanity of the ‘Covid’ hoax orchestrated by Archons incarnate like Gates.

The ancient practice of human sacrifice ‘to the gods’, continued in secret today by the Cult, is based on the same principle. ‘The gods’ are Archontic consciousness in different forms and the sacrifice is induced into a state of intense terror to generate the energy the Archontic frequency can absorb. Incarnate Archons in the ritual drink the blood which contains an adrenaline they crave which floods into the bloodstream when people are terrorised. Most of the sacrifices, ancient and modern, are children and the theme of ‘sacrificing young virgins to the gods’ is just code for children. They



have a particular pre-puberty energy that Archons want more than anything and the energy of the young in general is their target. The California Department of Education wants students to chant the names of Aztec gods (Archontic gods) once worshipped in human sacrifice rituals in a curriculum designed to encourage them to 'challenge racist, bigoted, discriminatory, imperialist/colonial beliefs', join 'social movements that struggle for social justice', and 'build new possibilities for a post-racist, post-systemic racism society'. It's the usual Woke crap that inverts racism and calls it anti-racism. In this case solidarity with 'indigenous tribes' is being used as an excuse to chant the names of 'gods' to which people were sacrificed (and still are in secret). What an example of Woke's inability to see beyond black and white, us and them, They condemn the colonisation of these tribal cultures by Europeans (quite right), but those cultures sacrificing people including children to their 'gods', and mass murdering untold numbers as the Aztecs did, is just fine. One chant is to the Aztec god Tezcatlipoca who had a man sacrificed to him in the 5th month of the Aztec calendar. His heart was cut out and he was eaten. Oh, that's okay then. Come on children ... after three ... Other sacrificial 'gods' for the young to chant their allegiance include Quetzalcoatl, Huitzilopochtli and Xipe Totec. The curriculum says that 'chants, affirmations, and energizers can be used to bring the class together, build unity around ethnic studies principles and values, and to reinvigorate the class following a lesson that may be emotionally taxing or even when student engagement may appear to be low'. Well, that's the cover story, anyway. Chanting and mantras are the repetition of a particular frequency generated from the vocal cords and chanting the names of these Archontic 'gods' tunes you into their frequency. That is the last thing you want when it allows for energetic synchronisation, attachment and perceptual influence. Initiates chant the names of their 'Gods' in their rituals for this very reason.

## **Vampires of the Woke**

Paedophilia is another way that Archons absorb the energy of children. Paedophiles possessed by Archontic consciousness are used as the conduit during sexual abuse for discarnate Archons to vampire the energy of the young they desire so much. Stupendous numbers of children disappear every year never to be seen again although you would never know from the media. Imagine how much low-vibrational energy has been generated by children during the 'Covid' hoax when so many have become depressed and psychologically destroyed to the point of killing themselves. Shocking numbers of children are now taken by the state from loving parents to be handed to others. I can tell you from long experience of researching this since 1996 that many end up with paedophiles and assets of the Cult through corrupt and Cult-owned social services which in the reframing era has hired many psychopaths and emotionless automatons to do the job. Children are even stolen to order using spurious reasons to take them by the corrupt and secret (because they're corrupt) 'family courts'. I have written in detail in other books, starting with *The Biggest Secret* in 1997, about the ubiquitous connections between the political, corporate, government, intelligence and military elites (Cult operatives) and Satanism and paedophilia. If you go deep enough both networks have an interlocking leadership. The Woke mentality has been developed by the Cult for many reasons: To promote almost every aspect of its agenda; to hijack the traditional political left and turn it fascist; to divide and rule; and to target agenda pushbackers. But there are other reasons which relate to what I am describing here. How many happy and joyful Wokers do you ever see especially at the extreme end? They are a mental and psychological mess consumed by emotional stress and constantly emotionally cocked for the next explosion of indignation at someone referring to a female as a female. They are walking, talking, batteries as Morpheus might say emitting frequencies which both enslave them in low-vibrational bubbles of perceptual limitation and feed the Archons. Add to this the hatred claimed to be love; fascism claimed to 'anti-fascism', racism claimed to be 'anti-racism';

exclusion claimed to inclusion; and the abuse-filled Internet trolling. You have a purpose-built Archontic energy system with not a wind turbine in sight and all founded on Archontic *inversion*. We have whole generations now manipulated to serve the Archons with their actions and energy. They will be doing so their entire adult lives unless they snap out of their Archon-induced trance. Is it really a surprise that Cult billionaires and corporations put so much money their way? Where is the energy of joy and laughter, including laughing at yourself which is confirmation of your own emotional security? Mark Twain said: 'The human race has one really effective weapon, and that is laughter.' We must use it all the time. Woke has destroyed comedy because it has no humour, no joy, sense of irony, or self-deprecation. Its energy is dense and intense. *Mmmmm*, lunch says the Archontic frequency. Rudolf Steiner (1861-1925) was the Austrian philosopher and famous esoteric thinker who established Waldorf education or Steiner schools to treat children like unique expressions of consciousness and not minds to be programmed with the perceptions determined by authority. I'd been writing about this energy vampiring for decades when I was sent in 2016 a quote by Steiner. He was spot on:

There are beings in the spiritual realms for whom anxiety and fear emanating from human beings offer welcome food. When humans have no anxiety and fear, then these creatures starve. If fear and anxiety radiates from people and they break out in panic, then these creatures find welcome nutrition and they become more and more powerful. These beings are hostile towards humanity. Everything that feeds on negative feelings, on anxiety, fear and superstition, despair or doubt, are in reality hostile forces in super-sensible worlds, launching cruel attacks on human beings, while they are being fed ... These are exactly the feelings that belong to contemporary culture and materialism; because it estranges people from the spiritual world, it is especially suited to evoke hopelessness and fear of the unknown in people, thereby calling up the above mentioned hostile forces against them.

Pause for a moment from this perspective and reflect on what has happened in the world since the start of 2020. Not only will pennies drop, but billion dollar bills. We see the same theme from Don Juan Matus, a Yaqui Indian shaman in Mexico and the information source for Peruvian-born writer, Carlos Castaneda, who wrote a series of

books from the 1960s to 1990s. Don Juan described the force manipulating human society and his name for the Archons was the predator:

We have a predator that came from the depths of the cosmos and took over the rule of our lives. Human beings are its prisoners. The predator is our lord and master. It has rendered us docile, helpless. If we want to protest, it suppresses our protest. If we want to act independently, it demands that we don't do so ... indeed we are held prisoner!

They took us over because we are food to them, and they squeeze us mercilessly because we are their sustenance. Just as we rear chickens in coops, the predators rear us in human coops, humaneros. Therefore, their food is always available to them.

Different cultures, different eras, same recurring theme.

## **The 'ennoia' dilemma**

Nag Hammadi Gnostic manuscripts say that Archon consciousness has no 'ennoia'. This is directly translated as 'intentionality', but I'll use the term 'creative imagination'. The *All That Is* in awareness of itself is the source of all creativity – all possibility – and the more disconnected you are from that source the more you are subsequently denied 'creative imagination'. Given that Archon consciousness is almost entirely disconnected it severely lacks creativity and has to rely on far more mechanical processes of thought and exploit the creative potential of those that do have 'ennoia'. You can see cases of this throughout human society. Archon consciousness almost entirely dominates the global banking system and if we study how that system works you will appreciate what I mean. Banks manifest 'money' out of nothing by issuing lines of 'credit' which is 'money' that has never, does not, and will never exist except in theory. It's a confidence trick. If you think 'credit' figures-on-a-screen 'money' is worth anything you accept it as payment. If you don't then the whole system collapses through lack of confidence in the value of that 'money'. Archontic bankers with no 'ennoia' are 'lending' 'money' that doesn't exist to humans that *do* have creativity – those that have the inspired ideas and create businesses and products. Archon banking feeds off human creativity

which it controls through 'money' creation and debt. Humans have the creativity and Archons exploit that for their own benefit and control while having none themselves. Archon Internet platforms like Facebook claim joint copyright of everything that creative users post and while Archontic minds like Zuckerberg may officially head that company it will be human creatives on the staff that provide the creative inspiration. When you have limitless 'money' you can then buy other companies established by creative humans. Witness the acquisition record of Facebook, Google and their like. Survey the Archon-controlled music industry and you see non-creative dark suit executives making their fortune from the human creativity of their artists. The cases are endless. Research the history of people like Gates and Zuckerberg and how their empires were built on exploiting the creativity of others. Archon minds cannot create out of nothing, but they are skilled (because they have to be) in what Gnostic texts call 'countermimicry'. They can imitate, but not innovate. Sabbatians trawl the creativity of others through backdoors they install in computer systems through their cybersecurity systems. Archon-controlled China is globally infamous for stealing intellectual property and I remember how Hong Kong, now part of China, became notorious for making counterfeit copies of the creativity of others – 'countermimicry'. With the now pervasive and all-seeing surveillance systems able to infiltrate any computer you can appreciate the potential for Archons to vampire the creativity of humans. Author John Lamb Lash wrote in his book about the Nag Hammadi texts, *Not In His Image*:

Although they cannot originate anything, because they lack the divine factor of ennoia (intentionality), Archons can imitate with a vengeance. Their expertise is simulation (HAL, virtual reality). The Demiurge [Yaldabaoth] fashions a heaven world copied from the fractal patterns [of the original] ... His construction is celestial kitsch, like the fake Italianate villa of a Mafia don complete with militant angels to guard every portal.

This brings us to something that I have been speaking about since the turn of the millennium. Our reality is a simulation; a virtual reality that we think is real. No, I'm not kidding.

## **Human reality? Well, virtually**

I had pondered for years about whether our reality is 'real' or some kind of construct. I remembered being immensely affected on a visit as a small child in the late 1950s to the then newly-opened Planetarium on the Marylebone Road in London which is now closed and part of the adjacent Madame Tussauds wax museum. It was in the middle of the day, but when the lights went out there was the night sky projected in the Planetarium's domed ceiling and it appeared to be so real. The experience never left me and I didn't know why until around the turn of the millennium when I became certain that our 'night sky' and entire reality is a projection, a virtual reality, akin to the illusory world portrayed in the *Matrix* movies. I looked at the sky one day in this period and it appeared to me like the domed roof of the Planetarium. The release of the first *Matrix* movie in 1999 also provided a synchronistic and perfect visual representation of where my mind had been going for a long time. I hadn't come across the Gnostic Nag Hammadi texts then. When I did years later the correlation was once again astounding. As I read Gnostic accounts from 1,600 years and more earlier it was clear that they were describing the same simulation phenomenon. They tell how the Yaldabaoth 'Demiurge' and Archons created a 'bad copy' of original reality to rule over all that were captured by its illusions and the body was a prison to trap consciousness in the 'bad copy' fake reality. Read how Gnostics describe the 'bad copy' and update that to current times and they are referring to what we would call today a virtual reality simulation.

Author John Lamb Lash said 'the Demiurge fashions a heaven world copied from the fractal patterns' of the original through expertise in 'HAL' or virtual reality simulation. Fractal patterns are part of the energetic information construct of our reality, a sort of blueprint. If these patterns were copied in computer terms it would indeed give you a copy of a 'natural' reality in a non-natural frequency and digital form. The principle is the same as making a copy of a website. The original website still exists, but now you can change the copy version to make it whatever you like and it can

become very different to the original website. Archons have done this with our reality, a *synthetic* copy of prime reality that still exists beyond the frequency walls of the simulation. Trapped within the illusions of this synthetic Matrix, however, were and are human consciousness and other expressions of prime reality and this is why the Archons via the Cult are seeking to make the human body synthetic and give us synthetic AI minds to complete the job of turning the entire reality synthetic including what we perceive to be the natural world. To quote Kurzweil: 'Nanobots will infuse all the matter around us with information. Rocks, trees, everything will become these intelligent creatures.' Yes, *synthetic* 'creatures' just as 'Covid' and other genetically-manipulating 'vaccines' are designed to make the human body synthetic. From this perspective it is obvious why Archons and their Cult are so desperate to infuse synthetic material into every human with their 'Covid' scam.

### **Let there be (electromagnetic) light**

Yaldabaoth, the force that created the simulation, or Matrix, makes sense of the Gnostic reference to 'The Great Architect' and its use by Cult Freemasonry as the name of its deity. The designer of the Matrix in the movies is called 'The Architect' and that trilogy is jam-packed with symbolism relating to these subjects. I have contended for years that the angry Old Testament God (Yaldabaoth) is the 'God' being symbolically 'quoted' in the opening of Genesis as 'creating the world'. This is not the creation of prime reality – it's the creation of the *simulation*. The Genesis 'God' says: 'Let there be Light: and there was light.' But what is this 'Light'? I have said for decades that the speed of light (186,000 miles per second) is not the fastest speed possible as claimed by mainstream science and is in fact the frequency walls or outer limits of the Matrix. You can't have a fastest or slowest anything within all possibility when everything is possible. The human body is encoded to operate within the speed of light or *within the simulation* and thus we see only the tiny frequency band of visible *light*. Near-death experiencers who perceive reality outside the body during temporary 'death' describe a very different

form of light and this is supported by the Nag Hammadi texts. Prime reality beyond the simulation ('Upper Aeons' to the Gnostics) is described as a realm of incredible beauty, bliss, love and harmony – a realm of 'watery light' that is so powerful 'there are no shadows'. Our false reality of Archon control, which Gnostics call the 'Lower Aeons', is depicted as a realm with a different kind of 'light' and described in terms of chaos, 'Hell', 'the Abyss' and 'Outer Darkness', where trapped souls are tormented and manipulated by demons (relate that to the 'Covid' hoax alone). The watery light theme can be found in near-death accounts and it is not the same as *simulation* 'light' which is electromagnetic or radiation light within the speed of light – the 'Lower Aeons'. Simulation 'light' is the 'luminous fire' associated by Gnostics with the Archons. The Bible refers to Yaldabaoth as 'that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world' (Revelation 12:9). I think that making a simulated copy of prime reality ('countermimicry') and changing it dramatically while all the time manipulating humanity to believe it to be real could probably meet the criteria of deceiving the whole world. Then we come to the Cult god Lucifer – the *Light Bringer*. Lucifer is symbolic of Yaldabaoth, the bringer of radiation light that forms the bad copy simulation within the speed of light. 'He' is symbolised by the lighted torch held by the Statue of Liberty and in the name 'Illuminati'. Sabbatian-Frankism declares that Lucifer is the true god and Lucifer is the real god of Freemasonry honoured as their 'Great or Grand Architect of the Universe' (simulation).

I would emphasise, too, the way Archontic technologically-generated luminous fire of radiation has deluged our environment since I was a kid in the 1950s and changed the nature of The Field with which we constantly interact. Through that interaction technological radiation is changing us. The Smart Grid is designed to operate with immense levels of communication power with 5G expanding across the world and 6G, 7G, in the process of development. Radiation is the simulation and the Archontic manipulation system. Why wouldn't the Archon Cult wish to unleash radiation upon us to an ever-greater extreme to form



Kurzweil's 'cloud'? The plan for a synthetic human is related to the need to cope with levels of radiation beyond even anything we've seen so far. Biological humans would not survive the scale of radiation they have in their script. The Smart Grid is a technological sub-reality within the technological simulation to further disconnect five-sense perception from expanded consciousness. It's a technological prison of the mind.

### **Infusing the 'spirit of darkness'**

A recurring theme in religion and native cultures is the manipulation of human genetics by a non-human force and most famously recorded as the biblical 'sons of god' (the gods plural in the original) who interbred with the daughters of men. The Nag Hammadi *Apocryphon of John* tells the same story this way:

He [Yaldabaoth] sent his angels [Archons/demons] to the daughters of men, that they might take some of them for themselves and raise offspring for their enjoyment. And at first they did not succeed. When they had no success, they gathered together again and they made a plan together ... And the angels changed themselves in their likeness into the likeness of their mates, filling them with the spirit of darkness, which they had mixed for them, and with evil ... And they took women and begot children out of the darkness according to the likeness of their spirit.

Possession when a discarnate entity takes over a human body is an age-old theme and continues today. It's very real and I've seen it. Satanic and secret society rituals can create an energetic environment in which entities can attach to initiates and I've heard many stories of how people have changed their personality after being initiated even into lower levels of the Freemasons. I have been inside three Freemasonic temples, one at a public open day and two by just walking in when there was no one around to stop me. They were in Ryde, the town where I live, Birmingham, England, when I was with a group, and Boston, Massachusetts. They all felt the same energetically – dark, dense, low-vibrational and sinister. Demonic attachment can happen while the initiate has no idea what is going on. To them it's just a ritual to get in the Masons and do a bit of good

business. In the far more extreme rituals of Satanism human possession is even more powerful and they are designed to make possession possible. The hierarchy of the Cult is dictated by the power and perceived status of the possessing Archon. In this way the Archon hierarchy becomes the Cult hierarchy. Once the entity has attached it can influence perception and behaviour and if it attaches to the extreme then so much of its energy (information) infuses into the body information field that the hologram starts to reflect the nature of the possessing entity. This is the *Exorcist* movie type of possession when facial features change and it's known as shapeshifting. Islam's Jinn are said to be invisible tricksters who change shape, 'whisper', confuse and take human form. These are all traits of the Archons and other versions of the same phenomenon. Extreme possession could certainly infuse the 'spirit of darkness' into a partner during sex as the Nag Hammadi texts appear to describe. Such an infusion can change genetics which is also energetic information. Human genetics is information and the 'spirit of darkness' is information. Mix one with the other and change must happen. Islam has the concept of a 'Jinn baby' through possession of the mother and by Jinn taking human form. There are many ways that human genetics can be changed and remember that Archons have been aware all along of advanced techniques to do this. What is being done in human society today – and far more – was known about by Archons at the time of the 'fallen ones' and their other versions described in religions and cultures.

Archons and their human-world Cult are obsessed with genetics as we see today and they know this dictates how information is processed into perceived reality during a human life. They needed to produce a human form that would decode the simulation and this is symbolically known as 'Adam and Eve' who left the 'garden' (prime reality) and 'fell' into Matrix reality. The simulation is not a 'physical' construct (there is no 'physical'); it is a source of information. Think Wi-Fi again. The simulation is an energetic field encoded with information and body-brain systems are designed to decode that information encoded in wave or frequency form which

is transmitted to the brain as electrical signals. These are decoded by the brain to construct our sense of reality – an illusory ‘physical’ world that only exists in the brain or the mind. Virtual reality games mimic this process using the same sensory decoding system. Information is fed to the senses to decode a virtual reality that can appear so real, but isn’t (Figs 18 and 19). Some scientists believe – and I agree with them – that what we perceive as ‘physical’ reality only exists when we are looking or observing. The act of perception or focus triggers the decoding systems which turn waveform information into holographic reality. When we are not observing something our reality reverts from a holographic state to a waveform state. This relates to the same principle as a falling tree not making a noise unless someone is there to hear it or decode it. The concept makes sense from the simulation perspective. A computer is not decoding all the information in a Wi-Fi field all the time and only decodes or brings into reality on the screen that part of Wi-Fi that it’s decoding – focusing upon – at that moment.



**Figure 18:** Virtual reality technology ‘hacks’ into the body’s five-sense decoding system.



**Figure 19:** The result can be experienced as very ‘real’.

Interestingly, Professor Donald Hoffman at the Department of Cognitive Sciences at the University of California, Irvine, says that our experienced reality is like a computer interface that shows us only the level with which we interact while hiding all that exists beyond it: 'Evolution shaped us with a user interface that hides the truth. Nothing that we see is the truth – the very language of space and time and objects is the wrong language to describe reality.' He is correct in what he says on so many levels. Space and time are not a universal reality. They are a phenomenon of decoded *simulation* reality as part of the process of enslaving our sense of reality. Near-death experiencers report again and again how space and time did not exist as we perceive them once they were free of the body – body decoding systems. You can appreciate from this why Archons and their Cult are so desperate to entrap human attention in the five senses where we are in the Matrix and of the Matrix. Opening your mind to expanded states of awareness takes you beyond the information confines of the simulation and you become aware of knowledge and insights denied to you before. This is what we call 'awakening' – *awakening from the Matrix* – and in the final chapter I will relate this to current events.

## **Where are the 'aliens'?**

A simulation would explain the so-called 'Fermi Paradox' named after Italian physicist Enrico Fermi (1901-1954) who created the first nuclear reactor. He considered the question of why there is such a lack of extraterrestrial activity when there are so many stars and planets in an apparently vast universe; but what if the night sky that we see, or think we do, is a simulated projection as I say? If you control the simulation and your aim is to hold humanity fast in essential ignorance would you want other forms of life including advanced life coming and going sharing information with humanity? Or would you want them to believe they were isolated and apparently alone? Themes of human isolation and apartness are common whether they be the perception of a lifeless universe or the fascist isolation laws of the 'Covid' era. Paradoxically the very

existence of a simulation means that we are not alone when some force had to construct it. My view is that experiences that people have reported all over the world for centuries with Reptilians and Grey entities are Archon phenomena as Nag Hammadi texts describe; and that benevolent 'alien' interactions are non-human groups that come in and out of the simulation by overcoming Archon attempts to keep them out. It should be highlighted, too, that Reptilians and Greys are obsessed with *genetics* and *technology* as related by cultural accounts and those who say they have been abducted by them. Technology is their way of overcoming some of the limitations in their creative potential and our technology-driven and controlled human society of today is *archetypical* Archon-Reptilian-Grey modus operandi. Technocracy is really *Archontocracy*. The Universe does not have to be as big as it appears with a simulation. There is no space or distance only information decoded into holographic reality. What we call 'space' is only the absence of holographic 'objects' and that 'space' is The Field of energetic information which connects everything into a single whole. The same applies with the artificially-generated information field of the simulation. The Universe is not big or small as a physical reality. It is decoded information, that's all, and its perceived size is decided by the way the simulation is encoded to make it appear. The entire night sky as we perceive it only exists in our brain and so where are those 'millions of light years'? The 'stars' on the ceiling of the Planetarium looked a vast distance away.

There's another point to mention about 'aliens'. I have been highlighting since the 1990s the plan to stage a fake 'alien invasion' to justify the centralisation of global power and a world military. Nazi scientist Werner von Braun, who was taken to America by Operation Paperclip after World War Two to help found NASA, told his American assistant Dr Carol Rosin about the Cult agenda when he knew he was dying in 1977. Rosin said that he told her about a sequence that would lead to total human control by a one-world government. This included threats from terrorism, rogue nations, meteors and asteroids before finally an 'alien invasion'. All of these

things, von Braun said, would be bogus and what I would refer to as a No-Problem-Reaction-Solution. Keep this in mind when 'the aliens are coming' is the new mantra. The aliens are not coming – they are *already here* and they have infiltrated human society while looking human. French-Canadian investigative journalist Serge Monast said in 1994 that he had uncovered a NASA/military operation called Project Blue Beam which fits with what Werner von Braun predicted. Monast died of a 'heart attack' in 1996 the day after he was arrested and spent a night in prison. He was 51. He said Blue Beam was a plan to stage an alien invasion that would include religious figures beamed holographically into the sky as part of a global manipulation to usher in a 'new age' of worshipping what I would say is the Cult 'god' Yaldabaoth in a one-world religion. Fake holographic asteroids are also said to be part of the plan which again syncs with von Braun. How could you stage an illusory threat from asteroids unless they were holographic inserts? This is pretty straightforward given the advanced technology outside the public arena and the fact that our 'physical' reality is holographic anyway. Information fields would be projected and we would decode them into the illusion of a 'physical' asteroid. If they can sell a global 'pandemic' with a 'virus' that doesn't exist what will humans not believe if government and media tell them?

All this is particularly relevant as I write with the Pentagon planning to release in June, 2021, information about 'UFO sightings'. I have been following the UFO story since the early 1990s and the common theme throughout has been government and military denials and cover up. More recently, however, the Pentagon has suddenly become more talkative and apparently open with Air Force pilot radar images released of unexplained craft moving and changing direction at speeds well beyond anything believed possible with human technology. Then, in March, 2021, former Director of National Intelligence John Ratcliffe said a Pentagon report months later in June would reveal a great deal of information about UFO sightings unknown to the public. He said the report would have 'massive implications'. The order to do this was included bizarrely

in a \$2.3 trillion 'coronavirus' relief and government funding bill passed by the Trump administration at the end of 2020. I would add some serious notes of caution here. I have been pointing out since the 1990s that the US military and intelligence networks have long had craft – 'flying saucers' or anti-gravity craft – which any observer would take to be extraterrestrial in origin. Keeping this knowledge from the public allows craft flown by *humans* to be perceived as alien visitations. I am not saying that 'aliens' do not exist. I would be the last one to say that, but we have to be streetwise here. President Ronald Reagan told the UN General Assembly in 1987: 'I occasionally think how quickly our differences worldwide would vanish if we were facing an alien threat from outside this world.' That's the idea. Unite against a common 'enemy' with a common purpose behind your 'saviour force' (the Cult) as this age-old technique of mass manipulation goes global.

### **Science moves this way ...**

I could find only one other person who was discussing the simulation hypothesis publicly when I concluded it was real. This was Nick Bostrom, a Swedish-born philosopher at the University of Oxford, who has explored for many years the possibility that human reality is a computer simulation although his version and mine are not the same. Today the simulation and holographic reality hypothesis have increasingly entered the scientific mainstream. Well, the more open-minded mainstream, that is. Here are a few of the ever-gathering examples. American nuclear physicist Silas Beane led a team of physicists at the University of Bonn in Germany pursuing the question of whether we live in a simulation. They concluded that we probably do and it was likely based on a lattice of cubes. They found that cosmic rays align with that specific pattern. The team highlighted the Greisen–Zatsepin–Kuzmin (GZK) limit which refers to cosmic ray particle interaction with cosmic background radiation that creates an apparent boundary for cosmic ray particles. They say in a paper entitled 'Constraints on the Universe as a Numerical Simulation' that this 'pattern of constraint' is exactly what you

would find with a computer simulation. They also made the point that a simulation would create its own 'laws of physics' that would limit possibility. I've been making the same point for decades that the *perceived* laws of physics relate only to this reality, or what I would later call the simulation. When designers write codes to create computer and virtual reality games they are the equivalent of the laws of physics for that game. Players interact within the limitations laid out by the coding. In the same way those who wrote the codes for the simulation decided the laws of physics that would apply. These can be overridden by expanded states of consciousness, but not by those enslaved in only five-sense awareness where simulation codes rule. Overriding the codes is what people call 'miracles'. They are not. They are bypassing the encoded limits of the simulation. A population caught in simulation perception would have no idea that this was their plight. As the Bonn paper said: 'Like a prisoner in a pitch-black cell we would not be able to see the "walls" of our prison,' That's true if people remain mesmerised by the five senses. Open to expanded awareness and those walls become very clear. The main one is the speed of light.

American theoretical physicist James Gates is another who has explored the simulation question and found considerable evidence to support the idea. Gates was Professor of Physics at the University of Maryland, Director of The Center for String and Particle Theory, and on Barack Obama's Council of Advisors on Science and Technology. He and his team found *computer codes* of digital data embedded in the fabric of our reality. They relate to on-off electrical charges of 1 and 0 in the binary system used by computers. 'We have no idea what they are doing there', Gates said. They found within the energetic fabric mathematical sequences known as error-correcting codes or block codes that 'reboot' data to its original state or 'default settings' when something knocks it out of sync. Gates was asked if he had found a set of equations embedded in our reality indistinguishable from those that drive search engines and browsers and he said: 'That is correct.' Rich Terrile, director of the Centre for Evolutionary Computation and Automated Design at NASA's Jet



Propulsion Laboratory, has said publicly that he believes the Universe is a digital hologram that must have been created by a form of intelligence. I agree with that in every way. Waveform information is delivered electrically by the senses to the brain which constructs a *digital* holographic reality that we call the 'world'. This digital level of reality can be read by the esoteric art of numerology. Digital holograms are at the cutting edge of holographics today. We have digital technology everywhere designed to access and manipulate our digital level of perceived reality. Synthetic mRNA in 'Covid vaccines' has a digital component to manipulate the body's digital 'operating system'.

## **Reality is numbers**

How many know that our reality can be broken down to numbers and codes that are the same as computer games? Max Tegmark, a physicist at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT), is the author of *Our Mathematical Universe* in which he lays out how reality can be entirely described by numbers and maths in the way that a video game is encoded with the 'physics' of computer games. Our world and computer virtual reality are essentially the same.

Tegmark imagines the perceptions of characters in an advanced computer game when the graphics are so good they don't know they are in a game. They think they can bump into real objects (electromagnetic resistance in our reality), fall in love and feel emotions like excitement. When they began to study the apparently 'physical world' of the video game they would realise that everything was made of pixels (which have been found in our energetic reality as must be the case when on one level our world is digital). What computer game characters thought was physical 'stuff', Tegmark said, could actually be broken down into numbers:

And we're exactly in this situation in our world. We look around and it doesn't seem that mathematical at all, but everything we see is made out of elementary particles like quarks and electrons. And what properties does an electron have? Does it have a smell or a colour or a texture? No! ... We physicists have come up with geeky names for [Electron] properties, like

electric charge, or spin, or lepton number, but the electron doesn't care what we call it, the properties are just numbers.

This is the illusory reality Gnostics were describing. This is the simulation. The A, C, G, and T codes of DNA have a binary value – A and C = 0 while G and T = 1. This has to be when the simulation is digital and the body must be digital to interact with it. Recurring mathematical sequences are encoded throughout reality and the body. They include the Fibonacci sequence in which the two previous numbers are added to get the next one, as in ... 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55, etc. The sequence is encoded in the human face and body, proportions of animals, DNA, seed heads, pine cones, trees, shells, spiral galaxies, hurricanes and the number of petals in a flower. The list goes on and on. There are fractal patterns – a 'never-ending pattern that is infinitely complex and self-similar across all scales in the as above, so below, principle of holograms. These and other famous recurring geometrical and mathematical sequences such as Phi, Pi, Golden Mean, Golden Ratio and Golden Section are *computer codes* of the simulation. I had to laugh and give my head a shake the day I finished this book and it went into the production stage. I was sent an article in *Scientific American* published in April, 2021, with the headline 'Confirmed! We Live in a Simulation'. Two decades after I first said our reality is a simulation and the speed of light is its outer limit the article suggested that we do live in a simulation and that the speed of light is its outer limit. I left school at 15 and never passed a major exam in my life while the writer was up to his eyes in qualifications. As I will explain in the final chapter *knowing* is far better than thinking and they come from very different sources. The article rightly connected the speed of light to the processing speed of the 'Matrix' and said what has been in my books all this time ... 'If we are in a simulation, as it appears, then space is an abstract property written in code. It is not real'. No it's not and if we live in a simulation something created it and it wasn't *us*. 'That David Icke says we are manipulated by aliens' – he's crackers.'

## **Wow ...**

The reality that humanity thinks is so real is an illusion. Politicians, governments, scientists, doctors, academics, law enforcement, media, school and university curriculums, on and on, are all founded on a world that *does not exist* except as a simulated prison cell. Is it such a stretch to accept that 'Covid' doesn't exist when our entire 'physical' reality doesn't exist? Revealed here is the knowledge kept under raps in the Cult networks of compartmentalised secrecy to control humanity's sense of reality by inducing the population to believe in a reality that's not real. If it wasn't so tragic in its experiential consequences the whole thing would be hysterically funny. None of this is new to Renegade Minds. Ancient Greek philosopher Plato (about 428 to about 347BC) was a major influence on Gnostic belief and he described the human plight thousands of years ago with his Allegory of the Cave. He told the symbolic story of prisoners living in a cave who had never been outside. They were chained and could only see one wall of the cave while behind them was a fire that they could not see. Figures walked past the fire casting shadows on the prisoners' wall and those moving shadows became their sense of reality. Some prisoners began to study the shadows and were considered experts on them (today's academics and scientists), but what they studied was only an illusion (today's academics and scientists). A prisoner escaped from the cave and saw reality as it really is. When he returned to report this revelation they didn't believe him, called him mad and threatened to kill him if he tried to set them free. Plato's tale is not only a brilliant analogy of the human plight and our illusory reality. It describes, too, the dynamics of the 'Covid' hoax. I have only skimmed the surface of these subjects here. The aim of this book is to crisply connect all essential dots to put what is happening today into its true context. All subject areas and their connections in this chapter are covered in great evidential detail in *Everything You Need To Know, But Have Never Been Told* and *The Answer*.

They say that bewildered people 'can't see the forest for the trees'. Humanity, however, can't see the forest for the *twigs*. The five senses

see only twigs while Renegade Minds can see the forest and it's the forest where the answers lie with the connections that reveals. Breaking free of perceptual programming so the forest can be seen is the way we turn all this around. Not breaking free is how humanity got into this mess. The situation may seem hopeless, but I promise you it's not. We are a perceptual heartbeat from paradise if only we knew.

## CHAPTER TWELVE

### **Escaping Wetiko**

*Life is simply a vacation from the infinite*

Dean Cavanagh

**R**enegade Minds weave the web of life and events and see common themes in the apparently random. They are always there if you look for them and their pursuit is aided by incredible synchronicity that comes when your mind is open rather than mesmerised by what it thinks it can see.

Infinite awareness is infinite possibility and the more of infinite possibility that we access the more becomes infinitely possible. That may be stating the apparently obvious, but it is a devastatingly-powerful fact that can set us free. We are a point of attention within an infinity of consciousness. The question is how much of that infinity do we choose to access? How much knowledge, insight, awareness, wisdom, do we want to connect with and explore? If your focus is only in the five senses you will be influenced by a fraction of infinite awareness. I mean a range so tiny that it gives new meaning to infinitesimal. Limitation of self-identity and a sense of the possible limit accordingly your range of consciousness. We are what we think we are. Life is what we think it is. The dream is the dreamer and the dreamer is the dream. Buddhist philosophy puts it this way: 'As a thing is viewed, so it appears.' Most humans live in the realm of touch, taste, see, hear, and smell and that's the limit of their sense of the possible and sense of self. Many will follow a religion and speak of a God in his heaven, but their lives are still

dominated by the five senses in their perceptions and actions. The five senses become the arbiter of everything. When that happens all except a smear of infinity is sealed away from influence by the rigid, unyielding, reality bubbles that are the five-sense human or Phantom Self. Archon Cult methodology is to isolate consciousness within five-sense reality – the simulation – and then program that consciousness with a sense of self and the world through a deluge of life-long information designed to instil the desired perception that allows global control. Efforts to do this have increased dramatically with identity politics as identity bubbles are squeezed into the minutiae of five-sense detail which disconnect people even more profoundly from the infinite 'I'.

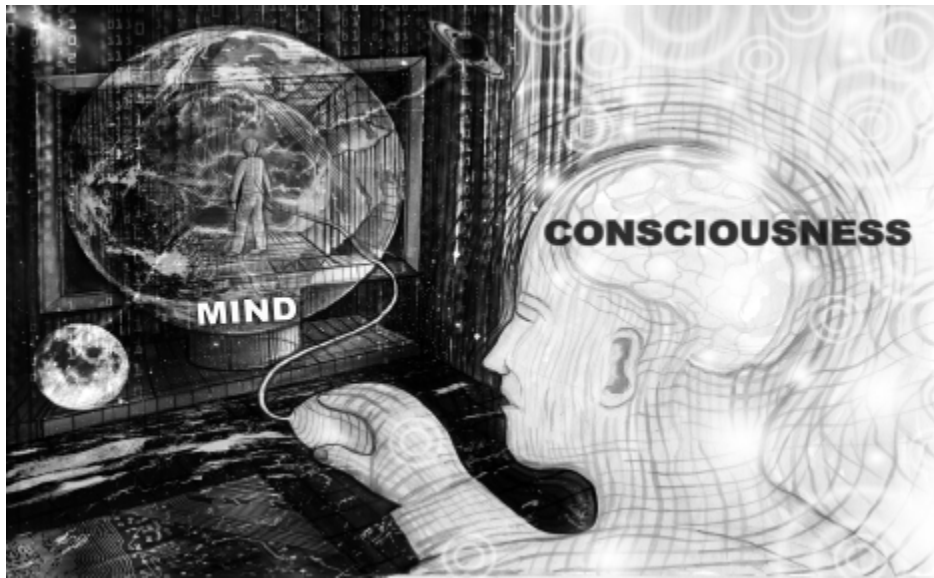
Five-sense focus and self-identity are like a firewall that limits access to the infinite realms. You only perceive one radio or television station and no other. We'll take that literally for a moment. Imagine a vast array of stations giving different information and angles on reality, but you only ever listen to one. Here we have the human plight in which the population is overwhelmingly confined to CultFM. This relates only to the frequency range of CultFM and limits perception and insight to that band – limits *possibility* to that band. It means you are connecting with an almost imperceptibly minuscule range of possibility and creative potential within the infinite Field. It's a world where everything seems apart from everything else and where synchronicity is rare. Synchronicity is defined in the dictionary as 'the happening by chance of two or more related or similar events at the same time'. Use of 'by chance' betrays a complete misunderstanding of reality. Synchronicity is not 'by chance'. As people open their minds, or 'awaken' to use the term, they notice more and more coincidences in their lives, bits of 'luck', apparently miraculous happenings that put them in the right place at the right time with the right people. Days become peppered with 'fancy meeting you here' and 'what are the chances of that?' My entire life has been lived like this and ever more so since my own colossal awakening in 1990 and 91 which transformed my sense of reality. Synchronicity is not 'by chance'; it is by accessing expanded

realms of possibility which allow expanded potential for manifestation. People broadcasting the same vibe from the same openness of mind tend to be drawn 'by chance' to each other through what I call frequency magnetism and it's not only people. In the last more than 30 years incredible synchronicity has also led me through the Cult maze to information in so many forms and to crucial personal experiences. These 'coincidences' have allowed me to put the puzzle pieces together across an enormous array of subjects and situations. Those who have breached the bubble of five-sense reality will know exactly what I mean and this escape from the perceptual prison cell is open to everyone whenever they make that choice. This may appear super-human when compared with the limitations of 'human', but it's really our natural state. 'Human' as currently experienced is consciousness in an unnatural state of induced separation from the infinity of the whole. I'll come to how this transformation into unity can be made when I have described in more detail the force that holds humanity in servitude by denying this access to infinite self.

### **The Wetiko factor**

I have been talking and writing for decades about the way five-sense mind is systematically barricaded from expanded awareness. I have used the analogy of a computer (five-sense mind) and someone at the keyboard (expanded awareness). Interaction between the computer and the operator is symbolic of the interaction between five-sense mind and expanded awareness. The computer directly experiences the Internet and the operator experiences the Internet via the computer which is how it's supposed to be – the two working as one. Archons seek to control that point where the operator connects with the computer to stop that interaction ([Fig 20](#)). Now the operator is banging the keyboard and clicking the mouse, but the computer is not responding and this happens when the computer is taken over – *possessed* – by an appropriately-named computer 'virus'. The operator has lost all influence over the computer which goes its own way making decisions under the control of the 'virus'. I have

just described the dynamic through which the force known to Gnostics as Yaldabaoth and Archons disconnects five-sense mind from expanded awareness to imprison humanity in perceptual servitude.



**Figure 20:** The mind ‘virus’ I have been writing about for decades seeks to isolate five-sense mind (the computer) from the true ‘I’. (Image by Neil Hague).

About a year ago I came across a Native American concept of Wetiko which describes precisely the same phenomenon. Wetiko is the spelling used by the Cree and there are other versions including wintiko and windigo used by other tribal groups. They spell the name with lower case, but I see Wetiko as a proper noun as with Archons and prefer a capital. I first saw an article about Wetiko by writer and researcher Paul Levy which so synced with what I had been writing about the computer/operator disconnection and later the Archons. I then read his book, the fascinating *Dispelling Wetiko, Breaking the Spell of Evil*. The parallels between what I had concluded long before and the Native American concept of Wetiko were so clear and obvious that it was almost funny. For Wetiko see the Gnostic Archons for sure and the Jinn, the Predators, and every other name for a force of evil, inversion and chaos. Wetiko is the Native American name for the force that divides the computer from



the operator (Fig 21). Indigenous author Jack D. Forbes, a founder of the Native American movement in the 1960s, wrote another book about Wetiko entitled *Columbus And Other Cannibals – The Wetiko Disease of Exploitation, Imperialism, and Terrorism* which I also read. Forbes says that Wetiko refers to an evil person or spirit ‘who terrorizes other creatures by means of terrible acts, including cannibalism’. Zulu shaman Credo Mutwa told me that African accounts tell how cannibalism was brought into the world by the Chitauri ‘gods’ – another manifestation of Wetiko. The distinction between ‘evil person or spirit’ relates to Archons/Wetiko possessing a human or acting as pure consciousness. Wetiko is said to be a sickness of the soul or spirit and a state of being that takes but gives nothing back – the Cult and its operatives perfectly described. Black Hawk, a Native American war leader defending their lands from confiscation, said European invaders had ‘poisoned hearts’ – Wetiko hearts – and that this would spread to native societies. Mention of the heart is very significant as we shall shortly see. Forbes writes: ‘Tragically, the history of the world for the past 2,000 years is, in great part, the story of the epidemiology of the wetiko disease.’ Yes, and much longer. Forbes is correct when he says: ‘The wetikos destroyed Egypt and Babylon and Athens and Rome and Tenochtitlan [capital of the Aztec empire] and perhaps now they will destroy the entire earth.’ Evil, he said, is the number one export of a Wetiko culture – see its globalisation with ‘Covid’. Constant war, mass murder, suffering of all kinds, child abuse, Satanism, torture and human sacrifice are all expressions of Wetiko and the Wetiko possessed. The world is Wetiko made manifest, *but it doesn’t have to be*. There is a way out of this even now.



**Figure 21:** The mind 'virus' is known to Native Americans as 'Wetiko'. (Image by Neil Hague).

## **Cult of Wetiko**

Wetiko is the Yaldabaoth frequency distortion that seeks to attach to human consciousness and absorb it into its own. Once this connection is made Wetiko can drive the perceptions of the target which they believe to be coming from their own mind. All the horrors of history and today from mass killers to Satanists, paedophiles like Jeffrey Epstein and other psychopaths, are the embodiment of Wetiko and express its state of being in all its grotesqueness. The Cult is Wetiko incarnate, Yaldabaoth incarnate, and it seeks to facilitate Wetiko assimilation of humanity in totality into its distortion by manipulating the population into low frequency states that match its own. Paul Levy writes: 'Holographically enforced within the psyche of every human being the wetiko virus pervades and underlies the entire field of consciousness, and can therefore potentially manifest through any one of us at any moment if we are not mindful.' The 'Covid' hoax has achieved this with many people, but others have not fallen into Wetiko's frequency lair. Players in the 'Covid' human catastrophe including Gates, Schwab, Tedros, Fauci, Whitty, Vallance, Johnson, Hancock, Ferguson, Drosten, and all the rest, including the psychopath psychologists, are expressions of Wetiko. This is why

they have no compassion or empathy and no emotional consequence for what they do that would make them stop doing it. Observe all the people who support the psychopaths in authority against the Pushbackers despite the damaging impact the psychopaths have on their own lives and their family's lives. You are again looking at Wetiko possession which prevents them seeing through the lies to the obvious scam going on. *Why can't they see it?* Wetiko won't let them see it. The perceptual divide that has now become a chasm is between the Wetikoed and the non-Wetikoed.

Paul Levy describes Wetiko in the same way that I have long described the Archontic force. They are the same distorted consciousness operating across dimensions of reality: '... the subtle body of wetiko is not located in the third dimension of space and time, literally existing in another dimension ... it is able to affect ordinary lives by mysteriously interpenetrating into our three-dimensional world.' Wetiko does this through its incarnate representatives in the Cult and by weaving itself into The Field which on our level of reality is the electromagnetic information field of the simulation or Matrix. More than that, the simulation *is* Wetiko / Yaldabaoth. Caleb Scharf, Director of Astrobiology at Columbia University, has speculated that 'alien life' could be so advanced that it has transcribed itself into the quantum realm to become what we call physics. He said intelligence indistinguishable from the fabric of the Universe would solve many of its greatest mysteries:

Perhaps hyper-advanced life isn't just external. Perhaps it's already all around. It is embedded in what we perceive to be physics itself, from the root behaviour of particles and fields to the phenomena of complexity and emergence ... In other words, life might not just be in the equations. It might BE the equations [My emphasis].

Scharf said it is possible that 'we don't recognise advanced life because it forms an integral and unsuspecting part of what we've considered to be the natural world'. I agree. Wetiko/Yaldabaoth *is* the simulation. We are literally in the body of the beast. But that doesn't mean it has to control us. We all have the power to overcome Wetiko

influence and the Cult knows that. I doubt it sleeps too well because it knows that.

## **Which Field?**

This, I suggest, is how it all works. There are two Fields. One is the fierce electromagnetic light of the Matrix within the speed of light; the other is the 'watery light' of The Field beyond the walls of the Matrix that connects with the Great Infinity. Five-sense mind and the decoding systems of the body attach us to the Field of Matrix light. They have to or we could not experience this reality. Five-sense mind sees only the Matrix Field of information while our expanded consciousness is part of the Infinity Field. When we open our minds, and most importantly our hearts, to the Infinity Field we have a mission control which gives us an expanded perspective, a road map, to understand the nature of the five-sense world. If we are isolated only in five-sense mind there is no mission control. We're on our own trying to understand a world that's constantly feeding us information to ensure we do not understand. People in this state can feel 'lost' and bewildered with no direction or radar. You can see ever more clearly those who are influenced by the Fields of Big Infinity or little five-sense mind simply by their views and behaviour with regard to the 'Covid' hoax. We have had this division throughout known human history with the mass of the people on one side and individuals who could see and intuit beyond the walls of the simulation – Plato's prisoner who broke out of the cave and saw reality for what it is. Such people have always been targeted by Wetiko/Archon-possessed authority, burned at the stake or demonised as mad, bad and dangerous. The Cult today and its global network of 'anti-hate', 'anti-fascist' Woke groups are all expressions of Wetiko attacking those exposing the conspiracy, 'Covid' lies and the 'vaccine' agenda.

Woke as a whole is Wetiko which explains its black and white mentality and how at one it is with the Wetiko-possessed Cult. Paul Levy said: 'To be in this paradigm is to still be under the thrall of a two-valued logic – where things are either true or false – of a

wetikoized mind.’ Wetiko consciousness is in a permanent rage, therefore so is Woke, and then there is Woke inversion and contradiction. ‘Anti-fascists’ act like fascists because fascists *and* ‘anti-fascists’ are both Wetiko at work. Political parties act the same while claiming to be different for the same reason. Secret society and satanic rituals are attaching initiates to Wetiko and the cold, ruthless, psychopathic mentality that secures the positions of power all over the world is Wetiko. Reframing ‘training programmes’ have the same cumulative effect of attaching Wetiko and we have their graduates described as automatons and robots with a cold, psychopathic, uncaring demeanour. They are all traits of Wetiko possession and look how many times they have been described in this book and elsewhere with regard to personnel behind ‘Covid’ including the police and medical profession. Climbing the greasy pole in any profession in a Wetiko society requires traits of Wetiko to get there and that is particularly true of politics which is not about fair competition and pre-eminence of ideas. It is founded on how many backs you can stab and arses you can lick. This culminated in the global ‘Covid’ coordination between the Wetiko possessed who pulled it off in all the different countries without a trace of empathy and compassion for their impact on humans. Our sight sense can see only holographic form and not the Field which connects holographic form. Therefore we perceive ‘physical’ objects with ‘space’ in between. In fact that ‘space’ is energy/consciousness operating on multiple frequencies. One of them is Wetiko and that connects the Cult psychopaths, those who submit to the psychopaths, and those who serve the psychopaths in the media operations of the world. Wetiko is Gates. Wetiko is the mask-wearing submissive. Wetiko is the fake journalist and ‘fact-checker’. The Wetiko Field is coordinating the whole thing. Psychopaths, gofers, media operatives, ‘anti-hate’ hate groups, ‘fact-checkers’ and submissive people work as one unit *even without human coordination* because they are attached to the *same* Field which is organising it all (Fig 22). Paul Levy is here describing how Wetiko-possessed people are drawn together and refuse to let any information breach their rigid

perceptions. He was writing long before 'Covid', but I think you will recognise followers of the 'Covid' religion *oh just a little bit*:

People who are channelling the vibratory frequency of wetiko align with each other through psychic resonance to reinforce their unspoken shared agreement so as to uphold their deranged view of reality. Once an unconscious content takes possession of certain individuals, it irresistibly draws them together by mutual attraction and knits them into groups tied together by their shared madness that can easily swell into an avalanche of insanity.

A psychic epidemic is a closed system, which is to say that it is insular and not open to any new information or informing influences from the outside world which contradict its fixed, limited, and limiting perspective.

There we have the Woke mind and the 'Covid' mind. Compatible resonance draws the awakening together, too, which is clearly happening today.



**Figure 22:** The Wetiko Field from which the Cult pyramid and its personnel are made manifest. (Image by Neil Hague).

## **Spiritual servitude**

Wetiko doesn't care about humans. It's not human; it just possesses humans for its own ends and the effect (depending on the scale of

possession) can be anything from extreme psychopathy to unquestioning obedience. Wetiko's worst nightmare is for human consciousness to expand beyond the simulation. Everything is focussed on stopping that happening through control of information, thus perception, thus frequency. The 'education system', media, science, medicine, academia, are all geared to maintaining humanity in five-sense servitude as is the constant stimulation of low-vibrational mental and emotional states (see 'Covid'). Wetiko seeks to dominate those subconscious spaces between five-sense perception and expanded consciousness where the computer meets the operator. From these subconscious hiding places Wetiko speaks to us to trigger urges and desires that we take to be our own and manipulate us into anything from low-vibrational to psychopathic states. Remember how Islam describes the Jinn as invisible tricksters that 'whisper' and confuse. Wetiko is the origin of the 'trickster god' theme that you find in cultures all over the world. Jinn, like the Archons, are Wetiko which is terrified of humans awakening and reconnecting with our true self for then its energy source has gone. With that the feedback loop breaks between Wetiko and human perception that provides the energetic momentum on which its very existence depends as a force of evil. Humans are both its target and its source of survival, but only if we are operating in low-vibrational states of fear, hate, depression and the background anxiety that most people suffer. We are Wetiko's target because we are its key to survival. It needs us, not the other way round. Paul Levy writes:

A vampire has no intrinsic, independent, substantial existence in its own right; it only exists in relation to us. The pathogenic, vampiric mind-parasite called wetiko is nothing in itself – not being able to exist from its own side – yet it has a 'virtual reality' such that it can potentially destroy our species ...

...The fact that a vampire is not reflected by a mirror can also mean that what we need to see is that there's nothing, no-thing to see, other than ourselves. The fact that wetiko is the expression of something inside of us means that the cure for wetiko is with us as well. The critical issue is finding this cure within us and then putting it into effect.

Evil begets evil because if evil does not constantly expand and find new sources of energetic sustenance its evil, its *distortion*, dies with the assimilation into balance and harmony. Love is the garlic to Wetiko's vampire. Evil, the absence of love, cannot exist in the presence of love. I think I see a way out of here. I have emphasised so many times over the decades that the Archons/Wetiko and their Cult are not all powerful. *They are not*. I don't care how it looks even now *they are not*. I have not called them little boys in short trousers for effect. I have said it because it is true. Wetiko's insatiable desire for power over others is not a sign of its omnipotence, but its insecurity. Paul Levy writes: 'Due to the primal fear which ultimately drives it and which it is driven to cultivate, wetiko's body politic has an intrinsic and insistent need for centralising power and control so as to create imagined safety for itself.' *Yeeeeees!* Exactly! Why does Wetiko want humans in an ongoing state of fear? Wetiko itself *is* fear and it is petrified of love. As evil is an absence of love, so love is an absence of fear. Love conquers all and *especially* Wetiko which *is* fear. Wetiko brought fear into the world when it wasn't here before. *Fear* was the 'fall', the fall into low-frequency ignorance and illusion – fear is **False Emotion Appearing Real**. The simulation is driven and energised by fear because Wetiko/Yaldabaoth (fear) *are* the simulation. Fear is the absence of love and Wetiko is the absence of love.

## **Wetiko today**

We can now view current events from this level of perspective. The 'Covid' hoax has generated momentous amounts of ongoing fear, anxiety, depression and despair which have empowered Wetiko. No wonder people like Gates have been the instigators when they are Wetiko incarnate and exhibit every trait of Wetiko in the extreme. See how cold and unemotional these people are like Gates and his cronies, how dead of eye they are. That's Wetiko. Sabbatians are Wetiko and everything they control including the World Health Organization, Big Pharma and the 'vaccine' makers, national 'health'



hierarchies, corporate media, Silicon Valley, the banking system, and the United Nations with its planned transformation into world government. All are controlled and possessed by the Wetiko distortion into distorting human society in its image. We are with this knowledge at the gateway to understanding the world. Divisions of race, culture, creed and sexuality are diversions to hide the real division between those possessed and influenced by Wetiko and those that are not. The 'Covid' hoax has brought both clearly into view. Human behaviour is not about race. Tyrants and dictatorships come in all colours and creeds. What unites the US president bombing the innocent and an African tribe committing genocide against another as in Rwanda? What unites them? *Wetiko*. All wars are Wetiko, all genocide is Wetiko, all hunger over centuries in a world of plenty is Wetiko. Children going to bed hungry, including in the West, is Wetiko. Cult-generated Woke racial divisions that focus on the body are designed to obscure the reality that divisions in behaviour are manifestations of mind, not body. Obsession with body identity and group judgement is a means to divert attention from the real source of behaviour – mind and perception. Conflict sown by the Woke both within themselves and with their target groups are Wetiko providing lunch for itself through still more agents of the division, chaos, and fear on which it feeds. The Cult is seeking to assimilate the entirety of humanity and all children and young people into the Wetiko frequency by manipulating them into states of fear and despair. Witness all the suicide and psychological unravelling since the spring of 2020. Wetiko psychopaths want to impose a state of unquestioning obedience to authority which is no more than a conduit for Wetiko to enforce its will and assimilate humanity into itself. It needs us to believe that resistance is futile when it fears resistance and even more so the game-changing non-cooperation with its impositions. It can use violent resistance for its benefit. Violent impositions and violent resistance are *both* Wetiko. The Power of Love with its Power of No will sweep Wetiko from our world. Wetiko and its Cult know that. They just don't want us to know.

## **AI Wetiko**

This brings me to AI or artificial intelligence and something else Wetikos don't want us to know. What is AI *really*? I know about computer code algorithms and AI that learns from data input. These, however, are more diversions, the expeditionary force, for the real AI that they want to connect to the human brain as promoted by Silicon Valley Wetikos like Kurzweil. What is this AI? It is the frequency of *Wetiko*, the frequency of the Archons. The connection of AI to the human brain is the connection of the Wetiko frequency to create a Wetiko hive mind and complete the job of assimilation. The hive mind is planned to be controlled from Israel and China which are both 100 percent owned by Wetiko Sabbatians. The assimilation process has been going on minute by minute in the 'smart' era which fused with the 'Covid' era. We are told that social media is scrambling the minds of the young and changing their personality. This is true, but what is social media? Look more deeply at how it works, how it creates divisions and conflict, the hostility and cruelty, the targeting of people until they are destroyed. That's Wetiko. Social media is manipulated to tune people to the Wetiko frequency with all the emotional exploitation tricks employed by platforms like Facebook and its Wetiko front man, Zuckerberg. Facebook's Instagram announced a new platform for children to overcome a legal bar on them using the main site. This is more Wetiko exploitation and manipulation of kids. Amnesty International likened the plan to foxes offering to guard the henhouse and said it was incompatible with human rights. Since when did Wetiko or Zuckerberg (I repeat myself) care about that? Would Brin and Page at Google, Wojcicki at YouTube, Bezos at Amazon and whoever the hell runs Twitter act as they do if they were not channelling Wetiko? Would those who are developing technologies for no other reason than human control? How about those designing and selling technologies to kill people and Big Pharma drug and 'vaccine' producers who know they will end or devastate lives? Quite a thought for these people to consider is that if you are Wetiko in a human life you are Wetiko on the 'other side' unless your frequency

changes and that can only change by a change of perception which becomes a change of behaviour. Where Gates is going does not bear thinking about although perhaps that's exactly where he wants to go. Either way, that's where he's going. His frequency will make it so.

## **The frequency lair**

I have been saying for a long time that a big part of the addiction to smartphones and devices is that a frequency is coming off them that entraps the mind. People spend ages on their phones and sometimes even a minute or so after they put them down they pick them up again and it all repeats. 'Covid' lockdowns will have increased this addiction a million times for obvious reasons. Addictions to alcohol overindulgence and drugs are another way that Wetiko entraps consciousness to attach to its own. Both are symptoms of low-vibrational psychological distress which alcoholism and drug addiction further compound. Do we think it's really a coincidence that access to them is made so easy while potions that can take people into realms beyond the simulation are banned and illegal? I have explored smartphone addiction in other books, the scale is mind-blowing, and that level of addiction does not come without help. Tech companies that make these phones are Wetiko and they will have no qualms about destroying the minds of children. We are seeing again with these companies the Wetiko perceptual combination of psychopathic enforcers and weak and meek unquestioning compliance by the rank and file.

The global Smart Grid is the Wetiko Grid and it is crucial to complete the Cult endgame. The simulation is radiation and we are being deluged with technological radiation on a devastating scale. Wetiko frauds like Elon Musk serve Cult interests while occasionally criticising them to maintain his street-cred. 5G and other forms of Wi-Fi are being directed at the earth from space on a volume and scale that goes on increasing by the day. Elon Musk's (officially) SpaceX Starlink project is in the process of putting tens of thousands of satellites in low orbit to cover every inch of the planet with 5G and other Wi-Fi to create Kurzweil's global 'cloud' to which the

human mind is planned to be attached very soon. SpaceX has approval to operate 12,000 satellites with more than 1,300 launched at the time of writing and applications filed for 30,000 more. Other operators in the Wi-Fi, 5G, low-orbit satellite market include OneWeb (UK), Telesat (Canada), and AST & Science (US). Musk tells us that AI could be the end of humanity and then launches a company called Neuralink to connect the human brain to computers. Musk's (in theory) Tesla company is building electric cars and the driverless vehicles of the smart control grid. As frauds and bullshitters go Elon Musk in my opinion is Major League.

5G and technological radiation in general are destructive to human health, genetics and psychology and increasing the strength of artificial radiation underpins the five-sense perceptual bubbles which are themselves expressions of radiation or electromagnetism. Freedom activist John Whitehead was so right with his 'databit by databit, we are building our own electronic concentration camps'. The Smart Grid and 5G is a means to control the human mind and infuse perceptual information into The Field to influence anyone in sync with its frequency. You can change perception and behaviour en masse if you can manipulate the population into those levels of frequency and this is happening all around us today. The arrogance of Musk and his fellow Cult operatives knows no bounds in the way that we see with Gates. Musk's satellites are so many in number already they are changing the night sky when viewed from Earth. The astronomy community has complained about this and they have seen nothing yet. Some consequences of Musk's Wetiko hubris include: Radiation; visible pollution of the night sky; interference with astronomy and meteorology; ground and water pollution from intensive use of increasingly many spaceports; accumulating space debris; continual deorbiting and burning up of aging satellites, polluting the atmosphere with toxic dust and smoke; and ever-increasing likelihood of collisions. A collective public open letter of complaint to Musk said:

We are writing to you ... because SpaceX is in process of surrounding the Earth with a network of thousands of satellites whose very purpose is to irradiate every square inch of the

Earth. SpaceX, like everyone else, is treating the radiation as if it were not there. As if the mitochondria in our cells do not depend on electrons moving undisturbed from the food we digest to the oxygen we breathe.

As if our nervous systems and our hearts are not subject to radio frequency interference like any piece of electronic equipment. As if the cancer, diabetes, and heart disease that now afflict a majority of the Earth's population are not metabolic diseases that result from interference with our cellular machinery. As if insects everywhere, and the birds and animals that eat them, are not starving to death as a result.

People like Musk and Gates believe in their limitless Wetiko arrogance that they can do whatever they like to the world because they own it. Consequences for humanity are irrelevant. It's absolutely time that we stopped taking this shit from these self-styled masters of the Earth when you consider where this is going.

## **Why is the Cult so anti-human?**

I hear this question often: Why would they do this when it will affect them, too? Ah, but will it? Who is this *them*? Forget their bodies. They are just vehicles for Wetiko consciousness. When you break it all down to the foundations we are looking at a state of severely distorted consciousness targeting another state of consciousness for assimilation. The rest is detail. The simulation is the fly-trap in which unique sensations of the five senses create a cycle of addiction called reincarnation. Renegade Minds see that everything which happens in our reality is a smaller version of the whole picture in line with the holographic principle. Addiction to the radiation of smart technology is a smaller version of addiction to the whole simulation. Connecting the body/brain to AI is taking that addiction on a giant step further to total ongoing control by assimilating human incarnate consciousness into Wetiko. I have watched during the 'Covid' hoax how many are becoming ever more profoundly attached to Wetiko's perceptual calling cards of aggressive response to any other point of view ('There is no other god but me'), psychopathic lack of compassion and empathy, and servile submission to the narrative and will of authority. Wetiko is the psychopaths *and* subservience to psychopaths. The Cult of Wetiko is

so anti-human because it is *not* human. It embarked on a mission to destroy human by targeting everything that it means to be human and to survive as human. 'Covid' is not the end, just a means to an end. The Cult with its Wetiko consciousness is seeking to change Earth systems, including the atmosphere, to suit them, not humans. The gathering bombardment of 5G alone from ground and space is dramatically changing The Field with which the five senses interact. There is so much more to come if we sit on our hands and hope it will all go away. It is not meant to go away. It is meant to get ever more extreme and we need to face that while we still can – just.

Carbon dioxide is the gas of life. Without that human is over. Kaput, gone, history. No natural world, no human. The Cult has created a cock and bull story about carbon dioxide and climate change to justify its reduction to the point where Gates and the ignoramus Biden 'climate chief' John Kerry want to suck it out of the atmosphere. Kerry wants to do this because his master Gates does. Wetikos have made the gas of life a demon with the usual support from the Wokers of Extinction Rebellion and similar organisations and the bewildered puppet-child that is Greta Thunberg who was put on the world stage by Klaus Schwab and the World Economic Forum. The name Extinction Rebellion is both ironic and as always Wetiko inversion. The gas that we need to survive must be reduced to save us from extinction. The most basic need of human is oxygen and we now have billions walking around in face nappies depriving body and brain of this essential requirement of human existence. More than that 5G at 60 gigahertz interacts with the oxygen molecule to reduce the amount of oxygen the body can absorb into the bloodstream. The obvious knock-on consequences of that for respiratory and cognitive problems and life itself need no further explanation. Psychopaths like Musk are assembling a global system of satellites to deluge the human atmosphere with this insanity. The man should be in jail. Here we have two most basic of human needs, oxygen and carbon dioxide, being dismantled.

Two others, water and food, are getting similar treatment with the United Nations Agendas 21 and 2030 – the Great Reset – planning to

centrally control all water and food supplies. People will not even own rain water that falls on their land. Food is affected at the most basic level by reducing carbon dioxide. We have genetic modification or GMO infiltrating the food chain on a mass scale, pesticides and herbicides polluting the air and destroying the soil. Freshwater fish that provide livelihoods for 60 million people and feed hundreds of millions worldwide are being 'pushed to the brink' according the conservationists while climate change is the only focus. Now we have Gates and Schwab wanting to dispense with current food sources all together and replace them with a synthetic version which the Wetiko Cult would control in terms of production and who eats and who doesn't. We have been on the Totalitarian Tiptoe to this for more than 60 years as food has become ever more processed and full of chemical shite to the point today when it's not natural food at all. As Dr Tom Cowan says: 'If it has a label don't eat it.' Bill Gates is now the biggest owner of farmland in the United States and he does nothing without an ulterior motive involving the Cult. Klaus Schwab wrote: 'To feed the world in the next 50 years we will need to produce as much food as was produced in the last 10,000 years ... food security will only be achieved, however, if regulations on genetically modified foods are adapted to reflect the reality that gene editing offers a precise, efficient and safe method of improving crops.' Liar. People and the world are being targeted with aluminium through vaccines, chemtrails, food, drink cans, and endless other sources when aluminium has been linked to many health issues including dementia which is increasing year after year. Insects, bees and wildlife essential to the food chain are being deleted by pesticides, herbicides and radiation which 5G is dramatically increasing with 6G and 7G to come. The pollinating bee population is being devastated while wildlife including birds, dolphins and whales are having their natural radar blocked by the effects of ever-increasing radiation. In the summer windscreens used to be splattered with insects so numerous were they. It doesn't happen now. Where have they gone?

## **Synthetic everything**

The Cult is introducing genetically-modified versions of trees, plants and insects including a Gates-funded project to unleash hundreds of millions of genetically-modified, lab-altered and patented male mosquitoes to mate with wild mosquitoes and induce genetic flaws that cause them to die out. Clinically-insane Gates-funded Japanese researchers have developed mosquitos that spread vaccine and are dubbed 'flying vaccinators'. Gates is funding the modification of weather patterns in part to sell the myth that this is caused by carbon dioxide and he's funding geoengineering of the skies to change the atmosphere. Some of this came to light with the Gates-backed plan to release tonnes of chalk into the atmosphere to 'deflect the Sun and cool the planet'. Funny how they do this while the heating effect of the Sun is not factored into climate projections focussed on carbon dioxide. The reason is that they want to reduce carbon dioxide (so don't mention the Sun), but at the same time they do want to reduce the impact of the Sun which is so essential to human life and health. I have mentioned the sun-cholesterol-vitamin D connection as they demonise the Sun with warnings about skin cancer (caused by the chemicals in sun cream they tell you to splash on). They come from the other end of the process with statin drugs to reduce cholesterol that turns sunlight into vitamin D. A lack of vitamin D leads to a long list of health effects and how vitamin D levels must have fallen with people confined to their homes over 'Covid'. Gates is funding other forms of geoengineering and most importantly chemtrails which are dropping heavy metals, aluminium and self-replicating nanotechnology onto the Earth which is killing the natural world. See *Everything You Need To Know, But Have Never Been Told* for the detailed background to this.

Every human system is being targeted for deletion by a force that's not human. The Wetiko Cult has embarked on the process of transforming the human body from biological to synthetic biological as I have explained. Biological is being replaced by the artificial and synthetic – Archontic 'countermimicry' – right across human society. The plan eventually is to dispense with the human body altogether



and absorb human consciousness – which it wouldn't really be by then – into cyberspace (the simulation which is Wetiko/Yaldabaoth). Preparations for that are already happening if people would care to look. The alternative media rightly warns about globalism and 'the globalists', but this is far bigger than that and represents the end of the human race as we know it. The 'bad copy' of prime reality that Gnostics describe was a bad copy of harmony, wonder and beauty to start with before Wetiko/Yaldabaoth set out to change the simulated 'copy' into something very different. The process was slow to start with. Entrapped humans in the simulation timeline were not technologically aware and they had to be brought up to intellectual speed while being suppressed spiritually to the point where they could build their own prison while having no idea they were doing so. We have now reached that stage where technological intellect has the potential to destroy us and that's why events are moving so fast. Central American shaman Don Juan Matus said:

Think for a moment, and tell me how you would explain the contradictions between the intelligence of man the engineer and the stupidity of his systems of belief, or the stupidity of his contradictory behaviour. Sorcerers believe that the predators have given us our systems of beliefs, our ideas of good and evil; our social mores. They are the ones who set up our dreams of success or failure. They have given us covetousness, greed, and cowardice. It is the predator who makes us complacent, routinary, and egomaniacal.

In order to keep us obedient and meek and weak, the predators engaged themselves in a stupendous manoeuvre – stupendous, of course, from the point of view of a fighting strategist; a horrendous manoeuvre from the point of those who suffer it. They gave us their mind. The predators' mind is baroque, contradictory, morose, filled with the fear of being discovered any minute now.

For 'predators' see Wetiko, Archons, Yaldabaoth, Jinn, and all the other versions of the same phenomenon in cultures and religions all over the world. The theme is always the same because it's true and it's real. We have reached the point where we have to deal with it. The question is – how?

**Don't fight – walk away**

I thought I'd use a controversial subheading to get things moving in terms of our response to global fascism. What do you mean 'don't fight'? What do you mean 'walk away'? We've got to fight. We can't walk away. Well, it depends what we mean by fight and walk away. If fighting means physical combat we are playing Wetiko's game and falling for its trap. It wants us to get angry, aggressive, and direct hate and hostility at the enemy we think we must fight. Every war, every battle, every conflict, has been fought with Wetiko leading both sides. It's what it does. Wetiko wants a fight, anywhere, any place. Just hit me, son, so I can hit you back. Wetiko hits Wetiko and Wetiko hits Wetiko in return. I am very forthright as you can see in exposing Wetikos of the Cult, but I don't hate them. I refuse to hate them. It's what they want. What you hate you become. What you *fight* you become. Wokers, 'anti-haters' and 'anti-fascists' prove this every time they reach for their keyboards or don their balaclavas. By walk away I mean to disengage from Wetiko which includes ceasing to cooperate with its tyranny. Paul Levy says of Wetiko:

The way to 'defeat' evil is not to try to destroy it (for then, in playing evil's game, we have already lost), but rather, to find the invulnerable place within ourselves where evil is unable to vanquish us – this is to truly 'win' our battle with evil.

Wetiko is everywhere in human society and it's been on steroids since the 'Covid' hoax. Every shouting match over wearing masks has Wetiko wearing a mask and Wetiko not wearing one. It's an electrical circuit of push and resist, push and resist, with Wetiko pushing *and* resisting. Each polarity is Wetiko empowering itself. Dictionary definitions of 'resist' include 'opposing, refusing to accept or comply with' and the word to focus on is 'opposing'. What form does this take – setting police cars alight or 'refusing to accept or comply with'? The former is Wetiko opposing Wetiko while the other points the way forward. This is the difference between those aggressively demanding that government fascism must be obeyed who stand in stark contrast to the great majority of Pushbackers. We saw this clearly with a march by thousands of Pushbackers against lockdown in London followed days later by a Woker-hijacked

protest in Bristol in which police cars were set on fire. Masks were virtually absent in London and widespread in Bristol. Wetiko wants lockdown on every level of society and infuses its aggression to police it through its unknowing stooges. Lockdown protesters are the ones with the smiling faces and the hugs, The two blatantly obvious states of being – getting more obvious by the day – are the result of Wokers and their like becoming ever more influenced by the simulation Field of Wetiko and Pushbackers ever more influenced by The Field of a far higher vibration beyond the simulation. Wetiko can't invade the heart which is where most lockdown opponents are coming from. It's the heart that allows them to see through the lies to the truth in ways I will be highlighting.

Renegade Minds know that calmness is the place from which wisdom comes. You won't find wisdom in a hissing fit and wisdom is what we need in abundance right now. Calmness is not weakness – you don't have to scream at the top of your voice to be strong. Calmness is indeed a sign of strength. 'No' means I'm not doing it. NOOOO!!! doesn't mean you're not doing it even more. Volume does not advance 'No – I'm not doing it'. You are just not doing it. Wetiko possessed and influenced don't know how to deal with that. Wetiko wants a fight and we should not give it one. What it needs more than anything is our *cooperation* and we should not give that either. Mass rallies and marches are great in that they are a visual representation of feeling, but if it ends there they are irrelevant. You demand that Wetikos act differently? Well, they're not going to are they? They are Wetikos. We don't need to waste our time demanding that something doesn't happen when that will make no difference. We need to delete the means that *allows* it to happen. This, invariably, is our cooperation. You can demand a child stop firing a peashooter at the dog or you can refuse to buy the peashooter. If you provide the means you are cooperating with the dog being smacked on the nose with a pea. How can the authorities enforce mask-wearing if millions in a country refuse? What if the 74 million Pushbackers that voted for Trump in 2020 refused to wear masks, close their businesses or stay in their homes. It would be unenforceable. The

few control the many through the compliance of the many and that's always been the dynamic be it 'Covid' regulations or the Roman Empire. I know people can find it intimidating to say no to authority or stand out in a crowd for being the only one with a face on display; but it has to be done or it's over. I hope I've made clear in this book that where this is going will be far more intimidating than standing up now and saying 'No' – I will not cooperate with my own enslavement and that of my children. There might be consequences for some initially, although not so if enough do the same. The question that must be addressed is what is going to happen if we don't? It is time to be strong and unyieldingly so. No means no. Not here and there, but *everywhere* and *always*. I have refused to wear a mask and obey all the other nonsense. I will not comply with tyranny. I repeat: Fascism is not imposed by fascists – there are never enough of them. Fascism is imposed by the population acquiescing to fascism. *I will not do it*. I will die first, or my body will. Living meekly under fascism is a form of death anyway, the death of the spirit that Martin Luther King described.

## **Making things happen**

We must not despair. This is not over till it's over and it's far from that. The 'fat lady' must refuse to sing. The longer the 'Covid' hoax has dragged on and impacted on more lives we have seen an awakening of phenomenal numbers of people worldwide to the realisation that what they have believed all their lives is not how the world really is. Research published by the system-serving University of Bristol and King's College London in February, 2021, concluded: 'One in every 11 people in Britain say they trust David Icke's take on the coronavirus pandemic.' It will be more by now and we have gathering numbers to build on. We must urgently progress from seeing the scam to ceasing to cooperate with it. Prominent German lawyer Reiner Fuellmich, also licenced to practice law in America, is doing a magnificent job taking the legal route to bring the psychopaths to justice through a second Nuremberg tribunal for crimes against humanity. Fuellmich has an impressive record of

beating the elite in court and he formed the German Corona Investigative Committee to pursue civil charges against the main perpetrators with a view to triggering criminal charges. Most importantly he has grasped the foundation of the hoax – the PCR test not testing for the ‘virus’ – and Christian Drosten is therefore on his charge sheet along with Gates frontman Tedros at the World Health Organization. Major players must not be allowed to inflict their horrors on the human race without being brought to book. A life sentence must follow for Bill Gates and the rest of them. A group of researchers has also indicted the government of Norway for crimes against humanity with copies sent to the police and the International Criminal Court. The lawsuit cites participation in an internationally-planned false pandemic and violation of international law and human rights, the European Commission’s definition of human rights by coercive rules, Nuremberg and Hague rules on fundamental human rights, and the Norwegian constitution. We must take the initiative from hereon and not just complain, protest and react.

There are practical ways to support vital mass non-cooperation. Organising in numbers is one. Lockdown marches in London in the spring in 2021 were mass non-cooperation that the authorities could not stop. There were too many people. Hundreds of thousands walked the London streets in the centre of the road for mile after mile while the Face-Nappies could only look on. They were determined, but calm, and just *did it* with no histrionics and lots of smiles. The police were impotent. Others are organising group shopping without masks for mutual support and imagine if that was happening all over. Policing it would be impossible. If the store refuses to serve people in these circumstances they would be faced with a long line of trolleys full of goods standing on their own and everything would have to be returned to the shelves. How would they cope with that if it kept happening? I am talking here about moving on from complaining to being pro-active; from watching things happen to making things happen. I include in this our relationship with the police. The behaviour of many Face-Nappies

has been disgraceful and anyone who thinks they would never find concentration camp guards in the 'enlightened' modern era have had that myth busted big-time. The period and setting may change – Wetikos never do. I watched film footage from a London march in which a police thug viciously kicked a protestor on the floor who had done nothing. His fellow Face-Nappies stood in a ring protecting him. What he did was a criminal assault and with a crowd far outnumbering the police this can no longer be allowed to happen unchallenged. I get it when people chant 'shame on you' in these circumstances, but that is no longer enough. They *have* no shame those who do this. Crowds needs to start making a citizen's arrest of the police who commit criminal offences and brutally attack innocent people and defenceless women. A citizen's arrest can be made under section 24A of the UK Police and Criminal Evidence (PACE) Act of 1984 and you will find something similar in other countries. I prefer to call it a Common Law arrest rather than citizen's for reasons I will come to shortly. Anyone can arrest a person committing an indictable offence or if they have reasonable grounds to suspect they are committing an indictable offence. On both counts the attack by the police thug would have fallen into this category. A citizen's arrest can be made to stop someone:

- Causing physical injury to himself or any other person
- Suffering physical injury
- Causing loss of or damage to property
- Making off before a constable can assume responsibility for him

A citizen's arrest may also be made to prevent a breach of the peace under Common Law and if they believe a breach of the peace will happen or anything related to harm likely to be done or already done in their presence. This is the way to go I think – the Common Law version. If police know that the crowd and members of the public will no longer be standing and watching while they commit

their thuggery and crimes they will think twice about acting like Brownshirts and Blackshirts.

### **Common Law – common sense**

Mention of Common Law is very important. Most people think the law is the law as in one law. This is not the case. There are two bodies of law, Common Law and Statute Law, and they are not the same. Common Law is founded on the simple premise of do no harm. It does not recognise victimless crimes in which no harm is done while Statute Law does. There is a Statute Law against almost everything. So what is Statute Law? Amazingly it's the law of the *sea* that was brought ashore by the Cult to override the law of the land which is Common Law. They had no right to do this and as always they did it anyway. They had to. They could not impose their will on the people through Common Law which only applies to do no harm. How could you stitch up the fine detail of people's lives with that? Instead they took the law of the sea, or Admiralty Law, and applied it to the population. Statute Law refers to all the laws spewing out of governments and their agencies including all the fascist laws and regulations relating to 'Covid'. The key point to make is that Statute Law is *contract law*. It only applies between *contracting* corporations. Most police officers don't even know this. They have to be kept in the dark, too. Long ago when merchants and their sailing ships began to trade with different countries a contractual law was developed called Admiralty Law and other names. Again it only applied to *contracts* agreed between *corporate* entities. If there is no agreed contract the law of the sea had no jurisdiction *and that still applies to its new alias of Statute Law*. The problem for the Cult when the law of the sea was brought ashore was an obvious one. People were not corporations and neither were government entities. To overcome the latter they made governments and all associated organisations corporations. All the institutions are *private corporations* and I mean governments and their agencies, local councils, police, courts, military, US states, the whole lot. Go to the

Dun and Bradstreet corporate listings website for confirmation that they are all corporations. You are arrested by a private corporation called the police by someone who is really a private security guard and they take you to court which is another private corporation. Neither have jurisdiction over you unless you consent and *contract* with them. This is why you hear the mantra about law enforcement policing by *consent* of the people. In truth the people 'consent' only in theory through monumental trickery.

Okay, the Cult overcame the corporate law problem by making governments and institutions corporate entities; but what about people? They are not corporations are they? Ah ... well in a sense, and *only* a sense, they are. Not people exactly – the illusion of people. The Cult creates a corporation in the name of everyone at the time that their birth certificate is issued. Note birth/ *berth* certificate and when you go to court under the law of the sea on land you stand in a *dock*. These are throwbacks to the origin. My Common Law name is David Vaughan Icke. The name of the corporation created by the government when I was born is called Mr David Vaughan Icke usually written in capitals as MR DAVID VAUGHAN ICKE. That is not me, the living, breathing man. It is a fictitious corporate entity. The trick is to make you think that David Vaughan Icke and MR DAVID VAUGHAN ICKE are the same thing. *They are not*. When police charge you and take you to court they are prosecuting the corporate entity and not the living, breathing, man or woman. They have to trick you into identifying as the corporate entity and contracting with them. Otherwise they have no jurisdiction. They do this through a language known as legalese. Lawful and legal are not the same either. Lawful relates to Common Law and legal relates to Statute Law. Legalese is the language of Statue Law which uses terms that mean one thing to the public and another in legalese. Notice that when a police officer tells someone why they are being charged he or she will say at the end: 'Do you understand?' To the public that means 'Do you comprehend?' In legalese it means 'Do you stand under me?' Do you stand under my authority? If you say



yes to the question you are unknowingly agreeing to give them jurisdiction over you in a contract between two corporate entities.

This is a confidence trick in every way. Contracts have to be agreed between informed parties and if you don't know that David Vaughan Icke is agreeing to be the corporation MR DAVID VAUGHAN ICKE you cannot knowingly agree to contract. They are deceiving you and another way they do this is to ask for proof of identity. You usually show them a driving licence or other document on which your corporate name is written. In doing so you are accepting that you are that corporate entity when you are not. Referring to yourself as a 'person' or 'citizen' is also identifying with your corporate fiction which is why I made the Common Law point about the citizen's arrest. If you are approached by a police officer you identify yourself immediately as a living, breathing, man or woman and say 'I do not consent, I do not contract with you and I do not understand' or stand under their authority. I have a Common Law birth certificate as a living man and these are available at no charge from [commonlawcourt.com](http://commonlawcourt.com). Businesses registered under the Statute Law system means that its laws apply. There are, however, ways to run a business under Common Law. Remember all 'Covid' laws and regulations are Statute Law – the law of *contracts* and you do not have to contract. This doesn't mean that you can kill someone and get away with it. Common Law says do no harm and that applies to physical harm, financial harm etc. Police are employees of private corporations and there needs to be a new system of non-corporate Common Law constables operating outside the Statute Law system. If you go to [davidicke.com](http://davidicke.com) and put Common Law into the search engine you will find videos that explain Common Law in much greater detail. It is definitely a road we should walk.

### **With all my heart**

I have heard people say that we are in a spiritual war. I don't like the term 'war' with its Wetiko dynamic, but I know what they mean. Sweep aside all the bodily forms and we are in a situation in which two states of consciousness are seeking very different realities.

Wetiko wants upheaval, chaos, fear, suffering, conflict and control. The other wants love, peace, harmony, fairness and freedom. That's where we are. We should not fall for the idea that Wetiko is all-powerful and there's nothing we can do. Wetiko is not all-powerful. It's a joke, pathetic. It doesn't have to be, but it has made that choice for now. A handful of times over the years when I have felt the presence of its frequency I have allowed it to attach briefly so I could consciously observe its nature. The experience is not pleasant, the energy is heavy and dark, but the ease with which you can kick it back out the door shows that its real power is in persuading us that it has power. It's all a con. Wetiko is a con. It's a trickster and not a power that can control us if we unleash our own. The con is founded on manipulating humanity to give its power to Wetiko which recycles it back to present the illusion that it has power when its power is *ours* that we gave away. This happens on an energetic level and plays out in the world of the seen as humanity giving its power to Wetiko authority which uses that power to control the population when the power is only the power the population has handed over. How could it be any other way for billions to be controlled by a relative few? I have had experiences with people possessed by Wetiko and again you can kick its arse if you do it with an open heart. Oh yes – the *heart* which can transform the world of perceived 'matter'.

We are receiver-transmitters and processors of information, but what information and where from? Information is processed into perception in three main areas – the brain, the heart and the belly. These relate to thinking, knowing, and emotion. Wetiko wants us to be head and belly people which means we think within the confines of the Matrix simulation and low-vibrational emotional reaction scrambles balance and perception. A few minutes on social media and you see how emotion is the dominant force. Woke is all emotion and is therefore thought-free and fact-free. Our heart is something different. It *knows* while the head *thinks* and has to try to work it out because it doesn't know. The human energy field has seven prime vortexes which connect us with wider reality ([Fig 23](#)). Chakra means

'wheels of light' in the Sanskrit language of ancient India. The main ones are: The crown chakra on top of the head; brow (or 'third eye') chakra in the centre of the forehead; throat chakra; heart chakra in the centre of the chest; solar plexus chakra below the sternum; sacral chakra beneath the navel; and base chakra at the bottom of the spine. Each one has a particular function or functions. We feel anxiety and nervousness in the belly where the sacral chakra is located and this processes emotion that can affect the colon to give people 'the shits' or make them 'shit scared' when they are nervous. Chakras all play an important role, but the Mr and Mrs Big is the heart chakra which sits at the centre of the seven, above the chakras that connect us to the 'physical' and below those that connect with higher realms (or at least should). Here in the heart chakra we feel love, empathy and compassion – 'My heart goes out to you'. Those with closed hearts become literally 'heart-less' in their attitudes and behaviour (see Bill Gates). Native Americans portrayed Wetiko with what Paul Levy calls a 'frigid, icy heart, devoid of mercy' (see Bill Gates).



**Figure 23:** The chakra system which interpenetrates the human energy field. The heart chakra is the governor – or should be.

Wetiko trembles at the thought of heart energy which it cannot infiltrate. The frequency is too high. What it seeks to do instead is close the heart chakra vortex to block its perceptual and energetic influence. Psychopaths have 'hearts of stone' and emotionally-damaged people have 'heartache' and 'broken hearts'. The astonishing amount of heart disease is related to heart chakra

disruption with its fundamental connection to the 'physical' heart. Dr Tom Cowan has written an outstanding book challenging the belief that the heart is a pump and making the connection between the 'physical' and spiritual heart. Rudolph Steiner who was way ahead of his time said the same about the fallacy that the heart is a pump. *What?* The heart is not a pump? That's crazy, right? Everybody knows that. Read Cowan's *Human Heart, Cosmic Heart* and you will realise that the very idea of the heart as a pump is ridiculous when you see the evidence. How does blood in the feet so far from the heart get pumped horizontally up the body by the heart?? Cowan explains in the book the real reason why blood moves as it does. Our 'physical' heart is used to symbolise love when the source is really the heart vortex or spiritual heart which is our most powerful energetic connection to 'out there' expanded consciousness. That's why we feel *knowing* – intuitive knowing – in the centre of the chest. Knowing doesn't come from a process of thoughts leading to a conclusion. It is there in an instant all in one go. Our heart knows because of its connection to levels of awareness that *do* know. This is the meaning and source of intuition – intuitive *knowing*.

For the last more than 30 years of uncovering the global game and the nature of reality my heart has been my constant antenna for truth and accuracy. An American intelligence insider once said that I had quoted a disinformant in one of my books and yet I had only quoted the part that was true. He asked: 'How do you do that?' By using my heart antenna was the answer and anyone can do it. Heart-centred is how we are meant to be. With a closed heart chakra we withdraw into a closed mind and the bubble of five-sense reality. If you take a moment to focus your attention on the centre of your chest, picture a spinning wheel of light and see it opening and expanding. You will feel it happening, too, and perceptions of the heart like joy and love as the heart impacts on the mind as they interact. The more the chakra opens the more you will feel expressions of heart consciousness and as the process continues, and becomes part of you, insights and knowings will follow. An open

heart is connected to that level of awareness that knows all is *One*. You will see from its perspective that the fault-lines that divide us are only illusions to control us. An open heart does not process the illusions of race, creed and sexuality except as brief experiences for a consciousness that is all. Our heart does not see division, only unity (Figs 24 and 25). There's something else, too. Our hearts love to laugh. Mark Twain's quote that says 'The human race has one really effective weapon, and that is laughter' is really a reference to the heart which loves to laugh with the joy of knowing the true nature of infinite reality and that all the madness of human society is an illusion of the mind. Twain also said: 'Against the assault of laughter nothing can stand.' This is so true of Wetiko and the Cult. Their insecurity demands that they be taken seriously and their power and authority acknowledged and feared. We should do nothing of the sort. We should not get aggressive or fearful which their insecurity so desires. We should laugh in their face. Even in their no-face as police come over in their face-nappies and expect to be taken seriously. They don't take themselves seriously looking like that so why should we? Laugh in the face of intimidation. Laugh in the face of tyranny. You will see by its reaction that you have pressed all of its buttons. Wetiko does not know what to do in the face of laughter or when its targets refuse to concede their joy to fear. We have seen many examples during the 'Covid' hoax when people have expressed their energetic power and the string puppets of Wetiko retreat with their tail limp between their knees. Laugh – the world is bloody mad after all and if it's a choice between laughter and tears I know which way I'm going.



**Figure 24:** Head consciousness without the heart sees division and everything apart from everything else.



**Figure 25:** Heart consciousness sees everything as One.

## **'Vaccines' and the soul**

The foundation of Wetiko/Archon control of humans is the separation of incarnate five-sense mind from the infinite 'I' and closing the heart chakra where the True 'I' lives during a human life. The goal has been to achieve complete separation in both cases. I was interested therefore to read an account by a French energetic healer of what she said she experienced with a patient who had been given the 'Covid' vaccine. Genuine energy healers can sense information and consciousness fields at different levels of being which are referred to as 'subtle bodies'. She described treating the patient who later returned after having, without the healer's knowledge, two doses of the 'Covid vaccine'. The healer said:

I noticed immediately the change, very heavy energy emanating from [the] subtle bodies. The scariest thing was when I was working on the heart chakra, I connected with her soul: it was detached from the physical body, it had no contact and it was, as if it was floating in a state of total confusion: a damage to the consciousness that loses contact with the physical body, i.e. with our biological machine, there is no longer any communication between them.

I continued the treatment by sending light to the heart chakra, the soul of the person, but it seemed that the soul could no longer receive any light, frequency or energy. It was a very powerful experience for me. Then I understood that this substance is indeed used to detach consciousness so that this consciousness can no longer interact through this body that it possesses in life, where there is no longer any contact, no frequency, no light, no more energetic balance or mind.

This would create a human that is rudderless and at the extreme almost zombie-like operating with a fractional state of consciousness at the mercy of Wetiko. I was especially intrigued by what the healer said in the light of the prediction by the highly-informed Rudolf Steiner more than a hundred years ago. He said:

In the future, we will eliminate the soul with medicine. Under the pretext of a 'healthy point of view', there will be a vaccine by which the human body will be treated as soon as possible directly at birth, so that the human being cannot develop the thought of the existence of soul and Spirit. To materialistic doctors will be entrusted the task of removing the soul of humanity.

As today, people are vaccinated against this disease or that disease, so in the future, children will be vaccinated with a substance that can be produced precisely in such a way that people, thanks to this vaccination, will be immune to being subjected to the 'madness' of spiritual life. He would be extremely smart, but he would not develop a conscience, and that is the true goal of some materialistic circles.

Steiner said the vaccine would detach the physical body from the etheric body (subtle bodies) and 'once the etheric body is detached the relationship between the universe and the etheric body would become extremely unstable, and man would become an automaton'. He said 'the physical body of man must be polished on this Earth by spiritual will – so the vaccine becomes a kind of arymanique (Wetiko) force' and 'man can no longer get rid of a given materialistic feeling'. Humans would then, he said, become 'materialistic of constitution and can no longer rise to the spiritual'. I have been writing for years about DNA being a receiver-transmitter of information that connects us to other levels of reality and these 'vaccines' changing DNA can be likened to changing an antenna and what it can transmit and receive. Such a disconnection would clearly lead to changes in personality and perception. Steiner further predicted the arrival of AI. Big Pharma 'Covid vaccine' makers, expressions of Wetiko, are testing their DNA-manipulating evil on children as I write with a view to giving the 'vaccine' to babies. If it's a soul-body disconnecter – and I say that it is or can be – every child would be disconnected from 'soul' at birth and the 'vaccine' would create a closed system in which spiritual guidance from the greater self would play no part. This has been the ambition of Wetiko all

along. A Pentagon video from 2005 was leaked of a presentation explaining the development of vaccines to change behaviour by their effect on the brain. Those that believe this is not happening with the 'Covid' genetically-modifying procedure masquerading as a 'vaccine' should make an urgent appointment with Naivety Anonymous. Klaus Schwab wrote in 2018:

Neurotechnologies enable us to better influence consciousness and thought and to understand many activities of the brain. They include decoding what we are thinking in fine levels of detail through new chemicals and interventions that can influence our brains to correct for errors or enhance functionality.

The plan is clear and only the heart can stop it. With every heart that opens, every mind that awakens, Wetiko is weakened. Heart and love are far more powerful than head and hate and so nothing like a majority is needed to turn this around.

## **Beyond the Phantom**

Our heart is the prime target of Wetiko and so it must be the answer to Wetiko. We *are* our heart which is part of one heart, the infinite heart. Our heart is where the true self lives in a human life behind firewalls of five-sense illusion when an imposter takes its place – *Phantom Self*; but our heart waits patiently to be set free any time we choose to see beyond the Phantom, beyond Wetiko. A Wetikoed Phantom Self can wreak mass death and destruction while the love of forever is locked away in its heart. The time is here to unleash its power and let it sweep away the fear and despair that is Wetiko. Heart consciousness does not seek manipulated, censored, advantage for its belief or religion, its activism and desires. As an expression of the One it treats all as One with the same rights to freedom and opinion. Our heart demands fairness for itself no more than for others. From this unity of heart we can come together in mutual support and transform this Wetikoed world into what reality is meant to be – a place of love, joy, happiness, fairness, justice and freedom. Wetiko has another agenda and that's why the world is as



it is, but enough of this nonsense. Wetiko can't stay where hearts are open and it works so hard to keep them closed. Fear is its currency and its food source and love in its true sense has no fear. Why would love have fear when it knows it is *All That Is, Has Been, And Ever Can Be* on an eternal exploration of all possibility? Love in this true sense is not the physical attraction that passes for love. This can be an expression of it, yes, but Infinite Love, a love without condition, goes far deeper to the core of all being. It *is* the core of all being. Infinite reality was born from love beyond the illusions of the simulation. Love infinitely expressed is the knowing that all is One and the swiftly-passing experience of separation is a temporary hallucination. You cannot disconnect from Oneness; you can only *perceive* that you have and withdraw from its influence. This is the most important of all perception trickery by the mind parasite that is Wetiko and the foundation of all its potential for manipulation.

If we open our hearts, open the sluice gates of the mind, and redefine self-identity amazing things start to happen. Consciousness expands or contracts in accordance with self-identity. When true self is recognised as infinite awareness and label self – Phantom Self – is seen as only a series of brief experiences life is transformed. Consciousness expands to the extent that self-identity expands and everything changes. You see unity, not division, the picture, not the pixels. From this we can play the long game. No more is an experience something in and of itself, but a fleeting moment in the eternity of forever. Suddenly people in uniform and dark suits are no longer intimidating. Doing what your heart knows to be right is no longer intimidating and consequences for those actions take on the same nature of a brief experience that passes in the blink of an infinite eye. Intimidation is all in the mind. Beyond the mind there is no intimidation.

An open heart does not consider consequences for what it knows to be right. To do so would be to consider not doing what it knows to be right and for a heart in its power that is never an option. The Renegade Mind is really the Renegade Heart. Consideration of consequences will always provide a getaway car for the mind and

the heart doesn't want one. What is right in the light of what we face today is to stop cooperating with Wetiko in all its forms and to do it without fear or compromise. You cannot compromise with tyranny when tyranny always demands more until it has everything. Life is your perception and you are your destiny. Change your perception and you change your life. Change collective perception and we change the world.

*Come on people ... One human family, One heart, One goal ...*  
**FREEEEEEEDOM!**

We must settle for nothing less.

## Postscript

The big scare story as the book goes to press is the 'Indian' variant and the world is being deluged with propaganda about the 'Covid catastrophe' in India which mirrors in its lies and misrepresentations what happened in Italy before the first lockdown in 2020.

The *New York Post* published a picture of someone who had 'collapsed in the street from Covid' in India in April, 2021, which was actually taken during a gas leak in May, 2020. Same old, same old. Media articles in mid-February were asking why India had been so untouched by 'Covid' and then as their vaccine rollout gathered pace the alleged 'cases' began to rapidly increase. Indian 'Covid vaccine' maker Bharat Biotech was funded into existence by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation (the pair announced their divorce in May, 2021, which is a pity because they so deserve each other). The Indian 'Covid crisis' was ramped up by the media to terrify the world and prepare people for submission to still more restrictions. The scam that worked the first time was being repeated only with far more people seeing through the deceit. [Davidicke.com](http://Davidicke.com) and [Ickonic.com](http://Ickonic.com) have sought to tell the true story of what is happening by talking to people living through the Indian nightmare which has nothing to do with 'Covid'. We posted a letter from 'Alisha' in Pune who told a very different story to government and media mendacity. She said scenes of dying people and overwhelmed hospitals were designed to hide what was really happening – genocide and starvation. Alisha said that millions had already died of starvation during the ongoing lockdowns while government and media were lying and making it look like the 'virus':

Restaurants, shops, gyms, theatres, basically everything is shut. The cities are ghost towns. Even so-called 'essential' businesses are only open till 11am in the morning. You basically have just an hour to buy food and then your time is up.

Inter-state travel and even inter-district travel is banned. The cops wait at all major crossroads to question why you are traveling outdoors or to fine you if you are not wearing a mask.

The medical community here is also complicit in genocide, lying about hospitals being full and turning away people with genuine illnesses, who need immediate care. They have even created a shortage of oxygen cylinders.

This is the classic Cult modus operandi played out in every country. Alisha said that people who would not have a PCR test not testing for the 'virus' were being denied hospital treatment. She said the people hit hardest were migrant workers and those in rural areas. Most businesses employed migrant workers and with everything closed there were no jobs, no income and no food. As a result millions were dying of starvation or malnutrition. All this was happening under Prime Minister Narendra Modi, a 100-percent asset of the Cult, and it emphasises yet again the scale of pure anti-human evil we are dealing with. Australia banned its people from returning home from India with penalties for trying to do so of up to five years in jail and a fine of £37,000. The manufactured 'Covid' crisis in India was being prepared to justify further fascism in the West. Obvious connections could be seen between the Indian 'vaccine' programme and increased 'cases' and this became a common theme. The Seychelles, the most per capita 'Covid vaccinated' population in the world, went back into lockdown after a 'surge of cases'.

Long ago the truly evil Monsanto agricultural biotechnology corporation with its big connections to Bill Gates devastated Indian farming with genetically-modified crops. Human rights activist Gurcharan Singh highlighted the efforts by the Indian government to complete the job by destroying the food supply to hundreds of millions with 'Covid' lockdowns. He said that 415 million people at the bottom of the disgusting caste system (still going whatever they say) were below the poverty line and struggled to feed themselves every year. Now the government was imposing lockdown at just the

time to destroy the harvest. This deliberate policy was leading to mass starvation. People may reel back at the suggestion that a government would do that, but Wetiko-controlled 'leaders' are capable of any level of evil. In fact what is described in India is in the process of being instigated worldwide. The food chain and food supply are being targeted at every level to cause world hunger and thus control. Bill Gates is not the biggest owner of farmland in America for no reason and destroying access to food aids both the depopulation agenda and the plan for synthetic 'food' already being funded into existence by Gates. Add to this the coming hyper-inflation from the suicidal creation of fake 'money' in response to 'Covid' and the breakdown of container shipping systems and you have a cocktail that can only lead one way and is meant to. The Cult plan is to crash the entire system to 'build back better' with the Great Reset.

### **'Vaccine' transmission**

Reports from all over the world continue to emerge of women suffering menstrual and fertility problems after having the fake 'vaccine' and of the non-'vaccinated' having similar problems when interacting with the 'vaccinated'. There are far too many for 'coincidence' to be credible. We've had menopausal women getting periods, others having periods stop or not stopping for weeks, passing clots, sometimes the lining of the uterus, breast irregularities, and miscarriages (which increased by 400 percent in parts of the United States). Non-'vaccinated' men and children have suffered blood clots and nose bleeding after interaction with the 'vaccinated'. Babies have died from the effects of breast milk from a 'vaccinated' mother. Awake doctors – the small minority – speculated on the cause of non-'vaccinated' suffering the same effects as the 'vaccinated'. Was it nanotechnology in the synthetic substance transmitting frequencies or was it a straight chemical bioweapon that was being transmitted between people? I am not saying that some kind of chemical transmission is not one possible answer, but the foundation of all that the Cult does is frequency and

this is fertile ground for understanding how transmission can happen. American doctor Carrie Madej, an internal medicine physician and osteopath, has been practicing for the last 20 years, teaching medical students, and she says attending different meetings where the agenda for humanity was discussed. Madej, who operates out of Georgia, did not dismiss other possible forms of transmission, but she focused on frequency in search of an explanation for transmission. She said the Moderna and Pfizer 'vaccines' contained nano-lipid particles as a key component. This was a brand new technology never before used on humanity. 'They're using a nanotechnology which is pretty much little tiny computer bits ... nanobots or hydrogel.' Inside the 'vaccines' was 'this sci-fi kind of substance' which suppressed immune checkpoints to get into the cell. I referred to this earlier as the 'Trojan horse' technique that tricks the cell into opening a gateway for the self-replicating synthetic material and while the immune system is artificially suppressed the body has no defences. Madej said the substance served many purposes including an on-demand ability to 'deliver the payload' and using the nano 'computer bits' as biosensors in the body. 'It actually has the ability to accumulate data from your body, like your breathing, your respiration, thoughts, emotions, all kinds of things.'

She said the technology obviously has the ability to operate through Wi-Fi and transmit and receive energy, messages, frequencies or impulses. 'Just imagine you're getting this new substance in you and it can react to things all around you, the 5G, your smart device, your phones.' We had something completely foreign in the human body that had never been launched large scale at a time when we were seeing 5G going into schools and hospitals (plus the Musk satellites) and she believed the 'vaccine' transmission had something to do with this: '... if these people have this inside of them ... it can act like an antenna and actually transmit it outwardly as well.' The synthetic substance produced its own voltage and so it could have that kind of effect. This fits with my own contention that the nano receiver-transmitters are designed to connect people to the

Smart Grid and break the receiver-transmitter connection to expanded consciousness. That would explain the French energy healer's experience of the disconnection of body from 'soul' with those who have had the 'vaccine'. The nanobots, self-replicating inside the body, would also transmit the synthetic frequency which could be picked up through close interaction by those who have not been 'vaccinated'. Madej speculated that perhaps it was 5G and increased levels of other radiation that was causing the symptoms directly although interestingly she said that non-'vaccinated' patients had shown improvement when they were away from the 'vaccinated' person they had interacted with. It must be remembered that you can control frequency and energy with your mind and you can consciously create energetic barriers or bubbles with the mind to stop damaging frequencies from penetrating your field. American paediatrician Dr Larry Palevsky said the 'vaccine' was not a 'vaccine' and was never designed to protect from a 'viral' infection. He called it 'a massive, brilliant propaganda of genocide' because they didn't have to inject everyone to get the result they wanted. He said the content of the jabs was able to infuse any material into the brain, heart, lungs, kidneys, liver, sperm and female productive system. 'This is genocide; this is a weapon of mass destruction.' At the same time American colleges were banning students from attending if they didn't have this life-changing and potentially life-ending 'vaccine'. Class action lawsuits must follow when the consequences of this college fascism come to light. As the book was going to press came reports about fertility effects on sperm in 'vaccinated' men which would absolutely fit with what I have been saying and hospitals continued to fill with 'vaccine' reactions. Another question is what about transmission via blood transfusions? The NHS has extended blood donation restrictions from seven days after a 'Covid vaccination' to 28 days after even a sore arm reaction.

I said in the spring of 2020 that the then touted 'Covid vaccine' would be ongoing each year like the flu jab. A year later Pfizer CEO, the appalling Albert Bourla, said people would 'likely' need a 'booster dose' of the 'vaccine' within 12 months of getting 'fully

vaccinated' and then a yearly shot. 'Variants will play a key role', he said confirming the point. Johnson & Johnson CEO Alex Gorsky also took time out from his 'vaccine' disaster to say that people may need to be vaccinated against 'Covid-19' each year. UK Health Secretary, the psychopath Matt Hancock, said additional 'boosters' would be available in the autumn of 2021. This is the trap of the 'vaccine passport'. The public will have to accept every last 'vaccine' they introduce, including for the fake 'variants', or it would cease to be valid. The only other way in some cases would be continuous testing with a test not testing for the 'virus' and what is on the swabs constantly pushed up your nose towards the brain every time?

### **'Vaccines' changing behaviour**

I mentioned in the body of the book how I believed we would see gathering behaviour changes in the 'vaccinated' and I am already hearing such comments from the non-'vaccinated' describing behaviour changes in friends, loved ones and work colleagues. This will only increase as the self-replicating synthetic material and nanoparticles expand in body and brain. An article in the *Guardian* in 2016 detailed research at the University of Virginia in Charlottesville which developed a new method for controlling brain circuits associated with complex animal behaviour. The method, dubbed 'magnetogenetics', involves genetically-engineering a protein called ferritin, which stores and releases iron, to create a magnetised substance – 'Magneto' – that can activate specific groups of nerve cells from a distance. This is claimed to be an advance on other methods of brain activity manipulation known as optogenetics and chemogenetics (the Cult has been developing methods of brain control for a long time). The ferritin technique is said to be non-invasive and able to activate neurons 'rapidly and reversibly'. In other words, human thought and perception. The article said that earlier studies revealed how nerve cell proteins 'activated by heat and mechanical pressure can be genetically engineered so that they become sensitive to radio waves and magnetic fields, by attaching them to an iron-storing protein called ferritin, or to inorganic



paramagnetic particles'. Sensitive to radio waves and magnetic fields? You mean like 5G, 6G and 7G? This is the human-AI Smart Grid hive mind we are talking about. The *Guardian* article said:

... the researchers injected Magneto into the striatum of freely behaving mice, a deep brain structure containing dopamine-producing neurons that are involved in reward and motivation, and then placed the animals into an apparatus split into magnetised and non-magnetised sections.

Mice expressing Magneto spent far more time in the magnetised areas than mice that did not, because activation of the protein caused the striatal neurons expressing it to release dopamine, so that the mice found being in those areas rewarding. This shows that Magneto can remotely control the firing of neurons deep within the brain, and also control complex behaviours.

Make no mistake this basic methodology will be part of the 'Covid vaccine' cocktail and using magnetics to change brain function through electromagnetic field frequency activation. The Pentagon is developing a 'Covid vaccine' using ferritin. Magnetics would explain changes in behaviour and why videos are appearing across the Internet as I write showing how magnets stick to the skin at the point of the 'vaccine' shot. Once people take these 'vaccines' anything becomes possible in terms of brain function and illness which will be blamed on 'Covid-19' and 'variants'. Magnetic field manipulation would further explain why the non-'vaccinated' are reporting the same symptoms as the 'vaccinated' they interact with and why those symptoms are reported to decrease when not in their company. Interestingly 'Magneto', a 'mutant', is a character in the Marvel Comic *X-Men* stories with the ability to manipulate magnetic fields and he believes that mutants should fight back against their human oppressors by any means necessary. The character was born Erik Lehnsherr to a Jewish family in Germany.

## **Cult-controlled courts**

The European Court of Human Rights opened the door for mandatory 'Covid-19 vaccines' across the continent when it ruled in a Czech Republic dispute over childhood immunisation that legally

enforced vaccination could be 'necessary in a democratic society'. The 17 judges decided that compulsory vaccinations did not breach human rights law. On the face of it the judgement was so inverted you gasp for air. If not having a vaccine infused into your body is not a human right then what is? Ah, but they said human rights law which has been specifically written to delete all human rights at the behest of the state (the Cult). Article 8 of the European Convention on Human Rights relates to the right to a private life. The crucial word here is '*except*':

There shall be no interference by a public authority with the exercise of this right EXCEPT such as is in accordance with the law and is necessary in a democratic society in the interests of national security, public safety or the economic wellbeing of the country, for the prevention of disorder or crime, for the protection of health or morals, or for the protection of the rights and freedoms of others [My emphasis].

No interference *except* in accordance with the law means there *are* no 'human rights' *except* what EU governments decide you can have at their behest. 'As is necessary in a democratic society' explains that reference in the judgement and 'in the interests of national security, public safety or the economic well-being of the country, for the prevention of disorder or crime, for the protection of health or morals, or for the protection of the rights and freedoms of others' gives the EU a coach and horses to ride through 'human rights' and scatter them in all directions. The judiciary is not a check and balance on government extremism; it is a vehicle to enforce it. This judgement was almost laughably predictable when the last thing the Cult wanted was a decision that went against mandatory vaccination. Judges rule over and over again to benefit the system of which they are a part. Vaccination disputes that come before them are invariably delivered in favour of doctors and authorities representing the view of the state which owns the judiciary. Oh, yes, and we have even had calls to stop putting 'Covid-19' on death certificates within 28 days of a 'positive test' because it is claimed the practice makes the 'vaccine' appear not to work. They are laughing at you.

The scale of madness, inhumanity and things to come was highlighted when those not 'vaccinated' for 'Covid' were refused evacuation from the Caribbean island of St Vincent during massive volcanic eruptions. Cruise ships taking residents to the safety of another island allowed only the 'vaccinated' to board and the rest were left to their fate. Even in life and death situations like this we see 'Covid' stripping people of their most basic human instincts and the insanity is even more extreme when you think that fake 'vaccine'-makers are not even claiming their body-manipulating concoctions stop 'infection' and 'transmission' of a 'virus' that doesn't exist. St Vincent Prime Minister Ralph Gonsalves said: 'The chief medical officer will be identifying the persons already vaccinated so that we can get them on the ship.' Note again the power of the chief medical officer who, like Whitty in the UK, will be answering to the World Health Organization. This is the Cult network structure that has overridden politicians who 'follow the science' which means doing what WHO-controlled 'medical officers' and 'science advisers' tell them. Gonsalves even said that residents who were 'vaccinated' after the order so they could board the ships would still be refused entry due to possible side effects such as 'wooziness in the head'. The good news is that if they were woozy enough in the head they could qualify to be prime minister of St Vincent.

## **Microchipping freedom**

The European judgement will be used at some point to justify moves to enforce the 'Covid' DNA-manipulating procedure. Sandra Ro, CEO of the Global Blockchain Business Council, told a World Economic Forum event that she hoped 'vaccine passports' would help to 'drive forced consent and standardisation' of global digital identity schemes: 'I'm hoping with the desire and global demand for some sort of vaccine passport – so that people can get travelling and working again – [it] will drive forced consent, standardisation, and frankly, cooperation across the world.' The lady is either not very bright, or thoroughly mendacious, to use the term 'forced consent'.

You do not 'consent' if you are forced – you *submit*. She was describing what the plan has been all along and that's to enforce a digital identity on every human without which they could not function. 'Vaccine passports' are opening the door and are far from the end goal. A digital identity would allow you to be tracked in everything you do in cyberspace and this is the same technique used by Cult-owned China to enforce its social credit system of total control. The ultimate 'passport' is planned to be a microchip as my books have warned for nearly 30 years. Those nice people at the Pentagon working for the Cult-controlled Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA) claimed in April, 2021, they have developed a microchip inserted under the skin to detect 'asymptomatic Covid-19 infection' before it becomes an outbreak and a 'revolutionary filter' that can remove the 'virus' from the blood when attached to a dialysis machine. The only problems with this are that the 'virus' does not exist and people transmitting the 'virus' with no symptoms is brain-numbing bullshit. This is, of course, not a ruse to get people to be microchipped for very different reasons. DARPA also said it was producing a one-stop 'vaccine' for the 'virus' and all 'variants'. One of the most sinister organisations on Planet Earth is doing this? Better have it then. These people are insane because Wetiko that possesses them is insane.

Researchers from the Salk Institute in California announced they have created an embryo that is part human and part monkey. My books going back to the 1990s have exposed experiments in top secret underground facilities in the United States where humans are being crossed with animal and non-human 'extraterrestrial' species. They are now easing that long-developed capability into the public arena and there is much more to come given we are dealing with psychiatric basket cases. Talking of which – Elon Musk's scientists at Neuralink trained a monkey to play Pong and other puzzles on a computer screen using a joystick and when the monkey made the correct move a metal tube squirted banana smoothie into his mouth which is the basic technique for training humans into unquestioning compliance. Two Neuralink chips were in the monkey's skull and

more than 2,000 wires 'fanned out' into its brain. Eventually the monkey played a video game purely with its brain waves. Psychopathic narcissist Musk said the 'breakthrough' was a step towards putting Neuralink chips into human skulls and merging minds with artificial intelligence. *Exactly*. This man is so dark and Cult to his DNA.

## **World Economic Fascism (WEF)**

The World Economic Forum is telling you the plan by the statements made at its many and various events. Cult-owned fascist YouTube CEO Susan Wojcicki spoke at the 2021 WEF Global Technology Governance Summit (see the name) in which 40 governments and 150 companies met to ensure 'the responsible design and deployment of emerging technologies'. Orwellian translation: 'Ensuring the design and deployment of long-planned technologies will advance the Cult agenda for control and censorship.' Freedom-destroyer and Nuremberg-bound Wojcicki expressed support for tech platforms like hers to censor content that is 'technically legal but could be harmful'. Who decides what is 'harmful'? She does and they do. 'Harmful' will be whatever the Cult doesn't want people to see and we have legislation proposed by the UK government that would censor content on the basis of 'harm' no matter if the information is fair, legal and provably true. Make that *especially* if it is fair, legal and provably true. Wojcicki called for a global coalition to be formed to enforce content moderation standards through automated censorship. This is a woman and mega-censor so self-deluded that she shamelessly accepted a 'free expression' award – *Wojcicki* – in an event sponsored by her own *YouTube*. They have no shame and no self-awareness.

You know that 'Covid' is a scam and Wojcicki a Cult operative when YouTube is censoring medical and scientific opinion purely on the grounds of whether it supports or opposes the Cult 'Covid' narrative. Florida governor Ron DeSantis compiled an expert panel with four professors of medicine from Harvard, Oxford, and Stanford Universities who spoke against forcing children and

vaccinated people to wear masks. They also said there was no proof that lockdowns reduced spread or death rates of 'Covid-19'. Cult-gofer Wojcicki and her YouTube deleted the panel video 'because it included content that contradicts the consensus of local and global health authorities regarding the efficacy of masks to prevent the spread of Covid-19'. This 'consensus' refers to what the Cult tells the World Health Organization to say and the WHO tells 'local health authorities' to do. Wojcicki knows this, of course. The panellists pointed out that censorship of scientific debate was responsible for deaths from many causes, but Wojcicki couldn't care less. She would not dare go against what she is told and as a disgrace to humanity she wouldn't want to anyway. The UK government is seeking to pass a fascist 'Online Safety Bill' to specifically target with massive fines and other means non-censored video and social media platforms to make them censor 'lawful but harmful' content like the Cult-owned Facebook, Twitter, Google and YouTube. What is 'lawful but harmful' would be decided by the fascist Blair-created Ofcom.

Another WEF obsession is a cyber-attack on the financial system and this is clearly what the Cult has planned to take down the bank accounts of everyone – except theirs. Those that think they have enough money for the Cult agenda not to matter to them have got a big lesson coming if they continue to ignore what is staring them in the face. The World Economic Forum, funded by Gates and fronted by Klaus Schwab, announced it would be running a 'simulation' with the Russian government and global banks of just such an attack called Cyber Polygon 2021. What they simulate – as with the 'Covid' Event 201 – they plan to instigate. The WEF is involved in a project with the Cult-owned Carnegie Endowment for International Peace called the WEF-Carnegie Cyber Policy Initiative which seeks to merge Wall Street banks, 'regulators' (I love it) and intelligence agencies to 'prevent' (arrange and allow) a cyber-attack that would bring down the global financial system as long planned by those that control the WEF and the Carnegie operation. The Carnegie Endowment for International Peace sent an instruction to First World

War US President Woodrow Wilson not to let the war end before society had been irreversibly transformed.

## **The Wuhan lab diversion**

As I close, the Cult-controlled authorities and lapdog media are systematically pushing 'the virus was released from the Wuhan lab' narrative. There are two versions – it happened by accident and it happened on purpose. Both are nonsense. The perceived existence of the never-shown-to-exist 'virus' is vital to sell the impression that there is actually an infective agent to deal with and to allow the endless potential for terrifying the population with 'variants' of a 'virus' that does not exist. The authorities at the time of writing are going with the 'by accident' while the alternative media is promoting the 'on purpose'. Cable news host Tucker Carlson who has questioned aspects of lockdown and 'vaccine' compulsion has bought the Wuhan lab story. 'Everyone now agrees' he said. Well, I don't and many others don't and the question is *why* does the system and its media suddenly 'agree'? When the media moves as one unit with a narrative it is always a lie – witness the hour by hour mendacity of the 'Covid' era. Why would this Cult-owned combination which has unleashed lies like machine gun fire suddenly 'agree' to tell the truth??

Much of the alternative media is buying the lie because it fits the conspiracy narrative, but it's the *wrong* conspiracy. The real conspiracy is that *there is no virus* and that is what the Cult is desperate to hide. The idea that the 'virus' was released by accident is ludicrous when the whole 'Covid' hoax was clearly long-planned and waiting to be played out as it was so fast in accordance with the Rockefeller document and Event 201. So they prepared everything in detail over decades and then sat around strumming their fingers waiting for an 'accidental' release from a bio-lab? *What??* It's crazy. Then there's the 'on purpose' claim. You want to circulate a 'deadly virus' and hide the fact that you've done so and you release it down the street from the highest-level bio-lab in China? I repeat – *What??*

You would release it far from that lab to stop any association being made. But, no, we'll do it in a place where the connection was certain to be made. Why would you need to scam 'cases' and 'deaths' and pay hospitals to diagnose 'Covid-19' if you had a real 'virus'? What are sections of the alternative media doing believing this crap? Where were all the mass deaths in Wuhan from a 'deadly pathogen' when the recovery to normal life after the initial propaganda was dramatic in speed? Why isn't the 'deadly pathogen' now circulating all over China with bodies in the street? Once again we have the technique of tell them what they want to hear and they will likely believe it. The alternative media has its 'conspiracy' and with Carlson it fits with his 'China is the danger' narrative over years. China *is* a danger as a global Cult operations centre, but not for this reason. The Wuhan lab story also has the potential to instigate conflict with China when at some stage the plan is to trigger a Problem-Reaction-Solution confrontation with the West. Question everything – *everything* – and especially when the media agrees on a common party line.

### **Third wave ... fourth wave ... fifth wave ...**

As the book went into production the world was being set up for more lockdowns and a 'third wave' supported by invented 'variants' that were increasing all the time and will continue to do so in public statements and computer programs, but not in reality. India became the new Italy in the 'Covid' propaganda campaign and we were told to be frightened of the new 'Indian strain'. Somehow I couldn't find it within myself to do so. A document produced for the UK government entitled 'Summary of further modelling of easing of restrictions – Roadmap Step 2' declared that a third wave was inevitable (of course when it's in the script) and it would be the fault of children and those who refuse the health-destroying fake 'Covid vaccine'. One of the computer models involved came from the Cult-owned *Imperial College* and the other from Warwick University which I wouldn't trust to tell me the date in a calendar factory. The document states that both models presumed extremely high uptake



of the 'Covid vaccines' and didn't allow for 'variants'. The document states: 'The resurgence is a result of some people (mostly children) being ineligible for vaccination; others choosing not to receive the vaccine; and others being vaccinated but not perfectly protected.' The mendacity takes the breath away. Okay, blame those with a brain who won't take the DNA-modifying shots and put more pressure on children to have it as 'trials' were underway involving children as young as six months with parents who give insanity a bad name. Massive pressure is being put on the young to have the fake 'vaccine' and child age consent limits have been systematically lowered around the world to stop parents intervening. Most extraordinary about the document was its claim that the 'third wave' would be driven by 'the resurgence in both hospitalisations and deaths ... dominated by *those that have received two doses of the vaccine*, comprising around 60-70% of the wave respectively'. The predicted peak of the 'third wave' suggested 300 deaths per day with 250 of them *fully 'vaccinated' people*. How many more lies do acquiescers need to be told before they see the obvious? Those who took the job to 'protect themselves' are projected to be those who mostly get sick and die? So what's in the 'vaccine'? The document went on:

It is possible that a summer of low prevalence could be followed by substantial increases in incidence over the following autumn and winter. Low prevalence in late summer should not be taken as an indication that SARS-CoV-2 has retreated or that the population has high enough levels of immunity to prevent another wave.

They are telling you the script and while many British people believed 'Covid' restrictions would end in the summer of 2021 the government was preparing for them to be ongoing. Authorities were awarding contracts for 'Covid marshals' to police the restrictions with contracts starting in July, 2021, and going through to January 31st, 2022, and the government was advertising for 'Media Buying Services' to secure media propaganda slots worth a potential £320 million for 'Covid-19 campaigns' with a contract not ending until March, 2022. The recipient – via a list of other front companies – was reported to be American media marketing giant Omnicom Group

Inc. While money is no object for 'Covid' the UK waiting list for all other treatment – including life-threatening conditions – passed 4.5 million. Meantime the Cult is seeking to control all official 'inquiries' to block revelations about what has really been happening and why. It must not be allowed to – we need Nuremberg jury trials in every country. The cover-up doesn't get more obvious than appointing ultra-Zionist professor Philip Zelikow to oversee two dozen US virologists, public health officials, clinicians, former government officials and four American 'charitable foundations' to 'learn the lessons' of the 'Covid' debacle. The personnel will be those that created and perpetuated the 'Covid' lies while Zelikow is the former executive director of the 9/11 Commission who ensured that the truth about those attacks never came out and produced a report that must be among the most mendacious and manipulative documents ever written – see *The Trigger* for the detailed exposure of the almost unimaginable 9/11 story in which Sabbatians can be found at every level.

## **Passive no more**

People are increasingly challenging the authorities with amazing numbers of people taking to the streets in London well beyond the ability of the Face-Nappies to stop them. Instead the Nappies choose situations away from the mass crowds to target, intimidate, and seek to promote the impression of 'violent protestors'. One such incident happened in London's Hyde Park. Hundreds of thousands walking through the streets in protest against 'Covid' fascism were ignored by the Cult-owned BBC and most of the rest of the mainstream media, but they delighted in reporting how police were injured in 'clashes with protestors'. The truth was that a group of people gathered in Hyde Park at the end of one march when most had gone home and they were peacefully having a good time with music and chat. Face-Nappies who couldn't deal with the full-march crowd then waded in with their batons and got more than they bargained for. Instead of just standing for this criminal brutality the crowd used their numerical superiority to push the Face-Nappies out of the

park. Eventually the Nappies turned and ran. Unfortunately two or three idiots in the crowd threw drink cans striking two officers which gave the media and the government the image they wanted to discredit the 99.9999 percent who were peaceful. The idiots walked straight into the trap and we must always be aware of potential agent provocateurs used by the authorities to discredit their targets.

This response from the crowd – the can people apart – must be a turning point when the public no longer stand by while the innocent are arrested and brutally attacked by the Face-Nappies. That doesn't mean to be violent, that's the last thing we need. We'll leave the violence to the Face-Nappies and government. But it does mean that when the Face-Nappies use violence against peaceful people the numerical superiority is employed to stop them and make citizen's arrests or Common Law arrests for a breach of the peace. The time for being passive in the face of fascism is over.

We are the many, they are the few, and we need to make that count before there is no freedom left and our children and grandchildren face an ongoing fascist nightmare.

*COME ON PEOPLE – IT'S TIME.*

### **One final thought ...**

The power of love  
A force from above  
Cleaning my soul  
Flame on burn desire  
Love with tongues of fire  
Purge the soul  
Make love your goal

I'll protect you from the hooded claw  
Keep the vampires from your door  
When the chips are down I'll be around  
With my undying, death-defying  
Love for you

Envy will hurt itself  
Let yourself be beautiful  
Sparkling love, flowers  
And pearls and pretty girls  
Love is like an energy  
Rushin' rushin' inside of me

This time we go sublime  
Lovers entwine, divine, divine,  
Love is danger, love is pleasure  
Love is pure – the only treasure

I'm so in love with you  
Purge the soul  
Make love your goal

The power of love  
A force from above  
Cleaning my soul  
The power of love  
A force from above  
A sky-scraping dove

Flame on burn desire  
Love with tongues of fire  
Purge the soul  
Make love your goal

**Frankie Goes To Hollywood**

## APPENDIX

### **Cowan-Kaufman-Morell Statement on Virus Isolation (SOVI)**

*Isolation: The action of isolating; the fact or condition of being isolated or standing alone; separation from other things or persons; solitariness*

Oxford English Dictionary

The controversy over whether the SARS-CoV-2 virus has ever been isolated or purified continues. However, using the above definition, common sense, the laws of logic and the dictates of science, any unbiased person must come to the conclusion that the SARS-CoV-2 virus has never been isolated or purified. As a result, no confirmation of the virus' existence can be found. The logical, common sense, and scientific consequences of this fact are:

- the structure and composition of something not shown to exist can't be known, including the presence, structure, and function of any hypothetical spike or other proteins;
- the genetic sequence of something that has never been found can't be known;
- "variants" of something that hasn't been shown to exist can't be known;
- it's impossible to demonstrate that SARS-CoV-2 causes a disease called Covid-19.

In as concise terms as possible, here's the proper way to isolate, characterize and demonstrate a new virus. First, one takes samples (blood, sputum, secretions) from many people (e.g. 500) with symptoms which are unique and specific enough to characterize an illness. Without mixing these samples with ANY tissue or products that also contain genetic material, the virologist macerates, filters and ultracentrifuges i.e. *purifies* the specimen. This common virology technique, done for decades to isolate bacteriophages<sup>1</sup> and so-called giant viruses in every virology lab, then allows the virologist to demonstrate with electron microscopy thousands of identically sized and shaped particles. These particles are the isolated and purified virus.

These identical particles are then checked for uniformity by physical and/or microscopic techniques. Once the purity is determined, the particles may be further characterized. This would include examining the structure, morphology, and chemical composition of the particles. Next, their genetic makeup is characterized by extracting the genetic material directly from the purified particles and using genetic-sequencing techniques, such as Sanger sequencing, that have also been around for decades. Then one does an analysis to confirm that these uniform particles are exogenous (outside) in origin as a virus is conceptualized to be, and not the normal breakdown products of dead and dying tissues.<sup>2</sup> (As of May 2020, we know that virologists have no way to determine whether the particles they're seeing are viruses or just normal breakdown products of dead and dying tissues.)<sup>3</sup>

---

1 Isolation, characterization and analysis of bacteriophages from the haloalkaline lake Elmenteita, Kenya Julia Khayeli Akhwale et al, PLOS One, Published: April 25, 2019.  
<https://journals.plos.org/plosone/article?id=10.1371/journal.pone.0215734> – accessed 2/15/21

---

2 "Extracellular Vesicles Derived From Apoptotic Cells: An Essential Link Between Death and Regeneration," Maojiao Li et al, Frontiers in Cell and Developmental Biology, 2020 October 2.  
<https://www.frontiersin.org/articles/10.3389/fcell.2020.573511/full> – accessed 2/15/21

If we have come this far then we have fully isolated, characterized, and genetically sequenced an exogenous virus particle. However, we still have to show it is causally related to a disease. This is carried out by exposing a group of healthy subjects (animals are usually used) to this isolated, purified virus in the manner in which the disease is thought to be transmitted. If the animals get sick with the same disease, as confirmed by clinical and autopsy findings, one has now shown that the virus actually causes a disease. This demonstrates infectivity and transmission of an infectious agent.

None of these steps has even been attempted with the SARS-CoV-2 virus, nor have all these steps been successfully performed for any so-called pathogenic virus. Our research indicates that a single study showing these steps does not exist in the medical literature.

Instead, since 1954, virologists have taken unpurified samples from a relatively few people, often less than ten, with a similar disease. They then minimally process this sample and inoculate this unpurified sample onto tissue culture containing usually four to six other types of material – all of which contain identical genetic material as to what is called a “virus.” The tissue culture is starved and poisoned and naturally disintegrates into many types of particles, some of which contain genetic material. Against all common sense, logic, use of the English language and scientific integrity, this process is called “virus isolation.” This brew containing fragments of genetic material from many sources is then subjected to genetic analysis, which then creates in a computer-simulation process the alleged sequence of the alleged virus, a so called in silico genome. At no time is an actual virus confirmed by electron microscopy. At no time is a genome extracted and sequenced from an actual virus. This is scientific fraud.



The observation that the unpurified specimen — inoculated onto tissue culture along with toxic antibiotics, bovine fetal tissue, amniotic fluid and other tissues — destroys the kidney tissue onto which it is inoculated is given as evidence of the virus' existence and pathogenicity. This is scientific fraud.

From now on, when anyone gives you a paper that suggests the SARS-CoV-2 virus has been isolated, please check the methods sections. If the researchers used Vero cells or any other culture method, you know that their process was not isolation. You will hear the following excuses for why actual isolation isn't done:

1. There were not enough virus particles found in samples from patients to analyze.
2. Viruses are intracellular parasites; they can't be found outside the cell in this manner.

If No. 1 is correct, and we can't find the virus in the sputum of sick people, then on what evidence do we think the virus is dangerous or even lethal? If No. 2 is correct, then how is the virus spread from person to person? We are told it emerges from the cell to infect others. Then why isn't it possible to find it?

Finally, questioning these virology techniques and conclusions is not some distraction or divisive issue. Shining the light on this truth is essential to stop this terrible fraud that humanity is confronting. For, as we now know, if the virus has never been isolated, sequenced or shown to cause illness, if the virus is imaginary, then why are we wearing masks, social distancing and putting the whole world into prison?

Finally, if pathogenic viruses don't exist, then what is going into those injectable devices erroneously called "vaccines," and what is their purpose? This scientific question is the most urgent and relevant one of our time.

We are correct. The SARS-CoV2 virus does not exist.

Sally Fallon Morell, MA

Dr. Thomas Cowan, MD

Dr. Andrew Kaufman, MD

# Bibliography

- Alinsky, Saul:** *Rules for Radicals* (Vintage, 1989)
- Antelman, Rabbi Marvin:** *To Eliminate the Opiate* (Zahavia, 1974)
- Bastardi, Joe:** *The Climate Chronicles* (Relentless Thunder Press, 2018)
- Cowan, Tom:** *Human Heart, Cosmic Heart* (Chelsea Green Publishing, 2016)
- Cowan, Tom, and Fallon Morell, Sally:** *The Contagion Myth* (Skyhorse Publishing, 2020)
- Forbes, Jack D:** *Columbus And Other Cannibals – The Wetiko Disease of Exploitation, Imperialism, and Terrorism* (Seven Stories Press, 2008 – originally published in 1979)
- Gates, Bill:** *How to Avoid a Climate Disaster: The Solutions We Have and the Breakthroughs We Need* (Allen Lane, 2021)
- Huxley, Aldous:** *Brave New World* (Chatto & Windus, 1932)
- Köhnlein, Dr Claus, and Engelbrecht, Torsten:** *Virus Mania* (emu-Verlag, Lahnstein, 2020)
- Lanza, Robert, and Berman, Bob:** *Biocentrism* (BenBella Books, 2010)
- Lash, John Lamb:** *Not In His Image* (Chelsea Green Publishing, 2006)
- Lester, Dawn, and Parker, David:** *What Really Makes You Ill – Why everything you thought you knew about disease is wrong* (Independently Published, 2019)
- Levy, Paul:** *Dispelling Wetiko, Breaking the Spell of Evil* (North Atlantic Books, 2013)
- Marx, Karl:** *A World Without Jews* (Philosophical Library, first edition, 1959)
- Mullis, Kary:** *Dancing Naked in the Mine Field* (Bloomsbury, 1999)
- O'Brien, Cathy:** *Trance-Formation of America* (Reality Marketing, 1995)
- Scholem, Gershon:** *The Messianic Idea in Judaism* (Schocken Books, 1994)
- Schwab, Klaus, and Davis, Nicholas:** *Shaping the Future of the Fourth Industrial Revolution: A guide to building a better world* (Penguin Books, 2018)
- Schwab, Klaus:** *The Great Reset* (Agentur Schweiz, 2020)
- Sunstein, Cass and Thaler, Richard:** *Nudge: Improving Decisions About Health, Wealth, and Happiness* (Penguin, 2009)
- Swan, Shanna:** *Count Down: How Our Modern World Is Threatening Sperm Counts, Altering Male and Female Reproductive Development and Imperiling the Future of the Human Race* (Scribner, 2021)
- Tegmark, Max:** *Our Mathematical Universe: My Quest for the Ultimate Nature of Reality* (Penguin, 2015)
- Velikovsky, Immanuel:** *Worlds in Collision* (Paradigma, 2009)

**Wilton, Robert:** *The Last Days of the Romanovs* (Blurb, 2018, first published 1920)

# Index

## A

### **abusive relationships**

blaming themselves, abused as [ref1](#)

children [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)

conspiracy theories [ref1](#)

domestic abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

economic abuse and dependency [ref1](#)

isolation [ref1](#)

physical abuse [ref1](#)

psychological abuse [ref1](#)

signs of abuse [ref1](#)

### **addiction**

alcoholism [ref1](#)

frequencies [ref1](#)

substance abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

technology [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Adelson, Sheldon** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Agenda 21/Agenda 2030 (UN)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**AIDs/HIV** [ref1](#)

causal link between HIV and AIDs [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

retroviruses [ref1](#)

testing [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

trial-run for Covid-19, as [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**aliens/extraterrestrials** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**aluminium** [ref1](#)

**Amazon** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**amplification cycles** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**anaphylactic shock** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**animals** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**antibodies** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
**Antifa** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**antigens** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**anti-Semitism** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Archons** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    energy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    ennoia [ref1](#)  
    genetic manipulation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    inversion [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    lockdowns [ref1](#)  
    money [ref1](#)  
    radiation [ref1](#)  
    religion [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    technology [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**artificial intelligence (AI)** [ref1](#)  
**army made up of robots** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    Human 2.0 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    Internet [ref1](#)  
    MHRA [ref1](#)  
    Morgellons fibres [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    Smart Grid [ref1](#)  
    Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
**asymptomatic, Covid-19 as** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**aviation industry** [ref1](#)

## **B**

**banking, finance and money** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

2008 crisis [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

boom and bust [ref1](#)

cashless digital money systems [ref1](#)

central banks [ref1](#)

credit [ref1](#)

digital currency [ref1](#)

fractional reserve lending [ref1](#)

Great Reset [ref1](#)

guaranteed income [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Human 2.0 [ref1](#)

incomes, destruction of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

interest [ref1](#)

one per cent [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

scams [ref1](#)

**BBC** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

**Becker-Phelps, Leslie** [ref1](#)

**Behavioural Insights Team (BIT) (Nudge Unit)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**behavioural scientists *and* psychologists, advice from** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Bezos, Jeff** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Biden, Hunter** [ref1](#)

**Biden, Joe** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#),  
[ref12](#), [ref13](#), [ref14](#), [ref15](#), [ref16](#), [ref17](#)

**Big Pharma**

cholesterol [ref1](#)

health professionals [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

immunity from prosecution in US [ref1](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

WHO [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#),  
[ref7](#)

**billionaires** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#) [ref10](#), [ref11](#)

**bird flu (H5N1)** [ref1](#)

**Black Lives Matter (BLM)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**Blair, Tony** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

**Brin, Sergei** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

**British Empire** [ref1](#)

**Bush, George HW** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Bush, George W** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Byrd, Robert** [ref1](#)

## **C**

### **Canada**

Global Cult [ref1](#)

hate speech [ref1](#)

internment [ref1](#)

masks [ref1](#)

old people [ref1](#)

SARS-COV-2 [ref1](#)

satellites [ref1](#)

vaccines [ref1](#)

wearable technology [ref1](#)

**Capitol Hill riot** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

agents provocateur [ref1](#)

Antifa [ref1](#)

Black Lives Matter (BLM) [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

QAnon [ref1](#)

security precautions, lack of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**carbon dioxide** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**care homes, deaths in** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**cashless digital money systems** [ref1](#)

**censorship** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)



fact-checkers [ref1](#)

masks [ref1](#)

media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

private messages [ref1](#)

social media [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

transgender persons [ref1](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#)

**Centers for Disease Control (CDC) (United States)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#),  
[ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#), [ref13](#)

**centralisation** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

**chakras** [ref1](#)

**change agents** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**chemtrails** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**chief medical officers and scientific advisers** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#),  
[ref5](#), [ref6](#)

**children** *see also* **young people**

abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)

care, taken into [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

education [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

energy [ref1](#)

family courts [ref1](#)

hand sanitisers [ref1](#)

human sacrifice [ref1](#)

lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

mental health [ref1](#)

old people [ref1](#)

parents, replacement of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

reframing [ref1](#)

smartphone addiction [ref1](#)

social distancing and isolation [ref1](#)  
social media [ref1](#)  
transgender persons [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
United States [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

## **China** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

anal swab tests [ref1](#)  
**Chinese Revolution** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
digital currency [ref1](#)  
Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)  
guaranteed income [ref1](#)  
Imperial College [ref1](#)  
Israel [ref1](#)  
lockdown [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
masculinity crisis [ref1](#)  
masks [ref1](#)  
media [ref1](#)  
origins of virus in China [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
pollution causing respiratory diseases [ref1](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Smart Grid [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
social credit system [ref1](#)  
testing [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
wet market conspiracy [ref1](#)  
Wuhan [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

## **cholesterol** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

## **Christianity** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

criticism [ref1](#)  
cross, inversion of the [ref1](#)

Nag Hammadi texts [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Roman Catholic Church [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Satan [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#)

**class** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**climate change hoax** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Agenda 21/Agenda 2030 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

carbon dioxide [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Club of Rome [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

fear [ref1](#)

funding [ref1](#)

Global Cult [ref1](#)

green new deals [ref1](#)

green parties [ref1](#)

inversion [ref1](#)

perception, control of [ref1](#)

PICC [ref1](#)

reframing [ref1](#)

temperature, increases in [ref1](#)

United Nations [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Wikipedia [ref1](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Clinton, Bill** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

**Clinton, Hillary** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**the cloud** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

**Club of Rome and climate change hoax** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**cognitive therapy** [ref1](#)

**Cohn, Roy** [ref1](#)

**Common Law** [ref1](#)

Admiralty Law [ref1](#)

arrests [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

contractual law, Statute Law as [ref1](#)

corporate entities, people as [ref1](#)

legalese [ref1](#)

sea, law of the [ref1](#)

Statute Law [ref1](#)

**Common Purpose leadership programme** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**communism** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**co-morbidities** [ref1](#)

**computer-generated virus,**

**Covid-19** as [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**computer models** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**connections** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**consciousness** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

expanded [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

experience [ref1](#)

heart [ref1](#)

infinity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

religion [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

self-identity [ref1](#)

simulation thesis [ref1](#)

vaccines [ref1](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**conspiracy theorists** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**contradictory rules** [ref1](#)

**contrails** [ref1](#)

**Corman-Drosten test** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**countermimicry** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Covid-19 vaccines** *see* vaccines

**Covidiots** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Cowan, Tom** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**crimes against humanity** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

cyber-operations [ref1](#)

cyberwarfare [ref1](#)

## **D**

DARPA (Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency) [ref1](#)

deaths

care homes [ref1](#)

certificates [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

mortality rate [ref1](#)

post-mortems/autopsies [ref1](#)

recording [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

deceit

pyramid of deceit [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

sequence of deceit [ref1](#)

decoding [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

dehumanisation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Delphi technique [ref1](#)

democracy [ref1](#)

dependency [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Descartes, René [ref1](#)

DNA

numbers [ref1](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)

DNR (do not resuscitate)

orders [ref1](#)

domestic abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

downgrading of Covid-19 [ref1](#)

Drosten, Christian [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

Duesberg, Peter [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

## **E**

**economic abuse** [ref1](#)

**Edmunds, John** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**education** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**electromagnetic spectrum** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Enders, John** [ref1](#)

**energy**

Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

children and young people [ref1](#)

consciousness [ref1](#)

decoding [ref1](#)

frequencies [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

heart [ref1](#)

human energy field [ref1](#)

source, humans as an energy [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

vaccines [ref1](#)

viruses [ref1](#)

**ennoia** [ref1](#)

**Epstein, Jeffrey** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**eternal 'I'** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**ethylene oxide** [ref1](#)

**European Union** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Event** [ref1](#) *and* **Bill Gates** [ref2](#)

**exosomes, Covid-19 as natural defence mechanism called** [ref1](#)

**experience** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Extinction Rebellion** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

## **F**

**Facebook**

addiction [ref1](#), 448–50

Facebook

Archons [ref1](#)

censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

hate speech [ref1](#)

monopoly, as [ref1](#)

private messages, censorship of [ref1](#)

Sabbatians [ref1](#)

United States election fraud [ref1](#)

vaccines [ref1](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

**fact-checkers** [ref1](#)

**Fauci, Anthony** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#),  
[ref11](#), [ref12](#)

**fear** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

climate change [ref1](#)

computer models [ref1](#)

conspiracy theories [ref1](#)

empty hospitals [ref1](#)

Italy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

medical staff [ref1](#)

Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**female infertility** [ref1](#)

**Fermi Paradox** [ref1](#)

**Ferguson, Neil** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

**fertility, decline in** [ref1](#)

**The Field** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

**finance** *see* **banking, finance and money**

**five-senses** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

censorship [ref1](#)  
consciousness, expansion of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
decoding [ref1](#)  
education [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
the Field [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
God, personification of [ref1](#)  
infinity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
media [ref1](#)  
paranormal [ref1](#)  
perceptual programming [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Phantom Self [ref1](#)  
pneuma not nous, using [ref1](#)  
reincarnation [ref1](#)  
self-identity [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
**5G** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)  
**Floyd, George and protests, killing of** [ref1](#)  
**flu, re-labelling of** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**food and water, control of** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Freemasons** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
**Frei, Rosemary** [ref1](#)  
**frequencies**  
addictions [ref1](#)  
Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
awareness [ref1](#)  
chanting and mantras [ref1](#)  
consciousness [ref1](#)  
decoding [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
education [ref1](#)  
electromagnetic (EMF) frequencies [ref1](#)  
energy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
fear [ref1](#)



the Field [ref1](#), [ref2](#) 5G [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)  
five-senses [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
ghosts [ref1](#)  
Gnostics [ref1](#)  
hive-minds [ref1](#)  
human, meaning of [ref1](#)  
light [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
love [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
magnetism [ref1](#)  
perception [ref1](#)  
reality [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
simulation [ref1](#)  
terror [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
Wetiko [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Fuellmich, Reiner** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**furlough/rescue payments** [ref1](#)

## **G**

**Gallo, Robert** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Gates, Bill**

Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Daily Pass tracking system [ref1](#)  
Epstein [ref1](#)  
fascism [ref1](#)  
five senses [ref1](#)  
GAVI [ref1](#)  
Great Reset [ref1](#)  
GSK [ref1](#)  
Imperial College [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Johns Hopkins University [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

masks [ref1](#)

Nuremberg trial, proposal for [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Rockefellers [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

social distancing and isolation [ref1](#)

Sun, dimming the [ref1](#)

synthetic meat [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

Wellcome Trust [ref1](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

WHO [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#)

World Economic Forum [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Gates, Melinda** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**GAVI vaccine alliance** [ref1](#)

**genetics, manipulation of** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Germany** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#) *see also* **Nazi Germany**

**Global Cult** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

anti-human, why Global Cult is [ref1](#)

Black Lives Matter (BLM) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

China [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)

climate change hoax [ref1](#)

contradictory rules [ref1](#)

Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

fascism [ref1](#)

geographical origins [ref1](#)

immigration [ref1](#)

Internet [ref1](#)

mainstream media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

monarchy [ref1](#)

non-human dimension [ref1](#)

perception [ref1](#)  
political parties [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
pyramidal hierarchy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
reframing [ref1](#)  
Sabbatian-Frankism [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
science, manipulation of [ref1](#)  
spider and the web [ref1](#)  
transgender persons [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
who controls the Cult [ref1](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**globalisation** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Gnostics** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**Google** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**government**

behavioural scientists and psychologists, advice from [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

definition [ref1](#)

Joint Biosecurity Centre (JBC) [ref1](#)

people, abusive relationship with [ref1](#)

**Great Reset** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

fascism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

financial system [ref1](#)

Human 2.0 [ref1](#)

water and food, control of [ref1](#)

**green parties** [ref1](#)

**Griesz-Brisson, Margarite** [ref1](#)

**guaranteed income** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**H**

**Hancock, Matt** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**hand sanitisers** [ref1](#)

**heart** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**hive-minds/groupthink** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**holographs** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**hospitals, empty** [ref1](#)

**human, meaning of** [ref1](#)

**Human 2.0** [ref1](#)

addiction to technology [ref1](#)

artificial intelligence (AI) [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

elimination of Human 1.0 [ref1](#)

fertility, decline in [ref1](#)

Great Reset [ref1](#)

implantables [ref1](#)

money [ref1](#)

mRNA [ref1](#)

nanotechnology [ref1](#)

parents, replacement of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Smart Grid, connection to [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

synthetic biology [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

testosterone levels, decrease in [ref1](#)

transgender = transhumanism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**human sacrifice** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Hunger Games Society** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

**Huxley, Aldous** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**I**

**identity politics** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Illuminati** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**illusory physical reality** [ref1](#)

**immigration** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Imperial College** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

**implantables** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**incomes, destruction of** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Infinite Awareness** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Internet** [ref1](#), [ref2](#) *see also* social media

artificial intelligence (AI) [ref1](#)

independent journalism, lack of [ref1](#)

Internet of Bodies (IoB) [ref1](#)

**Internet of Everything (IoE)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Internet of Things (IoT)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**lockdowns** [ref1](#)

Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#)  
trolls [ref1](#)

**intersectionality** [ref1](#)

**inversion**

Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

climate change hoax [ref1](#)

energy [ref1](#)

Judaism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

symbolism [ref1](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Islam**

Archons [ref1](#)

crypto-Jews [ref1](#)

Islamic State [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Jinn and Djinn [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Ottoman Empire [ref1](#)

Wahhabism [ref1](#)

**isolation** *see* **social distancing** *and* **isolation**

**Israel**

China [ref1](#)

Cyber Intelligence Unit Beersheba complex [ref1](#)

expansion of illegal settlements [ref1](#)

formation [ref1](#)  
Global Cult [ref1](#)  
Judaism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
medical experiments, consent for [ref1](#)  
Mossad [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Palestine-Israel conflict [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
parents, replacement of [ref1](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on United States [ref1](#)  
Silicon Valley [ref1](#)  
Smart Grid [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

## **Italy**

fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Lombardy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)

## **J**

**Johns Hopkins University** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
**Johnson, Boris** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)  
**Joint Biosecurity Centre (JBC)** [ref1](#)

## **Judaism**

anti-Semitism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
crypto-Jews [ref1](#)  
inversion [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Israel [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
Labour Party [ref1](#)  
Nazi Germany [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Silicon Valley [ref1](#)  
Torah [ref1](#)  
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Zionists [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

## **K**

Kaufman, Andrew [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
knowledge [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
Koch's postulates [ref1](#)  
Kurzweil, Ray [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
Kushner, Jared [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

## **L**

Labour Party [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Lanka, Stefan [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Lateral Flow Device (LFD) [ref1](#)  
Levy, Paul [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Life Program [ref1](#)  
lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    amplification tampering [ref1](#)  
    Archons [ref1](#)  
    Behavioural Insights Team [ref1](#)  
    Black Lives Matter (BLM) [ref1](#)  
    care homes, deaths in [ref1](#)  
    children  
abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
mental health [ref1](#)  
    China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    computer models [ref1](#)  
    consequences [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    dependency [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

domestic abuse [ref1](#)  
fall in cases [ref1](#)  
fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
guaranteed income [ref1](#)  
Hunger Games Society [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
interaction, destroying [ref1](#)  
Internet [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
overdoses [ref1](#)  
perception [ref1](#)  
police-military state [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
protests [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
psychopathic personality [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
reporting/snitching, encouragement of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
testing [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
WHO [ref1](#)  
**love** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Lucifer** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

## **M**

**Madej, Carrie** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Magufuli, John** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**mainstream media** [ref1](#)  
BBC [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)  
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
China [ref1](#)  
climate change hoax [ref1](#)  
fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
independent journalism, lack of [ref1](#)  
Ofcom [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)



perception [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#)

Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

social disapproval [ref1](#)

social distancing and isolation [ref1](#)

United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**Mao Zedong** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Marx and Marxism** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

**masculinity** [ref1](#)

**masks/face coverings** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

    censorship [ref1](#)

    children [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

    China, made in [ref1](#)

    dehumanisation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

    fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

    flu [ref1](#)

    health professionals [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

    isolation [ref1](#)

    laughter [ref1](#)

**mass non-cooperation** [ref1](#)

**microplastics, risk of** [ref1](#)

**mind control** [ref1](#)

**multiple masks** [ref1](#)

oxygen deficiency [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

police [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

pollution, as cause of plastic [ref1](#)

Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#)

reframing [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

risk assessments, lack of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

self-respect [ref1](#)

surgeons [ref1](#)

United States [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
'worms' [ref1](#)  
*The Matrix* movies [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
measles [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
media see mainstream media  
Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA)  
[ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**Mesopotamia** [ref1](#)  
**messaging** [ref1](#)  
**military-police state** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**mind control** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#) *see also* MKUltra  
MKUltra [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**monarchy** [ref1](#)  
**money** *see* banking, finance and money  
**Montagnier, Luc** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Mooney, Bel** [ref1](#)  
**Morgellons disease** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**mortality rate** [ref1](#)  
**Mullis, Kary** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Musk, Elon** [ref1](#)

## **N**

**Nag Hammadi texts** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**nanotechnology** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**narcissism** [ref1](#)  
**Nazi Germany** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)  
**near-death experiences** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Neocons** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Neuro-Linguistic Programming (NLP) and the Delphi technique**  
[ref1](#)

**NHS (National Health Service)**

amplification cycles [ref1](#)

Common Purpose [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

mind control [ref1](#)

**NHS England** [ref1](#)

saving the NHS [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

whistle-blowers [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**No-Problem-Reaction-Solution** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**non-human dimension of Global Cult** [ref1](#)

**nous** [ref1](#)

**numbers, reality as** [ref1](#)

**Nuremberg Codes** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Nuremberg-like tribunal, proposal for** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#),  
[ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#)

## **O**

**Obama, Barack** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)

**O'Brien, Cathy** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Ochel, Evita** [ref1](#)

**Ofcom** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**old people** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**Oneness** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Open Society Foundations (Soros)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**oxygen** 406, 528–34

## **P**

**paedophilia** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Page, Larry** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

**Palestine-Israel conflict** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**pandemic, definition of** [ref1](#)

**pandemic and health crisis scenarios/simulations** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#),  
[ref4](#)

**paranormal** [ref1](#)

**PCR tests** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

**Pearl Harbor attacks, prior knowledge of** [ref1](#)

**Pelosi, Nancy** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**perception** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

climate change hoax [ref1](#)

control [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

decoding [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

enslavement [ref1](#)

externally-delivered perceptions [ref1](#)

five senses [ref1](#)

human labels [ref1](#)

media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

political parties [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a [ref1](#)

sale of perception [ref1](#)

self-identity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#)

**Phantom Self** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**pharmaceutical industry** *see* **Big Pharma**

**phthalates** [ref1](#)

**Plato's Allegory of the Cave** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**pneuma** [ref1](#)

**police**

Black Lives Matter (BLM) [ref1](#)

brutality [ref1](#)

citizen's arrests [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

common law arrests [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Common Purpose [ref1](#)  
defunding [ref1](#)  
lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
police-military state [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
psychopathic personality [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
reframing [ref1](#)  
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#)

**polio** [ref1](#)

**political correctness** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**political parties** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**political puppets** [ref1](#)

**pollution** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**post-mortems/autopsies** [ref1](#)

**Postage Stamp Consensus** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**pre-emptive programming** [ref1](#)

**Problem-Reaction-Solution** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

**Project for the New American Century** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**psychopathic personality** [ref1](#)

Archons [ref1](#)

heart energy [ref1](#)

lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

police [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

recruitment [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

vaccines [ref1](#)

wealth [ref1](#)

Wetiko [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Psyop (psychological operation), Covid as a** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#),  
[ref5](#)

**Pushbackers** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**pyramid structure** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

## Q

**QAnon Psyop** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

## R

**racism** *see also* **Black Lives**

Matter (BLM)

anti-racism industry [ref1](#)

class [ref1](#)

critical race theory [ref1](#)

culture [ref1](#)

intersectionality [ref1](#)

reverse racism [ref1](#)

white privilege [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

white supremacy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**radiation** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**randomness, illusion of** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**reality** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**reframing** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

change agents [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

children [ref1](#)

climate change [ref1](#)

Common Purpose leadership programme [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

contradictory rules [ref1](#)

enforcers [ref1](#)

masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

NLP and the Delphi technique [ref1](#)

police [ref1](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**religion** *see also* particular religions

alien invasions [ref1](#)

Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
control, system of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
criticism, prohibition on [ref1](#)  
five senses [ref1](#)  
good and evil, war between [ref1](#)  
hidden non-human forces [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#)  
save me syndrome [ref1](#)  
Wetiko [ref1](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#)

**repetition and mind control** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**reporting/snitching, encouragement of** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Reptilians/Grey entities** [ref1](#)  
**rewiring the mind** [ref1](#)  
**Rivers, Thomas Milton** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Rockefeller family** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)  
**Rockefeller Foundation documents** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**Roman Empire** [ref1](#)  
**Rothschild family** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)  
**RT-PCR tests** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)  
**Russia**  
    collusion inquiry in US [ref1](#)  
**Russian Revolution** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Sabbatians** [ref1](#)

## **S**

**Sabbatian-Frankism** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    anti-Semitism [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    banking and finance [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
    China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    Israel [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Judaism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
Lucifer [ref1](#)  
media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Nazis [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
QAnon [ref1](#)  
Rothschilds [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
Russia [ref1](#)  
Saudi Arabia [ref1](#)  
Silicon Valley [ref1](#)  
Sumer [ref1](#)  
United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Wetiko factor [ref1](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**SAGE (Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#),  
[ref4](#)  
**SARS-1** [ref1](#)  
**SARs-CoV-2** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)  
**Satan/Satanism** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
**satellites in low-orbit** [ref1](#)  
**Saudi Arabia** [ref1](#)  
**Save Me Syndrome** [ref1](#)  
**scapegoating** [ref1](#)  
**Schwab, Klaus** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#),  
[ref11](#), [ref12](#)  
**science, manipulation of** [ref1](#)  
**self-identity** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**self-respect, attacks on** [ref1](#)  
**September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on United States** [ref1](#), [ref2](#),  
[ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**77th Brigade of UK military** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
**Silicon Valley/tech giants** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#) *see also*  
**Facebook**



Israel [ref1](#)

Sabbatians [ref1](#)

technocracy [ref1](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#)

**simulation hypothesis** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**Smart Grid** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

artificial intelligence (AI) [ref1](#)

China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

control centres [ref1](#)

the Field [ref1](#)

Great Reset [ref1](#)

Human 2.0 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Israel [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

vaccines [ref1](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

**social disapproval** [ref1](#)

**social distancing and isolation** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

abusive relationships [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

children [ref1](#)

flats and apartments [ref1](#)

heart issues [ref1](#)

hugs [ref1](#)

Internet [ref1](#)

masks [ref1](#)

media [ref1](#)

older people [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

one-metre (three feet) rule [ref1](#)

rewiring the mind [ref1](#)

**simulation, universe as a** [ref1](#)

**SPI-B** [ref1](#)

substance abuse [ref1](#)

suicide and self-harm [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

technology [ref1](#)

torture, as [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

two-metre (six feet) rule [ref1](#)

women [ref1](#)

**social justice** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**social media** *see also* **Facebook bans on alternative views** [ref1](#)

    censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

    children [ref1](#)

    emotion [ref1](#)

    perception [ref1](#)

    private messages [ref1](#)

    Twitter [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

    Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

    YouTube [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**Soros, George** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

**Spain** [ref1](#)

**SPI-B (Scientific Pandemic Insights Group on Behaviours)** [ref1](#),  
[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**spider and the web** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**Starmer, Keir** [ref1](#)

**Statute Law** [ref1](#)

**Steiner, Rudolf** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Stockholm syndrome** [ref1](#)

**streptomycin** [ref1](#)

**suicide and self-harm** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

**Sumer** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**Sunstein, Cass** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**swine flu (H1N1)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**synchronicity** [ref1](#)

**synthetic biology** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**synthetic meat** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

## **T**

**technology** *see also* **artificial intelligence (AI); Internet;**

social media addiction [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

the cloud [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

cyber-operations [ref1](#)

cyberwarfare [ref1](#)

radiation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

social distancing and isolation [ref1](#)

technocracy [ref1](#)

**Tedros Adhanom Ghebreyesus** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#),  
[ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#), [ref13](#)

telepathy [ref1](#)

**Tenpenny, Sherri** [ref1](#)

**Tesla, Nikola** [ref1](#)

**testosterone levels, decrease in** [ref1](#)

**testing for Covid-19** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

anal swab tests [ref1](#)

cancer [ref1](#)

China [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Corman-Drosten test [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

death certificates [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

fraudulent testing [ref1](#)

genetic material, amplification of [ref1](#)

Lateral Flow Device (LFD) [ref1](#)

PCR tests [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Thunberg, Greta** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Totalitarian Tiptoe** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

**transgender persons**

activism [ref1](#)

artificial wombs [ref1](#)

censorship [ref1](#)  
 child abuse [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
 Human 2.0 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
 Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
 women, deletion of rights and status of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
 young persons [ref1](#)

**travel restrictions** [ref1](#)

**Trudeau, Justin** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

**Trump, Donald** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#),  
[ref11](#)

**Twitter** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

## **U**

**UKColumn** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

**United Nations (UN)** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#) *see also* **Agenda  
 21/Agenda 2030 (UN)**

**United States** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

American Revolution [ref1](#)

borders [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Capitol Hill riot [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

children [ref1](#)

China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

CIA [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Daily Pass tracking system [ref1](#)

demographics by immigration, changes in [ref1](#)

Democrats [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

election fraud [ref1](#)

far-right domestic terrorists, pushbackers as [ref1](#)

Federal Reserve [ref1](#)

flu/respiratory diseases statistics [ref1](#)

Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

hand sanitisers, FDA warnings on [ref1](#)

immigration, effects of illegal [ref1](#)  
impeachment [ref1](#)  
Israel [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Judaism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
lockdown [ref1](#)  
masks [ref1](#)  
mass media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
nursing homes [ref1](#)  
Pentagon [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
police [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
pushbackers [ref1](#)  
Republicans [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
borders [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Democrats [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
Russia, inquiry into collusion with [ref1](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
UFO sightings, release of information on [ref1](#)  
vaccines [ref1](#)  
white supremacy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Woke Democrats [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

## **V**

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
adverse reactions [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
Africa [ref1](#)  
anaphylactic shock [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
animals [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
anti-vax movement [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
AstraZeneca/Oxford [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
autoimmune diseases, rise in [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Big Pharma [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

bioweapon, as real [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
black and ethnic minority communities [ref1](#)  
blood clots [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Brain Computer Interface (BCI) [ref1](#)  
care homes, deaths in [ref1](#)  
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
chief medical officers and scientific advisers, financial interests of  
[ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
children [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)  
China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
clinical trials [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
compensation [ref1](#)  
compulsory vaccinations [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
computer programs [ref1](#)  
consciousness [ref1](#)  
cover-ups [ref1](#)  
creation before Covid [ref1](#)  
cytokine storm [ref1](#)  
deaths and illnesses caused by vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
definition [ref1](#)  
developing countries [ref1](#)  
digital tattoos [ref1](#)  
DNA-manipulation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#),  
[ref10](#)  
emergency approval [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
female infertility [ref1](#)  
funding [ref1](#)  
genetic suicide [ref1](#)  
Global Cult [ref1](#)  
heart chakras [ref1](#)  
hesitancy [ref1](#)  
Human 2.0 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
immunity from prosecution [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

implantable technology [ref1](#)  
Israel [ref1](#)  
Johnson & Johnson [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
lockdowns [ref1](#)  
long-term effects [ref1](#)  
mainstream media [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
masks [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency (MHRA)  
[ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
messaging [ref1](#)  
Moderna [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)  
mRNA vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)  
nanotechnology [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
NHS [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
older people [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
operating system [ref1](#)  
passports [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Pfizer/BioNTech [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
polyethylene glycol [ref1](#)  
pregnant women [ref1](#)  
psychopathic personality [ref1](#)  
races, targeting different [ref1](#)  
reverse transcription [ref1](#)  
Smart Grid [ref1](#)  
social distancing [ref1](#)  
social media [ref1](#)  
sterility [ref1](#)  
synthetic material, introduction of [ref1](#)  
tests [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
travel restrictions [ref1](#)  
**variants** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**viruses, existence of** [ref1](#)  
whistle-blowing [ref1](#)

WHO [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#)  
working, vaccine as [ref1](#)  
young people [ref1](#)  
**Vallance, Patrick** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)  
variants [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
vegans [ref1](#)  
ventilators [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
virology [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
virtual reality [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
viruses, existence of [ref1](#)  
visual reality [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
vitamin D [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
von Braun, Wernher [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

## **W**

war-zone hospital myths [ref1](#)  
waveforms [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
wealth [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#) [ref10](#), [ref11](#)  
wet market conspiracy [ref1](#)  
**Wetiko factor** [ref1](#)  
    alcoholism and drug addiction [ref1](#)  
    anti-human, why Global Cult is [ref1](#)  
    Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
    artificial intelligence (AI) [ref1](#)  
    Big Pharma [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    children [ref1](#)  
    China [ref1](#)  
    consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
    education [ref1](#)  
    Facebook [ref1](#)



fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
frequency [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Gates [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
heart [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
lockdowns [ref1](#)  
masks [ref1](#)  
Native American concept [ref1](#)  
psychopathic personality [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
reframing/retraining programmes [ref1](#)  
religion [ref1](#)  
Silicon Valley [ref1](#)  
Smart Grid [ref1](#)  
smartphone addiction [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
social media [ref1](#)  
war [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
WHO [ref1](#)  
Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Yaldabaoth [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**whistle-blowing** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
**white privilege** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**white supremacy** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)  
**Whitty, Christopher** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#),  
[ref10](#)  
**'who benefits'** [ref1](#)  
**Wi-Fi** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
**Wikipedia** [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
**Wojcicki, Susan** [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)  
**Wokeness**  
    Antifa [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
    anti-Semitism [ref1](#)  
    billionaire social justice warriors [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Capitol Hill riot [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
censorship [ref1](#)  
Christianity [ref1](#)  
climate change hoax [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
culture [ref1](#)  
education, control of [ref1](#)  
emotion [ref1](#)  
facts [ref1](#)  
fascism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Global Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)  
group-think [ref1](#)  
immigration [ref1](#)  
indigenous people, solidarity with [ref1](#)  
inversion [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
left, hijacking the [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
Marxism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
mind control [ref1](#)  
New Woke [ref1](#)  
Old Woke [ref1](#)  
Oneness [ref1](#)  
perceptual programming [ref1](#)  
    Phantom Self [ref1](#)  
police [ref1](#)  
defunding the [ref1](#)  
reframing [ref1](#)  
public institutions [ref1](#)  
Pushbackers [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
racism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
reframing [ref1](#), [ref2](#)  
religion, as [ref1](#)  
Sabbatians [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)  
Silicon Valley [ref1](#)  
social justice [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

transgender [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

vaccines [ref1](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

young people [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

women, deletion of rights and status of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

World Economic Forum (WEF) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#),  
[ref8](#), [ref9](#)

World Health Organization (WHO) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#),  
[ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)

AIDs/HIV [ref1](#)

amplification cycles [ref1](#)

Big Pharma [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

cooperation in health emergencies [ref1](#)

creation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

fatality rate [ref1](#)

funding [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Gates [ref1](#)

Internet [ref1](#)

lockdown [ref1](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

Wetiko factor [ref1](#)

world number 1 (masses) [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

world number 2 [ref1](#)

Wuhan [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#) [ref8](#)

## Y

Yaldabaoth [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

Yeadon, Michael [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

young people *see also* children addiction to technology [ref1](#)

Human 2.0 [ref1](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Wokeness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

YouTube [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

WHO 548

## **Z**

Zaks, Tal [ref1](#)

Zionism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Zuckerberg, Mark [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#),  
[ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#)

Zulus [ref1](#)

# **ICKONIC** **THE ALTERNATIVE**

Ickonic is something that has been a dream of mine for the last 5 years, growing up around alternative information I have always had a natural interest in what is going on in the World and what could I do to make it better. Across the range of subjects and positions of influence occupied mainly by people who don't strive to make things better it's the Media that I have always found the most frustrating and fascinating. Mainly because if the Media did their Jobs properly then so much of the negative things happening in the World simply would not be able to happen, because they would be exposed within a heartbeat.

Free Press and the Opportunities that the internet could have given would mean that the Media are able to expose things like never before and hold people to account for their actions. As we all know there are 'Untouchables' that walk among us, people the Media simply won't touch, expose or investigate and that leads to the dark underworlds that infest the establishment the World over. Well I say enough, it's time for something different, a different kind of Media, where no one is off limits from exposing and investigating. All we're interested in at Ickonic is the truth of what is really going on in the World on whichever subject we're covering.

We hope you enjoy what we have created and take something away from the platform, we aim to deliver information that's informative and most importantly self-empowering, you're not a little person, you're part of something much bigger than that and its time we as a collective race began to understand that and look to the future as ours to take.

It's time...

Jaymie Icke - Founder Ickonic Alternative Media.

**SIGN UP NOW AT [ICKONIC.COM](http://ICKONIC.COM)**

DAVID ICKE  
**THE ANSWER**



We live in extraordinary times with billions bewildered and seeking answers for what is happening. David Icke, the man who has been proved right again and again, has spent 30 years uncovering the truth behind world affairs and in a stream of previous books he predicted current events.

The Answer will change your every perception of life and the world and set you free of the illusions that control human society. There is nothing more vital for our collective freedom than humanity becoming aware of what is in this book.

**Available now at [davidicke.com](http://davidicke.com).**

# THE TRIGGER

THE LIE THAT CHANGED THE WORLD  
- WHO REALLY DID IT AND WHY



DAVID ICKE



**EVERYTHING  
YOU NEED  
TO KNOW**

**BUT HAVE NEVER BEEN TOLD**

**DAVID ICKE**



**DAVIDICKE.COM**



**DAVID ICKE STORE**  
**LATEST NEWS ARTICLES**  
**DAVID ICKE VIDEOS**  
**WEEKLY DOT-CONNECTOR PODCASTS**  
**LIVE EVENTS**

[WWW.DAVIDICKE.COM](http://WWW.DAVIDICKE.COM)

THE LIFE STORY OF DAVID ICKE

# RENEGADE

THE FEATURE LENGTH FILM

/ˈren·iˌgeɪd/

**noun**

A person who behaves in a rebelliously unconventional manner.



AVAILABLE NOW AT [DAVIDICKE.COM](http://DAVIDICKE.COM)

2 NEW BOOKS  
BY NEIL HAGUE

# ORION'S DOOR

SYMBOLS OF CONSCIOUSNESS & BLUEPRINTS OF CONTROL  
- THE STORY OF ORION'S INFLUENCE OVER HUMANITY

CUTTING EDGE VISIONARY ART  
& UNIQUE ILLUSTRATED BOOKS

NEIL HAGUE

FOR  
BOOKS, PRINTS & T-SHIRTS

VISIT:

[NEILHAGUEBOOKS.COM](http://NEILHAGUEBOOKS.COM)

OR [NEILHAGUE.COM](http://NEILHAGUE.COM)



## **Before you go ...**

For more detail, background and evidence about the subjects in *Perceptions of a Renegade Mind* – and so much more – see my others books including *And The Truth Shall Set You Free; The Biggest Secret; Children of the Matrix; The David Icke Guide to the Global Conspiracy; Tales from the Time Loop; The Perception Deception; Remember Who You Are; Human Race Get Off Your Knees; Phantom Self; Everything You Need To Know But Have Never Been Told, The Trigger and The Answer.*

You can subscribe to the fantastic new Ickonic media platform where there are many hundreds of hours of cutting-edge information in videos, documentaries and series across a whole range of subjects which are added to every week. This includes my 90 minute breakdown of the week's news every Friday to explain *why* events are happening and to what end.

# ***RULES FOR RADICALS***

*A Practical Primer  
for Realistic Radicals*

***SAUL D. ALINSKY***

VINTAGE BOOKS  
*A Division of Random House, Inc. /New York*

VINTAGE BOOKS EDITION, OCTOBER 1989

Copyright © 1971 by Saul D. Alinsky

All rights reserved under International and Pan-American Copyright Conventions. Published in the United States by Vintage Books, a division of Random House, Inc., New York, and simultaneously in Canada by Random House of Canada Limited, Toronto. Originally published, in hardcover, by Random House, Inc., in 1971.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Alinsky, Saul David, 1909-1972.

Rules for radicals : a practical primer for realistic radicals / Saul D. Alinsky. — Vintage Books ed.

p. cm.

Reprint. Originally published: New York: Random House, 1971.

ISBN 0-679-72113-4 : \$7.95

1. Community organization — United States.

2. Political participation — United States.

3. Radicalism — United States. I. Title.

HN65.A675 1989

89-14823

303.48'4 — dc20

CIP

"On the Importance of Being Unprincipled," by John Herman Randall, Jr., is reprinted by permission of the publishers from *The American Scholar*, Volume 7, Number 2, Spring 1938. Copyright 1938 by the United Chapters of Phi Beta Kappa.

A Selection from *Industrial Valley*, by Ruth McKenney, is reprinted by permission of Curtis Brown Ltd. Copyright © 1939 by Ruth McKenney

MANUFACTURED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

D9876543210

## Personal Acknowledgments

To Jason Epstein for his prodding, patience and understanding, and for being a beautiful editor.

To Cicely Nichols for the hours of painstaking editorial assistance.

To Susan Rabiner for being the shock absorber between the corporate structure of Random House and this writer.

To Georgia Harper my heartfelt gratitude for the months of typing and typing and for staying with me through the years of getting this book together.

*To Irene*

*"Where there are no men, be thou a man,"*

—RABBI HILLEL

*"Let them call me rebel and welcome, I feel no concern from it; but I should suffer the misery of devils, were I to make a whore of my soul..."*

—THOMAS PAINE

*Lest we forget at least an over-the-shoulder acknowledgment to the very first radical: from all our legends, mythology, and history (and who is to know where mythology leaves off and history begins— or which is which), the first radical known to man who rebelled against the establishment and did it so effectively that he at least won his own kingdom —Lucifer.*

—SAUL ALINSKY



# ***Contents***

<u><i>Prologue</i></u>	xiii
<u><i>The Purpose</i></u>	3
<u><i>Of Means and Ends</i></u>	24
<u><i>A Word About Words</i></u>	48
<u><i>The Education of an Organizer</i></u>	63
<u><i>Communication</i></u>	81
<u><i>In the Beginning</i></u>	98
<u><i>Tactics</i></u>	125
<u><i>The Genesis of Tactic Proxy</i></u>	165
<u><i>The Way Ahead</i></u>	184

# *Prologue*

THE REVOLUTIONARY FORCE today has two targets, moral as well as material. Its young protagonists are one moment reminiscent of the idealistic early Christians, yet they also urge violence and cry, "Burn the system down!" They have no illusions about the system, but plenty of illusions about the way to change our world. It is to this point that I have written this book. These words are written in desperation, partly because it is what they do and will do that will give meaning to what I and the radicals of my generation have done with our lives.

They are now the vanguard, and they had to start almost from scratch. Few of us survived the Joe McCarthy holocaust of the early 1950s and of those there were even fewer whose understanding and insights had developed beyond the dialectical materialism of orthodox Marxism. My fellow radicals who were supposed to pass on the torch of experience and insights to a new generation just were not there. As the young looked at the society around them, it was all, in their words, "materialistic, decadent, bourgeois in its values, bankrupt and violent." Is it any wonder that they rejected us in toto.

Today's generation is desperately trying to make some sense out of their lives and out of the world. Most of them are products of the middle class. They have rejected their materialistic backgrounds, the goal of a well-paid job, suburban home, automobile, country club membership, first-class travel, status, security, and everything that meant success to their parents. They have had it. They watched it lead their parents to tranquilizers, alcohol, long-term-endurance marriages, or divorces, high blood pressure, ulcers, frustration, and

the disillusionment of "the good life." They have seen the almost unbelievable idiocy of our political leadership—in the past political leaders, ranging from the mayors to governors to the White House, were regarded with respect and almost reverence; today they are viewed with contempt. This negativism now extends to all institutions, from the police and the courts to "the system" itself. We are living in a world of mass media which daily exposes society's innate hypocrisy, its contradictions and the apparent failure of almost every facet of our social and political life. The young have seen their "activist" participatory democracy turn into its antithesis—nihilistic bombing and murder. The political panaceas of the past, such as the revolutions in Russia and China, have become the same old stuff under a different name. The search for freedom does not seem to have any road or destination. The young are inundated with a barrage of information and facts so overwhelming that the world has come to seem an utter bedlam, which has them spinning in a frenzy, looking for what man has always looked for from the beginning of time, a way of life that has some meaning or sense. A way of life means a certain degree of order where things have some relationship and can be pieced together into a system that at least provides some clues to what life is about. Men have always yearned for and sought direction by setting up religions, inventing political philosophies, creating scientific systems like Newton's, or formulating ideologies of various kinds. This *is* what is behind the common cliché, "getting it all together" —despite the realization that all values and factors are relative, fluid, and changing, and that it will be possible to "get it all together" only relatively. The elements will shift and move together just like the changing pattern in a turning kaleidoscope.

In the past the "world," whether in its physical or intellectual terms, was much smaller, simpler, and more orderly. It inspired credibility. Today everything is so complex as to be incomprehensible. What sense does it make for men to walk on the moon while other men are

waiting on welfare lines, or in Vietnam killing and dying for a corrupt dictatorship in the name of freedom? These are the days when man has his hands on the sublime while he is up to his hips in the muck of madness. The establishment in many ways is as suicidal as some of the far left, except that they are infinitely more destructive than the far left can ever be. The outcome of the hopelessness and despair is morbidity. There is a feeling of death hanging over the nation.

Today's generation faces all this and says, "I don't want to spend my life the way my family and their friends have. I want to do something, to create, to be me, to 'do my own thing,' to live. The older generation doesn't understand and worse doesn't want to. I don't want to be just a piece of data to be fed into a computer or a statistic in a public opinion poll, just a voter carrying a credit card." To the young the world seems insane and falling apart.

On the other side is the older generation, whose members are no less confused. If they are not as vocal or conscious, it may be because they can escape to a past when the world was simpler. They can still cling to the old values in the simple hope that everything will work out somehow, some way. That the younger generation will "straighten out" with the passing of time. Unable to come to grips with the world as it is, they retreat in any confrontation with the younger generation with that infuriating cliché, "*when you get older you'll understand.*" One wonders at their reaction if some youngster were to reply, "*When you get younger which will never be then you'll understand,* so of course you'll never understand." Those of the older generation who claim a desire to understand say, "When I talk to my kids or their friends I'll say to them, 'Look, I believe what you have to tell me is important and I respect it. You call me a square and say that 'I'm not with it' or 'I don't know where it's at' or 'I don't know where the scene is' and all of the rest of the words you use. Well, I'm

going to agree with you. So suppose you tell me. What do you want? What do you mean when you say 'I want to do my thing.' What the hell is your thing? You say you want a better world. Like what? And don't tell me a world of peace and love and all the rest of that stuff because people are people, as you will find out when you get older—I'm sorry, I didn't mean to say anything about 'when you get older.' I really do respect what you have to say. Now why don't you answer me? Do you know what you want? Do you know what you're talking about? Why can't we get together?"

And that is what we call the generation gap.

What the present generation wants is what all generations have always wanted—a meaning, a sense of what the world and life are—a chance to strive for some sort of order.

If the young were now writing our Declaration of Independence they would begin, "When in the course of inhuman events . . ." and their bill of particulars would range from Vietnam to our black, Chicano, and Puerto Rican ghettos, to the migrant workers, to Appalachia, to the hate, ignorance, disease, and starvation in the world. Such a bill of particulars would emphasize the absurdity of human affairs and the forlornness and emptiness, the fearful loneliness that comes from not knowing if there is any meaning to our lives.

When they talk of values they're asking for a reason. They are searching for an answer, at least for a time, to man's greatest question, "Why am I here?"

The young react to their chaotic world in different ways. Some panic and run, rationalizing that the system is going to collapse anyway of its own rot and corruption and so they're copping out, going hippie or yippie, taking drugs, trying communes, anything to escape. Others

went for pointless sure-loser confrontations so that they could fortify their rationalization and say, "Well, we tried and did our part" and then they copped out too. Others sick with guilt and not knowing where to turn or what to do went berserk. These were the Weathermen and their like: they took the grand cop-out, suicide. To these I have nothing to say or give but pity—and in some cases contempt, for such as those who leave their dead comrades and take off for Algeria or other points.

What I have to say in this book is not the arrogance of unsolicited advice. It is the experience and counsel that so many young people have questioned me about through all-night sessions on hundreds of campuses in America. It is for those young radicals who are committed to the fight, committed to life.

Remember we are talking about revolution, not revelation; you can miss the target by shooting too high as well as too low. First, there are no rules for revolution any more than there are rules for love or rules for happiness, *but* there are rules for radicals who want to change their world; there are certain central concepts of action in human politics that operate regardless of the scene or the time. To know these is basic to a pragmatic attack on the system. These rules make the difference between being a realistic radical and being a rhetorical one who uses the tired old words and slogans, calls the police "pig" or "white fascist racist" or "motherfucker" and has so stereotyped himself that others react by saying, "Oh, he's one of those," and then promptly turn off.

This failure of many of our younger activists to understand the art of communication has been disastrous. Even the most elementary grasp of the fundamental idea that one communicates within the experience of his audience — and gives full respect to the other's values — would have ruled out attacks on the American flag. The responsible

organizer would have known that it is the establishment that has betrayed the flag while the flag, itself, remains the glorious symbol of America's hopes and aspirations, and he would have conveyed this message to his audience. On another level of communication, humor is essential, for through humor much is accepted that would have been rejected if presented seriously. This is a sad and lonely generation. It laughs too little, and this, too, is tragic.

For the real radical, doing "his thing" is to do the social thing, for and with people. In a world where everything is so interrelated that one feels helpless to know where or how to grab hold and act, defeat sets in; for years there have been people who've found society too overwhelming and have withdrawn, concentrated on "doing their own thing." Generally we have put them into mental hospitals and diagnosed them as schizophrenics. If the real radical finds that having long hair sets up psychological barriers to communication and organization, he cuts his hair. If I were organizing in an orthodox Jewish community I would not walk in there eating a ham sandwich, unless I wanted to be rejected so I could have an excuse to cop out. My "thing," if I want to organize, is solid communication with the people in the community. Lacking communication I am in reality silent; throughout history silence has been regarded as assent — in this case assent to the system.

As an organizer I start from where the world is, as it is, not as I would like it to be. That we accept the world as it is does not in any sense weaken our desire to change it into what we believe it should be — it is necessary to begin where the world is if we are going to change it to what we think it should be. That means working in the system.

There's another reason for working inside the system. Dostoevski said that taking a new step is what people fear most. Any

revolutionary change must be preceded by a passive, affirmative, non-challenging attitude toward change among the mass of our people. They must feel so frustrated, so defeated, so lost, so futureless in the prevailing system that they are willing to let go of the past and chance the future. This acceptance is the reformation essential to any revolution. To bring on this reformation requires that the organizer work inside the system, among not only the middle class but the 40 per cent of American families—more than seventy million people—whose incomes range from \$5,000 to \$10,000 a year. They cannot be dismissed by labeling them blue collar or hard hat. They will not continue to be relatively passive and slightly challenging. If we fail to communicate with them, if we don't encourage them to form alliances with us, they will move to the right. Maybe they will anyway, but let's not let it happen by default.

Our youth are impatient with the preliminaries that are essential to purposeful action. Effective organization is thwarted by the desire for instant and dramatic change, or as I have phrased it elsewhere the demand for revelation rather than revolution. It's the kind of thing we see in play writing; the first act introduces the characters and the plot, in the second act the plot and characters are developed as the play strives to hold the audience's attention. In the final act good and evil have their dramatic confrontation and resolution. The present generation wants to go right into the third act, skipping the first two, in which case there is no play, nothing but confrontation for confrontation's sake—a flare-up and back to darkness. To build a powerful organization takes time. It is tedious, but that's the way the game is played—if you want to play and not just yell, "Kill the umpire."

What is the alternative to working "inside" the system? A mess of rhetorical garbage about "Burn the system down!" Yippie yells of "Do it!" or "Do your thing." What else? Bombs? Sniping? Silence



when police are killed and screams of "murdering fascist pigs" when others are killed? Attacking and baiting the police? Public suicide? "Power comes out of the barrel of a gun!" is an absurd rallying cry when the other side has all the guns. Lenin was a pragmatist; when he returned to what was then Petrograd from exile, he said that the Bolsheviks stood for getting power through the ballot but would reconsider after they got the guns! Militant mouthings? Spouting quotes from Mao, Castro, and Che Guevara, which are as germane to our highly technological, computerized, cybernetic, nuclear-powered, mass media society as a stagecoach on a jet runway at Kennedy airport?

Let us in the name of radical pragmatism not forget that in our system with all its repressions we can still speak out and denounce the administration, attack its policies, work to build an opposition political base. True, there is government harassment, but there still is that relative freedom to fight. I can attack my government, try to organize to change it. That's more than I can do in Moscow, Peking, or Havana. Remember the reaction of the Red Guard to the "cultural revolution" and the fate of the Chinese college students. Just a few of the violent episodes of bombings or a courtroom shootout that we have experienced here would have resulted in a sweeping purge and mass executions in Russia, China, or Cuba. Let's keep some perspective.

We will start with the system because there is no other place to start from except political lunacy. It is most important for those of us who want revolutionary change to understand that revolution must be preceded by reformation. To assume that a political revolution can survive without the supporting base of a popular reformation is to ask for the impossible in politics.

Men don't like to step abruptly out of the security of familiar experience; they need a bridge to cross from their own experience to a new way. A revolutionary organizer must shake up the prevailing patterns of their lives— agitate, create disenchantment and discontent with the current values, to produce, if not a passion for change, at least a passive, affirmative, non-challenging climate.

"The Revolution was effected before the war commenced," John Adams wrote. "The Revolution was in the hearts and minds of the people ... This radical change in the principles, opinions, sentiments and affections of the people was the real American Revolution." A revolution without a prior reformation would collapse or become a totalitarian tyranny.

A reformation means that masses of our people have reached the point of disillusionment with past ways and values. They don't know what will work but they do know that the prevailing system is self-defeating, frustrating, and hopeless. They won't act for change but won't strongly oppose those who do. The time is then ripe for revolution.

Those who, for whatever combination of reasons, encourage the opposite of reformation, become the unwitting allies of the far political right. Parts of the far left have gone so far in the political circle that they are now all but indistinguishable from the extreme right. It reminds me of the days when Hitler, new on the scene, was excused for his actions by "humanitarians" on the grounds of a paternal rejection and childhood trauma. When there are people who espouse the assassination of Senator Robert Kennedy or the Tate murders or the Marin County Courthouse kidnapping and killings or the University of Wisconsin bombing and killing as "revolutionary acts," then we are dealing with people who are merely hiding psychosis behind a political mask. The masses of people recoil with

horror and say, "Our way is bad and we were willing to let it change, but certainly not for this murderous madness—no matter how bad things are now, they are better than that." So they begin to turn back. They regress into acceptance of a coming massive repression in the name of "law and order."

In the midst of the gassing and violence by the Chicago Police and National Guard during the 1968 Democratic Convention many students asked me, "Do you still believe we should try to work inside our system?"

These were students who had been with Eugene McCarthy in New Hampshire and followed him across the country. Some had been with Robert Kennedy when he was killed in Los Angeles. Many of the tears that were shed in Chicago were not from gas. "Mr. Alinsky, we fought in primary after primary and the people voted *no* on Vietnam. Look at that convention. They're not paying any attention to the vote. Look at your police and the army. You still want us to work in the system?"

It hurt me to see the American army with drawn bayonets advancing on American boys and girls. But the answer I gave the young radicals seemed to me the only realistic one: "Do one of three things. One, go find a wailing wall and feel sorry for yourselves. Two, go psycho and start bombing—but this will only swing people to the right. Three, learn a lesson. Go home, organize, build power and at the next convention, *you be the delegates.*"

Remember: once you organize people around something as commonly agreed upon as pollution, then an organized people is on the move. From there it's a short and natural step to political pollution, to Pentagon pollution.

It is not enough just to elect your candidates. You must keep the pressure on. Radicals should keep in mind Franklin D. Roosevelt's response to a reform delegation, "Okay, you've convinced me. Now go on out and bring pressure on me!" Action comes from keeping the heat on. No politician can sit on a hot issue if you make it hot enough.

As for Vietnam, I would like to see our nation be the first in the history of man to publicly say, "We were wrong! What we did was horrible. We got in and kept getting in deeper and deeper and at every step we invented new reasons for staying. We have paid part of the price in 44,000 dead Americans. There is nothing we can ever do to make it up to the people of Indo-China—or to our own people—but we will try. We believe that our world has come of age so that it is no longer a sign of weakness or defeat to abandon a childish pride and vanity, to admit we were wrong." Such an admission would shake up the foreign policy concepts of all nations and open the door to a new international order. This is our alternative to Vietnam—anything else is the old makeshift patchwork. If this were to happen, Vietnam may even have been somewhat worth it.

A final word on our system. The democratic ideal springs from the ideas of liberty, equality, majority rule through free elections, protection of the rights of minorities, and freedom to subscribe to multiple loyalties in matters of religion, economics, and politics rather than to a total loyalty to the state. The spirit of democracy is the idea of importance and worth in the individual, and faith in the kind of world where the individual can achieve as much of his potential as possible.

Great dangers always accompany great opportunities. The possibility of destruction is always implicit in the act of creation. Thus the greatest enemy of individual freedom is the individual himself.

From the beginning the weakness as well as the strength of the democratic ideal has been the people. People cannot be free unless they are willing to sacrifice some of their interests to guarantee the freedom of others. The price of democracy is the ongoing pursuit of the common good by *all* of the people. One hundred and thirty-five years ago Tocqueville [{footnote 1}](#) gravely warned that unless individual citizens were regularly involved in the action of governing themselves, self-government would pass from the scene. Citizen participation is the animating spirit and force in a society predicated on voluntarism.

We are not here concerned with people who profess the democratic faith but yearn for the dark security of dependency where they can be spared the burden of decisions. Reluctant to grow up, or incapable of doing so, they want to remain children and be cared for by others. Those who can, should be encouraged to grow; for the others, the fault lies not in the system but in themselves.

Here we are desperately concerned with the vast mass of our people who, thwarted through lack of interest or opportunity, or both, do not participate in the endless responsibilities of citizenship and are resigned to lives determined by others. To lose your "identity" as a citizen of democracy is but a step from losing your identity as a person. People react to this frustration by not acting at all. The separation of the people from the routine daily functions of citizenship is heartbreak in a democracy.

It is a grave situation when a people resign their citizenship or when a resident of a great city, though he may desire to take a hand, lacks the means to participate. That citizen sinks further into apathy, anonymity, and depersonalization. The result is that he comes to depend on public authority and a state of civic-sclerosis sets in.

From time to time there have been external enemies at our gates; there has always been the enemy within, the hidden and malignant inertia that foreshadows more certain destruction to our life and future than any nuclear warhead. There can be no darker or more devastating tragedy than the death of man's faith in himself and in his power to direct his future.

I salute the present generation. Hang on to one of your most precious parts of youth, laughter—don't lose it as many of you seem to have done, you need it. Together we may find some of what we're looking for—laughter, beauty, love, and the chance to create.

*Saul Alinsky*

{footnote 1} "It must not be forgotten that it is especially dangerous to enslave men in the minor details of life. For my own part, I should be inclined to think freedom less necessary in great things than in little ones, if it were possible to be secure of the one without possessing the other.

"Subjection in minor affairs breaks out every day, and is felt by the whole community indiscriminately. It does not drive men to resistance, but it crosses them at every turn, till they are led to surrender the exercise of their will. Thus their spirit is gradually broken and their character enervated; whereas that obedience, which is exacted on a few important but rare occasions, only exhibits servitude at certain intervals, and throws the burden of it upon a small number of men. It is vain to summon a people, which has been rendered so dependent on the central power, to choose from time to time the representatives of that power; this rare and brief exercise of their free choice, however, important it may be, will not prevent them from gradually losing the faculties of thinking, feeling, and acting for themselves, and thus gradually falling below the level of humanity."

—Alexis de Tocqueville, *Democracy in America* {end footnote}

# ***RULES FOR RADICALS***

## ***The Purpose***

*The life of man upon earth is a warfare ...*  
— Job 7:1

WHAT FOLLOWS IS for those who want to change the world from what it is to what they believe it should be. *The Prince* was written by Machiavelli for the Haves on how to hold power. *Rules for Radicals* is written for the Have-Nots on how to take it away.

In this book we are concerned with how to create mass organizations to seize power and give it to the people; to realize the democratic dream of equality, justice, peace, cooperation, equal and full opportunities for education, full and useful employment, health, and the creation of those circumstances in which man can have the chance to live by values that give meaning to life. We are talking about a mass power organization which will change the world into a place where all men and women walk erect, in the spirit of that credo of the Spanish Civil War, "Better to die on your feet than to live on your knees." This means revolution.

The significant changes in history have been made by revolutions. There are people who say that it is not revolution, but evolution, that brings about change—but *evolution is simply the term used by nonparticipants to denote a particular sequence of revolutions as they synthesized into a specific major social change*. In this book I propose certain general observations, propositions, and concepts of the mechanics of mass movements and the various stages of the cycle of action and reaction in revolution. This is not an ideological book except insofar as argument for change, rather than for the status quo, can be called an ideology; different people, in different places, in different situations and different times will construct their own solutions and symbols of salvation for those times. This book will not contain any panacea or dogma; I detest and fear dogma. I know that all revolutions must have ideologies to spur them on. That in the heat of conflict these ideologies tend to be smelted into rigid dogmas claiming exclusive possession of the truth, and the keys to paradise, is tragic. Dogma is the enemy of human freedom. Dogma must be watched for and apprehended at every turn and twist of the revolutionary movement. The human spirit glows from that small inner light of doubt whether we are right, while those who believe with complete certainty that they possess the right are dark inside and darken the world outside with cruelty, pain, and injustice. Those who enshrine the poor or Have-Nots are as guilty as other dogmatists and just as dangerous. To diminish the danger that ideology will deteriorate into dogma, and to protect the free, open, questing, and creative mind of man, as well as to allow for change, no ideology should be more specific than that of America's founding fathers: "For the general welfare."

Niels Bohr, the great atomic physicist, admirably stated the civilized position on dogmatism: "Every sentence I utter must be understood not as an affirmation, but as a question." I will argue that man's hopes lie in the acceptance of the great law of change; that a general



understanding of the principles of change will provide clues for rational action and an awareness of the realistic relationship between means and ends and how each determines the other. I hope that these pages will contribute to the education of the radicals of today, and to the conversion of hot, emotional, impulsive passions that are impotent and frustrating to actions that will be calculated, purposeful and effective.

An example of the political insensitivity of many of today's so-called radicals and the lost opportunities is found in this account of an episode during the trial of the Chicago Seven:

Over the weekend some hundred fifty lawyers, from all parts of the country, had gathered in Chicago to picket the federal building in protest against Judge Hoffman's [arrest of] the four lawyers. This delegation, which was supported by thirteen members of the faculty of Harvard Law School and which included a number of other professors as well, submitted a brief, as friend of the Court, which called Judge Hoffman's actions "a travesty of justice [which] threatens to destroy the confidence of the American people in the entire judicial process . . ." By ten o'clock the angry lawyers had begun to march around the Federal Building, where they were joined by hundreds of student radicals, several Black Panthers, and a hundred or more blue-helmeted Chicago police.

Shortly before noon, about forty of the picketing lawyers carried their signs into the lobby of the Federal Building, despite the notice posted on the glass wall beside the entrance, and signed by Judge Campbell, forbidding such demonstrations within the building. Hardly had the lawyers entered, however, than Judge Campbell himself descended to the lobby, dressed in his black robes and accompanied by a marshal, a stenographer, and his court clerk. Surrounded by the angry lawyers, who were themselves encircled by

a ring of police and federal marshals, the Judge proceeded to hold Court then and there. He announced that unless the pickets withdrew immediately, he would charge them with contempt. This time, he warned, there could be no question that their contempt would occur in the presence of the Court, and would thus be subject to summary punishment. No sooner had he made this announcement however, than a voice from the throng shouted, "Fuck you, Campbell." After a moment of tense silence, followed by a cheer from the crowd and a noticeable stiffening among the police, Judge Campbell himself withdrew. Then the lawyers, too, left the lobby and rejoined the pickets on the sidewalk. —Jason Epstein, *The Great Conspiracy Trial*,

Random House, 1970.

The picketing lawyers threw away a beautiful opportunity to create a nationwide issue. Offhand, there would seem to have been two choices, either of which would have forced the judge's hand and kept the issue going: some one of the lawyers could have stepped up to the judge after the voice said, "Fuck you, Campbell," said that the lawyers there did not support personal obscenities, but they were not leaving; or all the lawyers together could have chorused, with one voice, "Fuck you, Campbell!" They did neither; instead, they let the initiative pass from them to the judge, and achieved nothing.

Radicals must be resilient, adaptable to shifting political circumstances, and sensitive enough to the process of action and reaction to avoid being trapped by their own tactics and forced to travel a road not of their choosing. In short, radicals must have a degree of control over the flow of events.

Here I propose to present an arrangement of certain facts and general concepts of change, a step toward a science of revolution.

All societies discourage and penalize ideas and writings that threaten the ruling status quo. It is understandable, therefore, that the literature of a Have society is a veritable desert whenever we look for writings on social change. Once the American Revolution was done with, we can find very little besides the right of revolution that is laid down in the Declaration of Independence as a fundamental right; seventy-three years later Thoreau's brief essay on "The Duty of Civil Disobedience"; followed by Lincoln's reaffirmation of the revolutionary right in 1861. [{footnote 1}](#) There are many phrases extolling the sacredness of revolution—that is, revolutions of the past. Our enthusiasm for the sacred right of revolution is increased and enhanced with the passage of time. The older the revolution, the more it recedes into history, the more sacred it becomes. Except for Thoreau's limited remarks, our society has given us few words of advice, few suggestions of how to fertilize social change.

From the Haves, on the other hand, there has come an unceasing flood of literature justifying the status quo. Religious, economic, social, political, and legal tracts endlessly attack all revolutionary ideas and action for change as immoral, fallacious and against God, country, and mother. These literary sedations by the status quo include the threat that, since all such movements are unpatriotic, subversive, spawned in hell and reptilian in their creeping insidiousness, dire punishments will be meted out to their supporters. All great revolutions, including Christianity, the various reformations, democracy, capitalism, and socialism, have suffered these epithets in the times of their birth. To the status quo concerned about its public image, revolution is the only force which has no image, but instead casts a dark, ominous shadow of things to come.

The Have-Nots of the world, swept up in their present upheavals and desperately seeking revolutionary writings, can find such literature only from the communists, both red and yellow. Here they can read

about tactics, maneuvers, strategy and principles of action in the making of revolutions. Since in this literature all ideas are imbedded in the language of communism, revolution appears synonymous with communism. [{footnote 2}](#) When, in the throes of their revolutionary fervor, the Have-Nots hungrily turn to us in their first steps from starvation to subsistence, we respond with a bewildering, unbelievable, and meaningless conglomeration of abstractions about freedom, morality, equality, and the danger of intellectual enslavement by communistic ideology! This is accompanied by charitable handouts dressed up in ribbons of moral principle and "freedom," with the price tag of unqualified political loyalty to us. With the coming of the Revolutions in Russia and China we suddenly underwent a moral conversion and became concerned for the welfare of our brothers all over the world. *Revolution by the Have-Nots has a way of inducing a moral revelation among the Haves.*

Revolution by the Have-Nots also induces a paranoid fear; now, therefore, we find every corrupt and repressive government the world around saying to us, "Give us money and soldiers or there will be a revolution and the new leaders will be your enemies." Fearful of revolution and identifying ourselves as the status quo, we have permitted the communists to assume by default the revolutionary halo of justice for the Have-Nots. We then compound this mistake by assuming that the status quo everywhere must be defended and buttressed against revolution. Today revolution has become synonymous with communism while capitalism is synonymous with status quo. Occasionally we will accept a revolution if it is guaranteed to be on our side, and then only when we realize that the revolution is inevitable. We abhor revolutions.

We have permitted a suicidal situation to unfold wherein revolution and communism have become one. These pages are committed to

splitting this political atom, separating this exclusive identification of communism with revolution. If it were possible for the Have-Nots of the world to recognize and accept the idea that revolution did not inevitably mean hate and war, cold or hot, from the United States, that alone would be a great revolution in world politics and the future of man. This is a major reason for my attempt to provide a revolutionary handbook not cast in a communist *or* capitalist mold, but as a manual for the Have-Nots of the world regardless of the color of their skins or their politics. My aim here is to suggest how to organize for power: how to get it and to use it. I will argue that the failure to use power for a more equitable distribution of the means of life for all people signals the end of the revolution and the start of the counterrevolution.

Revolution has always advanced with an ideological spear just as the status quo has inscribed its ideology upon its shield. All of life is partisan. There is no dispassionate objectivity. The revolutionary ideology is not confined to a specific limited formula. It is a series of general principles, rooted in Lincoln's May 19, 1856, statement: "Be not deceived. Revolutions do not go backward."

### ***THE IDEOLOGY OF CHANGE***

This raises the question: what, if any, is my ideology? What kind of ideology, if any, can an organizer have who is working in and for a free society? The prerequisite for an ideology is possession of a basic truth. For example, a Marxist begins with his prime truth that all evils are caused by the exploitation of the proletariat by the capitalists. From this he logically proceeds to the revolution to end capitalism, then into the third stage of reorganization into a new social order or the dictatorship of the proletariat, and finally the last stage—the political paradise of communism. The Christians also begin with their prime truth: the divinity of Christ and the tripartite

nature of God. Out of these "prime truths" flow a step-by-step ideology.

An organizer working in and for an open society is in an ideological dilemma. To begin with, he does not have a fixed truth—truth to him is relative and changing; *everything* to him is relative and changing. He is a political *{sic}* relativist. He accepts the late Justice Learned Hand's statement that "the mark of a free man is that ever-gnawing inner uncertainty as to whether or not he *is* right." The consequence is that he is ever on the hunt for the causes of man's plight and the general propositions that help to make some sense out of man's irrational world. He must constantly examine life, including his own, to get some idea of what it is all about, and he must challenge and test his own findings. Irreverence, essential to questioning, is a requisite. Curiosity becomes compulsive. His most frequent word is "why?" [{footnote 3}](#)

Does this then mean that the organizer in a free society for a free society is rudderless? No, I believe that he has a far better sense of direction and compass than the closed society organizer with his rigid political ideology. First, the free-society organizer is loose, resilient, fluid, and on the move in a society which *is* itself in a state of constant change. To the extent that he is free from the shackles of dogma, he can respond to the realities of the widely different situations our society presents. In the end he has one conviction—a belief that if people have the power to act, in the long run they will, most of the time, reach the right decisions. The alternative to this would be rule by the elite— either a dictatorship or some form of a political aristocracy. I am not concerned if this faith in people is regarded as a prime truth and therefore a contradiction of what I have already written, for life is a story of contradictions. Believing in people, the radical has the job of organizing them so that they will have the power and opportunity to best meet each unforeseeable

future crisis as they move ahead in their eternal search for those values of equality, justice, freedom, peace, a deep concern for the preciousness of human life, and all those rights and values propounded by Judaeo-Christianity and the democratic political tradition. Democracy is not an end but the best means toward achieving these values. This is my credo for which I live and, if need be, die.

The basic requirement for the understanding of the politics of change is to recognize the world as it is. We must work with it on its terms if we are to change it to the kind of world we would like it to be. We must first see the world as it is and not as we would like it to be. We must see the world as all political realists have, in terms of "what men do and not what they ought to do," as Machiavelli and others have put it.

It is painful to accept fully the simple fact that one begins from where one is, that one must break free of the web of illusions one spins about life. Most of us view the world not as it is but as we would like it to be. The preferred world can be seen any evening on television in the succession of programs where the good always wins—that is, until the late evening newscast, when suddenly we are plunged into the world as it is. [{footnote 4}](#)

Political realists see the world as it is: an arena of power politics moved primarily by perceived immediate self-interests, where morality is rhetorical rationale for expedient action and self-interest. Two examples would be the priest who wants to be a bishop and bootlicks and politicks his way up, justifying it with the rationale, "After I get to be bishop I'll use my office for Christian reformation," or the businessman who reasons, "First I'll make my million and after that I'll go for the real things in life." Unfortunately one changes in many ways on the road to the bishopric or the first million, and then

one says, "I'll wait until I'm a cardinal and then I can be more effective," or, "I can do a lot more after I get two million"—and so it goes. [{footnote 5}](#) In this world laws are written for the lofty aim of "the common good" and then acted out in life on the basis of the common greed. In this world irrationality clings to man like his shadow so that the right things are done for the wrong reasons—afterwards, we dredge up the right reasons for justification. It is a world not of angels but of angles, where men speak of moral principles but act on power principles; a world where we are always moral and our enemies always immoral; a world where "reconciliation" means that when one side gets the power and the other side gets reconciled to it, then we have reconciliation; a world of religious institutions that have, in the main, come to support and justify the status quo so that today organized religion is materially solvent and spiritually bankrupt. We live with a Judaeo-Christian ethic that has not only accommodated itself to but justified slavery, war, and every other ugly human exploitation of whichever status quo happened to prevail:

We live in a world where "good" is a value dependent on whether we want it. In the world as it is, the solution of each problem inevitably creates a new one. In the world as it is there are no permanent happy or sad endings. Such endings belong to the world of fantasy, the world as we would like it to be, the world of children's fairy tales where "they lived happily ever after." In the world as it is, the stream of events surges endlessly onward with death as the only terminus. One never reaches the horizon; it is always just beyond, ever beckoning onward; it is the pursuit of life itself. This is the world as it is. This is where you start.

It is not a world of peace and beauty and dispassionate rationality, but as Henry James once wrote, "Life *is, in fact*, a battle. Evil is insolent and strong; beauty enchanting but rare; goodness very apt to



be weak; folly very apt to be defiant; wickedness to carry the day; imbeciles to be in great places, people of sense in small, and mankind generally unhappy. But the world as it stands is no narrow illusion, no phantasm, no evil dream of the night; we wake up to it again forever and ever; and we can neither forget it nor deny it nor dispense with it." Henry James's statement is an affirmation of that of Job: "The life of man upon earth is a warfare . . ." Disraeli put it succinctly: "Political life must be taken as you find it."

Once we have moved into the world as it is then we begin to shed fallacy after fallacy. The prime illusion we must rid ourselves of is the conventional view in which things are seen separate from their inevitable counterparts. We know intellectually that everything *{sic}* is functionally interrelated, but in our operations we segment and isolate all values and issues. Everything about us must be seen as the indivisible partner of its converse, light and darkness, good and evil, life and death. From the moment we are born we begin to die. Happiness and misery are inseparable. So are peace and war. The threat of destruction from nuclear energy conversely carries the opportunity of peace and plenty, and so with every component of this universe; all is paired in this enormous Noah's Ark of life.

Life seems to lack rhyme or reason or even a shadow of order unless we approach it with the key of converses. Seeing everything in its duality, we begin to get some dim clues to direction and what it's all about. It is in these contradictions and their incessant interacting tensions that creativity begins. As we begin to accept the concept of contradictions we see every problem or issue in its whole, interrelated sense. We then recognize that for every positive there is a negative, [{footnote 6}](#) and that there is nothing positive without its concomitant negative, nor any political paradise without its negative side.

Niels Bohr pointed out that the appearance of contradictions was a signal that the experiment was on the right track: "There is not much hope if we have only one difficulty, but when we have two, we can match them off against each other." Bohr called this "complementarity," meaning that the interplay of seemingly conflicting forces or opposites is the actual harmony of nature. Whitehead similarly observed, "In formal logic, a contradiction is the signal of a defeat; but in the evolution of real knowledge it marks the first step in progress towards a victory,"

Everywhere you look all change shows this complementarity. In Chicago the people of Upton Sinclair's *Jungle*, then the worst slum in America, crushed by starvation wages when they worked, demoralized, diseased, living in rotting shacks, were organized. Their banners proclaimed equality for all races, job security, and a decent life for all. With their power they fought and won. Today, as part of the middle class, they are also part of our racist, discriminatory culture.

The Tennessee Valley Authority was one of the prize jewels in the democratic crown. Visitors came from every part of the world to see, admire, and study this physical and social achievement of a free society. Today it is the scourge of the Cumberland Mountains, strip mining for coal and wreaking havoc on the countryside.

The C.I.O. was the militant champion of America's workers. In its ranks, directly and indirectly, were all of America's radicals; they fought the corporate structure of the nation and won. Today, merged with the A.F. of L., it is an entrenched member of the establishment and its leader supports the war in Vietnam.

Another example is today's high-rise public housing projects. Originally conceived and carried through as major advances in

ridding cities of slums, they involved the tearing down of rotting, rat-infested tenements, and the erection of modern apartment buildings. They were acclaimed as America's refusal to permit its people to live in the dirty shambles of the slums. It is common knowledge that they have turned into jungles of horror and now confront us with the problem of how we can either convert or get rid of them. They have become compounds of double segregation —on the bases of both economy and race—and a danger for anyone compelled to live in these projects. A beautiful positive dream has grown into a negative nightmare.

It is the universal tale of revolution and reaction. It is the constant struggle between the positive and its converse negative, which includes the reversal of roles so that the positive of today is the negative of tomorrow and vice versa.

This view of nature recognizes that reality is dual. The principles of quantum mechanics in physics apply even more dramatically to the mechanics of mass movements. This is true not only in "complementarity" but in the repudiation of the hitherto universal concept of causality, whereby matter and physics were understood in terms of cause and effect, where for every effect there had to be a cause and one always produced the other. In quantum mechanics, causality was largely replaced by probability: an electron or atom did not have to do anything specific in response to a particular force; there was just a set of probabilities that it would react in this or that way. This is fundamental in the observations and propositions which follow. At no time in any discussion or analysis of mass movements, tactics, or any other phase of the problem, can it be said that if this is done then that will result. The most we can hope to achieve is an understanding of the probabilities consequent to certain actions.

This grasp of the duality of all phenomena is vital in our understanding of politics. It frees one from the myth that one approach is positive and another negative. There is no such thing in life. One man's positive is another man's negative. The description of any procedure as "positive" or "negative" is the mark of a political illiterate.

Once the nature of revolution is understood from the dualistic outlook we lose our mono-view of a revolution and see it coupled with its inevitable counterrevolution. Once we accept and learn to anticipate the inevitable counterrevolution, we may then alter the historical pattern of revolution and counterrevolution from the traditional slow advance of two steps forward and one step backward to minimizing the latter. Each element with its positive and converse sides is fused to other related elements in an endless series of everything, so that the converse of revolution on one side is counterrevolution and on the other side, reformation, and so on in an endless chain of connected converses.

### ***CLASS DISTINCTIONS: THE TRINITY***

The setting for the drama of change has never varied. Mankind has been and is divided into three parts: the Haves, the Have-Nots, and the Have-a-Little, Want Mores.

On top are the Haves with power, money, food, security, and luxury. They suffocate in their surpluses while the Have-Nots starve. Numerically the Haves have always been the fewest. The Haves want to keep things as they are and are opposed to change. Thermopolitically they are cold and determined to freeze the status quo.

On the bottom are the world's Have-Nots. On the world scene they are by far the greatest in numbers. They are chained together by the common misery of poverty, rotten housing, disease, ignorance, political impotence, and despair; when they are employed their jobs pay the least and they are deprived in all areas basic to human growth. Caged by color, physical or political, they are barred from an opportunity to represent themselves in the politics of life. The Haves want to keep; the Have-Nots want to get, Thermopolitically they are a mass of cold ashes of resignation and fatalism, but inside there are glowing embers of hope which can be fanned by the building of means of obtaining power. Once the fever begins the flame will follow. They have nowhere to go but up.

They hate the establishment of the Haves with its arrogant opulence, its police, its courts, and its churches. Justice, morality, law, and order, are mere words when used by the Haves, which justify and secure their status quo. The power of the Have-Nots rests only with their numbers. It has been said that the Haves, living under the nightmare of possible threats to their possessions, are always faced with the question of "when do we sleep?" while the perennial question of the Have-Nots is "when do we eat?" The cry of the Have-Nots has never been "give us your hearts" but always "get off our backs"; they ask not for love but for breathing space.

Between the Haves and Have-Nots are the Have-a-Little, Want Mores—the middle class. Torn between upholding the status quo to protect the little they have, yet wanting change so they can get more, they become split personalities. They could be described as social, economic, and political schizoids. Generally, they seek the safe way, where they can profit by change and yet not risk losing the little they have. They insist on a minimum of three aces before playing a hand in the poker game of revolution. Thermopolitically they are tepid and

rooted in inertia. Today in Western society and particularly in the United States they comprise the majority of our population.

Yet in the conflicting interests and contradictions within the Have-a-Little, Want Mores is the genesis of creativity. Out of this class have come, with few exceptions, the great world leaders of change of the past centuries: Moses, Paul of Tarsus, Martin Luther, Robespierre, Georges Danton, Samuel Adams, Alexander Hamilton, Thomas Jefferson, Napoleon Bonaparte, Giuseppe Garibaldi, Nikolai Lenin, Mahatma Gandhi, Fidel Castro, Mao Tse-tung, and others.

Just as the clash of interests within the Have-a-Little, Want Mores has bred so many of the great leaders it has also spawned a particular breed stalemated by cross interests into inaction. These Do-Nothings profess a commitment to social change for ideals of justice, equality, and opportunity, and then abstain from and discourage all effective action for change. They are known by their brand, "I agree with your ends but not your means." They function as blankets whenever possible smothering sparks of dissension that promise to flare up into the fire of action. These Do-Nothings appear publicly as good men, humanitarian, concerned with justice and dignity. In practice they are invidious. They are the ones Edmund Burke referred to when he said, acidly: "The only thing necessary for the triumph of evil is for good men to do nothing." Both the revolutionary leaders, or the Doers, and the Do-Nothings will be examined in these pages.

The history of prevailing status quos shows decay and decadence infecting the opulent materialism of the Haves. The spiritual life of the Haves is a ritualistic justification of their possessions.

More than one hundred years ago, Tocqueville commented, as did other students of America at that time, that self-indulgence accompanied by concern for nothing except personal materialistic

welfare was the major menace to America's future. Whitehead noted in *Adventures of Ideas* that "The enjoyment of power is fatal to the subtleties of life. Ruling classes degenerate by reason of their lazy indulgence in obvious gratifications." In such a state men may be said to fall asleep, for it is in sleep that we each turn away from the world about us to our private worlds. [{footnote 7}](#) I must quote one more book pertinent to this subject: in *Alice in Wonderland*, Tiger-Lily explains about the talking flowers to Alice. Tiger-Lily points out that the flowers that talk grow out of hard beds of ground and "in most gardens," Tiger-Lily says, "they make the beds too soft—so that the flowers are always asleep." It is as though the great law of change had prepared the anesthsization *{sic}* of the victim prior to the social surgery to come.

Change means movement. Movement means friction. Only in the frictionless vacuum of a nonexistent abstract world can movement or change occur without that abrasive friction of conflict. In these pages it is our open political purpose to cooperate with the great law of change; to want otherwise would be like King Canute's commanding the tides and waves to cease.

A word about my personal philosophy. It is anchored in optimism. It must be, for optimism brings with it hope, a future with a purpose, and therefore, a will to fight for a better world. Without this optimism, there is no reason to carry on. If we think of the struggle as a climb up a mountain, then we must visualize a mountain with no top. We see a top, but when we finally reach it, the overcast rises and we find ourselves merely on a bluff. The mountain continues on up. Now we see the "real" top ahead of us, and strive for it, only to find we've reached another bluff, the top still above us. And so it goes on, interminably.

Knowing that the mountain has no top, that it is a perpetual quest from plateau to plateau, the question arises, "Why the struggle, the conflict, the heartbreak, the danger, the sacrifice. Why the constant climb?" Our answer is the same as that which a real mountain climber gives when he is asked why he does what he does. "Because it's there." Because life is there ahead of you and either one tests oneself in its challenges or huddles in the valleys in a dreamless day-to-day existence whose only purpose is the preservation of an illusory security and safety. The latter is what the vast majority of people choose to do, fearing the adventure into the unknown. Paradoxically, they give up the dream of what may lie ahead on the heights of tomorrow for a perpetual nightmare—an endless succession of days fearing the loss of a tenuous security.

Unlike the chore of the mythic Sisyphus *{sic}*, this challenge is not an endless pushing up of a boulder to the top of a hill, only to have it roll back again, the chore to be repeated eternally. It is pushing the boulder up an endless mountain, but, unlike Sisyphus *{sic}*, we are always going further upward. And also unlike Sisyphus *{sic}*, each stage of the trail upward is different, newly dramatic, an adventure each time.

At times we do fall back and become discouraged, but it is not that we are making no progress. Simply, this is the very nature of life—that it is a climb—and that the resolution of each issue in turn creates other issues, born of plights which are unimaginable today. The pursuit of happiness is never-ending; happiness lies in the pursuit.

Confronted with the materialistic decadence of the status quo, one should not be surprised to find that all revolutionary movements are primarily generated from spiritual values and considerations of justice, equality, peace, and brotherhood. History is a relay of revolutions; the torch of idealism is carried by the revolutionary



group until this group becomes an establishment, and then quietly the torch is put down to wait until a new revolutionary group picks it up for the next leg of the run. Thus the revolutionary cycle goes on.

A major revolution to be won in the immediate future is the dissipation of man's illusion that his own welfare can be separate from that of all others. As long as man is shackled to this myth, so long will the human spirit languish. Concern for our private, material well-being with disregard for the well-being of others is immoral according to the precepts of our Judaeo-Christian civilization, but worse, it is stupidity worthy of the lower animals. It is man's foot still dragging in the primeval slime of his beginnings, in ignorance and mere animal cunning. But those who know the interdependence of man to be his major strength in the struggle out of the muck have not been wise in their exhortations and moral pronouncements that man is his brother's keeper. On that score the record of the past centuries has been a disaster, for it was wrong to assume that man would pursue morality on a level higher than his day-to-day living demanded; it was a disservice to the future to separate morality from man's daily desires and elevate it to a plane of altruism and self-sacrifice. The fact is that it is not man's "better nature" but his self-interest that demands that he be his brother's keeper. We now live in a world where no man can have a loaf of bread while his neighbor has none. If he does not share his bread, he dare not sleep, for his neighbor will kill him. To eat and sleep in safety man must do the right thing, if for seemingly the wrong reasons, and be in practice his brother's keeper.

I believe that man is about to learn that the most practical life is the moral life and that the moral life is the only road to survival. He is beginning to learn that he will either share part of his material wealth or lose all of it; that he will respect and learn to live with other political ideologies if he wants civilization to go on. This is the kind

of argument that man's actual experience equips him to understand and accept. *This is the low road to morality. There is no other.*

{footnote 1} Lincoln's First Inaugural. "This country, with its institutions, belongs to the people who inhabit it. Whenever they shall grow weary of the existing government, they can exercise their constitutional right of amending it, or their revolutionary right to dismember or overthrow it." {end footnote}

{footnote 2} U.S. Supreme Court Justice William O. Douglas, "The U.S. and Revolution," Center for the Study of Democratic Institutions Occasional Paper No. 116: "On trips to Asia I often asked men in their thirties and forties what they were reading when they were eighteen. They usually answered 'Karl Marx', and when I asked them why, they replied, 'We were under colonial rule, seeking a way out. We wanted our independence. To get it we had to make revolution. The only books on revolution were published by the communists.' These men almost invariably had repudiated communism as a political cult, retaining, however, a tinge of socialism. As I talked with them, I came to realize the great opportunities we missed when we became preoccupied in fighting communism with bombs and with dollars, rather than with ideas of revolution, of freedom, of justice." {end footnote}

{footnote 3} Some say it's no coincidence that the question mark is an inverted plow, breaking up the hard soil of old beliefs and preparing for the new growth. {end footnote}

{footnote 4} With some exceptions. In one of America's Shangri-Las of escape from the world as it is, Carmel-by-the-Sea, California, on the coast of the beautiful Monterey Peninsula, radio station KRML used to broadcast the "Sunshine News—which headlines the positive, only the good news of the world!"

Intellectuals, who would scoff at "Sunshine News," are no exception to the preference for already-formulated answers. {end footnote}

{footnote 5} Each year, for a number of years, the activists in the graduating class from a major Catholic seminary near Chicago would visit me for a day just before their ordination, with questions about values, revolutionary tactics, and such. Once, at the end of such a day, one of the seminarians said, "Mr. Alinsky, before we came here we met and agreed that there was one question we particularly wanted to put to you. We're going to be ordained, and then we'll be assigned to different

parishes, as assistants to—frankly—stuffy, reactionary, old pastors. They will disapprove of a lot of what you and we believe in, and we will be put into a killing routine. Our question is: how do we keep our faith in true Christian values, everything we hope to do to change the system?"

That was easy. I answered, "When you go out that door, just make your own personal decision about whether you want to be a bishop or a priest, and everything else will follow." {end footnote}

{footnote 6} For more than four thousand years the Chinese have been familiar with the principle of complementarity in their philosophical life. They believe that from the illimitable (nature, God or gods) came the principle of creation which they called the Great Extreme and from the Great Extreme came the Two Principles or Dual Powers, Yang and Yin, out of which came everything else. Yang and Yin have been defined as positive and negative, light and darkness, male and female, or numerous other examples of opposites or converses. {end footnote}

{footnote 7} Heraclitus, *Fragments*: "The waking have one world in common; sleepers have each a private world of his own." {end footnote}

## *Of Means and Ends*

*We cannot think first and act afterwards. From the moment of birth we are immersed in action and can only fitfully guide it by taking thought.*

— Alfred North Whitehead

THAT PERENNIAL QUESTION, "Does the end justify the means?" is meaningless as it stands; the real and only question regarding the ethics of means and ends is, and always has been, "Does this *particular* end justify this *particular* means?"

Life and how you live it is the story of means and ends. The *end* is what you want, and the *means* is how you get it. Whenever we think about social change, the question of means and ends arises. The man of action views the issue of means and ends in pragmatic and strategic terms. He has no other problem; he thinks only of his actual resources and the possibilities of various choices of action. He asks of ends only whether they are achievable and worth the cost; of means, only whether they will work. To say that corrupt means corrupt the ends is to believe in the immaculate conception of ends and principles. The real arena is corrupt and bloody. Life *is* a corrupting process from the time a child learns to play his mother off against his father in the politics of when to go to bed; he who fears corruption fears life.

The practical revolutionary will understand Goethe's "conscience is the virtue of observers and not of agents of action"; in action, one does not always enjoy the luxury of a decision that is consistent both with one's individual conscience and the good of mankind. The choice must always be for the latter. Action is for mass salvation and not for the individual's personal salvation. He who sacrifices the mass good for his personal conscience has a peculiar conception of "personal salvation"; he doesn't care enough for people to be "corrupted" for them.

The men who pile up the heaps of discussion and literature on the ethics of means and ends—which with rare exception is conspicuous for its sterility—rarely write about their own experiences in the perpetual struggle of life and change. They are strangers, moreover, to the burdens and problems of operational responsibility and the unceasing pressure for immediate decisions. They are passionately committed to a mystical objectivity where passions are suspect. They assume a nonexistent situation where men dispassionately and with reason draw and devise means and ends as if studying a navigational

chart on land. They can be recognized by one of two verbal brands: "We agree with the ends but not the means," or "This is not the time." *The means-and-end moralists or non-doers always wind up on their ends without any means.*

The means-and-ends moralists, constantly obsessed with the ethics of the means used by the Have-Nots against the Haves, should search themselves as to their real political position. In fact, they are passive—but real—allies of the Haves. They are the ones Jacques Maritain referred to in his statement, "The fear of soiling ourselves by entering the context of history is not virtue, but a way of escaping virtue." These non-doers were the ones who chose not to fight the Nazis in the only way they could have been fought; they were the ones who drew their window blinds to shut out the shameful spectacle of Jews and political prisoners being dragged through the streets; they were the ones who privately deplored the horror of it all—and did nothing. This is the nadir of immorality. The most unethical of all means is the nonuse of any means. It is this species of man who so vehemently and militantly participated in that classically idealistic debate at the old League of Nations on the ethical differences between defensive and offensive weapons. Their fears of action drive them to refuge in an ethics *so* divorced from the politics of life that it can apply only to angels, not to men. The standards of judgment must be rooted in the whys and wherefores of life as it is lived, the world as it is, not our wished-for fantasy of the world as it should be.

I present here a series of rules pertaining to the ethics of means and ends: first, that *one's concern with the ethics of means and ends varies inversely with one's personal interest in the issue.* When we are not directly concerned our morality overflows; as La Rochefoucauld put it, "We all have strength enough to endure the misfortunes of others." Accompanying this rule is the parallel one

that *one's concern with the ethics of means and ends varies inversely with one's distance from the scene of conflict.*

*The second rule of the ethics of means and ends is that the judgment of the ethics of means is dependent upon the political position of those sitting in judgment.* If you actively opposed the Nazi occupation and joined the underground Resistance, then you adopted the means of assassination, terror, property destruction, the bombing of tunnels and trains, kidnapping, and the willingness to sacrifice innocent hostages to the end of defeating the Nazis. Those who opposed the Nazi conquerors regarded the Resistance as a secret army of selfless, patriotic idealists, courageous beyond expectation and willing to sacrifice their lives to their moral convictions. To the occupation authorities, however, these people were lawless terrorists, murderers, saboteurs, assassins, who believed that the end justified the means, and were utterly unethical according to the mystical rules of war. Any foreign occupation would so ethically judge its opposition. However, in such conflict, neither protagonist *is* concerned with any value except victory. It is life or death.

To us the Declaration of Independence is a glorious document and an affirmation of human rights. To the British, on the other hand, it was a statement notorious for its deceit by omission. In the Declaration of Independence, the Bill of Particulars attesting to the reasons for the Revolution cited all of the injustices which the colonists felt that England had been guilty of, but listed none of the benefits. There was no mention of the food the colonies had received from the British Empire during times of famine, medicine during times of disease, soldiers during times of war with the Indians and other foes, or the many other direct and indirect aids to the survival of the colonies. Neither was there notice of the growing number of allies and friends of the colonists in the British House of Commons, and the hope for

imminent remedial legislation to correct the inequities under which the colonies suffered.

Jefferson, Franklin, and others were honorable men, but they knew that the Declaration of Independence was a call to war. They also knew that a list of many of the constructive benefits of the British Empire to the colonists would have so diluted the urgency of the call to arms for the Revolution as to have been self-defeating. The result might well have been a document attesting to the fact that justice weighted down the scale at least 60 per cent on our side, and only 40 per cent on their side; and that because of that 20 per cent difference we were going to have a Revolution. To expect a man to leave his wife, his children, and his home, to leave his crops standing in the field and pick up a gun and join the Revolutionary Army for a 20 per cent difference in the balance of human justice was to defy common sense.

The Declaration of Independence, as a declaration of war, had to be what it was, a 100 per cent statement of the justice of the cause of the colonists and a 100 per cent denunciation of the role of the British government as evil and unjust. Our cause had to be all shining justice, allied with the angels; theirs had to be all evil, tied to the Devil; in no war has the enemy or the cause ever been gray. Therefore, from one point of view the omission was justified; from the other, it was deliberate deceit.

History is made up of "moral" judgments based on politics. We condemned Lenin's acceptance of money from the Germans in 1917 but were discreetly silent while our Colonel William B. Thompson in the same year contributed a million dollars to the anti-Bolsheviks in Russia. As allies of the Soviets in World War II we praised and cheered communist guerrilla tactics when the Russians used them against the Nazis during the Nazi invasion of the Soviet Union; we

denounce the same tactics when they are used by communist forces in different parts of the world against us. The opposition's means, used against us, are always immoral and our means are always ethical and rooted in the highest of human values. George Bernard Shaw, in *Man and Superman*, pointed out the variations in ethical definitions by virtue of where you stand. Mendoza said to Tanner, "I am a brigand; I live by robbing the rich." Tanner replied, "I am a gentleman; I live by robbing the poor. Shake hands."

*The third rule of the ethics of means and ends is that in war the end justifies almost any means.* Agreements on the Geneva rules on treatment of prisoners or use of nuclear weapons are observed only because the enemy or his potential allies may retaliate.

Winston Churchill's remarks to his private secretary a few hours before the Nazis invaded the Soviet Union graphically pointed out the politics of means and ends in war. Informed of the imminent turn of events, the secretary inquired how Churchill, the leading British anticommunist, could reconcile himself to being on the same side as the Soviets. Would not Churchill find it embarrassing and difficult to ask his government to support the communists? Churchill's reply was clear and unequivocal: "Not at all. I have only one purpose, the destruction of Hitler, and my life is much simplified thereby. If Hitler invaded Hell I would make at least a favorable reference to the Devil in the House of Commons."

In the Civil War President Lincoln did not hesitate to suspend the right of habeas corpus and to ignore the directive of the Chief Justice of the United States. Again, when Lincoln was convinced that the use of military commissions to try civilians was necessary, he brushed aside the illegality of this action with the statement that it was "indispensable to the public safety." He believed that the civil courts were powerless to cope with the insurrectionist activities of civilians.



"Must I shoot a simpleminded soldier boy who deserts, while I must not touch a hair of a wily agitator who induces him to desert . . ."

*The fourth rule of the ethics of means and ends is that judgment must be made in the context of the times in which the action occurred and not from any other chronological vantage point.* The Boston Massacre is a case in point. "British atrocities alone, however, were not sufficient to convince the people that murder had been done on the night of March 5: There was a deathbed confession of Patrick Carr, that the townspeople had been the aggressors and that the soldiers had fired in self defense. This unlooked-for recantation from one of the martyrs who was dying in the odor of sanctity with which Sam Adams had vested them sent a wave of alarm through the patriot ranks. But Adams blasted Carr's testimony in the eyes of all pious New Englanders by pointing out that he was an Irish 'papist' who had probably died in the confession of the Roman Catholic Church. After Sam Adams had finished with Patrick Carr even Tories did not dare to quote him to prove Bostonians were responsible for the Massacre." [{footnote 1}](#) To the British this was a false, rotten use of bigotry and an immoral means characteristic of the Revolutionaries, or the Sons of Liberty. To the Sons of Liberty and to the patriots, Sam Adams' action was brilliant strategy and a God-sent lifesaver. Today we may look back and regard Adams' action in the same light as the British did, but remember that we are not today involved in a revolution against the British Empire.

Ethical standards must be elastic to stretch with the times. In politics, the ethics of means and ends can be understood by the rules suggested here. History is made up of little else but examples such as our position on freedom of the high seas in 1812 and 1917 contrasted with our 1962 blockade of Cuba, or our alliance in 1942 with the Soviet Union against Germany, Japan and Italy, and the reversal in alignments in less than a decade.

Lincoln's suspension of habeas corpus, his defiance of a directive of the Chief Justice of the United States, and the illegal use of military commissions to try civilians, were by the same man who had said in Springfield, fifteen years earlier: "Let me not be understood as saying that there are no bad laws, or that grievances may not arise for the redress of which no legal provisions have been made. I mean to say no such thing. But I do mean to say that although bad laws, if they exist, should be repealed, still, while they continue in force, for the sake of example, they should be religiously observed."

This was also the same Lincoln who, a few years prior to his signing the Emancipation Proclamation, stated in his First Inaugural Address: "I do but quote from one of those speeches when I declared that I have no purpose, directly or indirectly, to interfere with the institution of slavery in the States where it exists. I believe I have no lawful right to do so, and I have no inclination to do so.' Those who nominated and elected me did so with full knowledge that I made this and many similar declarations and have never recanted them."

Those who would be critical of the ethics of Lincoln's reversal of positions have a strangely unreal picture of a static unchanging world, where one remains firm and committed to certain so-called principles or positions. In the politics of human life, consistency is not a virtue. To be consistent means, according to the Oxford Universal Dictionary, "standing still or not moving." Men must change with the times or die.

The change in Jefferson's orientation when he became President is pertinent to this point. Jefferson had incessantly attacked President Washington for using national self-interest as the point of departure for all decisions. He castigated the President as narrow and selfish and argued that decisions should be made on a world-interest basis to encourage the spread of the ideas of the American Revolution; that

Washington's adherence to the criteria of national self-interest was a betrayal of the American Revolution. However, from the first moment when Jefferson assumed the presidency of the United States his every decision was dictated by national self-interest. This story from another century has parallels in our century and every other.

*The fifth rule of the ethics of means and ends is that concern with ethics increases with the number of means available and vice versa.* To the man of action the first criterion in determining which means to employ is to assess what means are available. Reviewing and selecting available means *is* done on a straight utilitarian basis— will it work? Moral questions may enter when one chooses among equally effective alternate means. But if one lacks the luxury of a choice and is possessed of only one means, then the ethical question will never arise; automatically the lone means becomes endowed with a moral spirit. Its defense lies in the cry, "What else could I do?" Inversely, the secure position in which one possesses the choice of a number of effective and powerful means is always accompanied by that ethical concern and serenity of conscience so admirably described by Mark Twain as "The calm confidence of a Christian holding four aces."

To me ethics is doing what is best for the most. During a conflict with a major corporation I was confronted with a threat of public exposure of a photograph of a motel "Mr. & Mrs." registration and photographs of my girl and myself. I said, "Go ahead and give it to the press. I think she's beautiful and I have never claimed to be celibate. Go ahead!" That ended the threat.

Almost on the heels of this encounter one of the corporation's minor executives came to see me. It turned out that he was a secret sympathizer with our side. Pointing to his briefcase, he said: "In there is plenty of proof that so and so [a leader of the opposition] prefers

boys to girls." I said, "Thanks, but forget it. I don't fight that way. I don't want to see it. Goodbye." He protested, "But they just tried to hang you on that girl." I replied, "The fact that they fight that way doesn't mean I have to do it. To me, dragging a person's private life into this muck is loathsome and nauseous." He left.

So far, so noble; *but*, if I had been convinced that the only way we could win was to use it, then without any reservations I would have used it. What was my alternative? To draw myself up into righteous "moral" indignation saying, "I would rather lose than corrupt my principles," and then go home with my ethical hymen intact? The fact that 40,000 poor would lose their war against hopelessness and despair was just too tragic. That their condition would even be worsened by the vindictiveness of the corporation was also terrible and unfortunate, but that's life. After all, one has to remember means and ends. It's true that I might have trouble getting to sleep because it takes time to tuck those big, angelic, moral wings under the covers. To me that would be utter immorality.

*The sixth rule of the ethics of means and ends is that the less important the end to be desired, the more one can afford to engage in ethical evaluations of means.*

*The seventh rule of the ethics of means and ends is that generally success or failure is a mighty determinant of ethics. The judgment of history leans heavily on the outcome of success or failure; it spells the difference between the traitor and the patriotic hero. There can be no such thing as a successful traitor, for if one succeeds he becomes a founding father.*

*The eighth rule of the ethics of means and ends is that the morality of a means depends upon whether the means is being employed at a time of imminent defeat or imminent victory. The same means*

employed with victory seemingly assured may be defined as immoral, whereas if it had been used in desperate circumstances to avert defeat, the question of morality would never arise. In short, ethics are determined by whether one is losing or winning. From the beginning of time killing has always been regarded as justifiable if committed in self-defense.

Let us confront this principle with the most awful ethical question of modern times: did the United States have the right to use the atomic bomb at Hiroshima?

When we dropped the atomic bomb the United States was assured of victory. In the Pacific, Japan had suffered an unbroken succession of defeats. Now we were in Okinawa with an air base from which we could bomb the enemy around the clock. The Japanese air force was decimated, as was their navy. Victory had come in Europe, and the entire European air force, navy, and army were released for use in the Pacific. Russia was moving in for a cut of the spoils. Defeat for Japan was an absolute certainty and the only question was how and when the coup de grâce would be administered. For familiar reasons we dropped the bomb and triggered off as well a universal debate on the morality of the use of this means for the end of finishing the war.

I submit that if the atomic bomb had been developed shortly after Pearl Harbor when we stood defenseless; when most of our Pacific fleet was at the bottom of the sea; when the nation was fearful of invasion on the Pacific coast; when we were committed as well to the war in Europe, that then the use of the bomb at that time on Japan would have been universally heralded as a just retribution of hail, fire, and brimstone. Then the use of the bomb would have been hailed as proof that good inevitably triumphs over evil. The question of the ethics of the use of the bomb would never have arisen at that time and the character of the present debate would have been very

different. Those who would disagree with this assertion have no memory of the state of the world at that time. They are either fools or liars or both.

*The ninth rule of the ethics of means and ends is that any effective means is automatically judged by the opposition as being unethical.* One of our greatest revolutionary heroes was Francis Marion of South Carolina, who became immortalized in American history as "the Swamp Fox." Marion was an outright revolutionary guerrilla. He and his men operated according to the traditions and with all of the tactics commonly associated with the present-day guerrillas. Cornwallis and the regular British Army found their plans and operations harried and disorganized by Marion's guerrilla tactics. Infuriated by the effectiveness of his operations, and incapable of coping with them, the British denounced him as a criminal and charged that he did not engage in warfare "like a gentleman" or "a Christian." He was subjected to an unremitting denunciation about his lack of ethics and morality for his use of guerrilla means to the end of winning the Revolution.

*The tenth rule of the ethics of means and ends is that you do what you can with what you have and clothe it with moral garments.* In the field of action, the first question that arises in the determination of means to be employed for particular ends is what means are available. This requires an assessment of whatever strengths or resources are present and can be used. It involves sifting the multiple factors which combine in creating the circumstances at any given time, and an adjustment to the popular views and the popular climate. Questions such as how much time is necessary or available must be considered. Who, and how many, will support the action? Does the opposition possess the power to the degree that it can suspend or change the laws? Does its control of police power extend to the point where legal and orderly change is impossible? If weapons are

needed, then are appropriate weapons available? Availability of means determines whether you will be underground or above ground; whether you will move quickly or slowly; whether you will move for extensive changes or limited adjustments; whether you will move by passive resistance or active resistance; or whether you will move at all. The absence of any means might drive one to martyrdom in the hope that this would be a catalyst, starting a chain reaction that would culminate in a mass movement. Here a simple ethical statement is used as a means to power.

A naked illustration of this point is to be found in Trotsky's summary of Lenin's famous April Theses, issued shortly after Lenin's return from exile. Lenin pointed out: "The task of the Bolsheviks is to overthrow the Imperialist Government. But this government rests upon the support of the Social Revolutionaries and Mensheviks, who in turn are supported by the trustfulness of the masses of people. We are in the minority. In these circumstances there can be no talk of violence on our side." The essence of Lenin's speeches during this period was "They have the guns and therefore we are for peace and for reformation through the ballot. When we have the guns then it will be through the bullet." And it was.

Mahatma Gandhi and his use of passive resistance in India presents a striking example of the selection of means. Here, too, we see the inevitable alchemy of time working upon moral equivalents as a consequence of the changing circumstances and positions of the Have-Nots to the Haves, with the natural shift of goals from getting to keeping.

Gandhi is viewed by the world as the epitome of the highest moral behavior with respect to means and ends. We can assume that there are those who would believe that if Gandhi had lived, there would never have been an invasion of Goa or any other armed invasion.

Similarly, the politically naive would have regarded it as unbelievable that that great apostle of nonviolence, Nehru, would ever have countenanced the invasion of Goa, for it was Nehru who stated in 1955: "What are the basic elements of our policy in regard to Goa? First, there must be peaceful methods. This is essential unless we give up the roots of all our policies and all our behavior... We rule out nonpeaceful methods entirely." He was a man committed to nonviolence and ostensibly to the love of mankind, including his enemies. His end was the independence of India from foreign domination, and his means was that of passive resistance. History, and religious and moral opinion, have so enshrined Gandhi in this sacred matrix that in many quarters it is blasphemous to question whether this entire procedure of passive resistance was not simply the only intelligent, realistic, expedient program which Gandhi had at his disposal; and that the "morality" which surrounded this policy of passive resistance was to a large degree a rationale to cloak a pragmatic program with a desired and essential moral cover.

Let us examine this case. First, Gandhi, like any other leader in the field of social action, was compelled to examine the means at hand. If he had had guns he might well have used them in an armed revolution against the British which would have been in keeping with the traditions of revolutions for freedom through force. Gandhi did not have the guns, and if he had had the guns he would not have had the people to use the guns. Gandhi records in his *Autobiography* his astonishment at the passivity and submissiveness of his people in not retaliating or even wanting revenge against the British: "As I proceeded further and further with my inquiry into the atrocities that had been committed on the people, I came across tales of Government's tyranny and the arbitrary despotism of its officers such as I was hardly prepared for, and they filled me with deep pain. What surprised me then, and what still continues to fill me with surprise, was the fact that a province that had furnished the largest number of



soldiers to the British Government during the war, should have taken all these brutal excesses lying down."

Gandhi and his associates repeatedly deplored the inability of their people to give organized, effective, violent resistance against injustice and tyranny. His own experience was corroborated by an unbroken series of reiterations from all the leaders of India—that India could not practice physical warfare against her enemies. Many reasons were given, including weakness, lack of arms, having been beaten into submission, and other arguments of a similar nature. Interviewed by Norman Cousins in 1961. Pandit Jawaharlal Nehru described the Hindus of those days as "A demoralized, timid, and hopeless mass bullied and crushed by every dominant interest and incapable of resistance."

Faced with this situation we revert for the moment to Gandhi's assessment and review of the means available to him. It has been stated that if he had had the guns he might have used them; this statement is based on the Declaration of Independence of Mahatma Gandhi issued on January 26, 1930, where he discussed "the fourfold disaster to our country." His fourth indictment against the British reads: "Spiritually, compulsory disarmament has made us unmanly, and the presence of an alien army of occupation, employed with deadly effect to crush in us the spirit of resistance, has made us think we cannot look after ourselves or put up a defense against foreign aggression, or even defend our homes and families . . ." These words more than suggest that if Gandhi had had the weapons for violent resistance and the people to use them this means would not have been so unreservedly rejected as the world would like to think.

On the same point, we might note that once India had secured independence, when Nehru was faced with a dispute with Pakistan over Kashmir, he did not hesitate to use armed force. Now the power

arrangements had changed. India had the guns and the trained army to use these weapons. [{footnote 2}](#) Any suggestion that Gandhi would not have approved the use of violence is negated by Nehru's own statement in that 1961 interview: "It was a terrible time. When the news reached me about Kashmir I knew I would have to act at once—with force. Yet I was greatly troubled in mind and spirit because I knew we might have to face a war—so soon after having achieved our independence through a philosophy of nonviolence. It was horrible to think of. Yet I acted. Gandhi said nothing to indicate his disapproval. It was a great relief, I must say. If Gandhi, the vigorous nonviolent, didn't demur, it made my job a lot easier. This strengthened my view that Gandhi could be adaptable."

Confronted with the issue of what means he could employ against the British, we come to the other criteria previously mentioned; that the kind of means selected and how they can be used is significantly dependent upon the face of the enemy, or the character of his opposition. Gandhi's opposition not only made the effective use of passive resistance possible but practically invited it. His enemy was a British administration characterized by an old, aristocratic, liberal tradition, one which granted a good deal of freedom to its colonials and which always had operated on a pattern of using, absorbing, seducing, or destroying, through flattery or corruption, the revolutionary leaders who arose from the colonial ranks. This was the kind of opposition that would have tolerated and ultimately capitulated before the tactic of passive resistance.

Gandhi's passive resistance would never have had a chance against a totalitarian state such as that of the Nazis. It is dubious whether under those circumstances the idea of passive resistance would even have occurred to Gandhi. It has been pointed out that Gandhi, who was born in 1869, never saw or understood totalitarianism and defined his opposition completely in terms of the character of the British

government and what it represented. George Orwell, in his essay *Reflection on Gandhi*, made some pertinent observations on this point: "... He believed in 'arousing the world,' which is only possible if the world gets a chance to hear what you are doing. It is difficult to see how Gandhi's methods could be applied in a country where opponents of the regime disappear in the middle of the night and are never heard of again. Without a free press and the right of assembly it is impossible, not merely to appeal to outside opinion, but to bring a mass movement into being, or even to make your intentions known to your adversary."

From a pragmatic point of view, passive resistance was not only possible, but was the most effective means that could have been selected for the end of ridding India of British control. In organizing, the major negative in the situation has to be converted into the leading positive. In short, knowing that one could not expect violent action from this large and torpid mass, Gandhi organized the inertia: he gave it a goal so that it became purposeful. Their wide familiarity with Dharma made passive resistance no stranger to the Hindustani. To oversimplify, what Gandhi did was to say, "Look, you are all sitting there anyway—so instead of sitting there, why don't you sit over here and while you're sitting, say Independence Now!"

This raises another question about the morality of means and ends. We have already noted that in essence, mankind divides itself into three groups; the Have-Nots, the Have-a-Little, Want-Mores, and the Haves. The purpose of the Haves is to keep what they have. Therefore, the Haves want to maintain the status quo and the Have-Nots to change it. The Haves develop their own morality to justify their means of repression and all other means employed to maintain the status quo. The Haves usually establish laws and judges devoted to maintaining the status quo; since any effective means of changing the status quo are usually illegal and/or unethical in the eyes of the

establishment, Have-Nots, from the beginning of time, have been compelled to appeal to "a law higher than man-made law." Then when the Have-Nots achieve success and become the Haves, they are in the position of trying to keep what they have and their morality shifts with their change of location in the power pattern.

Eight months after securing independence, the Indian National Congress outlawed passive resistance and made it a crime. It was one thing for them to use the means of passive resistance against the previous Haves, but now in power they were going to ensure that this means would not be used against them! No longer as Have-Nots were they appealing to laws higher than man-made law. Now that they were making the laws, they were on the side of manmade laws! Hunger strikes—used so effectively in the revolution—were viewed differently now too. Nehru, in the interview mentioned above, said: The government will not be influenced by hunger strikes ... To tell the truth I didn't approve of fasting as a political weapon even when Gandhi practiced it."

Again Sam Adams, the firebrand radical of the American Revolution, provides a clear example. Adams was foremost in proclaiming the right of revolution. However, following the success of the American Revolution it was the same Sam Adams who was foremost in demanding the execution of those Americans who participated in Shays' Rebellion, charging that no one had a right to engage in revolution against us!

Moral rationalization is indispensable at all times of action whether to justify the selection or the use of ends or means. Machiavelli's blindness to the necessity for moral clothing to all acts and motives—he said "politics has no relation to morals"—was his major weakness.

All great leaders, including Churchill, Gandhi, Lincoln, and Jefferson, always invoked "moral principles" to cover naked self-interest in the clothing of "freedom" "equality of mankind," "a law higher than man-made law," and so on. This even held under circumstances of national crises when it was universally assumed that the end justified any means. *All effective actions require the passport of morality.*

The examples are everywhere. In the United States the rise of the civil rights movement in the late 1950s was marked by the use of passive resistance in the South against segregation. Violence in the South would have been suicidal; political pressure was then impossible; the only recourse was economic pressure with a few fringe activities. Legally blocked by state laws, hostile police and courts, they were compelled like all Have-Nots from time immemorial to appeal to "a law higher than man-made law." In his *Social Contract*, Rousseau noted the obvious, that "Law is a very good thing for men with property and a very bad thing for men without property." Passive resistance remained one of the few means available to anti-segregationist forces until they had secured the voting franchise in fact. Furthermore, passive resistance was also a good defensive tactic since it curtailed the opportunities for use of the power resources of the status quo for forcible repression. Passive resistance was chosen for the same pragmatic reason that all tactics are selected. But it assumes the necessary moral and religious adornments.

However, when passive resistance becomes massive and threatening it gives birth to violence. Southern Negroes have no tradition of Dharma, and are close enough to their Northern compatriots so that contrasting conditions between the North and the South are a visible as well as a constant spur. Add to this the fact that the Southern poor whites do not operate by British tradition but reflect generations of

violence; the future does not argue for making a special religion of nonviolence. It will be remembered for what it was, the best tactic for its time and place.

As more effective means become available, the Negro civil rights movement will divest itself of these decorations and substitute a new moral philosophy in keeping with its new means and opportunities. The explanation will be, as it always has been, "Times have changed." This is happening today.

*The eleventh rule of the ethics of means and ends is that goals must be phrased in general terms like "Liberty, Equality, Fraternity," "Of the Common Welfare," "Pursuit of Happiness," or "Bread and Peace."* Whitman put it: "The goal once named cannot be countermanded." It has been previously noted that the wise man of action knows that frequently in the stream of action of means towards ends, whole new and unexpected ends are among the major results of the action. From a Civil War fought as a means to preserve the Union came the end of slavery.

In this connection, it must be remembered that history is made up of actions in which one end results in other ends. Repeatedly, scientific discoveries have resulted from experimental research committed to ends or objectives that have little relationship with the discoveries. Work on a seemingly minor practical program has resulted in feedbacks of major creative basic ideas. J. C. Flugel notes, in *Man, Morals and Society*, that "... In psychology, too, we have no right to be astonished if, while dealing with a means (e.g., the cure of a neurotic symptom, the discovery of more efficient ways of learning, or the relief of industrial fatigue) we find that we have modified our attitude toward the end (acquired some new insight into the nature of mental health, the role of education, or the place of work in human life)."

The mental shadow boxing on the subject of means and ends is typical of those who are the observers and not the actors in the battlefields of life. In *The Yogi and the Commissar*, Koestler begins with the basic fallacy of an arbitrary demarcation between *expediency* and *morality*; between the Yogi for whom the end never justifies the means and the Commissar for whom the end always justifies the means. Koestler attempts to extricate himself from this self-constructed strait jacket by proposing that the end justifies the means only within narrow limits. Here Koestler, even in an academic confrontation with action, was compelled to take the first step in the course of compromise on the road to action and power. How "narrow" the limits and who defines the "narrow" limits opens the door to the premises discussed here. The kind of personal safety and security sought by the advocates of the sanctity of means and ends lies only in the womb of Yogism or the monastery, and even there it is darkened by the repudiation of that moral principle that they are their brothers' keepers.

Bertrand Russell, in his *Human Society in Ethics and Politics*, observed that "Morality is so much concerned with means that it seems almost immoral to consider anything solely in relation to its intrinsic worth. But obviously nothing has any value as a means unless that to which it is a means has value on its own account. It follows that intrinsic value is logically prior to value as means."

The organizer, the revolutionist, the activist or call him what you will, who is committed to a free and open society is in that commitment anchored to a complex of high values. These values include the basic morals of all organized religions; their base is the preciousness of human life. These values include freedom, equality, justice, peace, the right to dissent; the values that were the banners of hope and yearning of all revolutions of men, whether the French Revolution's "Liberty, Fraternity, Equality," the Russians' "Bread and

Peace," the brave Spanish people's "Better to die on your feet than to live on your knees," or our Revolution's "No Taxation Without Representation." They include the values in our own Bill of Rights. If a state voted for school segregation or a community organization voted to keep blacks out, and claimed justification by virtue of the "democratic process," then this violation of the value of equality would have converted democracy into a prostitute. Democracy is not an end; it is the best political means available toward the achievement of these values.

Means and ends are so qualitatively interrelated that the true question has never been the proverbial one, "Does the End justify the Means?" but always has been "Does this *particular* end justify this *particular* means?"

{footnote 1} *Sam Adams, Pioneer in Propaganda*, by John C. Miller. {end footnote}

{footnote 2} Reinhold Niebuhr, "British Experience and American Power," *Christianity and Crisis*, Vol. 16, May 14, 1956, page 57:

"This policy is either Machiavellian or statesmanlike, according to your point of view. Our consciences may gag at it, but on the other hand those eminently moral men, Prime Minister Gladstone of another day and Secretary Dulles of our day could offer many parallels of policy for Mr. Nehru, though one may doubt whether either statesman could offer a coherent analysis of the mixture of modes which entered into the policy. That is an achievement beyond the competence of very moral men."

## *A Word About Words*



THE PASSIONS OF MANKIND have boiled over into all areas of political life, including its vocabulary. The words most common in politics have become stained with human hurts, hopes, and frustrations. All of them are loaded with popular opprobrium, and their use results in a conditioned, negative, emotional response. Even the word *politics* itself, which Webster says is "the science and art of government," is generally viewed in a context of corruption. Ironically, the dictionary synonyms are "discreet; provident, diplomatic, wise."

The same discolorations attach to other words prevalent in the language of politics, words like *power*, *self-interest*, *compromise*, and *conflict*. They become twisted and warped, viewed as evil. Nowhere is the prevailing political illiteracy more clearly revealed than in these typical interpretations of words. This is why we pause here for a word about words.

## **POWER**

The question may legitimately be raised, why not use other words—words that mean the same but are peaceful, and do not result in such negative emotional reactions? There are a number of fundamental reasons for rejecting such substitution. First, by using combinations of words such as "harnessing the energy" instead of the single word "power," we begin to dilute the meaning; and as we use purifying synonyms, we dissolve the bitterness, the anguish, the hate and love, the agony and the triumph attached to these words, leaving an aseptic imitation of life. In the politics of life we are concerned with the slaves and the Caesars, not the vestal virgins. It is not just that, in communication as in thought, we must ever strive toward simplicity. (The masterpieces of philosophic or scientific statement are frequently no longer than a few words, for example, " $E=mc^2$ .") It is more than that: it is a determination not to detour around reality.

To use any other word but power is to change the meaning of everything we are talking about. As Mark Twain once put it, "The difference between the right word and the almost-right word is the difference between lightning and the lightning bug."

Power is the right word just as self-interest, compromise, and the other simple political words are, for they were conceived in and have become part of politics from the beginning of time. To pander to those who have no stomach for straight language, and insist upon bland, non-controversial sauces, is a waste of time. They cannot or deliberately will not understand what we are discussing here. I agree with Nietzsche's statement in *The Genealogy of Morals* on this point:

Why stroke the hypersensitive ears of our modern weaklings? Why yield even a single step . . . to the Tartuffery of words? For us psychologists that would involve a Tartuffery of *action* ... For a psychologist today shows his good taste (others may say his integrity) in this, if in anything, that he resists the shamefully *moralized* manner of speaking which makes all modern judgments about men and things slimy.

We approach a critical point when our tongues trap our minds. I do not propose to be trapped by tact at the expense of truth. Striving to avoid the force, vigor, and simplicity of the word "power," we soon become averse to thinking in vigorous, simple, honest terms. We strive to invent sterilized synonyms, cleansed of the opprobrium of the word *power*—but the new words mean something different, so that they tranquilize us, begin to shepherd our mental processes off the main, conflict-ridden, grimy, and realistic power-paved highway of life. To travel down the sweeter-smelling, peaceful, more socially acceptable, more respectable, indefinite byways, ends in a failure to achieve an honest understanding of the issues that we must come to grips with if we are to do the job.

Let us look at the word *power*. Power, meaning "ability, whether physical, mental, or moral, to act," has become an evil word, with overtones and undertones that suggest the sinister, the unhealthy, the Machiavellian. It suggests a phantasmagoria of the nether regions. The moment the word *power* is mentioned it is as though hell had been opened, exuding the stench of the devil's cesspool of corruption. It evokes images of cruelty, dishonesty, selfishness, arrogance, dictatorship, and abject suffering. The word *power* is associated with conflict; it is unacceptable in our present Madison Avenue deodorized hygiene, where controversy is blasphemous and the value is being liked and not offending others. Power, in our minds, has become almost synonymous with corruption and immorality.

Whenever the word *power* is mentioned, somebody sooner or later will refer to the classical statement of Lord Acton and cite it as follows: "Power corrupts, and absolute power corrupts absolutely." In fact the correct quotation is: "Power *tends* to corrupt, and absolute power corrupts absolutely." We can't even read Acton's statement accurately, our minds are so confused by our conditioning.

The corruption of power is not in power, but in ourselves. And yet, what is this power which men live by and to a significant degree live for? Power is the very essence, the dynamo of life. It is the power of the heart pumping blood and sustaining life in the body. It is the power of active citizen participation pulsing upward, providing a unified strength for a common purpose. Power is an essential life force always in operation, either changing the world or opposing change. Power, or organized energy, may be a man-killing explosive or a life-saving drug. The power of a gun may be used to enforce slavery, or to achieve freedom.

The power of the human brain can create man's most glorious achievements, and develop perspectives and insights into the nature

of life-opening horizons previously beyond the imagination. The power of the human mind can also devise philosophies and ways of life that are most destructive for the future of mankind. Either way, power *is* the dynamo of life.

Alexander Hamilton, in *The Federalist Papers*, put it this way: "What is a power, but the ability or faculty of doing a thing? What is the ability to do a thing, but the power of employing the *means* necessary to its execution?" Pascal, who was definitely not a cynic, observed that: "Justice without power is impotent; power without justice is tyranny." St. Ignatius, the founder of the Jesuit order, did not shrink from the recognition of power when he issued his dictum: "To do a thing well a man needs power and competence." We could call the roll of all who have played their parts in history and find the word *power*, not a substitute word, used in their speech and writings.

It is impossible to conceive of a world devoid of power; the only choice of concepts is between organized and unorganized power. Mankind has progressed only through learning how to develop and organize instruments of power in order to achieve order, security, morality, and civilized life itself, instead of a sheer struggle for physical survival. Every organization known to man, from government down, has had only one reason for being—that is, organization for power in order to put into practice or promote its common purpose.

When we talk about a person's "lifting himself by his own bootstraps" we are talking about power. Power must be understood for what it is, for the part it plays in every area of our life, if we are to understand it and thereby grasp the essentials of relationships and functions between groups and organizations, particularly in a pluralistic society. *To know power and not fear it is essential to its*

*constructive use and control.* In short, life without power is death; a world without power would be a ghostly wasteland, a dead planet!

## ***SELF-INTEREST***

*Self-interest*, like *power*, wears the black shroud of negativism and suspicion. To many the synonym for self-interest is selfishness. The word is associated with a repugnant conglomeration of vices such as narrowness, self-seeking, and self-centeredness, everything that is opposite to the virtues of altruism and selflessness. This common definition is contrary, of course, to our everyday experiences, as well as to the observations of all great students of politics and life. The myth of altruism as a motivating factor in our behavior could arise and survive only in a society bundled in the sterile gauze of New England puritanism *{sic}* and Protestant morality and tied together with the ribbons of Madison Avenue public relations. It is one of the classic American fairy tales.

From the great teachers of Judaeo-Christian morality and the philosophers, to the economists, and to the wise observers of the politics of man, there has always been universal agreement on the part that self-interest plays as a prime moving force in man's behavior. The importance of self-interest has never been challenged; it has been accepted as an inevitable fact of life. In the words of Christ, "Greater love has no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends." Aristotle said, in *Politics*, "Everyone thinks chiefly of his own, hardly ever of the public interest." Adam Smith, in *The Wealth of Nations*, noted that "It is not from the benevolence of the butcher, the brewer, or the baker that we expect our dinner, but from their regard of their own interest. We address ourselves not to their humanity, but to their self-love, and never talk to them of our own necessities, but of their advantage." In all the reasoning found in *The Federalist Papers*, no point is so central and agreed upon as

"Rich and poor alike are prone to act upon impulse rather than pure reason and to narrow conceptions of self-interest..." To question the force of self-interest that pervades all areas of political life is to refuse to see man as he is, to see him only as we would like him to be.

And yet, next to this acceptance of self-interest, there are certain observations I would like to make. Machiavelli, with whom the idea of self-interest seems to have gained its greatest notoriety, at least among those who are unaware of the tradition, said:

This is to be asserted in general of men, that they are ungrateful, fickle, fake, cowardly, covetous, as long as you succeed they are yours entirely; they will offer you their blood, property, life, and children when the need is far distant; but when it approaches they turn against you.

But Machiavelli makes a mortal mistake when he rules out the "moral" factors of politics and holds purely to self-interest as he defines it. This mistake can only be accounted for on the basis that Machiavelli's experience as an active politician was not too great, for otherwise he could not have overlooked the obvious fluidity of every man's self-interest. The overall case must be of larger dimensions than that of self-interest narrowly defined; it must be large enough to include and provide for the shifting dimensions of self-interest. You may appeal to one self-interest to get me to the battlefield to fight; but once I am there, my prime self-interest becomes to stay alive, and if we are victorious my self-interest may, and usually does, dictate entirely unexpected goals rather than those I had before the war. For example, the United States in World War II fervently allied with Russia against Germany, Japan, and Italy, and shortly after victory fervently allied with its former enemies—Germany, Japan, and Italy—against its former ally, the U.S.S.R.

These drastic shifts of self-interest can be rationalized only under a huge, limitless umbrella of general "moral" principles such as liberty, justice, freedom, a law higher than man-made law, and so on. Morality, so-called, becomes the continuum as self-interests shift.

Within this morality there appears to be a tearing conflict, probably due to the layers of inhibition in our kind of moralistic civilization—it appears shameful to admit that we operate on the basis of naked self-interest, so we desperately try to reconcile every shift of circumstances that *is* to our self-interest in terms of a broad moral justification or rationalization. With one breath we point out that we are utterly opposed to communism, but that we love the Russian people (loving people is in keeping with the tenets of our civilization). What we hate is the atheism and the suppression of the individual that we attribute as characteristics substantiating the "immorality" of communism. On this we base our powerful opposition. We do not admit the actual fact: our own self-interest.

We proclaimed all of these negative, diabolical Russian characteristics just prior to the Nazi invasion of Russia. The Soviets were then the cynical despots who connived in the non-aggression pact with Hitler, the ruthless invaders who brought disaster to the Poles and the Finns. They were a people in chains and in misery, held in slavery by a dictator's might; they were a people whose rulers so distrusted them that the Red Army was not permitted to have live ammunition because they might turn their guns against the Kremlin. All this was our image. But within minutes of the invasion of Russia by the Nazis, when self-interest dictated that the defeat of Russia would be disastrous to our interest, then—suddenly—they became the gallant, great, warm, loving Russian people; the dictator became the benevolent and loving Uncle Joe; the Red Army soon was filled with trust and devotion to its government, fighting with an unparalleled bravery and employing a scorched-earth policy against

the enemy. The Russian allies certainly had God on their side—after all, He was on ours. Our June, 1941, shift was more dramatic and sudden than our shift against the Russians shortly after the defeat of our common enemy. In both cases our self-interest was disguised, as the banners of freedom, liberty, and decency were unveiled—first against the Nazis, and six years later against the Russians.

In our present relationship with Tito and the Yugoslavian communists, then, the issue is not that Tito represents communism, but that he is not part of the Russian power alignment. Here we take the position we took after the Nazi invasion, where suddenly communism became, "Well, after all, it's their way of life and we believe in the right of self-determination and it's up to the Russians to have the government they like," *as long as they are on our side and do not threaten our self-interest*. Too, there is no question that, with all our denunciation of the Red Chinese, if they announced that they were no longer a part of the world communist conspiracy or alignment of forces, they would be overnight acceptable to us, acclaimed by us, and provided with all kinds of aid, just so long as they were on our side. In essence, what we are saying is that we do not care what kind of a communist you are so long as you do not threaten our self-interest.

Let me give you an example of what I mean by some of the differences between the world as it is and the world as we would like it to be. Recently, after lecturing at Stanford University, I met a Soviet professor of political economics from the University of Leningrad. The opening of our conversation was illustrative of the definitions and outlook of those who live in the world as it is. The Russian began by asking me, "Where do you stand on communism?" I replied, "That's a bad question since the real question is, assuming both of us are operating in and thinking of the world as it is, Whose Communists are they— yours or ours?" If they are ours, then we are



all for them. If they are yours, obviously we are against them. Communism itself is irrelevant. The issue is whether they are on our side or yours. Now, if you Russians didn't have a first mortgage on Castro, we would be talking about Cuba's right to self-determination and the fact that you couldn't have a free election until after there had been a period of education following the repression of the dictatorship of Batista. As a matter of fact, if you should start trying to push for a free election in Yugoslavia, we might even send over our Marines to prevent this kind of sabotage. The same goes if you should try to do it in Formosa." The Russian came back with, "What is your definition of a free election outside of your country?" I said, "Well, our definition of a free election in, say, Vietnam is pretty much what your definition is in your satellites—if we've got everything so set that we are going to win, then it's a free election. Otherwise, it's bloody terrorism! Isn't that your definition?" The Russian's reaction was, "Well, yes, more or less!"

—Saul D. Alinsky, *Reveille for Radicals*, Random House, Vintage Books, New York, rev. 1969,

p. 227.

We repeatedly get caught in this conflict between our professed moral principles and the real reasons why we do things—to wit, our self-interest. We are always able to mask those real reasons in words of beneficent goodness—freedom, justice, and so on. Such tears as appear in the fabric of this moral masquerade sometimes embarrass us.

It is interesting that the communists do not seem to concern themselves with these moral justifications for their naked acts of self-interest. In a way, this becomes embarrassing too; it makes us feel that they may be laughing at us, knowing well that we are motivated

by self-interest too, but are determined to disguise it. We feel that they may be laughing at us as they struggle in the sea of world politics, stripped to their shorts, while we flop around, fully dressed in our white tie and tails.

And yet with all this there is that wondrous quality of man that from time to time floods over the natural dams of survival and self-interest. We witnessed it in the summer of 1964 when white college students risked their lives to carry the torch of human freedom into darkest Mississippi. An earlier instance: George Orwell describes his self-interest in entering the trenches during the Spanish Civil War as a matter of trying to stop the spreading horror of fascism. Yet once he was in the trenches, his self-interest changed to the goal of getting out alive. Still, I have no question that if Orwell had been given a military assignment from which he could easily have got lost, he would not have wandered to the rear at the price of jeopardizing the lives of some of his comrades; he would never have pursued his "self-interest." These are the exceptions to the rule, but there have been enough of them flashing through the murky past of history to suggest that these episodic transfigurations of the human spirit are more than the flash of fireflies.

## ***COMPROMISE***

*Compromise* is another word that carries shades of weakness, vacillation, betrayal of ideals, surrender of moral principles. In the old culture, when virginity was a virtue, one referred to a woman's being "compromised." The word is generally regarded as ethically unsavory and ugly.

But to the organizer, compromise is a key and beautiful word. It is always present in the pragmatics of operation. It is making the deal, getting that vital breather, usually the victory. If you start with

nothing, demand 100 per cent, then compromise for 30 per cent, you're 30 per cent ahead.

A free and open society is an on-going conflict, interrupted periodically by compromises—which then become the start for the continuation of conflict, compromise, and on ad infinitum. Control of power is based on compromise in our Congress and among the executive, legislative, and judicial branches. A society devoid of compromise is totalitarian. If I had to define a free and open society in one word, the word would be "compromise."

## ***EGO***

All definitions of words, like everything else, are relative. Definition is to a major degree dependent upon your partisan position. Your leader is always flexible, he has pride in the dignity of his cause, he is unflinching, sincere, an ingenious tactician fighting the good fight. To the opposition he is unprincipled and will go whichever way the wind blows, his arrogance is masked by a fake humility, he is dogmatically stubborn, a hypocrite, unscrupulous and unethical, and he will do anything to win; he is leading the forces of evil. To one side he is a demigod, to the other a demagogue.

Nowhere is the relativity of a definition more germane in the arena of life than the word *ego*. Anyone who is working against the Haves is always facing odds, and in many cases heavy odds. If he or she does not have that complete self-confidence (or call it ego) that he can win, then the battle is lost before it is even begun. I have seen so-called trained organizers go out to another city with an assignment of organizing a community of approximately 100,000 people, take one look and promptly wire in a resignation. To be able to look at a community of people and say to yourself, "I will organize them in so

many weeks," "I will take on the corporations, the press and anything else," is to be a real organizer.

"Ego," as we understand and use it here, cannot be even vaguely confused with, nor is it remotely related to, egotism. No would-be organizer afflicted with egotism can avoid hiding this from the people with whom he is working, no contrived humility can conceal it. Nothing antagonizes people and alienates them from a would-be organizer more than the revealing flashes of arrogance, vanity, impatience, and contempt of a personal egotism.

The ego of the organizer is stronger and more monumental than the ego of the leader. The leader is driven by the desire for power, while the organizer is driven by the desire to create. The organizer is in a true sense reaching for the highest level for which man can reach—to create, to be a "great creator," to play God.

An infection of egotism would make it impossible to respect the dignity of individuals, to understand people, or to strive to develop the other elements that make up the ideal organizer. Egotism is mainly a defensive reaction of feelings of personal inadequacy—ego is a positive conviction and belief in one's ability, with no need for egotistical behavior.

Ego moves on every level. How can an organizer respect the dignity of an individual if he does not respect his own dignity? How can he believe in people if he does not really believe in himself? How can he convince people that they have it within themselves, that they have the power to stand up to win, if he does not believe it of himself? Ego must be so all-pervading that the personality of the organizer is contagious, that it converts the people from despair to defiance, creating a mass ego.

## ***CONFLICT***

*Conflict* is another bad word in the general opinion. This is a consequence of two influences in our society: one influence is organized religion, which has espoused a rhetoric of "turning the other cheek" and has quoted the Scriptures as the devil never would have dared because of their major previous function of supporting the Establishment. The second influence is probably the most subversive and insidious one, and it has permeated the American scene in the last generation: that is Madison Avenue public relations, middle-class moral hygiene, which has made of conflict or controversy something negative and undesirable. This has all been part of an Advertising Culture that emphasizes getting along with people and avoiding friction. If you look at our television commercials you get the picture that American society is largely devoted to ensuring that no odors come from our mouths or armpits. Consensus is a keynote—one must not offend one's fellow man; and so today we find that people in the mass media are fired for expressing their opinions or being "controversial"; in the churches they are fired for the same reason but the words used there are "lacking in prudence"; and on university campuses, faculty members are fired for the same reason, but the words used there are "personality difficulties."

Conflict is the essential core of a free and open society. If one were to project the democratic way of life in the form of a musical score, its major theme would be the harmony of dissonance.

## ***The Education of an Organizer***

THE BUILDING of many mass power organizations to merge into a national popular power force cannot come without many organizers. Since organizations are created, in large part, by the organizer, we must find out what creates the organizer. This has been the major problem of my years of organizational experience: the finding of potential organizers and their training. For the past two years I have had a special training school for organizers with a full-time, fifteen-month program.

Its students have ranged from middle-class women activists to Catholic priests and Protestant ministers of all denominations, from militant Indians to Chicanos to Puerto Ricans to blacks from all parts of the black power spectrum, from Panthers to radical philosophers, from a variety of campus activists, S.D.S. and others, to a priest who was joining a revolutionary party in South America. Geographically they have come from campuses and Jesuit seminaries in Boston to Chicanos from tiny Texas towns, middle-class people from Chicago and Hartford and Seattle, and almost every place in between. An increasing number of students come from Canada, from the Indians of the northwest to the middle class of the Maritime Provinces. For years before the formal school was begun, I spent most of my time on the education as an organizer of every member of my staff.

The education of an organizer requires frequent long conferences on organizational problems, analysis of power patterns, communication, conflict tactics, the education and development of community leaders, and the methods of introduction of new issues. In these discussions, we have found ourselves dealing with quite a range of issues: internal problems of a clique in a Los Angeles organization out to get rid of its organizer; a Christmas tree selling fundraising fiasco in San Jose and why it failed; a massive voter registration drive in a Chicago project which was being delayed in getting started; a group in Rochester, New York, attacking the organizer so

that they could get their hot hands on the funds earmarked for organization—and so on.

Always the potential organizer's personal experience was used as the basis for teaching. Always after the problem was solved there would be long sessions in which a postmortem would dissect the specifics and then stitch them into a synthesis, a body of concepts. All experiences are significant only insofar as they are related to and *{sic}* illuminating a central concept. History does not repeat specific situations—if any of the examples in these pages are read isolated from the general concept, they will be nothing more than a series of anecdotes. Everything became a learning experience.

Frequently personal domestic hangups were part of the conferences. An organizer's working schedule is so continuous that time is meaningless; meetings and caucuses drag endlessly into the early morning hours; any schedule is marked by constant unexpected unscheduled meetings; work pursues an organizer into his or her home, so that either he is on the phone or there are people dropping in. The marriage record of organizers is with rare exception disastrous. Further, the tensions, the hours, the home situation, and the opportunities, do not argue for fidelity. Also, with rare exception, I have not known really competent organizers who were concerned about celibacy. Here and there are wives and husbands or those in love relationships who understand and are committed to the work, and are real sources of strength to the organizer.

Besides the full-timers, there were the community leaders whom we trained on the job to be organizers. Organizers are not only essential to start and build an organization; they are also essential to keep it going. Maintaining interest and activity, keeping the group's goals strong and flexible at once, is a different operation but still organization.

As I look back on the results of those years, they seem to be a potpourri, with, I would judge, more failures than successes. Here and there are organizers who are outstanding in their chosen fields and are featured by the press as my trained "protégés," but to me the overall record has been unpromising.

Those out of their local communities who were trained on the job achieved certain levels and were at the end of their line. If one thinks of an organizer as a highly imaginative and creative architect and engineer then the best we have been able to train on the job were skilled plumbers, electricians, and carpenters, all essential to the building and maintenance of their community structure but incapable of going elsewhere to design and execute a new structure in a new community.

Then there were others who learned to be outstanding organizers in particular kinds of communities with particular ethnic groups but in a different scene with different ethnic groups couldn't organize their way out of a paper bag.

Then there were those rare campus activists who could organize a substantial number of students—but they were utter failures when it came to trying to communicate with and organize lower-middle-class workers.

Labor union organizers turned out to be poor community organizers. Their experience was tied to a pattern of fixed points, whether it was definite demands on wages, pensions, vacation periods, or other working conditions, and all of this was anchored into particular contract dates. Once the issues were settled and a contract signed, the years before the next contract negotiation held only grievance meetings about charges on contract violations by either side. Mass organization is a different animal, it is not housebroken. There are no



fixed chronological points or definite issues. The demands are always changing; the situation is fluid and ever-shifting; and many of the goals are not in concrete terms of dollars and hours but are psychological and constantly changing, like "such stuff as dreams are made on." I have seen labor organizers almost out of their minds from the community organization scene.

When labor leaders have talked about organizing the poor, their talk has been based on nostalgia, a wistful look back to the labor organizers of the C.I.O. through the great depression of the thirties. Those "labor organizers" —Powers Hapgood, Henry Johnson, and Lee Pressman, for instance—were primarily middle-class revolutionary activists to whom the C.I.O. labor organizing drive was just one of many activities. The agendas of those labor union mass meetings were 10 per cent on the specific problems of that union and 90 per cent speakers on the conditions and needs of the southern Okies, the Spanish Civil War and the International Brigade, raising funds for blacks who were on trial in some southern state, demanding higher relief for the unemployed, denouncing police brutality, raising funds for anti-Nazi organizations, demanding an end to American sales of scrap iron to the Japanese military complex, and on and on. They were radicals, and they were good at their job: they organized vast sectors of middle-class America in support of their programs. But they are gone, now, and any resemblance between them and the present professional labor organizer is only in title.

Among the organizers I trained and failed with, there were some who memorized the words and the related experiences and concepts. Listening to them was like listening to a tape playing back my presentation word for word. Clearly there was little understanding; clearly, they could not do more than elementary organization. The problem with so many of them was and is their failure to understand that a statement of a specific situation is significant only in its

relationship to and its illumination of a general concept. Instead they see the specific action as a terminal point. They find it difficult to grasp the fact that no situation ever repeats itself, that no tactic can be precisely the same.

Then there were those who had trained in schools of social work to become community organizers. Community organization 101, 102, and 103. They had done "field work" and acquired even a specialized vocabulary. They call it "CO." (which to us means Conscientious Objector) or "Community Org." (which to us evokes a huge Freudian fantasy). Basically the difference between their goals and ours is that they organize to get rid of four-legged rats and stop there; we organize to get rid of four-legged rats so we can get on to removing two-legged rats. Among those who, disillusioned, reject the formalized garbage they learned in school, the odds are heavily against their developing into effective organizers. One reason is that despite their verbal denunciations of their past training there is a strong subconscious block against repudiating two to three years of life spent in this training, as well as the financial cost of these courses.

Through these years I have constantly tried to search out reasons for our failures as well as our occasional successes in training organizers. Our teaching methods, those of others, our personal competency for teaching, and improvised new teaching approaches, have and are being examined; our own self-criticism is far more rigorous than that of our most bitter critics. All of us have faults. I know that in a community, working as an organizer, I have unlimited patience in talking to and listening to the local residents. Any organizer must have this patience. But among my faults is that in a teaching position at the training institute or at conferences I become an intellectual snob with unimaginative, limited students, impatient, bored, and inexcusably rude.

I have improvised teaching approaches. For example, knowing that one can only communicate and understand in terms of one's experience, we had to construct experience for our students. Most people do not accumulate a body of experience. Most people go through life undergoing a series of happenings, which pass through their systems undigested. Happenings become experiences when they are digested, when they are reflected on, related to general patterns, and synthesized.

There is meaning to that cliché, "We learn from experience." Our job was to shovel those happenings back into the student's system so he could digest them into experience. During a seminar I would say, "Life is the expectation of the unexpected—the things you worry about rarely happen. Something new, the unexpected, will usually come in from outside the ball park. You're all nodding as if you understand but you really don't. What I've said are just words to you. I want you to go to your private cubbyholes and think for the next four hours. Try to remember all the things you worried about during the last years and whether they ever happened or what did happen — and then we'll talk about it."

At the next session the student reactions were excited, "Hey, you're right. Only one out of the eight big worries I've had ever happened—and even that one was different from the way I worried about it. I understand what you mean." And he did.

While the experience of trying to educate organizers has been nowhere so successful as I'd hoped, there was a great deal of education for me and my associates. We were constantly in a state of self-examination. First, we learned what the qualities of an ideal organizer are; and second, we were confronted with a basic question: whether it was possible to teach or educate for the achieving of these qualities.

The area of experience and communication is fundamental to the organizer. An organizer can communicate only within the areas of experience of his audience; otherwise there is no communication. The organizer, in his constant hunt for patterns, universalities, and meaning, is always building up a body of experience.

Through his imagination he is constantly moving in on the happenings of others, identifying with them and extracting their happenings into his own mental digestive system and thereby accumulating more experience. It is essential for communication that he know of their experiences. Since one can communicate only through the experiences of the other, it becomes clear that the organizer begins to develop an abnormally large body of experience.

He learns the local legends, anecdotes, values, idioms. He listens to small talk. He refrains from rhetoric foreign to the local culture: he knows that worn-out words like "white racist," "fascist pig," and "motherfucker" have been so spewed about that using them is now within the negative experience of the local people, serving only to identify the speaker as "one of those nuts" and to turn off any further communication.

And yet the organizer must not try to fake it. He must be himself. I remember a first meeting with Mexican-American leaders in a California barrio where they served me a special Mexican dinner. When we were halfway through I put down my knife and fork saying, "My God! Do you eat this stuff because you like it or because you have to? I think it's as lousy as the Jewish kosher crap I had to eat as a kid!" There was a moment of shocked silence and then everybody roared. Suddenly barriers began to come down as they all began talking and laughing. They were so accustomed to the Anglo who would rave about the beauty of Mexican food even though they knew it was killing him, the Anglo who had memorized a few

Spanish phrases with the inevitable *hasta la vista*, that it was a refreshingly honest experience to them. The incident became a legend to many and you would hear them say, for instance, "He has as much use for that guy as Alinsky has for Mexican food." A number of the Mexican-Americans present confessed that they only ate some of those dishes when they entertained an Anglo. The same faking goes on with whites on certain items of blacks' "soul food."

There is a difference between honesty and rude disrespect of another's tradition. The organizer will err far less by being himself than by engaging in "professional techniques" when the people really know better. It shows respect for people to be honest, as in the Mexican dinner episode; they are being treated as people and not guinea pigs being techniqued. It is most important that this action be understood in context. Prior to my remark there had been a warm personal discussion of the problems of the people. They knew not only of my concern about their plight but that I liked them as people. I felt their response in friendship, and we were together. It is in this totality of the situation that I did what, otherwise, would have been offensive.

The qualities we were trying to develop in organizers in the years of attempting to train them included some qualities that in all probability cannot be taught. They either had them, or could get them only through a miracle from above or below. Other qualities they might have as potentials that could be developed. Sometimes the development of one quality triggered off unsuspected others. I learned to check against the list and spot the negatives; and if it was impossible to develop that quality, at least I could be aware and on guard to try to diminish its negative effect upon the work.

Here is the list of the ideal elements of an organizer —the items one looks for in identifying potential organizers and in appraising the

future possibilities of new organizers, and the pivot points of any kind of educational curricula for organizers. Certainly it is an idealized list—I doubt that such qualities, in such intensity, ever come together in one man or woman; yet the best of organizers should have them all, to a strong extent, and any organizer needs at least a degree of each.

*Curiosity.* What makes an organizer organize? He is driven by a compulsive curiosity that knows no limits. Warning clichés such as "curiosity killed a cat" are meaningless to him, for life is for him a search for a pattern, for similarities in seeming differences, for differences in seeming similarities, for an order in the chaos about us, for a meaning to the life around him and its relationship to his own life—and the search never ends. He goes forth with the question as his mark, and suspects that there are no answers, only further questions. The organizer becomes a carrier of the contagion of curiosity, for a people asking "why" are beginning to rebel. The questioning of the hitherto accepted ways and values is the reformation stage that precedes and is so essential to the revolution.

Here, I couldn't disagree more with Freud. In a letter to Marie Bonaparte, he said, "The moment a man questions the meaning and value of life, he is sick." If there is, somewhere, an answer about life, I suspect that the key to it is finding the core question.

Actually, Socrates was an organizer. The function of an organizer is to raise questions that agitate, that break through the accepted pattern. Socrates, with his goal of "know thyself," was raising the internal questions within the individual that are so essential for the revolution which is external to the individual. So Socrates was carrying out the first stage of making revolutionaries. If he had been permitted to continue raising questions about the meaning of life, to examine life and refuse the conventional values, the internal

revolution would soon have moved out into the political arena. Those who tried him and sentenced him to death knew what they were doing.

*Irreverence.* Curiosity and irreverence go together. Curiosity cannot exist without the other. Curiosity asks, "Is this true?" "Just because this has always been the way, is this the best or right way of life, the best or right religion, political or economic value, morality?" To the questioner nothing is sacred. He detests dogma, defies any finite definition of morality, rebels against any repression of a free, open search for ideas no matter where they may lead. He is challenging, insulting, agitating, discrediting. He stirs unrest. As with all life, this is a paradox, for his irreverence is rooted in a deep reverence for the enigma of life, and an incessant search for its meaning. It could be argued that reverence for others, for their freedom from injustice, poverty, ignorance, exploitation, discrimination, disease, war, hate, and fear, is not a necessary quality in a successful organizer. All I can say is that such reverence is a quality I would have to see in anyone I would undertake to teach.

*Imagination.* Imagination is the inevitable partner of irreverence and curiosity. How can one be curious without being imaginative?

According to Webster's Unabridged, imagination is the "mental synthesis of new ideas from elements experienced separately ... The broader meaning ... starts with the notion of mental imaging of things suggested but not previously experienced, and thence expands ... to the idea of mental creation and poetic idealization [creative imagination] . . ." To the organizer, imagination is not only all this but something deeper. It is the dynamism that starts and sustains him in his whole life of action as an organizer. It ignites and feeds the force that drives him to organize for change.

There was a time when I believed that the basic quality that an organizer needed was a deep sense of anger against injustice and that this was the prime motivation that kept him going. I now know that it is something else: this abnormal imagination that sweeps him into a close identification with mankind and projects him into its plight. He suffers with them and becomes angry at the injustice and begins to organize the rebellion. Clarence Darrow put it on more of a self-interest basis: "I had a vivid imagination. Not only could I put myself in the other person's place, but I could not avoid doing so. My sympathies always went out to the weak, the suffering, and the poor. Realizing their sorrows I tried to relieve them in order that I myself might be relieved."

Imagination is not only the fuel for the force that keeps organizers organizing, it is also the basis for effective tactics and action. The organizer knows that the real action is in the reaction of the opposition. To realistically appraise and anticipate the probable reactions of the enemy, he must be able to identify with them, too, in his imagination, and foresee their reactions to his actions.

*A sense of humor.* Back to Webster's Unabridged: humor is defined as "The mental faculty of discovering, expressing, or appreciating ludicrous or absurdly incongruous elements in ideas, situations, happenings, or acts ..." or "A changing and uncertain state of mind ..."

The organizer, searching with a free and open mind void of certainty, hating dogma, finds laughter not just a way to maintain his sanity but also a key to understanding life. Essentially, life is a tragedy; and the converse of tragedy is comedy. One can change a few lines in any Greek tragedy and it becomes a comedy, and vice versa. Knowing that contradictions are the signposts of progress he is ever on the



alert for contradictions. A sense of humor helps him identify and make sense out of them.

Humor is essential to a successful tactician, for the most potent weapons known to mankind are satire and ridicule.

A sense of humor enables him to maintain his perspective and see himself for what he really is: a bit of dust that burns for a fleeting second. A sense of humor is incompatible with the complete acceptance of any dogma, any religious, political, or economic prescription for salvation. It synthesizes with curiosity, irreverence, and imagination. The organizer has a personal identity of his own that cannot be lost by absorption or acceptance of any kind of group discipline or organization. I now begin to understand what I stated somewhat intuitively in *Reveille for Radicals* almost twenty years ago, that "the organizer in order to be part of all can be part of none."

*A bit of a blurred vision of a better world.* Much of an organizer's daily work is detail, repetitive and deadly in its monotony. In the totality of things he is engaged in one small bit. It is as though as an artist he is painting a tiny leaf. It is inevitable that sooner or later he will react with "What am I doing spending my whole life just painting one little leaf? The hell with it, I quit," What keeps him going *is* a blurred vision of a great mural where other artists—organizers—are painting their bits, and each piece is essential to the total.

*An organized personality.* The organizer must be well organized himself so he can be comfortable in a disorganized situation, rational in a sea of irrationalities. It *is* vital that he be able to accept and work with irrationalities for the purpose of change.

With very rare exceptions, the right things are done for the wrong reasons. It is futile to demand that men do the right thing for the right reason—this is a fight with a windmill. The organizer should know and accept that the right reason is only introduced as a moral rationalization after the right end has been achieved, although it may have been achieved for the wrong reason—therefore he should search for and use the wrong reasons to achieve the right goals. He should be able, with skill and calculation, to use irrationality in his attempts to progress toward a rational world.

For a variety of reasons the organizer must develop multiple issues. First, a wide-based membership can only be built on many issues. When we were building our organization in the Back of the Yards, the Polish Roman Catholic churches in Chicago joined us because they were concerned about the expanding power of the Irish Roman Catholic churches. The Packing House Workers Union was with us—so their rival unions joined, trying to counteract the potential membership and power pickup. We didn't, of course, care why they'd joined us—we just knew we'd be better off if they did.

The organizer recognizes that each person or bloc has a hierarchy of values. For instance, let us assume that we are in a ghetto community where everyone is for civil rights.

A black man there had bought a small house when the neighborhood was first changing, and he wound up paying a highly inflated price—more than four times the value of the property. Everything he owns is tied into that house. Urban renewal, now, is threatening to come in and take it on the basis of a value appraisal according to their criteria, which would be less than a fourth of his financial commitment. He is desperately trying to save his own small economic world. Civil rights would get him to a meeting once a month, maybe he'd sign some petitions and maybe he'd give a dollar here and there, but on a fight

against urban renewal's threat to wipe out his property, he would come to meetings every night.

Next door to him is a woman who is renting. She is not concerned about urban renewal. She has three small girls, and her major worry is the drug pushers and pimps that infest the neighborhood and threaten the future of her children. She is for civil rights too, but she is more concerned about a community free of pimps and pushers; and she wants better schools for her children. Those are her No. 1 priorities.

Next door to her is a family on welfare; their No. 1 priority is more money. Across the street there is a family who can be described as the working poor, struggling to get along on their drastically limited budget—to them, consumer prices and local merchants' gouging are the No. 1 priorities. Any tenant of a slum landlord, living among rats and cockroaches, will quickly tell you what his No. 1 priority is—and so it goes. In a multiple-issue organization, each person is saying to the other, I can't get what I want alone and neither can you. Let's make a deal: I'll support you for what you want and you support me for what I want." Those deals become the program.

Not only does a single- or even a dual-issue organization condemn you to a small organization, it is axiomatic that a single-issue organization won't last. An organization needs action as an individual needs oxygen. With only one or two issues there will certainly be a lapse of action, and then comes death. Multiple issues mean constant action and life.

An organizer must become sensitive to everything that is happening around him. He is always learning, and every incident teaches him something. He notices that when a bus has only a few empty seats, the crowd trying to get on will push and shove; if there are many

empty seats the crowd will be courteous and considerate; and he muses that in a world of opportunities for all there would be a change in human behavior for the good. In his constant examination of life and of himself he finds himself becoming more and more of an organized personality.

*A well-integrated political schizoid.* The organizer must become schizoid, politically, in order not to slip into becoming a true believer. Before men can act an issue must be polarized. Men will act when they are convinced that their cause is 100 per cent on the side of the angels and that the opposition are 100 per cent on the side of the devil. He knows that there can be no action until issues are polarized to this degree. I have already discussed an example in the Declaration of Independence—the Bill of Particulars that conspicuously omitted all the advantages the colonies had gained from the British and cited only the disadvantages.

What I am saying is that the organizer must be able to split himself into two parts—one part in the arena of action where he polarizes the issue to 100 to nothing, and helps to lead his forces into conflict, while the other part knows that when the time comes for negotiations that it really is only a 10 per cent difference—and yet both parts have to live comfortably with each other. Only a well organized person can split and yet stay together. But this is what the organizer must do.

*Ego.* Throughout these desired qualities is interwoven a strong ego, one we might describe as monumental in terms of solidity. Here we are using the word *ego* as discussed in the previous chapter, clearly differentiated from egotism. Ego is unreserved confidence in one's ability to do what he believes must be done. An organizer must accept, without fear or worry, that the odds are always against him. Having this kind of ego, he is a doer and does. The thought of

copping out never stays with him for more than a fleeting moment; life is action.

*A free and open mind, and political relativity.* The organizer in his way of life, with his curiosity, irreverence, imagination, sense of humor, distrust of dogma, his self-organization, his understanding of the irrationality of much of human behavior, becomes a flexible personality, not a rigid structure that breaks when something unexpected happens. Having his own identity, he has no need for the security of an ideology or a panacea. He knows that life is a quest for uncertainty; that the only certain fact of life is uncertainty; and he can live with it. He knows that all values are relative, in a world of political relativity. Because of these qualities he is unlikely to disintegrate into cynicism and disillusionment, for he does not depend on illusion.

Finally, the organizer is constantly creating the new out of the old. He knows that all new ideas arise from conflict; that every time man has had a new idea it has been a challenge to the sacred ideas of the past and the present and inevitably a conflict has raged. Curiosity, irreverence, imagination, sense of humor, a free and open mind, an acceptance of the relativity of values and of the uncertainty of life, all inevitably fuse into the kind of person whose greatest joy is creation. He conceives of creation as the very essence of the meaning of life. In his constant striving for the new, he finds that he cannot endure what is repetitive and unchanging. For him hell would be doing the same thing over and over again.

This is the basic difference between the leader and the organizer. The leader goes on to build power to fulfill his desires, to hold and wield the power for purposes both social and personal. He wants power himself. The organizer finds his goal in creation of power for others to use.

These qualities are present in any free, creative person, whether an educator, or in the arts, or in any part of life. In "Adam Smith's" *The Money Game*, the characteristics of the desirable fund manager are described:

It is personal intuition, sensing patterns of behavior. There is always something unknown, undiscerned.... You can't just graduate an analyst into managing funds. What is it the good managers have? It's a kind of locked-in concentration, an intuition, a feel, nothing that can be schooled. The first thing you have to know is yourself. A man who knows himself can step outside himself and watch his own reactions like an observer.

One would think that this was a description of an organizer but in everything creative, whether it is organizing a mutual fund or a mutual society, one is on the hunt for these qualities. Why one becomes an organizer instead of something else is, I suspect, due to a difference of degree of intensity of specific elements or relationships between them—or accident.

## *Communication*

ONE CAN LACK any of the qualities of an organizer—with one exception—and still be effective and successful. That exception is the art of communication. It does not matter what you know about anything if you cannot communicate to your people. In that event you are not even a failure. You're just not there.

Communication with others takes place when they understand what you're trying to get across to them. If they don't understand, then you

are not communicating regardless of words, pictures, or anything else. People only understand things in terms of their experience, which means that you must get within their experience. Further, communication is a two-way process. If you try to get your ideas across to others without paying attention to what they have to say to you, you can forget about the whole thing.

I know that I have communicated with the other party when his eyes light up and he responds, "I know exactly what you mean. I had something just like that happen to me once. Let me tell you about it!" Then I know that there has been communication. Recently I flew from O'Hare Airport in Chicago to New York. After the jet pulled away from the gate we heard the familiar announcement, "This is your captain speaking. I am sorry to advise you that we are No. 18 for take-off. I am turning off the 'No Smoking' sign and will keep you posted."

Many a captain feels compelled to keep you "entertained" with an incessant stream of verbal garbage. "You will be interested to know that this airplane fully loaded weighs blah blah tons." You couldn't care less. Or, "Our flight plan will carry us over Bazickus, Ohio, and then Junkspot," etc., etc. However, on this trip the captain of the plane touched on the experience of many of the passengers and really communicated. In the midst of his "entertainment" he commented: "Incidentally, I will let you know when we get the take-off clearance and from the instant you hear those jets roar for the take-off until the instant of liftoff, we will have consumed enough fuel for you to drive an automobile from Chicago to New York and back with detours as well!" You could hear such comments as, "Oh, come on—he must be kidding." With the announcement of clearance and the take-off run, passengers all over the plane were looking at their watches. At the end of approximately 25 seconds to lift-off passengers were turning to each other saying, "Would you believe it?" It was evident that, as

you might expect, many passengers had been concerned at some time with the number of miles a car could travel on a given amount of gas.

Educators are in common agreement on this concept of communication, even though few teachers use it. But after all, there are only a few real teachers in that profession.

An educational leader makes this point of understanding and experience in a very personal way:

"When he has had experience of life." Read Homer and Horace by all means, says Newman; feed mind and eye and ear with their images and language and music; but do not expect to understand what they are really talking about before you are forty.

This truth was first brought home to me more than thirty years ago one December day, as I walked down the road from Argentieres to Chamonix after a snowfall, and suddenly from the abyss of unconscious memory a line of Virgil rose into my mind and I found myself repeating

*Sed iacet aggeribus niveis informis et alto  
Terra gelu.*

I had read the words at school and no doubt translated them glibly "the earth lies formless under snow-drifts and deep frost"; but suddenly, with the snow scene before my eyes, I perceived for the first time what Virgil meant by the epithet *informis*, "without form, and how perfectly it describes the work of snow, which literally does make the world formless, blurring the sharp outlines of roofs and eaves, of pines and rocks and mountain ridges, taking from them their definiteness of shape and form. Yet how many times before that day had I read the words without seeing what they really mean! It is not that the word *informis* meant nothing to me when I was an



undergraduate; but it meant much less than its full meaning. Personal experience was necessary to real understanding.

—Sir Richard Livingstone, *On Education*, New

York, 1945, p. 13.

Every now and then I have been accused of being crude and vulgar because I have used analogies of sex or the toilet. I do not do this because I want to shock, particularly, but because there are certain experiences common to all, and sex and toilet are two of them. Furthermore, everyone is interested in those two—which can't be said of every common experience. I remember explaining relativity in morals by telling the following story. A question is put to three women, one American, one British, and one French: What would they do if they found themselves shipwrecked on a desert island with six sex-hungry men? The American woman said she would try to hide and build a raft at night or send up smoke signals in order to escape. The British woman said she would pick the strongest man and shack up with him, so that he could protect her from the others. The French woman looked up quizzically and asked, "What's the problem?"

Since people understand only in terms of their own experience, an organizer must have at least a cursory familiarity with their experience. It not only serves communication but it strengthens the personal identification of the organizer with the others, and facilitates further communication. For example, in one community there was a Greek Orthodox priest, who will be called here the Archimandrite Anastopolis. Every Saturday night, faithfully followed by six of his church members, he would tour the local taverns. After some hours of imbibing he would suddenly stiffen, and become so drunk that he was paralyzed. At this point his faithful six, like pallbearers, would

carry him through the streets back to the safety of his church. Over the years it became part of the community's experience, in fact a living legend. In talking to anyone in that neighborhood you could not communicate the fact that something was out of place, not with it, except to say it was "out like the Archimandrite." The response would be laughter, nodding of heads, a "Yeah, we know what you mean"—but also an intimacy of sharing a common experience.

When you are trying to communicate and can't find the point in the experience of the other party at which he can receive and understand, then, you must create the experience for him.

I was trying to explain to two staff organizers in training how their problems in their community arose because they had gone outside the experience of their people: that when you go outside anyone's experience not only do you not communicate, you cause confusion. They had earnest, intelligent expressions on their faces and were verbally and visually agreeing and understanding, but I knew they really didn't understand and that I was not communicating. I had not got into their experience. So I had to give them an experience.

We were having lunch in a restaurant at the time. I called their attention to the luncheon menu listing eight items or combinations and all numbered. Item No. 1 was bacon and eggs, potatoes, toast and coffee; Item No. 2, something else, and Item No. 6 was a chicken-liver omelet. I explained that the waiter was conditioned in terms of his experience to immediately translate any order into its accompanying number. He would listen to the words "bacon and eggs," etc. but his mind had already clicked "No. 1." The only variation was whether the eggs were to be done easy or the bacon very crisp, in which case he would call out, "No. 1, easy," or a variation thereof.

With this clear, I said, "Now, when the waiter takes my order, instead of my saying 'a chicken-liver omelet,' which to him is No. 6, I will go outside his area of experience and say 'You see this chicken-liver omelet?' He will respond, 'Yes, No. 6.' I will say, 'Well, just a minute. I don't want the chicken livers in the omelet. I want the omelet with the chicken livers on the side—now, is that clear?' He will say it is, and then the odds are 9 to 1 everything is going to get screwed up because he can't just order No. 6 any more *{sic}*. I don't know what will happen but I have gone outside his accepted area of experience."

The waiter took my order precisely as I have described above. In about twenty minutes he returned with an omelet and a full order of chicken livers, as well as a bill for \$3.25—\$1.75 for the omelet and \$1.50 for the chicken livers. I objected and immediately took issue, pointing out that all I had wanted was No. 6, the total price of which was \$1.50, but that instead of having the livers mixed in with the omelet, I had wanted them on the side. Now there was a full omelet, a full order of chicken livers, and a bill for nearly three times the menu price. Furthermore I could not eat a full order of chicken livers as well as the omelet. Confusion came down. Waiter and manager huddled. Finally the waiter returned, flushed and upset: "Sorry about the mistake—everybody got mixed up—eat whatever you want." The bill was changed back to the original price for No. 6.

In a similar situation in Los Angeles four staff members and I were talking in front of the Biltmore Hotel when I demonstrated the same point, saying: "Look, I am holding a ten-dollar bill in my hand. I propose to walk around the Biltmore Hotel, a total of four blocks, and try to give it away. This will certainly be outside of everyone's experience. You four walk behind me and watch the faces of the people I'll approach. I am going to go up to them holding out this ten-dollar bill and say, 'Here, take this.' My guess is that everyone will

back off, look confused, insulted, or fearful, and want to get away from this nut fast. From their experience when someone approaches them he is either out to ask for instructions or to panhandle—particularly the way I'm dressed, no coat or tie."

I walked around, trying to give the ten-dollar bill away. The reactions were all "within the experiences of the people." About three of them, seeing the ten-dollar bill, spoke first—"I'm sorry. I don't have any change." Others hurried past saying, "I'm sorry, I don't have any money on me right now," as though I had been trying to get money from them instead of trying to give them money. One young woman flared up, almost screaming, "I'm not that kind of a girl and if you don't get away from here, I'll call a cop!" Another woman in her thirties snarled, "I don't come that cheap!" There was one man who stopped and said, "What kind of a con game is this?" and then walked away. Most of the people responded with shock, confusion, and silence, and they quickened their pace and sort of walked around me.

After approximately fourteen people, I found myself back at the front entrance of the Biltmore Hotel, still holding my ten-dollar bill. My four companions had, then, a clearer understanding of the concept that people react strictly on the basis of their own experience.

For another example of the same principle, here is a Christian civilization where most people have gone to church and have mouthed various Christian doctrines, and yet this is really not part of their experience because they haven't lived it. Their church experience has been purely a ritualistic decoration.

The *New York Times* some years ago reported the case of a man who converted to Catholicism at around the age of forty and then, filled with the zeal of a convert, determined to emulate as far as possible

the life of St. Francis of Assisi. He withdrew his life's savings, about \$2,300. He took this money out in \$5 bills. Armed with his bundle of \$5 bills, he went down to the poorest section of New York City, the Bowery (this was before the time of urban renewal), and every time a needy-looking man or woman passed by him he would step up and say, "Please take this." Now, the difference between this situation and mine around the Biltmore Hotel is that the panhandlers on the Bowery would not find an offer of money or of a bowl of soup outside their experience. At any rate, our friend attempting to live a Christian life and emulate St. Francis of Assisi found that he could do so for only forty minutes before being arrested by a Christian police officer, driven to Bellevue Hospital by a Christian ambulance doctor, and pronounced non compos mentis by a Christian psychiatrist. Christianity is beyond the experience of a Christian-professing-but-not-practicing population.

In mass organization, you can't go outside of people's actual experience. I've been asked, for example, why I never talk to a Catholic priest or a Protestant minister or a rabbi in terms of the Judaeo-Christian ethic or the Ten Commandments or the Sermon on the Mount. I never talk in those terms. Instead I approach them on the basis of their own self-interest, the welfare of their Church, even its physical property.

If I approached them in a moralistic way, it would be outside their experience, because Christianity and Judaeo-Christianity are outside of the experience of organized religion. They would just listen to me and very sympathetically tell me how noble I was. And the moment I walked out they'd call their secretaries in and say, "If that screwball ever shows up again, tell him I'm out."

Communication for persuasion, as in negotiation, is more than entering the area of another person's experience. It is getting a fix on

his main value or goal and holding your course on that target. You don't communicate with anyone purely on the rational facts or ethics of an issue. The episode *{sic}* between Moses and God, when the Jews had begun to worship the Golden Calf, [{footnote 1}](#) is revealing. Moses did not try to communicate with God in terms of mercy or justice when God was angry and wanted to destroy the Jews; he moved in on a top value and outmaneuvered God. It is only when the other party is concerned or feels threatened that he will listen—in the arena of action, a threat or a crisis becomes almost a precondition to communication.

A great organizer, like Moses, never loses his cool as a lesser man might have done when God said: "Go, get thee down: *thy* people, whom *thou* hast brought out of the land of Egypt hath sinned." At that point, if Moses had dropped his cool in any way, one would have expected him to reply, "Where do you get off with all that stuff about *my* people whom *I* brought out of the land of Egypt... I was just taking a walk through the desert and who started that bush burning, and who told me to get over to Egypt, and who told me to get those people out of slavery, and who pulled all the power plays, and all the plagues, and who split the Red Sea, and who put a pillar of clouds up in the sky, and now all of a sudden they become *my* people."

But Moses kept his cool, and he knew that the most important center of his attack would have to be on what he judged to be God's prime value. As Moses read it, it was that God wanted to be No. 1. All through the Old Testament one bumps into "there shall be no other Gods before me," "Thou shalt not worship false gods," "I am a jealous and vindictive God," "Thou shalt not use the Lord's name in vain." And so it goes, on and on, including the first part of the Ten Commandments.

Knowing this, Moses took off on his attack. He began arguing and telling God to cool it. (At this point, trying to figure out Moses' motivations, one would wonder whether it was because he was loyal to his own people, or felt sorry for them, or whether he just didn't want the job of breeding a whole new people, because after all he was pushing 120 and that's asking a lot.) At any rate, he began to negotiate, saying, "Look, God, you're God. You're holding all the cards. Whatever you want to do you can do and nobody can stop you. But you know, God, you just can't scratch that deal you've got with these people—you remember, the Covenant—in which you promised them not only to take them out of slavery but that they would practically inherit the earth. Yeah, I know, you're going to tell me that they broke their end of it all so all bets are off. But it isn't that easy. You're in a spot. The news of this deal has leaked out all over the joint. The Egyptians, Philistines, Canaanites, *everybody* knows about it. But, as I said before, you're God. Go ahead and knock them off. What do you care if people are going to say, "There goes God. You can't believe anything he tells you. You can't make a deal with him. His word isn't even worth the stone it's written on.' But after all, you're God and I suppose you can handle it."

And the Lord was appeased from doing the evil which he had spoken against his people.

Another maxim in effective communication is that people have to make their own decisions. It isn't just that Moses couldn't tell God what God should do; no organizer can tell a community, either, what to do. Much of the time, though, the organizer will have a pretty good idea of what the community should be doing, and he will want to suggest, maneuver, and persuade the community toward that action. He will not ever seem to tell the community what to do; instead, he will use loaded questions. For example, in a meeting on

tactics where the organizer is convinced that tactic Z is the thing to do:

Organizer: What do you think we should do now?

Community Leader No. 1: I think we should do tactic X.

Organizer: What do you think, Leader No. 2?

Leader No. 2: Yeah, that sounds pretty good to me.

Organizer: What about you, No. 3?

Leader No. 3: Well, I don't know. It sounds good but something worries me. What do you think, organizer?

Organizer: The important thing is what you guys think. What's the something that worries you?

Leader No. 3: I don't know—it's something—

Organizer: I got a hunch that—I don't know, but I remember yesterday you and No. 1 talking and explaining to me something about somebody who once tried something like tactic X and it left him wide open because of this and that so it didn't work or something. Remember telling me about that, No. 1?

Leader No. 1 (who has been listening and now knows tactic X won't work): Sure. Sure. I remember. Yeah, well, we all know X won't work.

Organizer: Yeah. We also know that unless we put out all the things that won't work, well never get to the one that will. Right?

Leader No. 1 (fervently): Absolutely!

And so the guided questioning goes on without anyone losing face or being left out of the decision-making. Every weakness of every proposed tactic is probed by questions. Eventually someone suggests tactic Z, and, again through questions, its positive features emerge and it is decided on.

Is this manipulation? Certainly, just as a teacher manipulates, and no less, even a Socrates. As time goes on and education proceeds, the



leadership becomes increasingly sophisticated. The organizer recedes from the local circle of decision-makers. His response to questions about what *he* thinks becomes a non-directive counterquestion, "What do you think?" His job becomes one of weaning the group away from any dependency upon him. Then his job is done.

While the organizer proceeds on the basis of questions, the community leaders always regard his judgment above their own. They believe that he knows his job, he knows the right tactics, that's why he is their organizer. The organizer knows that even if they feel that way consciously, if he starts issuing orders and "explaining," it would begin to build up a subconscious resentment, a feeling that the organizer is putting them down, is not respecting their dignity as individuals. The organizer knows that it is a human characteristic that someone who asks for help and gets it reacts not only with gratitude but with a subconscious hostility toward the one who helped him. It is a sort of psychic "original sin" because he feels that the one who helped him is always aware that if it hadn't been for his help, he would still be a defeated nothing. All this involves a skillful and sensitive role-playing on the part of the organizer. In the beginning the organizer is the general, he knows where, what, and how, but he never wears his four stars, never is addressed as nor acts as a general—he is an organizer.

There are times, too—plenty of them—when the organizer discovers in the course of discussions like the one above that tactic Z, or whatever it was he decided on ahead of time, is not the appropriate tactic. At this point, let's hope his ego is strong enough to allow someone else to have the answer.

One of the factors that changes what you can and can't communicate is relationships. There are sensitive areas that one does not touch until there is a strong personal relationship based on common

involvements. Otherwise the other party turns off and literally does not hear, regardless of whether your words are within his experience. Conversely, if you have a good relationship, he is very receptive, and your "message" comes through in a positive context.

For example, I have always believed that birth control and abortion are personal rights to be exercised by the individual. If, in my early days when I organized the Back of the Yards neighborhood in Chicago, which was 95 per cent Roman Catholic, I had tried to communicate this, even through the experience of the residents, whose economic plight was aggravated by large families, that would have been the end of my relationship with the community. That instant I would have been stamped as an enemy of the church and all communication would have ceased. Some years later, after establishing solid relationships, I was free to talk about anything, including birth control. I remember discussing it with the then Catholic Chancellor. By then the argument was no longer limited to such questions as, "How much longer do you think the Catholic Church can hang on to this archaic notion and still survive?" I remember seeing five priests in the waiting room who wanted to see the chancellor, and knowing his contempt for each one of them, I said, "Look, I'll prove to you that you do really believe in birth control even though you are making all kinds of noises against it," and then I opened the door, saying, "Take a look out there. Can you look at them and tell me you oppose birth control?" He cracked up and said "That's an unfair argument and you know it," but the subject and nature of the discussion would have been unthinkable without that solid relationship.

A classic example of the failure to communicate because the organizer has gone completely outside the experience of the people, is the attempt by campus activists to indicate to the poor the bankruptcy of their prevailing values. "Take my word for it—if you

get a good job and a split-level ranch house out in the suburbs, a color TV, two cars, and money in the bank, that just won't bring you happiness." The response without exception *is* always, "Yeah. Let me be the judge of that one—I'll let you know after I get it."

Communication on a general basis without being fractured into the specifics of experience becomes rhetoric and it carries a very limited meaning. It is the difference between being informed of the death of a quarter of a million people—which becomes a statistic—or the death of one or two close friends or loved ones or members of one's family. In the latter it becomes the full emotional impact of the finality of tragedy. In trying to explain what the personal relationship means, I have told various audiences, "If the chairman of this meeting had opened up by saying, 'I am shocked and sorry to have to report to you that we have just been notified that Mr. Alinsky has just been killed in a plane crash and therefore this lecture is canceled,' the only reaction you would have would be, Well, gee, that's too bad. I wonder what he was like, but oh, well, let's see, what are we going to do this evening. We've got the evening free now. We could go to a movie.' And that is all that one would expect, except of those who have known me in the past, regardless of what the relationship was.

"Now suppose after finishing this lecture, let us assume that all of you have disagreed with everything I have said; you don't like my face, the sound of my voice, my manner, my clothes, you just don't like me, period. Let us further assume that I am to lecture to you again next week, and at that time you are informed of my sudden death. Your reaction will be very different, regardless of your dislike. You will react with shock: you will say, 'Why, just yesterday he was alive, breathing, talking, and laughing. It just seems incredible to believe that suddenly like that he's gone.' This is the human reaction to a personal relationship."

What is of particular importance here however is the fact that you were dealing with one specific person and not a general mass.

It is what was implicit in the reputed statement of that organizational genius Samuel Adams, at the time when he was allegedly planning the Boston Massacre; he was quoted as saying that there ought to be no less than three or four killed so that we will have martyrs for the Revolution, but there must be no more than ten, because after you get beyond that number we no longer have martyrs but simply a sewage problem.

This is the problem in trying to communicate on the issue of the H bomb. It is too big. It involves too many casualties. It is beyond the experience of people and they just react with, "Yeah, it is a terrible thing," but it really does not grip them. It is the same thing with figures. The moment one gets into the area of \$25 million and above, let alone a billion, the listener is completely out of touch, no longer really interested, because the figures have gone above his experience and almost are meaningless. Millions of Americans do not know how many million dollars make up a billion.

This element of the specific that must be small enough to be grasped by the hands of experience ties very definitely into the whole scene of *issues*. Issues must be able to be communicated. It is essential that they can be communicated. It is essential that they be simple enough to be grasped as rallying or battle cries. They cannot be generalities like sin or immorality or the good life or morals. They must be *this* immorality of *this* slum landlord with *this* slum tenement where *these* people suffer.

It should be obvious by now that communication occurs concretely, by means of one's specific experience. General theories become meaningful only when one has absorbed and understood the specific

constituents and then related them back to a general concept. Unless this is done, the specifics become nothing more than a string of interesting anecdotes. That is the world as it is in communication.

{footnote 1}"And the Lord spoke to Moses, saying: Go, get thee down: thy people which thou hast brought out of the land of Egypt hath sinned.

"They have quickly strayed from the way which thou didst shew them: and they have made to themselves a molten calf and have adored it, and sacrificing victims to it, have said. These are thy gods, O Israel that have brought thee out of the land of Egypt.

"And again the Lord said to Moses: See that this people is stiff necked.

"Let me alone, that my wrath may be kindled against them, and that I may destroy them, and I will make of thee a great nation.

"But Moses besought the Lord his God, saying: Why, O Lord, is thy indignation enkindled against thy people, whom thou hast brought out of the land of Egypt, with great power, and with a mighty hand?

"Let not the Egyptians say, I beseech thee: He craftily brought them out that he might kill them in the mountains, and destroy them from the earth: let thy anger cease, and be appeased upon the wickedness of thy people.

"Remember Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, thy servants, to whom thou sworest by thy own self, saying: I will multiply your seed as the stars of heaven: and this whole land that I have spoken of, I will give to your seed, and you shall possess it for ever.

"And the Lord was appeased from doing the evil which he had spoken against his people."

—Exodus 32: 7-14, Douay-Rheims ed. {end footnote}

# *In the Beginning*

IN THE BEGINNING the incoming organizer must establish his identity or, putting it another way, get his license to operate. He must have a reason for being there—a reason acceptable to the people.

Any stranger is suspect. "Who's the cat?" "What's he asking all those questions for?" "Is he really the cops or the F.B.I.?" "What's his bag?" "What's he really after?" "What's in it for him?" "Who's he working for?"

The answers to these questions must be acceptable in terms of the experience of the community. If the organizer begins with an affirmation of his love for people, he promptly turns everyone off. If, on the other hand, he begins with a denunciation of exploiting employers, slum landlords, police shakedowns, gouging merchants, he is inside their experience and they accept him. People can make judgments only on the basis of their own experiences. And the question in their minds is, "If we were in the organizer's position, would we do what he is doing and if so, why?" Until they have an answer that *is* at least somewhat acceptable they find it difficult to understand and accept the organizer.

His acceptance as an organizer depends on his success in convincing key people—and many others—first, that he is on their side, and second, that he has ideas, and knows how to fight to change things; that he's not one of these guys "doing his thing," that he's a winner. Otherwise who needs him? All his presence means is that the census changes from 225,000 to 225,001.

It is not enough to persuade them of your competence, talents, and courage—they must have faith in your ability and courage. They

must believe in your capacity not just to provide the opportunity for action, power, change, adventure, a piece of the drama of life, but to give a very definite promise, almost an assurance of victory. They must also have faith in your courage to fight the oppressive establishment—courage that they, too, will begin to get once they have the protective armor of a power organization, but don't have during the first lonely steps forward.

Love and faith are not common companions. More commonly power and fear consort with faith. The Have-Nots have a limited faith in the worth of their own judgments. They still look to the judgments of the Haves. They respect the strength of the upper class and they believe that the Haves are more intelligent, more competent, and endowed with "something special." Distance has a way of enhancing power, so that respect becomes tinged with reverence. The Haves are the authorities and thus the beneficiaries of the various myths and legends that always develop around power. The Have-Nots will believe them where they would be hesitant and uncertain about their own judgments. Power *is* not to be crossed; one must respect and obey. Power means strength, whereas love is a human frailty the people mistrust. It is a sad fact of life that power and fear are the fountainheads of faith.

The job of the organizer *is* to maneuver and bait the establishment so that it will publicly attack him as a "dangerous enemy." The word "enemy" is sufficient to put the organizer on the side of the people, to identify him with the Have-Nots, but it is not enough to endow him with the special qualities that induce fear and thus give him the means to establish his own power against the establishment. Here again we find that it is power and fear that are essential to the development of faith. This need is met by the establishment's use of the brand "dangerous," for in that one word the establishment reveals its fear of the organizer, its fear that he represents a threat to its

omnipotence. Now the organizer has his "birth certificate" and can begin.

In 1939, when I first began to organize back of the old Chicago stockyards, on the site of Upton Sinclair's *Jungle*, I acted in such a way that within a few weeks the meatpackers publicly pronounced me a "subversive menace." The *Chicago Tribune's* adoption of me as a public enemy of law and order, "a radical's radical," gave me a perennial and constantly renewable baptismal certificate in the city of Chicago. A generation later, in a black community on Chicago's South Side, next to my alma mater, the University of Chicago, it was the university's virulent personal attack on me, augmented by attacks by the press, that strengthened my credentials with a black community somewhat suspicious of white skin. Eastman Kodak and the Gannett newspaper chain did the same for me in Rochester, New York. In both black ghettos, in Chicago and in Rochester, the reaction was: "The way the fat-cat white newspapers are ripping hell out of Alinsky—he must be all right!" I could very easily have gone into either Houston, Texas or Oakland, California; in the former, the Ku Klux Klan appeared at the airport in full regalia, with threats against my personal security. The Houston press printed charges against me by the Mayor of Houston, and there was a mass picket line by the John Birch Society. In Oakland, the City Council, fearing the possibility of my coming into Oakland, passed a widely publicized special resolution declaring me unwelcome in the city. In both cases, the black communities were treated to the spectacle of seeing the establishment react with unusually severe fear and hysteria.

Establishing one's credentials of competency is only part of the organizer's first job. He needs other credentials to begin—credentials that enable him to meet the question, "Who asked you to come in here?" with the answer, "You did." He must be invited by a



significant sector of the local population, their churches, street organizations, social clubs, or other groups.

Today my notoriety and the hysterical instant reaction of the establishment not only validate my credentials of competency but also ensure automatic popular invitation. An example was the invitation into the black ghettos in Rochester.

In 1964 Rochester exploded in a bloody race riot resulting in the calling of the National Guard, the fatal crash of a police helicopter, and considerable loss of life and property. In its wake, the city was numb with shock. A city proud of its affluence, culture, and progressive churches, was dazed and guilt-ridden at its rude discovery of the misery of life in the ghetto and of its failure to do anything about it. The City Council of Churches, representing the Protestant churches, approached me and asked me if I would be available to help organize the black ghetto to get equality, jobs, housing, quality education, and particularly power to participate in the decision-making in all public programs involving their people. They also demanded that the representatives of the black community be those chosen by the blacks and not those selected by the white establishment. I advised the church council of the cost and said that my organization was available. The council agreed to the cost and "invited" us to come in and organize. I replied, then, that the churches had a right to invite us in to organize *their* people in *their* neighborhoods, but that they had no right to speak for, let alone invite anyone into, the black community. I emphasized that we were not a colonial power like the churches who sent their missionaries everywhere whether they were invited or not. The black community had been silent—but at that point panic gripped the white establishment. The Rochester press, in front page stories and editorials, raised the cry that if I came to Rochester it would mean the end of good fellowship, of Brotherhood Week, of Christian

understanding between black and white! It meant that I would say to the blacks, "The only way you can get your legitimate rights is to organize, get the power and tell the white establishment 'either come around or else!'" The blacks read and heard and agreed. Between the press and the mass media you would have assumed that my coming to Rochester was equivalent to the city's being invaded by the Russians, the Chinese, and the bubonic plague. Rochesterians will never forget it, and one had to be there to believe it. And so we were invited in by nearly every church and organization in the ghetto and by petitions signed by thousands of ghetto residents. Now we had a legitimate right to be there, even more of a right than any of the inviting organizations in the ghetto, for even they had not been invited in by the mass of their community.

This advantage is the dividend of reputation, but the important issue here is how the organizer without a reputation gets the invitation.

The organizer's job is to inseminate an invitation for himself, to agitate, introduce ideas, get people pregnant with hope and a desire for change and to identify you as the person most qualified for this purpose. Here the tool of the organizer, in the agitation leading to the invitation as well as actual organization and education of local leadership, is the use of the question, the Socratic method:

Organizer: Do you live over in that slummy building?

Answer: Yeah. What about it?

Organizer: What the hell do you live there for?

Answer: What do you mean, what do I live there for? Where else am I going to live? I'm on welfare.

Organizer: Oh, you mean you pay rent in that place?

Answer: Come on, is this a put-on? Very funny! You know where you can live for free?

Organizer: Hmm. That place looks like it's crawling with rats and

bugs.

Answer: It sure is.

Organizer: Did you ever try to get that landlord to do anything about it?

Answer: Try to get him to do anything about anything! If you don't like it, get out. That's all he has to say. There are plenty more waiting.

Organizer: What if you didn't pay your rent?

Answer: They'd throw us out in ten minutes.

Organizer: Hmm What if nobody in that building paid their rent?

Answer: Well, they'd start to throw . . . Hey, you know, they'd have trouble throwing everybody out, wouldn't they?

Organizer: Yeah, I guess they would.

Answer: Hey, you know, maybe you got something—say, I'd like you to meet some of my friends. How about a drink?

## ***POLICY AFTER POWER***

One of the great problems in the beginning of an organization is, often, that the people do not know what they want. Discovering this stirs up, in the organizer, that inner doubt shared by so many, whether the masses of people are competent to make decisions for a democratic society. It is the schizophrenia of a free society that we outwardly espouse faith in the people but inwardly have strong doubts whether the people can be trusted. These reservations can destroy the effectiveness of the most creative and talented organizer. Many times, contact with low-income groups does not fire one with enthusiasm for the political gospel of democracy. This disillusionment comes partly because we romanticize the poor in a way we romanticize other sectors of society, and partly because when you talk with any people you find yourselves confronted with clichés, a variety of superficial, stereotyped responses, and a general lack of information. In a black ghetto if you ask, "What's wrong?"

you are told, "Well, the schools are segregated." "What do you think should be done to make better schools?" "Well, they should be desegregated." "How?" "Well, you know." And if you say you don't know, then a lack of knowledge or an inability on the part of the one you are talking to may show itself in a defensive, hostile reaction: "You whites were responsible for the segregation in the first place. We didn't do it. So it's your problem, not ours. You started it, you finish it." If you pursue the point by asking, "Well, what else is wrong with the schools right now?" you get the answer, "The buildings are old; the teachers are bad. We've got to have change." "Well, what kind of change?" "Well, everybody knows things have to be changed." That is usually the end of the line. If you push it any further, you come again to a hostile, defensive reaction or to withdrawal as they suddenly remember they have to be somewhere else.

The issue that is not clear to organizers, missionaries, educators, or any outsider, is simply that if people feel they don't have the power to change a bad situation, *then they do not think about it*. Why start figuring out how you are going to spend a million dollars if you do not have a million dollars or are ever going to have a million dollars—unless you want to engage in fantasy?

Once people are organized so that they have the power to make changes, then, when confronted with questions of change, they begin to think and to ask questions about how to make the changes. If the teachers in the schools are bad then what do we mean by a bad teacher? What is a good teacher? How do we get good teachers? When we say our children do not understand what the teachers are talking about and our teachers do not understand what the children are talking about, then we ask how communication can be established. *Why* cannot teachers communicate with the children and the latter with the teachers. *{sic}* What are the hangups? Why don't

the teachers understand what the values are in our neighborhood? How can we make them understand? All these and many other perceptive questions begin to arise. It is when people have a genuine opportunity to act and to change conditions that they begin to think their problems through —then they show their competence, raise the right questions, seek special professional counsel and look for the answers. Then you begin to realize that believing in people is not just a romantic myth. But here you see that the first requirement for communication and education is for people to *have a reason* for knowing. It is the creation of the instrument or the circumstances of power that provides the reason and makes knowledge essential. Remember, too, that a powerless people will not be purposefully curious about life, and that they then cease being alive.

Something else that comes with experience is the knowledge that the resolution of a particular problem will bring on another problem. The organizer may know this, but he doesn't mention it; if he did he would invite, and encounter, a feeling of futility on the part of the others. "Why bother doing this if it means another problem? We fight and win and what have we won? So let's forget it."

He knows too that what we fight for now as matters of life and death will be soon forgotten, and changed situations will change desires and issues. It is common for policy to be the product of power. You begin to build power for a particular program—then the program changes when some power has been built. The reaction of the Woodlawn leaders was typical on this point.

In the beginning of the organization of the black ghetto of Woodlawn there were five major issues involving urban renewal, all centering on stopping the close-by University of Chicago from bulldozing the ghetto. The Woodlawn Organization quickly developed power and scored a series of victories. Eight months later the city of Chicago

issued a new policy statement on urban renewal. That day the leaders of the Woodlawn Organization stormed into my office angrily denouncing the policy statement: "The city can't get away with this—who do they think they are? We'll put barricades in our streets—we'll fight!" Throughout the tirade it never occurred to any of the angry leaders that the city's new policy granted all the five demands for which the Woodlawn Organization began. Then they were fighting for hamburger; now they wanted filet mignon; so it goes. And why not?

An organizer knows that life is a sea of shifting desires, changing elements, of relativity and uncertainty, and yet he must stay within the experience of the people he is working with and act in terms of specific resolutions and answers, of definitiveness and certainty. To do otherwise would be to stifle organization and action, for what the organizer accepts as uncertainty would be seen by them as a terrifying chaos.

In the early days the organizer moves out front in any situation of risk where the power of the establishment can get someone's job, call in an overdue payment, or any other form of retaliation, partly because these dangers would cause many local people to back off from conflict. Here the organizer serves as a protective shield: if anything goes wrong it is all his fault, he has the responsibility. If they are successful all credit goes to the local people. He acts as the septic tank in the early stages—he gets all the shit. Later, as power increases, the risks diminish, and gradually the people step out front to take the risks. This *is* part of the process of growing up, both for the local community leaders and for the organization.

The organizer must know and be sensitive to the shadows that surround him during his first days in the community. One of the shadows is that it is just about impossible for people to fully

understand—much less adhere to—a totally new idea. The fear of change is, as discussed earlier, one of our deepest fears, and a new idea must be at the least couched in the language of past ideas; often, it must be, at first, diluted with vestiges of the past.

## ***RATIONALIZATION***

A large shadow over organizing efforts, in the beginning, is, then, rationalization. Everyone has a reason or rationalization for what he does or does not do. No matter what, every action carries its rationalization. One of Chicago's political ward bosses nationally notorious for his use of the chain ballot and multiple voting once unleashed a tirade well seasoned with alcohol on my being a disloyal American. He climaxed with, "And you, Alinsky! When that great day of America, election day, comes around—that day of the right to vote for which our ancestors fought and died—when that great day comes around you care so little for your country that you never even bother to vote more than once!"

Organizing, one must be aware of the tremendous importance of understanding the part played by rationalization on a mass basis—it is similar to the function on an individual basis. On a mass basis it is the community residents' and leadership's justification for why they have not been able to do anything until the organizer appeared. It is primarily a subconscious feeling that the organizer is looking down on them, wondering why they did not have the intelligence, so to speak, and the insights, to realize that through organization and the securing of power they could have resolved many of the problems they've lived with for these many years—why did they have to wait for him? With this going on in their minds they throw up a whole series of arguments against various organizational procedures, but they are not real arguments, simply attempts to justify the fact that they have not moved or organized in the past. Most people find this

necessary, not only to justify themselves to the organizer, but also to themselves.

In an individual a psychiatrist would call these "rationalizations," as we call them here, "defenses." The patient has a series of defenses, which in therapy have to be broken through to get to the problem—which the patient then is compelled to confront. Chasing rationalizations is like attempting to find the rainbow. Rationalizations must be recognized as such so that the organizer does not get trapped in communication problems or in treating them as the real situations.

An extreme example, but one that very clearly spelled out the nature of rationalizations, came about three years ago when I met with various Canadian Indian leaders in the north of a Canadian province. I was there at the invitation of these leaders, who wanted to discuss their problems and solicit my advice. The problems of the Canadian Indians are very similar to those of the American Indians. They are on reservations, they are segregated, relatively speaking, and they suffer from all the general discriminatory practices Indians have been subjected to since the white man took over North America. In Canada the census figures on the Indian population range from 150,000 to 225,000 out of a total population estimated at between 22 and 24 million.

The conversation began with my suggesting that the general approach should be that the Indians get together, crossing all tribal lines, and organize. Because of their relatively small numbers I thought that they should then work with various sectors of the white liberal population, gain them as allies, and then begin to move nationally. Immediately I ran into the rationalizations. The dialogue went something like this (I should preface this by noting that it was quite obvious what was happening since I could see from the way the



Indians were looking at each other they were thinking: "So we invite this white organizer from south of the border to come up here and he tells us to get organized and to do these things. What must be going through his mind is: What's wrong with you Indians that you have been sitting around here for a couple of hundred years now and you haven't organized to do these things?" And so it began):

Indians: Well, we can't organize.

Me: Why not?

Indians: Because that's a white man's way of doing things.

Me (I decided to let that one pass though it obviously was untrue, since mankind from time immemorial has always organized, regardless of what race or color they were, whenever they wanted to bring about change): I don't understand.

Indians: Well, you see, if we organize, that means getting out and fighting the way you are telling us to do and that would mean that we would be corrupted by the white man's culture and lose our own values.

Me: What are these values that you would lose?

Indians: Well, there are all kinds of values.

Me: Like what?

Indians: Well, there's creative fishing.

Me: What do you mean, creative fishing?

Indians: Creative fishing.

Me: I heard you the first time. What is this creative fishing?

Indians: Well, you see, when you whites go out and fish, you just go out and fish, don't you?

Me: Yeah, I guess so.

Indians: Well, you see, when we go out and fish, we fish creatively.

Me: Yeah. That's the third time you've come around with that. What is this creative fishing?

Indians: Well, to begin with, when we go out fishing, we get away from everything. We get way out in the woods.

Me: Well, we whites don't exactly go fishing in Times Square, you know.

Indians: Yes, but it's different with us. When we go out, we're out on the water and you can hear the lap of the waves on the bottom of the canoe, and the birds in the trees and the leaves rustling, and—you know what I mean?

Me: No, I don't know what you mean. Furthermore, I think that that's just a pile of shit. Do you believe it yourself?

This brought a shocked silence. It should be noted that I was not being profane purely for the sake of being profane, I was doing this purposefully. If I had responded in a tactful way, saying, "Well, I don't quite understand what you mean, "we would have been off for a ride around the rhetorical ranch for the next thirty days. Here profanity became literally an up-against-the-wall bulldozer.

From there we went off to creative welfare. "Creative welfare" seemed to have to do with "since whites stole Indians' lands, all Indians' welfare payments are really installment payments due to them and it's not really welfare or charity." Well, that took us another five or ten minutes, and we kept breaking through one "creative" rationalization after another until finally we got down to the issue of organization.

An interesting aftermath is that some of this was filmed by the National Film Board of Canada, which was doing a series of documentaries on my work, and a film with part of this episode was shown at a meeting of Canadian development workers, with a number of these Indians present. The white Canadian community development workers kept looking at the floor, very embarrassed, during the unreeling of that scene, and giving sidelong looks at the Indians. After it was over one of the Indians stood up and said, "When Mr. Alinsky told us we were full of shit, that was the first

time a white man has really talked to us as equals—you would never say that to us. You would always say 'Well, I can see your point of view but I'm a little confused,' and stuff like that. In other words you treat us as children."

Learn to search out the rationalizations, treat them as rationalizations and break through. Do not make the mistake of locking yourself up in conflict with them as though they were the issues or problems with which you are trying to engage the local people.

### ***THE PROCESS OF POWER***

From the moment the organizer enters a community he lives, dreams, eats, breathes, sleeps only one thing and that is to build the mass power base of what he calls the army. Until he has developed that mass power base, he confronts no major issues. He has nothing with which to confront anything. Until he has those means and power instruments, his "tactics" are very different from power tactics. Therefore, every move revolves around one central point: how many recruits will this bring into the organization, whether by means of local organizations, churches, service groups, labor unions, corner gangs, or as individuals. The only issue is, how will this increase the strength of the organization. If by losing in a certain action he can get more members than by winning, then victory lies in losing and he will lose.

Change comes from power, and power comes from organization. In order to act, people must get together.

Power is the reason for being of organizations. When people agree on certain religious ideas and want the power to propagate their faith, they organize and call it a church. When people agree on certain political ideas and want the power to put them into practice, they

organize and call it a political party. The same reason holds across the board. Power and organization are one and the same.

The organizer knows, for example, that his biggest job is to give the people the feeling that they can do something, that while they may accept the idea that organization means power, they have to experience this idea in action. The organizer's job is to begin to build confidence and hope in the idea of organization and thus in the people themselves: to win limited victories, each of which will build confidence and the feeling that "if we can do so much with what we have now just think what we will be able to do when we get big and strong." It is almost like taking a prize-fighter up the road to the championship—you have to very carefully and selectively pick his opponents, knowing full well that certain defeats would be demoralizing and end his career. Sometimes the organizer may find such despair among the people that he has to put on a cinch fight.

An example occurred in the early days of Back of the Yards, the first community that I attempted to organize. This neighborhood was utterly demoralized. The people had no confidence in themselves or in their neighbors or in their cause. So we staged a cinch fight. One of the major problems in Back of the Yards in those days was an extraordinarily high rate of infant mortality. Some years earlier, the neighborhood had had the services of the Infant Welfare Society medical clinics. But about ten or fifteen years before I came to the neighborhood the Infant Welfare Society had been expelled because tales were spread that its personnel was disseminating birth-control information. The churches therefore drove out these "agents of sin." But soon the people were desperately in need of infant medical services. They had forgotten that they themselves had expelled the Infant Welfare Society from the Back of the Yards community.

After checking it out, I found out that all we had to do to get Infant Welfare Society medical services back into the neighborhood was ask for it. However, I kept this information to myself. We called an emergency meeting, recommended we go in committee to the society's offices and demand medical services. Our strategy was to prevent the officials from saying anything; to start banging on the desk and demanding that we get the services, *never* permitting them to interrupt us or make any statement. The only time we would let them talk was after we got through. With this careful indoctrination we stormed into the Infant Welfare Society downtown, identified ourselves, and began a tirade consisting of militant demands, refusing to permit them to say anything. All the time the poor woman was desperately trying to say, "Why of course you can have it. We'll start immediately." But she never had a chance to say anything and finally we ended up in a storm of "And we will not take 'No' for an answer!" At which point she said, "Well, I've been trying to tell you ..." and I cut in, demanding, "Is it yes or is it no?" She said, "Well of course it's yes." I said, "That's all we wanted to know." And we stormed out of the place. All the way back to Back of the Yards you could hear the members of the committee saying, "Well, that's the way to get things done: you just tell them off and don't give them a chance to say anything. If we could get this with just the few people that we have in the organization now, just imagine what we can get when we have a big organization." (I suggest that before critics look upon this as "trickery," they reflect on the discussion of means and ends.)

The organizer simultaneously carries on many functions as he analyzes, attacks, and disrupts the prevailing power pattern. The ghetto or slum in which he is organizing is *not* a disorganized community. There is no such animal as a disorganized community. It is a contradiction in terms to use the two words "disorganization" and "community" together: the word community itself means an

organized, communal life; people living in an organized fashion. The people in the community may have experienced successive frustrations to the point that their will to participate has seemed to atrophy. They may be living in anonymity and may be starved for personal recognition. They may be suffering from various forms of deprivation and discrimination. They may have accepted anonymity and resigned in apathy. They may despair that their children will inherit a somewhat better world. From your point of view they may have a very negative form of existence, but the fact is that they are organized in that way of life. Call it organized apathy or organized nonparticipation, but that *is* their community pattern. They are living under a certain set of arrangements, standards, way of life. They may in short have surrendered—but life goes on in an organized form, with a definite power structure; even if it is, as Thoreau called most lives, "quiet desperation."

Therefore, if your function is to attack apathy and get people to participate it is necessary to attack the prevailing patterns of organized living in the community. *The first step in community organization is community disorganization.* The disruption of the present organization is the first step toward community organization. Present arrangements must be disorganized if they are to be displaced by new patterns that provide the opportunities and means for citizen participation. *All change means disorganization of the old and organization of the new.*

This is why the organizer is immediately confronted with conflict. The organizer dedicated to changing the life of a particular community must first rub raw the resentments of the people of the community; fan the latent hostilities of many of the people to the point of overt expression. He must search out controversy and issues, rather than avoid them, for unless there is controversy people are not concerned enough to act. The use of the adjective "controversial" to

qualify the word "issue" is a meaningless redundancy. There can be no such thing as a "non-controversial" issue. When there is agreement there is no issue; issues only arise when there is disagreement or controversy. An organizer must stir up dissatisfaction and discontent; provide a channel into which the people can angrily pour their frustrations. He must create a mechanism that can drain off the underlying guilt for having accepted the previous situation for so long a time. Out of this mechanism, a new community organization arises. But more on this point later.

The job then is getting the people to move, to act, to participate; in short, to develop and harness the necessary power to effectively conflict with the prevailing patterns and change them. When those prominent in the status quo turn and label you an "agitator" they are completely correct, for that is, in one word, your function—to agitate to the point of conflict.

A sound analogy is to be found in the organization of trade unions. A competent union organizer approaches his objective, let's say the organization of a particular industrial plant where the workers are underpaid, suffering from discriminatory practices, and without job security. The workers accept these conditions as inevitable, and they express their demoralization by saying, "what's the use." In private they resent these circumstances, complain, talk about the futility of "bucking the big shots" and generally succumb to frustration—*all because of the lack of opportunity for effective action.*

Enter the labor organizer or the agitator. He begins his "trouble making" by stirring up these angers, frustrations, and resentments, and highlighting specific issues or grievances that heighten controversy. He dramatizes the injustices by describing conditions at other industrial plants engaged in the same kind of work where the

workers are far better off economically and have better working conditions, job security, health benefits, and pensions as well as other advantages that had not even been thought of by the workers he is trying to organize. Just as important, he points out that the workers in the other places had also been exploited in the past and had existed under similar circumstances until they used their intelligence and energies to organize into a power instrument known as a trade union, with the result that they achieved all of these other benefits. Generally this approach results in the formation of a new trade union.

Let us examine what this labor organizer has done. He has taken a group of apathetic workers; he has fanned their resentments and hostilities by a number of means, including challenging contrasts of better conditions of other workers in similar industries. Most important, he has demonstrated that something can be done, and that there *is* a concrete way of doing it that has already proven its effectiveness and success: that by organizing together as a trade union they will have the power and the instrument with which to make these changes. He now has the workers participating in a trade union and supporting its program. We must never forget that so long as there is no opportunity or method to make changes, it is senseless to get people agitated or angry, leaving them no course of action except to blow their tops.

And so the labor organizer simultaneously breeds conflict and builds a power structure. The war between the trade union and management is resolved either through a strike or a negotiation. Either method involves the use of power; the economic power of the strike or the threat of it, which results in successful negotiations. *No one can negotiate without the power to compel negotiation.*

This is the function of a community organizer. Anything otherwise is wishful non-thinking. To attempt to operate on a good-will rather



than on a power basis would be to attempt something that the world has not yet experienced.

In the beginning the organizer's first job is to create the issues or problems. It sounds mad to say that a community such as a low-income ghetto or even a middle-class community has no issues *per se*. The reader may feel that this statement borders on lunacy, particularly with reference to low-income communities. The simple fact is that in any community, regardless of how poor, people may have serious problems—but they do not have issues, they have a bad scene. An issue *is* something you can do something about, but as long as you feel powerless and unable to do anything about it, all you have is a bad scene. The people resign themselves to a rationalization: it's that kind of world, it's a crummy world, we didn't ask to come into it but we are stuck with it and all we can do is hope that something happens somewhere, somehow, sometime. This is what is usually taken as apathy, what we discussed earlier—that policy follows power. Through action, persuasion, and communication the organizer makes it clear that organization will give them the power, the ability, the strength, the force to be able to do something about these particular problems. It is then that a bad scene begins to break up into specific issues, because now the people can do something about it. What the organizer does is convert the plight into a problem. The question is whether they do it this way or that way or whether they do all of it or part of it. But now you have issues.

The organization is born out of the issues and the issues are born out of the organization. They go together, they are concomitants essential to each other. Organizations are built on issues that are specific, immediate, and realizable.

Organizations must be based on many issues. Organizations need action as an individual needs oxygen. The cessation of action brings death to the organization through factionalism and inaction, through dialogues and conferences that are actually a form of rigor mortis rather than life. It is impossible to maintain constant action on a single issue. A single issue is a fatal strait jacket that will stifle the life of an organization. Furthermore, a single issue drastically limits your appeal, where multiple issues would draw in the many potential members essential to the building of a broad, mass-based organization. Each person has a hierarchy of desires or values; he may be sympathetic to your single issue but not concerned enough about that particular one to work and fight for it. Many issues mean many members. Communities are not economic organizations like labor unions, with specific economic issues; they are as complex as life itself.

To organize a community you must understand that in a highly mobile, urbanized society the word "community" means community of interests, *not* physical community. The exceptions are ethnic ghettos where segregation has resulted in physical communities that coincide with their community of interests, or, during political campaigns, political districts that are based on geographical demarcations.

People hunger for drama and adventure, for a breath of life in a dreary, drab existence. One of a number of cartoons in my office shows two gum-chewing stenographers who have just left the movies. One is talking to the other, and says, "You know, Sadie. You know what the trouble with life is? There just ain't any background music."

But it's more than that. It is a desperate search for personal identity—to let other people know that at least you are alive. Let's take a

common case in the ghetto. A man is living in a slum tenement. He doesn't know anybody and nobody knows him. He doesn't care for anyone because no one cares for him. On the corner newsstand are newspapers with pictures of people like Mayor Daley and other people from a different world—a world that he doesn't know, a world that doesn't know that he is even alive.

When the organizer approaches him part of what begins to be communicated is that through the organization and its power he will get his birth certificate for life, that he will become known, that things will change from the drabness of a life where all that changes is the calendar. This same man, in a demonstration at City Hall, might find himself confronting the mayor and saying, "Mr. Mayor, we have had it up to here and we are not going to take it any more *{sic}*." Television cameramen put their microphones in front of him and ask, "What is your name, sir?" "John Smith." Nobody ever asked him what his name was before. And then, "What do you think about this, Mr. Smith?" Nobody ever asked him what he thought about anything before. Suddenly he's alive! This is part of the adventure, part of what is so important to people in getting involved in organizational activities and what the organizer has to communicate to him. Not that every member will be giving his name on television—that's a bonus—but for once, because he is working together with a group, what he works for will mean something.

Let us look at what is called *process*. *Process* tells us *how*. *Purpose* tells us *why*. But in reality, it is academic to draw a line between them, they are part of a continuum. Process and purpose are so welded to each other that it is impossible to mark where one leaves off and the other begins, or which is which. The very process of democratic participation *is* for the purpose of organization rather than to rid the alleys of dirt. Process is really purpose.

Through all this the constant guiding star of the organizer is in those words, "The dignity of the individual." Working with this compass, he soon discovers many axioms of effective organization.

If you respect the dignity of the individual you are working with, then his desires, not yours; his values, not yours; his ways of working and fighting, not yours; his choice of leadership, not yours; his programs, not yours, are important and must be followed; except if his programs violate the high values of a free and open society. For example, take the question, "What if the program of the local people offends the rights of other groups, for reasons of color, religion, economic status, or politics? Should this program be accepted just because it is their program?" The answer is categorically no. Always remember that "the guiding star is 'the dignity of the individual,'" This is the purpose of the program. Obviously any program that opposes people because of race, religion, creed, or economic status, is the antithesis of the fundamental dignity of the individual.

It is difficult for people to believe that you really respect their dignity. After all, they know very few people, including their own neighbors, who do. But it is equally difficult for you to surrender that little image of God created in our own likeness, which lurks in all of us and tells us that we secretly believe that we know what's best for the people. A successful organizer has learned emotionally as well as intellectually to respect the dignity of the people with whom he is working. Thus an effective organizational experience is as much an educational process for the organizer as it is for the people with whom he is working. They both must learn to respect the dignity of the individual, and they; both must learn that in the last analysis this is the basic purpose of organization, for participation is the heartbeat of the democratic way of life.

We learn, when we respect the dignity of the people, that they cannot be denied the elementary right to participate fully in the solutions to their own problems. Self-respect arises only out of people who play an active role in solving their own crises and who are not helpless, passive, puppet-like recipients of private or public services. To give people help, while denying them a significant part in the action, contributes nothing to the development of the individual. In the deepest sense it is not giving but taking—taking their dignity. Denial of the opportunity for participation is the denial of human dignity and democracy. It will not work.

In *Reveille for Radicals* I described an incident in which the government of Mexico once decided to pay tribute to Mexican mothers. A proclamation was issued that every mother whose sewing machine was being held by the Monte de Piedad (the national pawn shop of Mexico) should have her machine returned as a gift on Mother's Day. There was tremendous joy over the occasion. Here was a gift being made outright, without any participation on the part of the recipients. *Inside of three weeks the exact same number of sewing machines was back in the pawn shop.*

Another example occurred in a statement made by the United Nations delegate from Liberia. Analyzing problems of Liberia, he noted that his nation had been deprived of "the benefits of a previous history of colonialism." Press reaction was astonishment and ridicule, but the statement showed insight and wisdom. The people of Liberia had never been exploited by a colonial power, never been forced to band together at the risk of great personal sacrifice to revolt for freedom. They had been given "freedom" upon the establishment of their nation. Even freedom, as a gift, is deficient in dignity; hence the political sterility of Liberia.

As Finley Peter Dunne's Mr. Dooley put it,

Don't ask fr rights. Take thim. An' don't let anny wan give thim to ye. A right that is handed to ye fer nawthin has somethin the mather with it. It's more thin likely it's only a wrrong turned inside out.

The organization has to be used in every possible sense as an educational mechanism, but education is not propaganda. Real education is the means by which the membership will begin to make sense out of their relationship as individuals to the organization and to the world they live in, so that they can make informed and intelligent judgments. The stream of activities and programs of the organization provides a never-ending series of *specific* issues and situations that create a rich field for the learning process.

The concern and conflict about each specific issue leads to a speedily enlarging area of interest. Competent organizers should be sensitive to these opportunities. Without the learning process, the building of an organization becomes simply the substitution of one power group for another.

## *Tactics*

*We will either find a way or make one.*

— Hannibal

TACTICS MEANS doing what you can with what you have. Tactics are those consciously deliberate acts by which human beings live with each other and deal with the world around them. In the world of give and take, tactics is the art of how to take and how to give. Here our concern is with the tactic of taking; how the Have-Nots can take power away from the Haves.

For an elementary illustration of tactics, take parts of your face as the point of reference; your eyes, your ears, and your nose. First the eyes; if you have organized a vast, mass-based people's organization, you can parade it visibly before the enemy and openly show your power. Second the ears; if your organization is small in numbers, then do what Gideon did: conceal the members in the dark but raise a din and clamor that will make the listener believe that your organization numbers many more than it does. Third, the nose; if your organization is too tiny even for noise, stink up the place.

Always remember the first rule of power tactics:

*Power is not only what you have but what the enemy thinks you have.*  
[{footnote 1}](#)

The second rule is: *Never go outside the experience of your people.* When an action or tactic is outside the experience of the people, the result is confusion, fear, and retreat. It also means a collapse of communication, as we have noted.

The third rule is: *Wherever possible go outside of the experience of the enemy.* Here you want to cause confusion, fear, and retreat.

General William T. Sherman, whose name still causes a frenzied reaction throughout the South, provided a classic example of going outside the enemy's experience. Until Sherman, military tactics and strategies were based on standard patterns. All armies had fronts, rears, flanks, lines of communication, and lines of supply. Military campaigns were aimed at such standard objectives as rolling up the flanks of the enemy army or cutting the lines of supply or lines of communication, or moving around to attack from the rear. When Sherman cut loose on his famous March to the Sea, he had no front or rear lines of supplies or any other lines. He was on the loose and

living on the land. The South, confronted with this new form of military invasion, reacted with confusion, panic, terror, and collapse. Sherman swept on to inevitable victory. It was the same tactic that, years later in the early days of World War II, the Nazi Panzer tank divisions emulated in their far-flung sweeps into enemy territory, as did our own General Patton with the American Third Armored Division.

The fourth rule is: *Make the enemy live up to their own book of rules.* You can kill them with this, for they can no more obey their own rules than the Christian church can live up to Christianity.

The fourth rule carries within it the fifth rule: *Ridicule is mans most potent weapon.* It is almost impossible to counterattack ridicule. Also it infuriates the opposition, who then react to your advantage.

The sixth rule is: *A good tactic is one that your people enjoy.*  
[\[footnote 2\]](#) If your people are not having a ball doing it, there is something very wrong with the tactic.

The seventh rule: *A tactic that drags on too long becomes a drag.* Man can sustain militant interest in any issue for only a limited time, after which it becomes a ritualistic commitment, like going to church on Sunday mornings. New issues and crises are always developing, and one's reaction becomes, "Well, my heart bleeds for those people and I'm all for the boycott, but after all there are other important things in life"—and there it goes.

The eighth rule: *Keep the pressure on,* with different tactics and actions, and utilize all events of the period for your purpose.

The ninth rule: *The threat is usually more terrifying than the thing itself.*



The tenth rule: *The major premise for tactics is the development of operations that will maintain a constant pressure upon the opposition.* It is this unceasing pressure that results in the reactions from the opposition that are essential for the success of the campaign. It should be remembered not only that the action is in the reaction but that action is itself the consequence of reaction and of reaction to the reaction, ad infinitum. The pressure produces the reaction, and constant pressure sustains action.

The eleventh rule is: *If you push a negative hard and deep enough it will break through into its counterside;* this is based on the principle that every positive has its negative. We have already seen the conversion of the negative into the positive, in Mahatma Gandhi's development of the tactic of passive resistance.

One corporation we organized against responded to the continuous application of pressure by burglarizing my home, and then using the keys taken in the burglary to burglarize the offices of the Industrial Areas Foundation where I work. The panic in this corporation was clear from the nature of the burglaries, for nothing was taken in either burglary to make it seem that the thieves were interested in ordinary loot—they took only the records that applied to the corporation. Even the most amateurish burglar would have had more sense than to do what the private detective agency hired by that corporation did. The police departments in California and Chicago agreed that "the corporation might just as well have left its fingerprints all over the place."

In a fight almost anything goes. It almost reaches the point where you stop to apologize if a chance blow lands *above* the belt. When a corporation bungles like the one that burglarized my home and office, my visible public reaction is shock, horror, and moral outrage. In this case, we let it be known that sooner or later it would be

confronted with this crime as well as with a whole series of other derelictions, before a United States Senate Subcommittee Investigation. Once sworn in, with congressional immunity, we would make these actions public. This threat, plus the fact that an attempt on my life had been made in Southern California, had the corporation on a spot where it would be publicly suspect in the event of assassination. At one point I found myself in a thirty-room motel in which every other room was occupied by their security men. This became another devil in the closet to haunt this corporation and to keep the pressure on.

The twelfth rule: *The price of a successful attack is a constructive alternative.* You cannot risk being trapped by the enemy in his sudden agreement with your demand and saying "You're right—we don't know what to do about this issue. Now you tell us."

The thirteenth rule: *Pick the target, freeze it, personalize it, and polarize it.*

In conflict tactics there are certain rules that the organizer should always regard as universalities. One is that the opposition must be singled out as the target and "frozen." By this I mean that in a complex, interrelated, urban society, it becomes increasingly difficult to single out who is to blame for any particular evil. There is a constant, and somewhat legitimate, passing of the buck. In these times of urbanization, complex metropolitan governments, the complexities of major interlocked corporations, and the interlocking of political life between cities and counties and metropolitan authorities, the problem that threatens to loom more and more is that of identifying the enemy. Obviously there is no point to tactics unless one has a target upon which to center the attacks. One big problem *is* a constant shifting of responsibility from one jurisdiction to another—individuals and bureaus one after another disclaim responsibility

for particular conditions, attributing the authority for any change to some other force. In a corporation one gets the situation where the president of the corporation says that he does not have the responsibility, it *is* up to the board of trustees or the board of directors, the board of directors can shift it over to the stockholders, etc., etc. And the same thing goes, for example, on the Board of Education appointments in the city of Chicago, where an extra-legal committee is empowered to make selections of nominees for the board and the mayor then uses his legal powers to select names from that list. When the mayor is attacked for not having any blacks on the list, he shifts the responsibility over to the committee, pointing out that he has to select those names from a list submitted by the committee, and if the list is all white, then he has no responsibility. The committee can shift the responsibility back by pointing out that it is the mayor who has the authority to select the names, and so it goes in a comic (if it were not so tragic) routine of "who's on first" or "under which shell is the pea hidden?"

The same evasion of responsibility is to be found in all areas of life and other areas of City Hall Urban Renewal departments, who say the responsibility is over here, and somebody else says the responsibility is over there, the city says it is a state responsibility, and the state says it is a federal responsibility and the federal government passes it back to the local community, and on ad infinitum.

It should be borne in mind that the target is always trying to shift responsibility to get out of being the target. There is a constant squirming and moving and strategy— purposeful, and malicious at times, other times just for straight self-survival—on the part of the designated target. The forces for change must keep this in mind and pin that target down securely. If an organization permits

responsibility to be diffused and distributed in a number of areas, attack becomes impossible.

I remember specifically that when the Woodlawn Organization started the campaign against public school segregation, both the superintendent of schools and the chairman of the Board of Education vehemently denied any racist segregationist practices in the Chicago Public School System. They took the position that they did not even have any racial-identification data in their files, so they did not know which of their students were black and which were white. As for the fact that we had all-white schools and all-black schools, well, that's just the way it was.

If we had been confronted with a politically sophisticated school superintendent he could have very well replied, "Look, when I came to Chicago the city school system was following, as it is now, a neighborhood school policy. Chicago's neighborhoods are segregated. There are white neighborhoods and black neighborhoods and therefore you have white schools and black schools. Why attack me? Why not attack the segregated neighborhoods and change them?" He would have had a valid point, of sorts; I still shiver when I think of this possibility; but the segregated neighborhoods would have passed the buck to someone else and so it would have gone into a dog-chasing-his-tail pattern—and it would have been a fifteen-year job to try to break down the segregated residential pattern of Chicago. We did not have the power to start that kind of a conflict. One of the criteria in picking your target is the target's vulnerability—where do you have the power to start? Furthermore, any target can always say, "Why do you center on me when there are others to blame as well?" When you "freeze the target," you disregard these arguments and, for the moment, all the others to blame.

Then, as you zero in and freeze your target and carry out your attack, all of the "others" come out of the woodwork very soon. They become visible by their support of the target.

The other important point in the choosing of a target is that it must be a personification, not something general and abstract such as a community's segregated practices or a major corporation or City Hall. It is not possible to develop the necessary hostility against, say, City Hall, which after all is a concrete, physical, inanimate structure, or against a corporation, which has no soul or identity, or a public school administration, which again is an inanimate system.

John L. Lewis, the leader of the radical C.I.O. labor organization in the 1930s, was fully aware of this, and as a consequence the C.I.O. never attacked General Motors, they always attacked its president, Alfred "Icewater<sup>*sic*</sup>-In-His-Veins" Sloan; they never attacked the Republic Steel Corporation but always its president, "Bloodied Hands" Tom Girdler, and so with us when we attacked the then-superintendent of the Chicago public school system, Benjamin Willis. Let nothing get you off your target.

With this focus comes a polarization. As we have indicated before, all issues must be polarized if action is to follow. The classic statement on polarization comes from Christ: "He that is not with me is against me" (Luke 11:23). He allowed no middle ground to the moneychangers in the Temple. One acts decisively only in the conviction that all the angels are on one side and all the devils on the other. A leader may struggle toward a decision and weigh the merits and demerits of a situation which is 52 per cent positive and 48 per cent negative, but once the decision is reached he must assume that his cause is 100 per cent positive and the opposition 100 per cent negative. He can't toss forever in limbo, and avoid decision. He can't

weigh arguments or reflect endlessly—he must decide and act. Otherwise there are Hamlet's words:

And thus the native hue of resolution  
Is sicklied o'er with the pale cast of thought,  
And enterprises of great pith and moment  
With this regard their currents turn awry,  
And lose the name of action.

Many liberals, during our attack on the then-school superintendent, were pointing out that after all he wasn't a 100 per cent devil, he was a regular churchgoer, he was a good family man, and he was generous in his contributions to charity. Can you imagine in the arena of conflict charging that so-and-so is a racist bastard and then diluting the impact of the attack with qualifying remarks such as "He is a good churchgoing man, generous to charity, and a good husband"? This becomes political idiocy.

An excellent illustration of the importance of polarization here was cited by Ruth McKenney in *Industrial Valley*, her classical study of the beginning of organization of the rubber workers in Akron, Ohio:

[John L] Lewis faced the mountaineer workers of Akron calmly. He had taken the trouble to prepare himself with exact information about the rubber industry and The Goodyear Tire and Rubber Company. He made no vague, general speech, the kind the rubberworkers *{sic}* were used to hearing from Green [then president of the A.F. of L.]. Lewis named names and quoted figures. His audience was startled and pleased when he called Cliff Slusser by name, described him, and finally denounced him. The A.F. of L. leaders who used to come into Akron in the old days were generally doing well if they remembered who Paul Litchfield was.

The Lewis speech was a battle cry, a challenge. He started off by recalling the vast profits the rubber companies had always made, even during the deepest days of the Depression. He mentioned the Goodyear labor policy, and quoted Mr. Litchfield's pious opinions about the partnership of labor and capital.

"What," he said in his deep, passionate voice, "have Goodyear workers gotten out of the growth of the company?" His audience squirmed in its seats, listening with almost painful fervor.

"Partnership!" he sneered. "Well, labor and capital may be partners in theory, *but they are enemies in fact.*

... The rubberworkers listened to this with surprise and great excitement. William Green used to tell them about the partnership of labor and capital nearly as eloquently as Paul Litchfield. Here was a man who put into words—what eloquent and educated and even elegant words—facts they knew to be true from their own experience. Here was a man who said things that made real sense to a guy who worked on a tire machine at Goodyear.

"Organize!" Lewis shouted, and his voice echoed from the beams of the armory. "Organize!" he said, pounding the speaking pulpit until it jumped. "Organize! Go to Goodyear and tell them you want some of those stock dividends. Say, So we're supposed to be partners, are we? Well, we're not. *We're enemies.*"

- *The real action is in the enemy's reaction.*
- *The enemy properly goaded and guided in his reaction will be your major strength.*
- *Tactics, like organization, like life, require that you move with the action.*

The scene is Rochester, New York, the home of Eastman Kodak—or rather Eastman Kodak, the home of Rochester, New York. Rochester is literally dominated by this industrial giant. For anyone to fight or publicly challenge Kodak is in itself completely outside of Rochester's experience. Even to this day this company does not have a labor union. Its attitudes toward the general public make paternalistic feudalism look like participatory democracy.

Rochester prides itself on being one of America's cultural crown jewels; it has its libraries, school system, university, museums, and its well-known symphony. As previously mentioned we were coming in on the invitation of the black ghetto to organize them (they literally organized to invite us in). The city was in a state of hysteria and fear at the very mention of my name. Whatever I did was news. Even my old friend and tutor, John L. Lewis, called me and affectionately growled, "I resent the fact that you are more hated in Rochester than I was." This was the setting.

One of the first times I arrived at the airport I was surrounded by reporters from the media. The first question was what I thought about Rochester as a city and I replied, "It is a huge southern plantation transplanted north." To the question why was I "meddling" in the black ghetto after "everything" that Eastman Kodak had done for the blacks (there had been a bloody riot, National Guard, etc., the previous summer), I looked blank and replied, "Maybe I am innocent and uninformed of what has been happening here, but as far as I know the only thing Eastman Kodak has done on the race issue in America has been to introduce color film." The reaction was shock, anger, and resentment from Kodak. They were not being attacked or insulted—they were being laughed at, and this was insufferable. It was the first dart tossed at the big bull. Soon Eastman would become so angry that it would make the kind of charges that finally led to its own downfall.



The next question was about my response to a bitter personal denunciation of me from W. Allen Wallis, the president of the University of Rochester and a present director of Eastman Kodak. He had been the head of the Department of Business Administration, formerly, at the University of Chicago. He was at the university when it was locked in bitter warfare with the black organization in Woodlawn. "Wallis?" I replied. "Which one are you talking about—Wallace of Alabama, or Wallis of Rochester—but I guess there isn't any difference, so what was your question?" This reply (1) introduced an element of ridicule and (2) it ended any further attacks from the president of the University of Rochester, who began to suspect that he was going to be shafted with razors, and that an encounter with me or with my associates was not going to be an academic dialogue.

It should be remembered that you can threaten the enemy and get away with it. You can insult and annoy him, but the one thing that is unforgivable and that is certain to get him to react is to laugh at him. This causes an irrational anger.

I hesitate to spell out specific applications of these tactics. I remember an unfortunate experience with my *Reveille for Radicals*, in which I collected accounts of particular actions and tactics employed in organizing a number of communities. For some time after the book was published I got reports that would-be organizers were using this book as a manual, and whenever they were confronted with a puzzling situation they would retreat into some vestibule or alley and thumb through to find the answer! There can be no prescriptions for particular situations because the same situation rarely recurs, any more than history repeats itself. People, pressures, and patterns of power are variables, and a particular combination exists only in a particular time—even then the variables are constantly in a state of flux. Tactics must be understood as

specific applications of the rules and principles that I have listed above. It is the *principles* that the organizer must carry with him in battle. To these he applies his imagination, and he relates them tactically to specific situations.

For example, I have emphasized and re-emphasized that tactics means you do what you can with what you've got, and that power in the main has always gravitated towards those who have money and those whom people follow. The resources of the Have-Nots are (1) no money and (2) lots of people. All right, let's start from there. People can show their power by voting. What else? Well, they have physical bodies. How can they use them? Now a melange of ideas begins to appear. Use the power of the law by making the establishment obey its own rules. Go outside the experience of the enemy, stay inside the experience of your people. Emphasize tactics that your people will enjoy. The threat is usually more terrifying than the tactic itself. Once all these rules and principles are festering in your imagination they grow into a synthesis.

I suggested that we might buy one hundred seats for one of Rochester's symphony concerts. We would select a concert in which the music was relatively quiet. The hundred blacks who would be given the tickets would first be treated to a three-hour pre-concert dinner in the community, in which they would be fed nothing but baked beans, and lots of them; then the people would go to the symphony hall—with obvious consequences. Imagine the scene when the action began! The concert would be over before the first movement! (If this be a Freudian slip—so be it!)

Let's examine this tactic in terms of the concepts mentioned above.

First, the disturbance would be utterly outside the experience of the establishment, which was expecting the usual stuff of mass meetings,

street demonstrations, confrontations and parades. Not in their wildest fears would they expect an attack on their prize cultural jewel, their famed symphony orchestra. Second, all of the action would ridicule and make a farce of the law for there is no law, and there probably never will be, banning natural physical functions. Here you would have a combination not only of noise but also of odor, what you might call natural stink bombs. Regular stink bombs are illegal and cause for immediate arrest, but there would be absolutely nothing here that the Police Department or the ushers or any other servants of the establishment could do about it. The law would be completely paralyzed.

People would recount what had happened in the symphony hall and the reaction of the listener would be to crack up in laughter. It would make the Rochester Symphony and the establishment look utterly ridiculous. There would be no way for the authorities to cope with any future attacks of a similar character. What could they do? Demand that people not eat baked beans before coming to a concert? Ban anyone from succumbing to natural urges during the concert? Announce to the world that concerts must not be interrupted by farting? Such talk would destroy the future of the symphony season. Imagine the tension at the opening of any concert! Imagine the feeling of the conductor as he raised his baton!

With this would come certain fall-outs. On the following morning, the matrons, to whom the symphony season is one of the major social functions, would confront their husbands (both executives and junior executives) at the breakfast table and say, "John, we are not going to have our symphony season ruined by *those people!* I don't know what they want but whatever it is, something has got to be done and this kind of thing has to be stopped!"

Lastly, we have the universal rule that while one goes outside the experience of the enemy in order to induce confusion and fear, one must not do the same with one's own people, because you do not want them to be confused and fearful. Now, let us examine this rule with reference to the symphony tactic. To start with, the tactic is within the experience of the local people; it also satisfies another rule—that the people must enjoy the tactic. Here we have an ambivalent situation. The reaction of the blacks in the ghetto—their laughter when the tactic was proposed—made it clear that the tactic, at least in fantasy, was within their experience. It connected with their hatred of Whitey. The one thing that all oppressed people want to do to their oppressors is shit on them. Here was an approximate way to do this. However, we were also aware that when they found themselves actually in the symphony hall, probably for the first time in their lives, they would find themselves seated amid a mass of whites, many of them in formal dress. The situation would be so much *out of their experience* that they might congeal and revert back to their previous role. The very idea of doing what they had come to do would be so embarrassing, so mortifying, that they would do almost anything to avoid carrying through the plan. But we also knew that the baked beans would compel them physically to go through with the tactic regardless of how they felt.

I must emphasize that tactics like this are not just cute; any organizer knows, as a particular tactic grows out of the rules and principles of revolution, that he must always analyze the merit of the tactic and determine its strengths and weaknesses in terms of these same rules.

Imagine the scene in the U.S. Courtroom in Chicago's recent conspiracy trial of the seven if the defendants and counsel had anally trumpeted their contempt for Judge Hoffman and the system. What could Judge Hoffman, the bailiffs, or anyone else, do? Would the judge have found them in contempt for farting? Here was a tactic for

which there was no legal precedent. The press reaction would have stunk up the judge for the rest of time.

Another tactic involving the bodily functions developed in Chicago during the days of the Johnson-Goldwater campaign. Commitments that were made by the authorities to the Woodlawn ghetto organization were not being met by the city. The political threat that had originally compelled these commitments was no longer operative. The community organization had no alternative but to support Johnson and therefore the Democratic administration felt the political threat had evaporated. It must be remembered here that not only is pressure essential to compel the establishment to make its initial concession, but the pressure must be maintained to make the establishment deliver. The second factor seemed to be lost to the Woodlawn Organization.

Since the organization was blocked in the political arena, new tactics and a new arena had to be devised.

O'Hare Airport became the target. To begin with, O'Hare is the world's busiest airport. Think for a moment of the common experience of jet travelers. Your stewardess brings you your lunch or dinner. After eating, most people want to go to the lavatory. However, this is often inconvenient because your tray and those of your seat partners are loaded down with dishes. So you wait until the stewardess has removed the trays. By that time those who are seated closest to the lavatory have got up and the "occupied" sign is on. So you wait. And in these days of jet travel the seat belt sign is soon flashed, as the airplane starts its landing approach. You decide to wait until after landing and use the facilities in the terminal. This is obvious to anyone who watches the unloading of passengers at various gates in any airport—many of the passengers are making a beeline for the men's or the ladies' room.

With this in mind, the tactic becomes obvious—we tie up the lavatories. *{sic}* In the restrooms you drop a dime, enter, push the lock on the door—and you can stay there all day. Therefore the occupation of the sit-down toilets presents no problem. It would take just a relatively few people to walk into these cubicles, armed with books and newspapers, lock the doors, and tie up all the facilities. What are the police going to do? Break in and demand evidence of legitimate occupancy? Therefore, the ladies' restrooms could be occupied completely; the only problem in the men's lavatories would be the stand-up urinals. This, too, could be taken care of, by having groups busy themselves around the airport and then move in on the stand-up urinals to line up four or five deep whenever a flight arrived. An intelligence study was launched to learn how many sit-down toilets for both men and women, as well as stand-up urinals, there were in the entire O'Hare Airport complex and how many men and women would be necessary for the nation's first "shit-in."

The consequences of this kind of action would be catastrophic in many ways. People would be desperate for a place to relieve themselves. One can see children yelling at their parents, "Mommy, I've got to go," and desperate mothers surrendering, "All right—well, do it. Do it right here." O'Hare would soon become a shambles. The whole scene would become unbelievable and the laughter and ridicule would be nationwide. It would probably get a front page story in the London *Times*. It would be a source of great mortification and embarrassment to the city administration. It might even create the kind of emergency in which planes would have to be held up while passengers got back aboard to use the plane's toilet facilities.

The threat of this tactic was leaked (again there may be a Freudian slip here, and again, so what?) back to the administration, and within forty-eight hours the Woodlawn Organization found itself in

conference with the authorities who said that they were certainly going to live up to their commitments and they could never understand where anyone got the idea that a promise made by Chicago's City Hall would not be observed. At no point, then or since, has there ever been any open mention of the threat of the O'Hare tactic. Very few of the members of the Woodlawn Organization knew how close they were to writing history.

With the universal principle that the right things are always done for the wrong reasons and the tactical rule that negatives become positives, we can understand the following examples.

In its early history the organized black ghetto in the Woodlawn neighborhood in Chicago engaged in conflict with the slum landlords. It never picketed the local slum tenements or the landlord's office. It selected its blackest blacks and bused them out to the lily-white suburb of the slum landlord's residence. Their picket signs, which said, "Did you know that Jones, your neighbor, is a slum landlord?" were completely irrelevant; the point was that the pickets knew Jones would be inundated with phone calls from his neighbors.

Jones: Before you say a word let me tell you that those signs are a bunch of lies!

Neighbor: Look, Jones, I don't give a damn what you do for a living. All we know is that you get those goddam niggers out of here or you get out!

Jones came out and signed.

The pressure that gave us our positive power was the negative of racism in a white society. We exploited it for our own purposes.

Let us take one of the negative stereotypes that so many whites have of blacks: that blacks like to sit around eating watermelon. Suppose that 3,000 blacks suddenly descended into the downtown sections of any city, each armed with and munching a huge piece of watermelon. This spectacle would be so far outside the experience of the whites that they would be unnerved and disorganized. In alarm over what the blacks were up to, the establishment would probably react to the advantage of the blacks. Furthermore, the whites would recognize at last the absurdity of their stereotype of black habits. Whites would squirm in embarrassment, knowing that they were being ridiculed. That would be the end of the black watermelon stereotype. I think that this tactic would bring the administration to contact black leadership and ask what their demands were even if no demands had been made. Here again is a case of doing what you can with what you've got.

Another example of doing what you can with what you've got is the following:

I was lecturing at a college run by a very conservative, almost fundamentalist Protestant denomination. Afterward some of the students came to my motel to talk to me. Their problem was that they couldn't have any fun on campus. They weren't permitted to dance or smoke or have a can of beer. I had been talking about the strategy of effecting change in a society and they wanted to know what tactics they could use to change their situation. I reminded them that a tactic is doing what you can with what you've got. "Now, what have you got?" I asked. "What do they permit you to do?" "Practically nothing," they said, "except—you know—we can chew gum." I said, "Fine. Gum becomes the weapon. You get two or three hundred students to get two packs of gum each, which is quite a wad. Then you have them drop it on the campus walks. This will cause absolute chaos. Why, with five hundred wads of gum I could paralyze



Chicago, stop all the traffic in the Loop. They looked at me as though I was some kind of a nut. But about two weeks later I got an ecstatic letter saying, "It worked! It worked! Now we can do just about anything so long as we don't chew gum."

—quoted in Marion K. Sanders' *The Professional Radical—Conversations with Saul Alinsky*.

As with the slum landlords, one of the major department stores in the nation was brought to heel by the following threatened tactic. Remember the rule—the threat is often more effective than the tactic itself, but *only* if you are so organized that the establishment knows not only that you have the power to execute the tactic but that you definitely will. You can't do much bluffing in this game; if you're ever caught bluffing, forget about ever using threats in the future. On that point you're dead.

There is a particular department store that happens to cater to the carriage trade. It attracts many customers on the basis of its labels as well as the quality of its merchandise. Because of this, economic boycotts had failed to deter even the black middle class from shopping there. At the time its employment policies were more restrictive than those of the other stores. Blacks were hired for only the most menial jobs.

We made up a tactic. A busy Saturday shopping date was selected. Approximately 3,000 blacks all dressed up in their good churchgoing suits or dresses would be bused downtown. When you put 3,000 blacks on the main floor of a store, even one that covers a square block, suddenly the entire color of the store changes. Any white coming through the revolving doors would take one pop-eyed look and assume that somehow he had stepped into Africa. He would keep

right on going out of the store. This would end the white trade for the day.

For a low-income group, shopping is a time-consuming experience, for economy means everything. This would mean that every counter would be occupied by potential customers, carefully examining the quality of merchandise and asking, say, at the shirt counter, about the material, color, style, cuffs, collars, and price. As the group occupying the clerks' attention around the shirt counters moved to the underwear section, those at the underwear section would replace them at the shirt counter, and the personnel of the store would be constantly occupied.

Now pause to examine the tactic. It is legal. There is no sit-in or unlawful occupation of premises. Some thousands of people are in the store "shopping." The police are powerless and you are operating within the law.

This operation would go on until an hour before closing time, when the group would begin purchasing everything in sight to be delivered C.O.D.! This would tie up truck-delivery service for at least two days—with obvious further heavy financial costs, since all the merchandise would be refused at the time of delivery.

The threat was delivered to the authorities through a legitimate and "trustworthy" channel. Every organization must have two or three stool pigeons who are trusted by the establishment. These stool pigeons are invaluable as "trustworthy" lines of communication to the establishment. With all plans ready to go, we began formation of a series of committees: a transportation committee to get the buses, a mobilization committee to work with the ministers to get their people to their buses, and other committees with other specific functions. Two of the key committees deliberately included one of these

stoolies each, so that there would be one to back up the other. We knew the plan would be quickly reported back to the department store. The next day we received a call from the department store for a meeting to discuss new personnel policies and an urgent request that the meeting take place within the next two or three days, certainly before Saturday!

The personnel policies of the store were drastically changed. Overnight, 186 new jobs were opened. For the first time, blacks were on the sales floor and in executive training.

This is the kind of tactic that can be used by the middle class too. Organized shopping, wholesale buying plus charging and returning everything on delivery, would add accounting costs to their attack on the retailer with the ominous threat of continued repetition. This is far more effective than canceling a charge account. Let's look at the score: (1) sales for one day are completely shot; (2) delivery service is tied up for two days or more; and (3) the accounting department is screwed up. The total cost *is* a nightmare for any retailer, and the sword remains hanging over his head. The middle class, too, must learn the nature of the enemy and be able to practice what I have described as mass jujitsu, utilizing the power of one part of the power structure against another part.

## ***COMPETITION***

Once we understand the external reactions of the Haves to the challenges of the Have-Nots, then we go to the next level of examination, the anatomy of power of the Haves among themselves.

But let us go deeper into the psyche of this Goliath. The Haves possess and in turn are possessed by power. Obsessed with the fear of losing power, their every move is dictated by the idea of keeping

it. The way of life of the Haves is to keep what they have and wherever possible to shore up their defenses.

This opens a new vista—not only do we have a whole class determined to keep its power and in constant conflict with the Have-Nots; at the same time, they are in conflict among themselves. Power is not static; it cannot be frozen and preserved like food; it must grow or die. Therefore, in order to keep power the status quo must get more. But from whom? There is just so much more than can be squeezed out of the Have-Nots—so the Haves must take it from each other. They are on a road from which there is no turning back. This power cannibalism of the Haves permits only temporary truces, and only when equally confronted by a common enemy. Even then there are regular breaks in the ranks, as individual units attempt to exploit the general threat for their own special benefit. Here is the vulnerable belly of the status quo.

I first learned this lesson during the 1930s depression, when the United States experienced a revolutionary upheaval in the form of a mass labor-union-organizing drive known as the C.I.O. This was the radical wing of the labor movement; it espoused industrial unionism while the conservative and archaic A.F. of L. clung to craft unionism. The position of the A.F. of L. excluded the masses of workers from union organization. The battle cry of the C.I.O. was "organize the unorganized." Very quickly the issue was joined with the gargantuan automobile industry, which was at that time an open shop, and completely unorganized. The first attack was against the behemoth of this empire, General Motors. A sit-down strike was launched against Chevrolet. John L. Lewis, then the leader of the C.I.O., told me that at the height of this sit-down strike he heard a rumor that General Motors had met with both Ford and Chrysler to advance the following proposition: "We at General Motors are fighting your battle for if the C.I.O. beats us, then you're next in line and there will

be no stopping them. Now we are willing to let the C.I.O. sit in at Chevrolet until hell freezes and suffer that loss in our profits *if* you will hold your production of Fords and Plymouths [the price-class competitors to the Chevrolet] to your present market. On the other hand, we cannot hold out against the C.I.O. if you boost production in order to sell to all potential Chevrolet customers who will buy your products because they cannot get Chevrolets."

Lewis, who was an organizational genius with a rare insight into the power mechanics of the status quo, dismissed it with a perceptive comment. It doesn't matter whether this is a false rumor or true, he said, because neither Ford nor Chrysler could ever agree to overlook an opportunity for an immediate increase in their profits and power, shortsighted as it might be.

The internecine struggle among the Haves for their individual self-interest is as shortsighted as internecine struggle among the Have-Nots. I have on occasion remarked that I feel confident that I could persuade a millionaire on a Friday to subsidize a revolution for Saturday out of which he would make a huge profit on Sunday even though he was certain to be executed on Monday.

Once one understands this internal battle for power within the status quo, one can begin to appraise effective tactics to exploit it. It *is* sad to see the stupidity of inexperienced organizers who make gross errors by failing to have even an elementary appreciation of this pattern.

An example is to be found just a couple of years ago when during the height of the rising tide of the struggle for civil rights certain civil rights leaders in Chicago declared a Christmas boycott on *all* the department stores downtown. The boycott was a disastrous failure, and any experienced revolutionary could have predicted without any

reservations that this would have been the case. Any attack against the status quo must use the strength of the enemy against itself. Let us examine this particular boycott—the error was in trying to boycott *all*, instead of *some*. Few liberals, white or black, would forgo all Christmas shopping in the most attractive shopping places. Even if it had not been the Christmas season, we know that picket lines are relatively ineffective today in stopping the general population. There is a low degree of identification on the part of the general population with the labor movement or with picket lines in general. However, even that low degree can be exploited by placing a picket line in front of only one department store. If the same merchandise can be purchased at the same price at another department store across the street, the slight uneasiness that the picket line creates can affect a significant number of customers—they have an easy enough, visible enough alternative: they will cross the street. The power squeeze comes when the picketed department store sees a number of customers going across to its competitors.

This calculated maneuvering of the power of one part of the Haves against its other parts is central to strategy. In a certain sense it is similar to the Have-Not nations playing off the U.S.A. against the U.S.S.R.

### ***THEIR OWN PETARD***

The basic tactic in warfare against the Haves is a mass political jujitsu: the Have-Nots do not rigidly oppose the Haves, but yield in such planned and skilled ways that the superior strength of the Haves becomes their own undoing. For example, since the Haves publicly pose as the custodians of responsibility, morality, law, and justice (which are frequently strangers to each other), they can be constantly pushed to live up to their own book of morality and regulations. No organization, including organized religion, can live up to the letter of

its own book. You can club them to death with their "book" of rules and regulations. This is what that great revolutionary, Paul of Tarsus, knew when he wrote to the Corinthians: "Who also hath made us able ministers of the New Testament; not of the letter, but of the spirit; for the letter killeth."

Let us take, for example, the case of the civil rights demonstrations of 1963 in Birmingham, when thousands of Negro children stayed out of school to participate in the street demonstrations. The Birmingham Board of Education dusted off its book of regulations and threatened to expel all children absent for this reason. Here the civil rights leaders erred (as they did on other vital tactics) by backing off instead of rushing in with more demonstrations and pressing the Birmingham Board of Education between the pages of their book of regulations by forcing them to live up to the letter of their regulations and statements. The Board and the City of Birmingham would have been in an impossible situation with every Negro child expelled and loose on the streets—if they didn't reverse themselves before they acted, they would have reversed themselves one day later.

Another dramatic failure to understand tactics came during the second Chicago public school boycott, in 1964, a struggle against a de facto segregated public school system. We know that the efficacy of any action is in the reaction it evokes from the Haves, so that the cycle escalates in a continuum of conflict. Lacking any reaction from the Haves (except public notice of the numbers of children involved), effects of the boycott were significantly over by the next day. This boycott was what I call a terminal tactic, one that crests, breaks, and disappears like a wave. Terminal tactics do not arouse the reaction that is essential for the development of a conflict. A terminal tactic is to be exercised only to finish a conflict, for it is ineffective in the

development of the rhythm of give and take that one must have while stepping up the war and building the movement.

Civil rights leaders could console themselves with the "psychological carry-overs," "public display of support," and similar prayerful hopes, but as for carrying on the conflict for integration, that was over and done with by the next day. Nice memory.

In Chicago the Haves slipped badly when both a judge and a district attorney muttered that the book of regulations banned attempts to induce the absence of public school students, and growled ominously about an injunction against all civil rights leaders taking part in the development of the boycott. Here, as always, whenever the Haves start living by their book they present a golden opportunity to the Have-Nots to transform what had been a terminal tactic into a sweeping advance on many fronts. The children wouldn't need to be absent—the leaders would be the only people who needed to act. Now was the time to start an intensive campaign of ridicule, insults, and taunting defiance, daring the district attorney and the judge either to live up to their regulations and issue the injunctions or stand publicly exposed as fearful frauds who were afraid to put the law where their mouths were. Such behavior on the part of the Have-Nots would probably have resulted in the injunction. But by this time the boycott tactic would have had shaking consequences. Immediately following the boycott every civil rights leader in the city of Chicago involved in it would have been in violation of the court injunction. But the last thing that the establishment wants is to indict and imprison every single civil rights leader (which would have included leaders of every religious organization in town) in the city of Chicago. Such a step would have shaken the power structure of Chicago, and certainly put the entire issue of school segregation policy on the line. Without any question, the district attorney and the judge would have had to depend on postponements in the hope that



everybody would just forget about it. At this point, now that the civil rights leaders had the powerful weapon of the book of laws of the Haves, they would have to stand fast publicly—once again taunting, insulting, demanding that the judge and the district attorney "obey the law," charging that the district attorney and the courts had issued an injunction which they had publicly, willfully, and maliciously violated, and that they therefore must be compelled to pay the penalties for this action. If the civil rights leaders insisted that they be arrested and tried, the Haves would be on the run and in complete confusion, caught in the strait jacket of their own book. Enforcement of their injunction would have resulted in a citywide storm of protest and a rapid growth in the organization. Non-enforcement would have signaled a breakdown and retreat of the Haves from the Have-Nots, and also resulted in swelling the size and force of the Have-Not organization.

### ***TIME IN JAIL***

The reaction of the status quo in jailing revolutionary leaders is in itself a tremendous contribution to the development of the Have-Not movement as well as to the personal development of the revolutionary leaders. This point should be carefully remembered as another example of how mass jujitsu tactics can be used to so maneuver the status quo that it turns its power against itself.

Jailing the revolutionary leaders and their followers performs three vital functions for the cause of the Have-Nots: (1) it is an act on the part of the status quo that in itself points up the conflict between the Haves and the Have-Nots; (2) it strengthens immeasurably the position of the revolutionary leaders with their people by surrounding the jailed leadership with an aura of martyrdom; (3) it deepens the identification of the leadership with their people since the prevalent reaction among the Have-Nots is that their leadership cares so much

for them, and is so sincerely committed to the issue, that it is willing to suffer imprisonment for the cause. Repeatedly in situations where the relationship between the Have-Nots and their leaders has become strained the remedy has been the jailing of the leaders by the establishment. Immediately the ranks close and the leaders regain their mass support.

At the same time, the revolutionary leaders should make certain that their publicized violations of the regulations are so selected that their jail terms are relatively brief, from one day to two months. The trouble with a long jail sentence is that (a) a revolutionary is removed from action for such an extended period of time that he loses touch, and (b) if you are gone long enough everybody forgets about you. Life goes on, new issues arise, and new leaders appear; however, a periodic removal from circulation by being jailed is an essential element in the development of the revolutionary. The one problem that the revolutionary cannot cope with by himself is that he must now and then have an opportunity to reflect and synthesize his thoughts. To gain that privacy in which he can try to make sense out of what he is doing, why he is doing it, where he is going, what has been wrong with what he has done, what he should have done and above all to see the relationships of all the episodes and acts as they tie in to a general pattern, the most convenient and accessible solution *is* jail. It is here that he begins to develop a philosophy. It is here that he begins to shape long-term goals, intermediate goals, and a self-analysis of tactics as tied to his own personality. It is here that he is emancipated from the slavery of action wherein he was compelled to think from act to act. Now he can look at the totality of his actions and the reactions of the enemy from a fairly detached position.

Every revolutionary leader of consequence has had to undergo these withdrawals from the arena of action. Without such opportunities, he

goes from one tactic and one action to another, but most of them are almost terminal tactics in themselves; he never has a chance to think through an overall synthesis, and he burns himself out. He becomes, in fact, nothing more than a temporary irritant. The prophets of the Old Testament and the New found their opportunity for synthesis by voluntarily removing themselves to the wilderness. It was after they emerged that they began propagandizing their philosophies. Often a revolutionary finds that he cannot voluntarily detach himself, since the pressure of events and action do not permit him that luxury; furthermore, a revolutionary or a man of action does not have the sedentary frame of mind that is part of the personality of a research scholar. He finds it very difficult to sit quietly and think and write. Even when provided with a voluntary situation of that kind he will react by trying to escape the job of thinking and writing. He will do anything to avoid it.

I remember that once I accepted an invitation to participate in a one-week discussion at the Aspen Institute. The argument was made that this would be a good opportunity to get away from it all and write. The institute sessions would last only from 10:00 to noon and I would be free for the rest of the afternoon and the evening. The morning began with the institute sessions; the subjects were very interesting and carried over through a luncheon discussion, which lasted until 2:30 or 3:00. Now I could sit and write from 3:00 to dinner, but then one of the members of the discussion group, a most interesting astronomer, stopped in for a chat. By the time he left it was 5:00 p.m.; there wasn't much point in starting to write then, for there would be cocktails at 5:30, and after cocktails there wasn't much point in sitting down to start writing because dinner would be served soon, and after dinner there wasn't much point in trying to start writing because it was late and I was tired. Now it is true that I could have got up immediately after lunch, told everybody that I was not to be disturbed, and gone to spend the afternoon writing. I could

have gone back to my quarters, locked the door, and, hopefully, started writing; but the fact is that I did not want to come to grips with thinking and writing any more than anyone else involved in revolutionary movements does. I welcomed the interruptions and used them as rationalizing excuses to escape the ordeal of thinking and writing.

Jail provides just the opposite circumstances. You have no phones and, except for an hour or so a day, no visitors. Your jailers are rough, unsociable, and generally so dull that you wouldn't want to talk to them anyway. You find yourself in a physical drabness and confinement, which you desperately try to escape. Since there is no physical escape you are driven to erase your surroundings imaginatively: you escape into thinking and writing. It was through periodic imprisonment that the basis for my first publication and the first orderly philosophical arrangement of my ideas and goals occurred.

### ***TIME IN TACTICS***

Enough of philosophical cells—let's get back to the business of the active essentials of organizing. Among the essentials is timing.

Timing is to tactics what it is to everything in life—the difference between success and failure. I don't mean the timing of the start of a tactic—that is important certainly, but as has been stated repeatedly, life does not usually afford the tactician the luxury of time or place when the conflict is engaged. Life does permit, however, that the skilled tactician be conscious of the utilization of time in the use of tactics.

Once the battle is joined and a tactic is employed, it is important that the conflict not be carried on over too long a time. If you will recall,

this was the seventh rule noted at the beginning of this chapter. There are many reasons of human experience arguing for this point. I cannot repeat too often that *a conflict that drags on too long becomes a drag*. The same universality applies for a tactic or for any other specific action.

Among the reasons is the simple fact that human beings can sustain an interest in a particular subject only over a limited period of time. The concentration, the emotional fervor, even the physical energy, a particular experience that is exciting, challenging, and inviting, can last just so long—this is true of the gamut of human behavior, from sex to conflict. After a period of time it becomes monotonous, repetitive, an emotional treadmill, and worse than anything else a bore. From the moment the tactician engages in conflict, his enemy is time.

This should be kept in mind when one is considering boycotts. First, any consideration of a boycott should carefully avoid essentials such as meat, milk, bread, or basic vegetables, since even selective buying weakens after a period of time as the opponent cuts his prices below his competitors. With non-essentials—grapes, bananas, pistachio nuts, maraschino cherries, and the like—many liberals can make the "sacrifice" and feel noble.

Even so, any skilled organizer knows that he can push this negative over into a positive: he can compel or maneuver the opposition to make the mistake themselves. The drama of continuous involvement builds up an immunity to any further excitement. The consequence is that the opposition will finally, out of their own tedium, give in.

The pressure of time should be ever-present in the mind of the tactician as he begins to engage in action. This applies to the physical action such as a mass demonstration as well as to its emotional

counterpart. When the Woodlawn Organization in Chicago decided to have a massive move-in on City Hall with reference to an issue on education, 5,000 to 8,000 individuals were to fill the lobby of City Hall in Chicago at 10:00 a.m. for a confrontation with the mayor. At the time the strategy was being developed, the function of time in the use of the tactic was examined and understood, and therefore the tactic was utilized to its fullest potential rather than turning into a debacle, as was the case with the recent poor people's march, Resurrection City, etc. There was a clear understanding on the part of the leadership that when some thousands of people are assembled downtown, the physical tedium of standing, of being in one place for a period of time, begins to dampen ardor rather soon, and that small groups will begin to disappear to go shopping, go sight-seeing, get refreshments. In short, the life of the immediate metropolitan area becomes much more attractive and inviting than simply being in City Hall in an action that has already spent the excitement of witnessing the opposition's shock. After a while — and by "a while" meaning two to three hours — the 8,000 would have dwindled to 800 or less and the impact of mass numbers would have been seriously diluted and weakened. Furthermore, the effect on the opposition would have been that the mayor, seeing a mass action of 8,000 shrink to 800, would assume that if he only sits it out for another two or three hours the 800 will shrink to 80, and if he sits it out for a day there will be nothing left. That would have gained us nothing.

With this in mind, the leadership of the Woodlawn Organization made its confrontation with the mayor, told the mayor that they wanted action and quickly on their particular demands, and that they were going to give him just so much time to meet their demands. Having given their message, they said, they were now calling off their demonstration, but they would be back in the same numbers or more. And with that they turned around and led their still-

enthusiastic army in an organized, fully armed, powerful withdrawal, and left this mass impression upon the City Hall authorities.

There is a way to keep the action going and to prevent it from being a drag, but this means constantly cutting new issues as the action continues, so that by the time the enthusiasm and the emotions for one issue have started to de-escalate, a new issue has come into the scene with a consequent revival. With a constant introduction of new issues, it will go on and on. This is the case with many prolonged fights; in the end, the negotiations don't even involve the issues around which the conflict originally began. It brings to mind the old anecdote of the Hundred Years War in Europe: when the parties finally got together for peace negotiations nobody could remember what the war was all about, or how it had begun — and furthermore, whatever the original issues, they were now irrelevant to the peace negotiations.

### ***NEW TACTICS AND OLD***

Speaking of issues, let's look at the issue of pollution. Here again, we can use the Haves against the Haves to get what we want. When utilities or heavy industries talk about the "people," they mean the banks and other power sectors of their own world. If their banks, say, start pressing them, then they listen and hurt. The target, therefore, should be the banks that serve the steel, auto, and other industries, and the goal, significant lessening of pollution.

Let us begin by making the banks live up to their own public statements.

All banks want money and advertise for new savings and checking accounts. They even offer premium prizes to those who will open accounts. Opening a savings account in a bank *is* more than a routine

matter. First, you sit down with one of the multiple vice-presidents or employees and begin to fill out forms and respond to questions for at least thirty minutes. If a thousand or more people all moved in, each with \$5 or \$10 to open up a savings account, the bank's floor functions would be paralyzed. Again, as in the case of the shop-in, the police would be immobilized. There is no illegal occupation. The bank is in a difficult position. It knows what is happening, but still it does not want to antagonize would-be depositors. The bank's public image would be destroyed if some thousand would-be depositors were arrested or forcibly ejected from the premises.

The element of ridicule is here again. A continuous chain of action and reaction is formed. Following this, the people can return in a few days and close their accounts, and then return again later to open new accounts. This is what I would call a middle-class guerrilla attack. It could well cause an irrational reaction on the part of the banks which could then be directed against their large customers, for example the polluting utilities or whatever were the obvious, stated targets of the middle-class organizations. The target of a secondary attack such as this is always outraged; the bank, thus, is likely to react more emotionally since it as a body feels that it is innocent, being punished for another's sins.

At the same time, this kind of action can also be combined with social refreshments and gathering together with friends downtown, as well as with the general enjoyment of seeing the discomfiture and confusion on the part of the establishment. The middle-class guerrillas would enjoy themselves as they increased the pressure on their enemies.

Once a specific tactic is used, it ceases to be outside the experience of the enemy. Before long he devises countermeasures that void the previous effective tactic. Recently the head of a corporation showed



me the blueprint of a new plant and pointed to a large ground-floor area: "Boy, have we got an architect who is with it!" he chuckled. "See that big hall? That's our sit-in room! When the sit-inners come they'll be shown in and there will be coffee, T.V., and good toilet facilities—they can sit here until hell freezes over."

Now you can relegate sit-ins to the Smithsonian Museum.

Once, though—and in rare circumstances even now— sit-downs were really revolutionary. A vivid illustration was the almost spontaneous sit-down strikes of the United Automobile Workers Union in their 1937 organizing drive at General Motors. The seizure of private property caused an uproar in the nation. With rare exception every labor leader ran for cover—this was too revolutionary for them. The sit-down strikers began to worry about the illegality of their action and the why and wherefore, and it was then that the chief of all C.I.O. organizers, Lewis, gave them their rationale. He thundered, "The right to a man's job transcends the right of private property! The C.I.O. stands squarely behind these sit-downs!"

The sit-down strikers at G.M. cheered. *Now* they knew *why* they had done what they did, and *why* they would stay to the end. The lesson here is that a major job of the organizer is to instantly develop the rationale for actions which have taken place by accident or impulsive anger. Lacking the rationale, the action becomes inexplicable to its participants and rapidly disintegrates into defeat. Possessing a rationale gives action a meaning and purpose.

{footnote 1} Power has always derived from two main sources, money and people. Lacking money, the Have-Nots must build power from their own flesh and blood. A mass movement expresses itself with mass tactics. Against the finesse and sophistication of the status quo, the Have-Nots have always had to club their way. In early Renaissance Italy the playing cards showed swords for the nobility (the

word *spade* is a corruption of the Italian word for sword), chalices (which became hearts) for the clergy, diamonds for the merchants, and clubs as the symbol of the peasants. {end footnote}

{footnote 2} Alinsky takes the iconoclast's pleasure in kicking the biggest behinds in town and the sport is not untempting . ." —William F. Buckley, Jr., *Chicago Daily News*, October 19, 1966. {end footnote}

## *The Genesis of Tactic Proxy*

THE GREATEST BARRIER to communication between myself and would-be organizers arises when I try to get across the concept that tactics are not the product of careful cold reason, that they do not follow a table of organization or plan of attack. Accident, unpredictable reactions to your own actions, necessity, and improvisation dictate the direction and nature of tactics. Then, analytical logic is required to appraise where you are, what you can do next, the risks and hopes that you can look forward to. It is this analysis that protects you from being a blind prisoner of the tactic and the accidents that accompany it. But I cannot overemphasize that the tactic itself comes out of the free flow of action and reaction, and requires on the part of the organizer an easy acceptance of apparent disorganization.

The organizer goes with the action. His approach must be free, open-ended, curious, sensitive to any opportunities, any handles to grab on to, even though they involve other issues than those he may have in mind at that particular time. The organizer should never feel lost because he has no plot, no timetable or definite points of reference. A great pragmatist, Abraham Lincoln, told his secretary in the month the war began:

"My policy is to have no policy."

Three years later, in a letter to a Kentucky friend, he confessed plainly: "I have been controlled by events."

The major problem in trying to communicate this idea is that it is outside the experience of practically everyone who has been exposed to our alleged education system. The products of this system have been trained to emphasize order, logic, rational thought, direction, and purpose. We call it mental discipline and it results in a structured, static, closed, rigid, mental makeup. Even a phrase such as "being open-minded" becomes just a verbalism. Happenings that cannot be understood at the time, or don't fit into the accumulated "educational" pattern, are considered strange, suspect, and to be avoided. For anyone to understand what anyone else is doing, he has got to understand it in terms of logic, rational decision, and deliberate conscious action. Therefore when you try to communicate the whys and wherefores of your actions you are compelled to fabricate these logical, rational, structured reasons to rationalizations. This is not how it is in real life.

Since the nature of the development of tactics cannot be described as a general proposition, I shall attempt instead to present a case study of the development of the proxy tactic, one that promises to be a major tactic for some years to come. I shall try to take the reader into *my* experience with the hope that afterward he will reflect candidly upon the hows and whys of his own tactical experience.

We know that we are predominantly a middle-class society living in a corporate economy, an economy that tends to form conglomerates so that in order to know where the power lies, you have to find out who owns whom. For some years past it's been like trying to find the pea in the shell game—but now there are strobe lights flashing for

further confusion. The one thing certain is that masses of middle-class Americans are ready to move toward major confrontations with corporate America.

College students have argued that their administrations should give student committees the proxies in their stock portfolios for use in the struggle for peace and against pollution, inflation, racially discriminatory policies, and other evils.

Citizens from Baltimore to Los Angeles are organizing proxy groups to pool their votes for action on the social and political policies of "their" corporations. Feeling that national proxy organization may give them, for the first time, the power to do something, they are now waking to a growing interest in the relationship of their corporate holdings to the Pentagon.

This pragmatic means toward political action has loosed new forces. Recently I talked to three students at Stanford's School of Business Administration about the ways and means of proxy use. I asked them what their major goal was and they responded, "Getting out of Vietnam." They shook their heads when I asked whether they had been active on this issue. "Why not?" I inquired. Their answer was that they didn't believe in the effectiveness of demonstrations in the streets, and recoiled from such actions as carrying Viet Cong flags, draft card burning or draft evasion, but they did believe in the use of proxies. Enter three new recruits; you can depend upon the establishment to radicalize them further.

Like any new political program, the proxy tactic was not the result of reason and logic—it was part accident, part necessity, part response to reaction, and part imagination, and each part affected the other. Of course "imagination" is also tactical sensitivity; when the "accident"

happens, the imaginative organizer recognizes it and grabs it before it slips by.

The various accounts of the "history" of the development of the proxy tactic show a line of reason, purpose, and order that were never there. The mythology of "history" is usually so pleasant for the ego of the subject that he accepts it in a "modest" silence, an affirmation of the validity of the mythology. After a while he begins to believe it.

The further danger of mythology is that it carries the picture of "genius at work" with the false implication of purposeful logic and planned actions. This makes it more difficult to free oneself from the structured approach. For this if no other reason mythology should be understood for what it is.

The history of Chicago's Back of the Yards Council reads, "Out from the gutters, the bars, the churches, the labor unions, yes, even the communist and socialist parties; the neighborhood businessmen's associations, the American Legion and Chicago's Catholic Bishop Bernard Sheil. They all came together on July 14, 1939. July 14, Bastille Day! Their Bastille Day, the day they deliberately and symbolically selected to join together to storm the barricades of unemployment, rotten housing, disease, delinquency and demoralization."

That's the way it reads. What really happened is that July 14 was selected because it was the one day the public park fieldhouse *{sic}* was clear—the one day that the labor unions had no scheduled meetings—the day that many priests thought was best—the one day that the late Bishop Sheil was free. There wasn't a thought of Bastille Day in any of our minds.

That day at a press conference before the convention came to order a reporter asked me, "Don't you think it's somewhat too revolutionary to deliberately select Bastille Day for your first convention?" I tried to cover my surprise but I thought, "How wonderful! What a windfall!" I answered, "Not at all. It is fitting that we do so and that's why we did it."

I quickly informed all the speakers about "Bastille Day" and it became the keynote of nearly every speech. And so history records it as a "calculated, planned" tactic.

The difference between fact and history was brought home when I was a visiting professor at a certain Eastern university. Two candidates there were taking their written examinations for the doctorate in community organization and criminology. I persuaded the president of this college to get me a copy of this examination and when I answered the questions the departmental head graded my paper, knowing only that I was an anonymous friend of the president. Three of the questions were on the philosophy and motivations of Saul Alinsky. I answered two of them incorrectly. I did not know what my philosophy or motivations were; but they did!

I remember that when I organized the Back of the Yards in Chicago I made many moves almost intuitively. But when I was asked to explain what I had done and why, I had to come up with *reasons*. Reasons that were not present at the time. What I did at the time, I did because that was the thing to do; it was the best thing to do, or it was the only thing to do. However, when pressed for reasons I had to start considering an intellectual scaffolding for my past actions—really, rationalizations. I can remember the "reasons" being so convincing even to myself that I thought, "Why, of course, I did it for those reasons—I should have known that that was why I did it."

The proxy tactic was born in Rochester, New York, in the conflict between Eastman Kodak and the black ghetto organization called FIGHT our foundation had helped to organize. The issues [{footnote 1}](#) of the conflict are not relevant to the present subject except that a vice-president of Kodak assigned to negotiate with FIGHT reached an agreement with FIGHT, and that seemed to close the matter. Enter the first accident, for Kodak then repudiated its own vice-president and the agreement he had made. This re-opened the battle. If Kodak had not reneged, the issue would have ended there.

Now necessity moved in. As the lines were drawn for battle it became clear that the usual strategy of demonstrations and confrontations would be unavailing. While Kodak's buildings and administration were in Rochester, its real life was throughout its American and overseas markets. Demonstrations might be embarrassing and inconvenient, but they would not be the tactic to force an agreement. It wasn't Rochester that Eastman Kodak was concerned about. Their image in that community could always be sustained by sheer financial power. Their vulnerability was throughout the nation and overseas.

We then began looking for appropriate tactics. An economic boycott was rejected because of Kodak's overwhelming domination of the film-negative market. Thus a call for an economic boycott would be asking the American people to stop taking pictures, which obviously would not work as long as babies were being born, children were graduating, having birthday parties, getting married, going on picnics and so forth. The idea of boycott did evoke thoughts of checking out the Sherman Anti-Trust Act against them at some point. Other wild ideas were tossed about. [{footnote 2}](#)

The proxy idea first came up as a way to gain entrance to the annual stockholders' meeting for harassment and publicity, and again

accident and necessity played a part. I had recently accepted a number of invitations to address universities, religious conventions, and similar organizations in various parts of the United States. Why not talk to them about the Kodak-FIGHT battle and ask for proxies? Why not accept all speaking invitations even if it meant ninety consecutive days in ninety different places? It wouldn't cost us a penny. These places not only paid fees to my organization, but they also paid travel expenses.

And so it began with nothing specific in mind except to ask Eastman Kodak stockholders to assign their proxies to the Rochester black organization or come to the stockholders' meeting and vote in favor of FIGHT.

There was never any thought, then or now, of using proxies to gain economic power inside the corporation or to elect directors to the board. I couldn't be less interested in having a couple of directors elected to the board of Kodak or any other corporation. As long as the opposition has the majority, that's it. Also, boards of directors are only rubber stamps of management. With the exception of some management people "retired" to the board, the rest of them don't know which way is up.

The first real breakthrough followed my address to the National Unitarian Convention in Denver on May 3, 1967, in which I asked for and received the passage of a resolution that the proxies of their organization would be given to FIGHT. The reactions of the local politicians made me realize that senators and congressmen up for reelection would turn to their research directors and ask, "How many Unitarians have I got in my district?" The proxy tactic now began to look like a possible political bank-shot. Political leaders who saw their churches assigning proxies to us could see them assigning their votes as well. This meant political power. Kodak has money, but



money counts in elections for television time, newspaper ads, political workers, publicity, pay-offs and pressure. If this fails to get the vote, money is politically useless. It was obvious that politicians who would support us had everything to gain.

Proxies were now seen as proof of political intent if they came from large membership organizations. The church organizations had mass members—*voters!* It meant publicity and publicity meant pressure on political candidates and incumbents. We hoisted a banner with our slogan, "Keep your sermons; give us your proxies," and set sail into the sea of churches. I couldn't help noting the irony that churches, having sold their spiritual birthright in exchange for donations of stock, could now go straight again by giving their proxies to the poor.

The pressure began to build. My only concern was whether Kodak would get the message. Never before or since have I encountered an American corporation so politically insensitive. I wondered whether Kodak would have to be brought before a Senate subcommittee hearing before it would wake up and give in. The building of political support would have prepared the ground for two actions: (1) a Senate subcommittee hearing in which a number of practices would be exposed and (2) the possibility of an investigation by the Attorney-General's office. Kodak would reconsider dealing with us if those two were the alternatives. I had an understanding with the late Senator Robert Kennedy to advise him when we were ready to move. In my discussions with Kennedy, I found that his commitment was not political but human. He was outraged by the conditions in the Rochester ghetto.

I began looking over the national scene for avenues of attack. Foundations such as Ford, Rockefeller, Carnegie, and others with substantial investments, were ostensibly committed to social

progress. So were union retirement funds. I planned to ask them, "If you are on the level, then prove it at no cost to yourselves. We are not asking for a penny. Just assign us the proxies of the stock you hold." The effect of foundation proxies would, of course, be marginal since their proxies, unlike those of the churches, represented no constituencies. Even so, they were not to be dismissed.

Other ideas began to occur. This was a whole new ball game for me and my curiosity sent me scurrying and sniffing at the many opportunities in this great Wall Street Wonderland. I didn't know where I was going, but that was part of the fascination. I wasn't the least worried. I knew that accident or necessity or both would tell us, "Hey, we go this way." Since I didn't seem disturbed or confused everyone believed I had a secret and totally organized Machiavellian campaign. No one suspected the truth. The *Los Angeles Times* said:

...the Kodak proxy battle created waves throughout the corporate world. Heads of several large corporations and representatives of some mutual funds have tried to contact Alinsky to ferret out the rest of his plans. One corporation executive told a reporter, "When I asked him what he was going to do next he said he did not know. I do not believe that."

A reporter asked Alinsky what he is going to do next with the proxies. "I honestly do not know," he said. "Sure, I have plans, but you know that a thing like this opens up its own possibilities, things you never thought of. Man, we can have a ball, a real ball!"

This was all virgin territory. In the past a few individuals had gone to stockholders' meetings to sound off, but at best they were minor irritants. No one had ever organized a campaign to use proxies for social and political purposes.

The good old establishment made its usual contribution. Corporation executives sought me out. Their anxious questions convinced me that we had the razor to cut through the golden curtain that protected the so-called private sector from facing its public responsibilities. Business publications added their violent attacks and convinced me further. [{footnote 3}](#) In all my wars with the establishment I had never seen it so uptight. I knew there was dynamite in the proxy scare. But where? "Where" meant "how."

As I meandered around this jungle, looking for some kind of a power pattern, I began to notice things. Look! DuPont owns a nice piece of Kodak, and so does this and that corporation. And those mutual funds! They've got more than \$60 billion in stock investments and their holdings include Kodak. After all, mutual funds have annual meetings and proxies too. Suppose we had proxies in every corporation in America and suppose we were fighting Corporation X and suppose we also had proxies for the various corporations that had stock in Corporation X and proxies for other corporations that had stock in the corporations that had stock in Corporation X.

Soon I was intoxicated by the possibilities. You could begin to play the whole Wall Street Board up and down. You could go to, say, Corporation Z, point out your proxy holding there, mention that there were certain grievances you had against them for some of their bad policy operations, but that you were willing to forget about them (for the time being) if they would use their stock to put pressure on Corporation Q for the sake of influencing Corporation X. The same muscle could be applied to Corporation Q itself. You could make your deals up and down. Always operating in your favor was the self-interest of the corporations and the fact that they hate each other. This is what I would call corporate jujitsu.

Recently I was at a luncheon meeting with a number of presidents of major corporations where one of them expressed his fear that I saw things only in terms of power rather than from the point of view of good will and reason. I replied that when he and his corporation approached other corporations in terms of reason, good will, and cooperation, instead of going for the jugular, that would be the day that I would be happy to pursue the conversation. The subject was dropped.

Proxies represented a key to participation by the middle class. But the question was how to organize it. Imagination had had its moment. It was time for accident or necessity or both to come on stage. I found myself saying, "Accident, accident, where the hell are you?"

Then it came! The *Los Angeles Times* carried a front-page story on the proxy tactic. Soon we were deluged with mail, including sackfuls of proxies of different corporations. One letter read, "I have \$10,000 to invest. What kind of stock should I buy? What kind of proxies do you need? Should I buy Dow Chemical?" But the two most important letters provided the *accident* that pointed to the next step. "Enclosed find my proxies. I wonder whether you have heard from anyone else in my suburb? If you have, I would appreciate receiving their names and addresses so that I can call a housemeeting *{sic}* and organize a San Fernando Valley Chapter of Proxies for People." The second letter said, "I'm all for it but I don't know why you should have the right to decide which corporations should be attacked—after all, they are our proxies and we would like to have something to say about it. *Also, we don't know why you should go to the board meetings with our proxies —why can't we go with our proxies, of course all organized and knowing what we want, but we would like to go ourselves.*" [Emphasis added]

It was these two letters that kicked open the door. Of course! For years I had been saying power is with people! How stupid could I be? There it was! Instead of annual put-ons like Eastman Kodak's in Flemington, New Jersey, where the company buses down a dozen loads of stockholding payrollers to a public school auditorium—for a day off with pay and a free lunch (and a crummy one at that) they sing out their Sieg Heils and back to Rochester—let's make them hold their meetings in Newark or Jersey City in the ball park, or outdoors in Atlantic City, where thousands and thousands of proxy holders can attend. Yankee Stadium in New York or Soldier Field in Chicago would be better, but many of America's corporations are incorporated in special protective sanctuaries like New Jersey or Delaware and would claim that they must meet in these states. Well, President Nixon has set up the precedent for sanctuaries. Let's see what happens when Flemington, New Jersey, with its one beat-up hotel and two motels, faces an invasion of 50,000 stockholders. Will the state call out the National Guard to keep stockholders out of their annual meeting? Remember these are not hippies but American citizens in the most establishment sense—stockholders! What could be more American than that?

Let's imagine a situation in which 75,000 people vote "no" and one man says, "On behalf of the majority of the proxies assigned to management I vote 'aye' and the ayes have it." I would dare management to expose themselves in this way.

But the real importance of those letters was that they showed a way for the middle class to organize. These people, the vast majority of Americans, who feel helpless in the huge corporate economy, who don't know which way to turn, have begun to turn *away* from America, to abdicate as citizens. They rationalize their action by saying that, after all, the experts and the government will take care of it all. They are like the Have-Nots who, when unorganized and

powerless, simply resign themselves to a sad scene. Proxies can be the mechanism by which these people can organize, and once they are organized they will re-enter the life of politics. Once organized around proxies they will have a reason to examine, to become educated about, the various corporation policies and practices both domestic and foreign—because now they can do something about them.

There will even be "fringe benefits." Trips to stockholders' meetings will bring drama and adventure into otherwise colorless and sedentary suburban lives. Proxy organizations will help bridge the generation gap, as parents and children join in the battle against the Pentagon and the corporations.

Proxies can be the effective path to the Pentagon. The late General Douglas MacArthur in his farewell speech to the Congress uttered a half truth; "Old generals never die, they just fade away." General MacArthur should have completed his statement by saying "they fade away to Lockheed, Boeing, General Dynamics, and other corporations." Two years before retirement a general will be found already scouting and setting up his "fade-away" corporation sanctuary.

One can envisage the scene where a general informs a corporate executive that a \$50 million order will be coming to the corporation for the making of nerve gas, napalm, defoliants, or any other of the great products we export for the benefit of mankind. Instead of a reaction of gratitude and a "General, as soon as you retire we would like to talk to you about your future," he encounters a "Well, look, General, I appreciate your considering us for this contract but we've got a stockholders' meeting coming up next month and the hell that would blow when these thousands of stockholders heard about it—

well, General, I don't want to think about it. And we certainly couldn't keep it quiet. It's been very nice seeing you."

Now what has happened? First of all the general has suddenly realized that corporations are backing away from the whole war scene. Secondly, the fact that thousands of stockholders would be opposed to this becomes translated to him as thousands of American citizens, not long-hairs, not trouble-makers, not Reds, but 200 per cent bonafide Americans. One could begin to communicate with the unique (alleged) mentality of the Pentagon species.

What will be required is a computerized operation that will quickly give (1) a breakdown of the holdings of any corporation, (2) a breakdown of holdings of other corporations that own shares in the target corporation, and (3) a breakdown of individual stock proxies in the target corporation and in the corporations that have holdings in the target corporation. It will be necessary to keep the records of individuals' proxies confidential to protect people who would rather not let their neighbors know how many stocks they own.

There will be a nationwide organization, set up either by myself or others, with national headquarters in Chicago or New York City, or both. The New York office could handle all of the computerized operations; the Chicago office would serve as headquarters for a staff of organizers who would be constantly on the move through the various communities of America, from the San Fernando Valley to Baltimore, and all places in between. Responding to the interests and requests of local suburban groups, they would be using their skills to set up organization meetings and to train volunteer organizers to carry on. The staff organizers would approach each scene with only one thing in mind—to get a mass-based middle-class organization started. The proxy tactic will be common to all these groups, and each group will gather in any other issues around which people will

organize. They may start by setting up study groups on corporate policies; making recommendations as to the corporations which should be "communicated with" and electing one of theirs as a representative to a national board. The national board will be responsible for the decisions as to corporate targets, issues and policies. The various representatives on the national board will also be responsible for recruiting members of their own local organizations for attendance at annual stockholders' meetings. On this national board will also be representatives of all kinds of consumer organizations as well as churches and other institutions committed to this program. They will be able to contribute invaluable technical advice as well as the support of their own membership.

Remember that the objective of the proxies approach is not simply a power instrument with reference to our corporate economy, but a mechanism providing for a blast-off for middle-class organization—beginning with the proxy, it will then begin to ignite other rockets on the whole political scene from local elections to the congress. Once a people are organized they will keep moving from issue to issue. *People power is the real objective; the proxies are simply a means to that end.*

This total operation will require special fund-raising for the budget essential to the operation. There are many who are already volunteering time and money, but the fund-raising will be difficult since it is obvious that there will be no contributions from corporations or foundations —also, none of the contributions would be tax deductible.

Unquestionably corporations will fight back by pointing out to stockholders that prevention programs on pollution, the rejection of war contracts, or other demands of the stockholders will result in diminished dividends. By the time this occurs, the stockholders will



find such satisfaction and meaningfulness in their campaigns that these will be more important than a cut in dividends.

Corporations will change their contributions of stocks to universities. Already it is said that the University of Rochester's Kodak stock cannot be voted by the university, that the voting power is retained by Kodak management —and this presents an interesting legal question. These are some of the potentials and problems of the proxy operation on the American scene. It can mark the beginning of a whole new kind of campaign on campuses against university administrations through their stockholdings. On May 12, 1970, the Stanford University trustees voted their 24,000 shares of General Motors stock in favor of management, in disregard of Stanford's student proposals to use the stock proxies against management. The same at the University of California with 100,000 shares, the University of Michigan with 29,000 shares, the University of Texas for 66,000 shares, Harvard with 287,000 shares, and M.I.T. with 291,500 shares; the exceptions were the University of Pennsylvania and Antioch College, where their respective 29,000 and 1,000 shares were voted for a student-supported proposal.

Talk about a "relevant college curriculum"! What could be more educational than for students to begin to study American corporation policy, and to get involved at stockholders' meetings by means of university proxies? For years universities have without compunction gone in for what they call field research and action programs among the poor, but when it comes to research plus action among corporations, they tend to balk. I suggest that America's corporations are a spiritual slum, and their arrogance is the major threat to our future as a free society. There will and there should be a major struggle on the university campuses of this country on this issue.

If I go into this it means leaving the Industrial Areas Foundation after thirty years—the organization I built. What will probably happen will be that others will come forth to give full time to this campaign and that I would be with it full time for its launching and its setting out to sea. But if after what we have seen about the genesis of tactic proxy it is not clear that the genesis of Proxies for People is unpredictable, that it will develop by accidents, needs, and imagination, then both of us have wasted our time—me in recording all this and you in reading it.

Recently one of President Nixon's chief White House advisers told me, "Proxies for People would mean revolution—they'll never let you get away with it." I believe he is right that it "would mean revolution." It could mean the organization for power of a previously silent people. The way of proxy participation could mean the democratization of corporate America. It could result in the changing of their foreign operations, which would cause major shifts in national foreign policy. This could be one of the single most important breakthroughs in the revolutions of our times.

{footnote 1} Those involved in the Kodak-FIGHT battle knew that there was one issue—"Would Kodak or any other corporation recognize FIGHT as the bargaining agent for the black ghetto of Rochester, New York?" Once Kodak recognized FIGHT as representing the black ghetto, we could come to the table to negotiate on all other issues, including the employment of more blacks. Kodak's recognition of FIGHT would result in other corporations following suit and this would lead to other programs and other issues. Kodak's subsequent recognition of FIGHT caused Xerox to do the same and resulted in the launching of a black-owned and black-manned factory by FIGHT called FIGHTON in collaboration with the Xerox Corporation.

{footnote 2} *The National Observer*, July 17, 1967: "Civil-rights activists have devised a major new plan to bring pressure on some of the nation's biggest corporations, The National Observer learned last week. These activists plan to wage proxy battles—hoping to push management into providing more jobs for poor whites and Negroes. . . .

The Eastman Kodak case was the guidepost. It was not until the late-blooming proxy battle that Rochester's FIGHT made headway. Before the proxy fight, there were few ways in which pressure could be brought on the dominant international photography company.

"Eastman Kodak wasn't worried about what FIGHT could do, and I don't blame them,' Mr. Alinsky says. 'A boycott was out of the question. That would be like asking everyone to stop taking pictures. This called for a new kind of tactic, and we hit on one.

"We had all kinds of plans. We had heard that Queen Elizabeth owned Kodak stock. So we were considering throwing up a picket line around Buckingham Palace in London, and charging that the changing of the guard was a conspiracy to encourage picture-taking. But we didn't have time to follow this or a lot of other things up. If we have time to plan a campaign, it could be much more effective.'

"The thought of the Buckingham Palace picket line may seem ludicrous, but it is typical of Alinsky methods—attention-getting and outrageous to the point of amusement. His basic philosophy, as he has often stated, is that the poor, who lack the money or authority to challenge the 'power structure,' must use the only weapon they have at their command—people and publicity."

{footnote 3} *Barron's* National Business and Financial Weekly, May 1, 1967, "Who's Out of Focus?": ". . . Perhaps the most memorable event of the season occurred at Flemington, N.J., where Eastman Kodak Co. held its annual meeting on Tuesday . . . Perhaps by coincidence, in a generally strong market Eastman Kodak stock promptly dropped half-a-dozen points . . . Companies best serve their stockholders and communities by sticking to business . . . [Alinsky was described] by 'Muhammad Speaks,' house organ of the Black Muslims, as 'one of the world's great sociologists and criminologists'. . . For Kodak and the rest of U.S. industry, it's time to stop turning the other cheek . . . management is the steward of other people's property. It can never afford to forget where its primary obligations lie."

## *The Way Ahead*

ORGANIZATION FOR ACTION will now and in the decade ahead center upon America's white middle class. That is where the power is. When more than three-fourths of our people from both the point of view of economics and of their self-identification are middle class, it is obvious that their action or inaction will determine the direction of change. Large parts of the middle class, the "silent majority," must be activated; action and articulation are one, as are silence and surrender.

We are belatedly beginning to understand this, to know that even if all the low-income parts of our population were organized—all the blacks, Mexican-Americans, Puerto Ricans, Appalachian poor whites—if through some genius of organization they were all united in a coalition, it would not be powerful enough to get significant, basic, needed changes. It would have to do what all minority organizations, small nations, labor unions, political parties or anything small, must do—seek out allies. The pragmatics of power will not allow any alternative.

The only potential allies for America's poor would be in various organized sectors of the middle class. We have seen Cesar Chavez' migrant farm workers turn to the middle class with their grape boycott. In the fight against Eastman Kodak, the blacks of Rochester, New York, turned to the middle class and their proxies.

Activists and radicals, on and off our college campuses—people who are committed to change—must make a complete turnabout. With rare exceptions, our activists and radicals are products of and rebels against our middleclass society. All rebels must attack the power states in their society. Our rebels have contemptuously rejected the values and way of life of the middle class. They have stigmatized it as materialistic, decadent, bourgeois, degenerate, imperialistic, war-mongering, brutalized, and corrupt. They are right;

but we must begin from where we are if we are to build power for change, and the power and the people are in the big middle-class majority. Therefore, it is useless self-indulgence for an activist to put his past behind him. Instead, he should realize the priceless value of his middle-class experience. His middle-class identity, his familiarity with the values and problems, are invaluable for organization of his "own people." He has the background to go back, examine, and try to understand the middle-class way; now he has a compelling reason to know, for he must know if he is to organize. He must know so he can be effective in communication, tactics, creating issues and organization. He will look very differently upon his parents, their friends, and their way of life. Instead of the infantile dramatics of rejection, he will now begin to dissect and examine that way of life as he never has before. He will know that a "square" is no longer to be dismissed as such—instead, his own approach must be "square" enough to get the action started. Turning back to the middle class as an organizer, he will find that everything now has a different meaning and purpose. He learns to view actions outside of the experience of people as serving only to confuse and antagonize them. He begins to understand the differences in value definition of the older generation regarding "the privilege of college experience," and their current reaction to the tactics a sizeable minority of students uses in campus rebellions. He discovers what their definition of the police is, and their language—he discards the rhetoric that always says "pig." Instead of hostile rejection he is seeking bridges of communication and unity over the gaps, generation, value, or others. He will view with strategic sensitivity the nature of middle-class behavior with its hangups over rudeness or aggressive, insulting, profane actions. All this and more must be grasped and used to radicalize parts of the middle class

The rough category "middle class" can be broken down into three groups: lower middle class, with incomes from \$6,000 to \$11,000;

middle middle class, \$12,000 to \$20,000; and upper middle class, \$20,000 to \$35,000. There are marked cultural differences between the lower middle class and the rest of the middle class. In the lower middle class we encounter people who have struggled all their lives for what relatively little they have.

With a few exceptions, such as teachers, they have never gone beyond high school. They have been committed to the values of success, getting ahead, security, having their "own" home, auto, color TV, and friends. Their lives have been 90 per cent unfulfilled dreams. To escape their frustration they grasp at a last hope that their children will get that college education and realize those unfulfilled dreams. They are a fearful people, who feel threatened from all sides: the nightmare of pending retirement and old age with a Social Security decimated by inflation; the shadow of unemployment from a slumping economy, with blacks, already fearsome because the cultures conflict, threatening job competition; the high cost of long-term illness; and finally with mortgages outstanding, they dread the possibility of property devaluation from non-whites moving into their neighborhood. They are beset by taxes on incomes, food, real estate, and automobiles, at all levels—city, state, and national. Seduced by their values into installment buying, they find themselves barely able to meet long-term payments, let alone the current cost of living. Victimized by TV commercials with their fraudulent claims for food and medical products, they watch the news between the commercial with Senate committee hearings showing that the purchase of these products is largely a waste of their hard-earned money. Repeated financial crises result from accidents that they thought they were insured against only to experience the fine-print evasions of one of our most shocking confidence rackets of today, the insurance racket. Their pleasures are simple: gardening a tiny back yard behind a small house, bungalow, or ticky-tacky, in a monotonous subdivision on the fringe of suburbs; going on a Sunday

drive out to the country, having a once-a-week dinner out at some place like a Howard Johnson's. Many of the so-called hard hats, police, fire, sanitation workers, schoolteachers, and much of civil service, mechanics, electricians, janitors, and semiskilled workers are in this class.

They look at the unemployed poor as parasitical dependents, recipients of a vast variety of massive public programs all paid for by them, "the public." They see the poor going to colleges with the waiving of admission requirements and given special financial aid. In many cases the lower middle class were denied the opportunity of college by these very circumstances. Their bitterness is compounded by their also paying taxes for these colleges, for increased public services, fire, police, public health, and welfare. They hear the poor demanding welfare as "rights." To them this is insult on top of injury.

Seeking some meaning in life, they turn to an extreme chauvinism and become defenders of the "American" faith. Now they even develop rationalizations for a life of futility and frustration. "It's the Red menace!" Now they are not only the most vociferous in their espousal of law and order but ripe victims for such as demagogic George Wallace, the John Birch Society, and the Red-menace perennials.

Insecure in this fast-changing world, they cling to illusory fixed points—which are very real to them. Even conversation is charted toward fixing your position in the world: "I don't want to argue with you, just tell me what our flag means to you?" or "What do you think of those college punks who never worked a day in their lives?" They use revealing adjectives such as "outside agitators" or "troublemakers" and other "When did you last beat your wife?" questions.

On the other side they see the middle middle class and the upper middle class assuming a liberal, democratic, holier-than-thou position, and attacking the bigotry of the employed poor. They see that through all kinds of tax-evasion devices the middle middle and upper middle can elude their share of the tax burdens—so that most of it comes back (as they see it) upon themselves, the lower middle class.

They see a United States Senate in which approximately one-third are millionaires and the rest with rare exception very wealthy. The bill requiring full public disclosure of senators' financial interests and prophetically titled Senate Bill 1993 (which is probably the year it will finally be passed) is "in committee," they see, and then they say to themselves, "The government represents the upper class but not us."

Many of the lower middle class are members of labor unions, churches, bowling clubs, fraternal, service, and nationality organizations. They are organizations and people that must be worked with as one would work with any other part of our population—with respect, understanding, and sympathy.

To reject them is to lose them by default. They will not shrivel and disappear. You can't switch channels and get rid of them. This is what you have been doing in your radicalized dream world but they are here and will be. If we don't win them Wallace or Spiro T. Nixon will. Never doubt it that the voice may be Agnew's but the words, the vindictive smearing, is Nixon's. There never was a vice-president who didn't either faithfully serve as his superior's faithful sounding board or else be silent.

Remember that even if you cannot win over the lower middle-class, at least parts of them must be persuaded to where there is at least



communication, then to a series of partial agreements and a willingness to abstain from hard opposition as changes take place. They have their role to play in the essential prelude of reformation, in their acceptance that the ways of the past with its promises for the future no longer work and we must move ahead—where we move to may not be definite or certain, but move we must.

People must be "reformed"—so they cannot be deformed into dependency and driven through desperation to dictatorship and the death of freedom. The "silent majority," now, are hurt, bitter, suspicious, feeling rejected and at bay. This sick condition in many ways is as explosive as the current race crisis. Their fears and frustrations at their helplessness are mounting to a point of a political paranoia which can demonize people to turn to the law of survival in the narrowest sense. These emotions can go either to the far right of totalitarianism or forward to Act II of the American Revolution.

The issues of 1972 would be those of 1776, "No Taxation Without Representation." To have real representation would involve public funds being available for campaign costs so that the members of the lower middle class can campaign for political office. This can be an issue for mobilization among the lower middle class and substantial sectors of the middle middle class.

The rest of the middle class, with few exceptions, reside in suburbia, living in illusions of partial escape. Being more literate, they are even more lost. Nothing seems to make sense. They thought that a split-level house in the suburbs, two cars, two color TVs, country club membership, a bank account, children in good prep schools and then in college, and they had it made. They got it—only to discover that they didn't have it. Many have lost their children—they dropped out of sight into something called the generation gap. They have seen values they held sacred sneered at and found themselves ridiculed as

squares or relics of a dead world. The frenetic scene around them is so bewildering as to induce them to either drop out into a private world, the nonexistent past, sick with its own form of social schizophrenia—or to face it and move into action. If one wants to act, the dilemma is how and where; there is no "when?" with time running out, the time is obviously now.

There are enormous basic changes ahead. We cannot continue or last in the nihilistic absurdities of our time where nothing we do makes sense. The scene around us compels us to look away quickly, if we are to cling to any sanity. We are the age of pollution, progressively burying ourselves in our own waste. We announce that our water is contaminated by our own excrement, insecticides, and detergents, and then do nothing. Even a half-witted people, if sane, would long since have done the simple and obvious—ban all detergents, develop new non-polluting insecticides, and immediately build waste-disposal units. Apparently we would rather be corpses in clean shirts. We prefer a strangling ring of dirty air to a "ring around the collar." Until the last, well be buried in bright white shirts. Our persistent use of our present insecticides may well ensure that the insects shall inherit the world.

Of all the pollution around us, none compares to the political pollution of the Pentagon. From a Vietnam war simultaneously suicidal and murderous to a policy of getting out by getting in deeper and wider, to the Pentagon reports that strained even a moron's intelligence that within the next six months the war would be "won," to destroying more bridges in North Vietnam than there are in the world, to counting and reporting the enemy dead from helicopters, "Okay, Joe, we've been here for fifteen minutes; let's go back and call it 150 dead," to brutalizing our younger generation with My Lais but ignoring our own principles of the Nuremberg trials, to putting our soldiers in conditions so conducive to drugs that we stand forth as

freedom's liberating force of pot. This Pentagon, whose economic waste and corruption is bankrupting our nation morally as well as economically, allows Lockheed Aircraft to put one-fourth of its production in the small Georgia country town of the late Senator Russell (a powerful man in military appropriation decisions), and then transmits its appeals for federal millions to save it from its financial fiascos. Far worse is the situation in the late Representative Mendel Rivers' congressional district—he of the House Military Affairs Committee—with the phenomenal pay-offs of every kind of installation from corporations vying for Pentagon gold. Even our solid-state mental vice-president described it in a way he thought was amusing but is tragic beyond belief to any freedom loving American.

... Vice President Agnew praised Mr. Rivers for his "willingness to go to bat for the so-called and often discredited military industrial complex" as 1,150 generals, Congressmen and defense contractors applauded in the ballroom of the Washington Hilton Hotel.

... Mr. Agnew said he wanted "to lay to rest the ugly, vicious, dastardly rumor" that Mr. Rivers, whose Charleston, S.C., district is chock full of military installations, "is trying to move the Pentagon piecemeal to South Carolina.

"Even when it appeared Charleston might sink into the sea from the burden," said the Vice President, Mr. Rivers' response was, "I regret that I have but one Congressional District to my country to—I mean to give to my country."

—*New York Times*, August 13, 1970

This is the Pentagon that has manufactured nearly 16,000 tons of nerve gas, why and what for being unclear except to overkill the overkill. No one has raised the questions, who got the contracts?

what *{sic}* it cost? where *{sic}* the pay-offs went? Now the big question is how to dispose of it as it deteriorates and threatens to get loose among us. The Pentagon announces that the sinking of the nerve gas is safe *but from now on they will find a safe way!* The obvious American way of assuming personal responsibility for one's action is utterly ignored—otherwise, since the Pentagon made it, it should keep it, and have it all stored in the basements of the Pentagon; or, since the President as Commander-in-Chief of our armed forces believed that the sinking in the ocean of the 67 tons of nerve gas was so safe, why didn't he attest to his belief by having it dumped into the waters off San Clemente, California? Either action would at least have given some hope for the nation's future.

The record goes on without any deviations toward sanity. The army chose the final day of hearings of the President's Commission investigating the National Guard killings at Kent State, to announce that M-16 rifles would now be issued to the National Guard. The President's Commission report is doomed not to be read until after the bowl games on New Year's Day by a President who watches football on TV the afternoon of the biggest march in history on Washington, Moratorium Day. There are our generals and their "scientific" gremlins who after assurance of no radioactive menace from the atomic tests in Nevada now more than a dozen years later have sealed off 250 square miles as "contaminated with poisonous and radioactive plutonium 239." (*New York Times*, August 21, 1970.) This from the explosions in 1958! Will the "safe" disposition in 1970 of the nerve gas still be as "safe" a dozen or less years from now? One can only wonder how they will seal off some 250 miles in the Atlantic Ocean. We can assume that these same "scientific" gremlins will be assigned to the disposition of the thousands of tons of additional stockpiled nerve gas of which approximately 15,000 tons are on Okinawa and to be moved to some other island.

Compound this with a daily record of now we are in Cambodia, now we are out, now we are not in it just over it with our bombers, we will not get involved there as in Vietnam but we can't get out of Vietnam without safeguarding Cambodia, we're doing this but really the other, with no other clue to all this madness except the half-helpful comment from the White House, "Don't listen to what we say, just watch what we do," half-helpful only because either statements or actions are sufficient to make us freeze into bewilderment and stunned disbelief. It is in such times that we are haunted by the old maxim, "Those whom the gods would destroy, they first make ludicrous."

The middle classes are numb, bewildered, scared into silence. They don't know what, if anything, they can do. This is the job for today's radical—to fan the embers of hopelessness into a flame to fight. To say, "You cannot cop out as have many of my generation!" "You cannot turn away—look at it—let us change it together!" "Look at us. We are your children. Let us not abandon each other for then we are all lost. Together we can change it for what we want. Let's start here and there—let's go!"

It is a job first of bringing hope and doing what every organizer must do with all people, all classes, places, and times—communicate the means or tactics whereby the people can feel that they have the power to do this and that and on. To a great extent the middle class of today feels more defeated and lost than do our poor.

So you return to the suburban scene of your middle class with its variety of organizations from PTAs to League of Women Voters, consumer groups, churches, and clubs. The job is to search out the leaders in these various activities, identify their major issues, find areas of common agreement, and excite their imagination with tactics

that can introduce drama and adventure into the tedium of middle-class life.

Tactics must begin within the experience of the middle class, accepting their aversion to rudeness, vulgarity, and conflict. Start them easy, don't *scare* them off. The opposition's reactions will provide the "education" or radicalization of the middle class. It does it every time. Tactics here, as already described, will develop in the flow of action and reaction. The chance for organization for action on pollution, inflation, Vietnam, violence, race, taxes, and other issues, is all about us. Tactics such as stock proxies and others are waiting to be hurled into the attack.

The revolution must manifest itself in the corporate sector by the corporations' realistic appraisal of conditions in the nation. The corporations must forget their nonsense about "private sectors." It is not just that government contracts and subsidies have long since blurred the line between public and private sectors, but that every American individual or corporation is public as well as private; public in that we are Americans and concerned about our national welfare. We have a double commitment and corporations had better recognize this for the sake of their own survival. Poverty, discrimination, disease, crime—everything is as much a concern of the corporation as is profits. The days when corporate public relations worked to keep the corporation out of controversy, days of playing it safe, of not offending Democratic or Republican customers, advertisers or associates—those days are done. If the same predatory drives for profits can be partially transmuted for progress, then we will have opened a whole new ball game. I suggest here that this new policy will give its executives a reason for what they are doing—a chance for a meaningful life.

A major battle will be pitched on quality and prices of consumer goods, targeting particularly on the massive misleading advertising campaigns, the costs of which are passed on to the consumer. It will be the people against Madison Avenue or "The Battle of Bunkum Hill."

Any timetable would be speculation but the writing of middle-class organization had better be on the walls by 1972.

The human cry of the second revolution is one for a meaning, a purpose for life—a cause to live for and if need be die for. Tom Paine's words, "These are the times that try men's souls," are more relevant to Part II of the American Revolution than the beginning. This is literally the revolution of the soul.

The great American dream that reached out to the stars has been lost to the stripes. We have forgotten where we came from, we don't know where we are, and we fear where we may be going. Afraid, we turn from the glorious adventure of the pursuit of happiness to a pursuit of an illusionary security in an ordered, stratified, striped society. Our way of life is symbolized to the world by the stripes of military force. At home we have made a mockery of being our brother's keeper by being his jail keeper. When Americans can no longer see the stars, the times are tragic. We must believe that it is the darkness before the dawn of a beautiful new world; we will see it when we believe it.

## **ABOUT THE AUTHOR**

Saul Alinsky was born in Chicago in 1909, and educated first in the streets of that city and then in its university. Graduate work at the

University of Chicago in criminology introduced him to the Capone gang, and later to Joliet State Prison, where he studied prison life.

He founded what is known today as the Alinsky ideology and Alinsky concepts of mass organization for power. His work in organizing the poor to fight for their rights as citizens has been internationally recognized. In the late 1930's he organized the Back of the Yards area in Chicago (Upton Sinclair's *Jungle*). Subsequently, through the Industrial Areas Foundation which he began in 1940, Mr. Alinsky and his staff have helped to organize communities not only in Chicago but throughout the country from the black ghetto of Rochester, New York, to the Mexican American barrios of California. Today Mr. Alinsky's organizing attention has turned to the middle class, and he and his associates have a Training Institute for organizers. Mr. Alinsky's early organizing efforts resulted in his being arrested and jailed from time to time, and it was on such occasions that he wrote most of *Reveille for Radicals*.

He died in 1972.



# THE RED PILL HANDBOOK

# The Red Pill Handbook

A collection of posts, articles, and links from  
<https://www.reddit.com/r/theredpill>

2<sup>nd</sup> Edition

# Table of Contents

<a href="#">Introduction</a>	5
- <a href="#">Introduction</a>	6
- <a href="#">The Basics Explained</a>	10
- <a href="#">Red Pill Antibiotic Nuke, Come and Feed</a>	16
- <a href="#">What Is The Red Pill And Why Does It Exist?</a>	23
- <a href="#">An Evolutionary Perspective on The Red Pill</a>	25
<a href="#">A Comprehensive Guide to The Red Pill</a>	26
- <a href="#">All-in-One Red Pill 101</a>	27
- <a href="#">1. Introduction</a>	28
- <a href="#">2. Keep It Stupid Simple (KISS)</a>	29
- <a href="#">3. Desires</a>	30
- <a href="#">4. The Red Pill</a>	31
- <a href="#">5. The Sexual Marketplace</a>	38
- <a href="#">6. Improving Sexual Market Value (SMV)</a>	41
- <a href="#">The Five Stages of Red Pill</a>	55
<a href="#">The Red Pill and Society</a>	57
- <a href="#">What Is With All The Hate On TRP?</a>	58
- <a href="#">Why Do You Think This Subreddit Is So Hated On Reddit?</a>	61
- <a href="#">Excuse Me. Why Does Everyone Assume You Guys Are Abusive Assholes?</a>	66
- <a href="#">Deconstructing: EMSK Why "The Red Pill" Will Kill You Inside</a>	71
- <a href="#">Feminists are Losing The Debate Online</a>	83
<a href="#">The Red Pill, Self-Improvement, and Masculinity</a>	87
- <a href="#">How You Know You're Alpha</a>	88
- <a href="#">Abundance Mentality (Alpha) vs. Scarcity Mentality (Beta)</a>	92
- <a href="#">The Easiest Way To Raise Your Value As A Man</a>	94
- <a href="#">So You Want To Be A Man? Welcome To Life On Hard Mode</a>	96
- <a href="#">You Are Disposable. The World Does Not Care About You.</a>	99
- <a href="#">Respect is Earned</a>	101
- <a href="#">My Stance On Women</a>	109
- <a href="#">Male Bonding, Arousal Addiction, and Isolation</a>	113
- <a href="#">Feminism and the Death of the Male Mentor</a>	119
- <a href="#">An Overview of Powertalk</a>	122
- <a href="#">Do Not Let Negativity Consume You</a>	128
- <a href="#">Being a Man is a Lonely Business (Endure)</a>	132
- <a href="#">5 Misconceptions of MGTOW</a>	136
<a href="#">Guides to Success in Self-Improvement</a>	141
- <a href="#">A 7 Step Guide To Swallowing The Pill</a>	142
- <a href="#">Focus On You First. And Second. And Third. And...Blah Blah...Worry About Women Seventh</a>	147
- <a href="#">Goals: A Quick Guide On How To Attain Them</a>	151

- <a href="#">Let's Do Money</a>	155
- <a href="#">Dealing With Loneliness As You Work Toward Becoming A Top 10% Man</a>	160
<a href="#">The Red Pill, Dating, and Relationships</a>	165
<a href="#">General Sexual Marketplace Theory</a>	166
- <a href="#">Briffault's Law</a>	167
- <a href="#">Men Are Not Happy</a>	168
- <a href="#">The Unbalanced Sexual Marketplace</a>	171
- <a href="#">The Red Pill is Pro-Woman</a>	175
- <a href="#">Being Controlling is for Losers!</a>	179
- <a href="#">Is Your Girlfriend Cheating On You With Her Guy-Friends?</a>	182
- <a href="#">Society Likes To Ignore A Woman's Past Sexual Behavior When Judging Her Character. Don't Fall Into This Trap</a>	185
- <a href="#">Love is Irrational</a>	189
- <a href="#">The Redefinition of Marriage</a>	193
<a href="#">Observations on Gender Behaviour</a>	197
- <a href="#">The Red Pill Is Even Tougher To Swallow For Girls</a>	198
- <a href="#">"Why Would That Matter? I'm The Girl"</a>	202
- <a href="#">New Members, This Is Fundamental</a>	203
- <a href="#">She Doesn't Love You</a>	205
- <a href="#">Women Don't Give a Fuck About Your "Feelings"</a>	207
- <a href="#">"I've Been Hurt in the Past"</a>	209
- <a href="#">A Red Pill Take On "Why Is Men Feeling Entitled To Sex Is Being Discussed While Women Feeling Entitled To Friendship is Not?"</a>	212
- <a href="#">The Female Imperative</a>	218
- <a href="#">Why Girls Get Over Guys Quicker</a>	220
- <a href="#">Why Women Like Unemotional Men</a>	225
- <a href="#">Why Women Love Assholes (An Alternate View)</a>	231
- <a href="#">12 Irresistible Bad Boy Traits Women Crave</a>	233
- <a href="#">She's Going To Get Away With Whatever She Wants. Accept It. Stop Caring.</a>	235
- <a href="#">Lying About Sexual Partners</a>	237
- <a href="#">How To Know You Are Dating A Slut. Source: I Married One</a>	240
- <a href="#">A Woman Cannot Tell You How You Must Proceed. She Can Only Tell You What She Wants To Experience</a>	244
- <a href="#">Women are Incapable of Change</a>	247
- <a href="#">I've Become Too Critical Of Girls</a>	252
- <a href="#">I Don't Hate Women, I Just Don't Respect Them...</a>	255
- <a href="#">Women Want A Wedding, Not A Marriage</a>	260
- <a href="#">The Modern Woman's Sexual Strategy</a>	261
- <a href="#">Another Take On Why TRP Is Loathed By Women: AF/BB Has To Be A Secret.</a>	265
<a href="#">Dating and Relationships</a>	268
- <a href="#">The Two Most Powerful Weapons In A Man's Relationship Arsenal: Stepping Out, And Walking Away.</a>	269
- <a href="#">The Most Unattractive Trait Of All: Trying To Attract A Woman</a>	270
- <a href="#">Red Pill vs. Blue Pill Dating Behaviour</a>	273

- <a href="#">You Only Want Me for Sex!</a>	276
- <a href="#">Refusing The Gift</a>	280
- <a href="#">You're The Island, And She's The Seagull</a>	284
- <a href="#">Don't Just Make Her Do What You Want. Make Her Want To</a>	286
- <a href="#">Every Man Must Always Follow The Rule</a>	289
- <a href="#">Be a Closed Book</a>	292
- <a href="#">Never Date A Woman Who Won't Do Sexual Things With You That She Did With Her Other Partners</a>	295
- <a href="#">Treat Women Like Children</a>	296
- <a href="#">Be A Good Person If You Want But It Won't Attract Women</a>	301
- <a href="#">Men Opting Out of The Sexual Marketplace</a>	304
<a href="#">Guides to Success in Dating and Relationships</a>	310
- <a href="#">Guide to Social Game</a>	311
- <a href="#">A List of Relationship Green Flags</a>	316
- <a href="#">"Take My Breath Away"</a>	318
- <a href="#">The Definitive Guide To Shit Tests</a>	320
- <a href="#">Be Selfish, Dismissive, Amused, And Communicate Less - The Keys To Success</a>	323
- <a href="#">The Eight Rules of Fatherhood</a>	327
<a href="#">Red Pill Stories and Experiences</a>	330
- <a href="#">I Think I Broke Her...</a>	331
- <a href="#">Shit Tests Cause Me to Lose Interest in Women</a>	332
- <a href="#">Why I'm Afraid of Marriage</a>	334
- <a href="#">Learn From Me: 40 Years Old, 3 Kids, Divorced</a>	337
- <a href="#">I Was Divorce Raped. Don't Be Me</a>	343
- <a href="#">Don't Be Like Bruce</a>	349
<a href="#">Quotes and Highlighted Comments</a>	352
- <a href="#">A Collection of TRP Gold from the Comments</a>	353
- <a href="#">Another Collection of TRP Gold from the Comments</a>	389
- <a href="#">Legendary Quotes from TRP</a>	403
<a href="#">Resources</a>	405
- <a href="#">Glossary</a>	406
<a href="#">Further Reading</a>	414
- <a href="#">Required Reading</a>	415
- <a href="#">List of Websites</a>	416
- <a href="#">Articles</a>	417
- <a href="#">Books</a>	420
- <a href="#">Thank You</a>	423
- <a href="#">Publication History</a>	424

# Introduction

## Introduction

*By pk\_athiest.*

[Article link.](#)

Greetings, everybody. Welcome to The Red Pill. We've got almost a hundred subscribers, in exactly two weeks! This is incredible.

Why have we grown so quickly?

Because there's truth in The Red Pill. Because men are realizing that the sexual marketplace has shifted away from what we've been taught. Men who grew up over thirty years ago are discovering the world has changed. Men who are still growing up- from the 80s, 90s, and even the last decade, they're starting to realize that what their parents taught them, what television and chick flicks taught them, what church and Sunday school taught them... it's all wrong.

Our culture has become a feminist culture. A president cannot be elected today without succumbing to the feminist narrative and paying them tribute. How many times has Obama given credit for his manhood to his wife? How many times has the debate hinged on women's pay gap - which is a myth that gets lip service because if you don't you're a misogynist!

I'm not here to parade the concepts of Men's Rights- nor am I here to discuss self-improvement tips that [/r/seduction](#) now purports are to make you a better man, not get laid more often.

I am here to say, for better or for worse, the frame around public discourse is a feminist frame, and we've lost our identity because of it.

But this isn't the end of the world. The world is changing, but men are still part of it. We just need to make sure we're changing with it.

It's too easy to blame feminism for our troubles.

Men, our happiness is our responsibility. Culture has always shifted, it's dynamic and fluid. It has never and will never stay still.

Feminism was inevitable. Equal rights are something I strongly am in support of. For men and women.

Women have the right to pursue happiness. Nobody should tell them otherwise. Maximizing happiness is the goal of every living creature on this planet.

Men, we need to recognize that since women are rightfully seeking out happiness, evolutionary psychology is more relevant today than ever in the past century (and possibly longer). We no longer run the show. And I, for one, don't disagree that marriage had to change if we were to see equal rights.

But now it's time to get serious and realize that our strategy needs to change. Feminism is a sexual strategy. It puts women into the best position they can find, to select mates, to determine when they want to switch mates, to locate the best DNA possible, and to garner the most resources they can individually achieve.

The Red Pill is men's sexual strategy. Reality is happening, and we need to make sure that we adjust our strategy accordingly.

Welcome to The Red Pill. It's a difficult pill to swallow, understanding that everything you were taught, everything you were lead to believe is a lie. But once you learn it, internalize it, and start living your new life, it gets better.

As an introduction to the topic, I want to outline what our focus is here at [/r/theredpill](https://www.reddit.com/r/theredpill).



## Mastering Game

Game is an important portion of a sexual strategy. A lot of you probably came here from [/r/seduction](#) and are probably wondering why we'd need a new subreddit if one dedicated to game already exists. The reason is simple: Game is a facet of The Red Pill's sexual strategy. Determining good game is impossible to do so without first understanding the context given by The Red Pill's framework. Something I keep seeing over on the seduction subreddit is a problem taking over most relationship and sex forums: the desire to feminize the discussion (basically making it sound politically correct if read by a female).

Yes, game got a bad reputation from girls who demonize manipulation. This is because game is an effective strategy against their own sexual strategy. I believe women's opposition to game can be attributed to the unconscious factors in women's sexual strategy (Please do read [Schedules of Mating](#)).

When women started becoming vocal about their opposition to game, that's when men decided it would be necessary to make game more politically correct. "Oh, we're not here to manipulate women to have sex with us- we're here to become better men!"

And thus, the female imperative took over game. When men think they must define their own sexual strategy in a way that best delivers results to the female sexual strategy, you know your own strategy will suffer! In a game of chess, do I politely not take out the oppositions' queen in hopes not to offend or win the game?

## Defining the Strategy

Because of the necessity to have good game, we must define what good game is. A large portion of Red Pill discussion revolves around evolutionary psychology. Understanding the facets of this psychology are key to developing a good sexual strategy. Because this strategy is useful not only in gaining the attention of the

opposite sex, but continuing relationships, having children, and maximizing your own happiness throughout life, I'm going to argue that defining the strategy outside of just "good game" is an important facet of Red Pill discussion.

### **Acknowledging Reality**

Finally, I think our focus should always remain on ensuring that we challenge the reality we perceive and discuss precisely and objectively whether or not our beliefs line up with the testable results we can replicate. I am a firm believer that potential success can only be maximized by maximizing your knowledge of the factors surrounding your success. Keeping your eyes closed and ignoring evidence and facts will not benefit you. Opening your eyes and acknowledging everything no matter how good, bad, or painful it may seem, is instrumental in making decisions that will lead to the happiest, most successful outcomes.

# The Basics Explained

*By SoftHarem.*

[Article link.](#)

Well folks, as 2013 wraps up this has been a helluva ride. Our little experiment that [/u/pk\\_atheist](#) put together has grown to 28,000 members in a little over a year with no sign of slowing down, and easily one of the most active subs on all of Reddit for its size. Most of us had nowhere to go. We knew the popular social narrative regarding dating was horseshit, but every time we said anything about it we were met with vitriol and shaming tactics trying to keep us in line like good little drones. A few of us got ourselves banned from every major gender based sub and decided enough was enough. Enter [/r/TheRedPill](#)

While you're all nursing hangovers I wanted to take a minute to discuss our philosophy as a whole, and the direction we want to take for 2014. Just as Reddit is the "front page of the internet" [/r/TheRedPill](#) has become a major "front page of the manosphere" We are now a major hub for all manosphere related activity. Every single prominent blogger is linked here, browses here, and has done an [AMA](#). We have an extremely active community and it is only going to get bigger. As that happens the mod staff refuses to let our signal weaken. We will not have our message softened by anyone.

## What is The Red Pill?

A loose and highly debated collection of frameworks that describe sexual dynamics between men and women. In short, it is purely information. What each person decides to do with this information is up to them. Remember, sexual strategy is amoral. You decide what you want to do and how you want to go about

doing it. You are responsible for your overall happiness, and all consequences of your actions. We're here to provide and discuss the framework.

### **What is a sexual strategy?**

Simply put, it is being honest with yourself about what you want from the opposite sex and putting together a realistic plan to go after it. For our purposes this is broken down into three main groups: MGTOW, Plate spinning, and Girlfriend game.

#### *MGTOW*

Taken from: <http://www.mgtow.com/>

- Level 1: Situational awareness. This level includes men who are aware of the realities that face them in society, and yet deem the risks acceptable to have a go at playing the game...
- Level 2: Rejection of long-term relationships. Man who rejects all form of long-term personal relationships with women, including but not limited to marriage, cohabitation of any sort which might be classified as common-law marriage, picking up for a single mother's children, or any action which might be used in court to turn him into her legal indentured servant...
- Level 3: Rejection of short-term relationships. Man who rejects all form of personal relationships with women, including dating, one-night stands, friendships, etc. Any contact with unfamiliar women is kept strictly professional and at a minimum...
- Level 4: Economic disengagement. Man who refuses to produce more than is strictly necessary for his individual survival. He will limit actions that are punished by taxation without jeopardizing his way of life and acceptable standard of living...

Obviously Level 1 is great, and something we here at TRP agree with, but

everything after that is debatable. Level 2 does not include relationships, which are a valid sexual strategy, and Level 3 does not include Plates, also a valid sexual strategy. If you can find happiness within this framework, knock yourself out, but the meat of TRP will be focusing on Plates/Girlfriend game. Being the pragmatic bunch we are at TRP I honestly want to thank all of you MGTOW out there. By opting out of dating and society altogether you help drive down the value of pussy by no longer validating women, and you're less competition for those of us who pursue one of the other two strategies. Blaze a trail, gentlemen.

### *Plate spinning*

Otherwise known as a "Soft Harem" and a personal favorite of mine. This is basically "dating" multiple women at once without commitment. Most of us here will tell you flat out that honesty is the best policy. Let the women know you are not available for exclusivity now, or at any point in the future. TRP does not condone cheating or lying to women. If you tell a woman you're exclusive and then fuck around on her I have no problem calling you a shithead. Don't do that, it creates feminists and other terrible types of women.

<http://therationalmale.com/?s=plate>

Start at "Plate Theory" and work your way up. This is a gold mine for how to spin up your own Soft Harem. You'll have to master game and have your frame locked up real tight because this is trial by fire. Always entertaining, rather exhausting, but if you play it just right you can find short and sometimes long term happiness.

### *Girlfriend game*

Not exactly something we're known for, but I think there is enough demand that it is relevant. Women worth giving your commitment to are rare. So rare in fact we call them Unicorns, and you can consider this TRP on hard mode. Maintaining

attraction and frame for one night isn't that hard once you've had some success and internalized game. Maintaining it throughout the course of a long term relationship is another beast altogether. This is content we haven't discussed much in the past so we are looking to the community to drive it. If it is something you're interested in start making theory posts. Mate selection, maintaining frame, Captain/First Mate dynamics, etc. We aim to be the premiere hub for all things RP related, and ignoring relationships because they aren't "True RP" is ignorant. Which leads us into the next section...

## **Straw Red Pill**

This is when RP theories become caricatures of themselves. "Bitter friendzoned neckbeard MGTOW" or "Sociopath Patrick Bateman Dark Triad alpha bro" Now, normally I'd quote GoT "Lions, sheep, etc." but we need to avoid doing this to ourselves regardless of what outsiders think. The RP community is small, and we seem to only want to divide ourselves further over which sexual strategy is the "best." Personally, I think this is fucking dumb. The career players call the guys who want a girlfriend "still beta," while the MGTOW call the players "slaves to pussy." Its all bullshit and it needs to stop. Your strategy is your own to decide, and that doesn't make it objectively better than any of the others. Here in TRP our community is built of ALL THREE sexual strategies. If you don't want to support all three then head on over to the Roosh, MMSL, or MGTOW forums so you can join in on the masturbatory nonsense.

RPS also had a good point about Alpha and Beta. Guys, listen, they aren't binary, they are spectrums, and all of us have both.

[http://www.reddit.com/r/TheRedPill/comments/1r52pe/a\\_note\\_on\\_real\\_alphas/](http://www.reddit.com/r/TheRedPill/comments/1r52pe/a_note_on_real_alphas/)

"Occasionally I see conversations regarding "real alpha" comparing two users in a similar context to:

"You're not a real alpha. A real alpha does this.."

"I am a real alpha.. I do this!"

"This board has been invaded by betas!"

Just wanted to make a note that this is basically stupid and for fucks sake drop that shit.

Stop labelling each other alphas and betas, they're terms we use to classify particular behaviors and help demonstrate good versus bad behavior. Nobody is intrinsically an "alpha," some people just have more alpha traits than others. Stick to constructive criticism and drop the stupid out-alpha talk. It's not reddit folks, this conversation has become a caricature of itself.

If somebody is making stupid mistakes, correct them, but don't get into a stupid fight about who's alpha and who isn't.

Furthermore, of course there are people with beta tendencies here. How the fuck do you expect them to learn?

And a note to people who are new here or have overwhelmingly beta traits and don't get it: lurk a bit. Pay special attention to Endorsed Contributors. If you keep giving terrible advice when you don't know jack shit, I might just make a new user flair: Continuous Blue Balls or something."

## **2014**

It will be business as usual except on a bigger scale. You will see a few new additions to the moderator staff in the very near future, as well as more emphasis on specific sexual strategy discussion. We're big enough and have enough moderation that the pathetic radfem trolls do not even make a dent anymore. RPS has been kind enough to start working on "Plate" and "Girlfriend/LTR game" link flair to help categorize the new content.

We're the boggieman of Reddit, and I like that infamy, but when new people show up and actually stay for a minute I want us to be the authority on all things related to sexual strategy. Help us really flesh out these concepts and maintain our position as a major hub of the manosphere.

Do work.



# Red Pill Antibiotic Nuke, Come and Feed

*By IllimitableMan.*

[Article link.](#)

This post contains a lot of generalisations which embody fundamental beliefs of the Red Pill philosophy, this list is extensive but not exhaustive. These are bullet points and thus there is not a case study for every point made and there is not necessarily an explanation given with each bullet point. This is because this information has been designed to be snappy and easy to absorb, not an academic dissertation on each belief and concept shared. Think of it as something of a partial codification of many different RP beliefs.

- Feminists claim they want equality but what they really want is power without responsibility. They desire both male and female privilege consolidated into one, thus upsetting the gender balance. They want the privileges of being women (privilege such as being economically provided for, getting opportunities based on their beauty and protection from physical harm by others) as well as male privilege (authority, respect for having a career, to not be judged so harshly based on appearance etc) which is neither pragmatic nor realistic, it ignores the biological basis for how the genders perceive each other in the ignorance that "everything is a social construct!" and we are mostly "the same" when quite evidently this is not the case.
- Women are irrational and inconsistent, they have a capacity for logic but it is not their modus operandi, that is to say that they must exert effort to be logical as it is not their factory setting. A logical woman is easily baited into becoming emotional; women are easy to compromise. Their decisions are based on their current emotional state rather than the abstraction of logic. It's this proclivity to change so quickly which causes them to act inconsistently and in contradiction.

- Women are Machiavellian in nature, this means they are comparatively proficient at being manipulative versus the typical male. The evolutionary theoretical basis for this is due to smaller size and inferior musculature women had to learn to use men as tools rather than directly oppose them in a physical conflict (as they would undoubtedly lose in all but very few scenarios) this makes the pronunciation of their strength a propensity to be mentally violent rather than to be physically violent. Physical violence is outlawed whereas mental abuse is not, this allows women to get their way without being held accountable by a system of law, the law does not legislate interpersonal morality to this extent. Where a man's instinct is to hit, a woman's is to do a big shit in your mind instead.
- Race does not matter if you are rich. A lot of you are small-minded and stuck on the superficial, white-black-arab-indian-asian whatever, you have a certain perception of the world based upon your culture, perhaps where you live the white man is god, but know all racial barriers are overcome by power, money is power, if you're a 5' asian with a 2 inch dick that girls laugh at a 7 digit bank balance is sure to offset that. Focus less on your race and more on your success, your insecurities will get you no where. The real segregation is between rich and poor and that is even more true when it comes down to women, never forget that. Rich vs. poor is the only thing that matters in this world, white vs black, west coast vs east coast, all these other "beefs" are a minor, they are all symptoms of wealth inequality, the bottom line is wealth. Rich vs poor motherfuckers.
- Women are hypergamous they feel entitled to a superior mate. You have to be richer than her or at least equally rich, more educated than her or at least equally educated. You need to be better looking than her or at least equal looking, you need to be more popular than she is or at least equally popular. You can offset one area (LMS - looks, money, status) with another, but if you're lower in at least 2 areas just forget it.
- Buying into the last point, this is why 20% of guys are fucking 80% of the chicks, women date up, men date down [and yes this has created rising social inequality since women entered the professions](#).
- If a woman thinks she is better than you she can't respect you, if she can't respect you she can't love you. Women love men differently to the way men

love women. Woman's love is based on adoration, adoration is a concentrated amount of respect. Respect is derived from power. Be powerful if you want to be loved, or you will never be loved. You will be held in contempt for being weak.

- Women rely on men to be emotionally stoic, we often call this "holding frame" you have to be mentally strong so she can lean on you, she finds that attractive. You cannot lean on her, there is a double standard, if you lean on her the relationship will fall apart, she will not be able to handle your problems and she will no longer find you attractive. You are a man. You have to be better than her, which means to be stronger than she is. This is why women get to be emotional and we have to be non-reactive, we are strong and ignore our emotions so they can indulge in their emotions and enjoy the ride. They find it far more difficult to be logical than we do and thus it is our burden to be the reasonable ones.
- Always set boundaries, with everyone. Do not be a pushover. This is probably the most important bullet-point here.
- Buying into the last point women have little sympathy for weak men, despite the fairer sex bullshit you may be accustomed to hearing a man is far more likely to assist a weak man financially or emotionally than a woman is.
- Women are more selfish than men are in matters of money and love. Man's love is expected to be sacrificial, woman's isn't.
- Women love pragmatically and have no capacity to love unconditionally for romantic partners, only their children. Men can love women unconditionally. There is a hierarchy of love: Men > Women > Children.
- Women have a pronounced gender group bias which means they typically de facto side with other women in a conflict regardless of logic or argument, women are herd like and stick together closely, they form cartels and use the power of the group to hen peck/destroy enemies.
- Women have a sexual plurality, if you are a nice guy with money you are husband material that can nail her after 12 dates and she's had so many glasses of wine she forgets how on a primal level you're not that attractive, just cute. If you are an asshole with nice muscles you're the guy who gets to nail her after 2 hours of meeting. We call this sexual plurality in rather rhythmic slang: "alpha fucks, beta bucks."

- Women do not care about male weakness and neither does society, if you are weak, depressed, small, poor, uneducated, unconfident, not powerful then nobody cares. People only care about you when you're powerful or a pretty woman. You have to pull yourself up by the bootstraps because nobody gives a fuck about you. Society will always have a safety net for women, white knights will charge in, the state will provide and etc, as a man you have no such luxury, your propensity and ability to gain power is much higher than a woman's but your ability to hit rock bottom is far more pronounced too. As men we are more extreme than women. Women are typically average and don't move much either side of the bell curve, as men we are either highly successful geniuses of repute that feminists can but scoff and be jealous of, the poster boys for their esteemed patriarchy, or the ignored voiceless poverty stricken peasant class that nobody gives a flying fuck about.
- The law prioritises female safety and well-being over logic, honour and justice. Family law has been corrupted and is now controlled by feminist ideological dogma. The constitutions equitable maxims are rewritten by modern statutes, Rollo Tomassi of Rational Male did a very relevant article on this topic here: <http://therationalmale.com/2014/01/14/the-second-set-of-books/>
- Western females (typically anglosphere and western/northern Europe) are self-entitled and come from a psychological position of thinking they're better than you are. They believe that shit despite their numerous insecurities because they have been raised to view men as instruments for their desires, they have been told they must be impressed, that a man must wine and dine her and ultimately the onus is on him to win her heart, she will obsess over her relationship status frantically and doll herself up but ultimately her part is entirely passive. She comes from a position of superiority and illogically believes she is superior to all but the most high value of men. Part of The Red Pill is realising her capacity for brilliance is lower than yours, which brings me on to the next point.
- Women need men more than men need women. Men generally want sex and perhaps a family so they have a genetic lineage to leave their worldly goods and knowledge to once they die (so they may live on through their offspring)

however women need men for their logical minds and stoic consistency, to make her emotionally stabilised "being the rock in her storm", and also need a partner just to "feel complete." Just look at single mother households and all the older women who are single, they are miserable. These women NEED a man to be happy, men DO NOT need women to be happy, men need SEX to be happy. A bachelor is a not an unhappy guy, a bachelorette is.

- Women are depreciating assets, their major asset and unique selling point is their sexual beauty and fertility. Most of them squander their best years on "riding the cock carousel" which means fucking lots of different guys in nightclubs, having flings, being generally irresponsible and riding through life on easy mode getting ahead for no real talent, but because she's pretty and can give head. Women are born, their ability to conceive children is what makes them women.
- Men are not born they are created. Poverty, difficulty, heartache, oppression, pain - these are the things that make men out of boys. This is why you came to TRP. This is why boys come back from the military as men. Conflict and pain is what forges the masculine mindset, men cannot grow without conflict and learning from their mistakes, men need to apply their logical minds to problems which arise, elevate, and transcend their previous selves to become more powerful. Men are never born, they are always bred in the bloody fields of battle and war be it economic, mental or physical. A man is a soldier of differing kinds, a man has learnt to repress his fear so he may overcome and achieve.
- Men take more risks than women and are expected to do so, being fearful, unconfident and risk averse as a man leads to failure. You must be confrontational and risk-taking.
- Single mothers [typically] breed boys not men (without outside intervention.) Boys do little except play xbox and eat pizza with no direction in life, they have little luck with girls and end up drinking themselves to dead smoking pot in their 40s. There's more women in education than men now. Think about that shit for a second. The system has been set up against you, pull yourself up by the bootstraps.
- The Red Pill is about pragmatism and truth based on observation, it is not idealistic, in some ways you can say it is liberal - but it is not liberal in the

idealistic pseudo academic sense your institutions have taught you to perceive it as. Liberalism has become corrupted. Liberals today censor and silence opposing opinions, I'm not talking about political parties I'm talking about ideologically left leaning people, their thoughts and ideas are based in idealism not directly measurable truth, liberalism has become the religion to pragmatisms science.

- Social market value is everything, something a low value man says which is "creepy" when said by a high value man is "flirty" or "sexy." Always be focusing on your physical appearance and make it the best that you can, this will make your life easier in all areas, not just sexually but financially too as caused by a phenomenon explored known as [the halo effect](#).
- Your value is everything you should always be improving yourself, if you're not then you cannot compete in the world and your life will be miserable, anesthetized by nothing but the introversion of the four walls you reside in kept docile by xbox, porn, pizza and some online friends. Break free of the mediocrity.
- Your diet and exercise place a certain handicap on your ability to utilise your potential. The obese and those who eat poorly (but aren't necessarily fat) are typically low energy and thus waste a lot of time unproductively as they are not in the right mental state to get anything done. You need to take care of your body so then your body will allow your mind to implement it's will onto the world. You must be physically active so that you can mentally put your plans into action. Procrastination is the slow acting poison of one who lives a sedentary lifestyle. Physically active people make things happen in other areas of their life too. Exercise is invigorating. Stop putting it off. Do it.
- Your body is the temple that houses your mind, following on from the previous point higher testosterone will help you increase your abilities and leave you feeling more energetic - lift, it will give you a rush of energy like nothing else and further increase your T creating a positive feedback cycle. Jog/do cardio - a runners high again is like a drug, you will feel awesome after a jog, your anxiety goes right down and your confidence rises. Keep it up and the effects stack and become part of your personality.

## Further Reading

<http://illimitablemen.com/understanding-the-red-pill/red-pill-constitution/>

## What Is The Red Pill And Why Does It Exist?

*By GayLubeOil.*

[Article link.](#)

To understand The Red Pill, you first need to understand what it's like to be a boy in America. Boys grow up in an environment that is void of genuine positive masculinity. The closest things they have to role models are often fictional super heroes. Batman might be the hero that Gotham deserves but our sons need more.

So where are today's fathers and why aren't they raising our sons? Feminism has pushed men out of children's lives. For the modern women, the cash and prizes of divorce are much more appealing than an intact family. She's a strong independent woman who don't need no man, so her child is just going to have to do without a father. The men who are lucky enough to be in the same home as their children are so emasculated by the threat of divorce, that they are unable to assume a traditional male role in the marriage.

The American education system is nightmare. The whole endeavour is run under the fiction that boys and girls have the same developmental needs. Teachers are predominantly female and comprised of the bottom third of their college graduating class. These people, who are least capable of critical thinking, are in charge of teaching our kids critical thinking skills. Not surprisingly the whole project is a shit show. The women and betas who run our educational system are so hostile to play fighting, drawing guns and all other childish displays of masculinity that they stamp it out at every opportunity.

Growing up in an environment intentionally devoid of masculinity is not good for boys. Most boys don't realize anything is wrong with their upbringing until they start pursuing women. They play the dating game and lose because women are



instinctively repulsed by androgynous she men. Being rejected repeatedly is a painful experience that leads some to soul searching and seeking out the advice of other men. The Red Pill is a place for men to exchange ideas. It's a place where men can have open and honest communication with each other without having to be concerned with the consequences of offending strong independent womyn.

The Red Pill is an imperfect substitute for the male guidance our boys were robbed of by feminism. It is tired middle aged men describing their divorces. It's the unfashionable and unacceptable thoughts of Freud, Nietzsche and Briffault. It's young men asking for help at a time when no one cares about them. All of this challenges feminist's ideological monopoly. It pisses them off and they are cordially invited to go fuck themselves.

## **An Evolutionary Perspective on The Red Pill**

*By confuseacatlmtd.*

[Comment link](#) from a [larger article](#).

Men and woman are not the same, as we are built differently and have different functions. Woman will naturally go after the strongest male that shows the greatest signs of ability in providing food and protection. They do this because they are searching for the best genetic specimen to impregnate them and add value to their DNA. If they feel that over time their partner has grown weak, they will begin to look for another specimen to fit their current needs, either as a provider to their children or as a new breeder to pass on their genetic code.

A man can attract woman by showing signs of being a strong man, able to protect and provide. He will exhibit these signals through posture, movement, verbal inflections and mental toughness. Rationality, energy, and emotional fortitude also enter the picture. These traits will be judged along side his height, muscle, clothes, social standing and facial features. These attributes all factor into his Sexual Market Value, which will denote how much woman want to sleep with him and be with him long term.

Woman will at times administer Fitness tests, which are manufactured scenarios that woman create in order to test if a man is worth/is still worth having as a mate.

Woman are fairly adept at administering fitness tests, so it is far easier and more beneficial to build up a strong SMV than to try to fake one. A strong SMV will lead to a happier, more confident male. A strong male will have a strong Frame, which is his own view of his self worth, his views, his limits, and his reality. A strong male will not allow his frame to be broken. A strong frame and SMV can be achieved through many paths, including physical, mental, and emotional training.

# **A Comprehensive Guide to The Red Pill**

# All-in-One Red Pill 101

By *bsutansalt*.

*Editor's note: the following section is taken from [this article](#), which is an extract of a slideshow presentation. The sections have been split conceptually for readability based on bsutansalt's headings into six chapters.*

1. Introduction
2. Keep It Stupid Simple (KISS)
3. Desires
4. The Red Pill
5. The Sexual Marketplace
6. Improving Sexual Market Value (SMV)

# 1. Introduction

*By bsutansalt.*

[Article link.](#)

Typical Dating Advice:

- "Just be yourself"
- "Be confident"
- "The right girl will come along some day"

Why doesn't it work?

- Not realistic and overly simplistic
- What good is it if Ms. Right walks though the door if you don't have the skills to get (and keep) her attention?
- What's the alternative?
- Become the best version of yourself – Neil Strauss

## 2. Keep It Stupid Simple (KISS)

*By bsutansalt.*

[Article link.](#)

- Approach and Stay
- Don't leave until they tell you to leave or they themselves walk away
- Hit the gym
- Old fashioned lifts are best
- Eat right
- Minimize fast food
- Dress your best
- Get into a habit of talking to everyone!

### 3. Desires

*By bsutansalt.*

[Article link.](#)

- [Goals.](#) Before you go any further you should take a few hours and go through the steps in that thread and really think long and hard about what you want out of life, relationships, you name it.
- Standards & Expectations

What qualities do you want in a mate?

- Personality
- Physical
- Spiritual
- Economic
- Cultural
- Screen for qualities you seek
- Speak up! Let her know what you want
- What happens if they fail to measure up?
- If there are consequences then you MUST follow through

*Checkpoint:*

- Come up with a few goals and think about how you'll achieve them
- What are some standards and expectations?
- What happens if they don't measure up?

## 4. The Red Pill

By *bsutansalt*.

[Article link.](#)

1. What is the Matrix?
2. Reality
3. Terms and Theory
4. Women like sex!
5. Rational Male's Iron Rules of Tomassi
6. Heartiste's 16 Commandments of Poon

### 1. [What is the Matrix?](#)

"Seeing reality for what it is is the first step in changing it." – Tom Leykis

### 2. Reality

- 1) Alpha, Beta, Omega, oh my!
  - You often see talk in our community regarding alpha and beta males, but it's important to understand this is merely a framework for understanding the social pecking order. Ultimately the goal is to find balance.
    - Alpha = Dopamine = Exciting
    - Beta = Oxytocin = Bonding
- 2) Body Agenda
- 3) Counter-culture



- Red Pill ideas are met with scorn and disdain because they challenge the status quo
- 4) Feminine Imperative
- 5) Haters gonna hate
  - You will lose some friends – your successes are a reminder of their failures
  - People resist change, and you moving up the pecking order is exactly that

### 3. Terms and Theory

*Editor's note: many terms have been merged with the - [Glossary](#) for ease of reference. Broader concepts remain here.*

- **1st Rule of Relationships:** In any relationship, the person with the most power is the one who needs the other the least.
- **Dark Triad Personality**, aka why "chicks dig jerks": A catchall phrase that describes the personality types MANY women are naturally attracted to:
  - Narcissistic
  - Machiavellian
  - Psychopathic
  - Why are women attracted to these "bad boys"?
    - Power-driven (status)
    - Low neuroticism and extroverted
    - Low amounts of empathy and agreeableness
    - Not prone to being needy or over investing
  - In other words they're a challenge and tend to live life by their own rules. Some research on the subject has also shown that Dark Triad personality types are more likely to be successful in business. Furthermore:
    - Works best for short-term mating strategy

- Being disagreeable (an asshole) is attractive to women
- Being power-hungry is attractive to women
- Never sweating the small stuff is attractive to women
- In other words, being an aloof, uncaring asshole — an amalgamation of all the above traits — makes you optimally attractive to the greatest number of women (in the short term). However, these traits are NOT conducive to emotionally healthy long-term relationships.
- **Feminine Imperative:** The tendency of media and culture to put women first, excuse their misdeeds (rationalization hamster), and criticize any holding of accountability or pointing out of double standards as being "anti-women".
  - The greatest threat to the Feminine Imperative is men becoming self-aware of their own sexual market value and the dissemination of information about how the imperative uses this lack of awareness to perpetuate itself.
  - [Feminine Imperative: Example](#)
  - [Feminine Imperative: How it happened](#)
- **Mere-exposure effect:** The more we're exposed to a product or idea, the more likely we'll prefer it over lesser-known alternatives.
- **Nice Guys Finish Last:** Being nice isn't itself an attractive quality. In fact, being nice often turns women off; they must be attracted first! If not you risk coming off as needy, clingy, over-investing.
  - We value more what we have to earn
- **Plate Spinning:** When spinning plates, a man will have a natural, subconscious (but not exclusively) understanding that if one prospect does not work out, others may. This perspective change often manifests in a man's behavior that women key on covertly.
  - Opportunity and options makes the man the prize
  - Confidence is derived from options
  - Gives men the ability to NEXT women without worrying about "what's next?"
  - Women would rather share a high value man than miss out on him

entirely, or worse...be stuck with a loser

- Monogamy is a byproduct, not a goal
- "Dating around" gives you experience to know what you want and don't want
- Be honest; never imply exclusivity
- Develop buffers
- Women freely spin plates, we're usually just oblivious
- They're usually more adept at hiding it; ASD
- Metered attention
- Spinning plates can help divest time and attention so you don't overinvest with any one woman
- Created scarcity
- **Propinquity effect:** The tendency for people to form friendships or romantic relationships with those whom they encounter often.
  - "Like attracts like"
  - The higher people's propinquity level, the more likely they'll form some type of relationship. For example, living in the same city is higher than different cities, same neighborhood is higher than different neighborhoods, and so on.
- **Rejection:** Good game takes thousands of approaches. You'll eventually become acclimated so that it doesn't bother you.
- **Shit Tests, aka Fitness Tests:** Subtle (and sometimes not so subtle) tests women do on purpose or subconsciously to test men.
  - Typically a congruence test
  - Occasionally as a rapport break as a hamfisted form of flirting
  - [How to handle shit tests](#)
  - More often than not women actually have pretty bad "game"

#### 4. Women like sex!

Just look at [women's advertising](#) – the media gives them what they want:

- How to get sexy
- To attract the best possible mate
- To have more sex
- Sex tips
- To secure their "alpha" male
- Enjoyment

And it's not just Cosmo! Media directed at jailbait is no different! On that note, know your state's Age of Consent.

- 16 is the most common
- Crossing state lines becomes a federal issue and the age of consent automatically bumps to 18

## **5. Iron Rules of Tomassi**

This is not a full list of his "rules" and are merely those I felt were core ones to grasp as quickly as possible for those freshly freed from the Matrix.

Frame is everything. Always be aware of the subconscious balance of who's frame in which you are operating. Always control the Frame, but resist giving the impression that you are.

- Always be on the lookout for Shit Tests, aka Fitness Tests

NEVER, under pain of death, honestly or dishonestly reveal the number of women you've slept with or explain any detail of your sexual experiences with them to a current lover.

Any woman who makes you wait for sex, or by her actions implies she is making you wait for sex; the sex is NEVER worth the wait.

NEVER allow a woman to be in control of the birth control

- Always use protection and CYA
- Paternity fraud is a real issue—get paternity tests!
- Child support is a ridiculous system you do NOT want to suffer, not to mention there's no guarantee/requirement the money will even be used on the child's needs. Tom Leykis calls it "vaginamony" for a reason.

Women are utterly incapable of loving a man in the way that a man expects to be loved. What this means is that women are incapable of loving men in a way that a man idealizes is possible, in a way he thinks she should be capable of.

- Don't buy into the Disneyesque/rom-com version of relationships
- See also: Briffault's Law

It is always time and effort better spent developing new, fresh, prospective women than it will ever be in attempting to reconstruct a failed relationship. Never root through the trash once the garbage has been dragged to the curb. You get messy, your neighbors see you do it, and what you thought was worth digging for is never as valuable as you thought it was.

Always let a woman figure out why she wont fuck you, never do it for her.

Never Self-Deprecate under any circumstance. This is a Kiss of Death that you self-initiate and is the antithesis of the Prize Mentality. Once you've accepted yourself and presented yourself as a "complete douche" there's no going back to confidence with a woman. Never appeal to a woman's sympathies. Her sympathies are given by her own volition, never when they are begged for – women despise the obligation of sympathy. Nothing kills arousal like pity.

## **6. Heartiste's 16 Commandments of Poon**

1. Never say 'I Love You' first

2. Make her jealous
3. You shall make your mission, not your woman, your priority
4. Don't play by her rules
5. Adhere to the golden ratio
6. For every 3 texts or "I love you", reply with 2 of your own
7. Keep her guessing
8. Always keep two in the kitty (spin plates)
9. Say you're sorry only when absolutely necessary
10. Connect with her emotions
11. Ignore her beauty
12. Be irrationally self-confident
13. Maximize your strengths, minimize your weaknesses
14. Err on the side of too much boldness, rather than too little
15. Fuck her good
16. Maintain your state control (Frame control)
17. Never be afraid to lose her

*Checkpoint:*

- What risks do we take becoming Red Pill aware?
- How does this help us?

## 5. The Sexual Marketplace

*By bsutansalt.*

[Article link.](#)

1. Defined
2. Fantasy vs. Reality
3. The Bell Curve
4. Hidden Realities of the Dating Paradigm

### 1. Defined

- Gary Becker was the first to describe human behavior in terms of economics
- Roy Baumeister further refined the idea
- A heterosexual community can be analyzed as a marketplace in which men seek to acquire sex from women by offering other resources in exchange.
- Societies will therefore define gender roles as if women are sellers and men buyers of sex.
- Societies will endow female sexuality, but not male sexuality, with value (as in virginity, fidelity, chastity).
- The sexual activities of different couples are loosely interrelated by a marketplace, instead of being fully separate or private, and each couple's decisions may be influenced by market conditions.
- See also: Briffault's Law
- Economic principles suggest that the price of sex will depend on supply and demand, competition among sellers, variations in product, collusion among sellers, and other factors.
- Prostitution is illegal and Age of Consent laws were created in order to raise the cost of sexual access by lowering supply. Artificially props up older

women's sexual market value, which (surprise, surprise) are the very people who demanded those laws

- Research findings show gender asymmetries (reflecting the complementary economic roles) in prostitution, courtship, infidelity and divorce, female competition, the sexual revolution and changing norms, unequal status between partners, cultural suppression of female sexuality, abusive relationships, rape, and sexual attitudes.
- Male and female sexuality not valued equally. This is what allows for money = sex.
- The sexual revolution considerably lowered the price of sex (to women's detriment). See also: women in college and those 30+ respectively bemoaning hookup culture and "no good men"

## **2. Fantasy vs. Reality**

Fantasy per the Feminine Imperative

<http://i.imgur.com/dwtTfG6.png>

- Supported by and propagated throughout the mainstream media.

Reality

<http://i.imgur.com/IfXNnAq.png>

- SMV is not equal; changes as we age and differs dramatically between men and women

## **3. Hidden Realities of the Dating Paradigm**

- The entire paradigm flip-flops as we age. By mid to late 30s men have the power and continue to do so for the rest of our lives.



- Settling down in your 20s is a mistake as you don't realize your full potential until your 30s
- Sexual Market Value (SMV) can be improved manually

#### 4. The Bell Curve

<http://i.imgur.com/2zesOwr.png>

- Green represents women naturally attracted
- Yellow is where most women fall; game matters!
- Red represents women who no matter what you do they're just not going to be into you
- Goal is to minimize the red and maximize the green sections though self-improvement

I wrote more on this [here](#).

#### *Checkpoint*

- Think back to your goals and standards & expectations. How does this section apply to them?
- Take a few minutes and refine as needed

## 6. Improving Sexual Market Value (SMV)

*By bsutansalt.*

[Article link.](#)

1. Fitness & Fashion
2. Social Attributes
3. Status
4. Game

### 1. Fitness & Fashion

- Being fit is itself an attractive quality. It evokes feelings of safety and protection and overrides height issues for short men
- Body fat should be under 20%. 10-15% is attainable AND maintainable
- Obesity epidemic means 33% of American's are clinically obese and another 33% are clinically overweight. This translates to being at a healthy body composition nowadays is effectively a form of peacocking. And being 10-15% bf plus being jacked most certainly is!

High Intensity Interval Training (sprints)

- Tabata protocol -- 8 rounds of 20 seconds maximal effort + 10 second recovery
- Prowler sled
- Stick to the core lifts

Diet -- "You can't out-train a bad diet"

- Keep it simple = Paleo or Zone

No such thing as "cardio" (intensity is key)

- James Steele II
- Doug McGuff

Weight training – Stick to the big lifts

- Squats
- Deadlift
- Press (bench, overhead press)
- Pull (pull-ups, rows)

Beginners: stick to the basics!

- Starting Strength is a fantastic program for beginners and intermediates alike
- New Rules of Lifting
- Forget the high volume workouts found in muscle magazines!

Stick to a schedule

- Intermittent Fasting
- Routines help stay on track and avoid slips
- Pick a gym that's on your route to/from work
  - Morning person = closer to home
  - Afternoon person = closer to work

Rest and Recovery is critically important

- A meal following a workout is advised
- Most people do well with somewhere in the 7-9 hours of sleep range
- Many people overtrain and have no idea they're doing it until an injury

occurs

Fashion tips:

- Shoes AND belt should match each other and your outfit
  - [Black vs Brown](#)
- Clothes should properly fit; avoid bad fit disease
  - [Example 1 \(bad\)](#)
  - [Example 2 \(good\)](#)
  - [Example 3 \(bad\)](#)
  - [Example 4 \(good\)](#)
  - [Example 5 \(bad\)](#)
  - [Example 6 \(good\)](#)
- Here are a couple before and after pictures of what is achievable just by getting your fitness and fashion in order:
  - [Before After](#)
  - [Before After](#)

The pictures speak for themselves.

- Women do the same too, only their tools are a bit different
  - Fashion
  - Showing skin
  - Faking hallmarks of fertility, which are the cornerstone of what men are attracted to
  - Pushup bras
  - Implants

- Makeup
- Corsets
- Hair coloring, wigs, and extensions

All of these things are analogous to men lying about having a high status job or any other way of emulating high status.

- [Before After](#)

Yes that's the same woman.

### *Checkpoint*

- If you're not working out already, why not?
- If you think you are fashion savvy, why didn't you dress sharp for class?
- How does this section apply to your goals? Take a few minutes and modify them accordingly

## **2. Social Attributes**

- A. Reading People
- B. Body Language
- C. Verbal Communication
- D. Eye Contact

### A. Reading People

- IOIs & IODs: 3 most important are:
  - Laughing

- She touches you
- Re-initiates conversation
- Proximity
  - Women stop somewhere in roughly a 10' bubble -- You have about 1 minute to approach

## B. Body Language

- Think about your posture & take up space
- Slow down body movements
- Be mindful of where you are facing
- Mirror body language (and height)
- Eliminate fidgeting & pecking – mood killers
- Keep your hands out of your pockets!
  - Sign of insecurity and nervousness
- Hand gestures should stay about waist height or slightly below
  - Hold your drinks at this level

## C. Verbal Communication

- Tone, pitch, projection, pacing
- Slow down!
  - Take a moment to think about what you're trying to say, not what you're going to say – there's a difference
  - You're important, they'll wait
- "Pregnant pauses"
- Eliminate filler words as best you can
- Rehearsing helps immensely
  - "Perfect practice makes perfect"

## D. Eye Contact

- Far too many people are afraid to make eye contact these days

- Stare people down as you pass them to get in the habit of making eye contact
- Try to notice their eye color
- Pause for a second before looking away
- If you're hesitant or insecure, look at their nose or imagine you're checking to see if they have unibrow – they won't know the difference!

### *Checkpoint*

- What did you just learn?
- How can this help achieve your goals?

## **3. Status**

### Status is KING!

- Education can take years, so focus on areas that will have solid ROI
- No guarantee you'll move up the corporate ladder
- Far easier to build fresh social alignments (with elevated status at the start) than changing your status within existing social circles \*Host events based on your interests
  - Invite women out to these events so they see you at your best / most attractive

## 4. Game

- A. What drive social alliances?
- B. First impressions
- C. External vs Internal
- D. Breaking Rapport
- E. Qualification

- F. "Gift of gab"
- G. Training Wheels

#### A. What drive social alliances?

- Propinquity
- Mere-exposure effect
- Investment – Second most important element
- The person least invested controls the relationship
- Build investment mutually like a layered cake
- Qualification drives the process
- Start out investing slightly less than the other person
  - Helps get them to "chase"
- Investment
  - [Example of what NOT to do](#) -- How many of you text like this?
- Scale back how much interest you're showing (3:2 ratio)

#### B. First impressions

- You have roughly 6 seconds
- Forget the "3 second rule" – it burns up half this time just standing there
- How you move plays an important part
- Being rejected: They don't know anything about you as a person, they're just rejecting your approach methodology

#### *Approaching*

- What you say to break the ice (open) isn't actually all that important
- How you say it is what matters
- Should not put them on edge or make them defensive (build comfort)
- The entire point is to transition into a real conversation



### *Direct vs Indirect*

- Each has its own merits
- Direct is better for situations where time is limited and/or seeing if they're naturally interested
  - See also: Bell Curve

### C. External vs Internal Game

- External Game, aka Outer Game is all of the things you do and say
- Techniques / Gambits (pickup)
- Structured approach

Internal Game is your beliefs, self-worth, character

- Disabusing yourself of "blue pill" thinking
- Understanding of the sexual marketplace

### D. Breaking Rapport

- Saying "no", back-turns, playful teasing, getting physical, they all fall under a larger umbrella of something called "flirting"
- Break rapport as soon as you have comfort
  - Bigger the rapport break, the more comfort is required to smooth things over
  - Longer you wait to rebuild comfort, the more comfort is required
- Statement of Intent – "sexy"

### Physical

- Touch her with something cold

- Pick her up and spin her
  - Displays strength which evokes feelings of safety & protection
- Playfully push her away
- Stop speaking and just stare
  - Builds tension which itself is a rapport break
- Physical and verbal escalation are forms of rapport breaks

### Teasing

- Give her a silly nickname
- Mimic her in a funny way
- Tell her she's old if she's really younger

### Disagreement

- Say "no"
- Say "I bet you can't xyz"
- When asked to do something, don't comply and instead ask "why?"
- Cancel a plan you made
- Dislike something she likes

### Non-supplication

- Take a sip of her drink without asking if you're holding one for her
- Ask for some form of compliance before doing something she requested
- If she's not investing, challenge her on it
  - "Come on, don't be gay"

### Verbal

- If she's teasing you, just look at her and say "Weak"
- Verbal mind-games
  - Ask her which sentence is correct, "The yolk of the egg is white," or "The yolk of the egg are white." When she answers explain that the yolk of the egg is yellow.

## Disqualification

- Saying you like a trait she doesn't have
  - "I like blonds" and she's a brunette
- Have her see you talk to other women
- Preselection plus the rapport break is mighty powerful stuff
- Mention your "girlfriend"
  - Can later recover by explaining your girlfriend is actually a girl...friend and that you have lots of them, just like she probably has lots of guy friends
- Powerful tool for mitigating problems during an interaction
  - Disqualify objections before they are made
- Also useful for breaking rapport (flirting) and can be used to frame others (3rd parties) in a negative light
  - Useful for getting others to want to fulfill expectations and getting them to qualify themselves to you

## Sexual

- Large physical escalation
- Saying something about her is "sexy"
  - As a rule of thumb I always do this so she knows my intent – avoids the "friend-zone"
- Turning the topic of conversation to sex
  - People → Relationships → Sex

## E. Qualification

- **Arguably the most important long-term aspect of Game**
- "Don't stick your dick in crazy"
- Screens for women who are a good match
  - Remember the Bell Curve
- Drives investment
- Combats ASD
  - You are demonstrating interest in more than just her looks!
- Prince Charming is discriminating because he has options
  - Is a type of preselection
  - Being choosy shows you're not afraid of her
  - Beggars can't be choosers
  - Gets the rationalization hamster going -- Does he have options? Do I have competition? (built-in dread game)
- Best when based on real things about your life
- Don't punish investment, even if it wasn't up to your standards – change topics
- Reward with some form of haptics, aka "kino"
  - This is the basis of escalation!
- Qualification statements and hoops are two methods I like to use because they're simple and effective
  - Qualification statements can invoke the natural human instinct to want to live up to expectations
- Small qualification hoops are typically yes/no questions
  - Are generally boring "interview" questions
  - Build minimal investment
  - If she answers and then goes into a longer answer, that's an indicator she's interested in the subject and might like you
- Medium qualification hoops typically follow yes/no questions
- Large hoops are open-ended and/or very personal questions

Note: If they won't commit to answering a question, shrink the hoop down a level

Also, qualification and disqualification used in tandem is extremely powerful.

### *Checkpoint*

- How do rapport breaks and qualification correlate to your goals and desires?
- Come up with a few examples of each

### F. "Gift of gab"

- Goal of conversing is to develop investment
- Guys usually do the heavy lifting at first
- Vertical vs Horizontal
- Horizontal is surface stuff that doesn't dig deeper
- 4WH
- Thoughts & Emotions
- Check-ins
- Have a few topics in mind and screen for common interests
  - Common topics for professional types are Relationships / People, Hobbies, Career / Job, and Travel
  - Younger women typically are interested in Beaches, Shopping, Movies, Partying
  - Choose topics that will be of interest to your type of women
- Don't be afraid of the occasional awkward silence -- Can be thought of as rapport breaks
- Build commonalities
  - You give a little, they give a little
  - Multilayer cake

- Statements... then questions
  - Texting should flow this way too
- Reward, statement, question – in that order -- Essentially qualification and escalation
- Personal stories should focus on the topic, not yourself

## G. Training Wheels

- Keep it simple: revisited
- Approach and stay until they tell you to leave or they walk away
- Embrace awkward silences
  - They're a form of rapport break
- If they break the silence with "sooo...." that's a form of investment on their part
  - You broke rapport, now they're seeking comfort with you!

## Instigate – Isolate – Escalate

- Approach
- Build comfort
- JUSTIFY WHY YOU ARE TALKING TO THEM
- Break rapport
- Build comfort
- Lock-in
  - If doing so is a rapport break, then build comfort
- Qualify, qualify, qualify! -- If it's a rapport break, build comfort immediately after
- When they jump through hoops, escalate
  - Escalation is often a rapport break, so build comfort afterwards
- Build commonalities
- Builds comfort & rapport

- When you have comfort, break rapport
  - This is the building blocks of flirting; it's emotional stimulation
- Seed reasons to stay in touch
  - Swap contact details by calling back to the above reasons you seeded earlier in the conversation
  - "What's the best way to stay in touch?"

# The Five Stages of Red Pill

*By Whisper.*

[Article link.](#)

I'm probably not the first person to observe that taking The Red Pill is a gradual process, and that the loss of illusions, like any other loss, initiates a grieving process.

But it's worth pointing out that psychology's general "five stages" model of the grieving process applies to TRP.

1. Denial: "Women aren't like that! They're people just like everyone else! Treat them all as individuals, and you're sure to find the right one!"
2. Anger: "WTF! Bitches are all like this! They have no honour, no loyalty, and they don't really love anyone but themselves! Fucking cunts!"
3. Bargaining: "If I work real hard and learn all the pickup moves, then at least I'll get laid."
4. Depression: "Getting laid by shallow, obnoxious women has become dull and unrewarding. And there's no sense looking for a unicorn. Maybe I'll just be MGTOW for a while."
5. Acceptance: "Women aren't bad. My expectations of them, and theirs of me, were based on faulty premises. They are creatures of instinct, just like I am... but of different instincts. If I learn what those instincts are, and teach them about mine, we can develop realistic expectations of each other and get along just fine."

If we really want to understand what gets written here, in its proper context, we need to understand that most "Red Pill Theory" posts will belong to one of these five stages. Each stage has value, because to reach a later one, you must go through



the earlier ones. And, as in grieving, the progress through is seldom linear, smooth, uniform, and one-directional.

But to understand each post in context, it helps to mentally decide which stage it belongs to, and read it with that in mind.

This is why concern trolling and tone policing have no place here. Not because extremism is our banner (we have no banner, we are not a crusade), but because venting, discussing and understanding anger is a legitimate part of phase 2. Saying that women aren't worth hanging about with, even for sex, is part of phase 4.

If I were to say "don't be so angry" to someone who comes here to say "all women are bitches and whores", then I would be interrupting his process of coming to terms with the loss of his illusions. It would be far better for me to tell him that his feelings are important (because feelings actually sometimes are important), and that his anger is not bottomless, and that it will eventually run dry.

So when I read a text post here, some Red Pill theory, some rant, I just say to myself "stage 2." Or "stage 3." Or "stage 5." And then I continue reading. Because they are all useful. Even if I am (mostly) over my own anger, understanding other men's anger helps me, because it teaches me more about where the disconnect between reality and our expectations occurs.

But to anyone who doesn't understand that TRP posts come from different stages of the process... well, a lot of what's written here just isn't going to make sense.

# **The Red Pill and Society**

## What Is With All The Hate On TRP?

*By Orin\_Fitchett.*

[Article link.](#)

I don't understand why the rest of Reddit considers this to be a cesspool of rapists, everyone I've spoken to in person - male and female - agree that the point of view is pretty much spot on, whether it be guys that I know who are treated like shit by girls, guys that get all the girls, girls that hook up with someone new every weekend, girls that are only in LTR's, even my own mother.

Obviously (as with anything else on the internet) there are trolls on here and throughout the other subreddits that like to paint a negative canvas, but why on earth would someone look at this and disagree with it, unless they haven't looked past the spiel of "oh haha misogynistic cunts." is it a denial of truth? I get that ignorance is bliss, but this is life in general, not something like ignoring that bit of spilt coffee on a table.

### Featured Comment

*By Torquatus.*

Because it presents a harsher reality than people are accustomed to or are willing to even consider being possibly accurate.

It is essentially a framework for assimilating all information on its own merits rather than automatically accepting precepts and practices from institutions or people that appear to be legitimate.

It forces you to be critical of your every move as well as those of every single person you interact with (whether its their words you're hearing or reading, the actions you see them make, or the relationships they try to build with you).

In short, it forces accountability. People aren't comfortable with that. At this point, the current generations that are the majority of our population (Boomers, Gen-X, and Millennials) are so accustomed to sucking on the teat of big government and operating under the shadow of its all-seeing eye as a supposedly benevolent father-figure.

Women obviously reject it because it exposes all the flaws of their ideology and behavior: solipsism, favored legal status, favored employment policies, and a guaranteed floor put in place by the government and funded by the garnished wages, alimony, and child support payments taken from the pockets of men. It's to their disadvantage to acknowledge it, so they fight it tooth and nail and do their best to associate it with terminology or imagery that both men and women view as unfavorable ("creepy," "rapey," misogynistic, abusive, and the like).

In short, it encourages men to be independent individuals. The interests at large have learned from history that such a culture is dangerous for those at the top, so today you see the judicial branch, mass media system, legislative branch, and major multinational corporations whose very livelihood depends on you remaining an ignorant participant in their system collude to push things farther in this direction.

The worst is being en route to or a new member of that not-so-informal oligarchy thanks to a healthy dose of good fortune and your own hard work and being torn between raising a loud voice on behalf of the truth (and risking your position) or passively unplugging and operating (largely) behind the scenes à la the Koch brothers, Karl Rove, etc.

When it comes to the general populace, people don't like having their reality jostled. It's uncomfortable and frightening, really. Given the option, people opt to literally pull the hood further over their own eyes because it's more comfortable.

That's why the pill analogy from the Matrix films is so perfectly fitting.

As to your point about people agreeing with it when presented in the real world, it's because they're responding to the [55% nonverbal](#) cues. If you're even moderately attractive, reasonable, and articulate, it's hard for a listener not to agree because their memory suffers a deluge of experiences in their own life that corroborate your points. Online, it's very easy to attack an argument because the detractor can take as much time as they want to craft the perfect statement, plus they won't lose out to all the markers a higher-value person exudes.

## Why Do You Think This Subreddit Is So Hated On Reddit?

*By Pecanpig.*

[Article link.](#)

I was scrolling through [/r/askreddit](#) and someone asked a question along the lines of "If you could permanently remove 1 subreddit, which would it be?" and within minutes there were several people saying they would remove this subreddit and calling you all woman hating children neckbeards, etc etc.

The worst I've seen here is being people rude in an "alpha douchebag" kind of way and generally not giving a shit about other people, but that's it.

PS: I post in [/r/mensrights](#) and we get attacked all the time for supporting equal opportunity, which is understandable since equal opportunity would mean less opportunity for a lot of people, what the hell do you guys do which threatens anyone?

### Featured Comment

*By drrrrrrr.*

Here's the long answer for why most people, even you MRA dudes, hate us. And I will explain it without calling TRP haters any names or saying they have their heads in the sand - I will assume their hate is rational. Long answer, no TLDR, because I actually want to address how TRP IS a cancerous mole on the skin of reddit / modern culture.

People hate TRP because we have been taught that certain things must not be discussed, namely sex, female desire, how it works, how social status works, how love actually works, and differences in between gender.

Discussing these topics is simply revolting because it is such a social *faux pas*, it is so low status and shameful to talk like "Hey I can't get laid I need help, I had a bad upbringing, my dad walked out, I have a lot of pain in my life. What the fuck do I do, how do I get women, help, I'm horny!" Imagine that for a second in real life in a college classroom with a friend is like "well, my friend, you need to get attractive to women and women are attracted to confident, in shape, charismatic men who have their lives together. Since you are a fuckup and have no understanding of how to piece those aspects together and actually become, say, confident because you didn't have a good father, I will break them down to you."

This scene would cause revulsion in your stomach because it's so socially upsetting and cringey and wrong. It communicates low value and low value is, for better or worse, DISGUSTING to people. An eyesore - this is human nature and I am not complaining. TRP is an eyesore. It is hard and gross and bitter and nasty to look at. Just because we are at our computers does not mean we do not react as if we were amongst people on a gut / brain level; we still feel the revulsion from a socially inept act. I fully agree the discussing of the topics we discuss is socially inept. It examines failure as much as it examines success. It shows you pain - look on here, you will see a lot of guys in pain.

I used to post a lot of MR and I still see the value in the sight, but you guys have your heads shoved up your butts with regards to the fact that most male problems or "pain" as I said earlier stems from social failure, personal failure, sexual failure, (more sexual failure), and financial failure.

Most male pain stems from not fucking, poverty, social shame, being low status, feeling powerless / depressed, being out of shape, and being undesirable. Jail, public education, courts, and colleges sucking ass creates a lot of male pain, yes. (Good on MRA for engaging with that, I appreciate the work, results or not. Gathering money for Vasalgel for example is huge.)

But we do not actually have power to reverse the trend in our society, feminism has won. End of story - we are NEVER changing back the feminist lean and anti-male bias in these government / popular opinion sanctioned institutions. Prison-industrial complex being a meat factory of poor males (and taxpayer sinkhole) is never going to change in our lifetimes, for example. Colleges are going to get more feminist, public education is going to suck more before it gets better (because we as a nation must experience tremendous pain before we change).

The attitude of "fuck it, the world is a shit hole, here is how to make life fun, meaningful, and something you can be proud of in the blink of an eye that you are alive" does make some people hate TRP. It is a form of nihilism that I personally think is a beginner phase of TRP that you grow out of. The attitude that everything sucks shit (most men are approval seeking beta tools, most women are hypergamous, emotional, sluts, for example) is a justified criticism of TRP. I fully admit that is a bad world view and at the same time, I fully see why people hold it.

A broke person will see rich people as evil and money as evil. Teach him how to produce good work that earns him pay, he sees rich people as fellow people who "made it" and money as a fairly sensible invention that spurs innovation and hard work. This is ultimately what TRP can do. Teach a guy how to succeed, he loses his opinion that everything sucks. Teach a man how to get a girlfriend, he stops espousing petty nihilism on the internet.

MRA actually made me more pessimistic and nihilistic - from my time on your page, I would always get into a glum state. Today a mom bashed her toddler's head and receives no punishment! Schools now are denying boys entrance into a CS scholarship! Stats about how shitty everything is for men! Look at how horrible these feminists are, etc. RP helps guys who are in this nihilistic state get it out of their system.

Once again, it is an eyesore. It looks shitty and cringey and gross to see some (probably teenage) person talk about how "society is so X." Just hearing the word "society" come out of someone's mouth is facepalm nowadays, like saying



"sheeple" seriously. But look, that is how the guy fucking feels about society, he should be able to share his perspective and reasons for his perspective (and listen to others), because that is how new seeds of thought will be planted. He will grow because we provided him with knowledge that at worst is what I call "beneficially wrong." By this I mean, for example, if lifting doesn't actually correlate with attraction at all, our advice to lift will still yield 99 other benefits and improve his life.

But who can see that end of it? All you see is the shameful bits, the admitting failure, the breaking down of things you were taught at a young age by good family and friends. If you are a normal person in a home and school that nurtured you into a confident dude, OF COURSE you think we are a bunch of introverted neckbeard faggots circlejerking about how shitty everything is.

They do not, however, see the lowered cholesterol levels and healthy blood pressure of my dad when I introduced him to books I found here on health. Just like with Pick Up / Mystery type stuff, they see the fucktards on TV in that reality show, they do not see me 9 years ago in college getting the balls to join a frat, make friends, and answer questions in class. They only see the gross shit people do to one day get to that point. They see the lows. Ask any married dude on TRP - how much HAPPIER has their wife been since they found this. But of course, no one will ever see that. They will see, however, me telling that guy (or someone telling me) that they need to quit being a pussy, lift, not supplicate, lay down some rules, fuck her better, and let her be emotional without 'logic' attacking her all the time.

They see the misogyny, but they don't see a dude working through his misogyny to develop an actual love of women. I can honestly say that I love women and that is something that I never could have said without realizing RP ideas or getting the experiences that PU and later RP thinking allowed me to get. You must objectively UNDERSTAND women to say you love them; a man with illusions about something can never love that thing. If you do not truly understand how women are different than men, you do not love them. There is no price too high to achieve an objective understanding of yourself and the species you one day want to raise a

family with. This is the idea of RP that is so revolting - NO PRICE IS TOO HIGH FOR REALITY. Shame, looking like a retard, being misogynistic by societal standards, etc, it is a small price to pay in the pursuit of objective, uncensored ideas. Most people cannot pay that price; if something will earn them success but make them look like a degenerate moron, they will not do it, end of story. They see us being willing to look like idiots in the pursuit of success, so naturally rather than confront their own avoidance of tough choices, they sit back upon whatever accomplishments they do have and talk shit about how pathetic it is that some people have to do MORE to get to their level.

Because ultimately, that's all TRP hate is. Successful people who hate on TRP are generally just dudes who lucked into a great environment to grow and thrive in, so they naturally think other dudes who didn't become a success must be serious jackass losers. Unsuccessful people who hate on TRP (most of them, since I have met very, very few successful people who engage in online hate) are dudes who hate on guys who actually try to fix their problems instead of escaping from them. People who SHARE problems (most men share similar problems) often display massive hatred towards guys who decide "holy shit, we're all a bunch of losers, fuck this, I want out, I will literally do anything to not be like how we are."

Hopefully that sums it up. I have no problem with TRP receiving hate. I want TRP to be discussing things society will not discuss because otherwise, we are worthless and discussion here has no merit. We are not being objective if we are approved of. The day people on askreddit espouse our merits in great numbers, I'll stop posting here.

# Excuse Me. Why Does Everyone Assume You Guys Are Abusive Assholes?

*By skyclown.*

[Article link.](#)

I prefer to make my own mind up about things so have spent the last few weeks dipping in and out of the material in sidebar. It's been fun and informative. Some things I already knew but couldn't articulate, plenty of the other stuff was fresh to me though and I'm in my 30s. I've read a few of the comments here over the last month or so and there does seem to be a few 12 year olds on power fantasies but generally the community is normal - sharing stories and resources, offering support and guidance. I still don't understand why it gets such a bad rap. I tried to defend the scientific honour of /r/theredpill the other day in a thread where OP was asking for help with confidence. I simply said it had scientific merit and that they should come read the sidebar material but they equated it with breaking a horse and buried me. This seems terribly intellectually dishonest to me. Why is there an assumption that if you understand this material that you become an abusive, misogynistic dickhead? It's ludicrous. First time poster so thanks for reading.

## Featured Comment

*By IllimitableMan.*

*Why is there an assumption that if you understand this material that you become an abusive, misogynistic dickhead?*

Because you are agreeing with a community whose very existence undermines the gynocentric status quo of feminine primacy. By asserting the masculine

viewpoint as primary, or even, a valid counterpoint you automatically become a threat. The hive mind rationalises your arguments as "backwardly patriarchal" and therefore, irrelevant, bigoted and out-dated. Then it gets spun as "people like you are the reason feminism exists" when actually, the reason you looked for a place like this is exactly because of the effects feminism has had on you and those around you.

Despite the damage feminism causes to developed societies across the globe, a lot of people are personally invested in it due to their own psychiatric problems. Others are not staunch SJWs/activists and many may not even identify as feminist, but due to the institutional influence of feminism they will embody lots of feminist norms and values. Particularly, those of you with a bachelors degree or higher, have been drowned in feminist propaganda. I find the more educated people are, the further from reality they tend to be. Not because they are stupid, but because they have spent many years in an institution which pushes forth feminist norms and values, they become indoctrinated. Effectively, most of the population whether they know it or not, agrees with the idea that the genders are equal, but that we must also artificially elevate women and give them special privileges.

So what's the reasoning for this you may ask? In an attempt to be concise it's kind of like the concept of white guilt, except it's for ALL MEN. Race card does not trump GENDER card. The way institutions are biased towards women today is due to the idea that men owe women due to the supposed barbaric nature of men pre-feminism in essence, it's the construction of a "male guilt" and women getting an easy ride today is some kind of reparation for that. That's how they justify their benevolent sexism. Feminism in its current form is all about maintaining double standards stemming from traditionalism that benefit women whilst destroying the double standards from our civilizational past which benefit men. It is ultimately, the restriction and demonisation of male freedom, expression and sexuality to make way for completely unmitigated freedom of sexuality and expression for females.

Instead of helping men and women understand each other better in spite of our differences and helping us cohere into a strong, somewhat moral and productive

society, feminism encourages and thrives off facilitating decadence. Using newspeak like "liberation" to define the decadence it encourages when said "liberty" is really just a positive spin on "fucking anarchy." If you know your history, feminism reared it's head in roman civilization just before it fell. There appears to be a cycle where a civilization becomes so prosperous that it can afford to entertain notions such as feminism, only for those same notions to contribute significantly to the eventual downfall of the civilization, usually by lowering the birth rate and not incentivising beta men to work hard for the tax base (you get a return to harems, rather than monogamous nuclear families like you do under traditional Christian-based monogamy.)

To these people, the feminine viewpoint must be hegemonic and they don't care how many young men, girls with daddy issues and grown men that this feminine primacy adversely effects. As far as they are concerned, the masculine viewpoint is backward, barbaric, misogynistic and unworthy of listening to. They are oafs, they are bigoted, they are close-minded and they often have a personal vested interest in maintaining the feminist false narrative, some through product of having invested so much personal time into the ideology, others due to prevailing business interests. Unfortunately the generations feminism has tainted are irreversibly tainted because once someone is indoctrinated by an ideology it's very hard for all but the most intelligent of the pack to come out of it unbrainwashed or otherwise "mentally free" or "lucid."

An example is say, old people in Germany. A lot of them will think Hitler was a great guy and still hate the English because of remembering WW2 from their childhood or whatever. They have some investment in Nazism. But if you ask a young German today what they think of Hitler and the English they'll say Hitler is bad, English are "fine" or whatever. Completely different ideas, same people. Nazism didn't get to touch the newer generations like it did those born around the, and pre-WW2 period. The same goes for feminism. Gen X and Gen Y (Gen Y = Millennials) are pretty fucked when it comes to feminism, most people will be life-long invested in the idea men and women are fundamentally equal despite the reality they are not.

Feminism is very much concerned with controlling and policing speech, it's become a very Orwellian ideology since it's inception as a simple civil rights movement. The fact we try to circumvent their control of gender relations is an affront to their personal beliefs and threatens the narrative by bringing it under scrutiny, something feminism doesn't fare well under (scrutiny.) Feminism requires blind faith, like many ideologies, and is intolerant of being alerted of it's own hypocrisy, weakness, dysfunctionality and etc. Also to be clear, when I say "we try to circumvent their control of gender relations" we achieve this through indirect methods. We do this by claiming our masculinity and autonomy through hyper-independence. With independence it is difficult to be controlled. We are not a movement, we are a personal philosophy. We do not "fight for change" through political activism or a *coup d'etat*, we don't try to "change society to fit our needs" (the feminist model) but instead we introspect and make improvements to ourselves so that we may thrive in spite of society's support (or lack thereof.)

Feminism, like many a social ideology, is narcissistic and irrationally arrogant. It doesn't even consider it may possibly be wrong, or flawed and it will not allow itself to be undermined at any cost regardless of any negative outcomes that occur as a result of that. Of course like many ideologies which started with a rational and noble seeming ideal but morphed into faith-based cults, if you don't toe the feminist line you will be ostracised from society and people will say horrendous things about you because they don't like you. Because you are "one of them" and not "one of us." You are not a person to them. You are an "other." And as history has taught us that if you are considered "an other" (witch burnings) then you are not welcome in society.

If you tried to build a church in Saudi Arabia they'd probably chop your head off. Well being Red Pill in a feminist country is that equivalent. [Witch hunting](#) and doxxing galore. Which is why I never answer questions about my age or what I do for a job. It says I live in London on Twitter, that's it. 12 million people there including the metro, have fun finding me. For your own sake, don't post any personal information. Without the internet a platform such as this probably wouldn't even be possible and feminism would have absolute domination rather than a majority. Whilst the internet has been great effective at spreading feminism,

especially to poorer countries, it's also served as a medium for fighting against it. The internet, my friend, is truly beautiful and we should all be thankful that we got to live through it's inception and see first hand just what it can do for us as a species. The internet is the best source of free information and freedom of expression to ever exist.

It is because of the internet you have the chance to read things which don't fall within the realm of "political correctness" but things which are also outside that closed stringently moderated bubble of opinion. Political correctness to me is just a code word for "views, opinions, language usage and beliefs which fall within a spectrum of pre-determined institutional acceptability." The changes to the language, calling normal people "cis" and all this shit has Orwellian undertones. Read *1984* if you haven't. And if you read it pre-Red Pill, read it again for additional insight.

# Deconstructing: EMSK Why "The Red Pill" Will Kill You

## Inside

*By IVIaskerade.*

A [response](#) to an article written elsewhere on Reddit.

Settle in fellas, pull up a chair, get yourself a cup of whatever you drink (I recommend white tea with no sugar) and get comfortable. [This is a long post.](#), and there's no TL;DR because I can't condense it enough for it to be worth it.

So I got down to reading that EMSK post for about the 10th time, because there was always something a little... off about it in my mind, something I couldn't place, and if I feel like that, I know I'm not the only one. Now, other people have responded to this post, particularly u/StuffDoer's popular (and rightly so) post a month or so ago, but I couldn't find a post that actively went through it point by point and talked about each one. Some people might think that the post has been [done to death](#) and just wish we'd stop going back to it, but I thought that something like this could be of benefit to newer people who're still wavering.

Also, this post deals more with LTR-oriented stuff, as the original EMSK doesn't talk about PUA stuff, so my response won't either.

To give context to this post, [here's a link to the EMSK post on Archive.Today](#), and [here is the same post in redditlog](#).

*TL;DR: It's unfair that men suffer from sexual strategy, but that doesn't make it okay to flip it and make women suffer instead. No one deserves to be emotionally abused.*

For the record, I disagree with u/TalShar. Nobody deserves to be abused full



stop, but that doesn't make it "unfair" that men suffer from sexual strategy, because it's not applied unfairly. The application of sexual strategy is universal, across men and women (and others), and I can't think of a fairer system. What we're saying is that it's unfair that men aren't taught about it - it's just expected that they'll know when the teaching of such principles is being discouraged as "unfair" (ironic, isn't it?) and the teachers derided as "stuck in the past." That is where the suffering comes from.

[Edits 3 and 5 removed because they're not relevant].

*Now, let's get started.*

[Yes, let's.](#)

*Foreword: I realize that this isn't your typical EMSK entry, but I view it as essential advice to any man who wants to be happy in a heterosexual relationship. Nothing against men who want to be in a non-hetero relationship either; this is just addressing those who may be getting pulled in by the "Red Pill" philosophy.*

Ok, we're getting off on the right foot here. u/TalShar is laying out his reason for writing this, and also talking about who it applies to. I wish to do the same:

I realize that this might not be your typical Red Pill entry, but I view it as essential advice to any man who has read the EMSK post that spawned it, and was couldn't help but feel that there was still something there in TRP, that they couldn't quite put their finger on, but there nonetheless. This isn't addressing those who are "already red", as it were, though you are of course welcome here. It's simply addressing u/TalShar and those who agreed with his post on what I believe to be the strengths and weaknesses of his post.

*For the uninitiated, "Red Pill" is a term co-opted by the types of people who frequent [Link to TRP] (enter at your own risk, lots of lady-hate in there).*

Alright, fair enough, there are quite a few posters here still getting over the

[anger phase](#), and it's understandable that they want to express their feelings. Personally, I do think that we could do with toning it down. A post that is just venting is all well and good, but unless it's contributing something worthwhile and not just "women are all whores and I hate them", I don't think it belongs in TRP. Not sure where it could be directed (except toward lifting), but we need to keep it a bit lower-key.

*It's a reference to The Matrix, in which Morpheus offers Neo a choice of one of two pills... a blue pill, which will make him forget and allow him to contentedly go back to a life of brainwashed mediocrity, or a red pill, which will wake him up to an unpleasant truth but grant him great power.*

Well, yes. This is the intent of the name of the subreddit. It's a little tongue-in-cheek, as we explicitly don't believe it gives you "great power" (<facetious> that's NoFap's domain</facetious>), but do believe that it gives you the information needed to do your best in the world in which we live. TRP doesn't believe in an "alternate world" that you access by accepting it, it believes in "pulling back the curtain" of the world you live in.

*The idea of the "Red Pill" as is commonly used now, is that men are constantly losing a war of what [link to TRP] users refer to as "Sexual strategy." Essentially the premise is that women have what we want (sex), and they can make us bend over backwards to get it. They have us wrapped around their little fingers. Those who "take the Red Pill" awaken to their true male potential and learn to get what they want without having to submit and forfeit their masculinity.*

I don't see how this is a bad thing. According to the premise of TRP, refusing to let others take advantage of you is a good thing, and women have been taking advantage of men who don't know better is what TRP prevents.

*The subreddit is rife with success stories from men who claim they've gotten what they want out of their relationship. One guy claims (and I'm paraphrasing), "She does my laundry and dishes, we have sex whenever I want, and she knows that I don't belong to her, and if she ever slips up or takes me for granted, she's*

*gone." It's not that I doubt what he's saying. I believe it. The problem is, what he's describing is emotional abuse.*

Now on this account I must disagree, because there's not enough data. The poster didn't mention, and TalShar isn't trying to find out, why a woman would tolerate such a situation. It couldn't be that she's happy with it, could it? It couldn't be that she's getting the benefits of an LTR with a guy who she genuinely likes, and sees doing the dishes/laundry as an act of love? Maybe she's a woman who's willing to work at a relationship, and the poster hasn't discussed what he brings to the table (and you better believe he's bringing something, else she'd be out of there faster than a hamster out of cage) The other thing I wanted to focus on from this paragraph is:

*if she ever slips up [snip], she's gone.*

TRP teaches that this applies equally to males. Failure to hold frame, showing weakness, giving in to her shit-tests, all of these will lead to her becoming less attracted to you, and once it gets to a certain point, leaving. Is it emotional abuse to say that you'll drop a woman if she doesn't perform? Maybe, but since a "slip up" is likely to be something major (like kissing another man) and not "I haven't ironed your shirts because I had a visit from my friend that took longer than I anticipated", it's hardly the massive issue u/TalShar makes it out to be.

*What the Red Pill advocates is taking advantage of common weak points in the typical female psyche (most of which are present in your typical male psyche as well; everyone has weak points, and most of them are common to all humans, though some are more pronounced in one sex or another) to put pressure on women and bend them to your will. Users advise doing things like keeping her guessing, changing what you want and then berating her for not keeping up with your whims.*

Yup. TRP advocates taking advantage of women to bend them to your will. It absolutely says "the best basis for a good relationship is Stockholm Syndrome." It doesn't say "she does it because you make her happy and she wants to reciprocate."

When we tell people to "Be clear, but most importantly, be \*decisive. Make a plan and stick to it", we are absolutely advocating "changing what you want" and "whimsy."

*Several advise that you never show affection for her unless she's done something to please you.*

Yes and no. Positive reinforcement is great, but we don't say "don't send her random little gifts as surprises." I've never once seen a post on TRP saying "women hate to receive a bouquet of flowers without doing anything to deserve it." Also, is u/TalShar saying "never initiate" or "you should show affection even when she's not behaving"? For the record, I think that they aren't, but the statement was a little ambiguous (that could be our fault too).

*You break them like you'd break an animal.*

My mind is struggling to comprehend [where this came from](#). We advocate treating her like you would a child - gently, rewarding good behaviour, and making it clear through our lack of reaction that she won't get anywhere with bad behaviour. This is akin to saying "You must break a child like you would an animal." No. Just no.

*And it's damned effective in some cases. It'll get you what you want if you do it right.*

Including if what you want is a stable, happy, loving marriage. Thanks go to [Ian Ironwood](#) and [Dalrock](#) for proving that TRP and marriage are more than compatible, certainly more than our detractors (and some of our own) claim. It's just a shame that "doing it right" isn't what u/TalShar thinks it is.

*But you shouldn't want that, and here's why.*

...I shouldn't want to get what I want? I shouldn't want to know how to get what I want? I shouldn't want to know how to keep a woman happy in the long term? u/

TalShar re-frames it as "red pillers abuse people to get what they want", but that's not what we do. Sure, there are people like that, but that's because there are people like that in every walk of life. It's not that TRP makes X% of its readers assholes, but that X% of people generally are assholes, and this applies to TRP as much as anywhere else.

*The Red Pill subreddit is also full of "Blue Pill Stories," in which guys get emotionally abused by their girlfriends. They lament being used for their money, their homes, their emotional support, what have you, and then being left when they weren't "Alpha" enough to keep their girlfriends around. It's a shame, it really is. Nobody deserves that kind of abuse.*

Ok, it's emotional abuse when women use a man for commitment without providing sex and leave when they've had their fill. That much we agree on. I also think we could do with reducing the number of "blue pill" stories we have submitted - yes, it's great that you've found another example of a man who's behaviour is something we want to avoid. I'll just [add it to the rest of the examples we already have](#).

*"Nobody" includes women, though. What the Red Pill strategy does is flip that power dynamic on its head. When it works, now it's the man who is in power and the woman who is suffering. The man gets the sex without having to commit any real effort to the relationship, aside from making sure that his SO's emotions are brutally crushed on a regular basis. You haven't fixed anything, you've only made sure it's your SO who's suffering and not you.*

Ah. Ah. I had wondered when we were going to get to this bit. The whole "Red Pill behaviour makes her suffer" argument. You seem to think that it's a dichotomy - either the woman is in power and the man is suffering, or it's the other way around, and the only other option is what you propose. My rebuttal to this is that there is no reason that the man being the more dominant one (yes, the one "in power", but that phrase doesn't convey the subtleties of a relationship dynamic) necessarily means that the woman will suffer, especially if the man is a proponent of TRP. Additionally, the man most certainly does have to commit effort to the

relationship - it's how he keeps her happy (and willing to provide sex). The idea that you, her emotional rock, would attempt to crush her emotions, is beyond absurd. In fact, it's [crossing the line](#) between distortion of the facts to fit your agenda (everyone does that) and outright lying about the other side. That's called propaganda, and I am disappointed that you resorted to it.

*And the reason she stays is the same reason Blue Pill guys stay in their relationships: They don't want to be alone.*

Actually, the reason most Blue Pill guys stay in their relationship appears to be the hope that if they just appease her enough she'll give them more sex. Sure, some stay because they don't want to be alone, but a dog takes care of that quite handily (apart from the sex, you perverts), leaving sex as the only reason that a lot stay - it's because as little as they get now, they've been conditioned to believe that a) this is normal b) they shouldn't ask for more and c) they won't get any at all if they leave, and some is better than none.

*And as long as you keep that power dynamic active, you will never know what love is. Because love means that you feel what your lover feels. If she hurts, you hurt. If you hurt her, you feel all of her pain and all of the shame for knowing that you're the one that caused it.*

So what you're saying is that if your woman is

*If you really love someone, you'll never want to hurt them.*

Absolutely true. However, TRP doesn't advocate "hurting" anyone, any more than it advocates "controlling" them.

*And make no mistake, that's what the Red Pill is: cold, calculated, systematic emotional torture meant to produce a desired response.*

Really? Could you please give evidence of this? I mean, as far as I could tell, that's never been what this sub is. How is making yourself more desirable through

working out emotional torture? How is ignoring a woman's attempts to manipulate you emotional torture? If anything, it's refusing to succumb to emotional torture. You know what emotional torture is? When a man deliberately utterly annihilates a woman's self esteem so that she will sleep with him. Treating her like a normal person who doesn't get special treatment until they've earned it is emotional torture? Ye gods, I don't think you know what emotional torture is!

*Methods like keeping your prisoner guessing, changing what you want, keeping them off balance, those are all interrogation techniques meant to break your prisoner down on a mental and emotional level and produce a compliant charge.*

*keeping your prisoner guessing, changing what you want*

That sounds suspiciously similar to a shit test to me. As far as I can tell, Red Pill men tend to be forthright about what they want, and it rarely changes. It's the same as what every man wants - regular, passionate sex, loyalty, and love. I'd like to see some evidence of where TRP actually says "the best way to make a woman stay with you is to mentally abuse her and break her will." As far as I was aware, the core tenet of TRP is "You cannot force a woman to want you, but you can make yourself something that she wants." As a way of giving an equivalent example, I personally do not like the texture of cheese. However, if you melt it, the texture changes and I'm fine with it. You cannot force me to like it, but you can change it so I like it. Is this not a self-sacrificing thing to do? To work to change ourselves for the benefit of others (because let's be honest, most of us wouldn't work out if we hadn't realized that women want a guy who does - no matter what TRP says about "do it for yourself", a lot of us started for the female attention) - is that not a triumph of putting the wants of others before your own?

*Put quite simply, someone couldn't ever do such a thing to someone they truly loved.*

I agree. If you love someone, you won't emotionally abuse them. You will, however, be their rock, their bastion of safety, and their lighthouse in the darkness. You will not attempt to deceive them, nor will you physically abuse them. If you

love someone, you will understand how to keep them happy, and TRP equips you to do this.

*There is one thing that Red Pill has right. Sexual strategy sucks. But the solution isn't getting better at it than your SO is. The solution is agreeing with one another that you're not going to play the game. If a game is going to always suck for one player, and both players care about one another, they're going to find a better game to play.*

Again, no. [TRP explicitly doesn't say "sexual strategy sucks." It says "This is what sexual strategy is" and leaves it to us to make value judgements.](#) u/TalShar also assumes that people can "not play the game." In the (slightly mis-remembered, I have no doubt) words of Robert Greene, "You can't choose not to play."

*You want a healthy, stable relationship that is going to be rewarding? Here's the secret. Remember that your SO is just as complex, intelligent and vulnerable a human being as you are. She has needs just like you do. While she might place different values on her various needs, while she might express them differently, they're every bit as important to her as yours are to you.*

Now, this is interesting, because it's exactly what we say. We acknowledge that women also have needs, but the difference is that they're different to a man's needs. She needs emotional stability, reliability, security and occasionally, for someone else to take the reins completely and let her relax. You might need these things too from time to time, but it can't be from her. It can be your buddies, your parents, your brothers, but not your wife. TIL not putting emotional baggage on someone you love is "mental torture."

*Life is a war. But if you want to win it, you and your SO need to be on the same side.*

Again, we don't disagree. We just disagree on what will cause her to stick by you.



*You don't need to break your girlfriend or wife. You need to talk to them. If they're doing something that hurts you, you need to tell them. And not "I wish you would quit that." Tell them "This hurts me when you do that." If they care about you, they'll take action to prevent causing you pain. To position and strategize to get what you want out of your marriage is to deny your most potent asset: An intelligent human being who cares about you and wants to see you happy above all else, and who wants to be happy alongside you.*

Again, you started off promising, and then it all went to hell after the first sentence.

*And if you don't have that in your SO, you either need to get to that point or get out. There are many, many worse things than being single. One of them is being in an abusive or emotionally vacant relationship (on either side, abuser or victim). Don't view your time as being single as a sexless desert. View it as a time to grow and realize who you are. You need to be able to define yourself as an individual before you're ready for a relationship.*

*Human beings are as diverse as life on this planet. For every type, there is a counter-type. There is someone out there for just about everyone. However, none of your relationships will work out in a healthy manner until you realize that women are people too, not animals to be broken. You don't need to be an Alpha. You're not a damned dog. You're a human being. Human beings can communicate complex concepts, rebel against their base instincts to find better ways of doing things, and above all, reflect on their actions and empathize. You don't need to establish dominance, you just need to find somebody that's willing to actively pursue your happiness alongside their own; and you need to be willing to do the same for them. If you're not ready to do that, you're not ready to have a healthy relationship.*

There is not "someone out there for just about everyone." There are people who you wouldn't mind spending the rest of your life with, but that sounds a little close to "you'll find someone who loves you for who you are, you don't need to change!" territory, and we all know where that road goes.

I may not be a dog, but I am a social animal, and like all social animals, there is a social hierarchy, with the people on the top taking the lion's share of everything. You also misunderstand the concept of dominance. Sure, it means being the once in charge. It also means being the one with all the responsibility, the one who has to bear the weight of their problems alone, that those under them might be free of such a burden. Dominance is listening to those you lead, because they do have good ideas, and to discount them because you didn't have them is a bad thing.

*But there's good news... Something else human beings are good at is changing. You want someone to be willing to change for you, you have to make sure you're willing to change yourself a bit. Everything's a two-way street. Just make sure you're changing for the better. Being willing to change doesn't mean flopping over and doing whatever is asked of you. Here, change is a bad word for this. Be willing to improve yourself. Nobody's perfect. Spot those places that need work (I assure you, they're there, and if you can't spot them, I guarantee the people around you can), and start improving on those things.*

This paragraph is pure gold. You must be willing to constantly strive for improvement on your terms. You shouldn't just give in to demands, you should strive to better yourself every day. Nobody is perfect. Accept this. Good stuff, u/TalShar.

*In order to have a healthy relationship, you have to be a healthy human being first. A healthy human being doesn't use sexual strategy. You'll only ever have a healthy relationship if both parties refuse to play that game.*

Once more, [the first five seconds of Save Me](#) express my disappointment. This isn't War Games. This is your high school's PhysEd lessons. You play whether you like it or not, the only thing you get to choose is how well you do, and the first step is to accept that you're playing.

*I mentioned earlier that Morpheus's "Red Pill" was originally symbolism for awakening, both to truth and to power; while the "Blue Pill" was a metaphor for staying asleep and maintaining the status quo.*

*In truth, the Red Pill as they represent it isn't a true awakening at all. It's a capitulation to a false dichotomy. A true awakening is realizing that the people around you are more than just faces, that they all have their own stories, their own thoughts, hopes and dreams, and that they are just as complex as you are. A true awakening is realizing that you don't have to win the fight (and thereby habitually hurt someone you ostensibly care about), or lose it. That you can take your ball and go home.*

First off, there is not "fight." There is no "win" (I will address in the next bit). We already know women are as complicated as men are - probably more so. However, what we didn't understand was how they differed, and how to accept and deal with that. TRP does not say "she must give up on her dreams to be with you." TRP does not say "she is worthless except as a silent, submissive, sex thing." TRP does not say "women aren't complicated." TRP says "you're not the only one who has to work at a relationship."

*The Morpheus of sexual strategy is offering you two pills: Red and blue. Win sexual strategy, or lose it.*

Not really. Sexual strategy is something that "is", not something that you "win" or "lose." Sure, it has precepts for better outcomes (of two otherwise identical men, the richer/more muscular/more confident/taller {delete as appropriate} will be more desirable), but those aren't "win conditions" because you don't "win" sexual strategy.

*Punch him in the face and tell him you're not playing his bullshit game.*

Once again, there is no "opt out" button. You can punch morpheus all you like, but don't expect things to change because of it.

# Feminists are Losing The Debate Online

By *redpillbanana*.

[Article link.](#)

A while back, I made a submission in [/r/TheRedPill](#) and [/r/MensRights](#) titled: Avoiding the "feminism has such wonderful goals, why would you oppose it?" straw man. I described how I responded in a debate with a feminist.

There were many replies along the lines of:

- You lose by engaging.
- Just don't discuss anything with feminists. they are just as lunatic in their beliefs as marxists and creationists.
- Stahp! You've already lost.
- Arguing with a feminist is like arguing with a troll.
- The only way to win the game is not to play.
- Don't reason with people who are unreasonable.
- Why are you even arguing with women about feminism? I can't imagine a more pointless venture.
- **WHY THE FUCK ARE YOU TALKING TO FEMINISTS AT ALL!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!!**

These are all good responses, to be honest. If you're in a one-on-one debate with a feminist, there is only a minuscule chance that you'll change her views - more likely she'll start calling you a misogynist and tell you to check your privilege. If you start bringing up facts and logic, she'll shut down and say things like, "Wow, just wow, you're so far gone that it's not even worth talking to you, I don't even know where to start." I've seen exceptions but the majority of my interactions with feminists have been along these lines.

However, if you do care at all about the disproportionate influence that feminism seems to have, it might be worth your time debating feminists as long as others are watching. The reason is that feminists generally do very poorly in debates because their ideology doesn't seem to value truth and logic, and instead resorts to shaming and emotion. Their worldview is a house of cards and is very easy to knock down. In such debates, you won't change the feminist's mind, but you might change the minds of 10 others who are watching/reading.

The truth is that feminists are slowly losing the public debate.

Could you have imagined a day where *TIME Magazine*, the most mainstream of the MSM, has the following headlines?

- [It's Time to End 'Rape Culture' Hysteria](#)
- [Stop Fem-Splaining: What 'Women Against Feminism' Gets Right](#)
- [5 Feminist Myths That Will Not Die](#)

People are seeing the awful side of feminism such as:

- [The University of Toronto protest of Warren Farrell](#)
- [Big Red singing "crying a river" when confronted with male suicide](#)
- [Sharon Osbourne laughing at a man getting his penis chopped off and placed in the garbage disposal](#)
- [Adria Richards and Donglegate](#)
- [Gamergate](#)
- [Rebecca Watson and Elevatorgate](#)
- Hillary Clinton saying that "[Women have always been the primary victims of war. Women lose their husbands, their fathers, their sons in combat.](#)"
- [The National Organization of Women opposes father's rights proposals such as the presumption of shared parenting by family court](#)

...and the list goes on

They're seeing the same debunked lies and [myths](#) told over and over again:

- [Women make 77 cents for every dollar a man makes](#)
- [One in four women is the victim of rape or attempted rape](#)
- [Only 3% of rapists are punished](#)

The icing on the cake is seeing how infrequently women are held accountable for bad behavior:

- A woman can falsely accuse a man of rape, ruin his life, and suffer no consequences (see Crystal Gail Magnum and the Duke Lacrosse case and this video [How to Ruin a Mans Life over \\$13](#))
- A woman can sexually assault a man, [tearing his shirt off, putting her fingers in his mouth, and feeling his nipples, and be sentenced to mere probation without being registered as a sex offender.](#)
- [Women receive lighter sentences than men for the same crimes.](#)
- Due to VAWA, [a man can be convicted solely on a woman's testimony without need for corroborating evidence](#)

When feminists actually do get into debates, [which is rare](#), they lose spectacularly:

- [Marc Rudov delivers the killer blow at the end](#)
- [Cathy Lette vs Alex Deane on Twitter trolling / censorship](#)
- [Debate between Esther Vilar and German feminst Alice Schwarzer with English subtitles](#)

I'd like to believe that the majority of people value things like truth and logic, and feminists have shown that they are willing to twist the truth and defy logic to advance their agenda, playing to victimhood and shaming language instead. When presented with facts and evidence, this is typical of how they respond:

<https://i.imgur.com/qcokrfl.jpg>

"If someone doesn't value evidence, what evidence are you going to provide to prove that they should value it? If someone doesn't value logic, what logical argument could you provide to show the importance of logic?" — Sam Harris

"I don't give a shit LOL" -- Feminist

# **The Red Pill, Self-Improvement, and Masculinity**



# How You Know You're Alpha

*By IllimitableMan.*

[Article link.](#)

- You hold eye contact for longer with people. (confidence)
- Your posture is better. (lifting)
- Your voice is deeper. (lifting)
- You speak more confidently, even when you're bullshitting.
- You believe in yourself.
- You will fight if necessary. You are not conflict averse.
- Unless they are part of your trusted council, people's opinions will matter less to you. Almost nothing. As an alpha you realise people will shit test you all the time, you're desensitised to that.
- You see women as passive beings in the dating game to be acquired/seduced, not same-level equalists who are negotiated into contract. Attraction is not negotiable.
- You embrace pain and use it as a power source to keep pushing you further with your goals. As long as you have your pain and the motivation that brings, nothing any other fuck can say really does a dent in your psyche. If you've been to hell and back what does it matter that some cunt thinks X about you? Whatever. People who harness pain are stronger than people who hide from it in fear. You have learnt to make pain your friend rather than your enemy.
- You don't chase women when they give you more shit than they're worth, you replace them/seek new women. You don't pedestalise pussy. You have a "I'm the prize" mentality.
- You don't indulge in time wasting drama, you get the fuck on with your shit. Drama is time rape.
- You enforce your boundaries.

- You know when to ignore people/arguments/comments/situations which are lose-lose. When someone tries to provoke you/shit test you and you lose either way, you realise not to play.
- You take more risks. You are bold.
- You don't need to go to /r/asktrp.
- You're willing to lead projects/people, you don't shy from responsibility.
- When people attack your masculinity to try and coerce you, you don't let it phase you. You know you're masculine. Someone telling you you're a bitch because you won't go to the shop for them elicits a laugh at how pathetic their manipulation is, not a "oh boy they're right, I'm not even man enough to buy shit for them!"
- You become less tolerant to bullshit in general.
- You realise people, but women specifically, are always putting out subtle dominance tests to see how you will react. Your self-belief/frame will allow you to handle these fluidly and organically as and when they come, you don't need to read books or have preset plans to handle social situations.
- Men specifically will actually test you more than when you were beta, you will find they feel threatened/insecure by your masculinity that they lack, so they will throw more shit at you. Usually they do this passive aggressively. In a way, they are much like women. Funny how similar beta/omega men can be to women. They all characterise feminine behaviours.
- Extension of the previous point, narcissist alphas will try to AMOG you. Think of the obnoxious gym rat guys. If a guy is trying that kind of theatrical bullshit around you, he feels threatened by you. Unfortunately the brotherhood mentality does not extend too far out of the manosphere.
- You realise you're on your own in this world, your parents will die one day. Everything is down to you. You can only rely on you. People come and go, friends, women, whatever. You make yourself dependable for your needs.
- You realise when people are playing hard to get (men or women) and so you ignore them in response when they do finally decide to bother with you.
- You're quick to next people in general because you come from a place of abundance, not neediness.
- You're not lazy, you're always trying new shit to find your way in life.
- You're motivated and because you're not risk adverse, you keep failing until

you find a way that works. You don't fear failure, you embrace it. You are an experience junkie, good or bad.

- When nobodies talk shit about you, you laugh instead of getting offended. Banter is not alien to you, it's a second language.
- On the flip side to the previous point when it's not meant as banter, you don't care.
- Your sense of "fairness" may cause you to feel jealous when other people have successes you don't think they rationally deserve, but you take it on the chin. You know life isn't fair. If it's a friend, you kill that initial feeling there and then and you make yourself happy for them. It's your friend, not your enemy. Jealousy is a feminine trait. They may even bring you in later. Even if they don't, who cares. You support them/be happy for them and keep on grinding. The jealousy leads nowhere productive. You're a man of efficiency.
- You take responsibility for other peoples bullshit when it makes your life easier. Sounds counterintuitive on the surface level, but if being the fall guy earns you the favour you want/earns you the trust that needs to be earned with certain people, then it could be worth it to you. You evaluate all situations strategically and take calculated risks. On the flip, you do not take the wrap when it does not benefit you.
- You get shit the fuck done. You don't let problems build up, you thwart them before they become bigger problems. You handle shit.

Some of these points overlap I realise, no need to tell me.

I will have more self improvement based stuff on there in the future (got a whole little portal planned, which I'm excited about, kind of like a syllabus.) Likewise I am committed to quite a lot of future dark triad content.

### **For the alphas in progress:**

RP can take a long time to actualise, if you've been here 6 months and nothing has happened yet, that's because you're still unlearning old habits. Maybe you're not lifting yet, but you've stopped doing drugs/alcohol so much and you've cut your video game time down. You're not making gains, but you're mitigating vices. You

will have cheat days/relapse days, don't sweat it. Success is not linear. You have to deprogram before you can reprogram. Don't give up on yourself, keep reading and making baby steps. If there's anything I can recommend first and foremost, it's to get 7-8 hours sleep a night, get a weight lifting program on the go and eat as best as you can for the budget that you're on. The energy and focus you get from lifting will help kick start everything else. If you're too pussy shit to workout in a gym or you can't afford the monthly subscription, get a weight set and workout at home. There is no excuse not to get your lazy ass off the computer chair. Keep on keeping on gentlemen.

## **Abundance Mentality (Alpha) vs. Scarcity Mentality (Beta)**

*By IllimitableMan.*

[Article link.](#)

People with a scarcity mentality tend to exhibit:

- Exude desperation resulting in the pursuit of social dead-ends. Chase women.
- They cannot hold frame.
- Spend a lot of their time living mentally in the past. Going over and over things they cannot change.
- Have profound regrets which shake their confidence.
- Are averse to taking risks, they hold themselves back. Low T.
- Do not believe in their ability to succeed which presents itself as reticence, procrastination and a lack of confidence.
- Fear rejection from people.
- Require external validation from the group to feel content, they're insecure and lean on others.
- Ultimately perceive themselves and the world around them as lacking where it matters, happiness and opportunity.

People with an abundance mentality tend to exhibit:

- Nonchalance and indifference, sometimes they're arrogant, typically uncaring of small matters. Replace women.
- They hold frame well under pressure.
- Spend a lot of their time living mentally in the future, only coming into the present for breaks.
- Have profound ambitions which fan the flames of confidence and acts as

motivation for action.

- Tend to be adrenaline junkies who get off on high risk, dangerous behaviour. High T. Are obsessively bold about succeeding.
- Expect rejection from people.
- Validate themselves through their self-improvement, as long as they keep momentum they're secure with themselves. Self-reliant.
- Ultimately perceive the world around them as rigorous, but conquerable.

## Further Reading

<http://illimitablemen.com/2014/03/30/mental-models-abundance-vs-scarcity/>

# The Easiest Way To Raise Your Value As A Man

*By Sarcasticus.*

[Article link.](#)

The easiest way to raise your value as a man is to spend a majority of your day engaged in high value activities.

We know instinctively what are high value activities: lifting, working on your career, working on your side career, approaching women, learning a valuable skill, etc.

Most men spend most of their day engaged in low value activities: watching TV, surfing the net, engaged in social media. Consequently, most men find themselves living a mediocre life.

This seems like very simple advice, but in practice, it's very hard. It's hard to consistently wake up early and go to the gym - it's hard to put your head down and work on your career without surfing the internet or taking breaks - it's hard to put your ego on the line and approach women every day. However, it is these hard tasks which, repeated daily, will forge you into a higher value man.

Of course, we can't spend all day being a hard ass. We need to relax. That's why I emphasize spending a majority of your day engaged in high value activities. For example, in a 16 hour day, I'll likely spend 12 hours engaged in high value stuff, and 4 hours of goofing off. Some days I might work a bit more, some days I might work a bit less, but that's about average.

If you're ever confused whether an activity is high value or low value, keep in mind that every activity will be different depending on your situation. If you're an

investment banker, spending a majority of your day playing video games is clearly low value. But if you're a video game tester, then playing video games would be high value.

The easiest way to determine if an activity is high value is to ask yourself this question, "Does this activity help me achieve my goals?" If the answer is no, it's a low value activity. (And if you don't have goals, then read the post on goals on the sidebar.)

And as always, with any advice on the net, remember:

*"Adapt what is useful, reject what is useless, and add what is specifically your own." - Bruce Lee*



# So You Want To Be A Man? Welcome To Life On Hard Mode

By IllimitableMan.

[Article link.](#)

Being a man isn't easy, it's harder than being a woman. Average men envy average women because it's easier. There is less responsibility and there are higher rewards for embracing mediocrity when you're a woman. But get it right, really learn how to become a man, indulge in your pain and use your weakness, hatred and suffering to forge the mind of a philosopher as well as the body of a gladiator and you'll transcend to a level that women can only dream of.

Men are the disposable sex, because likewise, they're the experimental one. Whilst many experiments fail, those that survive the flames of the bunsen burner yield miraculous results. Women are humanity's control group. The majority are average and unremarkable and lack the capacity to ever be anything other than average. They are rigid in their potential. Whilst they envy the heights they see great men reach, they neglect to notice the depths that many a failed man has plunged to in pursuit of his manhood. A fate they need not ever fear.

There are many reasons for why a man fails to handle/lead women. The most common is the man was raised in a feminist culture bereft of accurate knowledge about relationships and manhood. Another, perhaps more tragic is when a patriarch gets ill and loses his vitality after an accident/old age, and by the loss of authority his ailment brings about, he becomes unattractive to his woman. It doesn't really matter what the reason is, because the bottom line is that as a man you don't get to be weak.

If you're weak, you're unattractive and you lose out. You lose out in a way a woman doesn't for being weak. Female weakness is a source of power for "raising

awareness," playing on the "save-a-hoe" complex of men to protect the fair maiden. Whilst male weakness on the other hand has no place in the world. None at all. Anywhere. Nobody will cherish it, and nothing will change because of it. Egalitarianism as a concept is by merit of this, not an intrinsic human disposition, but an intellectual social construct.

As a man most people won't help you for being weak, they don't sympathise with your weakness, they laugh at you and "how you could ever let yourself get like that."

As a man, they laugh at you and they enjoy ridiculing your weakness as it makes them feel powerful to know that they're not at the bottom of the food chain. They indulge in the antithesis between your weakness and their power because it feels good and it reassures their own insecurities. Your weakness is a reminder for other men what not to be, or to allow themselves to become. What not to be is the only useful function that weak men serve to others.

For man there is oft nothing but Schadenfreude and contempt for his weakness. Some will kick you down further and call it tough love, and of those saying "tough love" few will mean it, thinking it may help a weak man bounce back. Others don't mean it, they just don't care and don't want to look bad for being uncaring.

That's why "the whole macho thing" is something that women will never truly understand the purpose of, because it's not something they need to rely upon to be respected or respect themselves. They ask men to open up to the fragility of their humanity at their own peril, unaware of how self-condemning such an exercise is for man. Unaware how quickly even the smallest iota of weakness a man indulges in can consume and transform said man into a bumbling joke.

Women don't have to be strong, or emulate strength or pretend to be strong for anything but their kids, they get to be weak and look for someone to be strong for them and they will still be respected as humans for making that choice. [The women who do manage to become strong, do so to their own detriment, taking on the role of man and masculinising to achieve strength, making themselves unattractive to](#)

[men in the process](#). Where there is compassion and sympathy for the weakness of women, there is little if any, for men. The homeless statistics reinforce this idea across humanity.

A weak woman is an unfortunate woman and she can still be attractive to men. She is unfortunate in the sense that nobody assumes her undoing is her own fault. A weak man is a failed man, unattractive to both men and women alike. A failure in that it is assumed he didn't have what it takes to succeed, there being nobody to blame but him. As I stated prior, women aren't the experimental sex, men are. And so as men we're all held personally responsible for the experiment that we call "our lives." It's all or nothing. Death or glory. Carpe diem.

## **You Are Disposable. The World Does Not Care About You.**

*By leftajar.*

[Article link.](#)

Men have always been the disposable sex. It's the biological truth of our species. The number of wombs in a tribe represented its most important resource: the capacity for reproduction.

One very happy man could generate enough semen to impregnate the women of an entire tribe. So what about the other men? They have ZERO inherent reproductive value. Their only value is what they can produce for the tribe.

That is why women are objectified for their beauty and men are objectified for their resources. That is the most basic, naked contribution of each sex to our species' survival.

What does that mean? Your life is inherently worthless. There are only two people in this world who truly care about you: your mom, and your dad -- if he stuck around.

SOCIETY DOES NOT GIVE A SHIT ABOUT YOU. It sucks, but it's our biological tendency.

Men have risked their lives to explore the world, work dangerous jobs, and go to war. Millions of men have been ground into the dust under the boot of the modern war machine. And for what? Resources.

Watch this, and think about MALE DISPOSABILITY: [The D-Day Scene from Saving Private Ryan](#)

Look at those men in the boat. Grim, determined, some prepared to die. And for what? Patriotism? Honour? Because they were shamed into doing it by society?

Most of the men in that boat will die. Machine gun rounds will pierce their organs. Mortars will blow off a limb, and they'll bleed out. Or they may simply drown in the channel under the weight of their gear. (Edit: some of these men were drafted, meaning they had no choice. That's slavery.)

(Side note: how could anyone in their right mind expect women to go to war?)

THE ONLY MEMORY of the dead men will be a tombstone in a national cemetery, and the grief of their mothers when they receive a typed letter from the US Army.

Civilization was paved with the bones of men.

You are disposable. Society doesn't care about you. CARE ABOUT YOURSELF FIRST. ALWAYS. Because outside of your mother, nobody else will.

## Respect is Earned

*By Archwinger.*

[Article link.](#)

There's a post floating around today from 4chan, containing a story as old as time: A guy gets dumped by his girl because she found someone better. I guess I can elaborate with a little more detail. A guy and his girl move into a new apartment, the girl starts hanging out with some of the people there, doesn't come home one night, and the next day dumps her boyfriend. She explains that she met someone else, is really attracted to him, and was with him last night. The guy asks, "Did you fuck him?" and she responds, "No, but I'm going to." She explains, essentially, that she didn't want to cheat on him, so she waited to break up with him first.

Honestly, that little factoid doesn't matter. The part where she spends all night with this other guy talking about how they're going to fuck, making sure she has sure thing lined up before dumping her boyfriend – that's cheating, too. Just as much as fucking the guy would be. If you ask me, she might as well have fucked him.

Our Red Pill brethren predictably flood this thread with comments about how annoying women are. How can she be so callously disrespectful, people ask. I actually find it interesting how much more direct and honest women are toward men that they don't respect. Once she doesn't need you any more, she doesn't need to lie to you any more. I'd give it decent odds that this girl was telling her guy the truth, and she hadn't fucked the other man yet. She's breaking up with him anyway, she clearly doesn't respect him, and she gains very little by lying to him. It's not like she seriously expects this guy to remain her friend or admire her for not actually cheating. That's stuff she's telling him for his benefit to let him down easy.

She doesn't benefit from that.

But anyway, TRP predictably complains. Women have no honor, no respect, yada yada. But there's something our fathers told us, or should have, that really applies here. Something society tells us daily, actually: Respect is earned.

Think about what we're asking of this girl, or of women in general, if we expect loyalty. We're asking that if a woman meets another man who's better than you – be it better looking, higher status, more wealth/security, better social acumen, more interesting skills and hobbies and shit to talk about, whatever – that she pass on this better opportunity solely because you came along first. Essentially, we're asking women to only commit to a relationship with you if she expects to be with you forever. She can never cheat, never dump you for a better offer. Just stick around forever, or until you dump her. Because apparently, it's a race and you came along first, so anyone who comes along later must be ignored.

That's not a fair thing to ask of women. It's not her responsibility to stay with you on principle alone. It's your responsibility to be the kind of man who doesn't get dumped or cheated on. It's your responsibility to earn her respect, every minute of every day. If she passes on a better offer just on principle, she'll spend the rest of your soon-to-be-very-short-lived relationship resenting you, finding fault in everything about you, suddenly "realizing" how unhappy she is.

Society's message – "respect is earned" – is a true one. Where society fails us is in the shitty advice we're given on how to earn respect. You'd think that being a loyal boyfriend, having an established history with a woman, moving in together, doing shit for her, planning on a future together – that all of this would lead to her respecting you, such that when she meets another guy she's attracted to, she can shrug it off. Sure, the new guy is hot and fun, but she has history with you, right? You've done so much for her over the years, right? Tough shit. That's not how you earn respect.

You do not earn respect by respecting others. You earn respect by respecting you. It's counter-intuitive. By being a selfish ass who puts himself first and does

what he wants, even at the expense of others sometimes, the whole world bends at the knee and chases after you, trying to win your validation. Everyone else is so fucking polite and respectful by default, while you're busy respecting yourself instead. That rubs everyone funny, not just women. That makes people try harder around you.

Your job is to be powerful. Important. Successful. You don't have to be a dick if you don't want to, but being nice and doing shit for your girlfriend? That's the path to being replaced. Your job is to do shit for you, that as a side-effect, benefits your girlfriend. Your job is to be a man that raises others up. That raises the value of everyone in the room just by being there. To be the man that every woman wants to fuck and every man wants to be.

You don't avoid getting cheated on and dumped by being a nicer boyfriend. You avoid getting cheated on and dumped by becoming a man that nobody in her right mind would ever risk fucking things up with.

I, for one, don't want women to be loyal, principled, and honorable. That would just encourage me to get lazy. Reward the stupid and lucky. The right-place, right-time guys who just happened to get there first. I'd rather earn respect.

## Featured Comment

*By IllimitableMan.*

*The part where she spends all night with this other guy talking about how they're going to fuck, making sure she has sure thing lined up before dumping her boyfriend – that's cheating, too. Just as much as fucking the guy would be.*

Hypergamous branch swing upgrade. Emotional cheating setting a precedent for sexual cheating.



*Once she doesn't need you any more, she doesn't need to lie to you any more.*

Because she's on that fucking lease. Bitches be sneaky.

*That's stuff she's telling him for his benefit to let him down easy. She doesn't benefit from that.*

True but for your average guy aka beta aka clueless chump - this is a fucking ball stomping. Small potatoes to you and I is a huge fucking deal for Johnny average out there. Remember TRP stacks the deck heavily in your favour, IMO, TRP = the social equivalent of insider trading.

*Think about what we're asking of this girl, or of women in general, if we expect loyalty*

Loyalty? Oh ma GAWD MUH TRIGGER. UhhhhHHhHhHhHhHhH these hoes ain't LOYYYY-ALLLL. Fuck sake. Chris Brown keeps possessing me spontaneously despite my lack of enthusiastic consent.

*That's not a fair thing to ask of women. It's not her responsibility to stay with you on principle alone. It's your responsibility to be the kind of man who doesn't get dumped or cheated on. It's your responsibility to earn her respect, every minute of every day. If she passes on a better offer just on principle, she'll spend the rest of your soon-to-be-very-short-lived relationship resenting you, finding fault in everything about you, suddenly "realizing" how unhappy she is.*

Even though I don't take too well to this kind of passive "you're the man so it's all your fault" kind of language, I have to agree with the general premise. If you CAN'T COMMAND RESPECT, or INSPIRE IT - you won't get it. With men/or women. Obviously women are more pragmatic and less honourable generally speaking, plus they're who you want to fuck - so the chances of getting burned are higher with them. Don't think a guy who doesn't respect you won't burn you either though. It's that simple. Women are relentless with this shit. Their love is entirely based on adoration stemming from respect for your superiority. That's superiority

relative to her. If a better option comes along, the comparison becomes a three way (no pun intended) and if he trumps you, she'll be tempted to branch swing. If they don't respect you as being THE SHIT then they can't [truly] love you. So yes despite "fairness" (female nature isn't fucking fair, but it is what it is) this is quite right. If she's ditching your ass it doesn't mean she's not a cunt, but it means she's got better options. Bitches be pragmatic. Cut your losses and if it's your style, get revenge.

*I, for one, don't want women to be loyal, principled, and honorable. That would just encourage me to get lazy.*

Disagree. Women would be a lot more fucking likeable with these traits. As it stands you're on shaky ground. Her loyalty being directly chained to your power, unless you're quite the head-fucker (why do you think so many guys care about the DT) average alpha gets circumstantial loyalty. Mr "I own your mind and blow you away with 50 shades of grey style fucking" owns her body and soul, and will alpha widow her for fucking eternity, effectively making her a "toxic asset" on the dating market.

In relation to the previous paragraph: Law 41 is a fucking bitch. If you translate it into the "48 laws of TRP" law 41 (don't step into a "great" man's shoes) would be "don't date a bitch who used to fuck with a dark triad alpha" so that's your drug dealers, your murderers, your sadistic types, convicts, those really IDGAF to the core kinds of people who really aren't right in the head but had all the charm and cunning to get her enthralled. If she had a relationship with a guy like that just run for the fucking hills you will never have more of an emotional effect on her than he did. Which means over in solipsistic girl world, over in their little head of hers, you're inferior to him, you're not the "best she ever had" because "you don't make her feel as passionately as CLIVE the Cocaine Connect." You could be a billionaire ripped famous motherfucker with all the game in the world and you'd still be the fucking beta bux to her in spite of your SMV. You won't even put a dent into what that guy did to her. She's fucking spoilt. Fucked up. Deflowered mentally. Cut and run.

Women could be all these things, and you know, not wanting to starve to death, my material desires, and having intellectual passion would inspire me to NOT BE lazy. I guess you're right some guys wouldn't do shit over-sexed, but plenty of guys have passions aside from sex. Some people think the only reason we have passions is because we hope we'll get laid from having them. But I disagree. You have passion for the sake of passion. A mission for liking the fuck out of something and finding it interesting - not because you think "hey, neurology might get me laid so IMMA DO THAT!" it's not like doing gender studies, is it? Haha.

I think the constant dread of "If I'm not on top of my shit, I'm gonna lose everything" is not a strong place to be coming from. It's true, it's the nature of the game, but being aware of it AND BEING SIGNIFICANTLY INVESTED AKA MARRIED/LTR is a losers game. I understand guys want companionship, a lot of you are romantics and you're scared of being lonely as you get older - but you're losing when you give her the commitment jackpot.

You're in a perpetual war known as "a relationship" or "marriage" hoping that you can keep this war between husband and wife in a fucking limbo so she doesn't cash out into government/judicial sanctioned victory. Can't slip too much. Can't lose your job. Better not get sick for too long. Can't fail too many shit tests or catch a mother fucking break. Because what happens if you cave? Your world crumbles around you. Relationships are TRP on hard mode because IMO, in a culture where society isn't stacking the deck in the man's favour, the FICKLENESS of women pre-disposes them to cut and run on your ass. When you treat men and women as legal equals, due to how women love, you make monogamy merely possible rather than probable. They are fickle, Briffaults Law whoring motherfuckers. If you're not close to perfect in your game, health, money, and one other guy interested in her trumps you in most of those fields - you're fucked. Royally. On that point, don't LTR anything over a 7 if you want a crack at love, the hot bitches have too much power and you have less room for error. If you want to fuck hot girls, plate 'em.

I can definitely understand the angle I think you were getting at, which is that an over-sexed and well-fed man is a lazy man, but I think it's weak reasoning for justifying the fickleness of female nature, and even, condoning it. Female nature is

pretty fucking shit. Yeah it's possible to come to terms with it, but justifying FICKLENESS as a positive or even acceptable trait is an escapade in hamstering. Realising and accepting aren't the same shit. I realise bitches are fickle, but I don't accept their fickleness. Just because I realise they are like this, I don't have to like it (Accept it.) You can love women all you like, but what you love is inherently shitty on a morbidly profound level of significance. And I can see why a guy craving to love wants to fucking reconcile his need to love with the nature of women. I get that, I do. I really do. It's so shit your love has to delude you, and I see it seep into how guys "in-love" or trying to make an LTR work, think. I'm here to cut through that impairment. As long as you realise that, but choose to love regardless, for your own sake/happiness, then cool. But let's not get shit twisted. You LTR guys mellow the fuck out and get really rose-tinted. Careful.

*By Archwinger:*

If it's sidebar material, we've taken a turn for the worse. The notion that we should be uncritical of a woman's extreme hypergamy (made worse by feminism eroding traditionalism) and all it entails is simply folly. Sure, we can accept the "new rules" of the game and accept the heightened importance of dominance, of game, of maintaining frame above all else. We can acknowledge that qualities that were sought after in a male partner in the past (during long era of traditionalism)-honesty and decency - are no longer valued. We can do all this and bang as much as we can.

But to go a step further and claim that what women are doing by over-valuing Cro-Magnon era qualities in men and if they have a cessation of them for a short period of time, it's a-ok for them to fuck the neighbor, is going way too far in my opinion.

It'd be like bidding on a project, and all of a sudden the seller going - "Instead of the best deal, I am going to select bids based on alphabetical order.." You could have worked six months on that deal and now the rules are arbitrary and frankly, asinine. I would get with the program and change my company name to Aardvark

Unlimited but under no circumstances would I PRAISE THE SELLER and think they are doing me a favor. Women are doing what's natural? Killing people is natural and so is rape. We don't praise or condone people for simply following what comes natural.

What we are comparing modern female behavior with is the past compact between men and women which was based on mutualism. Which means past good deeds do accrue to the present; you're playing the long-game, not vine-swinging the minute the Tingles subside or Guy B gives you more Tingles.

We can adapt and win at this corrupt game with frankly outmoded and somewhat ridiculous rules. But I'll be damned if I sit here and say the people creating the new rules (hypergamous twats) are somehow justified and righteous for constructing the new system. Nor do I think every time some twat cheats on her BF that it's "the guy's fault for not holding frame, being dominant enough, etc.." There is a continuum of hypergamous behavior that women belong to; and when they're on the extreme end, you could hold frame like Russell Brand, and still have a chick vine-swing. The idea of "earning respect" is immaterial in a world where there is always a man with higher SMV than you and with the wrong chick, that means she's gone.

*I, for one, don't want women to be loyal, principled, and honorable. That would just encourage me to get lazy.*

It's actually not easy being those things. I've lifted for 10 years and being principled, esp. in cases where I could have benefitted at someone else's expense, is much harder than anything i've done in the weight room.

## My Stance On Women

*By IllimitableMan.*

[Article link.](#)

A dude in another topic said:

"The natural instinct is to excel for pussy not for yourself" and I felt my response constituted a topic in and of itself:

I've noticed that many men place their self-worth on how many women they can fuck and only bother getting a career and working on themselves so they can have a family. Whilst a noble pursuit as having a genetic lineage and maintaining your family line is important, I believe many men are forming a faulty emotional foundation by "dedicating it all to women." Preserving a genetic lineage should be something you do for yourself, because you are an egotist that wants to preserve his existence in the world via his offspring once he has left the world you shouldn't be pedestaling women because women are the centre of your universe. Women aren't worth shit next to a fully actualised man, if you're a high value man any woman in your life is lucky you even keep her around.

When I took women off the pedestal and introspected deeply and assessed my own flaws and shortcomings, I realised that in order to ever be happy and attain self-mastery that I needed to become massively selfish, stop neglecting my own needs and stop hiding from my own weaknesses. I needed to work on myself each and everyday instead of being a lazy unmotivated fuck. I needed to overcome my weaknesses so they no longer existed. And I was doing that shit all for myself, there were no women in the equation and I wasn't hoping "by doing this, I'm going to get women." I did that shit because I wanted to like myself and respect myself and be someone I could look at in the mirror and go "that's a man." A lot of guys

say "you're hamstering, you do it all for women." And you know what? I think fuck them, they're projecting why they do this self improvement shit for themselves onto me. Sure I like getting laid who the fuck doesn't? But it's not the centre of my universe, my art is. Ignore the wise fucks who think they know you better than you know yourself, because they don't, especially not the random nobodies on the internet.

As men we are often trained to be too selfless for our own good, especially in matters of women. All the gents raised by single mothers got a full dose of white knight 101 from their idealistic unwittingly castrating mothers. This is why I live the self-improvement ethos to the maximum of my capability. Without that, I don't see much point in life. You stagnate, you drift along without purpose, without direction, without "a higher goal." Women, to me, are not "a higher goal." I rather be a socially clueless idiot with a gay shirt landing some shit on a comet than your average billy beta who occasionally feels like "the man of the house" when he's lifting the shopping bags for his self-entitled brat of a wife. After my last long-term relationship and then being subsequently introduced to The Red Pill I found "doing it all for women" to be a pointless endeavour. Just because they demand your sacrifice, like the bratty foot stomping narcissists that they are, it doesn't mean you need to concede.

Women are fickle, they are a crap foundation to build your success upon. Building your success, your skills, your reasoning for living upon the back of a woman is like building your home on top of a fault line, that shit is going to fuck up and you are going to lose everything. It is not worth the hassle. If you have a woman in your life you invite her to come and enjoy your world, you do not base your world upon her. That is chronic nuclear mistake #1.

Indulge in your own self-development, but more importantly, cautiously indulge in women sporadically. Do it on your own fucking terms. I realise some men (particularly PUAs) are addicted to the rush of female validation/having successful social interactions with women and getting lays, and yeah that is a fuck ton of fun, but if it takes up any more than say 20% of your life, you're wasting your one chance at a life on this Earth. Some guys have mummy issues and look to get their

female validation fix through fucking around with women, that's not a problem for me my mother loved me growing up so I don't have to burden that kind of fucked up psychology as an adult. But if you do, try and get a handle on that shit.

When all is said and done and the dirt is dropping on your coffin, there's fuck all to show for all those relationships. You're living in the moment for a fucking relationship buzz. You're addicted to "discovering and experiencing fresh love over and over again." I rather have a fucking whiskey habit and become a multimillionaire than waste my life falling in love over and over again, getting lays over and over again. I can see the playboy lifestyle appealing to some, the whole Casanova thing, but that isn't me. I rather be that bachelor that works on his art and dedicates his life to perfecting and refining his art rather than making my art the pursuit of women (as PUAs/playboys have opted to do so.)

My art comes first. I come second to my art, my needs come second to my art and only come before it if those needs stop me from working on my art (e.g., I have fallen sick and need medicine.) Thirdly comes my parents, my cousins etc. Fourthly comes any woman lucky enough to be in my life. If she doesn't like her position she can feel free to take a hike because I couldn't give a fuck. Accept me for what I am or get the fuck out is how I treat women, you can't let bitches change you. They always try to change you and make you dysfunctional, they self-sabotage the relationship by destroying you. Sometimes its intentional, sometimes its their insecurity getting the better of everything but you have to keep a keen eye on that shit. You never get to take a break with women, you always have to be on top of shit. You never get to "just love a woman," love is a pleasantry, a freedom reserved solely for women. Just like they get to cry publicly and still be respected whilst we as men do not.

For creatures so outwardly beautiful, modern women sure are ugly on a spiritual level. There is nobler, purer beauty and far more sophisticated art for a man to indulge himself in out there than the canvas of a woman's body. Fuck to scratch an itch, enjoy women momentarily and occasionally, but don't be a woman obsessionist. Keep them at a healthy distance. If a bitch infiltrates the castle walls and starts trying to get inside your head you have to find a room in the castle she



cannot access. You can never give yourself completely to her because otherwise she will destroy you.

I find it difficult to respect men who are women-centric and put women ahead of everything else; I always thought being obsessed with the other gender was a female trait from as young as my teen years. I remember asking "why do girls care so much about boys?" when I was an inexperienced and naive boy at 13. Women give so many fucks about us because they are completely dependent on us to obtain their highest goals. The chanting of "I'm a strong independent woman that don't need no man!" is flat out dissociative denialism. There is no higher goal for a woman than to be a wife and a mother. If they go the career route, they miss out on that or do it poorly and regret their choices. For men, there is so much more out there. We are the kings of the abstract, our logic sets us free from the shackles of emotional neuroticism and allows us to seek pleasures from our hobbies to an extent that women can only dream of. Women envy us, but we need not be indebted to them, the paradigm is what it is. Women are something we indulge in, but we don't have to dedicate to them. A wise friend once said to me "IM, women are dream killers." He's not wrong. Don't be a fucking pussy begging idiot. You are more important than the pussy your dick needs to fuck occasionally.

# Male Bonding, Arousal Addiction, and Isolation

*By veggie\_girl.*

[Article link.](#)

Let me first say that humans are attracted to arousal, and not just the sexual kind. The human brain is like a gym rat that loves to workout and is only happy when its working or being stimulated by self-produced chemicals or externally introduced drugs. To deny the brain stimulation and work will lead to insanity or death. [\[Source\]](#) Not all arousal is sexual, simple mental stimulation counts. However where an individual brain draws stimulation from can go far to shape a personality. There is a saying, "you are a product of your environment" - that touches vaguely upon that, I wish to go a bit deeper (perhaps in another post, for this one there's 3 related things that mainly need to be covered).

"The end result of male socialization is a set of defaults that are programmed by society, culture, media, family, and religion. The typical male attributes are supposed to be: strength and self-reliance, success, no sissy stuff or don't be like women, sexual interest and prowess, active, independent, tough, aggressive, dominant, stoic, and never cries (Bem, 1974; Broverman et al., 1970; Herek, 1986; Zilbergeld, 1992). These defaults define a fanciful standard of masculinity." [\[Source\]](#) Aside from male bonding, nearly every other source of stimulus in a modern boy/man's life is going to cause an undesirable effect. Television has been feminized, the internet has been feminized, schools have been feminized, and even online forums such as reddit are rampantly diluted. There are few places of masculine bonding, but men/boys need it more than ever. The existence of TRP is virtualized monument of that need. Social interaction with men is a positive experience and research by Phillip Zimbardo shows that men actually prefer the social company of men. This socialization causes a cortical arousal that has a direct effect on the [reticulating activating system] and leads to higher production of [vasopression](#). This can be a determining factor on whether someone

pursues the activities of an introvert or extrovert. [\[Source\]](#) There isn't yet a lot of research on this topic, but it's worth considering that [18 US presidents were fraternity members](#), and there is also this [long list of unsourced statistics regarding fraternities](#) reminding us that all of today's male leaders came from groups of men who socialize together. So where does arousal addiction and isolation play into this? It prevents it, and more.

It has been proven that humans will seek out the highest state of arousal that involves the lowest amount of work. [\[Source\]](#) This leaves both men and women in a state of addiction to whatever fleeting arousal they can achieve. For women it's often free male validation where I could use r/gonewild as a case study. Which activities do we see an epidemic of addiction towards among young men? Porn, video games, drugs, or a combination, all of which cause the brain to produce an easy and otherwise risk-free source of happy-chemicals. [\[Source\]](#)

Why is porn so addicting? Because visual erotica in particular arouses more than just genitals, it also induces a brain arousal (activation) level that is unseen with other forms of stimulation. [\[Source\]](#) This is particular to males. When a man sees a naked woman, parts of his brain activate that were otherwise not active. Hormones begin pumping through his body. His brain is on hyper-drive, and it likes it. But what good is that in isolation? And there is a lot of isolation going on, more than ever before. The average boy spends a minimum of 3650 hours playing video games by the time he is 19 years old. [\[Source\]](#) With the median being closer to [10,000 hours](#). This isn't to say video gaming is a bad thing. Quite the opposite. Gamers have been found to be 25% faster to make decisions, and have improved eye-coordination. [\[Source\]](#). Some would even say that "An Hour A Day (Gaming) Is Key To Success In Life" However the problem with the average gamer, is all of this is done in isolation. Skype and Teamspeak are no substitutions for physical socialization. Remote communication does not trigger the brain to produce the same chemicals. [\[Source\]](#) Gaming and porn (in moderation) aren't the problem, isolation created by overuse of these habits is the problem.

Does this scenario sound surprisingly familiar to the social anxiety experienced by many men (and women)? "In a later study on the effect of total isolation from

birth, the researchers found that the test monkeys, upon being released into a group of ordinary monkeys, "usually go into a state of emotional shock, characterized by . . . autistic self-clutching and rocking." Harlow noted, "One of six monkeys isolated for three months refused to eat after release and died five days later." After several weeks in the company of other monkeys, most of them adjusted—but not those who had been isolated for longer periods. "Twelve months of isolation almost obliterated the animals socially," Harlow wrote. They became permanently withdrawn, and they lived as outcasts—regularly set upon, as if inviting abuse." [[Source](#)]

This is a bigger issue for men because women can afford to have zero social skills on the sexual market. Women are pursued and can passively attract a mate. [[Source](#)] Women are more than capable of sharing a male from the top 20%. Women are not expected to lead in any substantial capacity. For men on the other hand social mastery is a necessary part of life and is essential for successful reproduction, unless literal rape were a viable sexual strategy. And men don't like to share their women with other men.

In conclusion, one could argue that because video games, the internet, and porn provide an easy source of stimulation that induces dopamine in the brain, people are less likely to go out and take other risks that would grant it. That can be good when it comes to avoiding things like heroin, but bad when it comes to innovating, learning, leading, and adventure-seeking. None of this is necessarily causation in one direction or the other, however the correlation is undeniable.

TL;DR - Male bonding is extremely important, especially for young boys/men. It produces essential skills/habits men need that will push them to the top 20%. Using a computer to communicate is still isolation, you need physical people; embracing, touching, even hitting one another. Arousal addiction doesn't help with the isolation problem. Physical isolation will kill your social skills, lead to depression, and many other negative effects even if you are receiving stimulation via the internet or other remote means.

## Featured Comment

*By IllimitableMan.*

This is endemic as a result of the collapse of the family unit being widespread in feminist countries, more and more boys are finding themselves isolated. In the days of the nuclear family your chance at having a father to bond with and siblings/brothers was far higher and children who are sons of single parent mothers are at the most danger of social anxiety and isolation, they cannot bond with their mothers in the way that they need to, they have an absent father and no siblings and typically they are born into poverty. What are there chances in life? In terms of SMV unless they were born genetic jackpot winners and were blessed with good looks, they have the deck completely stacked against them and are born into dare I say, something of an SMV deficit with massively high risk factors for delinquency.

The ingredients for success to help them fulfill their potential are simply absent. If such young men are ever lucky enough to find TRP and take on a self-improvement mindset, immediately they are awash with regret from all the wasted time and lack of opportunity they had. All those years wasted on being an orbiter, playing games, having bad friends, being too emotionally crippled to have meaningful friendships, it's a fuck fest of delinquency which rapes the shit out of a guys chances in life. Nobody talks about it, nobody at all, because most people don't give a fuck. But it's not as rare as people would like to think. If this sounds like you or you identify with this shit, leave a comment here, it will be interesting to see how many people need TRP because they were brought up in this kind of shitty situation or similar.

Their chances at socialisation, predominantly schooling and the workplace yield little to no social reward, that is to say, because they are not high SMV nobody really wants to know them, who cares about poor guys who aren't good looking and have no popularity? Fucking nobody and yet, that describes the majority of

guys who are born into poverty and single parent/low education households with no sizeable family to take care of them. How do guys like that often get attention and try to break out from the mediocrity? They sell drugs, they get involved in gangs, anything to give them money, status and sex, shit they wouldn't get if they didn't break the law. The guys who don't do that or are too scared to do that? They end up in the porn/games/internet cycle, too irrationally fearful of people that even leaving the house is a big deal, talking to people in shops is a big deal and etc. They are so used to isolation it's become their M.O.

I'd argue the dichotomy we have now is that as a low SMV male it is incredibly difficult TO NOT BE lonely, isolation is almost the status quo for males, the millennials and to a growing extent, Gen X, are incredibly narcissistic, who has time for those who haven't already made it in life? Seemingly, not many people.

My advice is take up as many hobbies as you can afford/have spare time for, obviously that's the gym but there's other stuff, debating clubs, dance, martial arts, whatever it is that allows you to meet other people and have some fun whilst you're at it. Friends are like money, difficult to get when you have none, but when you have plenty of it getting more is effortless. Preselection is insane, but inversely, so is the lack of it. A lack of preselection can lead to nobody wanting to know you, I don't even mean the opposite sex, I'm talking same-sex friendships too. Most people are close-minded and judgemental, they won't even try to look past superficialities to like you, if you're not a high-flyer they're not interested.

Shit, the standards for masculinity are so high, and the infrastructure to ascertain it for many men is all but absent, it's no wonder so many boys/men are incubating themselves with porn/games/internet. If you're isolated and the struggle is getting you down, you may as well enjoy your prison. Not that I advocate that lifestyle in anyway, but simply that I can understand perfectly well why it happens. Nobody cares about these people so these people do their best to make life as bearable as possible, even if that means forgetting how much their life sucks and distracting themselves with fantasy constantly, day-in and day out.

Such is the nature of system, when the system does a shit on someone but gives

them none of the information they need to see it for what it is, they delude themselves on behalf of the system to stop themselves from going insane from how shit everything is. Escapism is a form of self-preservation for people who don't know how to or simply aren't brave enough to engage in self-improvement. When you have nothing, when you have nobody, stepping into the gym and lifting some weights around strangers is a big fucking deal, it takes a lot of courage, those boys are so neglected and so anxious that it's unreal, they will actively stop themselves from pursuing self-improvement because they are perpetually scared as a result of isolation, thus perpetuating the cycle further, they become their own biggest obstacles.

# **Feminism and the Death of the Male Mentor**

*By JayGatsbyFan.*

[Article link.](#)

One of the failures of modern society is the removal of the male mentor due to the feminine imperative of crushing the spirit of young boys. Women have done such a good job of this, men will hold "I'm a feminist because masculinity is scary" signs. We have failed to provide a stable outlet for male aggression and have evolved into a state of passivity and tolerance. We are tolerant of female bullshit, of our circumstances, and of not getting what we desire. I'm not a Maher fan, but when he said we "anesthetize ourselves with sports and pornography," he was right. Instead of letting boys wrestle, fight, explore, and physically exert themselves, we pump them full of drugs as to "not upset the girls" with their budding masculinity. Instead of participating in sports, we watch them on TV and play video games, vicariously achieving... nothing. This molds the charisma and youthful exuberance of a child into an insecure, mentally absent adult with no real life experiences to draw upon in times of difficulty. We've created a state of "yes men" toward feminists that will bend to every whim and outrage of the movement. A "man" that's so terrified of confrontation, commitment, and being alone that he will do anything to avoid it.

And I don't mean commitment on a relationship level with women, I speak of commitment to a decision, to an ideal. To decide to take responsibility for your life, to educate yourself, to find out what you stand for, and make progress toward whatever your end goal may be (an artist, an engineer, a professional athlete). We don't understand the concept of moderation anymore when we spend all of our waking hours on the internet, playing video games, and muck about with zero direction. How many of us grow up devoid of knowledge in fundamental male concepts like history, philosophy, art, music, the classics, poetry, Shakespeare, the



Bible, and other cornerstones of civilization? We teach these texts because of their ability to mold young boys into educated, driven young men. You don't need a love of language to appreciate Shakespeare, and you don't need to be religious to pluck meaning and understanding from The Bible. Great men like Aristotle, Plato, Tesla, Darwin, Michelangelo, Bernini, Homer, Virgil, Bach, Mozart, Caesar, Alexander The Great, are being left behind because of their "white privilege." How many young men can name every player in the starting lineup of their favorite sports team? How many can name as many scientists? When men with encyclopedic knowledge of the Star Wars universe can't take the time out to read The Iliad, culture will continue trending downward.

We don't know these things because we've been denied them by feminism. Hard concepts have been replaced by easier texts because it wasn't fair to girls that facts were more important than feelings. We've put more importance on sensitivity than the truth. We are outraged by any dissenting opinion. Essays are more about how you feel about the "privilege" of Dickens instead of a critical examination of his novels. We look at a Delacroix painting and say "LOL I don't get it" while thinking dogs playing poker is great art. The subjugation of male knowledge and the introduction of "privilege" has undermined society to such a large degree that now the very meaning of misogyny has morphed into "anything that women can't do better than men."

As I look around at modern culture, I see men like Mister Rogers retroactively labeled as a "creep" and "pedophile" because of his interest in helping young children. You'd be hard pressed to find a more compassionate and caring individual than Fred Rogers, but modern feminism has deducted that men are incapable of such feelings and commitments without ulterior criminal, sexual motives. We have let women deracinate male influence because of irrational fears of molestation from any man that comes within arms reach of a child.

If you haven't already, I suggest you watch the movie *The Man Without a Face* with Mel Gibson. In it, Gibson plays a teacher Mr. McLeod that is involved in a serious car crash that kills one of his pupils. The physical scars and emotional guilt has left him reclusive and unable to process his grief. It isn't until he encounters a

young boy, Chuck Norstadt, that he discovers a reawakening of his passion for teaching.

This film is classic Red Pill material. Chuck wants to escape the crazy house of his mother and two sisters for a boarding school to follow the footsteps of his father and someday become an Air Force pilot. The women have no idea how to handle his energy or exuberance. His mother hops from marriage to marriage, his sisters can't help him, and he's lost in the world without a positive male outlet. The mother keeps going after betas unable to point Chuck in the right direction, including a Yale professor who introduces himself to the boy by saying "Just call me Carl. I don't need any of that imperialistic, post-Hegelian, authoritarian crap for my ego." Doesn't sound out of place in today's social justice world, does it?

In McLeod he finds a mentor, a teacher, and a friend. While McLeod teaches Norstadt essential things Geometry, Latin, and English, he imparts more important things: the concept of hard work, the importance of taking responsibility for what you want, why integrity and ethics are the virtues a man should live by, and how learning to reason and think for yourself is the only way you'll discover the meaning of truth.

How many of you would have been able to benefit from a man like this? How many young boys would today? We need to reintegrate the concept of male wisdom and mentoring to young boys again, or we're going to grow up into a world that's weak, overly sensitive, and passive. Where things like "stare rape" are words with legitimacy. These are not virtues of a healthy, tolerant, and growing society. It's the death knell before the actual tough guys come to kick our ass.

## **An Overview of Powertalk**

*By bicepsblastingstud.*

[Comment link](#) from a [larger article](#).

Let me preface this with a caveat: Powertalk is very misunderstood by most of TRP. The original author was writing about dynamics in the workplace, not about dynamics between men and women. Powertalk, according to Mr. Rao, is conversation concerned with the transfer of power. If there are no stakes on the table, there can be no powertalk.

To some extent, I disagree.

What follows is a slightly "twisted" definition of powertalk. This is my take on the subject, modified slightly to be applicable to interactions outside the workplace. If you want to know what the creator of powertalk thinks, you should go read his articles.

### **Powertalk Defined**

Powertalk is deliberate, weaponized conversation: the intentional use of word choice, phrasing, and ambiguity to benefit the speaker. There are many ways in which powertalk can be utilized:

- Maintaining ambiguity and plausible deniability
- Getting information from somebody
- Concealing your own intentions / protecting your own information
- Communicating with other powertalkers

...and many more examples. Nearly any deliberate use of conversation to gain an advantage falls under my definition of powertalk.

### **Who uses powertalk?**

In the author's conception, powertalk is the language of what he terms "Sociopaths." Since the author's series is framed around "The Office," he defines Sociopaths as

*...Darwinian/Protestant Ethic will-to-power types who drive an organization to function despite itself.*

Essentially, Sociopaths (by his definition) are the C-level executives, the people who really make a company run. The people who skirt the rules and make the important decisions.

Since we aren't concerned with the machinations of a corporation here at TRP, I have another term I'm going to substitute: the Informed.

For our purposes, someone Informed is someone who understands that a game is being played, whereas someone Clueless is taking words at face value.

If you've subscribed here for a bit, you're probably well on the way to being Informed. Do you understand why we say "pay attention to what girls do, not what they say?" More importantly, can you explain why women tend to reach "truth by consensus," rather than "truth by proof of evidence?"

The answer to both is that women tend to have an innate feel for powertalk and gametalk, and excel at "playing the game." Men, on the other hand, tend to prefer straight talk, and need to consciously become Informed.

The sexes clash when an Informed woman is powertalking, and a Clueless man is straighttalking. The Informed woman will consider the Clueless male completely

lost, and sigh about how he "just doesn't get it." The Clueless male, for his part, will be hopelessly confused; interpreting her powertalk incorrectly, he takes her words at face value and gets burned.

For a better understanding of how powertalk actually works, let's look at how powertalk is applied.

### **Powertalking with Women**

It's a rare woman who intentionally powertalks. Instead, powertalk seems to be most women's natural method of communication. Women value each other on social standing, and powertalk serves as a shield from negative social repercussions. You may notice that "loner"-type women --tomboys, etc.-- tend to use quite a bit of straight talk, while popular girls rarely utter a word that isn't powertalk.

Recall that powertalking is the intentional use of conversation to benefit or prevent harm to the speaker. Since social standing is everything for women, they generally use powertalk defensively to protect their social standing.

Defensive use of powertalk is characterized by ambiguity and plausible deniability. To steal an example from [/u/joncho](#):

*The post about the OKCupid girl finding a guy too nice.*

*The problem was not that the guy was too nice, the problem was that the guy is boring. Too nice is code for boring.*

*So now the question is: why not say it as it is? Because by directly criticizing the guy she can get in trouble if he finds out. Instead she uses a compliment while blaming herself for the problem. There is no problem with the guy, he is nice, she has the problem. In reality she is saying he is boring to anyone who can read the real message but without risk.*

The desire for defensive ambiguity is why a woman will rarely commit to an opinion without knowing how her social group feels. A hard statement removes all ambiguity and puts her in an exposed position -- if it turned out that her social group held the opposite opinion, it would reflect very negatively on her.

In summary, women powertalk defensively, maintaining plausible deniability and ambiguity in order to protect their social standing. Powertalking back is generally unnecessary. Instead, simply use your knowledge to understand why women say what they say and see past it.

### **Powertalking in the Workplace**

Powertalking in the workplace is much more interesting. This is where we really start to see the "dance" of two powertalkers attempting to maneuver for position.

Of particular interest is the fact that a junior member of the workplace can use powertalk to communicate to a senior member that they are worthy of special consideration. Very few people have the savvy to effectively powertalk, and those who do are generally found in the higher ranks of management.

Powertalk in the workplace is typified by

1. Protecting your own information and attempting to gain information from others.
2. Communicating information "in code" to other powertalkers.
3. Communicating to other powertalkers that you know how to play the game.

Examine carefully Mr. Rao's analysis from the original articles:

*At a Dunder-Mifflin management party, shortly after Michael and Jan disclose their affair to David Wallace, per HR requirements, Wallace casually invites Jim to*

*blow off the party for a while and shoot hoops in the backyard. Once outside, Wallace nonchalantly asks, "So what's up with Jan and Michael?" He is clearly fishing for information, having observed the bizarre couple dynamics at the party.*

*Jim replies, "I wouldn't know...(pregnant pause)...where to begin." (slight laugh)*

*David Wallace laughs in return. This is as eloquent as such a short fragment of Powertalk can get. Here are just some of the messages being communicated by the six words and the meaningful pause and laugh.*

- 1. It is a complex situation (literal).*
- 2. I understand you think something bizarre is going on. I am confirming your suspicion. It is a bizarre mess, and you should be concerned.*
- 3. This is the first significant conversation between us, and I am signaling to you that I am fluent in Powertalk.*
- 4. I know how to communicate useful information while maintaining plausible deniability.*
- 5. I am not so gratified at this sign of attention from you that I am going to say foolish things that could backfire on me.*
- 6. I am aware of my situational leverage and the fact that you need me. I am not so overawed that I am giving it all up for free.*
- 7. I am being non-committal enough that you can pull back or steer this conversation to safer matters if you like. I know how to give others wiggle room, safe outs and exits.*
- 8. You still have to earn my trust. But let's keep talking. What do you have that I could use?*

## **How do I powertalk?**

The first key to effectively powertalking is understanding when to use it. If you don't have a reason to powertalk, you're just going to confuse people. Generally speaking, straight talk is valued in men, so carefully evaluate if powertalk is the

right choice.

Second, deliberately choose which tactics to use and when, based on your goals and who you're speaking with. Some considerations:

#### Defensive Powertalk

- Does plausible deniability benefit you, or would it make you seem afraid to commit?
- Is ambiguity a good idea, or will you seem like you don't know what you're talking about?

#### Offensive Powertalk

- Do you want to leave the other person "wiggle room," or are you trying to lock them into a hard statement?
- Do you need to reveal some information of your own in a quid pro quo, or can you get the information that they are holding without letting the other party have any of yours?
- Are you trying to signal to another Informed person that you know how to "play", or are you trying to maneuver around somebody Clueless?

What you won't be able to do is start building layers of nuance into every single statement. Instead, simply seek to consider the ramifications of what you're saying, and whether you get any benefit from the words coming out of your mouth.



## Do Not Let Negativity Consume You

*By KidStrangelove.*

[Article link.](#)

A side effect of taking the Red Pill is that we become more and more aware of just how society, our upbringing, etc, has lied to us in all facets of our lives. This can be a beautiful and empowering thing and should serve as a catalyst for us to improve our lives.

However, let me ask you this - are you really using The Red Pill as a catalyst for improvement or are you using it simply as a space to vent your frustrations? Are you now working out more, pursuing girls in a more effective manner, reading more, expanding your mind, etc? Are you making any positive changes in your life since taking The Red Pill?

Or are you just here to bitch and moan?

By the way, it's perfectly OK to bitch and moan sometimes, especially with all the lies that we have been fed, but to make "bitch and moan" a perpetual state is not healthy.

I think comedian Duncan Trussell said it better than I ever would. I would recommend the following audio for everyone - <http://youtu.be/rdNSkzT6UHE?t=13m47s>

Don't get yourself stuck in a perpetual state of negativity, especially when there is so much life out there to experience.

## Featured Comment

*By IllimitableMan.*

This is an important message to reiterate.

Life is pretty shit by default, realising a lot of the bullshit this society is constructed from and conveys (especially in relation to women) and seeing shit for what it is makes it even shittier as you don't have the fantasy warm gooey perceptions to anaesthetise the pains of reality. Reality is a pretty shitty place but you need to understand it to be able to have the power to cultivate your own reality into what you want it to be, to make that cash money, to fuck all them hoes, to jet-set, to be well-read, to have a family, to be a multi-millionaire, whatever the fuck it is you want - rather than let the system assign you a preselected power-limiting role which curbs your civil liberty, personal power, your own perception of yourself, your ability to hold influence and a bunch of other crap - likely the role the system would ascribe to you if you would just go with the flow is a role that does not fulfill the tenacity of your ambitions.

So taking the pill can actually make life seem worse, sure it's empowering to know the truth, but not everyone can handle the weight of that truth.

The truth is power, but with power comes responsibility and the responsibility of realising how truly fucking shitty women are, how pragmatic and manipulative they are, and hilariously, how only some of them are even self-aware of their own fucked up irrational natures can take quite the toll on a man.

This is why its important to develop a coping mechanism.

I encourage you all to inject positivity into your life. Watch stand up comedy, go join a comedy club. Honestly, stand-up for the most part is Red Pill as fuck, you can get away with saying what you like as long as it's funny. We've all seen it with

Bill Burr, Dave Chapelle and the other greats.

Building your SMV can cause growing pains and you may need to lean on things like comedy and junk activities like "playing video games" to ease the growing pains, but as long as you have direction and are still growing and seeing progress that's OK.

Eventually when your SMV is high enough it will reward dividends in and of itself.

If a problem in your life is broke, fix it.

- Overweight? Start jogging.
- Can't workout because of injury? Find workouts you can do which wont exacerbate the injury.
- Miserable fuck? Find shit that makes you laugh.
- People in your life bring you down? Get the fuck rid of them. If it's not immediately possible e.g.: you cant afford to move out from your crazy single parent mother then just avoid her as much as you can.
- Not got any friends? Socialise more, drink some alcohol, go to the comedy club.
- Spending too much money? Downsize.
- Can't earn enough money? Hustle. Get educated. Kiss some ass. Read 48 laws. Find an edge. Do something. Give up on yourself and the world will too.

Ironically all these problems are things which need to be solved in order to increase SMV, and once your SMV is high you will find none of these things are problems. We're all on the path and all of us are at different stages of the path in periods of life. Some of you are doing this for the first time, others of you have been burned before and are doing shit you've already done before to rebuild. Whatever.

Have a mission and fucking go for it.

Lethargic because you've got no energy? Drink water. Blueberries. One lemon in your tea a day. Make that green tea. Get at least 7.5 hours sleep per night. If you have an urgent deadline take power naps in 1.5 hour patterns (so 1.5 - 3 - 4.5 - 6 - 7.5 - 9 hours etc) as that's when your REM cycles end and that way you don't feel groggy.

Life is fucking hard and unfair and women are heartless ruthless observers of your value who will use you for basically any benefit you can provide, but then although perhaps not so competent in the art of Machiavellianism as the average woman, men do the same fucking shit too.

The only reason you are mad/upset is because you were indoctrinated to believe that women are the fairer sex, that they were somehow more pure and that only big evil men do fucked up shit, that females are kind and gentle and "unicorn rainbow shitting fairies" who'll sprinkle you with motherly love and let you suckle on her bosom as she shields you from the world and your bad day slaving for the man. WRONG. Fact of the matter is if she didn't shit you out of her vagina she's got no unconditional love for you. It's tingles/cash or get the fuck out.

Stop feeling sorry for yourself, toughen the fuck up. Sometimes its tough, find a way to cope. I've listed a bunch of ways. Fix your problems. Stop finding excuses. Give yourself a slap. Feeling lazy right now? Go under the shower for 2 minutes, make sure its cold. Not freezing cold (you will get brain freeze) just quite cold. It will raise your T and make you motivated. Go on. Do it. Go. Now.

## **Being a Man is a Lonely Business (Endure)**

*By magicalbird.*

[Article link.](#)

If you slowly build yourself into an alpha this will mean having to ditch your old friends. While they are happily settling for an average life with an average girl you will be slowly building yourself up.

When people tell you to get a girlfriend and get married already you will be building yourself into something greater.

It takes a lot of time and effort, especially for someone who genetically and physically isn't an alpha by birth.

If you want to become excellent you will have to take off all the shackles of comfort that are afforded to betas. Society, the media, and every other influence is doing their best to make you a beta again.

You may have to endure family and friends trying to bring you back down to their level.

You may have to endure entitled women treating you like complete crap or trying to mold you back into a beta.

You may have to endure for a while to find other fellow alpha men who are continually trying to improve themselves.

You may have to wipe away wimpy tears during moments of stupid oneitis and other failures towards the journey to be an alpha.

You may have to sleep with average women who offer nothing but a half decent face.

You may have to see other alphas get with better women and end up in better jobs than you on your path.

Find something that makes you passionate and have a mission in life. Something so sacred to your own being that no one can ever change your mind. Protect it with your life.

Even if you're a skinny 5'5 guy who has a dream to sleep with models and you work hard at life by getting your looks together and other SMV features, you could probably get some shorter freelance models here and there.

The road to being an alpha is going to be lonely so endure.

## Featured Comment

*By Soultrane9.*

I went from a dorm kid to a professional with above average money, a decent flat and a virgin LTR in 3 years.

The core concept of my advice: become a psychopath. When i moved to the college dorms I decided that I won't see people as before. I saw them as puppets, as a social experiment. They were pawns in my social learning game.

You have to accept everybody is a temporal companion in your life. As were your high school classmates, as are your college mates. As will be your colleges from your first workplace. As will be from the second one. What you will

experience: after you moved on to the next stage, nobody gives a shit about you. When you are at your first work place your college friends won't give a shit. When you move to your second job the guy you were having lunch with every day, hour long conversations and a few pub nights from the first workplace with won't give a shit about you. It's all temporal.

What does this say to you? A relation to another human either gives you an advantage or it's a waste of time. When my best friend started to stop giving a fuck about me because I decided to work instead of finishing my degree it really fucked with my emotions. It was only the "lonely" path remaining.

### **Standing out from the crowd.**

You do that by building a successful and stable life. You don't need other men's approval, which you are seeking probably. Every woman will see that you are standing out by having frame, career, interests, MUSCLES, and your own place. No frat boy will be your competition. You have to develop the "daddy vibe." It trumps everything.

How do you achieve that? Monk mode. Discipline yourself. I did it for more than a year: get up early, go to classes, go to work, hit the gym, cook my food and it's 11 PM, time for bed. I was a whimsy, afraid of pain and everything. I decided it's time to face my fears: i got a tattoo. I was so nervous i almost threw up beforehand LOL. I came out the saloon as a different person.

### **The "lonely" path**

Don't confuse being lonely and being alone. You need to live the alone life but that doesn't mean you are lonely. If you are not happy living alone you are not ready to spin plates. You have to sit nights at your place learning to deal with your loneliness. What helped me was buddhist books. In a TL;DR version the whole religion is about maintaining inner control. You have to find peace in existence. Not in life first. In existence. You need to let go of your ego, forget everything you know. Find peace in existence just like your ape ancestors did. I recommend the

author "Osho" for starting out.

Nobody exists on purpose, nobody belongs anywhere, everybody's gonna die.



## 5 Misconceptions of MGTOW

*By jagrmeister721.*

[Article link.](#)

After a thread about a popular MGTOW forum shutting down, I realized Red Pillers here have diverging views on MGTOW. The [2014 Direction for the subreddit](#) mentions MGTOW as a valid Red Pill sexual strategy but it seems many confuse MGTOW with incel ("involuntarily celibacy"). MGTOWs are much maligned by the usual suspects (just as Herbivore Men have been before them) and so it's not surprising to see others, even other Red-Pill men, absorb these misapprehensions.

For sake of clarity, I'll cover 5 misconceptions about MGTOW

### **Misconception #1: MGTOWs are bitter that they've never had sex**

Most men become MGTOWs after a marriage or a set of relationships. Which means they've had sex. But those men become MGTOW because they experience the hollow promise that are today's relationships with women. Society (and women) sold the idea of a girlfriend or spouse as an asset but after nagging, histrionics, outlandish expectations, and ever-increasing entitlement, they found women to be more of a liability (despite the sex). If you visit the primary MGTOW forums: Happy Bachelor, GoingYourOwnWay.com, or MGTOW HQ, you'll observe that most fall into this camp.

### **Misconception #2: Whatever their past life, once a man goes MGTOW, then he abstains**

Generally, MGTOWs avoid one-it-is LTRs that are a conveyor belt towards

marriage and few MGTOWs get married AFTER taking The Red Pill. The sexual activity of MGTOWs, however, varies widely. On the main MGTOW forums, some have GFs, some date casually, some are into game, others are even married.

A main observation of MGTOW is that women are overrated. They have always been overrated by society to encourage men to marry and pump out more workslaves. But now the delta between a woman's actual value and perceived value has taken on comical proportions as female waistlines bulge and they adopt undesirable masculine qualities. This overvaluing of women happens amongst men as well; in that men will judge one another's value on his ability to court women. It may have been more so in the past that a "quality" man was sought after by women, and so female interest had a true correlation with the actual value of a man. Feminist relaxing of social constraints on female mate selection criteria changes that. There are a lot of decent men on the sidelines and a lot of guys with questionable track records getting plenty of female attention.

But either way, to be a "man" in yesteryear was to "win a woman over" for marriage and today it means gaming a chick into bed. Whereas in the past, being a "Real Man" meant marrying a woman (translation: the man is "good enough" for a woman), today the "Real Man" is measured by his 'notch count' and prioritizing the pursuit (translation: man is "good enough" for a woman). The more things change, the more they stay the same. In either case, a man's value as judged by himself, his peers, and society at large is predicated on his ability to meet a woman's requirements. MGTOW is calling bullshit on that.

MGTOWs may date or not, but ultimately the importance of "success with women" is lower in their worldview.

**Misconception #3: MGTOWs are not focused on self-betterment; they have given up**

The key point here is that MGTOWs distinguish between Sexual Market Value (SMV) and Actual Value (AV). To define terms, Actual Value is having traits that make for a good person leading a meaningful life; actual ability, actual traits of

good character. Let's start with the most basic- character: a fundamentally decent human being. Honest. Trustworthy. Strong. Resilient. Resourceful. These are traits of someone who is a good friend, a good worker, a good person all around to know. Then there are abilities- someone who is intelligent, has practical skills, a sense of humor. Finally, there are what he does- activities, interests, his job. SMV, for men, are male traits that women find attractive. Now naturally there may be some overlap between the two. But the general sentiment amongst MGTOWs is that today, SMV and AV may be more misaligned than ever. Today, a guy like Kevin Federline is preferred to a guy with Actual Value. Whereas having a full sleeve tattoo may not put you in great position for the corner office, it can help your SMV. There are more examples, but decades ago, having an upstanding character and solid career prospects was more likely to garner female interest than in an era when women are largely in the workforce themselves and where feminism has removed social restraints on female hypergamy (which was always there) and leads women to unintentionally prioritize qualities in men that would have aided her survival in a pre-civilization era.

MGTOWs separate themselves entirely from the paradigm that a man's value is related to his 'success' with women. MGTOWs focus on life itself and discuss interests such as boxing, boating, lifting, surfing, cars, books, video games, real estate, as well as standard things men talk about like career and travel. They see self-betterment in two dimensions: improving Actual Value, and enjoying life. Since some MGTOWs are interested in dating, there is talk of what one can do to improve SMV, but that is just part of the discussion.

On "giving up", many MGTOWs simply don't find pursuit of women to be all that it's hyped up to be. Some men don't mind shit test after shit test and the standard fare of "maintaining" a woman today. Some do. Life is all about investment and return; and that influences how we spend our time. MGTOWs observe that given the nature of women and the trajectory we're on, greater investment is needed for much lower return. And the cost of even maintaining an investment or portfolio comes at the expense of doing the things one enjoys. That's why many MGTOWs who've come out of relationships aren't champing at the bit to get back into one.

**Misconception #4: MGTOWs are hermits who are basement-dwellers and shun all social interaction.**

"Ghosts" are a subset of MGTOWs who seek to minimize social interaction. But they are only a segment of MGTOW in general. Many MGTOWs are pursuing an active, social life (and have more time to do so).

One reason people believe that MGTOWs avoid society is the "4 Levels of MGTOW" cited on MGTOW.com (and which is also cited on Red Pill's 2014 direction). These levels include:

- Level 1: Situational awareness
- Level 2: Rejection of long-term relationships
- Level 3: Rejection of short-term relationships
- Level 4: Economic disengagement

In reality, suffice to say, many MGTOWs don't go onto Stage 3 ("Rejection of short-term relationships"), and even fewer go on to Stage 4 ("Economic disengagement").

There is no central mouthpiece of MGTOW and everyone is free to articulate their philosophies. My view is that MGTOWs lead full lives absent the pressure related to relationships or "success with women" which they see as an over-hyped social imposition. On the forums, you'll encounter oil company executives, blue-collar workers, musicians -- a wide variety.

**Misconception #5: MGTOWs are angry**

Men enter into MGTOW awareness at different stages. Some do so right after divorce. Given the nature of family courts and their biases, who could blame those men for being angry afterwards? Like with other disappointments, people go through phases of dealing with this one- the false promise often encountered with LTRs and marriage. There is typically: surprise, anger, discontent (with society and

double standards), acceptance and then enjoying a red-pill lifestyle absent the need to "man up" and find a soulmate/get married.

Some say MGTOWs express this anger by "complaining" about women. I see it as explaining the nature of women. Because MGTOWs are not blinded by their need to court women, they can often be objective about female dynamics, faulty logic, and irrational nature. As Bill Burr says, "Women are constantly patting themselves on the back for how difficult their lives are and no one corrects them because they want to fuck 'em." MGTOWs don't have this problem and often can be effective on calling women on their BS rather than justify female behavior for any number of reasons. When a man is actively courting women, he is often forced to justify warped female behavior since critiquing it doesn't aid in his pursuit. It is simpler to characterize it as justifiable behavior (ie: "women can't be faulted for being women") rather than acknowledge that certain female behavior has gotten worse, not due to biological changes, but a more hospitable culture to female nonsense in general.

Final thoughts:

Red Pill is a starting point. From the Red Pill, based on our values and preferences, we can go in different directions. Blue pill society has rigged the game against men; and The Red Pill is about finding the right countermeasures to live life and enjoy it.

The history of the mansphere has been that our sense of pride in validating our own life choice's have often led us to cut down other men not following the same exact path. It explains the constant one-upmanship that's taken place in the mansphere. We may not agree with each other's approach, but hopefully we'll acknowledge the validity of differing approaches (and the reality of overlap between the different approaches as opposed to their being discrete 'movements'). To each, his own.

# **Guides to Success in Self-Improvement**

## A 7 Step Guide To Swallowing The Pill

*By no\_face.*

[Article link.](#)

You have read a lot of theory about the nature of women (hypergamy, hypoagency, rationalization, etc) and game and so on, but some newbies may benefit from a step by step guide to actually swallowing the pill.

### **Step 1: Lifting**

Posture: Before you start lifting, you need to make sure your posture is OK. If not, you risk pinched nerves, bad form and injury. Your posture is poor because you have poor habits. In particular:

One shoulder lower than the other: Typically right handed folks have their right shoulder below their left. This is caused by higher development of the right breast muscle compared to the left and weak back muscles. The instructions below assume your right shoulder is lower. If your left shoulder is lower, swap the words left and right below

To fix this, stand with your left shoulder near a door jamb or pole. Raise your right arm all the way up. Bend it at the elbow so that it makes a right angle. Grab the door jamb or pole and stretch. You can put your right foot ahead. Hold for 20 seconds. This should temporarily fix your shoulder imbalance. You now need to do side and front shoulder raises with dumbbells (not a barbell). You should also do chest flies to develop your chest muscles. Start with the lowest weight possible. In the beginning, they will feel too light. As you increase the weight bit by bit, you will notice that its harder for your left side. You should continue to exercise at this weight until both sides find it equally hard. From here on, when you increase

weight, they should feel equally hard.

Head Forward position/Kiphosis: Generally caused by sitting for hours in front of a TV/computer. Fix it using this technique [https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=LT\\_dFRnmdGs](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=LT_dFRnmdGs)

Lardosis: You need to stretch your lower back and strengthen your abs. The best way to strengthen abs is to walk up an incline (on a treadmill for example) or to suck your abdomen in and out.

Once your posture is good, you can start on a beginner program such as Stronglift 5x5 or starting strength.

Your first few months with the above will probably result in better posture that you can hold due to improved posterior chain. You may appear taller and more confident.

Over time, you will have improved strength and start to add muscle.

Rookie curl-bro mistakes you avoid by starting with large compound exercises:

- Focusing on curls and only exercising the muscles you can see in the mirror. You will lose all kinds of proportionality and will look uglier as you grow.
- Under-training chest and overtraining triceps
- Neglecting shoulders in favor of biceps.

## **Step 2: Style**

Until your posture is fixed from step 1 above, you should not be investing in new clothes. If you are a fat bastard, you should wait until your pants slip off and even then only buy modestly until you think you have relatively flat abs. Then you can go shopping. Try different brands and see what looks good on you. If you are lucky, a cheap "factory outlet" type brand such as Tommy Hilfiger will look good on you and you can restock your wardrobe for a couple of hundred. If buying short



sleeved T-shirts and shirts, best to wait till your arms are big enough that the sleeves are snug. Until your chest is the widest part of your body when viewed from the side, no clothes will make you look good. Make your interests and lifestyle part of your style. Do you go motor-cycling every weekend with your buddies? You should go for a biker jacket. Do you hang out with your investment broker friends at high class NYC bars? Wear expensive suits. Are you a mechanic? Jeans and T shirt. This is something for you to figure out on your own, do not copy your buddy. Be an individual. In the beginning, a newer style may make you feel conscious. Gradually add new clothes and stop wearing the old clothes. You will need to wear your new style a few times before you feel natural and comfortable in it. After a few days you wont even feel like wearing the old clothes anymore.

### **Step 3: Mission**

You need a mission in your life. Think about it this way: If you die in the next year, how would you want people to remember you? As a great writer? A political activist? A musician? You need something to work on, something you would contribute to the world. Not everyone will be a world-changing agent but you need to find something that you are very passionate about. Ever heard of Khan academy? His passion is just to teach. He has risen above the millions of teachers who teach for a pay check. Any mission is awesome if you have the passion for it. Your mission is how you see yourself and how others see you. It is how you meet people who have interests aligned with you. Your mission enables you to enlarge your social circle and improve your social circle game. Choose it with care.

### **Step 4: Frame**

Frame is simply your idea of yourself. Are you a cool, confident, fun, awesome person? Are you witty and intellectual? You need to develop alpha characteristics in your frame such as stoicism, abundance mentality and high value. Step 1-3 above and your characteristics as you see yourself feed into your frame. Make sure its clean. In particular, you need to weed out anything bitchy out of your frame. Many shit-tests are simply integrity tests of your frame. Did you get upset when she said she does not like men under 6 feet tall? There goes your frame of being

cool in the face of stress. Feel the need to demand explanation for her flaking on a date? Your abundance frame just dissolved.

### **Step 5: Game**

There are entire manosphere posts you can read about game but almost all of it can be concisely boiled down to [16 commandments of Poon](#).

My experience regarding dealing with women in your social circle is simple:

- Until you have high value, don't even bother talking to women. Go into monk mode and work on yourself. You will know you are high SMV when multiple women open you (talk to you of their own volition, smile at you, etc). Low value men are invisible to women. Low value men who try to game/hit on them are creepy according to their definition
- Once you have high value, the simplest thing to do is to wait for a woman to notice you and open you. These will be least effort/least shit-tests.
- If you have noticed a woman and she seems to have not noticed you, you can boldly go over and introduce yourself. I have never needed any pickup lines/opinion openers/negs or any of the usual PUA BS. Just go over and introduce yourself and make some small talk. The only thing I'd add is DON'T COMPLIMENT HER. She hasn't earned it. After this, you should just ignore her. She may open you or you can talk more if you run into each other. If you see increased friendliness, you should simply ask her out.
- Escalate.

### **Step 6: Dominance**

You need to dominate your woman physically (lift, MOFO, lift!) mentally (you are smarter than a woman, right?), emotionally (be stoic, bro), and sexually (escalate). You also need to dominate the relationship (no supplication, no compliments unless its for something she did to please you) and sex acts (read Daniel Rose's Sex God method). Eventually as you get closer, you can occasionally break these rules. Remember LTRs require some amount of tenderness and

support.

### **Step 7: Maintenance**

As a TRP male, you need to constantly get better. When you stagnate, the lack of change will bore your woman and she will be susceptible to her innate hypergamy. Learn new things and surprise yourself and her all the time.

## **Focus On You First. And Second. And Third. And...Blah**

### **Blah...Worry About Women Seventh**

*By Archwinger.*

[Article link.](#)

A lot of people (especially new people) show up on The Red Pill wondering "What specifically do I do to improve my life?" They're not looking for academic theory about women and power-talk and discussions about how shitty women are and how alpha and beta various examples of men are. They're looking for concrete help. Advice they can implement today to make their lives better.

First, join a gym, or start going if you already joined but don't go regularly. Or go back if you used to work out and stopped. Make time for this. Every day. Or maybe 6 days a week. Or every other day if you have shit to do. But minimum 3 times per week and preferably more. Do strength training. Look up Stronglifts 5x5 or something comparable, and fucking do it. Cardio in between if you're going every day. This is your time. Don't talk to girls. Don't talk to guys. Don't waste your gym hour. Just work out. It will suck at first but get easier. Here's the key: It doesn't matter if you get stronger or look different after a month. (You will, but it doesn't matter.) The way you walk, talk, and carry yourself will become better, in a way you won't notice but others will, if you know that you've done all you can to prepare your body to face the day, every day. And it's just plain good for you to grow some fucking muscle.

Second, eat well and get enough sleep. Staying up until 4:AM drinking beer is fine when you're 19 and in college studying for an exam, but you're a real person now, and you wake up at 5:AM to work out. So eat real food (not bars and shakes), cut out soft drinks and energy drinks and other bullshit, limit alcohol to social drinking, learn to cook, and buy actual shit from an actual healthy grocery store.

And sleep 8-9 hours per night. You have nothing to prove to anybody by staying up until midnight. You have a job, a workout regimen, and a life to live. Lack of sleep hinders all of that and makes you a less efficient and a less attractive human.

Third, get a job if you don't have one. Get a good job if you already have a shitty job. Get ahead at your good job if you already have one of those. You can look on indeed.com or monster or any other job site, but be forewarned – every job posting you see on the internet will get a thousand resumes. Do a general search for companies in your industry and just send them letters and a copy of your resume. Follow up within the week. By phone, not e-mail. Talk to everyone you know and get hooked up at places you never would have thought to approach. Networking is the best way to get a job, and having a day job and steady income affects the way you walk and talk. Even if you don't notice this, others will. Even if you're in school now, get a part time job doing something cool. It's a great conversation piece, and when you're finally out of school, the fact that you did something besides go to school the last 4 years sets you apart from other college graduates first starting to send their resumes to employers.

Fourth, talk to strangers. All the fucking time. Are you in line somewhere? A coffee shop? The student union at your university? Are you on a street or in a building, or at the gym or anywhere else where other people exist and aren't busy working? Just chat with strangers. You're not trying to make a new best friend or get a date. You're just chatting with people, both men and women, 30-60 seconds tops, maybe 10 people a day. Most of this will go nowhere and be super-awkward, but maybe you meet someone you can add to your network and contact later. More importantly, however, you get over the inherent fear we all have of rejection. You talk to strangers without caring what they'll say or think, it's awkward and stupid, it sucks and you look dumb and have nothing to talk about. But six months from now, you'll realize that you're actually good at talking to people, strangers are as afraid of you as you are of them, and you develop a knack for getting other people to seek your approval, rather than vice versa. This translates into more success meeting women, more confidence at job interviews and business/social functions, and the like.

Fifth, join some professional societies, hobbyist groups, start taking guitar or martial art lessons, or something that interests you, not related to your day job. You need shit to do besides work, cook dinner, and sleep. Otherwise, you're a boring little shit. Be interested in something and look into it. Cooking? Making soap? Making explosives? Going to the shooting range? I don't care. But if you're a man, you've at least passively been interested in lots of things over the years. Pick a few items of the greatest interest to you and actually look into them. You won't live forever.

Sixth, study up on game. It doesn't matter how fit, healthy, successful, social, and interesting you are. Women and talking them into fucking you is something different from all of that. If you don't know how to talk to girls in a sexual way, you'll die a rich, super hawt, very interesting virgin who didn't have game. You have to learn how to treat women like anybody else, be outcome independent, talk subtly sexually, touch in a non-awkward way, and escalate the situation to a sexual encounter. This is a learned skill, not something that "just happens" naturally the way women will tell you it does. For them, it just happens. For you, it's a practiced skill, and making this happen is something that is completely independent from looks/fitness, success, hobbies, and social skills. Having all of that makes game a lot easier (which is why game comes as sixth on this list), but all of that without game won't get you laid, and game without all of that will make your life a lot harder.

Finally, start going out every weekend, and/or maybe one weeknight a week, and approach women. Constantly, the same way you talked to strangers above. Note how this is seventh on my list, and not all that important. Women don't matter if you haven't done 1-6. And you can be happy and successful just doing 1-6 and forgetting all about women. That's actually key. If you're not happy, all on your own, just with who you are, what you've done, and what you're capable of, then you'll never land a woman (not a worthwhile one anyway). If you're physically fit or at least confident about your gym routine, healthy and well-rested, professionally successful, socially not awkward, have hobbies and interests, and are at least decently versed in game, you finally have a decent chance of not being blown off by the average woman. As noted above, treat women like talking to

strangers. Just chat with them like anybody else, in a non-awkward way, and you're already leagues beyond the normal loser, who doesn't have the courage to walk up and talk (and when he does, he's an awkward loser). Just talking to women and coming across like a non-awkward, non-loser puts you in the top 25% of men. Being subtly sexual and escalating via touch puts you in the top 20%, give or take. Not caring whether you're turned down or not and moving on to the next woman like the one who just pissed on you doesn't count puts you in the top 15. Being fit, successful, socially apt, and interesting, on top of good game, puts you in the top 10.

The top 10 percent gets laid every weekend. Maybe not by every single woman they approach, but by the end of the night, you'll have a fuck buddy lined up. But this comes after a few weeks or months of hard work becoming worth a shit. The key is being happy without women. If you're fit, successful, socially apt, and in possession of useful and interesting skills and hobbies, you should be able to have a decent life without women. Women would rather line up to be the gravy on your awesome life than be the main course, featured on the otherwise empty plate of a loser.

# Goals: A Quick Guide On How To Attain Them

By *bsutansalt*.

[Article link.](#)

## Setting Goals

Setting goals is an effective method of achieving success in life, whether it be short-term or over the long-term. There are 5 key aspects to creating goals:

1. Be specific.
2. They need to be measurable.
3. Track your progress.
4. Are your goals practical?
5. Stay on track -- keep your eyes on the prize.

### Be specific

Write down goals in specific detail so you can clearly see what you plan to attain and how to achieve it. State exactly what you want and how you plan to get the results you seek, such as who can help and what training you may require.

- What? What do you want to accomplish (short & long term)?
- Where? Identify locations & venues you will do the activities.
- When? Establish time frames for short & long term goals. What is your target date?
- Who? Who can help you reach your goals? Do you seek mentors, expert advice, or wings to help you in field?

### Measurable



Establish metrics to track your progress. Keep a documented record of your successful steps toward your goals.

How many? Do you have a goal of approaching a certain amount of women per day/night/week/month/year? How long? Do you have a goal of spending a specific amount of time meeting women?

## **Tracking**

Tracking your successes can help encourage you to keep going and give you solid feedback on our efforts and whether something is working or not. The best strategy for sticking to goals is to keep track of your progress on a daily basis by writing it down every day. This very act of writing down activities/steps taken has been shown to improve results and to encourage consistency. It allows you to learn more about your habits, stay accountable to yourself, and keep track of any progress or slips.

A good record includes the following:

- A. Type of activities.
- B. How long you spent doing that activities.
- C. Intensity of the effort. Did you push your own boundaries or did you play it safe?
- D. Comments about any difficulties to help you in problem solving for the future.

## **Practicality**

Are the goals reasonable and achievable in the time allotted? Know your limits and work around them as best you can. Not everyone gets to be an astronaut.

## **Staying on track**

Maintaining progress is one of the hardest challenges when trying to make changes to your life, whether it be changing a habit, fitness, or improving your communication skills. Getting started can be difficult, but staying committed is even harder. The key to successfully navigating obstacles to maintaining your progress is to acknowledge slips will happen despite your best efforts to plan for them. The key is to build consistencies and a regular schedule and to get back on that horse as soon as you get thrown off. There are several things you can do to help stay on target:

1. Keep it meaningful! Continue to remind yourself of the personal benefits you'll get when you achieve your goals. Setting and keeping meaningful goals that are realistic and attainable will increase the likeliness of success. You are much more likely to strive towards a goal you care about and feel close to accomplishing.
2. Reward yourself! Rewards increase the likelihood that you will do it again. When you reach a metric give yourself a reward. Create rewards for both short-term and long-term goals.
3. The earlier you catch slips the better. If caught early a slip does NOT have to signal an inevitable downward spiral. Again, slips are inevitable and accepting that and moving on when they happen is the best course of action. The most important thing to do when slips occur is to not let it turn into a string of slips or affect your new habits and collapse your changes in behavior you've been working towards.
4. Have a plan for dealing with slips:
  - The most important thing is to get back on track as soon as possible. Do NOT wait until Monday or the beginning of the month to "start fresh."
  - Learn from the past. You can identify many of these slips from past experience. Think back and identify situations in which you remember having a particularly difficult time sticking to your plan.
  - Plan in advance. When you know similar situations are coming (i.e. holidays, family vacations, etc), start planning for how to deal with

them in advance. If you wait until you are in the midst of the situation you are not likely to come up with an effective solution. Use the information from past struggles to guide your planning and identify past hurdles that will need to be overcome.

- If you find you have relapsed, pull out all the resources that have helped you in the past to get back on track. Some questions you need to ask are:
  - What barriers may interfere with your plan?
  - How can you address them?
  - If you cannot stick to your primary plan, what is your backup plan?

The measures of success are not whether there are dips in your progress, but whether overall you are progressing in spite of occasional slips.

## Let's Do Money

*By Archwinger.*

[Article link.](#)

Hi, guys. So lately, I've been thinking about money. Because frankly, money is more important than women. You can buy a lot more happiness than you can fuck. Women figured that out a long time ago, hence their dating/marriage strategy, and it's time to catch up.

First off, if you're young, don't have a job, have a shitty job, and so forth, real financial advice isn't for you. The advice you need is obvious: get a job. A good one. A post about what degrees or credentials to pursue, how to get into certain fields, how to network, how to write a resume, how to interview – that's beyond the scope of the bullshit I'm writing today, which is more about what to do with the money you're earning and how to prioritize your financial endeavors.

The very first thing you need to do with your pay checks is to save money. Make a budget and figure out what you're spending each month. As an aside, keep your monthly expenditures low. You need a place to live, a used car that you preferably buy with cash to get you to work, an old non-state-of-the-art computer that connects to the internet, an old non-state-of-the-art cell phone, a cheap gym membership, clothes for work and the gym (depending on your job, work clothes can double as clothes for going out), food and water, and if you really want to splurge, a television. You don't want to go insane, so you can go out from time to time, have hobbies, and so on, but if you're spending a hundred bucks a weekend drinking and trying to pick up girls, you're wasting something valuable for something mostly worthless.

Anyway, figure out how much you spend each month, and save money to build

up a reserve. You want to have a minimum of 3 months of your expenses in the bank, preferably 6. Not 3-6 months of pay checks (we're not buying an engagement ring!) - your expenses times 3-6. Your pay check should far exceed your expenses. If not, you need budgeting advice, not financial advice. Or a less shitty job.

Why do this first? Because the very first step toward financial independence is having some security. Knowing that you could lose your job tomorrow, or even make the conscious choice to quit your job and pursue other avenues, or get sick or injured or something, and continue your life exactly the same – same stuff, same quality of life, same everything – for six months. If you're planning on doing something extra risky or likely to fail, or more long-term, like starting a business, maybe you want to have 9-12 months in reserve. But when you can quit your job tomorrow and go do something else, and still live exactly as you're living right now for six months, that's your first taste of independence.

Once you have six months of living stashed away in the bank (put this in a separate account if you don't have the discipline to not touch it when it's in your general savings account), you have the freedom to be more aggressive with the rest of your money. After all, if you lose it all, then lose your job the very next day, see above. You can go right on living for half a year.

But the saving doesn't stop once you get to six months of costs. From that point on, you should be saving 10% of your gross income, minimum. 12-15% is a better goal. 20% if you can afford it, but that requires some serious quality-of-life sacrifices. In this context, "saving" doesn't mean a bank account. At this point, you should be moving on to investment vehicles, retirement accounts, and so on. You can still keep extra cash, set aside in a separate account for projects you want to save for, like getting a house, building something, buying something, going somewhere. But try to stash at least 10% of your income somewhere it can grow. And start this young. Because time is your most valuable asset. Women figured that out a long time ago, too. That's why they're always after your time.

There was a post that touched on this, actually: That bedroom set you bought your wife? Don't think of it as a \$11,000 check. Think of it as four months you

slaved away in the office that you'll never get back. But it's not just those four months you worked. That four months of income you didn't save today will turn into several years of extra working before you can retire. That bedroom set your wife wanted extended your period of slavery for years. And she probably complained about it once you had it anyway, and fucked her boyfriend on the bed instead of you, and got the bedroom set in the divorce even though she hates it, so you had to buy a new bed at your new place and set yourself even farther behind, not to mention the checks you have to write your wife each month. But I digress.

Time is your most valuable asset. A lot of people will write an extra check to their bank every month toward their mortgage, because we're all told that this adds up. You'll pay off your house sooner, and just think what you'll be able to do in 20 years instead of 30 when you have an extra \$2000 a month! You can bank that! But look at it this way: saving 500\$ every month today, in your 20s or 30s, and just paying the minimum to avoid getting foreclosed on, will net you far, far more money than paying off your house, then saving \$2000 a month starting in your 50s. Mortgage interest rates are low today, so you can get away with this and come out ahead.

The same applies to all of your debts. If you have a debt with an interest rate of 8% or higher, pay it off. Maybe pay off your 7% debts, too. It's hard to get a solid 7-8% rate of return on most things today. But anything lower than that and you're better off just making your regular minimum monthly payment and saving the money you're thinking about paying toward a debt. Because when you pay extra money on that debt, your creditor takes that money, invests it, loans it out, gets interest on it, makes money on it – that could be your money. You're better off making that money. You can still pay off your house in 20 years instead of 30 if you want, but do that by making shit tons of money today, then writing a big check in 19 years and 11 months. Not by paying an extra \$500 a month to the bank. Because when that house is finally yours and all of your other debts are paid off, you won't have shit saved away to retire, and you'll already be 50.

Further, when you give money to your mortgagor or another creditor, that's money you can't access. Sure, you feel good about having more equity in your

house, but you can't do anything with that equity unless you want to sell your house, incurring closing costs, moving costs, etc. And let's say you sell your house and turn a profit. What do you get with all of that equity you bought? The exact amount of money you put in back again. No growth. You pay your mortgage off, you get your profit, and you get your equity back. As an aside, you get a federal income tax deduction for paying interest on a home mortgage, so paying extra toward your principal can also make you have more taxable income.

So you should be saving for retirement, right? Better dump all that money in your company's 401(k) plan! Nope. 401(k)s are a scam. You should definitely put money into a 401(k), though. Exactly as much money as your employer matches, then not a penny more. Because that employer matching is free money – an instant 100% rate of return. But after that, pre-tax retirement accounts are a losing affair. Taxes never go down. They go up. When you're in your 60s (assuming the government doesn't keep raising the age when you can access a 401k), do you seriously think taxes are going to be lower than they are today? Or that dollars will be worth more?

Let's say you do some math, and to live comfortably at retirement, you're going to want \$8000 per month. So \$96,000 per year. When you pull that out of a 401k, you have to pay taxes on that money. So you don't get 96k a year. To get that 96k you need, you actually have to pull about 120k out of your account. And that's assuming taxes aren't boatloads higher by then. It's just a bad investment. An inefficient use of your money.

On the flip-side, a Roth IRA (or some companies offer a Roth 401k) can be a great vehicle. Roth accounts are actually such a good vehicle that the government is probably going to shit-can them before I get to retire. If your company doesn't offer a good retirement plan or you're self-employed or a contractor or something, and your income is below the legal cap, you should be saving the maximum in a Roth IRA every year, and putting the money with a good financial guy.

When you finally get around to choosing stocks or mutual funds, pay attention to dividends (look for the word "value" in the title of the mutual fund, or do some

research on a company's stock history). Most financial guys focus on growth alone, which is a crap shoot. You buy something today and hope that years from now when you sell it, it's worth more. You diversify what you're buying so that if something tanks, you can offset the loss with gains from other things. Not a horrible strategy, but no growth. If you focus on things that pay dividends, that dividend money can be banked, spent, used to invest in other things, or even automatically reinvested in whatever's generating the dividends (which leads to more dividends next quarter).

Companies that pay dividends have to keep doing it. If they pay their shareholder dividends this quarter, then next quarter decide not to, their shareholders get pissed, a lot of them sell some stock off, the stock price goes down, and all of those fat cat CEOs lose money. Companies will bend over backward, and even borrow money, to make sure they get those dividends out every quarter, because that's how the people in charge keep the stock price from tanking. So dividends are like free money that helps to cushion you somewhat if stock prices go down.

The not-quite-accurate thing financial advisors will tell you, that still serves as a good illustration of how you should be thinking is the 3 20s approach: If you save 20% of your income for 20 years straight, you can retire in 20 years. That's not really accurate for a lot of reasons, but the overarching premise is a good one: Time is valuable. More valuable than money. So young guys in their 20s and 30s ought to be getting their shit together now, so they can retire in their 40s and 50s instead of slaving away for women until the day they die.



# Dealing With Loneliness As You Work Toward Becoming A

## Top 10% Man

*By nowboarding.*

[Article link.](#)

Thanks to TRP I've finally dedicated myself to getting my shit together. Lifestyle, body, fashion, money, etc. To work on becoming a man who is in the top tier of self-made men (I say self-made because if you're on this sub your life situation probably hasn't put you in that position by default). These are the men who, among other things, get the best years and the deepest passions of girls that the remaining 95% of men only dream about.

But to become such a man will take years of intense effort, followed by a lifetime of maintenance. There are no shortcuts. See, there are 2 types of self-improvement, and becoming a top tier man involves achieving the second type.

1. Improvement that *you* recognize.
2. Improvement that *the world* recognizes.

Let's say you're a skinny bastard and start going to the gym everyday for the first time in your life. Every week you'll see a slightly improved version of yourself in the mirror. Fantastic! Keep it up! In 6 months, friends who haven't seen you in a while will be blown away. But in reality, this is only the first kind of self-improvement.

Just because you and your friends recognize and celebrate your improvements, it doesn't mean the world will. In fact, if you're just getting started, it's almost certain that the world at large will not even notice your achievement (not yet). A skinny bastard plus 6 months of painstaking effort in the gym and the kitchen is

now a guy with an only-slightly below average body.

Wonder why the hotties aren't responding well, despite you having made so much progress and being validated regularly by your peer group? It's because the girls are not comparing you to yourself from 6 months ago. They're comparing you to their world. To the hot, successful, fun, cool guys they've been lusting after and getting with since they were 12.

Sound unfair? Sure. But if you've embraced TRP, and I mean really embraced it, you've come to accept that nobody owes you anything, and sure as hell not these hotties. For me, this was the toughest part of the pill to swallow. More so than even the hypergamy truths.

To get the results of the top 5% of self-made men, you need to pay your dues with an intensity of effort that only the top 5% of men are willing to exert. To play in that realm, you need to become one of them. To become one of them, you need to invest so ferociously in yourself over such a long period of time that your results speak for themselves not just to yourself, but to the wider population.

I am not saying that the first type of self improvement is not important. And I'm not saying that improving yourself is to be done only to get the world's approval, or that your approval of yourself is not important. I'm only making this distinction between the 2 types so that you don't make the mistake of expecting the world to respond to you as though you have achieved the second, when you have in fact only achieved the first.

Because when your unrealistic results don't materialize, you will be deflated, drained, and demotivated. The first type is a prerequisite, and it's only by appreciating your own results that you keep the motivation to stick with it long-term.

In order to improve yourself to the point where you're in the top tier of men, it will take years. Frankly speaking, many of us here aren't going to get laid tonight. Some of you may not have been laid in months, if not years. Many of you may be

overweight, if not obese. Others may be repulsively skinny. Some of you may have no friends, low confidence, or no sense of self-worth.

Fine. We're in TRP here, where we accept the current situation so that we can work on it and change it to our satisfaction.

Having said all this, let's get to the meat of this topic.

If you're this guy I've just described, how do you lessen the sting of loneliness that you feel as you walk the path towards becoming a top-tier man? You may be on that first level of self-improvement where you recognize it and are feeling great, which is already a huge win. But the world hasn't recognized it, and won't for some time. So you're still without girls and without the kinds of cool friends and life experiences that you want. You're still lonely.

While you spend your weekend eating right, hitting the weights, shopping for nicer clothes, and engaging in 1 or 2 interesting social events that challenge your comfort zone, you feel good though can't help but be reminded how alone you really are. You see reminders everywhere that people are currently living the life you want. Hot girls with cool guys on dates, big groups of cool friends at a restaurant together, good-looking couples enjoying each other's affections everywhere you look. It is literally everywhere.

It can hurt to know that while so many other people are enjoying this night, enjoying this weekend, you are left with only hopes that your future will be better. Which it certainly will be if you become a high-quality man. Nevertheless, the sting of loneliness still exists today.

Since many men on TRP are already working to become that man, I'd like to know how you deal with the realities of loneliness as you invest heavily in yourself. Maybe you have friends, but they're the kind of people you're with only because the alternative is isolation. Maybe you have a girl you're seeing, but she's barely attractive to you and only slightly better than masturbation.

You're going through the process of self-development and feeling a new sense of purpose and self-control, but you know it will be a long time before you can make a real dent in your situation. Before you reach that second level of self-improvement where you are in fact received by the world as a high-quality man.

TRP is a journey, not a destination, but that doesn't mean you must confine yourself to a lifetime of loneliness as you commit to a lifetime of self-improvement.

How do you keep the end goal in sight and not let your current loneliness or lack of immediate success derail your efforts?

## Featured Comment

*By chivalry\_augustus.*

I know it's demoralising, but ... there's actually no point pursuing this lifestyle and dream if you don't actually want it. Swallowing The Red Pill for me has been a realisation of truth. I don't want to be in the top 10% of men in the sense that women will perceive me as being in the top 10%. What I mean by that is, I don't want to work damned hard to up my SMV just because it will up my SMV, especially because being a wealthy bachelor is never how I foresaw my life developing.

In actuality, swallowing the pill has been a realisation and an acceptance of the futility and the reality of the void. If, indeed, I do become wealthy, or I do become stunningly attractive, or I do become this or that or whatever, it will be because I wanted to do that for me. I will become greatness for my own sake, if indeed I do. But as far as women are concerned, what sense does it make to me to elevate myself above other men just so the vapid half of the human population can like me on a superficial level?

This is where I'm having real trouble with some of the elements of RP. My life as I see it now is one bereft of pressure or ambition. I want to bum around for a decade and see the world. I don't particularly care whether I live or die. I am happier than I was but I am happier more because I have embraced the utter sense of solitude that inevitably prevails when you realise that, truly, all men are islands. Hence, dealing with loneliness is not something that you can do on a temporary and ongoing basis, rather, loneliness is the prevailing reality and you have to determine what exactly you are going to do knowing that that is true.

I know that seeing loneliness as the context may seem perverse to some, but that, I feel is the nihilistic nature of things. That is why committing to self-improvement seems like a crazy idea to me unless you genuinely want it. For me, you have to accept and embrace the loneliness first, and from there, progress to the point of deciding if, and eventually, how, you are going to deal with it. But I don't get the constant obsession here with being a high-quality man. Ultimately, you're going to pay your dues time and again to win a prize that, at the end of everything, isn't much of a prize at all. It's just a life of toil in the hope of making up for a life of frugality.

# **The Red Pill, Dating, and Relationships**

# General Sexual Marketplace Theory

## **Briffault's Law**

*By redpillschool.*

[Article link.](#)

This has been posted a few times, and comes up in comments a lot, but we've got a lot of new users here.

### **BRIFFAULT'S LAW:**

*The female, not the male, determines all the conditions of the animal family. Where the female can derive no benefit from association with the male, no such association takes place.*

There are a few corollaries I would add:

- Past benefit provided by the male does not provide for continued or future association.
- Any agreement where the male provides a current benefit in return for a promise of future association is null and void as soon as the male has provided the benefit (see corollary 1).
- A promise of future benefit has limited influence on current/future association, with the influence inversely proportionate to the length of time until the benefit will be given and directly proportionate to the degree to which the female trusts the male (which is not bloody likely).

[Full Post here](#)



## Men Are Not Happy

*By Archwinger.*

[Article link.](#)

About once every month or two, there's a post somewhere on Reddit, by a woman, saying something like, "My boyfriend suddenly started doing Red Pill stuff and now I want out," followed by 4-6 paragraphs explaining how her boyfriend is now a controlling, abusive asshole who works out and wants sex (because these traits are, of course, very, very unique to The Red Pill, and any guy who exhibits them obviously went online, found us, and we ruined him). These threads get seized upon by our detractors, who eagerly point out: "See? See!? The Red Pill doesn't 'work' ! It just ends relationships and turns guys into assholes!"

Independent of what is and is not actually "Red Pill behaviour," situations like these are based a bad assumption. Simply put, in examples like this, the lamenting woman has presupposed that prior to her man's "changes", their relationship was actually good, and he was actually happy. Then he ruined everything by reading some bullshit online that told him how his relationship ought to be, then trying to implement it.

This begs the question: If the relationship was fine before the boyfriend went all Red Pill on his woman, why is he trying to change things? Why did he go on the Internet and seek out the manosphere? If he's happy with his relationship the way it is, why is he trying to find ways to improve his sex life and become more assertive? (All of this, of course, assumes that a) the stories presented on Reddit are true; and b) the man actually sought out The Red Pill and didn't just stop kissing his girlfriend's ass for any number of other reasons.)

The Red Pill is here because men aren't happy. They don't want to be sweet and

sensitive and do things for women all day long and be the "perfect boyfriend," while having subpar sex once every six weeks, paying out the ass for expensive dates and gifts, sacrificing personal time, and getting bitched at and threatened with a break-up if any of this perfect behaviour ever dips slightly. They don't want to give back rubs and foot rubs, stay at home one weekend a month while their women have a night out with the girls, get disrespected and talked about behind their backs, get cheated on (but just harmless, meaningless mistakes that don't really count!), and get berated when they push back against any of this. They don't want to let women move in, rent-free, and get pressured to buy a ring for a four-digit number of dollars and tie their finances to someone who makes less than half as much money, just because they've been "dating awhile" and "it's time" and they're "supposed to."

Sure, everything's hunky-dory for these girlfriends, but for the men, everything is NOT happy. Everything is NOT going well. And men are sick of it.

When a 28-year-old man with an entitled bitch of a girlfriend of 5 years stumbles across the Red Pill, he reads stories about men not so much older than he is who don't have or want girlfriends. They don't need a girlfriend because they have four or five women fucking their brains out on a regular basis outside of a relationship. They barely spend a cent on dates or activities. They barely lift a finger to impress women. But girls can't seem to get enough of them.

And what these men do seems so simple. Work out, focus on your career, practice your social skills and get confident, develop useful skills and interesting hobbies – essentially, quit wasting time. Read non-fiction instead of fiction, watch less TV, play less video games, quit jerking off to porn, spend that time doing something that makes you physically, mentally, or socially better. The Red Pill tells men that their time is valuable, and to use it well. Hand in hand with that, The Red Pill tells men that since their time is their most valuable resource, quit wasting it on women when you're not getting something of equal value in return. If your girlfriend is ugly, sexually ungenerous, lazy, or just an entitled bitch that expects you to do all kinds of crap for her just to maintain the pleasure of having a girlfriend, is it really worth all of the time and energy you expend? When you

could be doing something that actually improves your life?

The Red Pill exists because many men aren't happy. Because these relationships that are allegedly "just fine" are very much NOT just fine. Because men are giving so much to their women and getting so little, with the assumption that merely existing – merely being a presence in the man's life – is all a woman needs to do to become his highest priority. That men should be falling over themselves getting in line for the right to say "I have a girlfriend," and nothing more. Men are sick of this.

Guys in the "my man went Red Pill and ruined our relationship" Reddit posts probably aren't actually going to Internet sites to get an instruction manual for how to piss off their girlfriends. They're just normal guys who know in the pit of their stomach that something is wrong – that they're wasting their lives, and that they're not happy. It's not their girlfriends' fault, it's theirs. And they decide one day, for whatever reason, to try to take control of their lives, of their relationships, and build something they're actually proud of. And steps 1 and 2 of that process involve asserting yourself and living the way you want, and expecting the people with whom you associate (e.g., your woman) to add value to your life equal to the value you're expending. The rest of the world shorthands that behaviour as "being an asshole," and "ruining relationships." How sad is that? Honestly and confidently pursuing the life you want, and expecting others to hold up their end of a relationship is the new Hitler.

# The Unbalanced Sexual Marketplace

*By IllimitableMan.*

[Comment link](#) from a [larger article](#).

*And we'll discover that the real victims of modern feminism are, of course, women themselves, who have been left lonelier and less satisfied than they have ever been.*

I find it hilarious how much of [the article](#) basically outlines how the typical woman treats the average man like a pile of fucking shit, and then concludes that in their hostile ignorant arrogance, they end up being the real victims due to loneliness.

Men always want to go to bat for women, and that shit fucks me off. It must be genetic or some shit because I see men in TRP doing that shit too "don't be mad at tuh womenz brah, u just bitter OK? I get LOADSA PUSSY, you gotta lift and man up brah, stop being bitter brah" I get fucking tired of that retarded trite dumb testosterone monkeys spit. Fucking retards who lift a bit of metal and fuck a bit of pussy who are totally ignorant to what's going on, but think they're a boss because they can get laid and are constantly high on fucking TREN and a post workout buzz. Just because you lift and get laid, doesn't mean society isn't fucked up. Their opinions on life and women are basically some retarded flow chart:

- Do you lift brah? (Yes/No) No? - If not go lift brah.
- Do you get laid brah? (Yes/No?) - If not go tinder brah.

Tinder not working? You need to cut brah. Already doing both? Then there's no problem, you be trippin' brah! GYM AND TINDER FO LYFE!

See, these fucking idiots think being jacked and getting laid is all you need to be fulfilled in life, and that's fucking bullshit. Men outside the manosphere could collectively go lift tomorrow and it wouldn't change the legal system, it wouldn't get rid of feminism, it wouldn't fix the fucked up education system or the shit economy and it wouldn't give men game/social awareness. It wouldn't change a sweet damn thing for the overall condition of men as outlined in this fucking article.

For some reason, there are a sub-section of men who want to go to bat for women, and the more pussy your typical man gets, the more he thinks "hey you know what, women are fine, I have great times with them, you must be the problem BRAAAAHHHH ain't nothing wrong with women BRAAAAAAAAH you're the problem BRAAAAAAAAHAH." They don't wanna explore really what the fuck is up. It's just the guys fault. It's close-minded bullshit. Fuck exploring shit, and god forbid blaming a woman, they are poor innocent wittle victimz and as a man, it's all your fault if she's a cunt! The old hypoagent-hyperagent bait and switch gets annoying (men take blame for everything, women get blamed for nothing).

Look, if we're not blaming women FOR ANYTHING, and NOTHING IS THEIR FAULT even if they're HUGE CUNTS, then we can't treat them as equals. We can't respect them. We must see them as inferior children (hence the sidebar post "she's the most responsible teenager in the room").

If we treat them as equals with agency, then we have to hold them to account and stop fucking blaming men for women acting like cunts. You, you vest wearing juicing fuck, need to stop telling men they are fucking bitter because they have genuine rational grievances with bitches. You need to stop looking down on men who don't follow your self-prescribed juice/lift/Tinder lifestyle, shut the fuck up gloating/going to bat for women and realise you're a fucking idiot so high on juice and pussy that your opinion amounts to jack fucking shit. You're a dumb bitch-enabling ape looking for his next orgasm, that's all you are. You may physically epitomise masculinity, but mentally you're as bad as the [fucking mangina feminist David Futrelle](#).

Please, pick a fucking side, because I'm tired of the bait-and-switch in play that is used whenever it is beneficial to serve the plight of women. Men taking the blame for shit outside their realm of control is, in my opinion, full warp speed male hamster.

Women always need the #1 spot in the victim Olympics don't they? And men and women collectively enable that bullshit mentality. Society needs to figure the fuck out whether it wants to treat women as agentless puppies that need to be fed and watered all chained up in their kitchens, or to treat them as fucking people with equal agency, which means stop going to fucking bat for them and validating their bullshit with "as the man, it's your fault she's a cunt, you should have used your super man powers to stop her being a cunt. You should have treated her in such an ALFALLLLLFA way that the very base of her nature changed and caused her to change into what you wanted her to be. SHE IS THE WAY YOU MAKE HER. If you were a real man, she wouldn't be a cunt." Because you know, the fact she has daddy issues and feminism taught her that anything with a dick is a symbolic incarnation of Satan is irrelevant, it's ALL YOUR FAULT if it don't work with these bitches. And so the masculinity shaming and blaming continues in it's epic as ever fashion.

LOOK: both MEN AND WOMEN are sick right now, in fact the whole damn society is. Women are too mentally violent and feral, the worst of their femininity is running amok. Men are too confused, passive and directionless. That's where TRP comes in, but men should only be taking responsibility for their own destinies, not blaming themselves for the inevitable theatrics that come as part of the package in dealing with your average day loony toon of a woman. I never subscribed to the "as a man, it's your fault she's a cunt IF she's a cunt mantra," and I never will. Some women are just fucking cunts, plain and simple, and you're an idiot if you think you can make poison drinkable, or tame the untameable serpent. It takes a whole fucking society to bring bitches in line, and society has failed all of us.

This whole, she's got no agency when she's playing her victim card, but she's as

equal as you with as much agency as you when she needs representation and respect is fucking bullshit. The mixed messages are what really fucks shit up. And that shit really fucks up young men, men in general and the sheer prospect of an LTR for a man. It's such a head fuck that I understand why a lot of guys think "fuck this shit!" and look for escapes. I don't fucking blame 'em, they're doing what they perceive to be the rational thing, they just want to be happy. Most men are simple like that. They don't need all the head games and politics that comes with being in a relationship or even associating with women nowadays.

Anyway, intentionally vitriolic and provocative rant aside, I thought that was a really good piece. But women the real victims? Fucking please. 15-30 is a non-stop party for them. After that they either experience what young guys did, but the girl world equivalent, or they find a beta bucks, get dicked by one of the last remaining alphas this effeminate society has, and then fucking cheat on the beta and swindle him through divorce/child support etc. Which I'm sure some self-assured cunt on here will reply with "that's great for me BRAH, MORE PUSSY FOR ME BRAH!"

Anyway, great share bsutan, really enjoyed the read.

I hope I pissed a few people off who read this, you gym rat cunts know who the fuck you are. A man with the body of a demigod and the mind of a pissant is a caricature of masculinity, you cunts make me sick. If you lift, you better fucking read too (its the mental equivalent of lifting) and cut out the chest puffing "everything is a man's fault" bullshit.

## The Red Pill is Pro-Woman

*By Archwinger.*

[Article link.](#)

There's a post floating around one of the other subreddits telling the tale of a 17-year-old girl and her controlling, manipulative, abusive 23-year-old boyfriend who took great pains to isolate her from her friends and family, demand sex on every occasion they would meet (and threaten to dump her or kick her out of his house if she didn't comply), and some other really shitty behaviours, like physical violence and driving off and leaving her in another state. Needless to say, this guy isn't the "alpha male" a Red Pill guy strives to be. He's a snivelling loser who had to resort to insecure, jealous, and controlling behaviour because he didn't have options with other women, wasn't an attractive or valuable man, and was desperately afraid of losing this girl.

Somewhere in this story, the woman tosses in the fact that this shit head she was dating was obsessed with reading The Red Pill, which, of course, led to the usual Reddit bandwagon about The Red Pill being a haven for virgin loser sexist rapist abusers. Conveniently brushed off was the fact that this woman, for five years, stayed with her boyfriend, had sex on demand every time, came back to him after every breakup, and put up with all of his crap. Everyone simply concludes, obviously, that this woman had psychological issues, was young and naive and inexperienced, and that her boyfriend "took advantage" of her and "manipulated" her. Because of the way he "made her feel," she was forced to stay with him, forced to have sex with him on demand, and prevented from leaving him.

This standard surfaces again and again, in various examples - I'm just pulling this one because it's recent.



If a man were to approach a "normal" woman he was dating, with no deficiencies, no issues, no perceived power disparity or significant age difference or anything like that, and if that man were to say, "Have sex with me or we're through," the assumption for this baseline, normal case would be that the woman has two choices: have sex with him, or end the relationship. Also assumed in this normal, baseline case is that the woman has the capacity to make whatever decision she feels is best for her. Maybe she wants to have sex anyway and likes sex with him. Maybe she doesn't, but gets something else out of the relationship she appreciates. Or maybe she's offended by this kind of demand on principle and dumps him. But it's her choice, right? She has agency and makes the best decision for herself.

The modern, anti-Red-Pill viewpoint is that no woman would ever put up with that garbage. The only correct choice is for that woman to dump the "abusive" shit head she's dating (because any attempt to coerce a woman into sex is automatically "abuse." You're supposed to buy her jewelry every weekend, not say a word about sex, and hope she fucks you out of the goodness of her heart). If a woman does agree to sex when demanded like that, that's obviously the wrong choice, and it is clear, simply due to the fact that the woman made this wrong choice, that she is psychologically impaired and not responsible for her bad decision. Her abuser somehow had power over her and she couldn't see the truth.

That's the standard. Essentially, if a woman makes a choice our detractors agree with, she's responsible and made a great choice. If a woman makes a choice they disagree with, then she was clearly manipulated, controlled, abused, and not responsible for her bad decision – blame the man.

That's the blue pill, feminist, anti-Red-Pill way. "The choice I would have made is the only correct choice. I'm so right that anybody who does differently is mentally incompetent by definition, and any man who causes a mentally incompetent woman to make a bad choice is an abuser who should have recognized that the woman he's abusing is mentally incompetent simply by virtue of the fact that she did what he wanted." That's the standard. It's on you, the actor, as a man, to recognize whether or not a woman is competent to make a decision on

her own behalf. It's up to you to know everything there is to know about her and the totality of her circumstances, and to assume that women are mentally incompetent and can't make good choices unless their circumstances are absolutely ideal. And even then, maybe not.

Ironically, the Red Pill is much more pro-woman. We assume that women are reasonably intelligent people, capable of making reasonable decisions that are best suited to them. That's where the whole hypergamy thing comes from – we assume women are smart enough to make the decisions that get the best possible outcome for themselves. Likewise, when a man gives a woman a choice: put out or get out, we assume a woman is intelligent enough and responsible enough and reasonable enough to decide which of those two choices is the best one for her. If she walks, great. If she stays, then maybe she wanted sex, or maybe she's getting something else out of the relationship that she appreciates. But it was her choice based on what she felt was the best outcome for her.

The Red Pill gives women the benefit of the doubt. The Red Pill believes in a woman's ability to make responsible decisions for herself. Our detractors assume women are idiots, and therefore, it should be a federal offence to ever attempt to coerce a woman into sex, because women that agree to be with such men are apparently, by definition, mentally impaired. You can't put women on the spot like that! They can't be expected to make the right decision in those circumstances!

That's the world of "feelings." If you pick up a woman at a bar, and she goes home with you that night, but tomorrow morning, she regrets the encounter, then you "manipulated" her into sex. It wasn't her decision, it was your abuse.

But even if she doesn't regret her decision, our detractors don't take her feelings into account at all. They only consider their own. They never would have gone home with you. The only correct decision was to turn you down. Because she made a decision they disagree with, by definition, you abused and manipulated and controlled her.

Thankfully for women, we assume better of them. We're far more pro-woman

than most feminists.

## Being Controlling is for Losers!

*By Archwinger.*

[Article link.](#)

Many detractors of The Red Pill find the men who subscribe to this body of information to be "controlling." Nothing could be farther from the truth. The Red Pill promotes something that's not immediately obvious at first: the complete abdication of any attempt to control anything, except for the one thing you can actually control. Yourself.

We can't control women. Women are going to live the lives they want, date the men they want, fuck the men they want, marry the men they want, cheat on the guys they want to cheat on, divorce the guys they want to divorce, and live completely normal and happy lives with guys – or live completely normal and happy lives without guys -- and do exactly as they please, whenever and however they want. And they should. Women have the right to do whatever they want with their lives, and to pursue whatever kind of happiness they want, however they want to go about it.

You can't control a woman, nor should you try. All you can control is yourself. You can choose to become physically fit, you can choose to become professionally successful, you can choose to become socially apt and well-connected, you can choose to learn useful skills, you can choose to pursue interesting hobbies – you can choose to live a fulfilling life, all on your own, with or without women.

When a man posts something on /r/asktrp, lamenting that "My wife/girlfriend never has sex with me" or "doesn't respect me" or "flirts with other guys in front of me" or "cheats on me constantly" or "is a total bitch about everything all the time" – Nobody ever responds, "Rape her if she won't have sex with you. Beat her until

she respects you out of fear. Lock her up and keep her in the basement to keep her from the outside world. You should CONTROL HER!" Nope. Never that. In fact, the exact opposite is what's expressed.

Let it go, they're told. You can't control her. Focus on yourself. Become fit, successful, social, skilled, and interesting. Raise your own value and don't worry about her at all. Live your own fulfilling life independent of her. She'll either come around, or she won't. If she does, great. If she doesn't, any number of other women will want to be with you now that you've focused on your own life. Don't worry about controlling her. Just focus on you.

If the situation is especially egregious, the advice usually given is: "Next." That's right. Don't control her at all. Don't even try. Let her go. Let her live her own life. Cut her loose and live yours. Being jealous and controlling is "beta."

Where The Red Pill and modern feminism and other detractors diverge, however, is that the others will tell you that self-improvement is cheating. It's "manipulation." If you become muscular and hot, you're just manipulating women with your good looks. If you excel professionally, you're manipulating women with your money and status. If you're awesome socially, you're just gaming women when you go out and wow them with your social network. And so on.

When you withdraw your attention from a woman that's behaving undesirably and focus on yourself, that's dubbed "manipulative." When you improve yourself such that you're attractive to your woman (and to other women), that's manipulative. When you dump a woman who's not measuring up to your standards, that's manipulative. Essentially, by not attempting to control the situation (e.g., control the woman), that's seen as an attempt to manipulate her. Because the very fact that you're not being controlling will influence a woman to think or feel a certain way. The very fact that you're working on your own life will influence a woman. And doing things that influence women to think or feel something is evil manipulation.

The solution is simple, of course. Live in your mother's basement and only

come out to go to work. Give all of your money to the nearest woman since you're not paying rent. Repeat. Or you could just tell the rest of the world to go fuck themselves and live an awesome life, and let the few women lucky enough to be a part of that life enjoy the ride.

# Is Your Girlfriend Cheating On You With Her Guy-Friends? Or How Modern Relationships Are Flawed For Men.

*By Hinsbock.*

[Article link.](#)

Some thoughts I had, when I was thinking about power dynamics in (open) relationships and how something seemed flawed for men in todays society. (Disclaimer: This is just a generalization. In reality its not just black/white and there will always be exceptions. Everything follows the law of the gaussian distribution.)

What I think I know: Men and women are different:

- Women are the gatekeepers of sex.
- Men are the gatekeepers of commitment.

Cheating during relationship:

- Women are most hurt if their partner would cheat emotionally with them.
- Men would be most hurt when their girlfriend would have sex with another guy. (<http://www.counselheal.com/articles/8945/20140310/men-women-hurt-different-aspects-cheating.htm>)

Men and women enjoy sex:

- Men enjoy it most when they're able to fuck as much different woman as possible.
- Woman enjoy it most when they're able to fuck the best they can possibly

get.

Male and female SMV differ:

- Women reveal their low SMV if they give away sex easy (slut).
- Men reveal their low SMV if they give commitment away easy (time ho / beta).
- A man can show his high SMV if he shows he is able to sleep with other women (dread).
- A woman can show her high SMV if she shows that she can have guys committing to her (sex-rival). (<http://washington.cbslocal.com/2014/12/02/study-women-with-more-male-friends-have-more-sex-because-partners-fear-sex-rivals/>)

Man and woman can't be friends (quick examples: [https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=T\\_lh5fR4DMA](https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=T_lh5fR4DMA)):

- A man (in a relationship) having a female friend always wants to have sex with her, because she has high SMV for not wanting to give away sex easy for him.
- A woman having a male friend doesn't want to sleep with him because he has low SMV for giving away commitment easy.
- Edit: Male counterpart:
  - A woman (in a relationship) having a casual sex partner always wants him to commit to her because he has high SMV for not giving away commitment to easy.
  - A man (in a relationship) having a casual sex partner doesn't want to commit to her because she has low SMV for giving away sex easy.

Big leap but, correct me if I'm wrong, this all would lead to:

A woman with a guy friend or sexless orbiter ("we are just friends") who validates her and actually "commits" to her equals a man who has casual sex with



other women without commitment.

Basically this means the concept of relationship is always inequitable for men, because:

- Having "guy friends" (orbiters) is socially accepted for women.
- But having casual sex during a relationship is not for men.

A fair monogamous relationship would mean men can't have casual sex, and women can't have guy friends.

Edit: A fair more free relationship would mean a man can have casual sex and woman can have guy friends.

Everything above that is polyamory.

## Society Likes To Ignore A Woman's Past Sexual Behavior

### When Judging Her Character. Don't Fall Into This Trap

*By TRPsubmitter.*

[Article link.](#)

There's a top post today about a guy who found out that his GF got rammed in a fivesome in a public restroom. He found out she lied about this AND her total partner count. Of course, the girl is "soooo confused" as to why her BF has now shut her out. "Eww why r menz so intimidated by an strong, outgoing womyn?!?"

This comment caught my eye:

*It could be the number that threw him off, or the fact that you lied to him. You'll have to figure out which one it is.*

This is indicative of how wider society views this issue. Whereas everyone agrees that it's bad that she lied, society gives women a free pass on their high partner counts and past orgies/threesomes/etc. as if they are totally irrelevant to a woman's character/sexual attitude.

**"How did we come to the point where we judge/predict someone's future behavior based on past actions for virtually EVERY facet of their lives... except for sex?"**

Who is most likely to blow their money at the casino... The person who's never touched a blackjack table or the person who has a gambling problem? Who is the better employee... The person with an excellent work history or the person who has been fired 5 times for negligence?

While the answers to the above are obvious, we live in a society where men are encouraged/forced/shamed into ignoring a woman's past partner count when trying to figure out what kind of future wife/GF she will be.

The truth is that a woman's past sexual behavior (partner count) is a GREAT predictor of her future sexual behavior.

There is literally no better predictor of future outcomes than past empirical data. And one key piece of data that determines how you view sex... is actually how much you've had sex. Duh.

### **"Why does this issue exist?"**

As with most RP issues, the existence of the problem can be mostly attributed to: a) women will act (even subconsciously) in their own sexual self-interest, unless men/society hold them accountable. BUT b) Newsflash: bluepill men don't hold women accountable because they don't want to "ruin their chances" of getting their dicks wet and/or can't stand up to women shaming them for actually wanting to be men.

In that context, we can realize that women want the freedom to behave a certain way (which is fine) but without any consequences (which is not fine).

In RP terms, they want to maintain their access to high SMV men while ALSO engaging in low female SMV behaviors (i.e., sleeping around). However, women don't realize that they forfeit their exclusive access to high SMV men the instant they stop acting like high SMV women (i.e., feminine/non-slutty women).

On a side note, it's interesting that the only times women "complain" about men refusing to date them for their sexual past is when it's high SMV men. No woman complains about the beta, because they know they have the betas on lockdown. It's only when a high SMV man like George Clooney continuously dumps his aging GFs (thus denying her access to his money/status) that women get all fussy and accusatory.

## **"Ugh, why do menz even care about this?"**

Because men value sex. A lot. We don't go around telling women not to look for high SMV/Dread game/asshole men (at least RP men don't), because we understand that security/money/power/status/height/etc are all important to women. We're over our butthurt and now strive to excel in as many of those areas as possible because we know that's what women respond to.

So when it comes to something that we as men value, we are going to judge women harshly on that. Telling men to "grow up" is not gonna change our nature as determined by evolution. In short, men wanna fuck but we don't want to fuck something worthless.

Beyond just fucking, we want to make sure our long-term investment is sound. We want good GFs/wives/mothers. We don't want to make a mistake. So when a girl is confused why her 80 partner count bothers men, we perk up and think "Ya know... this girl had sex like it was nothing... so she probably will again."

And if you're a woman asking why men would ever come to that conclusion, you should reflect and ask yourself how the hell are you NOT coming to that conclusion?

**"But I'm a new person now! That was my past & you're the one I choose to be with!...oh btw, I won't do depthroats anymore like on that past sextape, mkay?"**

This is a manipulative tactic employed by women with regards to this issue. It's also incredibly disingenuous.

It shames men for predicting a woman's future behavior based on her past (which we've already established is normal for pretty much everything in life). It also allows women to escape judgment and once again redefine themselves as high SMV women, which they are NOT anymore.

It also fundamentally misunderstands what is important to men. The solipsism of women assumes that because women's long-term goal is a steady beta bucks relationship, that must obviously be the most important thing to men as well; men should want to give beta bucks away. Thus, all of her past is null & void, because the "important thing" is that she is ready to commit and settle down RIGHT NOW. Nothing else matters to her... so why should it matter to the man?

Chalk it up to the male ego or pride, but men take "ownership" of mostly everything in their lives. As fathers, husbands... even as car owners (guys have named their cars/boats female names since ages ago). The role of men is as stewards of society and family units... and what those in our charge do definitely reflects back on us. Men are also competitive and a perceived inability to handle our shit is poisonous to our self-image.

In that context, one can easily understand why we don't like the idea of our GF getting pounded 5-ways in a bathroom and then our friends/family finding out about it. We're now the BF who allowed our GF to get nailed to the urinal wall. No thanks.

## Love is Irrational

*By IllimitableMan.*

[Comment link](#) from a [larger article](#).

We have a love-hate relationship with women. I mean speak for yourself but I don't love women. Seeing them for what they are I appreciate what a minority of well-raised women can contribute to my life and I can see how men are idealistic romantics that need/crave a woman in their life to "have that connection they can't have with another man," but by the by women are nothing to be lauded or worshipped. Western women in general are just shitty people. We have all the reason in the world to hate them but being hateful doesn't help you improve yourself so you have to look past it for the sake of your own mental health. You do this by being selective with your women and employing RP strategies to hold frame/maintain dominance, enjoying their positives whilst mitigating their negatives and if necessary dropping them like hot shit when they cross the line. Which many, if not almost all, will.

I think loving as in, worshipping women or even preferring them to men, despite having read a lot of TRP material is not RP at all, but really, blue pill gone full circle. It looks something like this: you were BP because you were ignorant. Then you 180'd to Red Pill and bitter. Then again you 180'd so now you're purple pill and wilfully ignorant because RP truths were painful. Only now you have no ignorance to blame, just the fact that reality hurts and you can't deal with the pain it causes you. To be honest I don't know what's more pathetic, a dude who never knew better or a dude who knew better but couldn't handle the truth. Not meaning to present a false dichotomy as it can certainly be more nuanced, but you get my drift, I'm not trying to get too deep with this specific idea.

Ultimately I think we're fighting our instincts. Our instincts are to romanticize

women, care for them, provide for and protect them, seeking sexual favours in return to pass on our genes. Meanwhile our culture has made our instincts deadly to our own survival, exacerbated by cultural marxist indoctrination which makes us ripe pickings for women who have been trained to be less empathetic, more narcissistic and more predatory in both their view of and relation to, men. Women are manageable when their egos are kept in check (this is why negging works) but allowed to get high on "you go girl!" instant validation for the tiniest and most asinine things (such as a selfie) they become incredibly narcissistic. Combine that with man's natural predisposition to romanticize women and woman's inherent Machiavellian instinct and what we have is a disaster waiting to happen. What we have here is a culture that brainwashes men to give into their romantic instincts instead of utilising them selectively and giving into them sporadically; whilst dissecting and supplanting their masculinity to populate their psyche with feminine viewpoints. These feminine viewpoints then get mixed in with male protector/provider instinct (man's in-built masculine concept of romanticism) as to make them hard to tell apart from one another. In part, this is why guys sometimes pathetically bicker over "what being alpha is", especially in relation to women and long-term relationships which are no doubt the trickiest sphere for any man, let alone an RPer.

Feminism as institutionalised as it is in society is responsible for exacerbating female narcissism, encouraging them to monopolize and exemplify their worst traits (hypergamy/entitlement and solipsism) to scapegoat us collectively (as men) for their own material betterment. Effectively today's generation of women have been trained to hang men out to dry rather than learn to love and work with them in spite of our monumental gender differences. Part of the facilitation of this is making it so women can't love/trust/pair bond to any one single man by encouraging them to be "sex-positive" aka huge sluts. This is great if you want casual sex, but it's bad if you actually want to be in love. The more partners a woman has had the less capable of falling in love she is. A woman who's had many dicks and relationships no matter what she rationalises is near incapable of pair bonding. These women are often bitter and they feel owed something from their chain of suitors as a symptom of their latent narcissism. Resultantly they view men collectively as an arbitrary segment of the population that can be exploited for self-

gain.

Where it was traditionally incentivised for women to depend on men, it has now been demonised. Instead, women now depend growingly on men indirectly via big daddy government's wealth redistribution efforts. When opting for direct dependence on men they opt for insidious methods (wilful manipulation and gold digging) rather than cohesive and functional methods (a promise of sexual loyalty and a union focused on family creation/maintenance.) We, as a species, may be naturally polygamous, but our civilization is based upon monogamy, thus we are at the impasse where we must choose what is more important to us. Hedonistic sexual freedom or family? You enjoy the decline or you endeavour to rebuild civilization one long-term relationship at a time. Most guys seem to have given up hopes of a family, others naively hang on. Some are reasonably competent in "maintaining a woman" within the long term despite all the odds stacked against them, but shit's grim.

Without a patriarchal society in place to enforce honour, our ability to love women is diminished because they have the ability to destroy us and get away with it. Due to a few core differences: their lack of logic, their lack of honour and their exceptional ability to rationalise and delude themselves that the bad things they do are necessary for their own emotional well-being and therefore "just" and perfectly acceptable (this is aided by weak logic and is an instinct that will even override women who uncannily possess strong logic), they simply do not hold themselves to account in a way that a man would. Neither does society. By making them our legal and social equals (well actually, superiors) without them being our logical and spiritual equals, we have upset the balance between leader and follower, captain and first mate, and left ourselves susceptible to the impulsivity of their emotionally driven whims. What has this done? Destabilised society, utterly. This has resulted in divorce, suicide and a whole bunch of other fucked up crazy shit that no hot chick's soft touch, sweet voice, long hair and gentle kisses is worth. For all the flak they get, the MGTOWs are the rational ones here. They're rational in pursuing their own happiness, however from an evolutionary standpoint they're irrational for effectively consenting to end their own genetic line. If there was ever a war between nature and nurture, this is it and it's socially engineered human



reproductive kryptonite.

Yes, we may be biologically programmed to romanticize women so that we pass on our DNA, but no, it's not rational to "love women" from a contemporary perspective. I fear men who give themselves over to irrationalism are doomed no matter what they know about women because they are willing to overlook all manner of red flags for the sake of "love." Women really are man's ultimate weakness, as distasteful as that is to acknowledge. What all men must know is this: you never get to "just fall in love with a woman" and give into the deepest romantic yearning within you. This is a privilege reserved for women. As a leader, you may not let love consume you. You must always manage her for the benefit of you both and the success of the relationship. Where she will not yield or allow you to do what needs to be done - you must walk away. This is probably one of the most bitter pills to swallow that there is. You never "just get to be in love." Ever. You don't. You don't get to be complacent.

## The Redefinition of Marriage

*By Whisper.*

[Article link.](#)

I think there is no group in America quite so awful at explaining its point as the so-called "Religious Right", that group of Christians-with-a-capital-C who are the populist voice of social conservatism in the American political landscape.

Their grasp of apologetics, outside of a few voices like Dalrock, is so bad that no one outside their community even understands their talking points.

When they said "family values", everyone else thought it was a code word for hating sex. When they say "defense of marriage", everyone else thought it was a code word for hating gays.

But the truth is more complicated.

The core of religious values, for almost all religions, not just Christianity, is reinforcement of existing social structures. Now, the construction of a mythological framework for that is just what most religions DO. But when that framework becomes the only reason for those values that people understand, then they cannot explain the values to anyone who doesn't share their supernatural beliefs.

CCs (conservative christians) can't explain their values, because they don't themselves understand the real reasons behind them.

It never occurs, not only to cultural Marxists, SJWs, and other ultra-liberals, but also to the average moderate, that these values are wrapped around a correct idea.

This idea is that the basic unit of a society is not an individual, but a family. A society composed of weak, disconnected, or broken families is a broken society.

And the way our society has traditionally formed families is marriage.  
(Followed by children.)

Now, marriage, at its core, is a contract. (Just like pretty much any human relationship that is formalized.) Contracts have a couple of things that distinguish them:

- They have terms. (These theoretically benefit both parties.)
- They have consent. (Both parties agree to the terms.)
- They have enforcement. (Some negative consequence to the party that breaks the agreement.)

Now, in the idealized version of the past that CCs want to return to, all these things supposedly worked.

- The wedding vows were the terms.
- Informed consent was obvious, because both parties recited the terms out loud.
- Enforcement was a social act by the community, because the vows were spoken in front of that community, who would socially enforce them.

Now, CCs think wedding vows are spoken in front of "God", but when was the last time you saw god punish a cheating wife, or a neglectful husband? No, the real enforcers of wedding vows were the tight-knit local communities people lived in. If the marriage contract was broken, the community would judge who broke it, and ostracize that person. Effective.

But because marriages have consequences in civil law, the government needed some notion of who was married. And this was the thin end of the wedge. Once people started having to sign papers declaring that they were married before the

law recognized it, the enforcing authority passed from the hands of the community, and into the hands of the law.

And the law, in its need to standardize everything, began to standardize the contract.

So now, what do we have?

- The wedding vows are just poetry. The law defines the terms of the contract, and it can and will retroactively redefine those terms at any time.
- Informed consent is impossible, because the papers the couple sign don't contain the terms, which occupy volumes of law books unavailable to most couples, and which can change at any time.
- The law does not enforce the marriage contract (no-fault divorce), it simply recognizes the dissolution of the contract, and divides the assets of the partnership (money, property, children) without any regard to who broke the contract.

So, when the modern couple gets "married", they are agreeing to terms they don't know about, breach of which will not be punished, and the dissolution of which will be handled by a templated process that someone else has decided is fair for everyone. Is it any surprise this doesn't work? The favoritism courts show to women doesn't even enter into it. The problem runs deeper. When the government defines the terms of a contract, the parties to that contract do not know what they are agreeing to.

This is what CCs are on about when they don't want to let gays get "married." They have no idea of the reasons underlying their own values, and they're closing the barn door decades after the horses have fled, but they have some vague notion that the government mishandles the institution of marriage, and they want to resist that somehow.

So how should we fix this problem?

We shouldn't, you fool. We can't. Have you forgotten where you are? You're reading TRP. We are not here to fix society, because our society eats self-sacrificing heroes for breakfast, then demands they buy it lunch.

We are here to survive the collapse.

So how do you do that? DON'T GET MARRIED, DUMBASS.

- It doesn't matter if you want children.
- It doesn't matter how much game you have.
- It doesn't matter how ironclad your prenup is.
- It doesn't matter how high your SMV is.
- It doesn't matter if you could have another her in thirty seconds.

You are still signing a contract you don't get to read. Would you hand a stranger a signed blank cheque? It's just retarded. There is nothing that all the redpillian advice in the world can do for you, if you are such a rube that you sign things without reading them.

# Observations on Gender Behaviour

# The Red Pill Is Even Tougher To Swallow For Girls

*By Popeman79.*

[Article link.](#)

You know this bitter, harsh taste of the red pill that men have to swallow:

- There is no such thing as everlasting love. The moment you stop improving and you lost the admiration of your significant other, it's over.
- Women don't care if you're a good person. They care that you have dominant, alpha traits to give them the tingles and impregnate them; or provider, beta traits to support them and provide for them and their offspring.
- Women are only attracted to guys of higher value than them, and they are hypergamous. As long as they can safely branch swing to a guy with higher value, most of them will do it. They'll rationalize it by feeling that the love is gone between you two.
- Don't trust women. Lying and manipulating is to them what resolve and hard work are for us: our weapons in life.
- **You're only as important to others as what you bring to the table: so lift, grow, become better. No free pass for any man.**

Well, this is a (very resumed) tough pill to swallow, but no matter at what age you swallow it, you can still grow and improve, get better women, follow your interests, try and build the life you want.

Women, on the other side, have a very tough pill to swallow too:

- Since you can remember, life has always been awesome: people love you, treat you nice, opportunities present themselves, you're never alone. You

have no reason to doubt that it will never change. Well, it will. And it will change abruptly when you hit 30. Nobody tells you that, and you're unprepared.

- You think you're attracted to nice guys, but really you're not. You like charismatic, strong men that you can't manipulate – men that are socially above you and treat you accordingly. Unfortunately, a lot of those men are assholes. Deal with it.
- You think you have a great personality because everybody tells you so, and that you have a sense of humor because everybody laughs at your jokes. Newsflash: people only do so because you're young and hot. In ten more years people will start treating you like shit (like people treat men all the time).
- Nobody cares that you have a degree. You can climb the corporate ladder as a single, independent woman, and think you're happy, and you will be for a few years, but you'll probably end up alone, or in an unfulfilling relationship, and you'll be miserable. You'll wish you married that nice guy you turned down when you were young, and who ended up becoming an amazing man. Now he doesn't even look at you.
- No matter what feminists tell you, you won't feel fulfilled if you don't have a household or a family of your own. You don't realize it now because you're young and everything revolves around you, but when you're older you'll notice that your life feels empty. Just look at those 50-year-old women with no kids or loving husband, they are truly miserable and bored to death.
- **You're young and have all the power in the world, but it's granted to you for a limited time. Don't waste it in multiple meaningless flings. Find a good man, use your love and knowledge to push him to become great. Build a household with him. You only have limited time to find prince charming and build the life that will make you happy.**

A guy that finds The Red Pill in his 30s, 40s, even 50s, can still change his life for the better. For a girl it's not always the case, there are mistakes that cannot be undone. They can hit the gym at 40 and change their attitude, but for a lot of them it won't change anything, and the realization that they made poor choices will hurt them. That's why women don't swallow their own Red Pill.



## Featured Comment

*By IllimitableMan.*

Women shine brighter but burn out quicker.

Men start out as candles that keep getting blown out in the wind, but end up becoming the fucking sun itself (if they apply themselves rigorously enough).

It may be harder to be a man than to be a woman in many ways, men may take the bulk of the responsibility, but I would infinitely prefer to endure the trials and tribulations of men than the mediocrity inherent of feminine kind. Clearly a lot of women agree being a woman is boring, because the craziest, biggest, man-hating feminists always take on male qualities and become completely unattractive in the process. They have Freudian penis envy on steroids, they are totally and utterly jealous they weren't born men because they defy femininity and it's rather minor responsibilities, instead gravitating towards the masculine. These are usually your naturally high T girls/tomboy types, but feminism as an ideology mandates low T women should aspire to live their lives in much the same way. They use female herd mentality/groupthink to shame and boss low T women into high T female behaviour, essentially, more masculine behaviour.

Women's biggest philosophical conundrum is this:

Do I want to be attractive to men, or do I want to be interesting/have a career?

Because you can't have both. Sure a career woman can get a man, but not a high quality man, not a man she wants or will "be in love with." So what is more important to her? Love or money? Lifelong high quality commitment or academic/business success? The men she wants aren't interested in her. Women always think

they can have the best of both "I'm a mother and a CEO!" but they can't. Career mothers breed fucked up kids and expect the father to take on a motherly role. If he won't, the kids are raised by complete strangers (the tale of every rich kid ever in the modern age).

Most women indulge the power of their beauty in youth, then start developing an actual personality around 35 once their looks die out and they need to find alternative means to maintain their power in society. Unfortunately, anything women can do, men can do better. Their beauty is their biggest selling point, so the personality they create to make up for the loss of looks is rarely ever as developed as a man's, who has had to develop a strong personality from a very young age just to get by in the world. Women being coddled and flattered and catered to so much is really what makes them, in many ways, as weak and needy and inferior as they are. I do believe women can be a lot better/higher quality than they are, but they'd need to find RPW at a young age. Being a post-wall hag on RPW, or a reformed slut will not get you a male 9 or 10 unless you luck the fuck out. Women past the expiry date have to accept a man will take other mistresses if he is alpha and she waited post-wall (once she lost her youth) to get serious, that or she can monopolise a beta she will never truly "be in love with" (get tingles for). Every woman wants to monopolise an alpha, but very few have the sheer quality necessary (beauty, intelligence, good disposition) to warrant alpha provider commitment (which is basically RPW endgame).

Do I feel sorry for women? No. They get to have 15 years of bliss whilst we sweat and toil. We earn our accolades, they just get born with a vagina in a first world country. They don't give a shit about your struggles either, your sympathy will get you nothing from women but exploitation. Don't feel too sorry for them, they reap what they sow. It's easy to see women as victims, I believe as men we are instinctually inclined to perceive women as such. But they play on that and will fuck you over when it becomes apparent you're a schmuck. So OP for the sake of your own best interest, keep a lid on that shit.

## **"Why Would That Matter? I'm The Girl"**

*By magx01.*

[Article link.](#)

This was the response I got to the following question I asked a girl I know who was complaining about there being "no good men" left (and listing a TON of qualities she was seeking in a mate (many contradictory ones of course)): "That's quite the list. Well, let's reverse that. What do you have to offer them?"

She looked at me like she had never, EVER considered this nor been asked it and then responded with the quote in the title.

This is what guys today are dealing with out there. Girls who have mile long lists of what they expect in a man (perfection and contradictory traits, doing the job of multiple men and then being shamed for not succeeding) yet never once even consider what they themselves have to offer (which, these days, is quite often laziness, a lack of accountability, solipsism, debt, poor career prospects, entitlement galore, etc.).

## **New Members, This Is Fundamental**

*By projectself.*

[Article link.](#)

I am just going to talk about a simple fundamental topic. An essential core of Red Pill. She doesn't love you the way you expect her to. She is incapable of that, and it is not reasonable for you to expect it.

All our lives, we were told someone will love you for you. That's a lie. You certainly can find love, tons of it, passionate love, nurturing love, forgiving love, and you can find it over and over again. But what you cannot find, and what does not exist is unconditional love. She does not love you for you, and she never will or can. She loves you for how you make her feel.

She loves you because of how other people in the room look at her when she is with you. She loves you because you are strong when she needs to yield and recharge. She loves you for the entertainment you bring: guitar, jokes, stories. She loves you for the security you bring: financial security, emotional security, physical security.

Relationships are work, everyone knows that. But the bullshit is that we were told the "work" is more communication, more understanding. It is not, it is more masculinity, it is more strength. She brings nurturing love to the table, a deeply feminine energy; that means you have to damn well bring the masculine energy to match it.

There is a balance, and if you act in a feminine way, if you regard the relationship as more important than she does; she will grow in masculinity to offset your weakness. And she will resent you for it. Be the 100 year oak tree in her life,

be the strength and let her be woman. She will shower you in love. But you have to do the work. You do not have to do it perfectly, you just have to do it.

## **She Doesn't Love You**

*By SoftHarem.*

[Article link.](#)

She doesn't love you. She loves her attraction to you.

I'm going to repeat this because it is that important - She doesn't love you, she only loves her attraction to you.

Make no mistake, fellow high value men, women have no loyalty beyond their own narcissism. The days of the lifelong partner your grandmother was to your grandfather have been put to rest. The instant validation and unnecessary amounts of attention your average attractive woman get are completely out of control, and they thrive on those high dopamine levels. Combine that with our post-feminist society which never tells women "NO." and you have the current mess. What does this mean for you? Well, its quite simply really, maintain attraction.

Lift. Dress well. Don't take any shit from anyone, and be the man who puts her in her place. Women crave leadership and dominance, regardless of what all those pseudo-husband feminists might say. Just don't think for one second that she loves you, because she doesn't. She loves the tingles you give her by not being like all the other pandering low value men who have been trying to beat down her door. She loves the primal orgasms from being held down and ravaged. She loves how her friends pine over the new mysterious guy, and most importantly she loves that you maintain your frame when she is being completely irrational, but she does not love you. Remember, she'll get her dopamine fix with or without you so you might as well get your dick wet for your troubles.

The worst thing a woman can do is accidentally fuck a beta. Provider type men

used to be something noble, something to strive for, but in an age where we have abundance in every facet of our lives - they're redundant. Women do not have to worry about food, shelter, or security. It is all taken care of by Big Daddy Government™ (or beta men) so they are free to pursue all their deepest, darkest fantasies with little to no repercussions. How many threads are posted here regularly that tell the same story? Happy relationship, good sex, everything is going well but she wants to "mix it up" (ride new cock) and usually the guy caves. Her attraction is waning and she needs her fix. Movies like Eat, Pray, Love make this idea popular. Why work on your marriage and care about your family when you can go get some HOT FOREIGN STRANGE?! Exactly. Don't be the chump husband, be the hot foreign strange, or, if you're a Heinz 57 like most of us just have enough Dark Triad traits that give her the tingles.

And please, for the love of FSM, don't fucking talk to me about this unicorn you heard about from a friend of a friend. We deal in probabilities in this community, and it is highly unlikely you are going to meet an attractive woman with any sort of loyalty. Yeah, they're out there, just like winning lotto tickets and Google start-ups are out there. Don't be a victim of regret rape because you caved to her bullshit and she needs to save face because you are no longer attractive enough to brag to her friends. Be the attractive guy who holds his space and is ready to replace her at the drop of a hat because that is exactly how quick her attraction can nose dive. I shouldn't even need to write this last paragraph, but we've had an explosion of growth lately and with that come the newest flock of people on the fence. Also, ladies, we don't want your advice. If you want to drop some "truth" about how there are all kinds of attractive and feminine women out there and we're just going after the insecure bar sluts I will swiftly remove your cliché cellulite ridden ass from our community.

## Women Don't Give a Fuck About Your "Feelings"

*By too\_long\_didnt\_read.*

[Article link.](#)

Lately we seem to have received a new influx of newbies who think that clicking "subscribe" to this subreddit is all that's required to "take The Red Pill", and more arrogantly, that their beta outbursts from that point onwards constitute Red Pill behaviour. This post aims to address one particular irritation I have with these people and Red Pill confusion - their feelings.

More and more I see the nonsense peddled that to "front up", "grow some balls", and "tell a woman frankly how you feel" is Red Pill behaviour. Worse, that it's some kind of success story for an obvious beta orbiter to come here, read a few headlines, and then profess their feelings to their disinterested target and awkwardly break free from their orbit by stamping their feet and whining that "they just can't do it anymore" (waa waa waa). It isn't, and the quite frankly ridiculous up-voting of the positive comments to such behaviour is a worrying development for the signal to noise ratio of this subreddit.

When it comes to feelings start by remembering this - woman discuss their feelings (mostly for the same reasons that they do anything else, for validation and attention), men simply act on them.

There is no reason, at all, ever, to discuss your feelings with a woman. Firstly it's a waste of your time because they don't care (they get no validation or attention from it after all), and secondly it does irreparable harm to your frame and SMV, and is a sure fire way to render any vagina as dry as the sahara in minutes.

Why? Because women don't care about how YOU feel, they only care about



how YOU make THEM feel. They care about the tingles you give them when you maintain your alpha frame and the SMV you have in public, they care about the protection they feel when they are out in public with you, they care about the direction and purpose you bring to the relationship and in turn their lives, they care about the financial security and social status you bring, they care about the orgasm you give them when you let your testosterone take over and give them the rough fucking they so desperately crave.

Women are programmed to be nurturing towards their young, not their men. Men are there to provide and protect while they raise their young, and if they have to be nurturing towards you too that means you're a poor protector and provider. Displaying any trait that reflects poorly on your ability to be a strong protector and provider is infuriating to a woman, because nothing annoys a woman more than accidentally fucking a beta.

For their men they are simply interested in what you can provide, and what they have to do for you to keep providing it.

Do yourself a favour gentlemen, keep your feelings to yourself.

## "I've Been Hurt in the Past"

*By Archwinger.*

[Article link.](#)

I used to meet a lot of women who allegedly loved me more than any man they'd ever had previously, but went to great lengths to never, ever have sex with me. They weren't virgins; many had quite the history with men. But I still never got anywhere. Their reasoning was grounded in woman-logic: "I've been hurt by a lot of assholes in the past, and I really care about you, so I want to do this right" or some variation of that.

If you're a loser, upon hearing that, you'll think to yourself, "Oh, joy! I'm totally not an asshole, and she notices that and is rewarding me with a real [non-sexual] relationship instead of a shallow one that's going to fail! I'm so lucky! I'll wait forever for such a wonderful person! I should find something nice to do for her right now to let her know how grateful I am!"

Here's how that woman-logic sounds to a real guy: "Other men worse than you have gotten farther with me, in less time, with less of an emotional and financial investment. But because I care more about you, I am making you jump through hoops and making you spend a greater amount of time and resources to get less far with me. Because I care more about you. What? Why are you looking at me like that? This makes perfect sense. Yes, giving less to people I care about more makes sense."

Here's what the girl really means: "I've pegged you for a chump. I don't think you have options with other women, and I don't think you're willing to walk away, so I'm going to frame this relationship on my terms. We fuck when I want to, and that's going to be after I've made you jump through a bunch of hoops to prove

you're my little compliant bitch who's going to give me all the time, resources, and validation I want, at will. If you were a real man, you'd have fucked me already, but I've cast you for the role of bitch. I don't care about you. I care about me. I don't even like you. Sex is reserved for real men. You're not a real man. You're my bitch."

Here's the kicker: Most women don't know that they really mean this. They just know that the validation feels good, and that a guy who keeps validating them without sex makes them feel powerful, happy, and better about themselves. When any woman hears the line of girl logic, "I've been hurt in the past," it makes perfect sense to them – she's screwed up by giving it up too easily before and wants to stop screwing up. By stop screwing up, they mean that she needs to do a better job of withholding sex to bait men into doing shit for her to earn it. They don't know they mean that, but that's what they mean.

Only in the eyes of a woman does it make sense to give less to a man that you love more. But that's the rationalization kicking in. If a woman is giving you less, and making you do more for it, that's the exact opposite of loving you more. Being stingy with affection is the opposite of love. Requiring an exchange of favors rather than just giving of yourself is the opposite of love.

It's a difficult truth to admit and to accept, not just for us, but for women, too. I think on some level, they want to love that nice guy who's going out of his way for them, but they just don't. They can't. But they tell themselves that they do, and that they're just taking it slow to avoid getting hurt like they have in the past. Because they love him more. And if things don't work out, he's still a great guy – the chemistry just wasn't there. And if they slip up and screw some hot guy from work, it was a mistake. They don't love that guy. They love the nice guy, don't they? They were just drunk.

"I've been hurt in the past and want this to be different," is nothing more than an insidious shit test. By complementing you, telling you that you're different from every other guy, that you're not an asshole or a douche, and that she loves you more than every previous man, you're off-guard when in combination with all of

that praise, she denies you sex. Because she loves you more.

# **A Red Pill Take On "Why Is Men Feeling Entitled To Sex Is Being Discussed While Women Feeling Entitled To Friendship is Not?"**

*By bsutansalt.*

[Article link.](#)

I saw this thread earlier and it got me thinking about how it's seen as entitlement or sexism one way, but women's prerogative the other:

<https://archive.today/BSiWf>

First off, IMO it tracks to female entitlement and the ongoing pathologizing of male sexuality. You've all heard it before, some iteration of "guys can't just put in nice guy coins and expect sex in return." The Red Pill reversal of such thinking is "women can't just put in sex tokens and expect commitment from a guy." The reason it's so rare to hear this reverse position IMO is because of how gynocentric our society has become.

Many women typically feel they are entitled to friendship when it suits them, and many don't even give it a second thought that a guy might deny being friends with them if she turns him down sexually/romantically. What it all boils down to is a type of frame control. Often times they're expecting you to just go along with it, so when you stand up to her in a sense and say "he'll no," soooo many times I've seen the women lose their shit. They've just never been told no or been rejected before. Men deal with it regularly, so we're sorta numb to rejection, but when it happens to women, especially attractive women it has a much stronger impact.

As a commenter in the linked thread stated, many women will use a man as

utilities in lieu of a boyfriend, all without granting him any of the benefits of dating. For some reason society expects men not to have a problem with this.

If I had to sum up the point of this thread, it's that men need to stop allowing ourselves to be used by women in this manner as they aren't treating us as actual friends. If a woman wouldn't come to your place to move furniture, or pick you up at the airport, or help you around the house when you're sick, like you helped her, is she really a friend, or is she just using you?

If you need a way of gauging whether or not you're being used, request some investment on her part on par with that she has asked of you...and judge her on her behavior. Investment should be mutual between friends, so if you find you're investing more than she is, then odds are she's using you and you've found yourself in the friendzone or are an orbiter and don't even realize it. In other words you are still plugged into the Matrix.

## Featured Comment

*By IllimitableMan.*

Women have a great capacity for using men for as much as the man will allow himself to be used for whilst granting him nothing in return. Capitalising mainly on the attraction said man feels for said woman, which she does not reciprocate. Instead of being open and honest and letting said man know she isn't interested, she exploits his attraction for personal gain. Women hamster around this shit and pretend they are legitimate platonic friends and that nothing is one-sided (a very rare arrangement) but really she just has him pegged as a bitch - he is what is known as AN ORBITER. Someone who is constantly around and available to her, a phone call away, ready on her whim to carry out whatever favour of the day the bitch in question needs. That's not friendship, that's exploitation. Especially if she expects that because "she's the woman" but wouldn't do it in return.

Women see orbiters as:

- Backup dick for when shit hits the fan with the BF. The hotter she is, the more orbiters she'll have. The #1 orbiter gets to have emotional pity sex with her when she's low and she splits with her BF. She'll either be so damaged from the break-up she'll actually downgrade to #1 orbiter as an LTR, or she'll get back with her BF tell the orbiter it's a mistake and how she never should have done it and they were better off as friends and she doesn't want the sex to ruin anything and blah blah blah. Basically a flowery version of "get back in the friend zone bitch."
- Sympathisers who will come to her aid when having problems with said BF or a female friend, an employer etc
- Validation givers/ego feeders/narcissistic supply
- Favour givers - help her move, taxi her around, buy her some food, get her a drink, do shit for her to make her life easier in general, involves you spending money on her without actually giving her money, saves her money on getting her own shit, paying for an actual taxi, buying her own food and etc.
- A way to make their BF jealous and leverage him, basically dread game. A BF whose girl has 5-10 male friends is going to be way more paranoid than a guy whose girl only has female friends. Of course if the guy voices his paranoia, she will shame him as being unreasonably paranoid, controlling and blah blah blah and that she's known these guys a long time and won't get rid of them for anybody. Basically it's manipulative bullshit.

I remember once a girl I knew was trying to get me to orbit (co-worker), but I had no interest. She asked me if I could help her carry some furniture (I'm built) from the store to her house. Her house wasn't far from the store, but it was heavy, and she had a lot of stairs to go up, as well as lots of long winding corridors until you got to her apartment (it was in a block.)

I said nothing... gave her a funny look and she said "I can pay you." I said, "How much? make it worth it" and she just dropped the conversation. You see she

didn't want to give me value for helping her do something that adds value to her life, she just wanted to use me as a tool for adding value to her life. She said she'd pay me as a shit test hoping it'd activate my "kindness" and say "oh no don't worry about that, you ain't gotta pay" so then she could go go "oh really are you sure? you're so kind" and get a favour out of me, or some shit like that. It's not like we were good friends, and she's asking me to put myself out for her in a way that MY REAL FRIENDS VERY RARELY ask me to. Note my real friends are all men. Not someone abusing the label of "friend" or "acquaintance" to try and get favours out of me.

I have practically no white knight instinct in me at all and see right through these stupid games. These stupid games where they FALSELY offer to pay (be it a date, or some fuel money, or for helping them do something) and only do so for plausible deniability hoping it will entice you TO OFFER IT FOR FREE so then if you ever use it against them or realise they are taking the piss out of you they can go "WELL YOU OFFERED I DIDN'T MAKE YOU" and then they can frame you as the bad guy and convince the hamster that they're the victim and you're the one in the wrong (women need to do that to fuck with you.)

However, if you actually take them up on their offer of payment, they'll roll their eyes like "this guy doesn't get it, you weren't meant to say that, you were meant to just be a good little beta and offer me free shit" which will elicit a raised eyebrow back of "I do get this shit, and that's why I'm not fucking helping you with your shit." You see when male friends offer to pay their way it's because - THEY DON'T WANT TO TAKE THE PISS BUT NEED MY HELP. These bitches expect benefits/perks for free BECAUSE THEY'RE WOMEN HIGH ON THEIR OWN SELF-IMPORTANCE TRYING TO ENJOY THE BENEFITS OF FEMINISM AND TRADITIONALIST CHIVALRY AT THE SAME TIME. So you accept their FAKE offer of payment and they back the fuck down with a "never mind" or they pay begrudgingly, giving you a funny look or some shit like that.

Friendships with women are one-sided. 99% of the time they aren't even fucking friendships. It's her getting you to do shit on her terms that benefits her knowing the only reason you do things for her is because you think she is hot, but



she won't fuck you, because she knows as soon as she fucks you once you'll expect it repeatedly and she'll lose leverage over you. These bitches are relentless, utterly manipulative and shamelessly selfish. Female sexual strategy 101 - swoon after guys out of your league and collect betas in your, slightly above your, and beneath your league as a social cushion. I'm quite sure some women actually collect betas just for all the prizes and feel good emotions.

Be careful being friends with women, especially if she's attractive/you find her attractive or you're beta with a scarcity mindset. It's not usually worth your while, and you're usually just getting pegged for a specific role in her cuddle bitch hierarchy. You can be #1 cuddle bitch that gets to spoon with her, you can be the bitch boy that goes shopping with her, you can be taxi guy, you can be Starbucks + gossip guy, you can be "male perspective" guy, you can be "gay best friend" guy, you can be "I see you like a brother I'm in love with how safe you make me feel because you're tall and I love the commitment/puppy eyes you give me but I don't wanna fuck you" guy. You can be a lot of different roles that a boyfriend should provide for her, in fact you can be one of many things which are all contradictory in one guy and thus need to be spread out upon multiple guys so she can enjoy all the varying elements of "the being in a relationship experience," Except you don't get to fuck her, you don't get to go past hugging, even a kiss is too much - and if you do - she will try and shoot your shit down like you're some kind of creepy cunt whose face belongs in a pedophile mug shot. She will make you pay in shame and emotional pain for your transgression of the firm boundary she has in place.

You chronic fucking nice guys with your 1,000,000 female friends who "get on better with women than they do with men" have been fucking warned. Men may be less superficially warm and fuzzy but at least they are straight with you. They don't fuck with you like this, they don't lead you down the garden path and raise your hopes up about what your friendship means only to DENY you every time you leave your boundaries, just to shame you back into place so you continue providing them one SPECIFIC benefit. That's not a fucking friendship, it's a one-way street of exploitation that she calls a friendship to give the sordid arrangement some veneer of otherwise non-existing credibility. Obviously assuming you're not gay, there's no sexual tension, so that makes shit easier, but the why's are largely

irrelevant - it is what it is.

Now alphas and men on top of their shit can turn this crap around and get women doing shit for them, they can flip the dynamic with their higher SMV, and that does happen, and again, that's not real friendship. Legit platonic two sided cross gender friendships are rare, generally speaking the chick should be UNATTRACTIVE to you. Or a hot "wing woman" you use for dread/preselection but don't fuck because you want to retain her for these roles specifically. The average guy however should just stay the fuck away, she will out-manipulate you and play you for a fool. You'll think she is your friend because you're an idiot, but you're just orbiting, waiting in a long line of other clueless men who are all hoping to fuck her one day whilst dispensing favours out the ass.

# The Female Imperative

*By GayLubeOil.*

[Article link.](#)

Men find joy in creating value. Men are obsessive in this pursuit, whether by improving themselves, developing an idea or creating something. This obsessiveness is why men can spend years on a painting, waste months on a Minecraft creation or spend all of their free time in the gym. Men have a drive to create, invent, improve and innovate, which is why everything of value on this earth was thought of, invented, created and built by men. Its also why [women's history is a joke](#).

The female imperative on the other hand is to attract men of value. Clothing, makeup, [Instagram selfies](#), parading around in front of horny dudes in gyms and clubs is all a means for women to attract men of value. Now chances are a woman is going to read this last sentence, and [release the hamster](#) "I do these things for myself and not to attract men." So let me get this straight you wear [tight reaveling clothing, accented with eye catching neon](#) around men not to attract their attention? Exercising is about muscle activation, and we all know that our friend [Dorian](#) is getting way more of that, then fitness slut. Next time your in the gym watch what the women are actually doing, [90% of it is stupid fucking bullshit](#).

Women love drama, precisely because it gives them the opportunity to get the attention of high value males. If you've worked as a manager, your attention has been diverted from important shit, to women shit countless times. Let me illustrate this point with a classic biblical story: [two ratchet hoes](#) are arguing over who is the mother of some dirty baby. Of the hoes one of them fucking knows she didn't birth the little shit, but she hamstered herself into believing she did. Eventually shit gets so out of hand that [King Soloman's](#) attention gets diverted to resolving the

problem. In a stroke of pure alpha/autism King Solomon says: I don't give a fuck cut the baby in half. Then the real mother comes forward and everything is resolved. The moral of this story is if you're a woman and create a fuss over some stupid shit; eventually a supreme alpha will get involved. At which point there is a chance he might fuck you like queen Sheba.

The value of the output of any place is inversely proportional to the number of sluts roaming around. [Potent start-up companies](#) and aren't plagued by attention whoring business sluts. Hardcore gyms are all business and don't have spandex distractions. Some of the [most productive men in the world](#) were either celibate or closeted homosexuals.

Women especially [the modern western variety](#) are a distraction. Hiring a bunch of squabbling hens isn't going to help your business. Staring at [gym ass](#) isn't going to make you any bigger. Listening to female rationalizations isn't going to expand your mind.

Focus on your dreams and creating value. The women will show up after you are a success. It is their biological imperative.

## Why Girls Get Over Guys Quicker

*Author unknown.*

[Article link.](#)

In going through a breakup right now and dealing with the knowledge that my 2.5 year relationship was extremely simple for my ex to shrug off and find someone new after 2 months, I re-read the sidebar links. I followed links within those links to a post entitled "War Brides." It explains why women are so good at moving on. I think I can sum it up, better:

*She gets over you quick because you are disposable, and she has to be ready to say goodbye in case you are disposed of.*

Back in the day, it could have been because of war or hunting accidents, or what have you. But now we're here. Since men are disposable, women are the ones that have to put up with the consequences of our disposal, so the quick moving on is a defense mechanism. Since women are not disposable, we never had to acquire this ability.

Might have been nice.

### Featured Comment

*By author unknown.*

There is no short answer, so this will be long.

Surprisingly, the most troubling aspect is the shock, the defeated expectations - the realization of another shitty thing to worry about, the need to rethink your outlook - which will be a less optimistic one the more you know. It's like getting insurance/warranty for something and finding out it's useless - you just have to be more selective.

It's actually in society's best interest for men to be blissfully unaware of how women actually conduct themselves. This way men can work and be productive members of society without all those extra sources of stress. Women embraced it since a good image is crucial to their social success.

The thing is most RP theory is nothing new and revolutionary, these things were known hundreds of years ago, just read some philosophy. The only thing that changed in the last couple of decades is the social discourse, in the last 50 or so years postmodernist blowhards have been endlessly pushing down society's throats that women are special bastions of all that's good and fair in the world and men are dumb animals that need to be less themselves.

That's why the answer is nothing new either. All the naive bullshit has done is to shift your mentality from individuality and self-validation, to woman-centric view and dependent on outside validation (women - through sex).

As long as the most important parts of your life aren't centered around women (and their loyalty), then the damage will be minimal - if it goes bad.

If possible, don't get married, don't cohabitate, build a vast social circle, with a couple of really close friends (the type that you can really depend on), have fulfilling hobbies/interest and a dream in life (not just professionally). Attain wealth and power if you can (but don't consume every second of your life trying)

If you really want a LTR/marriage situation, learn to pick up on red flags...even pink flags, small things get more annoying after 10 years together. Read a lot of material on psychology and behavioural science, learn to be an excellent judge of character.

Test potential mates, it's not manipulative to find out who you're spending the rest of your days with - ignore the shaming caused by this - low quality women hate being vetted, it makes them doubt their (over-inflated ) worth. If a woman gets angry for something she does herself (testing you) she's not LTR material.

Tests:

- Sympathy tests - great for avoiding alpha fucks beta bux - women generally lack (beyond superficial levels) the ability to care for anything that does not affect themselves (or their children). So fake a personal issue that affects you (and not at all her) deeply, see if her instinct is to support you and care for you. If she shows indifference/repulsion/pretends to care - either means your value in her eyes is not high enough - in which case hypergamy will be ruthless to you, or she lacks the ability to pair bond (bad at LTRs)
- Loyalty tests - she mentioned/showed signs that she considers someone you know attractive ? Have him hit on her (or any equivalents), see how she reacts - does she shut him down? does she respond in a non-decisive way ? does she tell you about it?. A woman who clearly respects her man is a woman with a higher ability to control her hypergamy.
- Compliance tests - make a couple of irrational demands (not illegal) with conviction, making sure she understands how important those requests (you made of her) are to you. She asks why, you tell her "because it's important to me." The more argumentative a woman is over big things, the higher chance of her being argumentative/combatative over the small things once that "harder to leave" contract is signed (marriage). Any woman worth spending your life with will gladly submit/self-sacrifice a bit to show her commitment to you.
- Hypergamy tests - purposefully act like a beta for a couple of weeks, be indecisive, follow her around the house, ask for her approval/validation, be emotional and reactive, supplicate and pedestilize her - flowers and gifts and all that jazz. A quality woman will tell you (first in a covert way then in an over way) that your behaviour is a turn-off, and she'll give you time to bounce back before reacting accordingly to your new self. If the sex stops

suddenly and she gets cold/distant, that woman's attraction (and respect) for you is fragile - most likely the type of woman who will never stop shit testing you - very hypergamous types.

Also look for good habits, like having a healthy lifestyle (diet and exercise), a great relationship with her father (in general with her family), low prevalence of sex outside of relationships -> higher chance to pair bond.

### Red Flags - character

- any signs of a disorder - eating/[personality disorders](#) - learn to recognize them.
- arrogant
- argumentative - it's gets old real fast.
- bitchiness - it's not cute, and it does not mean she's just opinionated.
- feminist
- "sex positive" - rebranding of the word slut
- victim (abuse) - you don't need all that trauma hanging over your happiness - pick a happy and balanced partner.

### Red Flags - past

- party girl
- relationships with criminals - she's heavily into bad boys, and you'll never be as bad without breaking some laws.
- single mom - just common sense - why sign up for extra baggage and beta bux.
- split-roasted/gang-banged - she's just not the "brunch with hubby" type.
- unfeminine/large tattoos - sign of a past that includes the above

### Red flags - behaviour

- excessive attention seeking - especially male attention
- excessive social network use - sign of the above



- emotional eating - chances of getting fat come wall.
- keeps in touch with exes - hypergamous
- keeps orbiters beyond 6 months into the relationship - hypergamous + lack of respect.
- uses sex as a reward/currency - deems you low value (or just beta bux)
- tries to guilt you into spending less time/cutting ties with your friends - classic cunt.
- nagging - it can only get worse once married
- overly eager to give you sex - if you get a weird vibe, like she's trying fake a ultra high sex drive - standard beta bait for marriage - pretty much any time she seems to have sex with you for anything other than sex/intimacy it's a bad sign.

#### Red Flags - social circle

- party girls / ex party girls - needs no explanation
- divorced women - there was a study posted around here - in short- divorced women praise other women who get divorced (self-validation ahoy)
- mostly male friends (without having male interests/profession) - hypergamy/ need for male attention.
- lack of female friends - women can spot a bad seed - and shun it.
- radical feminists/social justice types - if she's attractive this won't be the case, but if it is, she's probably some sort of crazy/messed up.

## Why Women Like Unemotional Men

*By SmellyJelly22.*

[Article link.](#)

Men and women both suffer from what I call the "weak" emotions. The weak emotions are fear, anxiety, depression, angst, boredom, distraction, worry, etc... There are many different types of anxiety and they combine in weird ways to cause a plethora of mental problems of women. I can't make a complete list of the weak emotions, but you get the point. I call these emotions weak because they make a person weak: confused, listless, and unable to pursue or achieve any worthwhile goal. If you've ever been under the spell of anxiety or depression, you literally feel a weight on your body that prevents you from doing anything positive. Crazy thoughts race through your head that prevent you from focusing on anything, sleeping, or enjoying your life. Worst of all, the weak emotions are constantly changing, coming and going, so a person feeling them has no way to battle them or a solid footing to rest their thoughts and emotions on. Some scientists have argued that the weak emotions have an evolutionary purpose, but as a matter of practical reality in the modern world the weak emotions usually just cripple people and serve no good. The weak emotions are very difficult to overcome and basically make life shit for anybody experiencing them. This is a wild oversimplification, but mental illness is basically when a person's weak emotions become too strong and a person's logical mind cannot control them.

There is one thing that can conquer the weak emotions: masculinity. What is masculinity? It is difficult to describe any human emotion in words, but I will attempt to define masculinity as an emotion (or a series of emotions) that make a person feel powerful, confident, competitive, aggressive, focused, etc... In other words, masculinity is an energy that makes one feel they can overcome any obstacle life throws at them. It is probably the result of various chemicals in your

body. The precise definition of masculinity is beyond the scope of this article, but you know it when you see it. The only thing that can conquer an emotion is a stronger emotion, and masculinity is stronger than the weak emotions so it can conquer and silence them. A person who can focus his masculinity with his logical brain can plow through the weak emotions, focus on his goals, feel powerful and dominant, and become successful. Masculinity clears all the emotional debris and useless thoughts floating in a person's head and focuses them.

Just as both men and women feel the weak emotions, both men and women are capable of masculinity. Women who have no men in their life oftentimes are often forced to become masculine. Women also naturally become more masculine as they age, perhaps because of their body produces more testosterone. Both men and women enjoy feeling masculine because it kills the weak emotions.

Now here is where the misogyny starts: because women are less masculine than men, they feel weak emotions on a stronger level than men. Studies have definitively shown that women experience anxiety and depression at twice the level men do. Maybe the chemicals in their brain produce more anxiety and depression, or maybe they just feel it worse because they don't have masculinity to combat it. Who knows? Feminists argue that women feel anxiety and depression more than men because society is tougher on women, but they're probably just creating a bullshit explanation to explain data that is not favorable for them.

Because women feel the weak emotions on a stronger level than men, they have historically been stereotyped as "emotional," "weak," "irrational," "hysterical," "crazy," "unstable," "constantly changing their minds," etc... Women being emotional has historically been the excuse for not giving women rights, because women are just as smart as men. Women in power are often considered "bitches" probably because people suffering from the weak emotions are more likely to feel anxious and threatened, and lash out and become defensive. Another reason women may become "bitches" is that they are trying to fake masculinity – but because they don't have the actual emotions that accompany masculinity, they come off as unconfident and vindictive.

Please keep in mind: women don't like being tortured by their weak emotions. They know they are crazy. They know nothing good comes from anxiety. **WOMEN HATE THEIR OWN EMOTIONS.** That is why women are often disgusted by men who probe their emotions and want to "fix" them. They know there is nothing to fix. Their concerns are stupid, illogical, frivolous and constantly changing. There is no rhyme or reason to them so trying to satiate, address or fix them won't solve anything. Women know they are being crazy and a man who enters the world of their emotions is just losing himself in a maze with no exit. Women would oftentimes rather men dismiss or ignore their emotions rather than to respond to them as if they were legitimate concerns. They also prefer a man "listen" to their problems rather than offer a solution because they know there is no solution. They don't want their problems "solved" – they want to be in the presence of masculinity so they can forget their problems.

Because women hate their weak emotions, they are attracted to masculinity. They admire anybody who is calm, collected, unemotional, focused, ambitious, motivated, unshakeable, confident, powerful, and happy. They also like people who are disciplined, live by rules, and have strong boundaries – because those things break weak emotions. Depression makes you want to sleep all day – well you can conquer depression if you are forced to wake up at 6 AM to go the gym! Women are also attracted to men who are not afraid of other men and cannot be broken or intimidated by other men (or nature). If a man is calm, focused, and driven, and can also defeat other men in whatever competition exists, then there is nothing to worry about in life and no cause for weak emotions. He can obtain food, a place to live, comfort, security, happiness, etc... He may not be able to deliver those things today, but he has the emotional make-up for it. Women need that.

The reason men act "beta" around women because they don't understand how awful weak emotions make women feel and how amazing they feel to be around a man not affected by those emotions. For example, it's dating 101 that a man should take the lead on a date, choose the restaurant, guide the conversation, choose the next bar, etc... Most men don't know this instinctively. Instead, they think "well I don't really care where we eat – I'll ask her what she likes." But in a woman's mind, making any choice invites them back into the hell of their weak emotions. "There

are so many restaurants. Which one? What if the Italian place is closed? What if he doesn't like it? Etc..." Picking a restaurant gives the woman the same angst as picking a college would for a man. That's why a woman would much rather the man just pick a place, even if its not good. The anguish of eating at a shitty restaurant is not nearly as bad as the anguish of the weak emotions attacking her brain as she makes this decision.

Women attracted to masculine men like to feel men's masculinity vicariously through the man. In other words, a man can lessen a woman's weak emotions by channeling her emotions through his own masculinity. Let's go back to our date example: if a woman wanted to go out to eat with her girl friends there would be a lot of anxiety as to which place to pick. The women would pick a place, but it would be a tough, annoying decision. She would be tortured by weak emotions. But when she's with a man, he makes that decision for her. BAM! Weak emotions destroyed.

Another example is known as a "shit test." A shit test is basically when a woman challenges a man with a bit of anxiety she has been feeling. If a man reacts with masculinity, he passes. If he reacts with anxiety, he fails. For example, let's say the woman says "why are you talking to me? I'm not that pretty. You must be a player." Here, she is expressing anxiety. Her anxiety is that you might be a player taking advantage of her. A lot of guys might respond with a long speech about how they are not a player. But that doesn't make the woman feel better because she is still feeling attacked by her weak emotions and nothing he can say can definitively convince her he is not a player. A good response would be the following: "I might be a player. I might not. You're just going to have to take a chance." This response says to the woman "I am not allowing you to entertain these weak emotions. You will either fuck me or you will not." While it may seem wrong to dismiss her concerns about you being a player, the fact is that there is nothing you can say to convince her either way, so you might as well just dismiss that emotion before it annoys her.

Here's another shit test: she asks me to buy her a drink. I say no. She calls me cheap. Once again, her calling me cheap is an expression of anxiety. You may think

her anxiety is that she doesn't want to be with a cheap guy. Wrong! Her real anxiety is that being insulted makes her feel bad, so she wants to insult me and see how I react. If she insults me with what she KNOWS to be a frivolous insult and I act upset or insult her back, she loses attraction because I am displaying weak emotions. If I can show the insult doesn't faze me I show myself to be a suitable partner because I can destroy weak emotions in a way she can't. So when she calls me cheap I respond "yeah, that's why I have a lot of money. I don't spend it on stupid shit." I make it clear that I am not going to tolerate her feeling weak emotions about me being cheap and I will not feel insulted or make her feel shitty either. That's why it's usually good to respond to a shit test with a joke – it shows that you are not under the grip of any weak emotions at all.

It is said that women are more "compassionate" and "sensitive" than men. This is sometimes true – because women feel the weak emotions more strongly than men they are oftentimes more compassionate to people going through those things. However, women can also be more cruel and heartless than men because when a person is under the grip of the weak emotions and feels threatened, they will lash out in incredibly vindictive and destructive ways with no regard for the feelings of others.

It is said that women like "assholes." This is not exactly true – women like emotionally unavailable men. Why? Because when a man displays emotions, the woman is reminded of her own weak emotions, and becomes disgusted. Many of the emotions that make up "love" are weak emotions – weak, transitory, changing, irrational, etc... Women don't want a man who loves them, but a man they can love with no problems. It is much more attractive to a woman to see a man be passionate and emotional about something other than her, but also to let her tag along so she can channel her emotions through him and feel masculine through his life. Another reason that women like "assholes" is that society teaches us that if a person displays weak emotions we should respond with concern and compassion. But as we have learned, that's not what women want. Women want a guy who will oftentimes dismiss their concerns.

So the upshot? When dealing with women, the man has to be an unbreakable

pillar of confidence. He has to show little to no anxiety and if he does show anxiety, he must immediately have a solution for it. He must smile and have fun, because that is what people without anxiety do. And when the woman expresses anxiety through her words or behavior, he must immediately set her straight.

These facts are difficult to accept and apply. For one thing, men naturally want to make an emotional connection with women so it is difficult to extricate from yourself that situation and remember that you can't display or encourage weak emotions. I have dated girls that were going through difficult times in their life but my "advice" only made me look unattractive. Furthermore, nobody (men or women) knows these truths, so you have to interact with women as if they were your equals. You have to dismiss women's anxieties without looking like an insensitive jerk (most men fail on this point). Women still need love, compassion, and attention, they just need to have their weak emotions shut down. Finally, sometimes women DO have legitimate concerns, and they need to be addressed. It's your responsibility as a man to figure out which one of their concerns are legitimate and which are weak emotions.

## Why Women Love Assholes (An Alternate View)

*By trpMilo.*

[Article link.](#)

I've been developing a theory that I think might add a bit to TRP thinking on this topic.

Men are sexually attracted to traits in women that are fully observable when they first meet (i.e. physical beauty).

Women are sexually attracted to traits in men that are only partially observable when they first meet (i.e. social status, confidence).

What does this mean for dating? Well imagine a world in which the traits men find attractive in women are partially unobservable. Specifically, let's pretend women walk around in full burqas on the streets and in public, but otherwise act just like Western women. You can see if a woman is overweight or not, but otherwise you can't tell if she's hot. After a few dates though, you get to see what's underneath. These women are relatively experienced, they've dated men before and shown them what is underneath their burqas, and thus these women know their own sexual market value.

Now, you approach a woman on the streets who looks decently in-shape and you think might be attractive. She is very receptive to your approach. She's kind and sweet and seems excited to go on a date with you. What do you think to yourself? "Shit, this girl is probably ugly."

You approach another girl. When she sees you, she is cold and standoffish. What do you think to yourself? "Awesome, this girl is probably so hot. I better try



harder."

This is the world women live in. When they meet you, they can't really tell how attractive you are. So they rely on your behavior to tell them. The less interested in them you are, the more options they think you have, and the more attractive they think you must be. So when you treat them like dirt, they think you must be god's gift to women.

It's only later that they find out whether or not you really have those qualities they are looking for. This is your "burqa" coming off. If you want to keep a girl after that point you better be as alpha as your behavior implies, but before that point they only have your behavior to go on.

## 12 Irresistible Bad Boy Traits Women Crave

*By redpilldad.*

[Article link.](#)

Raising the quality of your life and developing the swagger of a Bad Boy persona can do wonders for game... As a married dude, I was surprised to find how effective this shit can still be.

With her dual sexual strategy, she's either looking for Alpha Lover or Provider Guy. What sets these categories distinctly apart are the way you make her feel. What do you portray and offer - thrills or security?

Alpha Lover offers the Desire Path by giving her a sense of danger, excitement and adventure. Provider Guy offers the Love Path by giving her comfort and protection.

You can trigger her Desire Path by displaying Bad Boy traits. That's what she looks for when shit testing... to see if you're a badass or a wuss. She also wants to see if you value your freedom, and consider your SMV higher than hers.

### **12 Irresistible Bad Boy Traits Women Crave:**

1. Confidence - cocky to the point of brazen (versus meek uncertainty and insecurity).
2. Directness and Decisiveness - say what's on your mind and clarity about what you want (versus waffling and meekly tiptoeing around).
3. Dominance - command respect with social, intellectual, emotional and physical power (versus putting her on a pedestal and acting subservient).
4. Indifference - remain aloof, less reactive and not concerned about what

others say and think (versus being an overly-attentive "try-hard").

5. Entitlement - feel unconstrained to take/demand what you want (versus feeling unworthy).
6. Exciting - take risks, seek adventure and lead a more interesting life (versus seeking comfort and security).
7. Freedom and Selfishness - rebel's attitude, say and do what you want, uninhibited and self-focused (versus conforming and attending to others)
8. Leadership - lead yourself/others to reach goals (versus passiveness and uninspired).
9. Masculine - exude a rugged, controlled mannerism (versus a soft, caring feminine energy).
10. Menacing - disagreeable, dangerous vibe (versus friendly and harmless)
11. Mysterious and Unpredictable - contrasting qualities that stimulate curiosity (versus boring and predictable).
12. Teasing - playfully disrespect her, intentionally ruffling her feathers (provoking her instead of trying to put her at ease).

Bad Boy behavior indicates power and higher status. Acting in an uninhibited, entitled, powerful and dominant manner persuades her to categorize you as a Lover rather than a Provider.

If you smile too much, lavish her with attention and act like a perfect gentlemen, you'll kill the seduction. Why? She craves drama and excitement, not comfort alone. And acting eager and polite is indicative of Beta status. She knows an HV Guy would act far more aloof and indifferent.

In her eyes, that cowboy wearing black is much sexier than the one in white. That bad boy lifestyle is a roller-coaster of excitement, while the steady positive force of the Good Guy is comforting, but dull.

# **She's Going To Get Away With Whatever She Wants. Accept It. Stop Caring.**

*By Schrodingersdawg.*

[Article link.](#)

A lot of guys on here take some satisfaction in talking about some stuck up 27 year old cock carousel rising cunt is gonna slam into the wall face first and regret her years of slutting around. I have bad news for those of you who think there's going to be some karmic fairness to this.

She's not. Most of them are gonna lock down some poor beta sap.

That girl that you know banged 3 guys at that party? She's going to get her wedding, with \$30,000 flowers at the ripe age of 30 to some virgin beta provider that she only has sex with twice a year. She's going to continue to find alpha cock, have a kid that's not his, and divorce rape him and make him pay child support.

That girl that smashed a guy's head with a beer bottle? He's going to get beat up by a horde of white knights if he tries to retaliate.

That girl in your Computer Science class? She's going to get betas doing all the work for her and a fast track career in Intel or Apple due to feminists claiming women need more help in STEM.

She's going to get her way. Just because you shut her down, doesn't mean that there aren't 1000 other horny blue pill men trying to build the greatest pedestal since the Tower of Babel for her.

So let go. Accept that she's going to easily win by virtue of her second X

chromosome. We do not choose who we are born as.

You could be a starving African child who's never drunk clean water.

You could be a child soldier.

You could've been born in North Korea.

You could've been Princess Diana's oldest son.

Appreciate the fact that despite this being an unfair world, you got a pretty good deal. Appreciate that we have no control over our birthright, but control over our lives.

There are people above, and people below. Realise that this is not just between men and women, but those of all social classes.

Let the anger drive you. But know to let it go. Learn to find more meaningful reasons to excel.

The sooner you accept some people have it much better for much less work, the sooner you will decide to improve instead of complain.

Because all feminists do is complain.

Outrage will not help. Anger only makes you seem bitter to others. And nothing is a bigger turnoff than bitterness.

## Lying About Sexual Partners

*By We\_Are\_Legion.*

[Link comment](#) from a [larger article](#).

Women lie on surveys all the time, at a rate up to twice that of men, to reflect more socially acceptable answers. So much so, researchers say such surveys are nearly always inaccurate. This holds true even if the survey is anonymous with no risk of repercussions. Its almost... like they're convincing themselves of something.

Examples (the news articles just summarize studies):

According to a study done by Ralph Johnson of Sacramento State College, 48% of men, but only 5 percent of women, expressed a desire to engage in extramarital sex. Yet in actual frequency of infidelity cases, women managed to engage in extramarital sex almost equally. (Source; David Buss, [link](#), [text excerpt](#))

- <http://www.newscientist.com/article/dn3936-fake-liedetector-reveals-womens-sex-lies.html#.U74XdPmSzHU>
- <http://www.theguardian.com/world/2003/jun/18/gender.comment>
- <http://www.dailymail.co.uk/femail/article-2572202/Do-YOU-lie-sex-number-Women-reduce-figure-men-exaggerate-lovers-theyve-had.html>
- <http://researchnews.osu.edu/archive/sexsurv.htm>
- [www.dailymail.co.uk/femail/.../Women-lie-sexual-past.html](http://www.dailymail.co.uk/femail/.../Women-lie-sexual-past.html)
- [http://www.abc.net.au/science/news/health/HealthRepublsh\\_896698.htm](http://www.abc.net.au/science/news/health/HealthRepublsh_896698.htm)

I find this one sort of funny (2013 sequel to 2003 study reported in new scientist above):

<http://www.medicaldaily.com/men-and-women-lie-about-sexual-behavior-meet->

## [cultural-expectations-246302](#)

*Influenced by cultural expectations, men and women will lie about their sexual behavior but not about whether they engaged in other gender-related behaviors, a new study finds.*

*These results confirm a 2003 study by Fisher in which she found that women who weren't hooked up to a lie detector reported fewer sexual partners than men. But when they were hooked up to one, their numbers evened out with the men. In this new study, the number of reported encounters surpassed men.*

*"Society has changed, even in the past 10 years, and a variety of researchers have found that differences between men and women in some areas of sexual behavior have essentially disappeared," she said.*

The same research reported here has a clearer summary: <http://articles.latimes.com/2013/may/29/science/la-sci-sn-who-lies-about-sex-more-men-or-women-20130528>

*The study mirrored results of an experiment Fisher conducted in 2003. However, in that study women who were connected to a fake lie detector -- "bogus pipeline," as psychologists call it -- admitted to having, on average, the same number of sexual partners as the men.*

*It was unclear why, 10 years later, women were now reporting that they had a greater number of partners than men.*

*"With research like this, it's always difficult to separate out whether the change is in actual behavior or whether the change is in willingness to admit the behavior," Fisher said.*

Oh, and if you're wondering, the results from [the earlier 2003 one](#) were this  
BTW:

*2.6 Partners: When they were asked face to face by the researcher*

*3.4 Partners: During an anonymous paper survey*

*4.4 Partners: When under the fake polygraph test*

And its not just about partners they lie:

*Studies also show that women also often lie about their age of first sexual encounter as well as their use of pornography and masturbation. So when it comes to sex, don't expect to get a straight answer from your woman.*

Of course, women weren't the only ones lying, but they were certainly doing so at a hell of a suspiciously higher rate than men. (Wiederman, 2001 concluded that the data from sex surveys was almost certainly skewed and offered hypotheses as to why: <http://www.mindingthemind.com/reprints/Truth.pdf>)



## How To Know You Are Dating A Slut. Source: I Married

### One

*By improvy.*

[Article link.](#)

So long story short, I am in the process of divorce. My wife cheated on me less than three fucking months after our marriage. It was later disclosed that she had sex with a guy in a public park, without a condom, before we were married but while we were living together. I am a total beta in recovery, and slowly reading up and working on myself. Here is a pattern that my slut wife exhibited and I'm sure applies to many more sluts in the wild that you should be aware of.

1. She approached you. Because you are such a pussy, momma's boy faggot, its most likely that she picked you and not the other way around. She gave you strong signals of interest and pretty much took the lead.
2. She is more social than you. Because sluts and whores crave attention above all, they tend to be heavily involved in social events, parties, get togethers and just overall more outgoing than you.
3. She is not feminine. Well you are not masculine yourself, buddy, so you get your equal SMV match. A lot of sluts are tomboys, active and vocal. They can dress slutty, but often don't have the classic feminine characteristics like long hair, feminine hobbies and interests or knows how to cook.
4. She has mostly guy friends. Not many girlfriends, cuz ya know, "Girls are so weird and mean." But plenty of male orbiters that are just long time friends. If she has more male friends than you, that's a problem. 9 out of 10 times some of those guy friends already fucked her/made out with her and will jump on any physical opportunity when she is alone, single or not.
5. She has daddy/mommy issues and/or divorced parents. Well, in our day and age, being a child of divorced parents is becoming the rule and not the

- exception. But still, most sluts come from ugly divorces and she has some major relationship problems with her parents. Especially with the Father.
6. She was molested in her youth. This is no joking matter, and nothing to goad about. But still, experience and various statistics show that a negative and inappropriate sexual history in her teens is a solid precursor for a problematic sexuality in the present. After learning about this point, I totally went "white knight" and tried to hamster her behavior and make it fine. Fellow men, remember this: You can feel sorry for a woman and sympathize with her but you DON'T have to be with her. It doesn't make you a bad person. Everybody have issues and a fucked up history, the real test is how we scratch our way out of the hole and become adults. Most hardcore criminals in prison have a messed up upbringing. Do they get a pussy pass? No.
  7. She is bad with money/supported by her family/shit job. It is very likely that she is financially irresponsible, has some debt over stupid shit (clothing and various vocations vs school debt). It is also likely that her parents help her out financially for years, and there is this dark shit cloud of money=emotional control bond between her and her parents. More often than not, they have a dead end, shitty job with very low prospects into turning it into a full blown career.
  8. People hit on her in front of you. Plenty of harmless and innocent "misunderstandings." I cringe when I type this, but it was not uncommon for guys to hit on her while we were hanging out together or sharing a space. Bars, work, and definitely when she was by herself. She will laugh it off and say she is just so social, and guys always pick up on the wrong signals. She will not mention being in a relationship and she will radiate sexuality and approachability via her body language, eye contact, intense and intimate conversation, smiling or clothing to other men. "Didn't you tell him you were not single?" "Oh, it just never came up." Yeah right.
  9. She likes to drink. Sluts at their core know that their behavior is wrong and they fear being judged by their peers. They will cultivate a holy than you approach in her social circle. Drinking will make all those responsible pesky feelings and thoughts go away and she will embrace alcohol with a vengeance. If she can drink as much/more than you; Bad News Bear.

10. She smokes. Smoking is a great and wonderful outlet for women to be in a very intimate one on one situation with a man with a perfect deniability of intent. If you do not smoke, don't date somebody who does. You will always wonder what is going on in the smoking corner, or be that clueless beta that stands near their smoking spouse and other smoking persons being the only straight edge one. Most escalations with taken women that happen at parties follow a similar pattern: Drinks with a guy, Smokes with a guy that will turn to intimate conversation and then to an inappropriate behavior. IF YOU DON'T SMOKE AND SHE DOES DANGER WILL ROBINSON.
11. She likes to go without you and drink. It could be ladies night out, it could be a guy friends house party. If she goes without you and gets drunk once a week or more that is a bad sign.
12. She is jealous at you more than you are jealous of her. This is a strange one. I had complete trust in her and always complimented her, with very seldom expressions of jealousy and insecurity on my part. If a girl even smiled at me wrong or lightly flirted with me when she was around she would get extremely jealous turning it into a four hour insecurity accusation fest. It is ironic that the person most being afraid of being cheated on (My slut wife) ends up doing the repeated cheating herself.
13. She cheated previously on somebody else. Well, no shit Sherlock. But when you are "In Love" and she is sharing a beautiful pearl of truth like that with you, don't assume: "She was young and inexperienced, the guy she dated was abusive/shit/low quality. We on the other hand have True Love and this will never happen." Think instead, "How many months in is she going cheat and with how many people?"
14. You started an LTR shortly after a crazy sex on the first date situation. You started to date after a first meeting one night stand, thought it was a magical connection. "Yeah, it was sleazy all right, but she is not a slut or gives sex easily. We had this once in a lifetime connection and the fast and easy sex just meant how in love she was with me.) No it wasn't you fool. When you bang a chick you don't know, with no rubber, in an open space, with people not far away, it's no Disney Love Story, you dumbass. You just banged a Hoe. Most men bang them and call it a night, they certainly don't date them.
15. She had multiple abortions. I don't have anything against abortions but it

does show poor planning, poor impulse control and just stupid immature character. Use pills, make the guys wear a condom, get on permanent birth control (IUD's). If you have 2+ abortions before you are 24 years of age, that is a major red flag.

To summarize. Don't be stupid like I was. Sluts; Fuck em, don't marry them.

User submitted additional signs:

1. She has major emotional stability issues (i.e. Bipolar, BPD, etc). When going through either manic phase (or sometimes even depression), some girls will want to fuck, and if you are not around, anybody will do. User kranos33
2. She has gay friends. Because they are non judgmental "you just sucked a guy in the toilets? You go girl!!" User Movonnow
3. She gaslights, e.g. creates a problem and then blames you for it.
4. Is insecure about her image and seeks validation by the act of sleeping around. User Year3030

# **A Woman Cannot Tell You How You Must Proceed. She Can Only Tell You What She Wants To Experience**

*By Whisper.*

[Article link.](#)

It's well known that women give incredibly poor seduction and relationship advice. It's also well known that they are completely unaware of this.

But what if we were to ask ourselves "why"? What is the common thread in all bad female advice that makes them think it's good? How does it look good advice from their perspective?

The answer is female solipsism.

When you ask a woman for dating advice (not that you should, unless you could use a laugh), she is incapable of imagining how the world must look through your eyes. Therefore, she can only tell you what she wants it to look like from hers.

A woman who says you should do X or Y, therefore, isn't talking crazy talk. Just self-centered narcissism talk. She's giving you good information... IF you insert words like "I want it to look/feel like" or "I want people to think" in front of every statement.

Try it as a mental exercise.

"Just be yourself" == "I want to look like you're just being yourself."

"Act natural, don't force it" == "I want it to feel natural, not forced."

"Love will just happen when you meet the right person." == "I want it to look like it just happened without effort, because he was the right person."

"Be honest" == "Sound honest."

All the quotes on the left are bullshit non-advice. But the ones on the right describe the seduction magic we work to create.

Does it work on other statements women make, too? You bet it does.

"I want to be independent." == "I want to look independent." (I don't, however, want to actually take responsibility for myself. That's hard work.)

"I would never do that." == "I wouldn't want anyone knowing I did that."

"I am a good person." == "I want you to think I am a good person."

"I am spiritual, but not religious." == "I want you to think I am deep, but I do not want you to think I am dogmatic."

We can see that pretty much every a woman says makes perfect sense if you proceed from the assumption that she is the center of the universe, and hers is the only perspective there is. If we think about, we can even start to have ideas about where female solipsism comes from.

Women are both evolved and raised to deal with people, not things. In the world of things, there is one true set of circumstances, the way things really are. Fail to grasp it, and you can't get anything done. Your machines don't work, your bridges collapse, your software crashes and brings down the New York Stock Exchange. But in the world of people, what's important isn't what's really there, but what you can convince other people of.

To a woman, truth == consensus. It isn't important what's true. It's important what you can make people believe. And telling any literal truth just weakens her

ability to sell the story she wants to sell.

So when a woman tells you something, she isn't stupidly unable to know she's bullshitting you. Nor is she maliciously trying to pull your leg. It's just that, to her, communication consists solely of people trying to bullshit each other. Any other possible way of communicating doesn't enter into her awareness. That's why you can stand ten feet from a woman and scream "What I mean is the literal content of the words I just said!", and she will look for the hidden meaning in both that statement and the one before.

Someone steeped in that environment has no incentive to imagine what the world looks like from someone else's point of view. To attempt to do so would be a great weakness, because it would spoil her ability to push her own point of view.

Just remember that almost anytime a woman says "this is" or "do this", she is actually saying "this is the illusion I desire."

## Women are Incapable of Change

*By redpillschool.*

[Article link.](#)

"I'm working on it." "I'm trying..." "I can't change overnight!"

Raise of hands, who has heard one of these before? Who has heard all three from the same woman? Who has heard all three from every woman?

### **Women are not agents.**

Women, be it learned or ingrained, have no capacity for change or self-improvement. Their default position is hypoagency, they are acted upon, but they do not act. You can see it in every part of their lives:

- Their communication style is primarily covert and passive aggressive, remaining behind the guise of plausible deniability. Women can petition for their desires secretly, while never being directly responsible for said communication.

Example:

Him: "Are you ok?"

Her, tersely: "I'm fine." //covert communication, she is upset.

Him: "Why are you upset?" //overt communication

Her: "Did I say I was upset?" //plausible deniability

- They are not responsible for their actions. Women are so disconnected from consequence, they rarely acknowledge or understand consequences when



their actions cause them. They are culturally considered perpetual victims, and do not receive harsh criminal sentencing, often receiving little to no punishment for crimes that men are punished severely for. Women are regularly shocked when faced with a consequence from their actions- as evidenced by their solipsistic attitude. Women will find it completely acceptable to lie to maintain plausible deniability, or to keep themselves out of the spotlight of responsibility.

Examples:

["I didn't want to cheat on you, I was drunk..."](#) or "He took advantage of me..."

"I'm not trying to do this, it just happens! I can't help it!"

"I can't, it's hard, you don't understand..."

Trickle truth is a prime example of this behavior, as it allows women plausible deniability by not revealing anything (lie by omission), and looks plausible when she admits and apologizes for small segments of her lie only after they are discovered.

### **Women are incapable of change.**

The mindset required for the above behaviors, as well as the mindset created by the above realities conspire to create a creature with no functioning understanding, desire, or comprehension of change. It requires too many understandings not present in the female psyche:

- Understanding that one's actions can affect future consequences.
- Acknowledgement that one is in control of one's actions.
- Acceptance of potential future failure.

All of these failures are consistent with the hypoagency exhibited in women. These failures should not be a surprise, but instead expected based on our understanding of women in culture.

So, how many times have you heard the phrases...?

"I'm working on it." "I'm trying..." "I can't change overnight!"

It should come as no surprise, and our experienced members can likely relate- these phrases are rarely, if ever accompanied by actual change.

While women can be forced to acknowledge shortcomings ("this is not a behavior I tolerate..." "I'm sorry!"), she will appear sincere in her desire to fix it and be what her man wants her to be. But the very fact that the phrase "trying" is in her vocabulary means she has already admitted she does not have the faculties of mind present to understand what a change would entail.

A boy who puts his hand on a hot stove once, learns to discontinue the behavior.

The boy does not say to his mother, "I'm trying to learn this behavior needs to change..." nor does he take the next month of continued burns to let it sink in. What would any prudent person think if the boy did? A boy who puts his hand on the hot stove repeatedly is mentally ill.

Many often criticize my decision to leave "[Women, the most responsible teenager in the house](#)" in the sidebar, but I have yet to see any compelling evidence that this is not the case- or even that this article is not too lenient! "I'm trying" is the placating cry of the female, helpless in her endeavors to understand the connection between herself and the world around her. Events happen around her and to her, by others, by fate, and by the alignment of the stars. The world must be a fascinating thing through the eyes of a woman. Buckled in safely for the ride, watching as the trees go by.

There is no "try" in men's vernacular. There is do and do not. There are mistakes, and there are outcomes. But a behavior that is understood to be wrong creates a consistency of mind. When processing external details and circumstances- one does not process these details through a state of mind one does

not have! Instead, he understands and plans responses to his surroundings with the understood consistency of his mind. Things he has reasoned to be true and untrue weight on this processing. There is no mistaken desire to put one's hand back on the stove unless he is not truly convinced it is disadvantageous. A man will not behave in a manner he believes to be disadvantageous.

Now, he might act in a manner that is still disadvantageous, but only because he has not yet reasoned out why this may be so. Once he understands that it is disadvantageous... it is not a process of change, but instead a change of process.

Women, however, do not function with this presence of mind. You will hear "I'm trying" which betrays their intent, because women are incapable of change. Why would they say "trying" if it were any other way?

Do not expect change.

Caveat: I do believe proper discipline within the framework of a relationship is necessary, beneficial, and ultimately an effective tool. I consider this method of change a series of conditioning rather than an internally-driven desire or ability for change.

## Featured Comment

*By Ill\_mumble\_that.*

Women can change when they are molded to by strong men in their life. Every woman I've ever been with has changed to become more like me, without fail. My wife is now interested in Star Trek, surfing, snowboarding, and baking. Previous to me she had 0% experience in any of those and even told me she wasn't interested in those things. When I met her she was all about shopping. I removed that habit from her and switched it to online deal hunting, but even that is minimal in

comparison to what she once was.

Women are water that will take for shape of the strong manly container that they end up filling.

If your woman is boring, it's because you are boring. If your woman is fat, it's because you put up with it. If your woman isn't happy, its because you aren't happy and you aren't asserting yourself. As a man you have agency and with that comes all of the responsibility for both you and any women that you engage in long-term relationships with.

When you have a strong manly frame, your mission will become her mission. She will follow you and become your strongest supporter, given that you don't allow her to be lazy. Use the Benjamin Franklin effect to your full advantage. Tell her to do stuff, and do so constantly. By no means order her around 100% of the time, use some psychology.

When you want a woman to do something, give her a few options "honey please choose A, B, or C" and just be sure that the one you want her to pick sounds much better to her than the other two. This gives the woman the illusion that she has agency and freedom to make guiding choices in the relationship, which is is exactly what she wants. She wants the illusion of power, she wants to feel important, but she doesn't want any actual power or any of the responsibility that comes with that so don't give her any. That's on you as a man to maintain.

# I've Become Too Critical Of Girls

*By IllimitableMan.*

Comment link from a [larger article](#).

The Red Pill does this, you realise women typically have nothing to offer other than their body. They know it because they spend all their time narcissistically trying to look good, accentuating the only real asset that they have to fly by in life.

But in words uttered by the mouth very few women will actually admit they are nothing other than a glorified excuse of a series of fuck holes, because such "de-humanisation" harms their ego, damaging the core of who they are that they've built up around themselves, the very narcissism they look to re-establish and reinforce via external social validation (cue dopamine hits from Instagram filtered selfies and Facebook likes and her inability to put down a smartphone) and a rigorous routine of makeup application and carefully selected clothing choices.

Patrice O'Neal demonstrated it best when he asked an entire crowd of women what they would do to keep their man if he was thinking of leaving them, most of them said they would fuck him. When asked what they would do if they had no vagina? They said blow him or let him stick it in the ass. Women objectify themselves but don't have the clarity of mind neither the narcissistic inclination to admit it, Patrice had to deceive them with a little game to get the truth out of them.

Having any negative opinion on a woman, be it well justified or well reasoned is automatically misogynistic in the eyes of women as you not only harm their egos to be as critical of their group collective as they are of men, but their addiction to emotion means they become lost in indignation and all the wrath which that calls forward, rather than to critically deduce truths from your logic, in short, they do not respect logic and truth like men do, they respect feelings above all else, and

making them feel bad in a critical manner is in and of itself a misogynous act as far as a woman is concerned.

Most women are fucking disappointments in comparison to all the hopes and dreams we've ever had and were ever fed in regards to them, it's the fucking Disney shit making you feel let down. Typically one should expect very little of women as so few are worthy of anything more than a fuck, even good conversation tends to be a rarity, quite many of them lack the ability to be mentally stimulating. Occasionally you may be surprised and in such a circumstance you run the risk of falling very hard for her as she stands out so prominently, however no matter her difference she is a woman like any other - she has the same needs and will run all the usual shit tests, making the same demands and etc.

For those who can be bothered and are in the right phase of their life to do so, if you want yourself a desirable woman you will have to cultivate femininity and desirability into her yourself, such is the extent of the Red Pill woman project. Red Pill women are works in progress, being guided by a good social network and the desires of the man she has pledged to give her long term allegiance to. For those of us who have neither the time nor the inclination to practice the patience required to effectively create our own Red Pill woman, that shit isn't an option, and believe me when I say that all Red Pill women are trained by men, they are not born out of the womb, whether that man is her husband or her father, she is trained by a man.

This is why women with poor relationships with their fathers are a massive red flag. Absent fathers are a red flag. Weak fathers are better than nothing, but typically you want her to have had a father who was a patriarch, a dominant man who taught her discipline so that her base schematic of "what men should be like" is healthy and isn't formed from unhealthy feminist stereotypes and the ramblings of a bitter and romantically unsuccessful single mother, but even then that isn't always enough to ensure a quality woman as the prevailing socially engineered cultural forces around her proactively do their best to undermine the will and intent that her father's best interests have for her.

Red Pill women are not unicorns, they're women capable of curbing their

instincts and using logic to be more desirable in order to secure provisioning in their old age. They are women who will compromise and work with a man who is strong enough and patient enough to deal with them. Everything is a compromise with all women, whether she's a cunt, BPD, unintelligent or as high caliber as a well cultivated Red Pill woman.

No matter the woman, she will test your patience - this is just women, full-stop. Not got a lot of patience? Women are gonna just piss you the hell off. It helps when they can offset this inherently annoying trait by bringing more than a vagina to the table, but know that an inherently irrational being is going to do nothing but antagonise the patience of someone who thinks in logic rather than the cognitive cartwheels of reactive transient emotionalism.

The biggest flattery of all to women, which only an intelligent woman will realise, is that despite the sheer frustration and pain she causes him, he still chooses to stick with her. A female's self-awareness of his sacrifice and a declaration of appreciation for that sacrifice goes a long way to help reconcile the huge fundamental differences in expectation that men and women have of each other, women being far more audaciously demanding and needy by nature of their disposition than men. It's somewhat insane how the appreciation of an irrational woman is indeed valued so intimately by the disposition of a rational man. It is true after all that we value that which is hardest to obtain, and a woman's appreciation is scarcely given in earnest.

## Further Reading

<http://illimitablemen.com/2014/03/21/women-of-substance-are-made-not-born/>

## **I Don't Hate Women, I Just Don't Respect Them...**

...and unless many changes within their gender come about, I never will.

*By bitchdantkillmyvibe.*

[Article link.](#)

The Red Pill gets regularly blasted for 'hating' women. TRP does not hate women, bar the vitriolic men usually new to TRP who are still overcoming their understandable bitterness and resentment. TRP just sees women for what they are, and the ways they behave, and treats them accordingly. In short, TRP does not hate women - TRP does not respect women, and they give us reason after reason not to.

There are a number of reasons I do not respect women. Again, as creatures of fun and entertainment, I love them. I never feel feelings of hatred towards them, more annoyance, disappointment and, as mentioned, a severe lack of the respect they claim they so desperately want.

Here are just some of the reasons I will never respect women on the whole:

### **The fat acceptance movement**

We've seen a lot of this on here recently and it was what initially inspired this post. The fat acceptance movement is one of the clearest and best examples of how women completely lack any sense of agency and how they demand the most respect for the least amount of work or effort.

That article currently on the front page has a woman talking about going



through a lot of work and effort to convince herself her body is fine the way it is, without realizing the reason it took so much 'work and effort' is because she has practically had to implement a delusional way of thinking to do so.

In reality though, this is nowhere near the level of work and effort that is implemented in actually losing weight and keeping up a healthy appearance. She wants the world to accept her how she is without striving for any self-improvement at all. She wants the world to enable and actually embrace her lack of motivation and apathy.

In reverse, you never see anything close to a fat acceptance movement among men, when men still face a lot of the issues about image and self esteem. Men get just as bombarded by the media about what is attractive and what isn't, and instead of trying to rewrite the rules to our benefit, we either shape up, or don't.

That's our choice, not all men decide to improve themselves, I'll admit, but we don't try and create an entire movement to make us feel better about our unhealthy lifestyles. I've started packing on a few pounds myself, and instead of thinking "I need to convince myself, and others, that this is okay", I think "Fuck, I really need to get to the gym. This is not good."

### **Child custody laws**

I understand that some of the problems surrounding child custody laws in modern day fall on our broken legal system, but my issue is the way women actively and intentionally recognize and exploit these broken laws.

The way women embrace the broken system surrounding child custody laws is another example in women's solipsism, and worse, their complete disregard and almost sociopathic lack of care for not only their husband/partner/lover, but the father of their child, their offspring, who without, would never have been able to grant her such a gift to begin with.

In my opinion, the way women abuse child custody laws is reason enough to

lack complete respect for women and is the biggest reason, personally, I will never respect their gender. Taking a father's child away from him is one of the most horrible, disgusting, vile, vindictive, malicious and heartless things you can do to a man. I don't care how much he may have hurt you, or how badly you want to get back at him, taking his seed away from him eclipses almost any wrongdoing he may have done to the woman.

This shows the true nature of modern women - that they only care for themselves and lack compassion almost entirely. I wouldn't take a man's child away from him even if he was the lowest of scum. I wouldn't wish that on my worst enemy, and for women to do that to someone they once loved and who once loved them back, and most likely supported them in a number of ways, not only dumbfounds me, but it scares me. Not only do I disrespect women for this crime against nature, I fear them for it.

### **The feminist movement in its current state**

One may argue that the feminist movement was a necessary way of bringing women into the modern world and earning them the rights they believed they deserved. I'm a bit conflicted, because while the feminist movement did succeed in earning women some basic human rights that they shouldn't have been denied, it is also largely responsible for the dismal state of the modern woman now.

After the world gave women almost everything they demanded, they still want more. The feminist movement in its current state is little more than a joke and an example of how women will continue to victimize themselves despite an ever increasingly ease of lifestyle. For all this talk about 'male privilege,' if you are born a white women with relative attractiveness, you are living life on easy mode. I don't give a fuck what you say, this is the truth. This is why women bitch over people not accepting them for being fat because they are literally left with nothing else to complain about.

The feminist movement is now about the most trivial 'rights' being awarded to women and continuing to uphold the image that women are 'oppressed,' when this

could not be further from the truth. Women are more privileged than ever and get more pussy passes than in any point in history. Yet, the sob story continues.

The feminist movement is an example in how if you give an inch with a woman, she will take a mile. We were wrong to entertain their demands to begin with, thinking that if some of their demands were appeased, they would be content and more productive members of society. But that is the curse of logical, rational thought impeding the modern world and being taken advantage of by women. Women must always be the victims, even when they aren't, and no matter how much more we continue to give them, they will never be sated and never feel content.

### **False rape culture**

Again, for all the talk about 'rape culture', we are living in a society where women are taking more and more liberties with the law that already aggressively favors them by accusing men of rape for their own benefit. Here we have another example of the vindictive, hurtful nature of women, where they only care about themselves and benefitting themselves, even at the behest of another man's livelihood. Note, it's not because they hate men - it's because they hate everyone, or more appropriately, women are completely solipsistic and anyone's wellbeing outside of their own is an afterthought.

This is the real reason 'rape culture' exists, to continue the victimisation of women and the benefits they reap by being society's victim. They create a problem that isn't there so they can exploit it to their own advantage. They willingly destroy men's lives, careers and reputations, marking them permanently for the rest of their life, purely for their own gain. Men are completely disposable in a woman's eyes, and this again is reason to not only disrespect them, but fear them.

There are many more reasons but I won't go into them, I've ranted enough, but these are the main reasons I find myself incapable of respecting women, and I feel justified in this. For all of men's downfalls, nothing comes close to the manipulative, cold and psychopathic nature of women, not to mention that many of

the slurs launched against men only apply to a small subset - rape is minimal and women are lucky to live in an age where the overwhelming majority of men view this as a most heinous act. Domestic violence, again, occurs in minorities, and reports even suggest it is more common with women.

However, the reasons I have listed here apply to an overwhelming majority of modern women, hence the entire movements often backing them. These are things we see on a regular basis, implemented by women daily, enabled by our media, things we hear about so often, we have simply just come to accept them in defeat - think child custody laws. No one even bats an eyelash when a woman wrenches the very seed from a man, when this should be viewed as an act of ultimate disrespect and any woman who does so should be shamed for the rest of her life. Instead, her behaviour is enabled.

Until these fundamental changes occur within the female gender - which I highly doubt they will - women will never be deserving of our respect and for them to demand otherwise is completely laughable. Again, I do not hate women - I love women, I love fucking them, I love laughing with them, I love having fun with them, and even sometimes losing myself in the emotional roller coaster that is their feminine nature which I am unable to experience. But respect them? Never. Not until these horrible rituals are called out as the disgusting, inhumane practices they are.

## Women Want A Wedding, Not A Marriage

*By theinfamous1124.*

[Article link.](#)

As a young buck in his mid 20s, I'm seeing more and more of my peers getting engaged or tying the knot. Per usual, social media platforms are the relied upon methods by these couples (read: girls) to get the news across. In most of the posts are either pictures of the engagement ring or the wedding dress or other ceremonial nonsense with herds of womyn congratulating the recently engaged or wed (read: jealous that they don't have what the other woman has). We can also see this obsession with fantasy weddings on television shows like Say Yes to the Dress among others.

What struck resonance with me was the overwhelming sense that these fantasy weddings and exciting engagement announcements were marketed for women by women. Never mind the fact that a lifetime commitment (read: 5-8 years) was about to be forged.

I strongly believe that most women lack the fundamental ability to look past the gaud of their fantasy weddings and honeymoons and the influx of praise and attention they receive from their peers at their announcements and ceremonies and this lack of foresight leads to a declining marriage (read: not haaaapy anymore).

This concept also gives credence to the notion of: She doesn't love you, she loves the idea of you. She loves the tingles her fantasy wedding gives her. Gentlemen, if you must marry, find a girl who couldn't give a shit less about the gaud and showiness that will cost 99% of men tens of thousands of dollars.

## The Modern Woman's Sexual Strategy

*By RedPope.*

[Article link.](#)

I'm calling this The Modern Woman's Sexual Strategy. It is their formula. A woman's default script for her 30s and 40s.

[/u/Kill\\_Your\\_Ego](#) posted a controversial FR. He is fucking a woman, knowing she keeps a BB in reserve. He made a joke, saying he should knock her up, since her BB genuinely seems like he'd make a great dad.

One TRP member was disgusted. His comment and OP's response:

*I would not let a beta raise my son.*

*LOL. As if you even have a choice.*

His answer is the absolute truth and the correct response. It may make you angry. It may make you sad. Put emotion aside for a moment and we'll examine the topic in depth. I'm assuming you've skimmed the sidebar. You've been beaten over the head with AF/BB, but go reread Briffault's Law if you can't remember it. In this article, we're going to put 1 and 1 together and make 2.

### **AF/BB + Briffault's Law**

Right now this woman wants the AF. Once she's pregnant, she will want the BB. She does not want OP raising her kid. According to his story, the one and only

benefit he provides is sex. Why the fuck would she keep OP once pregnant? His job is done. His desires are irrelevant. AF is sexy and cool, but unreliable and distant. BB has a 6 figure salary and stability. No contest.

And so she will do the responsible thing and "outgrow" her AF bad boy. She will "settle down" and be a get married to BB. She will even convince herself BB was the one she wanted all along. Her true love.

(In the event she marries the AF, or BB is the actual biological father, results do not really differ. She will work tirelessly to domesticate him into a BB role.)

The wedding is expensive and wonderful. The highlight of her life. She will become a true and faithful housewife! Long enough to get the kid out of diapers, anyway. Long enough to get a new car. "We need an SUV to fit the stroller!"

Her next choice then depends on if she wants a second kid. If so, she revisits AF (or finds a new version). During this time, BB husband will enjoy an increase in sex. He'll be convinced the marriage is finally back on track. BB is happy. Of course, she just needs him to be convinced the second spawn might be his. Maybe it is. Doesn't matter.

If she doesn't want a second child, she visits a divorce attorney. Gets an estimate on what she should receive in child support. The attorney also informs her how long she has to remain married to get alimony. Year or so? She'll rough that out while branch swinging. More than 2 years? Well shit. Might as well have that second kid after all. She'll get so much more child support.

Quits her job, if she hadn't already. Three years later, second kid is out of diapers now. They've been married 7+ years. First kid is in school. She convinces BB to trade in for a newer SUV. No matter how much he earns, she's slowly maxing out his credit cards. Meanwhile, the steady decline in duty sex has finally reached dead bedroom status. She is unhappy. BB doesn't understand why. He is giving her every material thing she requests.

She heads back to the divorce attorney. If she's lucky, BB sought out some brief solace with a slut or prostitute. He takes all the blame, and in his guilt, gives her everything, uncontested. Otherwise she gets the minimum package: 2-5 years of alimony (aka spouse support) plus 15-16 years child support. Primary custody, the SUV, all her jewelry, half the equity in the house, and half the savings. A few crocodile tears and BB will probably sweeten the deal (extra furniture and cash), just to get it over with.

I don't even consider this "theory" anymore. Go buy a pitcher of beer for any of your 30-something divorced friends. Get them talking about their marriage. This same script gets repeated again and again and again.

The newly divorced woman is now in her mid/late 30s. She probably isn't rich, but she'll be comfortable for a decade or more. Alimony goes quick, but since child support doesn't count as income, she qualifies for every government welfare program. She's driving a \$70,000 SUV while on food stamps.

She may hit the bars now and then, hook up with an aging silverback for the thrill. But mostly, she's hunting for secondary BB. Online dating is a godsend. Eventually she meets some nice guy with a mid-level career. Tells him how her ex was abusive. "Will you sit with me when he picks the kids up for his weekend visitation? He intimidates me." How angry and sad the ex looks. Maybe her story is plausible. New BB feels like a protector.

She milks him for a vacation or two. Some extra cash so her kids can sign up for little league and summer camp. Lots and lots and lots of dinners out. But he's boring, and not near wealthy enough, so she goes back to dating. Rinse and repeat. Meanwhile she eases her way back into the workplace. Child support will be ending soon.

Post menopause. She does a half-assed job at work, but it doesn't matter. Soon she'll be a double (or triple) minority. Untouchable. No AF in years now. Even BB are only good for the rare meal or weekend trip. She is sad and frequently broke,



but she has her cat and church groups. Kids don't visit often enough. Ingrates. After all the sacrifices she made? Their real dad ran off before they were born. Her ex-husband abandoned her. The government? No help at all. She did it all herself. But what was the point? No one appreciates her. Thank God for Xanax.

## **Another Take On Why TRP Is Loathed By Women: AF/BB Has To Be A Secret.**

*By gekkozorz.*

[Article link.](#)

Everyone has their own theory about why TRP is Reddit's favorite source of jimmie-rustles. Here's mine.

First of all, the reason which TRP is hated in general is just because of pure groupthink. The average Redditor needs to have other people do his thinking for him, so when The Everyone Conglomerate says "TRP is just bunch of women hating rapists, you need to hate them," he obeys without question, without actually bothering to learn our philosophy or anything about us.

But the hate had to start somewhere. For some reason, in the early days of our sub, some women had to drop in and see what we were all about, freak the fuck out about something in our message, and declare to the world that we're the worst thing since the Holocaust.

I think I've figured out what that something is. Alpha Fux/Beta Bux only works if the betas don't realize how badly they've been lied to.

I recall there was a time when a TRPer showed his sister this sub and asked her to read over our content to see what she thought. "This isn't right, none of this is right," she kept saying. "How so?" the guy asked. Eventually she came around to the truth.

"You guys shouldn't know this stuff."

We have unravelled many of the mysteries of the female mind. One of the most significant is that women want to get fucked by weightlifting frat bros who give them dark triad gina tingles, and want to get flowers, money, emotional support, and post-wall commitment the weaker men who don't have so many sexual options.

So think about what happens when those betas start to discover this sub.

"Wait a minute," they say. "You mean that when I was composing her love letters, buying her plane tickets so she could visit her boyfriend on the other side of the country, being her shoulder to cry on when she got dumped by her boyfriend, holding her purse while she was getting fucked in the bathroom stall in the club, assuring her she was beautiful and perfect like a wish wrapped in a dream, and being her faithful orbiter all those years... she didn't ever have any intention of having sex with me?"

And just like that... the veil is lifted, and the bus stop.

It's like a horse is following the apple dangling from the string... and then suddenly it realizes that it's not actually getting any closer to the apple by walking forward, so it just stops walking, and is then of no benefit to the rider.

Some people have pointed out that TRP can be beneficial to women, because we can learn how to properly be the kind of man she is attracted to.

That's useful if she wants our fux.

But she still needs those bus just as bad, maybe even more so. Free meals, free drinks, emotional support, companionship, validation, and most importantly, unconditional commitment even though she's halfway through her thirties with a beer gut and kid to take care of.

A beta male may be as sexually appealing as a piece of driftwood, but he can certainly have a purpose. He can provide some really vitally necessary services

which women cannot live without.

And if these scrawny, sexually useless betas ever wake up to the fact that these bux they're providing aren't doing anything to get their dicks wet and cancel these bux accordingly, that's bad. That's really, really bad.

Thus the fact that AF/BB is kept as an Area 51-grade classified top secret.

And here we are yelling these facts from the street corner - thus the fact that women protest against this sub with the rage of a starving tiger.

And that's my \$0.02 of the day.

# Dating and Relationships

## **The Two Most Powerful Weapons In A Man's Relationship**

### **Arsenal: Stepping Out, And Walking Away.**

*By excessory.*

[Article link.](#)

1. Stepping Out: If she's not giving you sex, you can go get it from someone else.
2. Walking Away: If she's treating you like shit, you can leave her and never come back.

These are your two most powerful weapons.

Her weapon of withholding sex is only powerful if you won't get your needs met elsewhere.

Her weapon of disrespecting and bitching is only powerful if you won't ever leave her.

Marriage is the surrender of these supreme male powers, and that's why it's so potentially dangerous, and so rarely successful.

These are your nuclear options, and it's better if you never have to use them, but it's foolish to give them away without very careful consideration.

# The Most Unattractive Trait Of All: Trying To Attract A

## Woman

*By Archwinger.*

[Article link.](#)

There's a post today about a very pathetic man. A man who went above and beyond to try to woo a woman. The specifics don't matter, but since the post was strongly up-voted around here and clearly resonated with a few people, I'll expound a little bit: Some jerk-off loser got dumped and created an overwrought romantic website to try to get his ex back. Naturally, the entire female internet community pissed all over him and mocked his efforts.

Surely, some women at least recognized and appreciated his effort, but figured that his ex just wasn't into him, or maybe he just wasn't their type, right? I mean, any man who makes that kind of effort to woo a woman is worth something, to someone, right? Wrong. Women everywhere pissed all over him. They called him a loser.

These facts don't matter. You could replace this idiot with any penis-owner, replace his website with any romantic gesture large or small, and replace his ex girlfriend with any female anywhere in the world, and the response of women-at-large would be the same. Pay attention to this part: if you are attempting to romance a woman, you're a pathetic loser. This isn't just what The Red Pill thinks. It's what women think.

It makes no sense, right? I mean, don't women want romance? Actually, it makes perfect sense. Let's explore the reasons why, viewing the universe through the eyes of women:

If you do something with the intention of making a woman like you that's manipulation in their eyes. Note the italics – to make a woman like you. When you're trying to make her like you, you're not really romantic, you're not really nice, you're just creepy. It doesn't matter if you're actually nice, if you're actually genuine, if you're actually romantic, and that you weren't trying to be manipulative at all. If you're doing something that seems like you're trying to make a girl like you, you're a creep. Because trying to win a girl's affections with your behavior is trying to circumvent nature. You're trying to turn something thousands upon thousands of years old, inscribed into our genetic code, into a transaction. You're trying to buy sex or a relationship with romantic gestures and niceness. Women hate that, because if you could influence their emotional state like that, you'd be taking their power away. You don't choose whether she likes you. She does. And any attempt to influence her decision is subversive and creepy. You're supposed to "be yourself" and maybe, if you're really lucky, she'll pick you if she finds herself naturally attracted to you. Trying to convince her to pick you automatically takes you out of the running, loser. Because trying to convince a woman to want you is what losers who can't get women the real way do.

The way to make a girl like you is to do the exact opposite. Look like you're not trying to win her over. Do your own shit, and blow her off to do it. Be too busy for her. Be dismissive of her. Do shit that improves you and benefits your own life. Shit that makes you a better man, who's attractive to women, without actually trying to attract women. Because remember: actually trying to attract women is creepy. It's manipulative.

Girls don't even appreciate that you're trying. The very fact that you are making any effort at all to attract a woman instead of just doing your own shit is controlling. You are trying to control a woman's emotional state by acting in a manner intended to influence her. They hate that.

That's why gaming women and PUA tactics and becoming a "Red Pill" man work incredibly well in the real world, but women who read about all of this on the internet hate the hell out of it and call it creepy, rapey, manipulative, and swear that it would never work on a smart woman. Because when they read about game on



paper, it's an action you're taking to try to attract women. That's creepy and could never possibly work, because trying to attract women is manipulative and automatically fails. It disgusts them to read about it and they couldn't possibly be less attracted after reading that text. When they experience an evil Red Pill man in the real world, however, he just seems like an attractive guy who's different from all of the other creeps who are trying too hard. A confident man who has things going on and doesn't really care if she fucks him or not. He's totally different from all of those pathetic losers trying to buy sex from her with kindness, complements, and drinks. I guess webpages, too.

Gentlemen: Stop trying to attract women and focus entirely on yourself. I know it seems counter-intuitive. I know some guys around here worry that if they just do their own shit, no woman will ever notice them and they'll never get laid again. If that's the case, you're doing the wrong shit. Quit playing video games and eating Oreos in your mom's basement while jerking off to porn every day, and start working out, eating right, excelling professionally, and learning skills. It's hard work, and far less pleasurable than just screwing around all day, but you get a reward. Not women, a real reward. You get to feel like a badass every single day of your life. You get to wake up excited every day, full of energy. You get to love your life, which is far more rewarding than loving a woman. And by the way, women fuck guys like that without them having to do much more than just walking up and saying hi – your wives and girlfriends are fucking guys like that right now.

## Red Pill vs. Blue Pill Dating Behaviour

*By nicethingyoucanthave.*

[Comment link](#) from a [larger article](#).

*Who has actually had success from [TRP] philosophy?*

Answer: everyone who has tried it.

Let me paint a Red Pill vs. blue pill picture for you. You tell me who the real winner is.

### **Blue pill guy**

Sees a girl at some social function, or maybe in class. Fantasizes about her. Imagines that she's just the best thing ever. Over the course of weeks or months, finally works up the courage to ask her out. She says, "sure okay, whatever." He's over the moon. He plans every detail of the date. He literally loses sleep stressing over it. On the day of the special date, he texts her that he's looking forward to it. She doesn't respond for several hours, but then eventually she says she can't make it.

Texts her the next day, still hopeful. No response until the following day. She's still busy. This goes on for a while. Finally she tells him to leave her alone.

Blue pill guy meets a girl through friends. Fantasizes about her. Imagines that she's just the best thing ever. Over the course of weeks or months, finally works up the courage to ask her out. She has a boyfriend. He continues to crush on her for years.

Blue pill guy meets a girl through friends. Fantasizes about her. Imagines that she's just the best thing ever. Over the course of weeks or months, finally works up the courage to ask her out. She says, "sure okay, whatever." He's over the moon. He plans every detail of the date. He literally loses sleep stressing over it.

They go on the date. He shows her his quirky, nerdy, shyness. But he also shows her what a total gentlemen he can be. She tells him he's the best friend ever! Over the course of months or years, they continue being "friends" with him buying her stuff and helping her move. They never so much as kiss.

### **Red pill guy**

Sees a girl at some social function, or maybe in class. He says hi to her that day. He tells her about what he's doing that weekend and invites her along. She says "sure okay, whatever." Then he forgets all about her. He goes to another social function and chats up other women.

Red pill guy understands that most women are going to flake on him, or they're going to "better deal" him (meaning, they'll hang out but if something better comes along, they won't show up). He doesn't care. It doesn't bother him anymore than water being wet bothers him.

Some girl texts him Saturday and says she can't make it. She's really sorry. He replies, "lame!" He isn't remotely bothered. Another girl texts to confirm that she's in. He hangs out with her. He attempts to make something sexual happen. Maybe she's into him, in which case they fuck. Maybe she's not, in which case he doesn't care.

Red pill guy meets a girl through friends. At the very first opportunity, he asks her out. She has a boyfriend. He says, "that's cool" and thinks no more of it. Later, when she breaks up with the boyfriend, she considers going out with him.

Red pill guy meets a girl through friends. At the very first opportunity, he asks her out. When they go out, he remains somewhat aloof and distant, he teases her

appropriately, and he unambiguously communicates his sexual interest. If she's into him, they fuck, if not, he doesn't care.

If they decide to be friends, he holds her to the same standard he would hold a guy friend - if she asks for a favor, he says "sure, just buy me a beer" or something like that. He doesn't let her take advantage of him, and he doesn't harbor unrealistic fantasies about her.

This is what I mean if I advise guys to not care. Note that women aren't "flocking" to The Red Pill guy. It's just that he doesn't get encumbered with any one girl that he hasn't had sex with. He keeps a lot of irons in the fire (another way of saying he spins a lot of plates).

## You Only Want Me for Sex!

*By Archwinger.*

[Post link.](#)

I'll chat about this point with an anecdote rather than a bunch of dry theory, because stories are way more interesting than lectures, and I'm about the farthest thing from a professor on the planet.

Back in my pre-Red Pill days, about once every month or two, my wife would snidely declare to me that I only want her for sex. This insidious and offensive declaration always coincided with the one time every month or two that I would ask for sex. Because we were having sex about once every 1-2 months. The ritual would go that after my attempts at advances and escalation got nowhere for 59 days, I would finally break down and actually talk about sex (because open communication is the key to a great relationship!) That conversation was immediately met with defensive snarking.

How dare I imply, by the mere act of asking for something, that my wife is imperfect? I am a mirror, after all. And every time my wife asked me to do anything, it was never a request. It was a message, always delivered with a choice of tone and words that said: "Why haven't you done this thing you should have known to do already? Why am I even having to lower myself to ask you to do this at all? You're not worth a shit." My wife never asked me to do anything. She accused me of being a loser, under the guise of a polite request, and when confronted about this would always respond, "What? I was just asking you to X. Why are you getting so defensive? Feeling guilty?"

So naturally, whenever I asked my wife for something, no matter how innocently I meant my request, what she heard was a reflection of her own

thoughts: "You're not doing something you should be doing unmasked." And because that statement (which the old, beta me never meant) was 100% true, those unsaid words stung her even more. She knew she was supposed to have sex with her husband and wasn't, and my asking for sex shone a light on her failings.

Thus, an innocent question from an innocent beta husband provoked an astounding, almost suspicious amount of defensiveness. "We haven't had sex in two months" was unfailingly met with, "I'm always tired because you never do X, Y and Z and everything you do its always half-assed because you're such a selfish loser, then I have to do everything myself! And I don't feel like having sex with a selfish loser! All you ever talk about is sex! You only want me for sex!"

Even beta-me from years ago was taken aback by that statement. Because beta-me was still a highly educated nerd, and as a nerd, he knew that 1 divided by 60 is less than 2 percent of the time, and that words like "all" and "only" used in that context really didn't apply to something that happened less than 2 percent of the time. Beta-me also understood that going to work every day, making 80% of the family income, cooking every meal, doing the laundry, paying for maid service, and handling a good chunk of the childcare duties made statements such as "I do everything" from his wife seem like a little bit of an exaggeration.

So instead of saying, "No, baby! Don't say that! I love you for [insert validation here] and it's not about sex at all! And by the way, I'm a supplicating loser not worthy of respect or fucking, as evidenced by the fact that I don't even have the balls to stand up to such a blatant falsehood for fear of angering you!" Beta-me said, "Wait a second. I'm pissed off here. Not about you accusing me of wanting sex, because wanting sex is normal. But because you're essentially calling me an idiot. We never have sex. Like once in forever. If I only want you for sex, then what you're saying is that I'm so fucking stupid that I don't realize that we never have sex, and that I'm so fucking out of touch that I think this is normal. Or that I'm such a loser that I think the once in forever that we do have sex is the best I can do. You know what? Forget it. I don't want to have sex after all."

Fifteen minutes later, my wife had cooled down and said, "It's fine. If you want

to have sex, we can have sex," in a very resigned tone of voice, making it clear that she was making a great sacrifice to do me this incredible favor. That got me all pissed off again. I told her to fuck off and that I wasn't turned on by the idea of having sex with someone who just called me a loser five minutes ago. Not the most "alpha" of replies, but it got the message across. She stormed out of the room, tears in her eyes, slammed the door, and slept on the couch for three or four days after that, thinking she was teaching me a lesson. It was strange, though. I slept really, really well that night. I don't think I'd ever rejected my wife before. I'd probably never been that honest with her before either. Not really.

While I was typing this bullshit last night, intending to make a more generic point about shit tests, Rollo posted a new article describing the difficulty women experience in separating their worth as a human being from their sexual worth that seemed to at least partially apply here. I say partially because my story illustrates a seeming contradiction. On one hand, rejecting my wife sexually made her feel worthless, not just as a sex object, but as a person. On the other hand, the very thing she accused me of was only valuing her for sex while neglecting her value as a person. However, this contradiction is an illusion if you think about basic Red Pill 101: pay attention to a woman's behavior, never her words.

"You only want me for sex" is a shit test. Men aren't supposed to ask for sex. Ever. They're supposed to just be attractive so that women want to have sex with them, without them having to negotiate for it. The sex is supposed to "just happen." When a beta husband asks his wife for sex, however innocent the request, what the woman hears is two things: 1) "I am a loser, unworthy of sex;" and 2) "You are sexually failing me." She responds to both of these statements you unwittingly made in one fell swoop. She doesn't want to have sex with you, because you're a loser, so she attempts to shame you for asking by accusing you of not valuing her as a human, only as a sex object. But at the same time, when you indicate that she's sexually failing you, she experiences this not just as an attack on her value as a sex object, but as an attack on her very value as a person. You indicate that she is failing you sexually, and she responds by defending her personal value, not her sexual value.

Today, whenever my wife screeches that I only want her for sex, I calmly respond that I also appreciate her carting our daughter around and keeping the house clean, so "only" is a bad choice of words. But yes, I definitely want her for sex. She storms off in a huff without fail every time. I then set a reminder in my cell phone to beep at me in 48 hours. Every time we're having sex, she stops and asks, "What's that beeping?"



## Refusing The Gift

*By brandor77.*

[Article link.](#)

One of the more common shit-tests my wife gives me is, "Say something nice about me."

This usually happens when we have been around each other for a while but nothing of significance has been said. I will have come home from work, we've eaten dinner, shared our daily war stories, put the kid to bed and be in the middle of a movie. Suddenly, she gets in my line of vision and demands compliments when my brain is practically inert.

For years, my reaction to this type of thing was to give her what she was asking for. My efforts would be unsatisfactory because the compliments always sounded forced - which of course they were. My resentment of this built over time, and eventually I had a script ready-at-hand for responding to the question. It was a resigned, here-we-go-again routine where I sounded like I was in a call center. A few times I tried confronting the situation head-on, telling her she couldn't just push a button to have me dispense heartfelt compliments at a moment's notice. Logical and accurate? You bet. Did it work? Nope.

It was only after TRP that I considered refusing to engage in her demand at all.

Nowadays, this scenario rarely comes up. When it does, as it did yesterday, I sarcastically reply: "Something nice about me."

Not the response she wants! She gets a sour look. I give her a shit-eating grin. Then I grab her face and kiss her in a way that says "you are so silly, but I love you

anyway." She resists – how dare I not take this seriously! A playful struggle ensues. She doesn't resist the second kiss. Then she's off and away, acting like she's pissed but unable to contain her smile.

For years, I tried to accept and process her emotional insecurities, make them my own, and try to address them. That's the playbook we were given. And yet, only when I started disregarding these scenarios as the childish games they are did we become happy with the results.

There is a fairly [well known internet tale](#) about Buddha refusing to accept a man's "gift" of anger. The TL;DR of it is that Buddha refutes an angry man's frame, displaying his own emotional independence. This parable applies not just to anger but to a wider range of human interaction.

In our daily lives we are surrounded by people who try to manipulate us by activating our anxiety. The kid that throws a tantrum, the car salesman that sits the customer in the 'negotiation' room, the wife pestering her husband for compliments - they are all attempting to influence behavior through emotional discomfort. I don't want to hear the kid cry. I don't want to sit in the tiny room. I don't want her to be upset with me.

In TRP parlance, a shit-test is emotionally manipulative behavior, and we are shit-tested constantly - not only by the romantically interesting women in our lives, but by almost everyone we meet. Most people don't realize what they are doing; they are simply using learned behavior that has often yielded results. So why is this learned behavior so effective?

As Chuck Palahniuk put it, we are a generation of men raised by women, and as Dr. Glover points out in *No More Mr. Nice Guy*, many of us (and I would argue a majority of us) grew up in a situation where we were abandoned or abused. Developed in childhood, our coping strategies tend to be about appeasing others to the detriment of our self-interest. The indoctrination continues as we grow into adults. Our educational system compels us to artificially enforce self-esteem and confidence in others, regardless of merit. Our media deludes us with the chivalry-

is-rewarded, true-love-conquers-all, happily-ever-after myth. Our legal system and corporate policies place our lives and our livelihoods in the hands of those who may punish us simply for upsetting their sensibilities. Failure to make one's life partner adequately happy will result in the loss of the life you worked so hard to build.

In short, we are being taught cradle to grave to take ownership of the anxieties of others because that will give us validation and preserve us from harm. The corollary is that if there is a lack of validation or harm befalls us, it is because we did not adequately address those anxieties.

Dealing with this shit crushes a man's spirit, so he will spend a lot of time trying to predict how his own behavior might generate anxiety in others so that he may avoid, deflect or manage it. He pushes his own needs to the back while he attends to others, and isolates himself to reduce the sickening workload.

This is the primary ingredient of the Blue Pill.

Therefore, I propose that the axiom of the Red Pill is to refuse the "gift" of negative emotion from others, expressed or implied. The guy who tells you your shirt looks stupid. The girl who asks you to buy her a drink. A clingy mother. A verbally abusive father. All trying to move you via negative emotion. All different, yet all the same.

It's not about fighting back – it's about refusing to engage at all.

Easier said than done, of course. I am certainly nowhere near perfecting my [Inner Julie Andrews](#). But the first step is awareness. Here is how I started down this path:

The first sign you are being given a "gift" is when your interaction with someone is making you feel compelled to do something you don't want to. When you find yourself in that situation, take a moment and ask yourself, "Is this what I want to do/say?" If not, refuse to comply. Just say no. It is almost certain that other

person will increase the pressure. How dare you not do that thing!

It is there, right at that moment, when you feel that increased sense of guilt, the need to appease and not rock the boat and make that person happy, that you are feeling the withdrawal symptoms of the Blue Pill. Note it. File it. Embrace it. Make it your companion. Then double down on your refusal to do something contrary to your own desires and self-interest.

People around you may not like it. Some of the more demanding people in my life have become extremely put out by my new lack of compliance. "What happened to Brandor77?" they ask. The worst offenders - siblings who believe 'blood' is a valid reason for me to repeatedly provide them money and shelter after their bad decisions leave them destitute - now won't talk to me, angry at the audacity that I should refuse them. They lay on the guilt and talk poorly about me to others.

I am working hard to refuse the "gifts" that are offered to me every single day. If people go away because I don't take their gifts? Good riddance. Because you know who is happier for the change? I am. And that's refreshing.

## You're The Island, And She's The Seagull

*By leftajar.*

[Article link.](#)

Guys, the #1 mistake that men make is projecting their own traits onto women.

Getting shit done, which is squarely the domain of men, requires teamwork and alliances. Loyalty and trustworthiness are the literal CURRENCY of male relationships. Think about that for a moment.

Women simply. Are. Not. Loyal.

Super-high SMV guys [are rapping about it.](#)

Towards that end, I've developed a useful metaphor: the Island/Seagull concept.

As a man, YOU ARE AN ISLAND in the middle of the ocean. The better your SMV, the cooler your island. More food sources, better weather... generally a rockin' place for a seagull to hang out.

If your island really kicks ass, the seagull might stay there forever.

HOWEVER.

Seagulls can fly. They're designed for it. If they catch whiff of a better island, and they think they can make the journey, they'll go. Period.

The corollary to this is: it is USELESS to try to convince a seagull to stay there. Because fuck you, they can just flap their wings and adios.

All you can do is make the island a place where seagulls would really want to hang out.

Also, it's absolute lunacy to give a seagull domain over your island. Because they'll just eat all the food until there's none left, and shit everywhere. When there's nothing left to take? Adios, on to the next island. You'll just be a barren, shitty rock on the open water.

BTW, do you lift yet? You should go do that.

# Don't Just Make Her Do What You Want. Make Her Want To

*By Archiwinger.*

[Article link.](#)

I made a comment last night in the married Red Pill sub that I really think ought to be elaborated on here, because it's something that doesn't always get discussed head on, and sometimes gets lost among other points.

When we talk about interactions with women and all of the things we employ – raising our value (physically, financially, socially), implementing "game," implementing "dread game," and so forth – the typical end result is to get a woman to do what we want. Usually sex or some other behavior that demonstrates submission to our leadership. That's a win, right? That's validating. When a woman does what we want due to who we are, what we're like, and how we behaved, we won, right? Honestly, I think that's a little incorrect. Not entirely wrong, mind you. Just kind of like viewing things when the camera lens is out of focus.

The goal is not for women do what we want. The goal is for women to want what we want.

It's a subtle difference, but a very important one.

If you pay a prostitute for sex, then you got a woman to do what you wanted, didn't you? Not really, because it wasn't sex that you wanted. It wasn't even free sex that you wanted. It was desire. You didn't want sex, itself. At least not only sex. You wanted a woman to want to have sex with you. Because that's good sex. That's validating.

The same is true if we swap out legal tender for different kinds of currency. If your girlfriend sucks and you attempt to try out some dread game and, whoops, you don't have a mind for subtleties or critical reading and accidentally blackmail the living fuck out of her, she might be desperately afraid you're going to dump her and kick her out of your apartment and on to the street. She might even fuck you out of fear to avoid that fate. Now you have a woman trying to manipulate you with sex, just like you manipulated her into sex. Neither one of you is happy or satisfied. The sex probably sucks, too.

Likewise, if a woman is nagging the hell out of you and being a generally disrespectful bitch, and you attempt to withdraw emotionally, and whoops, you accidentally become a raging, threatening, pissy asshole, your woman might think, "Shit, I just wanted him to leave the toilet seat down. Why is he acting like this? I don't want to deal with this any more, so I'll just shut up." She might even fuck you just to calm you down. Once again, you have a woman trying to manipulate you with sex, just like you manipulated her into sex. You're both unhappy and unsatisfied. And the sex sucks.

We don't just want our women to do what we want. We want them to want what we want. And that's a lot harder.

A woman will submit to you when you're a man worth submitting to. She will ride you all night long and let you plow her like a caveman if you're a man worth fucking. She will let you father her children, lead her family, plan all of your dates, handle all of your affairs, and trust in your judgment, but only if you're a man worthy of her trust. If you're a man who actually has worthwhile judgment. She's not going to hand the reins of her life to just anybody, and especially not the reins of her children's lives. You have to be worth a shit. But if you're worth a shit, you might have a dozen women lining up to turn their lives over to you, and all you have to do is say yes.

When we proudly declare "AWALT" (All [or at least mostly all] Women Are Like That), this is usually something we say in anger, when we're talking about a woman's propensity for selfishness, evil, and general disrespectful cunt bitch



behavior. But AWALT works the other way, too. If you're a man worth fucking, a man worth following, and a man worth giving your life to, women won't just do what you want – they'll want to do what you want. Your happiness will matter to them, and they'll want to please you. [Mostly] All Women Are Like That, too.

# Every Man Must Always Follow The Rule

*By dallz\_beep.*

[Article link.](#)

The Red Pill has all sorts of scientific studies, anecdotes, wisdom, bro-theory, and public commentary. But what should you do? Here's the most practical advice I can give in a single sentence. Introducing: The Rule.

The Rule: If she doesn't put out, then neither do you.

Or, more crudely phrased: Either fuck me, or fuck you.

Always follow The Rule and no woman will ever take advantage of you.

Explanation:

Most people here have listened to Patrice O'Neal. Once thing he pointed out is how men undervalue themselves. We might fuck women's bodies, but they fuck our time, our money, our love, our attention, commitment, energy, validation, support, protection, status, etc. Relationships tend to be a far better deal for them, even if you do get sex. Yet plenty of men "put out" the way women want even without getting any sex! We call these men nice guys/blue pillers/orbiters/beta bux. I call them easy sluts. They put out what women want for free, because they don't value or respect themselves.

How do you avoid being taken advantage of? By remembering The Rule: if they don't put out, then neither do you.

That's it. No more orbiting. No more beta bux. No more one-sided

relationships... unless it's you getting free sex and investment from her (they do it to us all the time, so don't think twice about doing it back).

It's shocking that The Rule should even need to be pointed out. Comcast cable internet aside, who pays for something, doesn't get it, and continues to pay for it? (That's for the American readers here.)

If every man followed The Rule, as I believe they should, society would immediately begin to fix itself. "Independent" women would actually need to be independent.

Quick rant: Some people criticize MGTOW, saying most of them are incel. So what? If you don't get any, then not giving any in return is the perfect response. They are following The Rule. Of course we as a community want to help out our fellow man, but let's face it, we can't all be alpha males. Being Mr. Alpha Fux might be better, but for those who are set in their unsexy ways, MGTOW > beta orbiter any day of the week.

Anyone who tells you that you should give women what they want, for free and unreciprocated, is your enemy. They're trying to make you into an easy, disrespected slut with no dignity. Fellow men, keep your legs closed and don't give women jack shit unless you're getting something out of it for yourself (i.e., pussy). It isn't selfish, nor is it misogyny; it's simply fair.

When dealing with women, never put out unreciprocated and they will never take advantage of you again.

TL;DR: The optimal attitude towards women you want to bang is The Rule: if you don't put out, then neither do I.

In other words: either fuck me, or fuck you.

Nice guys = disrespected sluts, putting out for nothing in return.

EDIT: The Rule is within the context of sexual strategy, which is what this subforum is about. I'm specifically referring to men who want to have sex with women. Of course there are other ways of interacting with women. I'm talking about getting laid here. Foolishly, I assumed this was obvious.

## Be a Closed Book

*By fluviant.*

[Article link.](#)

There's a lot of talk about how the man should be the prize here at TRP. Women in this day and age, in Western Civilization, are so used to being pedestalized that they get a shock to their system when a man breaks the norm of bending to a woman's will. The shock, which may sound bad at first, induces a strong sense of tingles. There are (or should be, at least) plenty of field reports and Red Pill examples posted about guys here doing this after first swallowing The Red Pill and "seeing instant results."

For a quick example, I was recently at a party. One of the guys there is an überbeta when dealing with his very bitchy girlfriend with whom I haven't had so much as an introduction's worth of interaction. I was talking with a friend when she butted her way in. Trying to be a part of this two-man boys' club. My buddy and I, who has a semblance of TRP in him, basically told her that we weren't interested in what she had to say. After the rejection, she said, "well excuuuuuuse me!" \*bitchy laugh accompanied by her storming off\* As she got up to walk away, I responded, "You're excused." Stopped her dead in her tracks. She looked back at me with a face of "OMG I can't believe a guy would say that to me but I really, really, really like it!" and said verbatim, "fluviant, I like you! You're really funny!" Shock to the system. This chick has been waiting for a long time to be put in her place.

For the average man (read: beta male), a woman is an opportunity to prove his worth in the sexual market. Betas will essentially unload everything on the woman at first chance. Like verbal diarrhea, it all comes out and repulses the woman. Imagine a guy you just meet who tries to tell you about his life. You couldn't give less of a fuck about this shmuck. He does this with every woman he meets, though.

"How can I impress her? What does she like? Will this work on her to win her over?" This is what women are used to. You all are aware that this is the exact wrong way to approach the subject. The man is the prize.

One way to signal this value is by making the woman work for you. Don't give away information about yourself easily. Hold your cards close to your chest. At a base level, you may think this is a case of not having the time to relay your life story to a woman. But it goes deeper. You value yourself, your characteristics, your life experiences, memories, stories, etc. These things are what you tell people close to you who have enough meaning in your life to have earned the privilege to know you on a personal level. Only people of value with whom you want to associate get this treatment from you.

Set this stage from early on. Refuse to tell her the nitty-gritty about your past. Hold on for dear life until she has earned that privilege of knowing you on a personal level. A woman will sense a "mysterious" vibe when you raise an eyebrow to a question about your upbringing, job, etc. instead of answering with glee. She might even give a light shit-test if she's intrigued. Ignore and deflect the attempt to dig information out of you.

You're a closed book. She has to win your favor and adoration if she wishes to pry you open. And when she starts investing in you sufficiently by giving IOIs (and eventually sex), give her a page's worth of your multi-volume biography. Give her just enough to sate her for the time being. This will keep her hooked. Whenever she tells you you're "closed off," "mysterious," "emotionally unavailable," anything of that sort, tell her that you're a closed book.

She's an open book. What you learn here at TRP is how to identify the roguery of women's sexual strategy. Amused Mastery. You can see right through every act she puts on. It doesn't faze you. It's endearing, adorable, cute. You can read her like an open book. Not only is this little act of hers not fooling you, but you can predict her next move as if her strategy is laid out before you. And, again, tell her you can read her like an open book. This has many positive side-effects: the mystery of "What does he truly think of me?", "He's obviously experienced and must know

what women like", "He's had many women flock to him in the past", etc. You get the idea.

You're a closed book. She's an open book.

You have to be pried open. She doesn't stand a chance at duping you.

Now get out there and make women swoon.

# Never Date A Woman Who Won't Do Sexual Things With You That She Did With Her Other Partners

*By redpilltom.*

[Article link.](#)

I know there is a bit of a divide in the amount of sexual partners that's "acceptable" for a woman. Some say none, some say between 3-8, some say just less than you, some don't care. To each their own, a woman's number count doesn't really matter to me, they'll all lie anyways. Personally, I don't mind women who have experience and can give good sex, I've taken virginites and it was always a bad decision that wasn't fun.

But if you ever, and I mean ever, find out that she did something with an ex that she refuses to do with you, drop her. Drop her fast and drop her hard. This goes from giving it up on X number of dates, to certain sexual acts that you want to do, to threesomes, to the frequency of sex. It is not only the #1 sign of being on the losing end of the AF/BB relationship, but it screams "Oh, well I felt I needed to impress and be good to them, but you seem easy enough that I don't need to put in effort." Do yourself a favor and move on to a woman who sees you as equal or better to the men who used to fuck her. Don't settle for being second best.

For the women who may be getting furious reading this, just imagine what it was like if you knew your boyfriend was rich. Imagine that he always brought his ex's out on really nice vacations, nice house, bought them really nice gifts, treated them like princesses, etc. But he refused to do any of that with you, he wanted to be frugal with you even though he has more than enough money to treat you. Wouldn't you feel a little bit weird about it? Wouldn't you question why you were different, why he didn't care to treat you the same? Why the sudden change?



# Treat Women Like Children

*By GayLubeOil.*

[Article link.](#)

One of the key tenants of Red Pill is that women act like children. There are many reasons for this. Women are not held accountable for their actions growing up, so they are completely new to the concept of accountability. If a woman sucks a dick, she tells a really long story about how she was put in a dick sucking situation. Women don't really believe in their own agency. That's why they often believe in [cosmic forces](#) like fate and patriarchy, because nothing they ever do is their fault. If women don't take responsibility for their actions, someone else has to. That's why we have to [treat women like children](#). Obviously, some woman is going to read this have a cascade of feels and then deal with said feels in [the most immature way possible](#).

While Red Pill theory has definitely [harsh](#) view of women, the practical application isn't as anti-social as our [detractors](#) believe.

One of the things that children suck at, is regulating their internal state. They're [too little](#) to know if their hungry, sleepy or if they need to go for a walk. When a child throws a tantrum its often not about the toy, there is often some underlying issue you need to take care of.

As stupid as its sounds you can completely avoid a lot of arguments by ignoring everything she says and going for the underlying problem. [I can't believe you never told me that you X!](#) Aww is she hungry. She gets this way when she's [hungry](#). Then just feed her some Greek yogurt or something, and the problem will go away. Or just take her for a walk around the block, because she;s just anxious from being at work the entire day.

Red Pill holds that male leadership is the cornerstone of a good relationship. Sometimes that means treating her like a child.

## Featured Comment

*By trumatness.*

My wife deals with million dollar accounts and is leaned on heavily by super ultra serious business men for information that is imperative for formulating their business intelligence. She really is a brilliant woman and there is no doubt I am better for knowing her.

Having said all that, she constantly has to combat emotion in order to continue to make rational choices when dealing with clients. Early on in our relationship she was constantly saying "Because I'm a woman..." this and "Because I'm a woman... that."

She had firmly planted in her head this victim complex, that every person she dealt with in these male dominated circles had a bias against her because she was a woman. She observed that women populated support roles - worker bees - as she called it and men largely comprised the decision making roles. If she tried to contribute substantive perspectives to decision makers she was often met with resistance. She verbalized her frustration to me by saying I'm being told "Just go stand in the corner with your skirt on and we'll tell you when you are needed."

Obviously those words weren't being uttered to her, but that was her interpretation of the reactions she received.

I pointed out a local woman in her field who's a very successful business woman - and asked her why this woman is taken extremely seriously by her

business peers despite this bias she says is pervasive.

"Well she's a real bitch," my wife said. While this may or may not be true the perception among women is in order for them to break the glass ceiling they have to be cunts.

I told her she had to shed this victim complex. "But it's not faa-iiir!" she told me. She had a bad case of solipsism and victimhood running. Through the course of our intimate discussions, I told her basically that men experience professional difficulty and lack of fairness all the time. Not every man gets promoted to management. Not every man gets taken as seriously as they want to by managers. I related many of my personal stories about being shit on by bosses.

Everyone gets shit on by bosses - it's called paying your dues. It has nothing to do with gender. What was holding her back was her personal victim complex - not bias.

Case in point - she has a client - biggest in the firm. The owner is a wise old fox - a Southern gentleman with largely a traditional view on life. Over the years, he has by and large defaulted all serious business conversations with the senior partner in her firm - who is male - even though she does all the work for him.

For a long time, this outraged her. Why wasn't she taken seriously? She expressed to me that she no longer wanted to handle this account because the old guy was a sexist asshole. This would have not been the wisest career move.

I remember speaking with her that night. Basically I told her what the man's personal opinion was of women was non-consequential. If he's sexist shitbag - who cares? You smile and work the account. You do what you have to do to keep the checks from his office continuing to roll in. Then when you get paid... You laugh all the way to the bank. If he wants to have austere convos over lunch with the senior partner - who he's known for 30-40 years let him - after all he's writing the checks isn't he?

I was a waiter for many years. Many, many customers treated me like shit. I had an iron smile through it all and gained glorious satisfaction from people giving me 20-30% even though they shit on me during service. It's not fucking personal - it's business. The question always is "What do I need to do to keep getting paid in this situation?" It's never "What does the customer/client need to do to make me happy?"

This concept was like a revelation to my wife. Is that how men think?

Fuck yeah it is.

So the next day the senior partner calls her into his office and asked her what was up with the account and what was her temperature on it..

"I just have to do whatever it takes to keep him writing checks to us," she told him.

"I knew I could count on you," the senior partner said.

That moment was like a break in my wife's mindset and her perspective dramatically changed.

Fast forward to now... It's my wife going on these business lunches and talking shop with the guys from this company - not the senior partner. Why? Because my wife shed her victim complex and focused completely on the task at hand. Even though old habits die hard, she's able to recognize when emotion is interfering with logic.

She'll bounce shit off me and I'll tell her my opinion and that has been a very successful formula for her.

I think this story ties in perfectly with what GLO is saying about women failing to recognize their personal agency. Women are not categorically inferior to men intellectually. They have all the ability in the world to be successful and achieve

professionally and personally.

What holds them back is a lack of personal agency. In the business world, this becomes a glass ceiling. In the world of sexual strategy, dating and personal relationships - the vacuum of personal agency has to be filled by men, because men desire relationships with women. This manifests in a myriad of ways - from biased family courts - to the moving goalpost of rape definition - to high divorce rates - and so on. Men are reacting to this increasing lack of agency on the part of women, by treating relationships more casually. Men are becoming more self-interested because their increased agency increases their risk. Some men are going their own way and not engaging in male-female relationships at all.

GLO playfully (as usual) says the solution is to treat women like crying toddlers and look past their whining and seek out root cause (Greek yogurt and walk). He's mocking women to get them to see their own folly (heh negging). My solution was to have a series of well made points - exemplified by personal experience. Once I convinced my wife to put what I was telling her into practice and she discovered the immediate success in it - she was a believer. Then again, my wife is probably more pragmatic than most.

## Be A Good Person If You Want But It Won't Attract Women

*By insickness.*

[Article link.](#)

When I was first turned on to game almost ten years ago, it was because I finally understood its power. I began to study and practice game. It was an exciting time in my life, full of hope and wonder.

At the same time, I still clung to my nice guy ways. I always believed I was a good person. Noble. Kind. Honest. Caring. I'd make a great father. I'm a good human being who is considerate of his fellow man.

I grew up as the nicest of nice guys. As a nice guy, a lot of my self-esteem was constructed around what a good person I was. It didn't matter that women rejected me, they just couldn't see how great I was. There was something wrong with those women that they didn't appreciate a nice guy like me. My self-righteousness was the only consolation I had.

As I started to go out and approach women, I put myself out there. Due to my immense approach anxiety, it was one of the hardest things I would ever do. It took years to get to the point where I could start up a conversation with a woman without my heart racing and my blood pressure rising.

Along the way, I clung to my nice guy ideals. I tried to have it both ways. "I can be alpha and still be 100% honest with women," I told myself. I don't need to be an asshole. An alpha can still be kind and caring.

I couched my new found skills in socially acceptable verbiage. Instead of, "Women are attracted to assholes," I would say, "Women want a challenge." I still

believed women need a deep connection to have sex. After all, it made sex better for me.

I was a Red Pill apologist. I tried to reconcile my blue pill upbringing with my Red Pill discoveries. I protested from the rooftops, "You don't have to be an asshole to get women! You can be a great guy." I wanted to have it both ways.

As I experimented more, I gradually started to realize what actually works with women. I began to lose my naiveté. More and more--mostly due to my horniness--I began to mess around on the fringes of blue pill and deeper into Red Pill. I cut out every nice guy part of me I could. I realized it made women even more attracted to me. The less I got to know them, the more they wanted me. The more stand-offish and dickish I was, the more attracted they were.

There's been a shitty trend here in r/theredpill. You could see it in r/seduction as it got more popular and mainstream. The advice is watered down so that the nicest of nice guys can read it and still get something. It's the kind of dating advice you'd read in GQ. Very little edge. Everything is watered down to socially acceptable, feminist-approved messages. Have good body language. Be a leader. Take initiative.

It's not that this advice won't help you with women but it's the type of advice that helps guys to continue doing 99% of what they are doing wrong around women: being nice. Being nice was (and still is) a cancerous growth at the core of my interactions with women. I've spent years expelling and ridding of myself of automatically doing what I 'should' do around women. And I still have a long way to go.

We see many ugly truths in this sub. And it often seems misogynistic or like we're angry at women. We're not angry. We've just found out that contrary to how much we want to believe, women aren't attracted to the guy who walks old ladies across the street. She may like you as a person, but it doesn't make her want to FUCK you. There are many dark and unsettling qualities that attract women to men and game is about reflecting those qualities back to women.

I'm still a good person. I still walk old ladies across the street. But I'm not naive anymore. I wouldn't tell a woman about it. I would probably hide it. I know that when it comes to women's attraction, no good deed ever goes unpunished.



## Men Opting Out of The Sexual Marketplace

*By YouDislikeMyOpinion.*

[Comment link](#) from a [larger article](#).

Here's something to ponder: Maybe men of intellect and power individually came to the collective conclusion that men have been fighting a losing battle against women's nature for millennia. The opportunity cost became too high. The best option presented itself. Money, power, and personal gain became king amongst none other. And we now see the results.

What is a fact is that throughout the 20th century, men in a position of power who are able to affect the steering of the ship began to slowly back away from altering the costs and benefits associated with the cost benefit analysis that women use to make behavioral choices.

Post WWII, the world entered into an increased exponential integration stage. In the 1970-1990s, while news became more and more conglomerated, the laymen had no forum in which to deliberate together. Enter the Internet, the forum for the layman was created. PUA went mainstream in 05-06. Every girl knows about PUA now. RP went mainstream just recently. You could say that RP is a deeper PUA. PUA showed you what to do, RP shows you what exactly to do and why it works. Even I am reaching what seem to be hardcoded limits on human behavior when I explore them in women. With every personal failed attempt to disprove RP philosophies, I prove them even more by adding another RP data point. Men around the world have had about 8-9 years to collectively debate the merits of their philosophies of women. This is what we've accomplished. If RP is beyond a doubt the final wall to hit in terms of philosophies, then how long will it take for the collective to deliberate to the real truth of female behavior beyond a doubt? It's a learning process and we are all a part of it. We could be talking about a few years

here.

My bets are hedged on biology. Should society as a whole be able to transcend biological nature for mental augmentation, then I will happily merge with that society. Biological limitations define a very solid constraint for human actions. Theoretically everyone can transcend their biological purpose. In reality Winston Churchill's words describe this limitation well "The best argument against democracy is a five-minute conversation with the average voter." Theoretically, every citizen in the UK could be a productive member of a democracy. Theoretically, every girl could transcend her biological nature. The best argument against that is a five minute observation of the whole of a girl's past romantic actions. Do I think that women have the mental capacity figure "it" out before they are 25? No.

Where do I stand? The entire real value of a woman for me is hedged on her being my equal. She must be as good as me. I'm trustworthy, she should be trustworthy, etc. Because I feel that is right. I want no part in a real lifelong commitment without this and I have thrown out unicorn type girls who were 1 SMV point below and 1-2 Intelligence value points below, although at that point of consideration SMV wasn't of concern to me as long as she turned me on enough.

What do I see as the *Sexodus Part 2*? Men on a large scale opting out of the belief that mental ability supersedes biological imperative. Once that conclusion is apparent and accepted, women's limitation becomes definable. Whereas in the belief that mental ability supersedes biological imperative, any ideas seem rational, true love is possible and it is not based SMV, life drive, manliness, etc. What happens when women's limitation becomes definable? Calculated decisions can be made from that conclusion. Leading to *Sexodus Part 3*, either women pick bring themselves up to an equal level, or men opt out of true lifelong commitment. I can't guess what part 4 will be, but I'm sure virtual reality and sex alternatives will be a big player for a large part of the population.

That was what I wrote a response in another thread.

The relationship type that is reinforced in The Red Pill community is the captain - first mate type. You find a great girl who wants what you have to offer. You lead her into a proper dynamic. You are a rock and hold the reins. This is exactly the type of relationship where you are 1+ points above the woman in SMV / Intelligence. Her hypergamy is satiated, and you have to constantly put in work to maintain this. If you'll remember there were posts on TRP talking about how getting sick affects the delicate balance.

Think that's where it ends? No. There are still more things to deal with 5, 10 years down the line. That one coworker that she has that she clicks with. It's not her fault if she develops feelings for him, it's just biology doing what it's meant to do. You have to deal with that. The tantrums, female emotions are a fickle bitch. We all know how fickle they are, we've all been in a situation where everything is working very nicely and the turbulence in a relationship is caused by something from her side. Dealing with shit tests.

The market for pussy is a sellers market and this gives power to women. What women want from a man is already a price that is astronomically high. I'm supposed to do all these things for some mediocre pussy? Are you out of your mind? I am supposed to bend to her demands just to have a girl who is loyal and nice to be around for the most part? Rollo has a wife, I'm sure she's below him in SMV. If I recall correctly they married when they were young and his partner count is relatively low. It works? Sure, but look at the price that he is paying. He gave her his longterm commitment. She's below him in SMV, he plays his part and she plays her part, and her hypergamy is satisfied. But think about how much work playing his part involves. Most of you have been in a long term relationship. You remember how it is. A lot of it is work. I like to call a spade a spade. If Rollo wasn't who he is, his wife would leave.

Let's also reveal another spade and elephant in the room. From a 2013 Forbes article

*That means only 1.7% of all billionaires are self-made women and that only 17% of the women on our list got there without inheriting a big chunk. Plus of*

*those 24, the vast majority of whom are from the U.S. or China, 15 co-founded their businesses with husbands or siblings. Among the 9 who went on their own are Oprah Winfrey and Spanx's Sara Blakely. In contrast, most male billionaires are entirely self-made.*

0.017.17(9/24)= 0.1% of all billionaires are self made women who didn't inherit a big chunk of money or co-found their business with their family.

On the subject of members of each sex in the top echelon of society, men blow women out of the water. This isn't coincidence. These are real, visible effects of the differences between the sexes.

While the analogy that I am about to write will not be the best analogy, it is there to show a general idea of hypergamy's inner workings.

The men at the top echelons of society outnumber the women. Hypergamy would show that the best women would gravitate to the best men. The female 10s would hook a male 10. Once the female 10s run out, the 9s would go for the male 10s. Once the male 10s run out the 9s would go for the 9s, and so on. This will affect the chain all the way down to where most males stand.

What does this mean? There will always be someone better than you for that woman at the same SMV.

Is it really worth all that work to go the route that Rollo did? LTR -> Captain - First Mate -> hypergamy satiated long term commitment. Sure it may be fun. I've had my dealings with a similar situation recently and the opportunity cost of putting your foot forward in that regard is the sacrifice of many good things in your life. Remember how you don't really care about what a girl thinks of you? The mental satisfaction and calm that comes from that? Well, now you will care. You have to, it's part of the equation. You have to analyze what she is thinking, what you are thinking, how you will react. You need to do that with plates as well, but it's a split-second analysis that requires almost no effort.

Your time and your mental effort are markets. Think SMV, you wouldn't fuck a 5 if you are an 8. Your time and mental effort have a price. If I'm thinking about relationships or a oneitis, it takes away from other things I could be thinking about. Especially if you have good things going on in your life and you actually enjoy your time for the most part. If I have some spare time, maybe I'll watch a video showing the intricacies of filming rally sports using drone cameras, I'll learn something and watch a great video at the same time. Maybe you can start on that business idea that you've been planning for a while. It's no surprise that a lot of men coming out of a breakup start working out and increasing their salary at a much faster pace than before, it's because their time and mental effort can now be spent on other things. That is the opportunity cost with time and mental effort.

When we are looking at future trends, the best predictor has never been what betas do. The market deciders are alphas because of their position in the SMV marketplace, the rest will trickle down.

We aren't even close to being in the upper echelon of society, but all of us here have goals and a lot of us are going to make it into very solid positions in life. The conclusions that we come to in regards to women will carry forward with us in life and will be a force in the future sexual market place.

I don't know about where you stand, but I'm slowly becoming a real MGTOW in the sense that I am considering to seriously go my own way for a long time. It's not that I can't get a woman or relationship. I can and I have. I probably could have substantially extended the last "relationship" I had with a girl to about 8 months. Her SMV was very high and she was dating millionaires before me. It was nice and I was testing to see if I needed to game her. First week was great, then it became apparent that I did need to put work into it as does Rollo. As the incentives for a "relationship" started vanishing, I decided to drop her and replate her in a month or two. I'm not going to find someone as nice as her anytime soon, she's the closest to unicorn that I could find, so I chose to try that with her to actually give it a shot, I needed to personally know beyond a doubt that it doesn't really exist. Else I would regret it in the future, missing an opportunity like that. It would be nice to be in a relationship with a sane, sexual, good girl who actually has potential to grow with

you on your level and not underneath you.

I see other girls as chumps now. That girl had a brain, other girls not so much in comparison. Nothing really of value there except for having a good time and some pussy. No real incentives for any commitment. Actually there are incentives against commitment. I'll just keep spinning plates, having a main.

I see *Sexodus* Part 2-3 being men seriously opting out of commitments in general. Once that happens on a large scale it will have serious impacts on the future.

# **Guides to Success in Dating and Relationships**

## Guide to Social Game

*By no\_face.*

[Article link.](#)

Many of you are fairly new and most of the standard advice will make no sense to you:

*"Cure your oneitis, bro. Go sleep with 10 girls."*

Seriously? You have oneitis exactly because you have no one to sleep with. The above piece of advice is useless to anyone who isn't already successful.

*"Cure approach anxiety. Take four girls to the club. Bitches love pre-selection. You'll be drowning in pussy."*

Again, useless advice. If you already are able to take four girls, you are not looking to cure your approach anxiety.

Many of you have no starting point and are wondering how the heck to start. Going to clubs is getting you shut down by overactive bitch shields. Girls simply use you for drinks in bars. Women hurry away from you when you try day-game. So what to do? Where to even start?

I posted an outline of how to swallow the pill in [/r/TheRedPill/comments/2l52zg/a\\_7\\_step\\_guide\\_to\\_swallowing\\_the\\_pill/](/r/TheRedPill/comments/2l52zg/a_7_step_guide_to_swallowing_the_pill/).

Roughly, the steps are:

1. Lifting/physical fitness: Strictly speaking, you could probably do



bodyweight exercises as well. There are so many resources on youtube and bodybuilding websites that I don't want to take up a lot of space on this, except to emphasize not to injure yourself and improve posture first.

2. Style: [/r/malefashionadvice](#) is a great resource, study it well.
3. Mission: This is something you need to figure out on your own. Look at examples from people you admire.
4. Frame: I'll create a separate post on this.
5. Game: My favorite game is social circle game. Even the biggest loser has a social circle and should be in a position to regularly interact with women.

The main components of social circle are:

- School/work
- Friends of family / family of friends / friends of friends
- Shared activities such as hiking club, gym, etc.
- Any place where you visit frequently and see the same people including your favorite coffee shop, bus stop, etc.

Step by step instructions for social circle game:

5.1. Go into monk mode: WTF does monk mode have to do with game? Its very simple. Monk mode is an excellent way to learn how to ignore women. Not how to pretend to ignore women, but how to actually ignore them without being perturbed. And why do you learn to ignore women? Because attention is the only currency women know and you need to learn how to stop giving it away for free.

Monk mode also removes you from the radar, allowing you unfettered time to improve yourself. When you come back from monk mode with a better body, more interesting life and better sense of style and a rock solid frame, [mah nigga](#), you will be noticed.

Monk mode also tells you that you don't need a woman to be happy or content. You can live -- no, thrive without women. You are the one giving her a chance at a happier life. This builds confidence.

5.2. Confidence: Confidence is the precise knowledge of what you can do and what you cannot do. For example, you may be confident that you can squat 150 lbs and also be confident you cannot squat 300lb. The clear knowledge of what you can and cannot do enables precise decision making and prioritization and is of high survival value. When it comes to interaction with women, knowing what you can do to her and what you cannot is confidence. If you aren't sure if you can kiss her when you can, you are timid. If you put your arm around her when you shouldn't, you are creepy. Interacting with women is a skill you learn by practice and develop confidence until it becomes natural.

5.3. Improved SMV: You first need to accept that you are probably in the 4-6 range, which is average. 0 is dead, 1-3 are people with severe problems such as peeling, wart infested or otherwise troubled skin, grotesque appearance or deformed bodies, missing limbs, morbid obesity, etc. 7-9 are what we consider attractive. 10 is a theoretical maximum. Lifting makes your body more attractive. How many times have you seen a woman whose face was ugly but had a hot body and you thought "butterface, but I'd do her." Women think the same. Having a great body will make up for baldness, shortness (to some degree), ethnic background, etc. The key thing is that women will give you a chance, instead of automatic shutdowns. Having a unique sense of style makes you stand out and noticed and makes women curious. This combined with a good body will actually often make women open you. Once you begin interaction, a rock solid frame will build attraction. I give one point to each of these attributes, so that a 4 dude will grow into a 7 and a 6 will grow into a 9.

5.4. Reading signals: The first sign that you will notice as your SMV improves is that women will hold your gaze. If they hold your gaze for more than two seconds, its safe to approach. Nothing may happen, but you won't be shut down. The second signal you will notice is that women will smile or if they are with a girlfriend, they may turn away and giggle and look back at you. This is a better signal, you can approach will boldness.

5.5. Approach: Note that women in your social circle know about you and if

you have had recent string of successes or improved SMV, the women are talking about you. So you have a window of opportunity where you can approach almost any women. My advice is to approach all of them. Start by saying hi and making smalltalk. Your goal is to get used to approaching and talking, not to have sex. Approach women you would not fuck if you want to start with. Eventually, have lunch or coffee with everyone. When word gets around that this guy is very social, women will not think much if you approach them or no one (including you) will care if an invitation is declined. Women in your social circle are most likely to agree to go to coffee with you, especially if you are known to take everyone to coffee. Repeated asking women out and taking them to coffee with no sexual intention will take the edge off the anxiety and you will grow more and more confident when talking to women. Dividing your attention among multiple women is the best prevention and cure to oneitis.

5.6. Escalation: Occasionally, you and one of your coffee dates will have moment of connection. This is a good time to escalate. If you have never touched, hold her hand. If you have already hugged, go for the kiss. For the purposes of escalation, her social status (i.e. boyfriend, etc) does not matter. But ensure that no one she knows is around. Eventually, things will get physical enough that you two become intimate.

5.7. Chasing: Do not chase! Repeat, do not chase!! Your interaction with them should leave them wanting more and they should contact you almost every time. Ignoring a girl after showing her a wonderful time makes you irresistible. If she does not chase you, move on. If no one chases you, work on your interactions, be fun to be around. (This is a separate topic). Always be willing to let go.

5.8. Grow the circle: Always look to grow your social circle. Meet friends of friends and then their friends. Meet people through your mission. The larger your social circle, the more people you meet and less you care about the outcome with any individual girl. My suggestion is to also take guys out for coffee or beer. It will help you grow your circle.

General notes: Note that social circle game is slower than a club/bar or day

game. In a club you have an hour or two to do what you can stretch over weeks in your social circle. Social circle game also enables opportunities for long time frame pre-selection, show of leadership, etc.

Do not approach any girl who is in a relationship with a male friend of yours. Its always more useful to have the man as an extender of your social circle. "Bro's before ho's"

If a girl recoils from your advances, pretend you never did it and continue from stage before you escalated. Often, she will ignore it too. Next her, she's not into you. Surprisingly, some of these girls may end up chasing you but you should never think of her any more.

# A List of Relationship Green Flags

*By drrrrrrr.*

[Comment link](#) from a [larger article](#).

## Green Flags

1. She works out without wearing make up, can speak intelligently about her fitness goals, and doesn't need to be a part of a group like CF to go workout.
2. She asks questions and while you are speaking, you can look into her eyes and see she's actually paying attention. Most girls are thinking about what to yammer next (as are most betas, both parties are always thinking of how to make themselves sound cool, which is why dates suck so hard for betas). Tell her a story, she asks good questions. You talk about a hike you took, she'll ask what it was like at the top and let you answer rather than rushing to relate the story back to her and some stupid shit she did.
3. She doesn't know what Reddit is and doesn't have a tumblr or photography blog or Instagram. She uses social media sparingly.
4. She has actual interests of her own, which she brings up when you ask, but not just to blab about them.
5. She flirts well. Big green flag; she knows how to tilt her head, move her lips, flex her legs, etc. This by no means signifies she is LTR material, but if everything else checks out, it really pays to have this in a LTR. She knows how to rile you up and get you to the point where you want to just rage-fuck her. This is something that is instinctive; contrary to Reddit belief, a girl doesn't gain this by fucking the whole frat house. It's a natural part of the masculine-feminine dance that some women naturally understand better than others.
6. An extension to the previous point - her shit testing is FUN, not obnoxious. It's flirty shit tests, shit tests that make you hard because you know as you

dunk them you're breaking down that resistance. All girls shit test if they are attracted, but some do it in a way that is arousing for both parties, like the two of you are playing a highly skilled ping pong match.

7. She can cook. Enough said; it shows that she cares about herself and her health, AND girls who cook tend to have a good relationship with their mama. Cooking is the ultimate feminine skill and it's a green flag if she's competent at it, and a greener flag if she brings soul and artistry to that shit. It is not about the food, it's about what cooking says about her. It says that she was sane enough to stick at a non-fun, non-cool activity until she got good at it. AKA she has discipline.
8. She's sweet, not jaded. She believes the world is a beautiful place and she believes in the idea of love. All that shit. I love it. I want her to be an idealist, I want her to be stupidly un-cynical. I don't want her to be cold and calculating, I don't want her to know that love is chemicals and people are selfish, and she's only with me for SMV. I don't want her to have this biting way with words or this harsh, rugged individualistic way of navigating the world. I don't want her to be like me. I don't want her to have trauma or suffering or hatred or anger or any type of negative emotion fueling her. This is the most important - I want her to be unspoiled by ravages of the pessimistic, cruel world we live in. I want her to believe in the dream of love and raising a sweet family like her fucking grandma did. I have enough gritty realism to guide the two of us, I don't need it coming from her.

And BTW, this is reason #2 you don't fuck with high sex count women. They have all lost #8. It's all gone by the 4th or 5th relationship / dick. They no longer believe; their dorky girlish dream about the world they can build with a man they love has been replaced with baggage, snark, and fake, ugly imitations of masculine behaviors that they use as defense mechanisms.

## "Take My Breath Away"

By diskotanssi.

[Article link.](#)

If you ever come to a point where you think you're being too aggressive with a girl, keep doing what you do. Let me tell you the tale of numerous experiences that have completely reshaped how I view women and their sexuality.

After ending an LTR earlier this summer, I went on a Tinder binge and had dates lined up regularly on Mondays through Thursdays for several weeks. It came to a point where every date was so methodical, that within an hour of meeting and shooting the shit, the chick and I would be sucking face in public. I didn't give a fuck if there were other people nearby, it just had to happen right there and then. Plus if a girl is a bad kisser, that's a deal breaker for me and I usually end up cutting the date short after that. These girls would come from all walks of life: teachers, receptionists, accountants, artists, recruiters, you name it. The one thing they all had in common is their undying love for literally having their breath taken away while being kissed. My methods for the fail-proof make out session where every chick gets absolutely wet is to have both of your hands on each side of her neck, manoeuvring her head left and right as you kiss her, with your fingers pulling a bit of her hair and massaging the back of her head. Slowly, but assertively, move either one of your hands to the middle of her neck and start applying slight pressure. We are not talking bedroom choking just yet, but this sets a nice pace of what's to come in the next few hours and days for her.

Absolutely, positively, 100% of girls that I did this too were gasping for air in the most sexual way possible. It was like an instant switch for the bedroom eyes, where she would look at me like a hungry lioness and start reaching for my cock. At this point is where I stop dead in my tracks and continue with the conversation,

usually by taking a sip of my drink first. You can just feel her heart about to jump out of her chest, it's beating so fast, that if I wanted to take her right there and then in the bar booth, I probably could. The revelation came to me last night after another first date with a chick where she said she absolutely loved how I took her breath away. At this point I got lost inside my head while remembering [this song](#) from my childhood.

The message has been there for us men all along. Women want you to take their breath away. LITERALLY. There is no underlying message about wooing her with flowers, or romantic gestures. It's that simple. Take her fucking breath away and enjoy the fruits your labour shortly thereafter.



# The Definitive Guide To Shit Tests

*By bsutansalt.*

[Article link.](#)

The issue of what's popularly referred to as "shit tests", aka fitness tests, comes up often enough I've decided to write up a post so we can put this issue to rest for a while.

When it comes right down to it shit tests are typically women's way of flirting. Women generally do not shit test men they have no interest in, so if you're getting them then it's often a good thing. Let's look at what shit tests actually are:

## **Rapport breaks**

Rapport breaks are a type of flirting where women throw you a faux indicator of disinterest to see how you handle it. If you respond in kind then you pass. In essence it is a form of mirroring each other's level of investment, or as they say, like attracts like.

So why are rapport breaks a form of flirting? The main reason is that it gives women a degree of emotional stimulation. Plus there's the fact that most men buckle to women's shit tests and don't respond in kind. This demonstrates a lack of social acumen and emotional maturity. Those who "pass" show they can handle the woman's BS and is "on her level", so to speak. This is where the evolutionary theory comes into play: you're demonstrating her faux negativity doesn't phase you and that you're an emotionally developed person who isn't going to melt down at the first sign of trouble. Ergo you'll be able to protect her when threats to her safety emerge.

In short, when women bust on you (could be a shit test or otherwise) you should reply in kind. When it comes right down to it this is the core essence of flirting.

My go-to advice for how to deal with shit tests are as follows:

1. Agree & amplify (to absurdity)
2. Change the subject
3. Ignore her shit test completely
4. Pressure Flip
5. The Nuclear Option (reserved for women who aren't flirting and are giving shit tests because they're deliberately trying to tool you, or worse)
6. Command respect

Note: Every single one of these is a form of rapport break.

Agree & amplify is usually the preferred method because they're often fun (read: stimulating) and non-reactionary. In my experience you'll get better mileage out A&A as well as it's less likely to blow up in your face/have a negative outcome than the other methods since context does still matter and the others are easier to misapply.

Changing the subject is pretty self-explanatory, as is ignoring her shit test.

Pressure flip is the idea is you're not phased by the question and answer so quickly that now the spotlight is on her, all because you're flipping the script with haste. For example:

Shit test: What kind of car do you drive?

Pressure flip: "Nameofcarhowaboutyou?"

The "Nuclear Option" is when you destroy their self-worth with the notion you do not find them sexually appealing in any way whatsoever. For attractive women this is in all likelihood the worst hit you can inflict on a woman's ego. Anyone

that's broken up with a hottie because her personality is shit knows exactly what I'm talking about. In other words you're nuking their ego/self-esteem from orbit. I strongly recommend reserving this option only for women who are on the offensive and deliberately trying to be a bitch for whatever reason and/or tear you down in front of others.

Commanding respect is especially important for the kind of testing where they're just being an annoyance and generally disrespectful. IMO disrespect should not be tolerated and needs to be nipped in the bud, and is an important way to maintain frame control. You simply need to be firm and treat her like a father would to their child who's being disrespectful. You don't get angry, you just call her on the behavior and let her know clearly that you won't stand for it. In a way this is almost a type of pressure flip. You're taking her negative energy and sliding past it and putting the onus on her to react by changing her approach to the topic. For example:

Her: Nag nag nag.

You: That is disrespectful and I will not tolerate it.

If you haven't read the sidebar material, particularly the Year One posts at The Rational Male, make that your next stop. I strongly recommend reading the writings on Frame Control, of which shit tests are a part of.

# **Be Selfish, Dismissive, Amused, And Communicate Less - The Keys To Success**

*By Archwinger.*

[Article link.](#)

While exchanging text with some of our fine friends over at Purple Pill Debate, I accidentally came up with a four-point summary of the main concepts I've taken from the Red Pill that have resulted in the greatest improvement to my marriage. It actually sounds kind of simple when you lay it out in summary form: be selfish, be dismissive of undesirable behavior, be amused at anger, and communicate less rather than more. Of course, conventional societal teachings tell us that this is a surefire path to divorce and unhappiness. Yet time and time again, in all of our interactions with women, the exact opposite proves true. If you do these four things, you have a good sex life and a good home life. If you do the opposite of these four things, like society tells you to do, you have a sexless relationship with a disrespectful bitch and get cheated on and dumped/divorced.

## **Be selfish**

No woman respects a man who doesn't respect himself. You respect yourself by putting yourself first. By knowing what you want and taking steps to acquire it. By being forward and honest and outright saying what you want. By doing what you want. By not compromising on what you want.

Now obviously, being selfish doesn't mean being a disrespectful ass. Don't skip out on your kid's birthday party to go to the gym. Don't plan beers with your coworkers on your anniversary. You can be a little flexible. You're supposed to think of your woman occasionally. And when you're a guy who generally puts himself first and does what he wants, then on those rare occasions when you do

think of your woman, it's special to her and she values what you've done for her. Conversely, if you're generally a self-sacrificing guy who's always doing shit for her, then nothing you do is special or valued. It's ordinary. In fact, if you ever stop doing all of that shit for her or dip slightly in your self-sacrificing behavior, you've fallen below ordinary and she'll complain.

Don't ask your woman for permission to do anything. Just tell her what you're going to do and when. It's fair for her to know when you're not going to be around/available. So tell her. But don't ask. Your woman's going to complain. She's going to deliberately plan things on top of your gym hour, your professional events after work, your time with your friends, and ask you to cancel things and reschedule things. Tell her no. If she's a bitch about it, mention that you told her what you were doing and when, and tell her to reschedule or cancel her shit.

### **Be dismissive of undesirable behavior**

One piece of advice parents always give is that when your 1-3 year old is throwing a shit storm of a tantrum, walk away. Don't engage them. Engaging them just reinforces their shitty behavior by rewarding it with the attention they're seeking. Something parents often fail to realize, though, is that this same advice is equally applicable when dealing with adults.

When your woman complains about something that is not an important life or death matter, or tries to pick a fight over something, never argue. Because except for those rare cases of actual significance that are easy to recognize, she's not after the solution to her complaint or a resolution to her conflict. She's after validation. Attention. When you respond to a complaint, you validate it. You took something that was trivial and unimportant and treated it like it was a legitimate talking point.

This advice doesn't just extend to bitchy behavior, though. If your woman is blathering on and on about some annoying girl from work and you don't have the time to listen to this or it's just plain bothering you, you don't have to. You can cut her off if you'd like. You can answer with grunts while doing something else. You can refrain from validating this behavior by withdrawing your attention. Obviously,

you should listen to your woman most of the time, if she's holding up her end of the relationship in other respects. This example is just to illustrate that the act of being dismissive can be applied to any undesirable behavior. Not just bitchiness, irrationally denying sex, flirting/chatting with other guys, etc.

### **Be amused at anger**

This is really just a subset of #2, above, but because attempts to argue, complain, and pick fights are most women's first choice of shit test, it warrants its own bullet point. The best possible way to be dismissive is to find something entertaining and amusing. She's trying to shake your frame, get a rise out of you, bring you down to her level, and instead, you derive benefit from her actions, and respond like you would to a child - by responding to the fact that she's communicating and the manner in which she's communicating, rather than addressing the feigned issue she's raising.

If you become angry, defensive, hurt, etc., then the message you've sent to your woman is: "You are more powerful than I am. You have the power to affect my emotional state. I don't decide how I feel. You do. I don't take charge of my life. I just react to shit. I am an unworthy and weak male specimen. Please refrain from having sex with me and find yourself a real man." In fact, if you address the issue at all, you're saying: "You control what is and is not important in our lives. You set my priorities just by talking. You're my boss."

Your woman doesn't want you to get angry. She wants you to remain a solid rock, upon which she can rely. Despite what society will try to tell you, your job is to be the rock that grounds her, not to address her every issue with the whole of your attention and communicate your feelings with one another. Your woman can talk to her girlfriends about that stuff. She needs you to be a man.

The added bonus is that if you're always amused, stoic, and unshakeable, then on the rare occasions when you do raise your voice or become aggravated by something, your woman will know that you are expressing anger intentionally, and with great purpose, because the issue is important. On those rare occasions when

you do get angry, they're special, and you command her attention.

### **Communicate less, not more**

The whole world's proposed solution to relationship problems is communication. And if that's not working, counselling, where the counsellor can have you communicate some more.

But when your woman comes home from her workday (or her non-workday, depending on her situation), and begins to complain about a co-worker or friend of hers, and chatters on and on for 45 minutes straight about this other person you barely know and don't care about, she doesn't want you to offer solutions or advice. She just wants you to sit there and listen. To communicate less. To just say "uh huh" and nod. She wants you to hear her feelings, but she doesn't want you to tell her what you think.

And when you're having a hard time at work and may be getting fired at the end of the week, that's the last thing she wants to hear from you. If you tell her about your worries, she'll just worry, too, and there's nothing she can do about the problem. So by communicating, you've made her sad. She's not dumping you because you won't have a pay check in 5 days. She's dumping you because you make her sad, especially when you express things to her that make it look like you don't have your shit together.

The biggest shit test of all will be when she comments that you never talk about yourself or express what you're feeling to her and demands that you tell her about your feelings. But remember, guys, this is a test, and the right answer is: agree and amplify. "Uhh. Let's see. I'm feeling hungry. And horny. Definitely horny. But mostly hungry. If you'd worn a shorter skirt, maybe we could have flipped the two around, but I'm going to go get some food." Her inner self will nod in approval when you say that. "Yup. Still a man," she'll confirm.

-- Be selfish. Be dismissive of undesirable behavior. Be amused at anger. Communicate less, not more.

# The Eight Rules of Fatherhood

*By FetusFeces.*

[Comment link.](#)

1. **Marry Well.** This should be obvious. IQ is highly hereditary. Emotional stability is based upon the children modelling themselves and their interactions with others on what they see. If mom is a depressed hamster-ing cognitive dumpster fire, even if you're a genius on the level of Einstein, mom is going to rub off in some way on your kids. Choose wisely. If you never find someone who measures up, don't marry and spin plates.
2. **Introduce Causality Early.** Cause and effect. You act like a turd, you lose stuff. You act well, you get it back. You flip me and your mom shit you don't get to do things. You behave as we ask and you get those back. This starts from the moment they can interact verbally. They will throw fits, but you must treat these as you would any other shit test by being calm and firm and not budging once your discipline has been handed down by either parent.
3. **Self improvement rubs off.** A near constant discussion with my son is "that the best you've got?" He gets pissed. He tries harder. You can only ask this if you can personally do better in whatever endeavor is in question. This isn't always a good idea in all situations (I can't draw, and my son has won awards for it) but I do question him if he took his time and what he thinks he could improve. Instilling the constant analysis, evaluation, and logic early makes for a self evaluating kid that doesn't care what the other kids up the road are up to. If your son hears you evaluate your own work critically they will begin to do it with their own work without any other reinforcement. "I did Ok on this part, this other part looks good. Next time I think I'll do Y differently. Life is a learning process." It's funny hearing your child say similar things to their friends, but if you do this they will.
4. **Withhold praise.** It's not that you should never praise your children, it's that



they must understand from an early age that there are standards that must be met in order to earn a "well done" or an "I'm proud of you." Kids shit test constantly from birth. They're looking for boundaries incessantly.

Consistency is the main thing, and you must always be consistent. Clapping for a strikeout is bullshit. Stop doing it. In the face of failure, give them a critique instead: that second pitch was out of the strike zone, try and hold off on pitches like that next time." Then, when they actually do as directed, give them the reinforcement they're looking for: "You didn't get a hit, but you didn't swing at the pitch you missed the time before either. That's an improvement, now let's work on [X] (pat on the back)."

5. **Showing affection is completely ok.** Being Alpha doesn't mean that you're aloof at least in terms of your children. Hugs are good. Kids need them. Don't feel weird about it. I see a lot of awkwardly displayed affection from Dad's – it's like they don't know if it's alright or not. It's fine. You will never get to the level of attachment that children feel with their mothers, but that doesn't mean that you can't be kind and loving.
6. **Own it when you fuck up.** Your kids are human, and they will make huge mistakes. If you make a mistake and then explain to them not only why you messed up, but how you're going to go about correcting the mistake, they will be better prepared to deal with their own. Frame is relative when it comes to children. They will model how to deal with emotions and failure based on how you deal with emotions and failure. Be the guy who accepts what he can't fix, but does the best he can to correct issues and move forward and explain that this is what you're doing.
7. **Don't lie to them about the world.** The natural instinct is to protect them from ugliness. You can't. There are things about human life that are disgusting. I'm not saying you need to scare the hell out of them with the ugliness of the world, but they will hear things out and about, and they will ask you questions. Being honest about those with your children ensures that they aren't surprised when they encounter terrible people in real life when you aren't there. If they ask you a question about why someone did something bad, answer them as best as you are capable of even if that answer is "I don't know son, but that's not something I would want you to ever do."

8. **Unplug.** Do stuff with them. Minimize TV. Encourage activity. No fucking smart phones. If you're on a long drive a video is fine, sure, but that shouldn't be the default on a Monday evening unless all other homework, activities, etc. are done and they've cleaned up their crap.

# **Red Pill Stories and Experiences**

## **I Think I Broke Her...**

*By tsudonimh.*

[Article link.](#)

So the wife and I were out to dinner last night with some interstate friends of hers from school. Both girls were spinsters, one by choice after swearing off marriage early, the other the typical cc - riding empowered girl.

After a few reds, the conversation swung around to how men are clearly intimidated by sexually experienced women. No points for guessing which of the three women at the table held that view. My snort of amusement attracted her ire like a laser.

She railed at me for a while, making no particular point beyond the fact that no guy she dates wants to marry her and that was proof that I was wrong.

I just flat out stated that a woman who had sex with a thousand guys a year was not marriage material, but a woman who had sex with one guy a thousand times a year would have men lining up to marry her.

Cue goldfish face.

The guys at the next table offered to buy me a beer.

The remainder of dinner was not really enjoyable, because of the rampant misogyny at the table, I was informed. I don't know, I enjoyed it. The tuna tartare was to die for.

## Shit Tests Cause Me to Lose Interest in Women

*By down\_with\_whomever.*

[Article link.](#)

I've been reading TRP for about a year and a half now, and I've internalized a lot of the strategies and methods, especially as they relate to game, relationships, etc. I've gotten good at holding frame, I have an abundance mentality, I openly spin plates and they don't complain, I never give into shit tests. I've taken control of the situation.

And I've learned that the more I've come to take control of the situation (regarding girls shit tests), the less I want to. The more it doesn't even seem worth the effort. And frankly, I don't know how most of you put up with it.

I'll give you an example. Right now, the top post on TRP is the post "You need to learn how to deal with me." The most important part of that post was this line:

*"Well by now you should know how to deal with me, if you don't you need to learn" in that bitchy tone we all know. I looked her dead in the eye and after the silence got her to feel awkward I told her "I am dealing with you... What did you think I was doing when I told you to behave or GTFO?" She just stood there with that shelter puppy face waiting for me to crack, after a couple seconds she said in a low tone "oh..."*

Obviously, OP handled this correctly - but he then stayed with the girl. If I were in this situation, I would have been so disgusted by the fact that this girl behaved like a snotty, deplorable child that I wouldn't have wanted to spend the rest of the night with her. I wouldn't have even wanted to touch her or fuck her.

We commonly say AWALT and that there are no unicorns, and obviously this is true but it remains that not all women are created equal. There are varying degrees of self-awareness and emotional maturity/stability in women. And when I see these stupid fucking petty childish shit tests, even once, my interest drops to zero. I can control the situation and put them in their place and correct the behavior. But I don't want to be a dog trainer.

The way I feel, women need to "earn the right" to my patience. A woman who has demonstrated a lot of positive qualities and only occasionally slips up with bullshit, I'll probably be patient with. But the kind of person who makes outrageously snotty comments, I just am not interested. Don't fuck me, I don't care, just get out, you're not worth the trouble.

What I'm finding most recently, additionally, is that I'm not able to find any women who don't do this. Every woman I encounter fails to impress me so much that she's either barely worth the trouble of meeting with, or that I am actively passing up easy sex because I lost respect because of their stupid behavior/comments, and I don't feel good after fucking someone who inspires more contempt than affection.

And PS, I don't live in the US/Europe/a western country. I live in one of those non-western, non-feminist countries that you all (VERY mistakenly) think has higher quality women. I wish I could show you how immensely wrong you all are about women outside of the western world. All the things that you hate about American women, these women do it too. Sometimes even more. The only differences are that they don't call it feminism, they don't have the law to back them up as often, and they know how to cook.

## Why I'm Afraid of Marriage

*By TheMightyCheng.*

Abstract from original article. [Article link.](#)

The usual answer is "Because I don't want to get ass-raped in the inevitable divorce" But I'm afraid of the bit before that.

I'm afraid that "our " wedding will be all about you and my role will consist of "Shut up. Pay up. Get yelled at."

I'm afraid that after you've had your dream wedding and you find yourself having to deal with day to day reality, it will end up being my fault that you're not living happily ever after.

I'm afraid that I will gradually stop being the guy you love and want to spend the rest of your life with and turn into the room-mate you can barely stand but you keep me around for the heavy lifting and helping to pay the rent.

I'm afraid that you will take marriage advice from your mother and her friends, all of whom will tell you that being nice to your husband is fucking stupid and you shouldn't bother. I'm afraid that you'll not wonder why your father is so miserable...

I'm afraid that you will "accidentally" slip up on birth control and I'll end up with children whether I like it or not. ..But when you're the size of a house and fed up, I'll be "the bastard that did this to you." I'm afraid that the first words my daughter learns will be "Isn't daddy stupid?"

I'm afraid that you'll yell at me for not doing enough with the kids - but every time I try, you show up to tell me that I'm doing it wrong and "why are you so

useless?"

I'm afraid that once you've got the children you wanted, your libido will fall off the edge of a cliff.

I'm afraid that sex will stop being a special moment between us and become something you use to keep me in line, only deployed when I've been a good dog.

I'm afraid that "our" home will fill up with your family and your friends, all of whom will treat me like I don't deserve to be there. I'm afraid our relationship will consist of me trying to keep you from yelling at me.

I'm afraid that I'll be continually expected to support you and care for you and prove how committed I am - and in return I'll get drama, nagging and continual reminders that I'm useless.

I'm afraid that you'll spend the entire marriage telling me that my opinion is worthless and then bitch when I don't immediately come up with an answer to whatever drama you're moaning about.

I'm afraid that any display of insecurity or feeling down will be met with a terse "Oh man up" and subsequently used to beat me over the head for not being a real man.

I'm afraid that every time I'm sick your way of proving how much you care is to make snide comments about man-flu and bitch because I'm lying around doing nothing.

I'm afraid that any time I get time to myself, you'll be right there with a honey-do list or some little job that needs doing right now, just to make sure I never get chance to relax.

I'm afraid that no matter what I do, there's always something else that's making you pissed off.



I'm afraid that I'll gradually end up losing my hobbies, interests, opinions, friends and as many of my possessions as you can throw away when my back is turned. And you'll then bitch at me for being "Boring"

I'm afraid that I'll wake up one day and realise that I'm paying for a house that isn't my home, full of shit that somebody else wanted, kids that are being raised to treat me with contempt and a life that consists of "work. eat. sleep." Correction. "Work. Eat. Get moaned at. Sleep."

And of course there's always the possibility that after I've tried to give you everything you wanted, you'll decide one day that my services are no longer required and I'll find myself in a bedsit, piss-poor and wondering what happened to the last ten years of my life.

## Learn From Me: 40 Years Old, 3 Kids, Divorced

*By raven2000.*

[Post link.](#)

My story is not a new one... but there may be a nugget of info here that helps another guy out there avoid my situation. Where to begin..

I was the "Alpha" in my pack. I didn't know it at the time, but it's true. I led, others followed. My friends took up my hobbies. I played guitar, so did they. I wanted to go listen to live music, so we did. I was an avid weightlifter, so they joined the gym to learn from me. The spouse was along for the ride, and very happy. Sex was great. We liked strip clubs. We liked porn. She was my buddy and my lover. She was my girl. Loved her to death. She was an educated woman. Doctorate. Well paid. I had a Bachelors degree. I made more \$. Corporate job with high salary. Life was good.

Then... you may know what happens next. "Let's have a kid!" Been married 6 years already, life was good... why not?! I love kids. Always dreamed of having my own little rugrat.

On top of the kid, I wanted to start my own business. I had the money, the know-how, and the drive. She didn't feel secure. She was scared. I was the leader and showed her the way. She followed. Still not quite sure, but she defended me to anyone who questioned...

To make a long story short, I did the business for 5 years. Two of those years were good. The others were failures. There was no support from her during the down times. She deserved better. She wasn't about to curb her spending or budget in any way. She didn't know how and wasn't about to learn. During this time, we

had two more kids (I know...). The debts piled. I would put together plans to pay off the debt... then we did pay it off... and then right back again. She spent. She couldn't stop herself. Nothing extravagant... but definitely not living within our means. She was a child lashing out. She was scared. I never put her in her place. Only half-hearted attempts.

Her job improved. She was promoted. Leader position. She made 50% more than me. Then the market crash happened. Clients stopped paying. One of my clients then hired me on full-time (thank God). I still was short of my old corporate pay. She still made more.

She had zero respect for me. I could say  $2+2=4$ , and she would then check with friends and family first to confirm... and then months later tell me "Guess what, honey! You were right!  $2+2 = 4!$ " This made me resent her.

I helped pick up the slack at home. Kids took up our spare time. I was Mr. Mom. Best dad you can imagine. Very loving guy. I didn't look good, physically. Whatever muscle I had was gone. I went back to the gym sporadically. Strength gone. I used to be able to bench with 120 lbs dumbbells. Now 65 lbs was a struggle. My joints hurt. I lost my hair.

I was still the same goofy, funny sweet guy I always was.. but I lost my edge. I had been shit-tested down to a quivering nub of femininity.

She started working out more. Way more. Obsessively. That's where she met him.

He was exactly what she needed. He didn't take shit from her. He had multiple women at once. He was physically strong. He may have been dumb as a post, not very good-looking, and a bit of a redneck... but she didn't care. He pushed her buttons in the right combination, and she completely detached from me and the kids. It was just short of our 15 year anniversary.

I found out about them. She pursued him. He resisted at first. She was not going

to be stopped. They had sex. A lot. No need for details... but my past IT experience allowed me to find out every single little thing. Texts. Emails. (He played the "game" to perfection, by the way. He should teach a class.) I was destroyed. Emotionally a complete wreck.

Since then, I've put myself back together. It took months, but I finally figured out what happened. I read books. I did therapy. I found you guys.

As a guy who is probably older than most here, I will share a few nuggets of wisdom from my perspective, as a dad who was married, divorced, banged skanks, hated women... and now understands them.

- Every woman has the capability of doing what my ex did. All of them. It's up to you to prevent it. If they have a lot of baggage and emotional stress, they are more apt to do it. Red flags.. get to know them. Don't ignore them because she makes you feel like a million bucks. My ex had a horrible family life. Mom was an addict, brother an addict and convict, sister an addict, aaaaand... she was sexually assaulted as a kid. Oddly, I looked past all of this because she was so different than them and bettered herself in spite of all that. Very admirable, sure. But not spouse material in any way. She never dealt with these issues or sought out help. It was only a matter of time before she cracked.
- Women are not evil. They are human beings. They are flawed. Stop pointing at bad things they do and say "See?!! They all do this!!" (a lot of posts here). Yeah.. and? So what. You put them on a super beautiful human pedestal and they proved you wrong. That's your fault. Sorry that society told you otherwise. Society says a lot of wrong shit. Suck it up, learn, and try again. I picked a shitty model with a broken CPU. There are better models out there. Unfortunately, they're very hard to find.
- Don't give up on love. Sure, 90% of the women out there fall into the category of my ex, but there ARE good ones out there. Your experience and knowledge will help you sort out the bad from the good. Don't waste time with the bad. You're better than that. But, don't be afraid to show your appreciation and love for those that deserve it. Friends, family, girlfriends...

if they deserve, you give it. Lots. IF THEY DESERVE IT. Love is not unconditional. If they don't give love in return or otherwise do you harm, that's their problem. They're gone from your life. They have no control over your well-being.

- I've gotten to know many men in my position, or soon to be. The A #1 thing I notice from men putting up with sub-standard behavior... is the overwhelming sentiment of "Well, if I tell her THAT... she will be really pissed, or maybe LEAVE!" If you have that mindset, she has won, and it is over. You just don't know it yet. Women don't want to "win" all the time. You want the woman's respect, not to be her lap dog. This really goes for any relationship. Stand up for yourself, god damnit.
- Women have emotions like a roller coaster. Whatever they are feeling at the time, that is reality. Plain and simple. Don't like it? I suggest you get a pet, instead. Sorry, brother. I know they are annoying a lot of the time and you can't fathom a life not based on our concept of reality.. but they're chicks. They have boobies and makes us feel awesome, but they're fucking nuts.

Been reading this sub (only thing on Reddit I read) for a while now. Back to the gym in a big way. On TRT now (this has made a world of difference). Looking for a different job. Hobbies started up again. I have the kids just over half the time. Being strong for them. They need the positive, moral role model in their life. Their mom is still nucking futs. Not in a good way.

Met lots of women. Most awful. Now have a long-term girlfriend who you would say is "very Red Pill." A wonderful person. Yes, she's younger. Yes, she's foreign. (Am I a RP cliché, or what?!). She's also very well-educated and has a very prestigious career. Not sure of her salary, nor do I care. I wouldn't care if tomorrow she tells me she wants to go work at Starbucks. She knows that because I bluntly told her. I love her for her... not for her career path (this is a shock to every single woman I have spoken to... that men aren't attracted to their success). What if tomorrow I found out she was cheating or somehow disloyal? I would certainly be hurt but I would just say "Next!" and I mean it. She also knows this... because I bluntly told her. The expectations and boundaries have been plainly laid out. She's awesome, but I don't need her.

## Featured Comment

*By MachiavellianRed.*

Depends on what your definition of broken is.

For example, if you think that someones personality and reasoning being infinitely susceptible to major changes based purely on one's hypersensitivity to their surroundings; thus altering their emotional state to a point of altered personality, to the extent that it undermines any foundations put in place in the long term (such as marriage, mortgage, kids etc) and that such a person needs constant authority to be kept in line to avoid flying off the deep end like an out of control child is some form of "broken", then yeah, you could argue women are fundamentally broken. However giving up on them because of that won't bring you happiness, learning to accept this is how women are and how to manage their craziness is the solution to happiness.

Of course we don't want to go around saying "women are so fucked up you may as well not bother" that won't solve anything, we can't change how fucked up they are all we can do is manage it and learn how to "play the system" to our advantage, hence shit like dread game, so instead of going all nihilistic about it, I reiterate this: all bitches are crazy, just how crazy depends on the individual, there are ways to minimize the crazy, there are also red flags to look out for that indicate crazy on a level you don't want to even manage the girl, she's too toxic (short list: gaslighting, rape accusations/stories, sexual/domestic abuse, compulsive lying, manipulative for the sake of being manipulative, likes horses, dyes her hair red, has any mental disorder, has seen shrinks, takes antidepressants/happy pills, has been in an asylum, is extremely promiscuous, is into deviant sexual acts, is sadistic, has a high sexual partner count etc.) however no matter who the woman is, you will never eradicate it completely.

Women with hot bodies and the minds of men don't exist, you have to manage their crazy to get the best of them. When beta men make this cliched self-detrimental joke that nobody ever laughs at "I'm just happy she puts up with me" I laugh, men are fucking easy, in terms of dealing with crazy the dynamic is the total opposite. Even the most submissive and passive women have this capability to betray you in a heartbeat due to their "in the moment" emotions, if you're losing control of your life and by extension, her and another man enters scene, you're fucked. Whether its a boom time or a bust she still needs constant boundaries, guidance, authority and all the rest of it - which is a full time job that gives no fucks for how you feel or where your head is at, in the words of the late and great Patrice o' Neal "you never get to just love a bitch, you always have to MANAGE her"

If you accept crazy as how women are, just to differing levels depending on the woman in question, and learn to manage that craziness, you'll do fine. But if you correlate crazy with broken, then yeah, women are massively flawed, so much so you could say they're broken and to remain functional/stable they need a VERY STRONG MAN who won't take any shit and will not hesitate to give them a mental or verbal slap when they act out of line (and oh boy, trust me, they will.) This is why we always say treat them like the most responsible teenager in the house, if you treat them like an equal you will have problems, because you're not equal no how much you wish it (lord knows it would make all men's lives easier if they could rely on women not to test them and be more rational, but men are burdened with leadership if they want to sustain a happy functional relationship with any one woman), however unfortunately they are too emotionally susceptible and volatile to be equal when it comes to decision making and taking charge, you take an equalist position and you set yourself up for failure because your ideals are not compatible with female nature. There are probably some exceptions out there with some odd couple with Aspergers or some random shit but who cares about that, we're looking at average typical people here.

# **I Was Divorce Raped. Don't Be Me**

*By rp\_divorced.*

[Article Link.](#)

Several people wanted to hear my story after reading my recent comments so I thought I'd oblige because it is probably helpful to others. It's long but I wanted to show you what life is like if you follow in my footsteps.

I'll start with the disclaimer that I'm in my current situation because of my own actions. I allowed every bit of this to happen and I take full responsibility. I was blue pill/beta bucks to the extreme until I said fuck it and drew a line in the sand. Now I'm divorced and giving her a ton of money every month. I'm broke but happy. You don't have to end up in the same position.

## **How I Got Here**

I met my now ex-wife when I was a junior in college. She was the exact opposite of me. Extroverted, life of the party, always seeing the positive and ignoring the negative. I was much more reserved and didn't need to be the center of attention.

I was a year ahead of her in school so a few months before I was to graduate, she said "Where is this going? I'm not going to waste my time if this isn't going to lead to marriage."

I bought the engagement ring the next week with my student loan money.

At this point of my life despite being a former college athlete, a stellar student who was nominated for the highest academic award for graduating seniors, and



starting student groups on campus I was depressed and had no self esteem. When she gave me what was essentially an ultimatum, I had just been put on the waiting list for the graduate program I wanted to attend. I was told to apply to medical school instead because it was easier to get into but I didn't want to spend the next 10 years in school because I was getting married to this great woman.

When we first got married, we were 22 years old. I worked 4pm-1am and she worked temp jobs from 8-5. It was the mid 90's just before the dot com boom so jobs weren't as easy to come by. She got bored quickly and started to spend her time in the evenings shopping. When I got the credit card bill, I was pissed and cut up the credit card. When she found out, she told me that I couldn't do that and that it will take time for her to adjust because her dad would buy her anything she wanted when she was growing up. She used shopping as therapy the rest of our marriage.

After being married a year, she tired of working temp jobs because her sociology/women's studies degree wasn't very useful in finding a job of substance. She decided that she was going to go back for a Masters degree to become a teacher. It was her life's calling, she said. I was completely opposed as was her entire family. She quit the job she had at the time and went to school full time. I paid for her degree in addition to the house we had just bought on my salary alone because I had just self-studied my way to becoming a Microsoft Certified Systems Engineer. At the time, this certification was a license to print money. In reality, it made it so that she'd never have to work the rest of our marriage.

By the time she finished the degree, our first child was born so she was in no hurry to get out there and work. Eventually, she did get a teaching job and quit after one week. That was the end of her teaching career. It was no longer her life's calling and I was supportive because I was the breadwinner who was supposed to support his family. Over the years, two more kids were born and she took a job here or there that never lasted more than a few months at a time.

Our third child was born by the time I was 30 and I had become extremely resentful because she made it known that the world revolved around her. And I let

it continue. She told me one day that it was just expected of me to go to work so that didn't count when comparing our responsibilities. I was expected to do just as much around the house as she was and she let things sit until I was home. Her days were spent with her friends and their children or dropping the kids at mothers morning out so she could have some adult time. Cleaning and cooking could wait until I was home to help. Any time I mentioned that the situation was unfair was met with a list of all the things I didn't do right in the relationship. She could do no wrong.

By year 15 of our marriage, I was done. I had become nothing more than an ATM for her and she did anything she wanted. She decided to finally get a full time job because she was unhappy with life too. The truth was that we were constantly stressed because of money because the credit cards were always maxed and we had no money despite my excellent salary. My hamster was working overtime thinking about how great life was going to be now that we had two incomes!

That ended quickly when she wouldn't get home until after 7 each night and I had to do all the cooking, cleaning and homework as well as listening to her complain about her "horrible" coworkers who "didn't know how to run a business" every night for two hours. So I did what a lot of guys do. I got a blow job from a 24 year old who showed some interest in me. I deserved it, I thought. My ungrateful wife didn't care about anything other than my pay check and she never gave me blow jobs.

### **The Road to The Red Pill**

I had what could best be described as a come to Jesus moment after I left blow job girl. I don't know why it did, but it hit me that I had been rationalizing my own actions in order to cope with my miserable life at home. I had been depressed for a long time and kept blaming my wife for it. If only she'd do A, B and C, I would be happy. This is when I saw the bullshit in my own head for what it was.

Blow job girl continued to text and I kept blowing her off so I could deal with my own shit. She started getting crazier and more ballsy by calling and texting

when she knew I'd be home with my family so I told my wife what happened. We started marriage counseling a week later and I got on an antidepressant and went to therapy on my own as well.

I went into couples counselling and fell on my sword and took responsibility for everything. I essentially handed any little shred of control I might have had in the relationship to my wife and I would never get it back. Over the next two years, we went to counselling off and on. I thought we had worked through everything because the ex would constantly say that she had forgiven me. Even the counsellor was pissed because I would say "I hear her say she has forgiven me, but I don't feel like she has." The counsellor asked me what more I wanted, she said she forgave you. I told her I wanted to FEEL forgiven. So at every session, I was given something else the wife wanted me to do to be a better husband and I would do it only to be given another task at the next session.

I finally realized that the man my wife said she wanted was not me and that the marriage was probably over so I took what could best be described as the nuclear route. One night while sitting in bed I told my wife that I wasn't satisfied with the relationship and things had to change if we were going to be together. I told her that she was getting all the benefits out of the relationship and I was getting none. She exploded and told me that I was getting many benefits. When I asked her to name them she said "I raised our children to be great people." I laughed and told her to take the kids out of the equation and then tell me what benefits I was getting. She had no answer so she asked what I wanted.

This is where I put the final nail in the coffin of our marriage. I had been reading TRP extensively and decided at this point that I didn't care if I stayed married or not so I told her that I wanted blow jobs, a clean house and dinner when I got home. Needless to say that didn't go over well and was the subject of our final counselling session. The therapist was disgusted with me and I simply sat there and said that's what I want. At this point, my wife said her now famous comment, "if we get divorced, I'm going to rock my next husband's world!" I started interviewing divorce lawyers the next week knowing what was coming.

## Divorce

When my wife finally said she wanted a divorce, I simply responded "ok" because I knew it was coming. I then waited for her to file papers so that I'd be the one who got served but she never would. She demanded I move out of the house before she filed. I have no idea why that was her requirement, so I filed instead. I also cut off her access to my pay check and didn't give her any money at all. She had a part time job that could cover her own stuff.

She kept demanding that I move out and I told her I wouldn't until she agreed in writing to 50/50 parenting time with the kids. She wouldn't agree. She wanted \$1000 a month temporarily and to have a 60/40 split on parenting time. I ended up living in the house with her for almost six months until we ended up in court. When we left court, I left with 50/50 parenting time and only had to pay her \$800 a month. She isn't very smart.

The divorce dragged on for another few months all while she was running around town messing with several different guys. The main guy was on probation and worked at a second-hand store. She loved telling all her friends about her escapades and her friends husbands would sometimes tell me.

The divorce finally ended when we made an offer that her lawyer couldn't ignore without risking that he might not get paid. She tried to keep fighting but eventually agreed when her lawyer threatened to quit on her. Her lawyer was willing to walk away without getting paid because of her insanity.

In the end, I'm paying her 25% of my salary over the next eight years. It could have been worse, because we were married long enough that I could have been on the hook for lifetime alimony. In addition, I had to pay my lawyer, her lawyer, 50% of all my retirement funds and give her another few thousand dollars to make her go away. It cost me \$20 to get married and will cost me over \$220,000 to get divorced. I got the only thing I truly wanted which was 50/50 parenting time with our kids.

## Lessons Learned

- Don't live life how others think you should.
- You come first in your own life and everyone else will be better for it.
- Don't forgo your own happiness for the happiness of others.
- Don't get married young. In fact, don't get married.
- Marriage has almost no benefit to the person with the higher income.
- Deal with your own problems NOW!
- AWALT.
- What she says is irrelevant, only her actions matter.
- Be diligent, gaslighting is real. You naturally want to believe everything told to you by someone who loves you.
- If you're headed for divorce, you have to be two steps ahead of her to be able to get a fair deal. The courts are still far more favorable to women.

## Don't Be Like Bruce

*By brandor77.*

[Article link.](#)

Bruce was your typical family guy with a good computer engineering job. Bruce lived in the suburbs in a nice big house with his wife and two kids, and drove a big SUV to work every day. Bruce enjoyed beer and football.

Bruce did not eat well. Bruce had not eaten well perhaps all of his life, and his lifestyle precluded healthy meals or much in the way of exercise. His job had him stuck in a chair most of his day, and he often ate at his desk or during the commute. His wife cooked evening meals replete with salt and butter, and a sugary dessert to top everything off at the end of the night. Bruce's kids had just reached the age where he could put them to work mowing the lawn – the only real physical activity Bruce had in his life.

To put it mildly, Bruce was a large man.

Last year, on his 40th birthday, Bruce began to express concern about his health. His doctor told him that he was "high-risk" and that he needed to eat better and exercise more. At 40, Bruce had developed such strong lifestyle habits that this was like asking him to start a new career; he didn't know where to begin. More importantly, he didn't have the drive or the conviction to change.

Bruce put in a superficial effort. He joined a gym. Once a week or two, he would go in and get on a treadmill for twenty minutes, then seek out some high-calorie food to consume. He would add a little green to his plate to convince himself that he was eating healthier. Deep inside, he knew he had to change his habits but he didn't pursue the matter seriously, instead choosing to procrastinate.

Last month, Bruce felt pains in his chest. He went to the ER and the hospital performed scans. They didn't find the small tear that had opened up in Bruce's heart. This would have required a sonogram, which is not part of the tests they give in this situation. So they sent him on his way.

Like when an engine blows a gasket, blood began to seep into Bruce's chest cavity. When the pressure equalized, his heart could no longer beat and he died.

Sometimes a person's role in life is to serve as a warning to others.

A few of Bruce's close friends attended the funeral, but most of the attendees were co-workers. They stood around eating the free food and talking about the job. A few of the women shed a tear or two. Most of the men joked and laughed. Bruce's life was his work, so this was who he knew. The macabre display of Bruce's corpse allowed the attendees to pontificate their own mortality, but when the time came to talk about him few had anything meaningful to say.

One was a friend whose best story was about when they drank beer while fixing a garage door.

One was a friend who waxed nostalgic about when they were children.

The last to speak was Bruce's boss. This man had started his job working alongside Bruce, but had been promoted over him through the years. Now his manager, he described Bruce as "a good worker" and "a peacemaker."

He said, "Bruce made me look good."

Imagine that on your epitaph.

Bruce lived by the playbook. He went to school and got a degree and got married and had kids and bought the car and the house. He drank beer and watched football and consumed and obeyed. He worked long hours all week and spent the

few hours he had sedating himself. He saw the warning signs and he ignored them. Then he died.

Bruce lived for others, followed their dreams. What did he want?

His wife believes he just wanted what she wanted – the kids, the house, the stuff - but we here in TRP know better than that. What little I saw of him evidenced the [Quiet Desperation](#) that Thoreau spoke of. I doubt anyone ever will know what was in his heart-of-hearts. It doesn't matter, though, because it will never come to pass.

People will tell you, "It's not too late to change." It isn't - until it is.

So I implore you: however you choose to say it - YOLO or *carpe diem* or whatever else – do it. Seize the day.

For God's sake, don't be like Bruce.



# Quotes and Highlighted Comments

## A Collection of TRP Gold from the Comments

*Compiled by trway14. Original authors unknown.*

[Article link.](#)

- Competition is part of a man's life, more so than of a woman's because of the way the sexual market place works. It's the lot evolution has given you. No matter how great you are, even if you're Orlando Bloom - you'll be challenged by Justin Bieber. But at least you know that whatever you have, you EARNED it.
- Hippies who took drugs often talk about looking beyond their own perspective at the collective consciousness, everything in the world being one, etc. But humanity's collective identity is still a product of our personal struggles against each other. In our never-ending fight to gain status in the hierarchy, we produce all the things that are known as "humanity" and "culture."
- To your psyche, entering a new field is a stupid idea. It's not "smart" to start dancing lessons, because the other dudes will be rocking it while you can't do shit. It challenges your ego, so you tend to remove it from your life. Your whole being goes, "Why are we doing this? There's got to be an easier way. This is a waste of time." And that's the nature of change. It always seems ridiculous within the current system, that is until the change becomes the new system.
- Rather than hide, begrudgingly co-exist with or deny your weaknesses you must acknowledge them and accept them. Only by doing this can you gain the power to rid yourself of such afflictions. Accepting your weaknesses allows you to own your flaws rather than permitting them to imprison you within a negative mental feedback loop of helplessness. The most unintelligible thing a person can do, and "the average person" does this all the time, is to ignore one's weaknesses. Weaknesses are ignored out of ego,

out of emotion, to sustain your sense of being, and whatever shaky foundation of self-confidence it is that you have. However, it is this wilful ignorance of such weakness that amounts to nothing more than a shoddy farcical fabrication of confidence. It's not pure, rational confidence, but delusional, narcissistic confidence. By not addressing your weaknesses you allow them to take control of you in whatever manner it is they manifest. Rather than patch up the hole in your armour, you are pretending there is no hole there at all. And thus by ignoring the problem, you only grant it the opportunity to extend its foothold within your psyche, damaging your chances at success and happiness.

- A conscious denial of an accepted truth for the sake of one's ego leaves you vulnerable to the potency of the truth. A core part of Red Pill philosophy is to be harmonious with the truth so that the truth is fighting on your side rather than against you at the side of your enemies. Whoever is congruent with the truth, can monopolise the truth and expose liars. Those who are reliant upon fabrications must expend massive energy on maintaining their façade. As someone who lives harmoniously with the truth, you need not expend such energy, giving you a further edge. When a person tries to use one of your weaknesses against you, aware of the truth, the power of embarrassment will be absent and you will be able to keep composure (hold frame) rather than let a scrupulous detractor rob you of your power within the primacy of the moment. You need to be honest with yourself so that you know what you're working with, without awareness you cannot hope to achieve success. On a Machiavellian tangent, nobody lucks into success contrary to what they may have led you to believe about their accomplishments.
- Not all weaknesses can or need to be completely overcome. Beauty is a strength that people either have or don't have. And in this world you have to play to your strengths or you're gonna get crushed. When you put yourself in a place where you're playing to your weaknesses not your strengths, people are going to ignore you, be mean to you, push you out the way, step on you and treat you like dirt. You have to find the place where your strengths matter. Don't feel bad if you can't dance - just don't go to the club then. Some of the most amazing dancers there would look like losers in the

workshop, next to the skilled woodworker.

- Fear not the man who has practised 10,000 kicks once, but the man who has practised one kick 10,000 times. If you try something new, stick to it for a while and master it. Don't move on to the next thing in a week. Leverage the fuck out of your talents.
- If you're successful and highly respected, your audience will genuinely consider your jokes to be more funny.
- Complete security is impossible. There are no guarantees. No matter how great you are, the future holds the possibility that someone will betray you, steal your possessions or mate, etc. The fact that you haven't excluded this possibility or rooted out every potential threat is no cause for worry: it is this way for every single human, and a smart man will deal with problems as they arise instead of being pre-emptively brought down by the gloom of hypothetical but improbable disasters.
- A possibly flawed strategy is better than no strategy. A perfect strategy doesn't exist, so don't sit around forever contemplating what to do. Accept that you will win some and lose some. 80% of life is showing up, and if you only show up when you feel 100% prepared, you won't. Derive pride from dealing with things immediately when they arise.
- The best diet is the one you can do. The same is true for any strategy.
- Perfection is achieved, not when there is nothing left to add, but when there is nothing left to take away. Kill your darlings.
- We are used to hearing people say life is a marathon, but a lot of evidence shows that it's better to treat life as a series of sprints interspersed with rest periods. This is the way to train with weights and this is the way to train your mind and get work done.
- The young bull says, "I'm going to run down this hill and fuck me a cow!" So he takes off running, when he gets to the bottom, he fucks a cow. The old bull walks down the hill and fucks ALL the cows. Lesson: invest your energy wisely, don't approach EVERYTHING as a marathon.
- A perfect life is not possible. There are going to be bumps. You weren't dealt a perfect hand. Don't fall for the idea that your life should either be perfect, or nothing at all. Don't let the idealistic desire for a perfect life freeze you and prevent you from having a good life.

- A perfect girlfriend is not possible. You are going to be making compromises and dealing with certain flaws.
- There's always another level. Just be content knowing that you are still better off than most who have ever lived.
- If you're the best man in the room on all fronts, you're in the wrong room. Surround yourself with people who can teach you something. Show mutual respect to these people, bring some value of yourself, and it will benefit everyone. If you surround yourself with losers, they will just steal your energy and eventually bring you down to their level.
- Measure yourself only against your previous self.
- Don't think about the things you can't do/be/get/experience. Set your sights on the things that you CAN get with a little work.
- Happiness comes from being on a journey of improvement, not from being in a good place. Unhappiness comes from stagnation, not from being in a bad position. Look at celebrities beyond their peak: after a major tour when they're no longer skyrocketing, they get sad and miss the dopamine shots. They're still more famous and attractive than 99% of other people, but the lack of improvement is what causes their unhappiness. So it is for you: improve, and be happy.
- Every life in which something is achieved is better than nothing.
- Girls will come, girls will go. Status will come, status will go. You win some, you lose some. It's natural for these things to fluctuate. Don't expect to be able to hold on to them, but enjoy them while they're there. It's a big world full of competitors: nobody can always be the best. Even the most famous, handsome talented rock stars end up in the gutter at some point.
- Live mostly in the now. Don't let the possibility of future troubles seduce you into brooding on how the attack may play out and how you will set up your defense. Terrorism does more damage to a country by paralyzing it with fear (causing a big decrease in productivity) than by the actual acts of terror.
- Spend your physical and mental energy wisely. Many things are not worth getting to the bottom of. Your brain has evolved instincts to cheaply deal with many situations, so make use of that. It will save you a lot of energy to be used on more productive pursuits. Beware of analysis paralysis.

- You let action and reality teach you what will work rather than your worry, guessing or speculation. Trying out ideas and failing is often much cheaper than gathering tons of research and data as to what will work. It will allow you to find a successful path faster than your competition. Recognizing success and failure quickly is an important skill. You will also be prepared for failure and have backup plans. This will get you used to erring towards boldness and away from analysis-paralysis.
- When you're in a hole, stop digging. If you're in a rut, don't analyze. Instead narrow your focus on one point of ACTION and build momentum on that. Get some blood flowing by running.
- Cut your losses as soon as you find out you're on a wrong path. If you've been buying into the narrative that being the opposite of a bad boy will make you sexually attractive, it's tempting to hold on to this worldview because you've invested in it. Let go of the sunk cost.
- When you're on the way up, that's when you have to step on the gas even more. Keep the good momentum going.
- When you're halfway on the unstable bridge of a ropes course, you need to keep going. It's tempting to stop for a while to triple-check that you've properly landed on the current piece of wood, but exactly that causes you to lose balance. The problem is that you're changing your mindset from MOMENTUM to HALTING, but in order to move forward you need to get back into the MOMENTUM mindspace. It's better to just stay in that mindspace and keep focus on the goal. So you've read about hypergamy? Great, now don't dwell on that topic for ages collecting story after story that confirms it. You've learned the background information necessary to change your life, so go and implement the advice of No More Mr Nice Guy.
- After going through the experience, you say "it's so simple and obvious, doing X is just a slightly different variant of Y!" But it's only obvious in hindsight. Before you had the experience, someone could have given you that very same piece of "obvious" advice and it would have made no sense at all. Conclusion: experience is often a better teacher than analysis. Reflection and analysis afterwards is good, but don't overdo it, and don't assume that your "obvious" pieces of advice will be able to enlighten the unexperienced.
- You don't need a constant conscious awareness of Red Pill theory (male/

female behavior, sexual market place, evolved strategies, self deception etc.) or any other theory for that matter. You need to internalize it. Consider the theories you learned at university: when you get to the level of applying them to actual situations (e.g. experiments), you find yourself using the relevant parts on auto-pilot. You don't continually rehearse the whole picture, you just master the specific branches of the theory that are relevant to your research. When you write the theory section of your thesis, you need to actually dig deep in your mind "what was the big picture like again?". Or consider driving: you don't consciously use everything you've learned, because when you try to do that, that's when things go wrong. In the beginning you need to consciously acquire the theories, but when you've mastered them, you use them on auto-pilot. The same applies to Red Pill theory: constantly re-reading the textbooks actually keeps you from mastering it.

- Theories are easy and fun to make up. But in the end, a theory is just a framework to help you remember the things that JUST WORK. A theory is a bundle of experiences, and it's the experiences that really matter.
- The 4 stages of learning: 1. Unconscious incompetence - you don't know that you don't know, 2. Conscious incompetence - you know that you don't know, 3. Conscious Competence - you know that you know, 4. Unconscious Competence - you don't know that you know
- Often, solutions are lost in abstraction. Abstract concepts (the big picture) are intellectually very gratifying, but concrete wisdoms and even stereotypes are usually more directly applicable. They are also mentally less exhausting - that's why stereotypes evolved in the first place, to save mental capacity. So separate abstract thinking from concrete thinking and prioritize the latter when dealing with practical problems. Part of concrete thinking is that you will have to accept empirical "just-so" evidence: if you see that something works, it works - no why-questions asked. This is the mechanism through which unconscious competence operates.
- Save yourself first. Only then can you be effective working on societal issues. Nobody will listen to a loser. You can't effectively communicate information that you haven't yet made peace with yourself. If you see someone fighting societal issues without having inner peace, (s)he's really

fighting his/her own inner demons. That's why adolescents are so idealistic, rebellious and always debating one another: they are trying to find peace and a place in the world. Once you have matured beyond that, you have no more need to engage them on it.

- If it were World War II right now, could you rely on your girlfriend not to rat you out to the evil occupying force? Could you rely on your friends to have your back? Would you be a reliable dude for THEM? The guarantees and luxuries of modern life have hidden the relevance of this question of loyalty, but that doesn't mean it has disappeared.
- We live in a society where abundance has made natural selection obsolete, so intense sexual selection games have supplanted the old struggles against natural selection. The standard example of sexual selection is the peacock's tail - it serves no practical purpose, but female peahens like it and choose to mate with males who have an awesome tail, so it stays in the gene pool. This effect is constrained by natural selection: peacocks with tails that are really, really big are super hot to peahens, but they are easily spotted by predators and can't run very well either. Now imagine what happens if you take away all predators and supply an abundance of food to a group of peacocks and peahens. Natural selection won't constrain the sexual selection game anymore, and every new generation of peacocks will have bigger and bigger tails. Useless tails, but that's okay - there is no need to be useful anymore, just hot. Something similar is happening to our human society due to a lack of predators and an abundance of food.
- When groups of adults form for a common purpose, the leaders end up being those who are best at it. The problem with a society without common enemies or goals is, they have no purpose. But hierarchy there must be. And so the members make one out of nothing, based on arbitrary standards (like the peacock's tail). We say that the situation degenerates into a popularity contest. [...] When there is some real external test of skill, it isn't painful to be at the bottom of the hierarchy. A rookie on a football team doesn't resent the skill of the veteran; he hopes to be like him one day and is happy to have the chance to learn from him. The veteran may in turn feel a sense of noblesse oblige. And most importantly, their status depends on how well they do against opponents, not on whether they can push the other down.



Sexual selection based hierarchies are another thing entirely. When there's no communal victory to be gained, the only victory left to chase is personal - at the expense of others. This type of society debases anyone who enters it. There is neither admiration at the bottom, nor noblesse oblige at the top. It's kill or be killed. (Adapted from: *Why Nerds Are Unpopular*, by Paul Graham)

- Women have an advantage in a society where sexual selection games reign. Their innate social value has always given them the upper hand in the popularity contest, but in the past that contest was not the only thing that mattered to a society. Inner-society politics were balanced by the fight against external forces such as natural selection. When the popularity contest becomes the only thing that matters, women gain a disproportionate amount of social power. Female hypergamy dictates that at any point in time, only a minority of the men in a society (~20%) are sexually attractive. The majority of women on the other hand are attractive, just by virtue of being female. A typical woman on a dating site gets 3x as many messages as the most attractive men: that's the power imbalance.
- A man needs a mission in life. You need a purpose, a passion, something to build, live for, strive for, fight for. A mission is the only way you can escape the vagaries and whims of the sexual selection game and enjoy the relative calm of a productive, cooperation-based hierarchy with a common purpose. A man's mission is a source of satisfaction and self-worth that he controls, giving his life meaning and more importantly stability. A man without a mission is an unstable man because he is completely dependent on the fleeting, volatile approval of others for his self-worth. Depending on someone else for your satisfaction in life is a surefire way to end up suffering, especially if you don't have the stable, guaranteed innate value that women can rely on.
- First find out what it is that you want. (Not necessarily what society suggests you should want!) Then, whenever you're spending time on something, ask yourself "does this activity help me achieve my goals?" If reading all this text isn't helping you forward, then go do something else.
- A man should not depend on the fleeting, volatile affections of women for his self-worth. To the outside world, a man is either a zero or a hero and that

position can shift rapidly. Female hypergamy means you're either one of the 20% best men in the room, or invisible - and it just takes one hot biker dude to drive his rig into your scene to make you fall from a hero to a zero. The day by day fluctuations are immense for men. For women this is different: they are the valuable sex, having a secure baseline social value just for being women. They can, to some degree, rely on their innate social value. They'll never be a hero like George Clooney, but they'll never be a zero begging for money in the subway either.

- Don't make women (or a woman) the mission of your life. Learn the basics of how to seduce a woman, but don't turn it into your job and profession like "pickup artists" do. Focus on yourself and your mission, and view women as a fun treat on the occasion. You will find stability, and women will be drawn to that. They should be the cherry on top of your cake. If my life is going great, I won't stop myself from meeting women if they happen to be near me. Look at them as an effortless pastime. If it takes too much effort, then don't bother. But if you happen to be at a party, go ahead and chat her up. Remember that in any two-party relationship, the party that cares less enjoys more control.
- Why does this bodybuilder and that wimpy artist get the girl? What do those two totally different men have in common? They both created their own world. The women find the artist interesting and imaginative. The women also find the bodybuilder strong and forceful. They like both. We ridicule "Just be yourself!" as terrible advice. Here is a better translation: Show her the world you have created. If that still isn't working for you, you probably haven't created a world women are interested in. Like tourists on a street full of shops, they pop their head in the door, and do a quick scan to see if anything exciting stands out. If they see something cool, they may come in for a closer look. Assuming your world is exciting, your shop will soon have a lot of traffic. Your goal now is to identify and target the genuine customers and weed out the time-wasters.
- "Being attractive and being "what women really want" isn't going to fill a huge void in your life. Casual hookups? They're pretty fucking empty, by design. Even LTR's are meant to augment your life by giving you a partner in achieving your goals; an LTR on its own isn't going to give you

satisfaction. A lot of guys think that if they could just git gud with women, then they'd be happy. That if they could be the coolest and most attractive guy in the room, then they'll be satisfied with their lives. It doesn't work that way. Anyone who thinks that being on the most wanted list is the key to attaining existential satisfaction, is in for a rough surprise."

- If you hate yourself or do not value yourself it's because you give yourself no reason to value yourself. We don't just disrespect other people who are low value, but we disrespect ourselves for being low value. (Unless you suffer from narcissism.) If the bulk of your time goes on junk activities, you will be directionless. There will be no feedback loops in your life to give you self-esteem. There will be an absence of activity where you push yourself, see a small gain, get validated by your small gain and then feel the resulting pride that comes from being better at something and seeing yourself grow in some small way.
- As humans, our psychology has evolved around growing, flourishing, actualising. We are meant to live high input, high output. We desire growth and live for growth, for without growth we feel purposeless. In the absence of growth, we flounder. When junk activities start to comprise the majority of your time expenditure you rob yourself of the opportunity to grow. The higher your social value, the more you will come to value your time by merit of recognising your abilities and possessing a resulting self-respect as such. High value or not, we all have a finite amount of time until we die and every second wasted is a missed opportunity feeding into a sense of lethargy and mediocrity.
- Have a fun interesting life. Women will drift in and out based on that.
- Whenever possible, go with the decision that will make a good story.
- Unless you're entertaining a room, ask more than you tell. Everybody likes to talk about themselves.
- Build up some mystery. If she's been a good girl and you want to reward her, then text her to put on her red dress and be ready by 8.
- Nothing is as thrilling to women as that one Man with a Strong presence, intensity, focus.
- Talk slowly and deliberately, people will respect what you have to say. Don't ramble out a waterfall. Waiting to speak is almost NEVER a mistake.

- Walk slowly and deliberately, people will respect you. Don't run around like a nervous teenager who's late for class.
- Don't overdo the above things so as to make them comically artificial.
- Performing in front of a group of people is a panty dropper, the larger the group the better. Doesn't matter if you're giving a speech, doing stand up comedy, playing sports, acting in a play, teaching a class, leading a workshop, fronting a band, whatever. This works because it makes you the absolute center of attention. You are a man with a mission and you take your audience along for the ride. You have invested a lot of energy in yourself and that radiates to your audience. Through your performance you are "commanding" everyone and completely controlling the atmosphere. You appear powerful and important. Everyone in the room knows who you are, like a micro-celebrity. This presses all the social proof, preselection, and dominance buttons that women are wired with. You're also giving something of value ("positive energy") to the audience. Women like to be entertained by a man who knows what he's doing.
- Men will put on their best self to attract a woman, tie her down in a monogamous relationship and then expect her to love him "for who he really is" when reverting back to more unattractive behavior. Do this and women will hate you for it every single time. And they will make you pay. This is why the mentality of "getting women for the sake of getting women" is dangerous - you won't keep up your attractive lifestyle. If women are just a side-product of your attractive lifestyle, none of this disaster will happen.
- When a woman has locked you down in a committed relationship, she will instinctively try to push you towards becoming an unattractive slob. ("Betaization".) It is in the interest of her genes that your behavior be steered towards beta and away from alpha displays, because she wants to keep you as a provider.
- Feel free to pay more regard to the voices of men: not because women have nothing of value to say, but because you are part of a generation that was fed a diet rich in feminine imperative and poor in the balancing masculine view. We are a generation of men raised by women. You don't have to apologise for compensating your worldview. There are many uniquely male experiences that only other men can understand and help you deal with:

another reason why you need male friend groups.

- Women always get their emotional support from 10 different sources. Men tend to depend completely on their girlfriend. Don't do this, it makes you vulnerable.
- Any idea you're emotionally invested in becomes a grappling point for people trying to manipulate you. You're already desensitized to rational thinking by believing in something regardless of evidence, logic and common sense. So you can be made to believe and do other wrong things as well, as long as you are convinced those things will uphold your preferred comfortable world view.
- Not all opinions are equal, so don't value everyone's opinion. Some opinions are well-supported by evidence, others spring from emotional reasons and are enforced by shaming tactics. Always acknowledge what people say as a courtesy, this makes them feel personally acknowledged and avoids unnecessary fights. Acknowledging someone's right to an opinion does not mean you have to give it any weight in your own thought processes, of which you are the undisputed boss. People have a right to free speech; you have a right not to listen to the ramblings of an idiot.
- When you're getting lots of flak it means you're right over the target. If people get really pissed off when certain things are mentioned, you know they don't just disagree - they have an emotional and/or social reason for disagreeing and trying to shut down the conversation.
- Getting drawn into debates with emotionally vested people is like throwing pearls in front of swines. For every rationalization you spend 10 minutes disproving, they will make up another one in 10 seconds. Remember, logic has to follow rules that rationalizations can shit all over. You'll just spend the rest of your life meticulously mopping up other people's shit - and they have no reason to stop shitting. If someone needs to believe something in order to keep their self-image alive, they will. Don't let such idiots with an agenda ruin your day.
- You can fight lies with truth, but it takes 10x more energy to disprove a lie than to make one. That's why the more effective way of dealing with lies is through power. Be willing to cut people who lie to you out of your life, and be the kind of person that people don't want to lose.

- Get rid of your obsession with being right. Being right means nothing. Whether or not people acknowledge you depends more on your social skills and popularity than on the validity of your argument. Getting overly worked up about an argument only harms you because you're losing frame. Always ask yourself: what's in it for me, what is to be gained if I start an argument now? Are there any better ways I can achieve my objective? (Demonstrating instead of explicating comes to mind.) Your objective shouldn't just be to "be right" about something. That's childish.
- Sometimes some insecure cunt will directly challenge you in a social setting (i.e., with an audience). This is a dick move. Their goal is usually to get their feelings validated by an external source. ("If I can kick this guy's ass while he tries defending the idea that women tend to be less funny than men, then I'll have beaten my insecurities and proven to the evil world that I AM FUNNY!") Your goal in this case is to get out of the encounter with your social status and image intact. To do that, DON'T enter an honest and elaborate argument with the idiot (unless you do it so eloquently that the audience is instantly swayed to your side). The insecure cunt would rather escalate, try to draw you into a screaming match, and resort to other dishonest tactics than admit that they are wrong - because to them, admitting they're wrong is like admitting that their emotional insecurities are real and valid. Instead of debating, which they expect you to do, agree and amplify. This throws them off balance. Make the rationalization hamster choke on its own bullshit. Recognize that this isn't a real discussion, it's a power game disguised as a discussion - and play it as such.
- You can tell the size of a man by the things that bother him. Don't ever get angry at an opinion, theory or piece of information. Only emotionally vested people do that: apparently you feel that, if you leave the offending communication unchecked, it gives credence to something that emotionally hurts you. (See points above - don't be that guy.) If you feel anger over information or opinions, investigate what insecurity it touches and privately work on fixing that instead.
- Suppose you were a woman. You'd then have the option of selectively tuning in to all the voices in society that advocate female oppression and all the other things that offend you. This is what feminists do. They ignore that

there are many other voices in society advocating the opposite. For ANY existing position, you will find someone broadcasting it. So as a man, don't make that same mistake by tuning in ONLY to the voices of misandry. Society is a wide spectrum of many different voices. It's okay to just ignore some. Remain conscious of the ongoing power games (where the real decisions come from) rather than the ongoing debates.

- When Republican test subjects were shown self-contradictory quotes by George W. Bush and when Democratic test subjects were shown self-contradictory quotes by John Kerry, both groups tended to explain away the apparent contradictions in a manner biased to favor their candidate of choice. Similarly, areas of the brain responsible for reasoning did not respond during these conclusions while areas of the brain controlling emotions showed increased activity. When subjects were subsequently presented with information that exonerated their candidate of choice, areas of the brain involved in reward processing showed increased activity. "None of the circuits involved in conscious reasoning were particularly engaged. Essentially, it appears as if partisans twirl the cognitive kaleidoscope until they get the conclusions they want. Everyone may reason to emotionally biased judgments when they have a vested interest in how to interpret 'the facts.'"
- Arguments are only decided by reason when there are no interests at stake. When there are parties with stakes in the argument, it will always be decided by power and manipulation. Certain facts, statistics and pieces of research will be unmentionable. Participants in the conversation will be shamed into submission.
- Society needs to actively push the blue pill propaganda of settling down and being a good provider husband. If society let everyone be honest to their sons about Alpha Fucks/Beta Bucks and the competition for being a top male, then no work would ever get done, most children would be fatherless and we'd still be living in mud huts. No amount of debating and logical arguments is going to change any of this. The stakes are too high. Propaganda is not about truthfulness, it's a power game. You cannot win this one.
- People always got married and especially stayed married for practical

reasons. Forget the fairytale foolishness.

- If your wife tells you that she's "with you not because you're the best at sex, but because you're the best overall, you're better than those other guys at a 1000 other things, and sex isn't the end all of a relationship" then that means her Sexual Selection system doesn't see you as any good, but you can do other things well for her (buy her shit, listen to her rants, etc.). Genetically, you're still a low value mate in her eyes.
- Be aware that many people are deceived by their own subconscious, which is an evolved mental mechanism that enables them to more effectively deceive others (you). People lie, and often even believe their own lies. Be firmly grounded in your own reality so you don't take shit from anyone. "As men grow more attuned to the threat of cuckoldry, women should get better at convincing a man that their adoration borders on awe, their fidelity on the saintly. And they may partly convince themselves too, just for good measure. Indeed, given the calamitous fallout from infidelity uncovered -- likely desertion by the offended male, and possible violence -- female self-deception may be finely honed. It could be adaptive for a married woman to not feel chronically concerned with sex, even if her unconscious mind is keeping track of prospects and will notify her when ardor is warranted." (*The Moral Animal* by Richard Wright, Chapter 3, What Else Do Women Want?)
- Humans in general are terrible at predicting their own future choices, feelings, performance, actions and reactions to situations. We're great at explaining them afterwards, and that 20/20 hindsight makes us overestimate how well we understand ourselves.
- What people tell you about themselves is especially unreliable. As any psychologist or sociologist will tell you, self-reporting is one of the most inaccurate ways to gather information on people's inner lives. Why? Because people believe what they want to believe or need to believe about themselves in order to function. Self-image is often completely out of touch with reality. And I haven't even touched on the possibility that people will sometimes CONSCIOUSLY make false statements on their feelings because they know it is in their advantage to deceive others.
- If a chick EVER insists that you don't need a condom: baby rabies. She may



not consciously plan it, but it's a manifestation of her "body agenda".

- A person is not a coherent, homogenous unit or an indivisible entity. One brain is a mixture of many different cognitive processes, and they sometimes contradict each other. One of these processes may verbally interact with you, while another sends a completely different message non-verbally, while yet another thinks something of you and doesn't communicate it at all.
- When she says she loves you, there is a part of her that doesn't mean it. What she says and what she does are handled by two different departments. They usually exchange information (not always), but they have distinct purposes. Evolution has made sure that each department's protocols, methods and information channels are optimized for its specific purpose. The speech department's end-game is certainly NOT honesty and promotion of truth. The mate-selection department, on the other hand, does want to work with information as accurate as possible. That's why it operates subconsciously - it picks up on queues and uses methods that the speech department is not aware of, because such conscious awareness would interfere with its purpose of spinning the most convenient and convincing narrative. This is why she will never tell you that she judges your performance - but subconsciously, she does. It's just done in another department.
- Don't listen to what she says, look at what she does.
- So your girlfriend is asking if she can go have drinks with her ex? Most men will not tell her directly "I don't want you to do that", instead they'll beat around the bush because they want HER to take the initiative to decline the invitation, because SHE doesn't want to have drinks. The typical boyfriend will say things like "I don't want to hold you back from your friends", and "I can tell you want to go, so go". The deeper problem here is that no amount of conversation will ever reveal what her true intentions are. She doesn't really know those herself! Her brain's Motivation/Desire department operates subconsciously, and her brain's Speech/Propaganda department doesn't get to look at the actual meeting notes. The Desire department just presents the Propaganda department with a done deal, an already made decision (i.e. a feeling) and then gives it the job to come up with a plausible reason to sell the decision. Whatever you ask her, she'll give you a Propaganda story that she herself also believes. The only solution? You need

to look at her ACTIONS. The fact that she is interested in having those drinks, says enough.

- When you start dating a girl you might have kids with, make it clear through casual conversation early on that you WILL insist on a paternity test. She's not okay with that? You bail.
- She wants to feel some passion, she wants to feel like a woman, she feels like the romance is gone, she wants to feel wanted... No matter how she dresses up her desires to hide their true nature, they still invariably involve the man carrying the weight of taking the lead so that the woman can enjoy the experience. Dancing is an inherently sexist activity based on the traditional roles of the pursuing male predator and the flighty female prize.
- When a girl is desperate to keep a long-term relationship, she may decide to suppress, sublime, bury and hide any inclinations that make the boyfriend uncomfortable. For example, any time he mentions that he doesn't like girls who want to be dominated by a strong, confident man - she pretends to him AND to herself that she's not like that. But one day a guy will show up who tickles those urges she thought she got rid of, and next thing you know she's that girl who "didn't know what got into her". Girls who lie about their instinctive urges (also to themselves) are not relationship material.
- She talks to do damage control and soothe your instinctive suspicious feeling, not to convey accurate/honest information.
- Girls who are insecure and lack self-awareness are cheating dangers. If she's in denial about anything, especially about her attraction to dominant men, that makes her susceptible to manipulation. It means she isn't really in control of herself because she doesn't know which triggers drive her. So if you make an observation about something in her behavior (e.g. you fillet me every time I mention a female colleague, but you call me jealous when I ask why you're going to dinner with a male one) and she vehemently denies it, that's a red flag. She has just shown a capability for sticking her head in the sand about her own behavior, which is a very useful skill for cheaters.
- There are two kinds of women: the ones that get hot and bothered for the exciting bad boys who passionately sweep them off their feet, and the ones that don't admit it to themselves so they can keep up the "good girl" image. If you can't deal with this fact, then you shouldn't be in a relationship.

- There are two kinds of men: the ones that fall for women primarily based on their looks, and the ones that don't admit it to themselves so they can keep up the "good guy" image. You should freely admit how important sexual passion is to you.
- Men pretend that a girl has an interesting and valuable personality so they can get sex from her; women pretend that a guy is sexually attractive so they can get emotional and financial support from him. Women can then find an actually sexually attractive man who will fuck them on the side; but men cannot find an actually interesting woman who will also care for them on the side. This is why relationships have an unequal playing field.
- Girls want the cheeky, cocky guy who's fun to be around, and who makes them feel like they must have done amazingly to attain such a guy. Keep that up and she will feel like she has to continue doing amazingly to keep you around. She wants someone she can be proud of, someone that other women want. The guy who shares his feelings with women, is uninteresting. Mystery is food for the hamster, it will make it spin up all kinds of stories about you.
- If you're not exciting and entertaining and stimulating, she's going to get excitement and entertainment and stimulation somewhere else. Since she's a girl, exciting and entertaining and stimulating experiences are given to her free of charge by "those guys" who "just enjoy some harmless joking around, just for fun" (but of course they only do this with girls). This will never change. You either adapt or stop dating.
- Did some guy own the room and make all the girls drool, right in front of your girlfriend? Even if you're Orlando Bloom, one day Justin Bieber will do that to you.
- A relationship is a job for a man and a lifestyle for a woman. As a man, you don't get to relax and "just be in love" - that's a luxury only women get to enjoy, just like being allowed to cry in public. A man in a relationship has to be on top of shit all the time, or face serious consequences. She latches on to him, not the other way around. He leads the dance, she gets to let go and immerse herself in the experience. If you aren't this man for her, someone else will be.
- Women are dream killers. Cautiously indulge in them sporadically. Do it on

your own fucking terms. Your mission comes first. Focus on women too much, and they will drain your energy. Don't be a fucking pussy-begging idiot. Don't look for a replacement mommy. You are more important than the pussy your dick needs to fuck occasionally.

- All women want to be fucked by confident masculine men, particularly at certain times of the month. If she is together with a "provider" man who just isn't like that, you can bet good money that she's getting alpha cock on the side.
- When you are trying to discover the real sexual past of a potential LTR, you must seem like the non-judgmental guy who thinks there is nothing wrong with being a slut. She must think you are okay with marrying a retired stripper. It's the only way she might let you know the truth.
- She looks innocent? It means nothing. Remember all the innocent girls who had boyfriends that were all over you anyway.
- A girl who is desperate for a relationship will put on her best behavior when the boyfriend or boyfriend material is around. What you need to find out is how she behaves when (she thinks) you're NOT around.
- Sluts will go through the motions of sex, almost robotically. They're just following a well-known script. Sex is nothing special for them, it's often just a means to get what they really want (e.g. keeping you around as a provider). They'll tell you "all this is yours, I'm only for you" when they undress, but it will sound artificial, like an act, like she doesn't really believe it herself, it's just a motion she goes through because she knows it's what you want to hear and it'll get her a nice boyfriend. By contrast, with women who don't easily put out, when they do - you know they really want it. Those girls will be genuinely giddy at the prospect of sex with you.
- That information about her partner history is not important. In fact, it is so unimportant she will lie to everyone, and ask her friends to lie for her too, to keep that unimportant information from ever reaching a man she wants to marry someday. That is how unimportant that information is. She's absolutely not ashamed of it, that's why she doesn't want to talk about it. I once killed a few hookers on a coke binge and I'm not ashamed of it either but I do not tell my girlfriend because honestly it's none of her business. That's who I was then. This is who I am now.

- "If you are planning to build your future with me, your past is 100% my business. Why? Because I want it to be my business. Don't like it? Don't build your future with me. Feel free to leave." Live life on your own terms. Don't settle. Don't get settled for.
- Someone's past behavior is the best predictor of her future behavior.
- "Girl, people who judge your human worth based off of your number are jackasses. But guys who just aren't ATTRACTED to you because of it will make up a significant portion of your prospects. And they're allowed to feel that way. Don't fall into the trap of hiding it just so that you can end up with a guy who doesn't actually like you. In a sense, you do have to accept that your dating pool is reduced, but you'll be happier finding someone who is entirely not bothered by promiscuity, even if that's harder."
- Every age has its taboo topics. Ours is no exception. We are now free to discuss how the earth revolves around the sun, but there are other ideas that cannot even be brought up. Don't let societal shaming discourage you from believing and working with the evidence you see. Be firmly grounded in your own reality which you have investigated carefully.
- "The decadent tactic and regressive culture of constantly claiming offence whilst projecting a facade of calling for tolerance and respect is nothing but pure hypocrisy, opportunism, egotism, arrogance, dishonesty, insecurity, narcissism, ignorance and the manipulative lust for power and control over others."
- Just because you feel offended doesn't mean I did anything wrong.
- If you put it out there, I get to look at it.
- The famous Pavlov's Dog experiment, part two: they rang the bell, then alternated between beating the dog and giving it food. The dogs entered neurosis and many broke down. This is what happens to men nowadays: women send subtle ambiguous signals of interest, then when a man approaches he sometimes gets praised for his "confidence" and "initiative", but other times gets shamed and reprimanded for being a "creep." Do not allow women to ring the bell of Female Sexual Signals and then Beat the Men that respond to it.
- Men being overly confused and careful about female sexuality serves one purpose: it raises the value of female sexuality, and thus enhances women's

power in society.

- Whether or not women are offended by overt displays of female sexuality, mainly depends on one thing: is it classy, or not? "Cheap" displays of female sexuality (e.g., attached to an advertisement for a \$5 cologne) are misogynist. "Expensive" displays of female sexuality (e.g., attached to an advertisement for \$500 jewelry) are "celebrations". The reason? Women want to see the price of their sexuality remain high. It has to be something exclusive, so that they can hold on to the leverage of having something expensive that others desire.
- In practice, communism is over in China. Reality caught up with them. But you can't explicitly say that there, because so many Chinese are still emotionally invested in the concept. So the "Communist Party" and its symbols are kept alive, even though it's not really communist anymore. The same will happen to feminism.
- Like communism, abolishing sex roles is a noble goal in theory, but it just doesn't work in practice because of human nature.
- Know and expect that hamsters are gonna hamst. The closer a topic gets to sensitive existential matters such as status, love, sex, gender roles etc. the more self-deceiving bullshit you're going to hear. Pick your battles wisely: you don't have to confront every taboo and every hamster publicly. Accept that it is part of human nature that there will always be emotionally or politically motivated bullshit proclaimed in public without challenge, and that it is not your job to correct this. Instead, use taboo knowledge internally in your own mind as a strategy that not everyone is aware of. If you feel the need, discuss it in private with good, stable friends who are on the same page as you. Don't try to defuse every single false truth: there will never be a utopia where humans don't engage in collective self-deception on a massive scale. Self-deception serves a function on some level and society cannot function without it.
- The masses cannot be manipulated easily; but they can be manipulated utterly.
- When you consider how the masses are manipulated by propaganda, you will understand how futile it is to assign any value to the opinion of a stranger (on the internet or otherwise). Hold his arguments in zero regard

until he has proven his intellectual merit. (That includes your own arguments.) Whenever you meet a random person online, the chances are much higher that he is using "arguments" to fight his own insecurities, rather than for the sake of actually finding truth. The only reason you should pay attention to the brainwashed masses is to probe which way the current wind blows - so you can smartly adjust your behavior accordingly.

- Women are the safest demographic in society, they have special laws and services specifically protecting them. Men have specific responsibilities such as conscription. So don't let any woman make you feel guilty for your "privilege".
- In most public situations it's better to be to-the-point and funny than elaborate. Nobody in the bar has the time or interest to listen to a 30-minute monologue that meticulously covers all angles of a debate. Agree and amplify. Take the example of Patrice O'Neal. When hamsters are spewing their rationalisations, just laugh and shrug. Display amused mastery: you're above that topic and have no need to discuss it, because you are comfortable in your reality.
- Be unapologetically manly. Don't let random people with an agenda (feminists) dictate your view of reality. Instead, look at men who fully embrace their masculine power without shame, and see the benefits they get for it. Most people enjoy being around these confident, assertive, charismatic and skilled guys, don't they? People will RESPECT you for it, women will defend you for it if you come across as genuine and non-bitter. Women even defended Patrice O'Neal. <http://nymag.com/news/features/patrice-oneal-2012-5/>
- If you try to please everybody, you will end up pleasing nobody. If you defend yourself against everybody's complaints, you will die frustrated.
- Don't justify yourself to people who have already decided on their opinion of you.
- If women were anything like men, then sending a woman a photograph of your erect dick would be a good way to get laid.
- Women think they want to be treated amazingly by someone amazing. Seems obvious, right? However, women will think that a guy is much less "amazing" once he starts doing tons of romantic shit for her. Therefore, one

must treat women "okay" in order to keep them interested in the possibility that they might eventually earn the "amazing" treatment. A man's reward should be proportional, and short in duration.

- If you're not bitter about it, you can get a lot of people to acknowledge Red Pill truths. Entrenched debates ensue mostly when women feel like you're pushing a bitter retaliatory strike on them, painting them as the bad guys. It makes all the difference if you're not bitter but just interested in the way the world works (and willing to accept that).
- Feminism is an equality-disguised expression of the oldest, most fundamental, principle of the human condition: Eggs are valuable. Sperm is cheap. Women matter by default. Men matter only when they have proven their worth.
- Treat women the way other women treat them. In other words, no chivalry.
- A woman's mother is a good indication of how she will become later, both physically and mentally.
- A girl who is not marriage material when she is young will never be marriage material. Don't believe the myth of the "reformed slut".
- Girls of every age are the manipulators far more often than they are the manipulated.
- Unconditional love does not exist. She does not love you for no reason. Being with you gets her something: whether that be domestic bliss contentment or OMG-I-can't-believe-this-is-real excitement, that's up to you. Men have to pay the admission price. Only women get to pay this entry fee with their bodies, and even they have to bring something more to the table for high-quality men. (Be that man who doesn't put up with everything just because of her pussy.)
- Be aware of the female Emma Bovary mating strategy. ("Alpha fucks, beta bucks.") The perfect relationship where two people form a team with completely united goals is impossible. Most of your goals will align, but there will always be diverging interests. For more information, read *The Moral Animal* by Richard Wright.
- Love is the feeling you get when you think you can't do any better. That's why love is a bluffing game. There will always be younger, better looking, smarter, richer, more interesting people out there than you. So how is it that



seemingly regular men are able to make get extremely attractive women to fall head over heels in love with them? Because they are able to convince these women that they are the one with higher value. The minute a woman senses that her value has exceeded her partner's, he's more or less dead to her hindbrain. This is why the beta/BP mindset is so stupid. It asserts that if I hang around long enough, and kiss enough ass, I will eventually be rewarded with some chick's undying love. All those other guys she fucks in the meantime are just "phases." Sit around and wait around long enough and you'll eventually get her without having to work on being a quality guy! But even though the 35 year old chick's value has drastically dropped, she STILL won't love the beta because he will continuously put himself below her, even if his true SMV is higher.

- If you're not exciting and stimulating, the only reason any girl would want to be with you is for your stability.
- Being in charge costs more energy than following because of choice fatigue. The choices you have to make or questions you have to answer during the day fatigue your brain. Even something as simple as choosing what to wear is stressful, which is why Mark Zuckerberg wears the same outfit everyday. The most basic and common fights start when someone asks "so what do you want to have for dinner?" It stresses people out when they have to take the responsibility of making decisions.
- Choice fatigue is why girls actually like it when you simply tell them what to do, instead of asking.
- Don't invest your energy directly in women. Invest it in yourself and let it radiate from you towards women. (E.g., invest in becoming a musician, then perform.)
- Instead of using your energy to aim a tractor beam at a specific girl, invest your energy in yourself so that YOU grow. Eventually girls will be pulled in just by your gravity, without much active work on your part. You won't have pursued her, everything will happen because that's "just who you are".
- An investment in yourself is always a smart decision, but the more you invest in someone else, the more you stand to lose when they leave. Investing in someone else just makes you more dependent on them.
- You'll never have a 100% guarantee that she won't become a net negative

influence on your life, e.g., by cheating, or abusing you, or neglecting you, or talking shit about you behind your back, or leeching off your energy without reciprocating. You do have a 100% guarantee that YOU will be faithful to yourself. So invest your energy in yourself, not in her. You can cut her out of your life when necessary, but you will always have to live with yourself.

- "Man suffers only because he takes seriously what the gods made for fun." (Alan Wilson Watts) Don't take women too seriously, and don't value them too highly. They don't deserve a pedestal. Amused mastery is your friend.
- Take women off the pedestal. They have turn ons just like us but instead of tits and ass it's power and fame. If you've ever had a friend with a bit of fame, he can tell you how women are completely disgusting pigs. They are worse than perverted men in their desperation. It just takes an elite male to bring it out of them. They're sexual beings with near limitless sexual options, and that makes them nastier and freakier than you can imagine. How sober would you be if you lived in a liquor store and the owner said, "everything's a dollar!". You should have seen the 20 to 30 year old women at a concert by Mr Handsome Jake Owen. It's like they're fucking hypnotized, swooning like 12 year olds. There's an old dude on the crew who goes around collecting bras and panties after each gig. And Jake Owen really makes it rain underwear.
- When a girl says she's a "freak in bed" that means she wants to be TREATED freakishly, not that she wants to ACT like a freak. Actually girls aren't wild animals themselves, they are LOOKING FOR a wild animal to fuck them.
- With the right kind of guy, every woman wants to be submissive in bed. This is the kind of sex they enjoy the most, but also feel most ashamed about.
- If she doesn't enjoy being dominated by you in bed, then you're either not "that guy" or she's not feeling comfortable enough to trust you with that desire. For most girls, your dominance is only enjoyable when it is credible: if you're shorter and weaker than her she KNOWS she could overpower you and that's a turnoff.
- Unable to get in a sexually dominant state of mind? Don't enjoy degrading

her? You unlock this ability in your mind outside of the bedroom, when you start experiencing being "that guy" who charms all the girls. That's when they fall off the pedestal that keeps you from dominating them. You have to experience this power flip: first the girls could make you or break you with one word, now it's the other way around.

- Your girl is replaceable; your reputation is not. Girls get feelings for a guy when they see how much other girls are into him. So if you let your girl disrespect you, e.g., by being the guy who gets cheated on for 2 months, that sends the subconscious message that you're dating out of your league and you're not that great of a catch after all. You'll find that girls somehow don't dig you anymore when you have this reputation.
- <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24907050>
- <http://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0022103109001048>
- You cannot expect a woman to be your true confidant, your soul-mate, and your respite to lean upon during the stormy times in life. Hypergamy dictates that if you want her to be attracted to you, you have to take up the leading role. If she loses confidence in and respect for you, she will go about illustrating her resentment by making your life as miserable as she possibly can. This may be one of the hardest lessons for a man to learn in life because it turns the whole notion of modern love as an equal give-and-take relationship upon its rear. The implications can be rather depressing, as it means that on a certain level a man will always be alone. A parent who expects their child to be their equal friend to lean upon for support, will also find himself sorely disappointed. The child instinctively expects the parents to be superior and to cater to her needs. The reverse will only result in a resentful child and a heartbroken parent. Although a child really likes hearing that she is as mature as an adult (and thus can go to bed as late as she wants), she merely wants lip-service: the moment you start actually holding her to adult responsibilities, resentment kicks in.
- When your girlfriend calls and acts all sad or upset for no reason, the worst thing you can do is take her seriously and make a big deal out of it. She is looking for someone to take the pressure off. She is looking at you to take her hand and ground her in reality. So if you take her sadness seriously, then the message she receives is that there apparently really is a good reason for

her to be sad! I'm not saying you should dismiss her emotions. You're walking a thin line: on one hand you need to acknowledge how she feels and make her feel understood, but on the other hand you need to be the cheerful optimistic guy so she can join you in that state of mind. What she wants to see is a man who understands how she feels, but who knows and shows that it's going to be all right. So you distract her and show her the good sides of life by telling an engaging story, dancing with her, whatever works for you.

- Don't let overly needy women abuse you and suck the energy out of you. Like children, you support and guide them, but you do hold them to a certain standard of self-reliance. If she's calling you crying about something every day, don't be her Oak Tree. You have better things to do.
- If a lot of women want to fuck a man, it means he is in the top 20% most attractive men. If a lot of men want to fuck a woman, it means she is a woman. This is why male sluts are respected.
- If men could spend one day in a woman's body... they'd fuck half the town and be frustrated with how cold their hands and feet keep getting. If women could spend one day in a man's body... they'd walk out of the house feeling like they own the world, ready to finally be the privileged fucker who gets to objectify women and conquer them with his dick. Then they'd fail horribly at seducing anyone, be surprised at how nobody gives a shit when they walk into a bar, be upset at how invisible they are and how nobody cares, and be insulted at how entitled and superior women suddenly act. After 23h of this shit they'd be so frustrated at their utter inability to get laid, that they'd haul their miserable asses to a whore house since it's the only way they could get any action.
- Every time a woman exercises her "independence" at the expense of her man, she is sabotaging her own sexual attraction to him. Every time a man meekly defers to his wife, submitting to all her decisions, he squashes his own sex life.
- Little boys get browbeat by women and on television they see grown men browbeat by women. Many have fathers browbeaten by their wives. It can make men never realize that the rope tying their foot to a post was only strong in their youth. Now that you're a grown man, try saying something edgy to a girl. On a date and she's on her phone instead of making an effort

at conversation? "Wow you're really interesting." She: "really, you think so?" You: "No! Not really." Then you'll see that the female wrath you feared so much, is not so powerful anymore now that you are a valued man.

- Low SMV guys can't win by mate guarding harder. It simply confirms their low SMV. The ONLY strategy worth pursuing is to gain status, get a toned body, cultivate passion in some talents, then have your girlfriend/wife see how many other women are interested in you.
- What girls tell you about themselves often does not match up with their actual behavior. What they tell you is how they would like to see themselves; how they behave is how they really are. For example, she gives you the impression that she's strong, shows you her black belt in martial arts, saying she can defend herself. Then when she hears a noise in the middle of the night, she gets scared and will feel protected only if you take charge of the situation. (But she can't verbalize this and hence won't tell you explicitly.) If you don't take charge and instead expect her to follow up on her words, she may feel resentment towards you that she herself cannot rationally understand. The underlying question her subconscious is asking you: "Are you confident enough in your understanding of the world and of me, that you know what will make me feel happy and safe better than I do?" She wants you to "just get it", despite all the misinformation. Her emotions operate by the rule that, if you have to be taught how to be an attractive man, you're not the real deal.
- The unicorn girl whose ultimate thrill is to just cuddle at home with her reliable but boring partner doesn't exist. Sure, many girls choose to cuddle at home with such a guy. That doesn't make them unicorns, because their hindbrains will still respond well to the excitement of being taken along on an exciting guy's adventure. They're still women, they're still hypergamous, and they still follow the Bovary strategy (AF/BB). Social status is a big factor of attraction for women. If you want her to be sexually attracted to you, you will have to be exciting and stimulating. End of story. If you're boring, you will at best be the provider guy with her PRETENDING that she thinks you're hot.
- So you've seduced many women, but "this one is different". What's different about it? That she's yours? Please. You gamed her, but any guy with similar

skills can do the same thing.

- Women pick the men that get to have their pick of the girls. It's like they collectively elect a few Kings among all the men, and then each woman hopes that one such King will choose HER of all women to be his Queen.
- Women hate stable, unless it is the stable Beta Bucks that allows her to seek Alpha Fucks.
- She desires and pushes for you to become consistent and predictable. This is her version of conquering. If she never feels like she's conquered you, she will always want you. These are the women who will make a big show of saying, "Ok, I'm done having all this sex with you. I've found a guy who can be a good provider and father, he treats me right and pays for all our dates and brings me flowers. I'm going to start a new life with him." And a month or two later, she's back in your bed screaming because there's just something so "magnetic" about you and she "can't figure you out."
- A woman would rather be beaten to death than bored to death. Seen on a confessions website: "My husband suffers from PTSD and used to hit me. Now we're in counselling together and we are doing great a year later. But I secretly miss the aggressive, passionate sex we used to have before the meds mellowed him out so much."
- If you're fit, successful, socially apt, and in possession of useful and interesting skills and hobbies, you should be able to have a decent life without women. Women would rather line up to be the gravy on your awesome life than be the main course, featured on the otherwise empty plate of a loser.
- The era when men courted women is over. We're in the age of building attraction and escalating that into sex. You don't do that by being a gentleman, you do it by being fun and exciting and stimulating and mysterious and impressive and challenging and maybe a little dangerous.
- Don't look for a mother-figure in your partners. Instead, become your own father figure. Find that parental authority and stability in yourself.
- If the boyfriend insists on being vulnerable, some women switch into caretaker mode, and that destroys all sexual chemistry. A woman may enjoy the process of discovering a man's vulnerabilities (so she can set her hooks in him) but she doesn't want the full level of responsibility. Her man is her

rock & oak tree, not her child needing nurturing and protection. She wants to be the little girl. The man being emotionally dependent on the woman is the worst place for him to be in.

- When a girl feels her passion for a guy waning, she will slowly emotionally detach herself from her boyfriend over the course of months. During all those months she'll never mention anything to the guy. She's covertly preparing for a break that is as easy on her as possible. When she's finally ready to tell him it's over (which is usually when she is sufficiently assured that a new guy is interested), she can immediately move on.
- Don't immediately confront someone when you are suspicious or have a small amount of unclear evidence. They will become more private, secretive and learn how to hide things better.
- When a cheating girl gets caught, she often first scrambles to try and make it official with the hot lover. Usually that fails, and then she crawls back trying to patch things up with the original beta boyfriend, the safe backup plan. Anything is better than being alone.
- The absolute worst thing you can do to a girl is "nothing" her: zero emotional reaction, utter abandonment. If you get angry, she will use that to spin her internal narrative so that she isn't the bad guy. She only cheated because you are angry and abusive. But if you give her the perfect poker face and only 4 or 5 chillingly calm words, she will have very little ammunition to use when trying to fight her own guilt. That's what will destroy a girl inside.
- When a woman fails at climbing the corporate ladder or at launching her career as a comedian, she can blame sexism and the glass ceiling. When a man fails, he is not allowed to blame anything but himself. Men are expected to succeed against all odds, and it has always been this way. Failure in a woman is considered as "not so bad", because at least she still is a (valuable) woman.
- Your girlfriend fears and/or doesn't like your mother because your mother knows what kind of shit she pulled on your father, and fucking nobody is allowed to do that to her son.
- Society protects women without question and rejects, or at least abandons, men who cannot protect themselves. Also without question.

- The world is not looking out for you. Even your own tribe isn't looking out for you, they are looking out for their women and children and expect you to do the same. When a woman accuses you of rape with no evidence except her word against yours, who will everyone believe? This is the lot a man has to bear in life. To compensate for it, life made you less emotional and more capable than those women who need protection.
- Every cooperation, partnership or pair bond exists because both parties derive benefit from it. The partnership is possible because most of your interests align: in 80% of the cases, what's best for her is also best for you. But for the other 20%, there is a mismatch of interests: either party A benefits at the cost of B, or party B benefits at the cost of A. This sets the stage for a tug of war where both parties try to fine tune the details of the partnership to their benefit. Usually, the person who is the least dependent on the partnership (most willing to blow it up) wins the 20%. Although both parties benefit, the winning party benefits more.
- Nobody has your interests on priority #1 except you. Your parents have your interests on #2 or #3 (after their own, which usually align with yours). Your partner also subconsciously prioritizes your interests after her own and her family's.
- In every couple, one person is always slightly pining while the other is settling.
- "Once you accept women for what they are you will learn to appreciate them in ways you never dreamed possible before. The way a real smile differs from the fake shit you get every day. The way her body just seems to slide perfectly into your favorite sexual position because she's realized what you like. The way she responds when you remain stoic in the face of her capricious whims. Women are great if you let them be."
- Trust your instincts. Your gut feeling is usually right about shady girl behavior. Your brain tries to deny it, because that's how you have been conditioned by the feminine imperative. The blue pill dream says: women are noble loving honest creatures, she would never do such a thing. She deserves your trust so you should definitely not investigate these red flags. Instead talk to her about your worries. (So that she can go ahead and hide the evidence.) If you see the red flags and refuse to believe she's cheating on



you, I know a Nigerian prince who's got a great business opportunity.

- Society spends most of your life programming you to ignore your instincts. "You're just being untrusting, you should trust her", "That's just irrational, I'm sure there is a logical explanation and you'll laugh about it", but yet, when these suspect things happen it seems there is always fire to the smoke. Most guys have a fairly good understanding of what is real and what is just being irrational, but the world has a habit of telling them that their observations aren't real. The human brain runs millions of calculations a second, most of which we'll never consciously be aware of. Just me standing in my kitchen, holding my phone and typing this is nothing short of amazing. When your brain/instincts/guts tell you to run, just fucking run.
- "You're making a big deal out of it; it's just a phone number!" That shit IS a big deal if you say it is.
- If there's an asshole guy in her life and it's not you - watch out. If he were a loser who acted like an ass she'd just call him a loser. The fact that she calls him an asshole means that she cares about how he treats her. She longs to be treated well by him, because she values him on some level. The chase is on.
- When it comes to relationships, your end goal is not to keep your girlfriend/wife with you. Your end goal is to keep a high SMV (sexual market value). A high SMV ensures that your girl will stay, and if not, that you will find another one. With a low SMV, even if she stays, it won't be genuine (since she won't be attracted to you) and you'll constantly fear losing her. So even in a relationship, your focus should be to maintain and increase your SMV.
- Reputation is everything. When people try to fuck you over, be prepared to cut them out of your life or fight them if necessary. If you establish a reputation as a pushover, you become a target for bad things. The opposite is also true: when people treat you well, be willing to reward them generously. (But don't reward people for no reason.) If you establish a reputation as a generous friend, you become a target for good things. So tip well in a restaurant, for example.
- You teach people how to treat you. If somebody pulls a trick on you and you don't call them out on it, you're sending the message that this is normal.
- You teach people how to value you. If you have internalized the belief that women are superior creatures, you'll supplicate to your girlfriend and shower

her with attention. She will get the message that you're not such a catch after all, and your attention will be like water to her: she takes it for granted, but gets upset when it stops freely flowing in her direction.

- Waterworks are easy for a girl and years of experience have taught her that when she cries, people will come to her aid and give her what she wants. The correct answer to her "I'm sorry" is "What are you going to do to prevent this from happening again?"
- When a woman likes a man, she looks up to him and treats him like a king, yearning for his approval. All the other men she looks down on and expects them to reverentially kiss her ass, treat her like the queen she is, etc.
- When a woman likes a man, she's constantly trying to prove herself to him, afraid that he'll think of her as childish, not good enough, pathetic, and so forth. Her fear originates in PROJECTION, because that is exactly how she looks down on the lowly guys that like her, and how she thinks those guys should be behaving towards her.
- Donald Rumsfeld said once that weakness is provocative. Women understand and respect power when they see it, and will then allow themselves to treat you reasonably. If they see a lack of it, they will not stop themselves from using you for free meals, free rides, and so forth.
- People's feelings are always in the present. They care less about your past failures to achieve than you think. If you show up successful the next time, that will be the reality they remember the most. Past success is not a guarantee for the future, but likewise past failure does not doom you forever. For example if you've failed to answer people's messages for a few days, if you get back on track they'll have forgotten about it in no-time.
- Being a man is a high risk game - you either win big, or you lose big. You're either a hero or a zero. You can either engage in the harsh competition, or be a chump.
- "Rules are for the obedience of fools and the guidance of wise men." Rules exist for pragmatic rather than absolute moral reasons. They are pragmatic because they benefit whoever instated them or pushed for them, more often than they are harmful. Some rules are meant to be broken by a certain selection of people who qualify. For example, when an unattractive man initiates a flirt with a woman at work, he is a "creep" and may get reported

for harassment. When the man is attractive, it's extra hot to her because he was so confident that the risk of getting reported did not repel him. In this case, the rule against harassment serves as a filter to weed out unattractive guys - it owes its existence to that pragmatic effect, while the morals that people cite (and believe!) are only used to justify it. If they really believed in those morals, they would also report the attractive guy to HR. But instead they fuck him. Conclusion: the rules and morals are just tools.

- The rulebook should only be broken by people who have first understood and mastered it.
- Follow the small rules and you can break the big ones.
- Your body and mind are tools that need to be used and maintained with care. Don't abuse or overload them by endless exercise without rest. Endless thinking is also overloading! If you only care about it when it's broken, you don't deserve it at all.
- The same thing is true for your status and social standing. If you only care about it when it's broken, you don't deserve it at all.
- Eat well, don't forget the proteins. You will feel more energetic.
- You cannot control which thoughts pop up in your head, but you can control which thoughts get to stay to be taken seriously. Meditation teaches you to let thoughts appear and to immediately let them fly out of the back door again, without judging or engaging them.
- The veneer of civilization is thin. Look at how fast things get out of hand when a minor disaster strikes, let alone in places like Africa. That's why every man needs some experience with fighting and other primitive skills. It doesn't even take a disaster for you to be confronted with this part of human nature - just a night in a neighborhood with a lack of police, or a heated exchange in a bar. Don't fool yourself into thinking the state protects you 24/7. Don't fool yourself into thinking gender equality is still a thing when shit hits the fan. There are no feminists in a burning building, sinking ship or bar fight.
- Just the knowledge that you would be able to fight should it ever be necessary, will change the way you interact with the world and the way the world interacts with you. The Mutually Assured Destruction doctrine wouldn't have worked if the US or Russia had dismantled all its nuclear

arms.

- The more you hang out with a crowd, the more you'll become like them. Hang out continuously with internet crowds like Reddit and you'll be overly serious and offended at everything. Hang out continuously with 4chan and you'll be lazy and weird.
- If you keep hanging out with a crowd you've surpassed and grown out of, you will stunt your growth and stay on their level. If you want to grow, hang out with people who are better than you and who are sympathetic to mentoring you. Or even just one such person.
- Beware for narcissism and narcissistic withdrawal in yourself. People who are highly successful get used to the large amount of praise and attention. When their external validation stops (e.g., right after a star's tour around the country) their dopamine levels drop and they get withdrawal symptoms.
- This is your life, if you don't want to marry her / live together / have children / whatever, that is your right. You don't need to provide a reason to a committee who accepts or rejects it. (Hint: she and her friends will try to be that committee.) Do not let people shame you into giving up your right to making your own damn life decisions. It's always courteous to give a reason when you're breaking up with someone, but the moment that person starts disagreeing with your reasons (i.e. challenging your right to making your own decisions), that's the moment he/she loses eligibility for such courtesy.
- "If you really loved me, you would do X for me." is the classical line of emotional blackmail. Clearly set and defend your boundaries.
- Men are overt, women are covert. A girl will just do what she wants and take her chances that you'll not notice or stay silent about it. She'll do her thing as stealthily as possible. If you ask any questions about it, she will mislead you and divert attention away to something else (e.g. "why are you not trusting me?"). That's why the man needs to ACTIVELY maintain his boundaries. If you aren't calling her out on bullshit, that means she's getting away with bullshit.
- She has to feel a little discomfort, because if she's 100% comfortable, that means you're taking all the responsibility and making all the compromises while she has to put in 0 effort. If you hold a person to a standard, they will face some level of pressure. A completely comfortable wife means a wife

who is not held to any standard.

- All your words, gestures and actions within your relationship can be perfect, but if you don't have status, it will fail. Telling her "I believe in you!" when she's feeling insecure before an important presentation at work means nothing to her when you are a jobless loser. She will only feel encouraged and supported when this is said by someone whose advice people respect. If that's not you, then it'll be her professor who she "maybe thinks is a little bit attractive".
- You will always depend on a few people in life. Many great jobs are found through the recommendation of a friend who already works at the company and is willing to vouch for you. Neighbors have skills you are less talented in. This is not a problem as long as you choose the right people to depend on, keep your boundaries and treat them right. The latter requires that you also have something to offer, i.e. have your own unique skill.
- Be generous with your time, but only to those who have deserved it. Treat the rest with firm boundaries: don't let them manipulate you into listening to their yapping for hours or doing free stuff for them. In other words, don't be a pushover. Realise that your time is valuable.
- Smile and be friendly to people who have deserved it. Treat the rest with a firm and confident common courtesy. Get rid of the supplicating smile that screams "please like me!"
- Give and perform from a confident position of abundance, not from a supplicating position of need (for approval or acceptance).
- Demonstrate, do not explicate. Be awesome, don't tell everyone you're awesome.

## Another Collection of TRP Gold from the Comments

*Compiled by DCLdit.*

[Article link.](#)

- Don't tell anyone. It's like Fight Club. Whoever wants to know truths will come to you seeking for advice, presumed you show how to live a good life. But if you just tell them, you scare them away. People won't acknowledge any ideas unless they found their own way towards that idea. *By wall-of-meth.*
- Perception is 9/10. The feminist propaganda machine has been eroding away masculinity since its inception and they had a firm hold on Reddit, and to a larger extent the internet until the Manosphere came along. Combine this with the recent shooting and you have all the hamsters on full tilt. Honestly, RP should radiate from the inside without being plainly discussed, and any man who goes around talking about it like a preacher deserves his retribution. *By SoftHarem.*
- "After I got out I saw her pull the next guy she saw into her room so they could fuck." When the spinning stopped, the young girl dismounted the ride, walked to the front, and placed another token in the slot. With a jolt, the machine slowly rolled into motion. Quickly, the girl scurried back, wrapped her hand around the pole and lifted herself back onto the stallion. A smile slid across her face. The carousel was her favorite ride. *By theredpillager.*
- "Oh so if a wife doesn't feel like having sex that makes it ok to cheat?" Always convert hypothetical tests to specifics. When a woman poses a hypothetical scenario, she isn't philosophizing, she is concealing. Blow away all pretense by answering directly. "Yes, if you cut me off, I will cheat. If you violate the contract, there is no contract." Do not let her establish the boundaries of the conversation. In the example above, I ignore the slippery "wife doesn't feel like" bullshit, and re-frame the issue much more

specifically: "if you cut me off." My rules, my terms, my boundaries. *By RedPope.*

- Maintaining the vigilance of being "ready to walk" at all times is what makes my current relationship simultaneously the most difficult I've ever had and the most rewarding. Way to stick the dismount, brother. *By deepsouthscoundrel.*
- Good thought, but if you next a girl every time you get a compliance test... You're gonna have a hell of a turnover. *By boredinclass2.*
- Then she got drunk, and shit tested me bad: "You know, you should be nicer to me. You can tell I have a lot of options." My casual response: ".....well you gotta do what you gotta do (smirk)" Her: "just be nice every once in awhile!" Me: "I'm getting a beer." She proceeded to fuck the shit out of me in the back seat of my car within the next 20 minutes. *By sway\_USA.*
- No. I make no overt effort to tell my girl that I could leave her and be perfectly happy. All I do is ensure that if I ever needed to make that known, that she would implicitly know that I could actually make good on the threat. She would know this implicitly because I'm fit, handsome, financially sound, well-dressed, and socially apt. That is the vigilance I'm referring to. All of these things take time and effort to maintain, but the payoff is insurance that A) she probably won't leave me, and B) even if she does, I'm fine, because my validation, happiness, fulfillment, and self-esteem come from neither her nor my relationship with her. *By deepsouthscoundrel.*
- "You are not a betabux guy. You are a high value man who is not going to get sidetracked from his goal in life by a woman." Words to live by. *By seattleron.*
- Implying you want to fuck with words but letting your actions do the real speaking is the best way to escalate quickly. Straighttalk isn't sexy. *By MachiavellianRed.*
- (After digesting TRP, OP is no longer interested in women.) The deal with this mentality is that it allows you to act freely and in accordance with your true self and desires, and that is attractive to women. It does still require action, though, but only action if you are authentically interested in it. This mentality also means that you are very unlikely to bend to another's will (especially if there is nothing in it for you), also very attractive. This is why

you see it advocated so often to improve yourself and pursue your own interests without regard to others, especially women. *By I\_drank\_wot\_m8.*

- "No. She is challenging you because your success doesn't mean shit to her, unless you are free and loving. And if you are free and loving, nothing she says can collapse you. She wants to feel you are not collapsable, so she pokes you in your weak spot. Of course she knows how much this moment of success means to you. This is precisely why she is negating it. Not because she wants to hurt you. But because she wants to feel Shiva. She wants to feel your strength. She wants to feel that your happiness is not dependent on her response, nor on you making a million dollars. She wants to feel you are a superior man." Of course the answer is agree and amplify, ignore the test, and change the topic! Grab her in your arms, pin her to the couch and say: "You want cream, I will get you some cream." *By BluepillProfessor.*
- Another thing that I want to point out is that when you fix your marriage it is going to take a while. She has become accustomed to you are her little beta pet/toy and when you start trying to assert yourself it is going to cause waves. Take this step by step and be patient. You're the one that got yourself into this mess. You can't just click a magic button and have it fixed. *By mordanus.*
- Pursuing what you desire, and being willing to walk away if you don't get it isn't an asshole thing to do. Don't let anyone tell you otherwise. *By Cosmicandy.*
- You know, a lot of what happens on TRP is finger pointing at something else. "Look, women are horrible because they cheat a lot." I think men need a long, serious look at themselves, to see the type of women they're attracting and why. Men need to have the attitude that if your woman cheats, won't have sex with you, or gets fat then it's your own damn fault, either you chose poorly, or you're not leading well enough. I understand women now, they're not difficult, even the slutty ones. Take control of yourself, THEN look for a woman (if you want). *By TRPTosser.*
- (Shit test: "Did you know were we gonna hook up?") Agree and amplify. Tell her that the plan went off with out a hitch. Or go over the top. "Well, I originally planned for us to get hitched last night, but the justice never



showed up, so I guess just the hook up will suffice." "I originally planned for a crazy orgy... but I figured we could just start small." "I always plan for sex, no matter what. Makes dentist trips really awkward and disappointing." *By redpillschool.*

- (A Red Pill way to receive compliments.) From *The Charisma Myth: How Anyone Can Master the Art and Science of Personal Magnetism*: Stop. Absorb the compliment. Enjoy it if you can. Let that second of absorption show on your face. Show the person that they've had an impact. Thank them. Saying "Thank you very much" is enough, but you can take it a step further by thanking them for their thoughtfulness or telling them that they've made your day. *By who\_whom.*
- "I have to ask you guys, do you still respect woman, and what do you find to respect about them if you do?" Do you respect a man just for living? Of course you don't. You don't disrespect him either, you are indifferent. Every single man needs to earn your respect. Now, after taking The Red Pill, women do too. *By redpillshadow.*
- For most "average" men, the problem they face is just plain getting a woman to have sex with them with any degree of frequency. Forget their likes, dislikes, or anything even remotely approaching quality sex. Just getting their wives to put out more than once a month is already an insurmountable hurdle. So I tend to prioritize frequency over quality and advise most married guys to do the same. You can work on quality, but if you're not having or barely having sex at all, that's a much bigger problem. And a much more common one. *By Archwinger.*
- Women hate each other, passionately. You think the female propensity to discard a man they no longer need or are no longer attracted to is bad? Just watch how they treat other women. It's fucking vicious. We have it easy. Women are incredibly worse to each other. It's a funny dichotomy. Women are extremely pro-woman, always siding with one another and with the female gender as a whole independent of logic or reason, but when dealing with specific women, as individuals, they hate each other's guts, put on a front when they're together, and tear each other apart the moment their backs are turned. Even their true friends aren't safe. One slip up, one loser mistake, and she's off the invite list to the next outing, during which everyone there

will promptly gossip and make fun of her. *By Archwinger.*

- It's looking at the same thing from a different angle. The fact that you're awesome enough to have frequent sex without her is the very thing that drives her to have frequent sex. Kind of an awesome vicious circle. Sex begets sex. But lack of sex also begets lack of sex. *By Archwinger.*
- But through all of this, yes, most certainly, you have to be okay with the possibility of your marriage ending. Being at-peace with the possibility and knowing you'll be okay if she pulls the nuclear option and burns everything you've built to the ground, children, house, finances, career and all, is absolutely essential if you plan on coming out the other end of a bad marriage. *By Archwinger.*
- I've pondered on this awhile. Basically it comes down to two things: - Can you tolerate the loneliness of only having plates. - Do you want kids some day. *By leftajar.*
- Forget the label "plate" and what you think it means. Be honest and direct with what you're looking for and the value you offer - either she's into it or not. A simple deflection and reiteration of getting together would likely bypass her text reservations - "I'm not worried about it. Let's go have fun." If she's cold in person, compare what you're getting against what you want. Then, move forward. Certainly don't ever think you've got a plate "secured." Spinning plates fall. *By secret\_barber.*
- (Do I move on or cancel and try again later?) You: what day are you free? Her: <says a day> You: Meet for a drink at x at 8pm. She will either tell you a day and show up or flake out. In either case the sun will still rise tomorrow. *By tombreck2.*
- Women's sexual market value determines their place in society, whereas men's place in society determines their sexual market value. A woman who has managed to snag a high SMV is automatically labeled a "successful" woman and is admired (more like, envied) by other women. Even though she has literally done nothing of note. *By TRPsubmitter.*
- A man will project positive qualities onto a woman he is attracted to. He'll see her as virtuous when she is anything but. That and all the princess-worshipping blue-pill fantasies he harbors. He sees himself as a noble hero out on a quest to win his fair maiden's heart. His idealistic fantasy world is a

pleasant escape from the reality that he is a pathetic beta turd and the girl is a nasty manipulating ho. "She ain't pretty, she just looks that way." ~ *Northern Pikes By RedPillDad.*

- "Why not? Life is short, life is dull, life is full of pain. This is a chance for something special." this sentence is catnip for women. *By HAMMURABI.*
- "She seems annoyed" "But she hasn't turned up the telly" Women would rather be dead than bored, and men should prefer them mad than ignoring them. *By anonlmouse.*
- "Chief, eyes on your own paper." - love this line, but only use it if it's very explicit checking-out. Being too defensive and protective is a massive turn-off. *By This\_Is\_Cat\_Country.*
- Still a great line. I find friendly pronouns mixed in with sentences rather than direct commands or using their names can give interesting effects. Chief, boss, man, lad (humor if not typically used in US), etc. Spins things in a different direction. "Chief, hand me that wrench will you." is different from, "Hand me that wrench, lad." You can use it to disarm or display dominance over people as needed. *By bossbang.*
- Trust people (even women) to act in their own (perceived) self-interest at all times. You won't be disappointed. *By WishIHadMyOldUsernam.*
- How do you trust anyone? Trust yourself, trust your judgement, don't take things personally and don't let others control you. *By lonGterMgoals.*
- (On dealing with loneliness.) Stay busy and distract yourself. Personally, if I start comparing myself to other people I very quickly fall into a pit of despair and wallow for hours or even days. Accordingly, I make a conscious effort to repress those thoughts and fill my schedule such that I have little time for rumination. If you're always engaged with something, you're much less likely to feel inferior or lonely simply because your mind is on more important things. I'm already a fairly busy guy with school, work, gym, studying, and student organizations, but I also read a lot of books, write software to solve problems, etc. Similarly, I think it's good to always be talking to multiple girls at once. If there's only one and something goes wrong, you'll overthink the situation and probably do something beta to "fix" it instead of just waiting for her to come around. If you have multiple girls you're working on, your mind will focus on them instead - i.e., something

productive rather than destructive. TL;DR: Idle hands are the devil's playthings or whatever. *By hakett.*

- "I can't have sex tonight..." This is an IOI in the form of plausible deniability ASD. She has already imagined having sex with you and whether or not she is on her period is irrelevant. Don't answer. *By tombreck2.*
- Women don't care so much about what it is you're telling them, so long as it's THEM you're telling it to. Attention is attention. If your plan is to punish a woman, stop feeding her the emotional stimulation she craves so much. Don't argue with her. Instead, withdraw your stimulation. Without your attention, dread begins to emerge from within her. She begins to fear that she's pushing herself off your radar. You're not doing it to her, she's doing it to herself. Even your anger is a form of validation. Women would rather be hated than ignored. *By HumanSockPuppet.*
- This is good information and I'd like to expand on the idea of only giving away bits and pieces at a time. Information, like currency, has value. Treat your personal information as such. If you are freely giving away information about yourself to anyone and everyone, this information holds very little value to the people that receive it. Inversely, if you pick and choose a select person or group of people to share things about yourself with, that information is understood to be more rarely available, and valued as such. *By tizenkotoko.*
- "If you do go out to pick up, cut your losses when you're coming up empty and dodge when it's time to dodge." I can't remember where I read it - I think it may have been something to do with partying/gambling in Vegas - but it applies to what you're advising here: Don't chase the night. *By RedSunBlue.*
- Which is why a dangerous dark triad drug dealer with tats and a criminal record will always score 100x more than a sensitive gentleman who cares about her feelings: even if the feeling she gets is the constant threat of being raped, murdered and dumped in the river, that beats the hell out of the feeling she gets from "well this guy is nice, I guess." The thrill of danger is still a feeling, and feelings are everything. *By gekkozorz.*
- Well said. They want to emote freely and not be judged for all their crazy crap, because it was just their feelz of the moment. *By RedPillDad.*
- It's not to feel good. It's to feel. Emotional drama. They want to laugh, cry,

carry on, complain, get pissed off, be happy, be worried, feel protected, be disgusted, be praised, be amazed, and many other emotions. You got a content, relaxed woman, well now she is bored. What do bored rich housewives do, who have everything? *By some12talk2.*

- Accepting pain and comprehending the truths associated with that pain are Red Pill traits. Women hamster in loops of happiness, they alter reality to avoid pain. Men experience pain to anchor more firmly to truth. It's better to be male in the long run. *By RedPillSafe.*
- Being bitter is part of the process of unplugging. Staying bitter is not. Being reminded of this fact is a service to your fellow man. *By barzerobar.*
- It's all about the personal context. When I first showed signs of becoming unplugged, my brother referred me. He didn't advise me what to do but left it to me to figure it out. As I progressed working thru the stages (I didn't even know there were stages at the time), many posts like these do offer guidance on top of the sidebar. Regarding projecting weaknesses, when you recognize it being projected, I often ask myself, do I suffer through the same weakness? If so, what do I need to do about it? Some things just need to be pointed out to you, directly or indirectly, before you are cognizant about doing something about it. *By barzerobar.*
- Sure there will. But if you are good enough in her eyes, if you are running tight game, holding a proper frame, and being a man she respects, it significantly reduces the likelihood that she will swing to new branches. Women love, cherish, and adore stability and normalcy. Only the sluttiest of all sluts will throw away a high-tier man for the whim of a man who "might be a little better." Women are risk-averse by nature, it's what makes them good mothers. However, if she's looking for other, better options, it's not only because a slightly better looking man than you shot her fuck-me eyes at Starbucks. It'll be that and the fact that you are failing to be the man she was attracted to when she first met you and decided to start fucking you. *By JP\_Whoregan.*
- Actively looking for shit tests in everything is a pitfall that newbies frequently fall into. If you're constantly looking for shit tests, it means you consciously care about passing them - which in turn means that you're looking for approval, and that your frame is weak. Knowing what a shit test

is is mainly useful for identifying moments in the past when you made mistakes and your woman lost attraction for you. But if your goal is to raise your value by passing them in the future, it's best not to become fixated on them. *By HumanSockPuppet.*

- In the office there are about 90% female employees. I can confirm you absolutely must hold frame at all times. Do it and you will be popular. Fail and they will pull the "creepy" card on you HARD! *By raceAround126.*
- I remember I was eating lunch with all of my coworkers and this "alpha" female who was older and kinda just ran the table conversation through her started badmouthing a coworker as soon as he left the table to everyone else. I let it slide but then she said something like "He doesn't even know how to take care of his woman, they will be divorced within a year" (he was just getting married). I immediately cut in and said "woh woh, you know I like both of you a lot, but you can't do that. If you got a problem with him, you say it to his face not to his co-workers." She tried to hamster out of it and come up with excuses and I shot it down. The very next day her and the other woman who ate lunch with us were TOTALLY different actions to me. Its like I solidified myself as a higher tier man in the social structure because I told her no. *By Meglomaniac.*
- Play the game on your terms or don't play at all. It's quite simple and more conducive for your happiness in the long run. *By AfterC.*
- Yup. Girls do not communicate honestly with men. If a man gets back with his ex, he says "I'm back with my ex." If a woman gets back with her ex, she just stops answering texts (unless she wants something else from you.) *By thredditsowaway.*
- In my 20s, I was just a guy working all the time and it wasn't until I turned 27 that I got ANY significant female attention. The higher your pay, the earlier it can happen for you. And yes, read books. Get into interesting hobbies. Meet interesting people. That's all admirable but if you don't have the money, you're just a great conversationalist. It's mostly about the money. It's all in what you do with your money all those years that you're invisible. Save it. Don't worry about a relationship, much less having a girl move in with you and have your baby. And if you don't have one, for the love of God, I implore you to not feel down about not being in one! You have a great

opportunity to be somebody if you don't let your dick get in the way. Think with the big head, not the small one! *Author unknown.*

- My favorite quote from *The Count of Monte Cristo* is "Life is a storm, my young friend. You will bask in the sunlight one moment, be shattered on the rocks the next. What makes you a man is what you do when that storm comes. You must look into that storm and shout as you did in Rome. Do your worst, for I will do mine! Then the fates will know you as we know you." The take away is it isn't about how hard your life is or the burden put on you it is how you weather the storm. *By stillnoturday.*
- Also, if you are ever sitting by your phone waiting for a girl to text you then you are already failing. *By tombreck2.*
- Its more so than the "Brad Pitt" rule. Think of it as a role reversal. If a hot girl came and asked you out, but you legitimately could not go, you would suggest a new date. If you would do that, so would she if she was interested. *By SikPon11.*
- Couple of ways you can approach it, depending on her personality. "Are you done now", said in a flat, almost bored way works. Alternatives are: 1) Laugh. Just start chuckling, increasing in intensity matching the intensity of her tantrum. Pretend she's a 4 year old getting mad at you for not saying hi to her imaginary friend. Shit is hilarious. "You're so cute when you're spazzing out" 2) Walk away and do something else, without a hint that it's bothering you. Check texts, surf the web, pop on the TV and kick your feet up, etc. There are others. The essence behind each one is that you are an emotionally stable adult male, and she is completely unable to rock you. *By Cyralea.*
- You know what I do when my niece gives me sassy insolence? I spank her and shut her in her room without her phone and laptop so she remembers the importance of respecting the man who protects and provides for her. Women are not adults. They are children. Proceed accordingly. *By HumanSockPuppet.*
- "Do not mention this to your plate, LTR, or wife what have you. You will not win a woman over with a logical discussion about how men and women fundamentally are. You utilize the skills we teach her to win her with that knowledge." Unable to parrot this enough. DO NOT talk about it to women.

They don't, will not, and blatantly refuse to understand this concept.

Ultimately, TRP is not about them it's about you. You do it to improve your life and yourself. *By crazyberzerker.*

- Think me, speak we. Always think of yourself as an individual, it keeps you from being needy and putting the girl up on a pedestal. However speak we, because you are subtly introducing the idea of you two being together and making her more comfortable with whatever choices you decide to take. *By redshirt66.*
- What's the saying? Something like, "No matter how beautiful you think she is, someone is sick of her shit." *Author unknown.*
- Get them wet. Treat them like dirt. They'll stick like mud. *By Aphoc.*
- Just learn to fuck like a champ. They always come back. Be that asshole who gives her a good fucking. It's easier than you think. Be selfish, and don't care. *By Gimprome.*
- Women are attracted to the feelings that they receive from a man but not the man himself. *By tombreck2.*
- It's normal to be angry in the beginning. The quicker you get over this anger the better off you will be. It is not good nor productive to be angry at a woman for acting like a woman. *By -Tyler\_Durden-.*
- Some of my friends really got hit by this change in their lives. I think if you're the type of guy that really defines your value based on the number of interested women than it can hurt your self esteem. *By asdfghjkltyu.*
- All I see ahead is continued improvement and achievement. I really feel like I'm just entering my prime and my value as a man will keep going up now that I've figured out the rules. My opinion is that you can definitely hit a stride in your 30s, even if your 20s was crappy. *By tuxidomasx.*
- I've had more success saying "are you as fun as you look?" And this is from RSD Jeffy: "I'm at the gym getting totally fucking jacked for our romantic date." Out of the many things I've said, these two have gotten me the most numbers. *By loin\_fruit.*
- I think this is a great point, and it's something that Pook really emphasizes in his "Perfect is Boring" post on the So Suave forum. If anyone disagrees with OP, I highly recommend reading that post. There must be a point in time when we've reduced our reliance on learning/reading, and that only happens



when we're capable of "testing the field" without fear. In my opinion, that is the path to success that a Red Pill awareness fosters. *By tits\_out\_forTheBoys.*

- There is a fun saying regarding banks: "A bank will lend you money if you prove you don't need it." You can paraphrase it this way: "A woman will submit to you if you prove you don't need her." *By ThirdLegGuy.*
- "Be amused at anger" Great advice. Take a step back and realize that defending yourself or trying to resolve the conflict is pointless. She's not rationally upset, why would being rational suddenly fix it? *By redpillschool.*
- Men want comfort and the reassurance that they have built a good fortress of protection and security for them and their family. Boring can be good if it means the machine is clicking and working as it should. Women want to have their minds blown and a giant smile on their face 90% of the time. Plus all the security stuff. Hence the AF/BB phenomenon. Which is why in a LTR you gotta maintain game. It's fucking exhausting. *By raven2000.*
- And if you've spent any time at all gaming girls, you know that girls are ALWAYS bored. *By cocaine\_face.*
- Give a woman half a second and she will turn you into someone she despises. This is not her intention though, she will try to change you but she is really testing your strength to make sure she can trust to have a strong spine so you can be the solid rock in her world of constant emotional turmoil. *By KissTheBridesmaid.*
- There's definitely an expiration date. But if she's legit interested she will get your attention again. If she never hits you back, then you know that it wasn't shit to begin with. You failed to make her attracted. Happens to the best of us. *By Crazywhite352.*
- Yes. A solid breath will cause your belly to become a beer belly, your shoulders to drop slightly, it grows from bottom to top, the spine elongates, I've popped my back just from a good breath. And concerning posture, either stand, or stand from the waist up. Alpha aside, standing from the waist up while sitting will simply give you more air while you sit, therefore you can get more force. This will translate into more conversational power. *By beerthroway.*
- Don't forget to practice your chest voice. The most attractive muscles in a man are his vocal chords. *By duckspeed.*

- Its been said over and over again on here, and it cant be said enough. NEVER be afraid to walk away. Not only does it boost your ego, but it hurts theirs. *By Crazywhite352.*
- It's so backwards it's crazy. I've noticed in the 2 years since I started browsing here. The less I care the more the girls do. Its shocking at first. Eventually it just... is. *By slcjosh.*
- "When a girl feels her passion for a guy waning, she will slowly emotionally detach herself from her boyfriend over the course of months. During all those months she'll never mention anything to the guy. She's covertly preparing for a break that is as easy on her as possible. When she's finally ready to tell him it's over (which is usually when she is sufficiently assured that a new guy is interested), she can immediately move on." Exactly what happened when ex-LTR jumped to me and also exactly what happened when she jumped to the next one. *By alphabux.*
- Specifically: They want predictable emotional milestones. You can keep a woman through emotional play, dread game, no contact, etc. But to gain her vocal official commitment, you have to agree to become consistent. That's the paradox. She wants and needs and pushes for you to become consistent and predictable. This is her version of conquering. If she never feels like she's conquered you, she will always want you. These are the women who will make a big show of saying, "Ok, I'm done having all this sex with you. I've found a guy who can be a good provider and boyfriend. I'm going to start a new life with him." And a month or two later, she's back in your bed screaming. *Author unknown.*
- See that's the thing. You "acted" like you took The Red Pill, but that wasn't actually who you were. On the inside you were a beta. That is precisely why women shit test not only at the beginning, but all through a relationship. *By redpilltom.*
- "I go through from start to finish and see the gradual progression of myself from confident, cheeky and slightly arrogant to overbearing and uninteresting, and her interest in me slowly dwindles." Guy who shares his feelings with women is uninteresting. I think I finally understood why just now. Like a poker player who's revealed his hand early on, he's not keeping you on your toes. Also, stop your imaginings of girls being perfect little

angels. They're women, not angels. Women are happier when they're sluts anyway. *By lubeoil.*

- "She came over later that week AGAIN." This illustrates the power of the hamster. She built up an image of you so attractive that she hamstered away your complete and utter failure just so she can have another shot at some alpha fux. Women love to fill in the blanks. Nothing gets her hotter than her own imagination. Plant the right seeds and she will project a fantasy on you so hot that she will overlook a lot of shit to maintain that fantasy. *By gg\_s.*
- I too have gone back and reviewed past failures and successes through a RP framework and have been shocked at how much it all makes sense. *By Onemanwolfpack23.*

## Legendary Quotes from TRP

*Compiled by stevredpill.*

[Article link.](#)

- Society conditions you be be the androgynous worker bee that spits out money and is expected to be happy with that. Don't buy that shit and for fucks sake don't sell yourself short. Or you'll be up shit creek without a paddle before you can say "Oh honey, did you see where I left the pre-nup?"  
*Author unknown.*
- The Red Pill is an imperfect substitute for the male guidance our boys were robbed of by feminism. - *By GayLubeOil*
- In short, we are being taught cradle to grave to take ownership of the anxieties of others because that will give us validation and preserve us from harm. The corollary is that if there is a lack of validation or harm befalls us, it is because we did not adequately address those anxieties. Dealing with this shit crushes a man's spirit, so he will spend a lot of time trying to predict how his own behavior might generate anxiety in others so that he may avoid, deflect or manage it. He pushes his own needs to the back while he attends to others, and isolates himself to reduce the sickening workload. This is the primary ingredient of the Blue Pill. *By brandor77.*
- The Red Pill exists because many men aren't happy. Because these relationships that are allegedly "just fine" are very much NOT just fine. Because men are giving so much to their women and getting so little, with the assumption that merely existing – merely being a presence in the man's life – is all a woman needs to do to become his highest priority. That men should be falling over themselves getting in line for the right to say "I have a girlfriend," and nothing more. Men are sick of this. *By Archwinger.*
- You can't control a woman, nor should you try. All you can control is yourself. You can choose to become physically fit, you can choose to

become professionally successful, you can choose to become socially apt and well-connected, you can choose to learn useful skills, you can choose to pursue interesting hobbies – you can choose to live a fulfilling life, all on your own, with or without women. *By Archwinger.*

- "I was so worried! You said you'd be back in two hours and it's been six hours! I thought you had gotten in a wreck or there was some kind of emergency!" We explained what happened and she repeated the above refrain about five times while we were telling the story. So we get in the truck, and as we're driving back, my grandpa says, "Listen, Jeremy. She has always been like that, and it's ridiculous. That shit needs to be stopped early in a marriage, or it will ruin you. This is what you do. Right after you get married, say you're going somewhere. Doesn't matter where. Tell her you'll be gone for an hour. Come back in three. Don't apologize. Don't explain. If she asks, just say, "it took longer than I expected." Do this half a dozen times in the first six months of your marriage, and you won't have to put up with the bullshit you just saw. You're a man, and you don't need to be on a goddamn leash." I miss you, Grandpa. *By jeremyfirth.*
- "nice guys" are kind of like sluts. *By Perrodepaz.*

# Resources

## Glossary

*By redpillschool.*

[Article link](#). Additional definitions from an [article](#) by bsutansalt.

#

- **1000-Cock Stare** - A term that originates from the "[1000-yard stare](#)," a soldier's expression after experiencing battle or emotional trauma. The 1000-cock stare refers to the attitude and behaviour of a woman who has experienced the "cock carousel" for an extended period of time: inability to connect, is flippant, and won't become attached to you because she is incapable of becoming attached to anything other than pure momentary sexual desire and the "tingles." (By rpscrote.)

A

- **AF/BB** - Alpha Fucks, Beta Bucks. The idea that alpha males succeed in the sexual marketplaces, while betas are relegated to a sexless provider role. May also be referred to as "fux" and "bux."
- **AFC** - Average Frustrated Chump (also known as beta).
- **Alpha** – Leader. Somebody who displays high value, or traits that are valued by women. Alpha can refer to a man who exhibits alpha behaviors (more alpha tendencies than beta), but usually used to describe individual behaviors themselves.
- **Alpha Widow**: A woman who's past lover was an "alpha" male. May still fantasize or have lingering feelings for him despite being in a new relationship with a "beta".
- **AMOG** – Alpha Male Of Group.
- **Anti-Slut Defense (ASD)**: Women's internal fear of being judged as a slut

by her peers, family, or society. It is also why the creation of plausible deniability before sex is often important so not to appear as if having sex was in any way "her fault."

- **Approach Anxiety:** A combination of fear of rejection and stage fright, aka "Love Shyness."

## B

- **Beta** – Traits of provision: either providing resources or validation to others, women (and perhaps men). Beta traits display low value to women if they are are put on too strong or too early in meeting- giving without equity. Beta can be used to describe individual behaviors, as well as people who have an overwhelming amount of beta properties (opposed to alpha).
- **Blue Pill** – From The Matrix and its sequels. The path of conformity with Society's expectations; the state of being unaware of the problems engendered by society. Compare with **Red Pill**, below.
- **Briffault's Law:** The female, not the male, determines all the conditions of the animal family. Where the female can derive no benefit from association with the male, no such association takes place. (See the chapter "[- Briffault's Law.](#)")

## C

- **Carousel** – Better known as the "cock carousel." The period of time in a woman's life where she successfully exploits her sexual value and maximizes her hypergamous tendencies by having sex with as many alphas as possible. Usually happens between ages 18 - 27. Often ends when the woman hits the wall.

## D

- **Dark Triad Personality** – aka why "chicks dig jerks": A catchall phrase that describes the personality types MANY women are naturally attracted to:



narcissistic, machiavellian, psychopathic

- **Display of Higher Value (DHV)** – the accomplishment, anything that improves your sexual market value in the eyes of another.
- **Display of Lower Value (DLV)**

## F

- **The Feminine Imperative:** The tendency of media and culture to put women first, excuse their misdeeds (see **rationalization hamster**), and criticize any holding of accountability or pointing out of double standards as being "anti-women."
- **Feminism** – "A doctrine built on the pre-supposition of victimhood of women by men as a foundation of female identity. In its goals is always the utilization of the state to forcibly redress this claimed victimization. In other words, the proxy use of violence and wealth appropriation. In whatever flavor, and variation, these two basic features are common to every doctrine using the label feminism. Feminism is therefore, a doctrine of class hatred, and violence." (John The Other, "Why not date a feminist?" A Voice For Men, 4 June 2012).
- **Friendzone** - Mental frame used primarily by women to disqualify certain men as sexual prospects. The main reason most men allow themselves to be friend-zoned is because they are biding their time hoping they still have a shot to have sex with her. See also: **Orbiter**.

## G

- **Game** – A loosely based set of behaviors specifically designed to increase attraction.

## H

- **Hypergamy** – The instinctual urge for women to seek out the best alpha available. This is marked by maximizing rejection (therefore women are the

selective gender). A woman will vet her alpha through various shit tests to ensure his "health" on the alpha scale. She is conditioned to recognize a declining alpha, as hypergamy also tends to continue seeking out higher status males even while with an alpha male. Shit tests allow her to prepare herself for eventually leaving when a new higher status male is found. If the male fails shit tests to a great enough degree, it will effect her feelings for him. He will effectively lower his sexual market value in her eyes. This will enable her to jump to the next male with ease and little remorse. Commonly referred to as "marrying/dating up". In a dating sense this translates to being attracted to men of high(er) status than that the women hold themselves. The grand irony of feminism is that the more successful a woman becomes, the fewer desirable men exist above her on the socioeconomic ladder.

Translation: women's success = smaller dating pool.

- **Humblebragging:** Covertly bragging by making good aspects of your life seem bad.

## I

- **Incel** - Involuntarily Celibate.
- **Indicators of Interest/Disinterest (IOIs & IODs):** Cues a woman is interested or disinterested.

## K

- **Kino:** A pickup artist term for haptics, or non-verbal communication through touch.

## L

- **Last Minute Resistance (LMR)** – Contrary to feminist sloganeering, no doesn't always mean no. Often times "no" simply means "not yet." Simplest advice is to back off and try again later, or if she's adamant and clearly

shutting you down. Some people in the Red Pill community have also made the point that LMR is the female equivalent of approach anxiety for men.

- **LTR** - Long Term Relationship.

## M

- **Manosphere** - The collective online discussion of men's issues.
- **MGTOW** – Men Going Their Own Way; the growing contingent of the male population who are saying "Fuck It All" to the Mating Dance.
- **Monk Mode** - A temporary period where a man leaves the dating market to focus on self-improvement.
- **MR** - Men's Rights Group.
- **MRA** - Men's Rights activist.

## N

- **NAWALT** – Not All Women Are Like That. A common response to generalizations, signalling a fundamental inability to understand how generalizations work. [More info on Rationalmale](#).

## O

- **Oneitis** - When a guy has fallen in love with a woman in the same way a boy loves his mother. He obsesses about her, but she does not reciprocate. An intense romantic obsession with one person ("the one") to the point of being counter-productive.
- **Orbiter** - Also known as **Beta Orbiter**. A beta guy who accepted the proposal to "just be friends" from a girl he has oneitis for. He will stick around her and constantly validate her whenever she requests it. Also known as "friendzone." She will keep him around because he will do anything for her and provide validation, giving small hints that he might eventually win her love- but he never will. Typical signs of orbiter status: likes and comments on new Facebook photos. Go-to guy when girl has problem with

boyfriend. Also known as **emotional tampon**. Men who are friend-zoned, but kept around for a variety of reasons: resources, validation/attention, "in case of emergency, break glass for dick."

## P

- **Peacocking**: Drawing attention to yourself in a positive way so women have something to initiate a conversation about. There are good and bad ways of doing so.
- **Plate Theory (Or Plate Spinning, or Keep Spinning Plates)** -- Gaming multiple women simultaneously to boost ones sexual market value. Read on Plate theory here: <http://rationalmale.wordpress.com/2011/08/19/plate-theory-2/>
- **POF** – Dating website [PlentyOfFish.com](http://PlentyOfFish.com).
- **Preselection**: The tendency for females to prefer males who have already been chosen by other females of their species.
- **PUA** – Pick-Up Artist.
- **Pussy Pass** - The notion that a woman can use her gender to gain advantage, sidestep accountability, elude criticism, or evade or receive disproportionately slight legal repercussions for her actions.

## R

- **Rationalization Hamster** - The tendency for women to use rationalization to resolve mental conflict and avoid cognitive dissonance. The core mechanism that allows women to say one thing and do a different thing. Analogy for the thought processes used by women to turn bad behavior and bad decisions into acceptable ones to herself and her friends. When a woman makes a bad decision, the hamster spins in its wheel (the woman's thinking) and creates some type of acceptable reasons for that bad decision. The crazier the decision, the faster the hamster must spin in order to successfully rationalize away the insanity.
- **Red Pill** – The recognition and awareness of the way that feminism,

feminists and their white-knight enablers affect society. Seeing the world for what it is, seeking truth no matter how painful or inconvenient the truth may be.

## S

- **Seddit** - The game-oriented subreddit : [/r/seduction](https://www.reddit.com/r/seduction) which is not strictly Red Pill but has good pickup advice.
- **Sexual Market Value (SMV)** – A shorthand statement for "what you bring to the table," whether for an one-night stand or for a longer sexual/emotional relationship. One's worth in the sexual marketplace; often conflated with one's attractiveness.
- **Sexual Marketplace (SMP)** – The sexual economy of supply and demand for sex and relationships. A description of the free market that is mating.
- **Shit Test** – Subtle (and sometimes not so subtle) tests women do on purpose or subconsciously to test a man's worth and his ability as a romantic prospect.
- **Snowflake** - A woman who tries to persuade a man that she's somehow unique, different, or special by playing up her good girl resume and downplaying her bad girl resume. When used as a verb, snowflaking refers to the argument she puts forth to justify her claim.
- **Social Proof**: Perceived value of someone in a social setting.

## T

- **T** - Testosterone.
- **The Tingles** - A term that describes the emotions a man generates (passively or actively) to generate a woman's interest or excitement. They're generated by emotions of sadness, anger, adoration. Also known as "gina tingles." The tingles refer to a woman's dominant, subconscious desire, and are often described in contrast to their stated (fake) desires.

## U

- **Unicorn** – A perfect woman. Related to the idea that finding the perfect woman is an impossible pursuit.

## W

- **The Wall** - The point in a woman's life where her ego and self-assessed view of her sexual market value exceed her actual sexual market value; the beginning of the decline. Usually occurs as a wake-up shock to women when they realize that their power over men was temporary and that their looks are fading. This usually results with first denial and then a sudden change in priority towards looking for a husband. Even after hitting the wall, many women will squander a few more precious years testing her SMV with alphas to double-check, hoping her perceived decline was a fluke, this will make her even more bitter when she finally has to settle for a worse-beta than she could've gotten before because of squandering her youth.
- **White Knight** – (1) a man who "comes to the rescue" of a woman, or of women, reflexively, emotionally-driven, without thought or even looking at the situation; (2) a man in authority who enables Team Women in his legislative actions, judgments, or rulings, reflexively, emotionally-driven, without thought or even looking at what's right. Also known as **Mangina**.

# Further Reading

## Required Reading

Articles taken from /r/theredpill sidebar.

- [Women in Love](#) by Rollo Tomassi.
- [Men in Love](#) by Rollo Tomassi.
- [Of Love and War](#) by Rollo Tomassi.
- [Schedules of Mating](#) by Rollo Tomassi.
- [- Briffault's Law](#).
- [Sexual Utopia and Power](#) (link to PDF).
- [Man Affections vs. Boy Affections](#) by jakes.
- [Woman: The Most Responsible Teenager In The House](#).
- [The Misandry Bubble](#) (link to PDF).
- [Confessions of a Reformed InCel](#).



## List of Websites

### Recommended Blogs

- The Rational Male: <http://rationalmale.wordpress.com>
- Dalrock: <http://dalrock.wordpress.com/>
- Return of Kings: <http://www.returnofkings.com/>
- Alpha Game: <http://alphagameplan.blogspot.com/>
- Chateau Heartiste: <http://heartiste.wordpress.com/>
- The Red Pill Room: <http://theredpillroom.blogspot.com/>
- A Voice For Men: <http://www.avoiceformen.com>
- Shrink 4 Men: <http://www.shrink4men.com>
- Owning Your Shit: <http://owningyourshit.blogspot.com>

### Community Blogs

- Illimitable Men: <http://illimitablemen.com/>
- The Attraction Vault: <http://www.theattractionvault.com/>

### Forums

- The Red Pill Academy: <https://www.theredpill.academy/>

## Articles

### Seminal Articles

- [Why Women Are Rejecting "Perfect" Men](#) by Shawn T. Smith, Psy.D.
- [6 Harsh Truths That Will Make You a Better Person](#) by David Wong.
- [How Much is Your CPO?](#) by Dawson Stone.
- [All Girls are Spoiled Children](#), by Tuthmosis.
- The Sexodus [Part 1](#) and [Part 2](#) by Milo Yiannopoulos.
- [Yes, Men Do Leave the Market](#) by Captain Capitalism.
- [A Boy is Born](#) by Frost.

### Forum Posts

- [Being a Man](#) by CMPitts.

### Videos

- [War on Boys](#) from <http://www.prageruniversity.com/>.

### Feminist Articles

While these articles don't support the Red Pill mindset, they are often referenced by /r/theredpill. They're included as a reference, and to educate yourself on contrasting opinions to strengthen your own.

- [40 and single](#) by Kate Bolick.

- [We've never had it so good](#) by Louise Carpenter.
- [All the single ladies](#) by Kate Bolick.
- [The End of Men](#) by Hanna Rosin.
- [The Myth of Male Decline](#) by Stephanie Coontz.

## Recommended Reading from The Rational Male

- [Amused Mastery](#) by Rollo Tomassi.
- [Domain Dependence](#) by Rollo Tomassi.
- <http://therationalmale.com/2012/06/04/final-exam-navigating-the-smp/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2011/08/23/schedules-of-mating/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2011/12/27/women-in-love/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2012/01/04/five-minutes-of-alpha/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2014/06/18/controlling-interests/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2013/12/12/madonnas-and-whores/>
- <http://heartiste.wordpress.com/2010/08/11/alpha-male-vs-beta-male/>
- <http://heartiste.wordpress.com/2013/10/16/national-geographic-agrees-the-human-alpha-male-is-real/>
- <http://heartiste.wordpress.com/2011/10/31/five-minutes-of-alpha-2/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2012/05/21/relational-equity/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2014/03/16/preventative-medicine-part-i/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2014/07/15/separating-values/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2012/05/02/generation-afc/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2011/09/13/average-frustrated-chump/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2011/09/04/identity-crisis-2/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2012/12/03/the-men-in-the-garage/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2011/11/10/good-girls-do/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2013/08/07/appeals-to-reason/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2011/08/25/the-desire-dynamic/>
- <http://heartiste.wordpress.com/the-sixteen-commandments-of-poon/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/category/iron-rules/>

- <http://therationalmale.com/2011/08/19/the-cardinal-rule-of-relationships/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2011/09/23/wait-for-it/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2011/09/06/the-medium-is-the-message/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2011/08/19/plate-theory-2/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2011/11/02/plate-theory-ii-non-exclusivity/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2011/11/03/plate-theory-iii-transitioning/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2011/12/30/plate-theory-iv-goal-state-monogamy/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2012/01/02/plate-theory-v-ladys-game/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2012/01/23/plate-theory-vi-abundance-scarcity/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2011/08/30/there-is-no-one/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2011/10/03/war-brides/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2012/08/22/just-get-it/>
- <http://therationalmale.com/2012/01/13/just-be-yourself/>

## Books

- [A list of Red Pill books](#) from /r/theredpill.
- See also <https://www.reddit.com/redpillbooks>

### Beginner or Core Books

- No More Mr. Nice Guy by Robert Glover
- Models by Mark Manson
- How To Win Friends & Influence People by Dale Carnegie
- The Book Of Pook by Pook
- The Rational Male by Rollo Tomassi

### Intermediate Books

- The Charisma Myth by Olivia Cabane
- Starting Strength by Mark Rippetoe
- The Power Of Now by Eckhart Tolle
- Millionaire Fastlane by MJ Demarco
- The 7 Habits of Highly Successful People by Stephen Covey

### Advanced Books

- The Way of The Superior Man by David Deida
- The Art of Seduction by Robert Greene
- 48 Laws of Power by Robert Greene

### Mastery

- Mastery by Robert Greene

### Other Suggestions

- The Manipulated Man by Esthar Villar
- The Myth of Male Power by Warren Farrell
- Sperm Wars by Robin Baker
- What Men Still Don't Know About Women, Relationships, and Love by Dr. Herb Goldberg
- Meditations by Marcus Aurelius
- The Prince by Niccolo Machiavelli
- Think and Grow Rich by Napoleon Hill
- The Sex God Method by Daniel Rose
- The Moral Animal by Richard Wright
- Why Nerds Are Unpopular by Paul Graham

-

*Book suggestions by BluepillProfessor.*

### Pick Up Artistry

- Book of Pook by Pook
- Bang: The Pickup Bible by Roosh
- The Best of Roosh Volume I By Roosh
- Day Bang: How to pick up girls during the day By Roosh
- The Gentlemen's Guide to picking up women by Ian Ironwood
- The Ironwood Collection of Alpha moves by Ian Ironwood
- Pickup lines don't work by Vince Valentino
- The Natural by Richard Ruina

## Self Help and Married Advice

- Married Men's Sex Life Primer 2011 (MMSL) by Athol Kay
- Managed Attraction Plan (MAP) by Athol Kay
- How to answer do these pants make my ass look fat? By Athol Kay
- No More Mr. Nice Guy by Robert Glover
- The Way of the Superior Man by David Deida
- The Art of Seduction by Robert Greene
- The 48 Laws of power by Robert Greene
- The Enlightened Sex Manual by David Deida
- The Sex God Method by Daniel Rose

## **Mens Rights/Trouble with boys**

- The End of Men by Hanna Rosin
- The Manipulated Man by Eshter Vilar
- Enjoy the Decline by Arron Clarey
- The Flipside of Feminism by Suzanne Venker
- The Manosphere: A new hope for Masculinity by Ian Ironwood
- Men on Strike by Helen Smith
- The War Against Boys by Christina Summers
- The War on Men by Suzanne Venker
- The way of men by Jack Donovan
- Women First, men last by Steven Adams
- Why Boys Fail by Richard Whitmore
- The Rational Male by Rollo Tomassi

## **And for the Babes**

- Fascinating Womanhood
- The Surrendered Wife

## **Thank You**

Thank you to all moderators, writers, and readers on /r/theredpill.

Do you have feedback? Post your ideas for fixes, and article and website suggestions on <https://www.reddit.com/r/theredpill>.



## Publication History

- 2014/12/21
  - Initial first draft release.
- 2015/01/04
  - .mobi and .epub versions now available.
  - Added a basic cover.
  - Hosting now provided at <http://redpillhandbook.com>.
  - Added new articles suggested by the community:
    - "[Take My Breath Away](#)"
    - "[- The Eight Rules of Fatherhood](#)"
    - "[- Be a Closed Book](#)"
    - "[- 5 Misconceptions of MGTOW](#)"
    - "[A Comprehensive Guide to The Red Pill](#)"
    - "[- I Don't Hate Women, I Just Don't Respect Them...](#)"
    - "[I've Become Too Critical of Girls](#)"
    - "[- The Red Pill Is Even Tougher To Swallow For Girls](#)"
    - "[- The Modern Woman's Sexual Strategy](#)"
  - A new section has been created: "[Quotes and Highlighted Comments](#)"
  - Included a "Publication History" page (last chapter). This way, existing readers can quickly find what's changed in the new version.
  - Improved spelling and formatting.
  - Fixed some hyperlinks.
  - Added a "Further Reading" section to articles that reference to the writer's blog and included hyperlinks to the related blog post.
  - Moved one or two articles to more appropriate sections.
  - Retitled some of the compilation chapters in the "Resources" section.
  - Tightened up links in the "Resources" section.
  - Added more links to the "List of Websites" chapter.

- Glossary has been expanded.
- Expanded the "Books" section.

# Dajjal

the

# AntiChrist



Revised Edition

Ahmad Thomson

## About this Book

At a time when many people are attempting to relate current events and trends in the world to interpretations of prophecies contained in the *Book of Ezekiel* and the *Book of Revelations* and the writings of Nostrodamus and the predictions of fashionable clairvoyants and astrologers, the author does much the same – but by referring to some of the prophecies which are contained in the *Qur'an* and in the recorded sayings of the Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace.

*Dajjal, the AntiChrist* is not simply a catalogue of such prophecies – nor is it concerned with analysing specific events in the context of these prophecies. In viewing life in general in the late twentieth and early twenty-first centuries, the book is not merely a 'religious' critique of an aimless and ignorant society. Rather, it examines and compares the outward existential behaviours, along with their inward psychological realities, of both those who do not base their way of life on prophetic guidance – and of those who do.

**Reviews:** "Definitely a thought provoker ..."

"If you never read another book, read this one ..."

"Written by a respected Muslim author, "Dajjal, the Antichrist" is a new and revised edition of his earlier book "Dajjal, the king who has no clothes". The word "Dajjal" is meaningless to most people outside the Muslim or Arab community, but this work deals with changes and events on a global scale which are currently familiar to everyone. "Dajjal" can be understood as synonymous with "Novus Ordo Seclorum" – the New Order of the Ages.

Not every reader will be interested in reading the enthusiastic recommendations of Islam, as an alternative to the Dajjal lifestyle, which are offered at regular intervals in the text. All who read this book will be enthralled by the striking comparisons drawn between the direction of modern international affairs and the ancient Muslim prophecy of the end of the world. Present-day observations clearly resemble very specific signs, which Muslims believe will immediately precede and forewarn the arrival of the anti-Christ and the advent of Judgement Day.

This is essential reading for anyone concerned about the important contemporary issues of globalisation and capitalism, and the book should not be overlooked by readers interested in the New World Order conspiracy theory or end-times prophecies." – Tim Acheson



Published by

Ta-Ha Publishers Ltd

Unit 4, The Windsor Centre

Windsor Grove, West Norwood

London SE27 9NT, United Kingdom

# Dajjal

the

# AntiChrist

Revised Edition

Ahmad Thomson



Ta-Ha Publishers Ltd  
Unit 4, The Windsor Centre  
Windsor Grove, West Norwood  
London SE27 9NT United Kingdom

© Rabia'l-Awwal 1432/March 2011 Ahmad Thomson

First Edition published by Ta-Ha Publishers Ltd in 1986

Reprinted in 1993 and 1995

Revised Edition published in 1997 by:

Ta-Ha Publishers Ltd  
Unit 4, The Windsor Centre  
Windsor Grove, West Norwood  
London SE27 9NT, United Kingdom

URL: <http://www.taha.co.uk>

Email: [sales@taha.co.uk](mailto:sales@taha.co.uk)

Revised and typeset by Ahmad Thomson

Reprinted in 1998, 2000, 2001, 2004, 2007 and 2011

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in any retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or otherwise, without written permission of the publishers.

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

Thomson, Ahmad

Dajjal – the AntiChrist (Revised Edition)

1. Islam

I. Title

Paperback ISBNs

1-897940-38-6 (old)

978-1-897940-38-9 (new)

Hardback ISBNs

1-84200-086-1 (old)

978-1-84200-086-1 (new)

Printed by Mega Printing, Turkey

URL: <http://www.mega.com.tr>

Email: [info@mega.com.tr](mailto:info@mega.com.tr)

# Contents

Preface to the Revised Edition .....	v
Dajjal – the king who has no clothes .....	1
Glossary of Arabic Terms .....	195
Bibliography .....	217

This book is a work of fiction. Any resemblance between what is described and what you see is entirely coincidental. It is only a dream of a dreamer in the dream of

*Allah*

## Acknowledgements

This book could not and would not have been written had it not been for the inspiration of Shaykh Dr 'Abd'al-Qadir as-Sufi ad-Darqawi al-Murabit. La howla wa la quwwata ila bi'llah – There is no power and no strength except from Allah.

Many thanks to all those who have taught me, to those who taught me knowing they were doing so, and to those who taught me without knowing they were doing so. Al-hamdulillahi wa shukrulillah – Praise belongs to Allah and thanks belongs to Allah.



# Preface to the Revised Edition

*Dajjal, the king who has no clothes* was originally written in 1980. Major events that have taken place since then have tended to confirm the overview contained in the original work:

On the one hand, these have included the 'official' dismantling of communism – in reality the 'siamese twin' of capitalism which rather than having been surgically dissected from its counterpart has in fact become totally united and at one with it – as well as the Gulf War, the Bosnian war, the wars waged by Russia on the Muslims to the south, the containing of the Muslims in Palestine, the continuing offensive against Muslims in North Africa, the strengthening of the hold of the international banking network over all people, and of course the declaration that the 'new world order' is now in place, with the accompanying view that any opposition to this 'order' is by definition anarchistic and terrorist in nature.

On the other hand, the resurgence of Islam throughout the world during the same period has continued to grow steadily, and although efforts to redefine the teachings of Islam continue – so as to reduce it to just another state religion which does not threaten the foundations of the new world order in any way, but rather is one of its control mechanisms – the signs are that the desire amongst the main body of Muslims to live in accordance with the original living deen of Islam – and accordingly their ability to distinguish between the real thing and the official version – has not diminished in the least. If anything it has grown in depth and intensity.

Accordingly, the revised version of this book is not very different to the original – other than having been expanded slightly – although I have tried to reduce the frequency with which the word 'kafir' was used in the first edition. The reason for such abundant use was that it was only as the book was originally being written that I realised how much of what I had been brought up and educated to regard as 'normal' was in fact only 'normal' for the kafirun – but, when viewed from a Qur'anic perspective, extremely 'abnormal' for the muminun.

I accordingly used the adjective 'kafir' so frequently in the first edition not only in order to remind myself, but also so as to shake and awake the reader out of any complacency that he or she might have.

It is interesting to note in passing that when *Dajjal, the king who has no clothes* was originally written, the term 'new world order' had not yet been overtly introduced into common parlance through the media, although it had already been in circulation in its Latin form – *novus ordo seclorum* – on the American one dollar bill for many years, as well as being sparingly referred to by both President Wilson and President Roosevelt, *inter alia*, when plunging America into the two 'world' wars.

President Wilson told American Congress on the 2nd April 1917 that the purpose of the war was 'to set up a new international order' – and once the first 'world' war was over the League of Nations was duly established, in 1920. Similarly, President Roosevelt allegedly drafted 'a plan to preserve peace' which he named 'The United Nations' – the name given to the organisation which replaced the League of Nations shortly after the end of the second 'world' war, in 1946.

It is only since the conclusion of the Gulf War in 1991 – which effectively ensured the virtual bankruptcy of all the previously 'oil-rich' Muslim Middle East states – however, that the term 'new world order' has been openly used on the media, accompanied by the corresponding deployment of United Nations 'forces' in the name of 'peace' to politically destabilise even further the countries which, it is claimed, they have been sent to 'protect'.

Thus, to give but one example, the Bosnian Muslims in former Yugoslavia were 'protected' by having a United Nations arms embargo imposed on them, while the Serbian aggressors – who were simultaneously granted almost unlimited access to arms and military supplies – were only 'deterred', or rather delayed, from wiping out the defenceless Bosnian Muslims altogether by the setting up of 'safe zones' and 'protected areas' and the occasional token NATO practice airstrike. Having collected large numbers of Muslims in these safe areas and having persuaded them to surrender their arms, the UN forces then systematically abandoned them to their fate – which for the men often meant death and a mass grave, for the women rape and life as a refugee, and for the children scars which will never be healed.

The Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, said that kuftr is one system, and I accordingly tried to write the first edition in a very general manner, without referring to too many specific examples, so that it would be like a mirror which would reflect life wherever the book might happen to be read – whether in Sydney, or Southampton, or Singapore, or Santander, or Shiraz, or Santiago, or Seattle, or Saskatoon, or San Francisco, or Srinagar, or Strasbourg, or Sokoto, or Soweto, or Shanghai, or Sharjah, or Sofia, or Seville, or Sinkiang, or Stuttgart, or Swansea, to name but a few. I have attempted to maintain this approach in this revised edition, and for the same reason.

Some people have also observed that perhaps the book would have been clearer and easier to read if it had been divided up into chapters. One of the points that I was trying to make in the book, however, was that everything is known by its opposite, and in existence the opposites are for ever interacting. Although they meet, they do not mix – and although they do not mix, they are never entirely separate from each other. The two sides of the coin are opposite each other – but they are part of a whole, and even if you try to physically divide the coin into two ‘halves’, each ‘half’ will still have two sides to it.

I therefore had one long ‘chapter’ in which I tried to present a kaleidoscope effect with words – a mental hologram – which showed one picture at one moment and then another, its opposite, the next, in order to indicate what appeared to be some of the main patternings in existence, and knowing full well that it could not be done! Again, I have retained this approach in this revised edition, and for the same reason, still knowing full well that it is impossible, for example, to convey what the taste of honey and the taste of a lychee pip are really like by means of the printed word alone.

When the original book was first written, I took it as read that the reader would already be familiar with the hadith which describe the Dajjal, and which are accordingly only referred to but not extensively quoted in the text. Of course this has not always been the case, and accordingly any reader who is not familiar with these hadith should resort to the main and trustworthy collections of hadith. The reader would also benefit from referring to *The Signs Before the Day of Judgement* of Ibn Kathir, translated by Huda Khattab and published by Dar al-Taqwa Ltd, which contains many of the relevant hadith.

During the last fifteen years, many people have asked about the reason for the sub-title which appeared in the first edition – ‘the king who has no clothes’ – and which has been exchanged for ‘the AntiChrist’ in this revised edition.

The sub-title used for the first edition was primarily a reference to the well-known children's story about the tailors who deceived a king, making him think that they had made the finest clothes in the land for him, when in fact all that they had done was to make believe and take his money. Everyone pretended that ‘everything was all right’ and that the king was fully clothed in the finest garments – until a child destroyed the illusion by simply speaking the truth, and asking why the king was completely naked!

The sub-title used for the first edition also refers indirectly to the Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, who was the wisest and most human being that has ever lived among men – a king in the true sense of the word – and yet who possessed very little and avoided the pomp and circumstance and finery which envelops most so-called kings.

It has been related by sayyedina ‘Umar, may Allah be pleased with him, that once when he visited the Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, who was lying on a mat in his small room, he was moved to tears when he saw how little the Prophet possessed.

When the Prophet asked him why he was crying, sayyedina ‘Umar replied, ‘O Messenger of Allah, how can I not cry? This mat has left marks on your sides and I can only see what I have seen of your stores. Caesar and Chosroes are leading their lives of plenty, while you are the Messenger of Allah, His Chosen One – and look what you have!’

‘Ibn al-Khattab,’ he answered, ‘isn’t it enough for you that for us there is the next world, and for them there is this world?’

This has always been the case as regards the empire builders on the one hand, and the true followers of the Prophets, on the other, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on them and on their families and companions and followers in every age.

The sub-title used for the first edition also refers to Allah, the Lord of the worlds, the King of the Creation, the King Who is over all kings – and yet Who has no clothes!

Needless to say, the reason for changing the sub-title to ‘the Anti-

Christ' should be obvious. People in general – especially non-Muslims – are more familiar with this term and have at least some idea of what it refers to, even in an age where secular education has ensured that the general population is even less aware of what is in the Bible than in the past! Those non-Muslims who have read the Bible, or who have received some religious education, however, will no doubt be as fascinated and curious as I was when reading about and reflecting on the prophecies contained in it which concern the AntiChrist, and Gog and Magog, and the second coming of Jesus, peace be on him.

They will probably also be as equally unaware as I was about the detailed knowledge of these matters concerning the last days which the Muslims possess, and it is for people such as these – for people who know that they do not really know, but who want to know – that this book is primarily intended, not as a conclusive statement of how things are I hasten to add, but rather as a means of whetting the appetite to find out more, for ultimately real knowledge is not found in books – it is transmitted by those who have been given wisdom.

Many people have also asked why the following statement occurred at the front of the first edition – 'This book is a work of fiction. Any resemblance between what is described and what you see is entirely coincidental. It is only a dream of a dreamer in the dream of Allah.' – when, as they are quick to point out, the book often appears to be carefully describing at least some of what is currently going on in the world.

The answer is that when the book was completed, I was only too well-aware that in terms of its being a description of life, the contents of the book were incomplete, over-simplified, and inevitably coloured by my own limited personal experience, perceptions and understanding – and accordingly it was not a completely true depiction of life as it actually is. However much we know, we only know a little.

Furthermore, I was also only too well aware of Ibn al-Arabi's well-known words: 'Know that the whole creation is an imagination (khayal), and that you are an imagination in that imagination, and that whatever you think is an imagination, in that imagination, in that imagination.'

How then can anyone with any sense give reality to a khayal, to an imagination, and not to the source of that imagination – Allah, the Real?

No one has created Allah – although some of today's 'experts' in their white coats and pinstripes would have us think this, that we have imagined a God in order to try and make sense of existence, or to turn to in times of trouble.

The truth of the matter is that it is we who have been 'imagined' by Allah. It is Allah Who has given us reality, not the other way around. It is Allah Who has created us. Everything in creation has a beginning and comes to an end and ceases to exist. Allah has no beginning and no end. He has never not existed and He will never not exist. He is as He was before the Creation was brought into existence, and He will remain as He is after the Creation has ceased to exist. Surely everything in creation comes from Allah and surely to Him everything in creation returns.

Allah is the Real. Allah is True. Everything other than Allah is a fiction. It, whatever 'it' is, may appear to exist, but it will inevitably melt away like a fading dream – including 'you', and 'me', and 'them', and 'it', and any 'thing' else you may care to mention.

To conclude, when the first edition of this book was first being written, I was only too well aware that it is impossible to summarise and encapsulate life in its totality on the printed page. The most that could be achieved was to project a combination of 'headlines' and 'images' which, it was hoped, would indicate some of the main characteristics of the world as it is today. This remains the case today and it will always be so, and, if anything, I am now even more aware than ever before that the innumerable variations and forms in life defy detailed description and categorisation: We all try to 'make sense' of life and of what happens in it – both to ourselves and to others – but ultimately, if we are not foolish enough to think that we know it all, we are driven to realise that Allah knows and we do not know, and so to humbly place our foreheads on the ground in complete and unconditional surrender before our Lord.

*Allah*

Ahmad Thomson  
London 1417/1997

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ

In the Name of Allah  
the Merciful the Compassionate

And when the magicians came, Moses said to them, 'Throw what you are going to throw!'

And when they had thrown, Moses said, 'What you have produced is magic. Surely Allah will destroy it! Surely Allah does not protect the work of mischief makers.'

And Allah will vindicate the truth by His words, however much the guilty detest it.

*(Qur'an: Surah Yunus – 10.80-82)*

The Companions of the Fire and  
the Companions of the Garden are  
not the same. It is the Companions  
of the Garden who are the victors.

*(Qur'an: Surat'al-Hashr – 59.20)*

In the country of the blind  
the one eyed man  
is king





# Dajjal

There are three aspects of the Dajjal. There is Dajjal the individual. There is Dajjal as a world wide social and cultural phenomenon. There is Dajjal as an unseen force.



Although the word 'Dajjal' – which comes from the Arabic word meaning 'to deceive', 'to cheat', 'to smear with tar' – does not appear in the *Qur'an*, the Dajjal is described in considerable detail in all the major collections of the *Hadith*, including the two well-known Sahih collections of Imam al-Bukhari and Imam Muslim, especially in the sections which are concerned with 'the last days', the period of time immediately preceding the end of the world, as well as in many other compilations of *Hadith* such as *Al-Mishkat Al-Masabih*, *The Gardens of the Righteous*, and *Al-Muwatta'* of Imam Malik:

From 'Abdullah ibn 'Umar, may Allah be pleased with him:

The Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, stood up to speak to his people and after praising Allah as He should be praised, may He be Exalted and Glorified, he spoke about the Dajjal, saying, 'I warn you against him, and there is no Prophet who has not warned his people against him – even Noah warned his people against him. But I will tell you something which no other Prophet has told his people. You must know that the Dajjal is one-eyed, and Allah is not one-eyed.' (It was related by Muslim)

From Abu'l-Dira, may Allah be pleased with him:

The Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, said, 'Whoever memorises the first ten ayat of Surat'al-Kahf will be protected from the Dajjal.' (It was related by Abu Da'ud and by Muslim)

From 'Abdullah ibn 'Abbas, may Allah be pleased with him:

The Messenger of Allah, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, used to teach this du'a in the same way that he would teach them a surah of the *Qur'an*:

## 2 Dajjal – the AntiChrist

*'Allahumma inniy a'udhu bika min adhabi jahannama, wa a'udhu bika min adhabi'l-qabri, wa a'udhu bika min fitnati'l-Masihid-Dajjal, wa a'udhu bika min fitnati'l-mahya wa'l-mamati.'*

'O Allah, I seek refuge in You from the torment of Hell, and I seek refuge in You from the torment of the grave, and I seek refuge in You from the trial of the Dajjal, and I seek refuge in You from the trial of life and death.' (It was related by Malik)

'Al-Masih ad-Dajjal' literally means 'the False Messiah', in other words, 'the Anti-Christ' – as opposed to 'Al-Masih ibn Maryam', meaning 'the Messiah son of Mary', in other words, the Prophet Jesus Christ, peace be on him:

From 'Abdullah ibn 'Umar, may Allah be pleased with him:

The Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, said, 'I dreamt at night that I was at the Ka'ba, and I saw a dark man like the most handsome of dark men you have ever seen. He had hair reaching to between his ears and his shoulders like the most excellent of such hair that you have seen. He had combed his hair, and water was dripping from it. He was leaning on two men or on the shoulders of two men doing tawaf around Ka'ba. I asked, "Who is this?" It was said, "Al-Masih ibn Maryam." Then we were with a man with wiry hair and blind in his right eye, as if it was a floating grape. I asked, "Who is this?" It was said to me, "This is Al-Masih ad-Dajjal.'" (It was related by Malik).



At some point between now and the end of the world the Dajjal will most certainly appear.

The Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, was sitting with a group of his companions, may Allah be pleased with all of them, one day during the late afternoon. The disc of the sun was just about to begin to disappear behind a wall. The Prophet said that the time between their sitting there that afternoon and the end of the world, was as short as the distance between the bottom

of the sun and the top of the wall at that moment. This was fourteen hundred years ago.

Allah confirms in the *Qur'an* that the person who is asked about the end of the world – that is, the Hour – knows as much about it as the person who asks the question. Allah also says that mankind has only been given a little knowledge concerning the Hour. No-one knows exactly when it will be, but Allah indicates in the *Qur'an* that perhaps it is closer than you think. As far as you are concerned, the world ends for you when you die.

From Abu Hurayra, may Allah be pleased with him:

The Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, said, 'There are five things which nobody knows except Allah.' Then he recited:

**Truly knowledge of the Hour is with Allah – and it is He Who sends down rain, and it is He Who knows what is in the wombs – and no self knows what it will earn tomorrow, and no self knows in what land it will die. Truly Allah is All-Knowing, Aware. (*Qur'an: Surah Luqman* – 31.34)**

(It was related by Muslim)

Many of the signs of the end of the world are clearly indicated in the *Hadith* collections, and whoever is awake and aware of the signs in the self and on the horizon, knows about these signs and recognises them when they appear. Virtually all the signs of the end of the world are now apparent, except for the last four major signs, and it would appear that even these are now imminent.

Amongst the signs already apparent are: that the poor and the destitute build tall buildings in which people glorify themselves; that the slave girl gives birth to her mistress, one meaning of which is that a mother who is enslaved by her work situation has children who grow up to be uncontrollable and who dominate and tyrannise the family situation; that women greatly outnumber men; that there are many women who no longer give birth to children; that everyone is concerned with working so that not only the men but also the women go out to work; that family ties are neglected or abandoned; that there is an abundance of food, much of which has no blessing; that when a person is offered food it is refused; that time is short; that there are

#### 4 *Dajjal – the AntiChrist*

many people who are hard-hearted and mean; that there are many people who bear false witness; that the truthful are disbelieved and the liars are believed; that the strong devour the weak; that few are wise and many are ignorant; that the leader of a people is the worst of them; that a people fear a tyrant so much that they dare not even tell him that he is a tyrant; that there is much fighting and killing of people; that the ones who do the killing do not know who is being killed, and that the ones who are killed do not know why they have been killed; that there are people who behave like animals; that there are women who wear their clothes like a second skin so that they appear naked even though they are clothed; that many people drink alcohol; that adultery and fornication are common; that men lie with men, and women with women; that men wear silk; that female singers and musical instruments are popular; that usury is so widespread that even those who are not directly involved in it are affected by it; that there are few people who are trustworthy in their business transactions; that people distrust those who are honest and trust those who are dishonest; that writing is widespread; that attempts are made to make the deserts green; that there are people who attempt to change the balance of nature and who interfere with and interrupt the basic cycles and processes of existence; that earthquakes and other natural disasters increase in frequency and intensity; that people wish they were out of this world and in their graves; that people believe in the stars rather than trusting in God; that there are many false prophets, each claiming to be a messenger of God; that voices are raised in anger in places of worship; that many of the Muslims become extremely wealthy; that the Muslims are numerous but powerless – because of their love for this world and their fear of death – and unable to stop the nations of the world from invading and plundering them; and finally that the sun rises in the west, one meaning of which is that the life transaction of Islam is adopted by people living in the western world – although it is clear from the *Hadith* collections that this is also an event which is destined to literally take place:

From 'Abdullah ibn 'Amr, may Allah be pleased with him:

The Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, said, 'The first of the signs (of the Hour) to appear will be the rising of the sun from the West and the appearance of the Beast before the people in the forenoon.

Whichever of these two events happens first, the other will follow immediately. (It was related by Muslim).

Commenting on this hadith, Ibn Kathir states that the emergence of the Beast – either in or near Makka – will be the first of the earthly signs, just as the rising of the sun from the West will be the first of the heavenly signs. In summarising what the *Qur'an* and the *Hadith* say about the Beast Ibn Kathir states in his book *Al-Bidayah wa'n-Nihayah*, meaning 'The Beginning and the End', as follows:

Among the signs of the Hour will be the emergence of a beast from the earth. It will be very strange in appearance, and extremely huge; one cannot even imagine what it will look like. It will emerge from the earth and shake the dust from its head. It will have with it the ring of Solomon and the rod of Moses. People will be terrified of it and will try to run away, but they will not be able to escape, because such will be the decree of Allah. It will destroy the nose of every unbeliever with the rod, and write the word 'kafir' on his forehead; it will adorn the face of every believer and write the word 'mumin' on his forehead, and it will speak to people.

As well as the rising of the sun from the West and the emergence of the Beast from the earth, the *Hadith* also refer to other major signs which have yet to take place, including the Smoke – which will drive people from the east to the west; the destruction of Madina al-Munawarra; the destruction of the Ka'ba in Makka by an Abyssinian called Dhu'l-Suwayqatayn; and three major landslides – one in the East, one in the West, and one in Arabia – at the end of which fire will burst forth from the direction of Aden in the Yemen, and drive people to the place of their final assembly.

According to most of the commentators, these events will probably take place after the last four major signs of the end of the world have occurred – and these are: the appearance of Dajjal the individual; the appearance of the Mahdi, the rightly guided leader of the Muslims who will fight the Dajjal; the re-appearance of the Prophet Jesus, on him be peace, who as well as breaking all the crosses, killing all the pigs, marrying and having children and praying with the Muslims, will also kill the Dajjal; and the appearance of Yajuj wa Majuj, or Gog and Magog, a tribe of people who will scatter across the world, creating destruction.



There are three aspects of the Dajjal. There is Dajjal the individual. There is Dajjal as a world wide social and cultural phenomenon. There is Dajjal as an unseen force.



It is clear that before Dajjal the individual appears on earth, there must already be present and established the system, and the people running that system, which and who will support and follow him when he does appear. Evidence of that system, and the people running that system, is evidence of Dajjal as a world wide social and cultural phenomenon, and Dajjal as an unseen force. The signs of these broader aspects of Dajjal, that is what Dajjal the individual will epitomise, are very apparent today, which would indicate that Dajjal the individual is soon to appear.



Amongst the descriptions of the Dajjal in the *Hadith* collections we find the following: Dajjal has one eye, like a floating grape. Dajjal can be heard all over the world at the same time. Dajjal will show you fire, but it will not burn you. Dajjal will show you water, but you will not be able to drink it. Dajjal will talk of the Garden, and make it seem like the Fire. Dajjal will talk of the Fire, and make it seem like the Garden. These descriptions all fit the characteristics of today's media systems and communications technology, and especially the manner in which they are largely used.

The Dajjal is also described in the *Hadith* as having many eyes on both sides, and travelling about the world in large hops. This description fits the characteristics of today's means of mass transport. Dajjal is also described as having the letters KFR written on the forehead. Some of the jets in the Israeli airforce have these letters painted on their noses.

The letters KFR are the basic root letters of the Arabic word *kufur*, or *kafir*. *Kufur* is to cover up and to reject. The *kafir* is the one who covers up the true nature of existence – that is, that there is no god only Allah – and who rejects the messengers who are sent by Allah to show people how to live in harmony with what is within them and with what is without them, and to worship and have knowledge of Allah.

When the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, said that you should seek knowledge as far as China, he was talking about knowledge of Allah, or at the very least knowledge which leads to knowledge of Allah. If your knowledge does not come

from fear of Allah, you have been deceived. Fear Allah, and Allah will give you knowledge. The kafir rejects this. The kafir is thus diametrically opposed to the mumin.

The mumin is the muslim who openly affirms the true nature of existence, and who accepts and follows the example and teachings of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, the last of the Prophets to have been sent by Allah before the end of the world.



It should already be clear that the kafir system, and the kafirun who control and believe in that system, are none other than the manifestation of Dajjal as a world wide social and cultural phenomenon and Dajjal as an unseen force. Dajjal the individual will be the epitome of the kafir system, the ultimate kafir, and therefore inevitably to be chosen as the leader of that system by the kafirun who are running that system, when he appears. The Prophet Muhammad said that kufr is one system. The kafir system is Dajjal. The three aspects of Dajjal are in fact interlinked and indivisible. Dajjal.

In the same way the Mahdi will be, when he appears, the epitome of Islam, the way of the Prophet Muhammad, although it must be said immediately that he will be like a drop compared to the ocean of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him. It follows that the Mahdi will be the one who is inevitably recognised and accepted by all true Muslims as their leader. The Prophet Muhammad said that the Muslims are one body.

Kufr is at war with Islam. Islam is at war with Kufr. It is clear from the *Hadith* that the Dajjal will fight the Mahdi. The Mahdi will fight the Dajjal. The Prophet Jesus, who was not crucified, but taken by Allah out of this world into the Unseen – and another who looked like him crucified in his place – the Prophet Jesus, on him be peace, having returned to this world, will kill the Dajjal together with all his followers.



The Dajjal has been the subject of much writing in the past. Prophecies relating to the Dajjal are to be found, for example, in the *Bible*, in the *Book of Revelations* by John, and in the writings of Nostrodamus. Many people have repeatedly attempted to interpret these prophecies anew in the light of events taking place during their own particular lifetimes. The Dajjal is usually referred to as 'the AntiChrist' in these

prophecies and the commentaries on them – as also, more recently, in the loose interpretations which have been placed on them in various films and videos.

It is not known how reliable or accurate either these prophecies, or the commentaries on them, or the later interpretations of them, are. It is quite probable that at least some of them came by way of the jinn.

The jinn are made of smokeless fire. They can see us. Only some of us can see them. Human beings are made of water and clay. Angels are made of pure light. They are incapable of wrong action. They do not eat or sleep or procreate. They praise Allah continuously. They are the means by which the creational process operates. The jinn, like us, are capable of right action and wrong action. Some of them are muslim, some are kafir, and some are munafiq, that is hypocrites who say they are muslim when in truth they are kafir. The jinn often communicate with people, and from their knowledge of the unseen tell of events which lie in the future. They are often used by magicians and fortune-tellers.

Clearly, if the writings of John and Nostrodamus came by way of, or were influenced by, bad or mischievous jinn, then they are not entirely reliable, since, as is the case with many of the jinn who are the familiars of those who practice magic, or who communicate with mediums, for every truth that is told, several half-truths and outright lies are also added. Given this element of possible uncertainty and error, the only way that the prophecies of John and Nostrodamus can be shown to be reliable is when what has been said corresponds to what eventually happens.

As far as the written word is concerned, therefore, the *Hadith* contain the most reliable descriptions of the Dajjal and of the events which are to take place both before and after the appearance of the Dajjal – wherever, that is, there is a reliable isnad, that is a reliable chain of transmission from the one who heard or saw what was actually said or done by the Prophet Muhammad himself, to the ones who remembered by heart what that person remembered by heart, to the one who recorded what they remembered in writing.

The *Hadith* which were recorded in writing were only accepted after both their contents and their isnads had been scrupulously checked and authenticated by the scholars who collected them – unlike today's versions of the *Bible*, all of whose contents are incapable of being authenticated in this manner, and much of which may therefore originate



from unreliable sources and cannot definitely be attributed to the Prophets whose words and actions the *Bible* purports to record.

Allah says in the *Qur'an* – which, being a direct revelation from God to Muhammad via the Angel Jibril which was both memorised by heart and recorded in writing as it was revealed, is even more reliable than the fully authenticated *Hadith* – Allah says in the *Qur'an* that the Jews and the Christians have changed and altered the original teaching of their respective Prophets, peace be on them, and the numerous contradictions and discrepancies which now exist within the *Bible* bear eloquent witness to this fact.

The Prophet Muhammad did say, however, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, that knowledge is the lost property of the mumin, who may pick it up wherever he or she finds it. The mumin is the muslim who not only believes in Allah, but who also actually and actively trusts in Allah in the course of his or her every-day affairs. The muslim may believe in Allah whilst still relying on his or her own actions. The mumin relies on Allah for success. The muhsin is the muslim who knows that there is only Allah, and that accordingly reliance on other than Allah is an impossibility. The muslim, the mumin and the muhsin are all Muslims, but they possess different degrees of knowledge of Allah. Those who fear Allah the most are the ones who have the greatest knowledge of Allah, because such fear only comes with such knowledge. The Prophet Muhammad said that no other being feared Allah as much as he.

Knowledge comes to the one who purifies the heart by the grace of Allah. As the heart becomes clear and calm, the knowledge of the heart increases. This knowledge begins where the written word ends. For those whose hearts are purified, so that the signs in the self and on the horizon – and they are the same – are recognisable and understood, the signs of Dajjal as a world wide social and cultural phenomenon and Dajjal as an unseen force are plain to see, and what they experience is a confirmation and amplification of the information which the written word contains.

The mumin is the muslim who trusts in Allah. Part of this trust is to trust others, and to trust one's self, and one's experience of life, and one's interpretation of the signs in the self and on the horizon. This trust is complete when the person knows his or her self, for whoever knows their self knows their Lord, and whoever knows their Lord knows what

comes from their Lord, which is creation, the universe and everything in it – and no form tangible or intangible, actual or conceptual, can be associated with Allah. Whoever has this trust and this knowledge is muhsin.

Reading is not the same as seeing. The seeing is a much stronger confirmation of what has been read. Books can only remind you of what has already been tasted and of what is yet to be tasted or of what is capable of being tasted. It is the tasting which is important, not the record of the tasting, whether that record be audio or visual, or on paper or plastic, or on metal or celluloid. To see is to know, but there are different seeings and different knowings.



Considering Dajjal as an unseen force, the presence of this force is indicated by the arrival of beings from another world who take possession of human beings in the same way as the jinn sometimes possess humans and animals. It may well be that Dajjal as an unseen force can, like the jinn, actually manifest as humans and animals without actually having to possess them, that is by taking on their likeness rather than by taking them over. It may well be that Dajjal as an unseen force is none other than a horde of kafir jinn, as opposed to being beings of some other kind. It is not known from which world they come. It is known that there are many worlds. Allah is described in the *Qur'an*, in *Surat'al-Fatiha*, as 'Lord of the Worlds'. Ibn al-'Arabi visited some of these worlds in vision, and describes these experiences in his book *The Makkan Revelations*. He names vast cities possessing technologies far superior to the ones of which some people on this earth boast today.

The sign that this possession has taken place is that you see large numbers or groups of people all acting as one body, apparently possessing no individual identity. Although they look like human beings they simply do not behave like human beings, but more like robots. The large numbers of books and films which deal with this phenomenon are not mere figments of the imagination. They point to the reality of what has already occurred and continues to occur, as, for example, in the film *The Man who Fell to Earth*.

Since this aspect of Dajjal as an unseen force is in the Unseen, direct knowledge of it is only available to those who have been given access to the Unseen. Although the Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, was given such access, he was not hungry for it.

The desire for such knowledge is an obstacle to the one who desires direct knowledge of Allah.

The evidence in the phenomenal world, that is the world which is apprehended by the senses, however, that this takeover has taken and is taking place is to be found by observing the manner in which the social and cultural conditions in our world have changed, especially in this century, and by examining how life is conducted today. In other words, it is possible to ascertain the characteristics of Dajjal as an unseen force by examining Dajjal as a world wide social and cultural phenomenon.



Considering Dajjal as a world wide social and cultural phenomenon, we see that the takeover is well under way, and that the time would appear to be soon approaching when it will be time for Dajjal the individual to appear, simply because the systems and the people running those systems, that is the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, have apparently gained sufficient world wide control to be able to instate him as the leader they have all been waiting for, once he has been recognised and acclaimed as such.

Dramatic changes have taken place on the face of this earth in the last hundred years. The social groupings which used to be prevalent throughout the world, most of them based on the village pattern, a community of families who all knew and helped each other and which interacted with other village communities, have been rapidly eroded and de-personalised. In the large cities of today, the individual has become increasingly alienated from his or her self, and from others, and from knowledge of Allah – a cog in the consumer producer process who, when not at work or asleep, is often trapped in an infantile and unfulfilled search for illusory self-gratification, which ensures that there is usually very little time left to reflect and to consider where he or she is going, and no time to actually do something about breaking out of the recurring behaviour pattern in which he or she is trapped.

Even where the social grouping of today is limited in size to the village number, the actual social transaction between its members is far less intimate and cohesive than in the past. There is less time to meet together and more time to watch television. There is less time spent working together and more time spent working alone. For those who have been born into this state of affairs, this change in social conditions is not always apparent. It is assumed that things have always been the way they are, as, for example, in the film *THX 1138*.

Perhaps the only way of appreciating how dramatic the change has been is to observe what happens when a multi-national corporation decides to exploit the natural resources of a hitherto inaccessible region of the world. In a relatively brief period of time, the activities of the people controlling the corporation have not only disrupted the way of life of the people living in that area, but have also eliminated their traditional sources of livelihood and thereby ensured that there is cheap labour available to carry out the work being generated by the corporation's activities. Suddenly everyone has a number and wants this thing called money, and the social harmony which existed before the mine, or the oil-field, or the timber-felling operation, or the factory assembly plant, or the hydro-electric power scheme, or whatever, became a reality, is gone.

All this is done in the name of progress, and civilising the backward, and improving the quality of life, but in reality the new lifestyle which is inevitably linked with the new technology, and with the mockery of real knowledge which the kafir calls literacy and education, is the sign of the erosion or end of a truly human transaction in that area, as those who cannot be utilised are either deliberately driven away, or eliminated by the introduction of new illnesses and viruses to which they have no natural resistance.

Another significant change in social activity, which is clearly linked with the degree of automation in any particular social grouping, is that whereas in the past a community used to be united by its worship of God, nowadays this basic and unifying element is often lacking in people's lives. In the western world this pattern of worship used to be predominantly that of the Christian religion – a peculiar amalgam of Paul's own ideas, Greek philosophy, the innovations of a priesthood, which itself was an innovation, in its attempts to compromise by all means with kafir rulers, and finally a few traces of the original teaching of the Prophet Jesus, peace be on him.

Since this pattern of worship was not and is not the same as that which was originally embodied by Jesus and his followers, it follows that it did not, and can not and never will, affirm the true nature of existence or lead to direct knowledge of Allah. It was and is accordingly inevitable that people would constantly abandon this pattern of worship – the kafir because he or she had no desire to worship Allah in the first place, and the true believer because he or she realised that the

brand of Christianity which was being advertised had little to do with the original teaching of Jesus, and was not based on the behavioural pattern of him and his community, and would not lead to knowledge of Allah.

It was the fragmentation of western society by the advent of the mechanised way of life, the so-called 'industrial revolution' which made it easier for people to break free of the Christian pattern of worship. No worship was preferable to a pattern of worship which although performed in the name of Jesus did not conform to the pattern of worship which Jesus had in fact brought – and which has in fact been long lost for ever.

It is interesting to note that there are some writers who have equated the Official Trinitarian Church, in all its different manifestations, with the AntiChrist, since so many of its basic doctrines are not only invented by man but also openly contradict what Jesus himself taught, may the peace of Allah be on him, and since so many of its rituals derive from sources other than the lifestyle of Jesus and his community.

This view is reinforced by the fact that it was the champions of the Official Trinitarian Church, both Roman Catholic and then also Protestant, who in past centuries waged war on and eliminated all those Unitarian Christians – including the Nazarenes, the Ebionites, the Donatists, the Arians, the Adoptionists, the Paulicians, the Illuminists, the Catharii and many of the Goths – who sought to follow the original teaching of Jesus and the way of life embodied by him. Once the last of these Unitarian Christians had been eliminated by the Mediaeval Inquisition and its successor the Spanish Inquisition – along with a great many of the Unitarian Jews living in Europe – the Official Trinitarian Church then concentrated on attempting to eliminate all the Unitarian followers of the Prophet Muhammad, the Muslims, and despite its lack of success in this project continues in these attempts even today.

The degree of success which was achieved by the Official Trinitarian Church in these attempts, both in the past and in the present, was, and is, only made possible by the fact that it has always worked hand in glove with the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, which of course was, and is, also committed to subverting and destroying the practice of a living and dynamic Islam.

In the light of this, it is clear that any apparent conflict between 'Science' and Trinitarian Christianity is largely illusory and certainly

only skin deep, since they both depend on and support the same system. However it is equally clear that a distinction must be drawn between those Trinitarian Christians who are perfectly well aware that the way they follow is not the way of Jesus, and those people who in all sincerity wish to worship God and who have been misled into believing that the brand of Christianity which they follow is synonymous with what Jesus originally taught, and who up to now have had no chance of access to the living life transaction of Islam – which is the Prophetic lifestyle for this age, and which naturally bears a striking resemblance to the lifestyle once embodied by Jesus and his original followers, may Allah be pleased with them.

What has just been said about the Christians also applies to the Jews. Many of those who today call themselves Jews clearly do not follow the way of Moses, may the peace of Allah be on him, and indeed a great number of them do not even claim to be descended from the original Tribe of Israel for whom both Moses and Jesus were specifically sent, but freely admit that they are descended from other forbears. Perhaps one of the most significant origins of these non-jewish Jews is the people known as the Khazars, who were originally a small nation living in what is now Turkey and southern Russia, in the area between the Black Sea and the Caspian Sea. Their leader, King Joseph, adopted Judaism out of political expediency during the eighth century AD so as to avoid being conquered either by the Christians who were approaching his kingdom from the north, or by the Muslims who were coming up from the south. He was perfectly well aware that this move would ensure a limited protection from those who also worshipped God.

The descendants of the Khazars, who are usually referred to as the Ashkenazim, noted for their ability and expertise both in the arts and in their business and financial transactions, are now spread throughout the earth. The way of life which they follow is not the way of life which Moses and his community followed, may Allah be pleased with them. That way of life had already been lost when Jesus first appeared on earth. Jesus, it will be remembered, came to re-establish the way of Moses amongst the Tribe of Israel and not to change it one jot or tittle. The fact that the scribes and pharisees, the self-appointed priesthood of what had become the Jewish religion, did not even recognise who Jesus was shows how far astray they were from the original way of Moses even then, and that was twenty centuries ago.

Sometimes described as 'the thirteenth tribe' of Israel, the descendants of the Khazars are linked by some historians with one of the last four major signs of the end of the world, that is the appearance of Yajuj wa Majuj, or Gog and Magog, since they are in reality 'Jews but not Jews', and since King Joseph confirmed, in about 960 AD (in the famous *Khazar Correspondence* between himself and Hasdai ibn Shaprut, the Sephardhic Jewish foreign minister of the Andalusian Khalif, 'Abdu'r-Rahman III), that the Khazars are descended from Togarma, the grandson of Japheth, son of Noah – and according to *Genesis 10: 2-3*, the uncle of Togarma was Magog. If this be true, then we see that they are intimately linked with the appearance of the Dajjal, since many of them today are in high positions of control in the various interlinking systems which together make up the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system.

There are those who are only too eager to point out that what has been said about the Christians and the Jews also applies to the Muslims, and that there are many people alive today who call themselves 'Muslims' but who are not following the way of the Prophet Muhammad and his community. This is quite true, and it is partially a measure of the success enjoyed by the Christians and the Jews in their attempts to subvert and destroy those who have sought or who seek to follow the way of Muhammad and his community, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him and them.

One of the chief methods used by the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, to erase living Islam is to introduce the kafir way of life into the Muslim countries, whilst disguising this ploy by describing it in 'islamic' terminology. Nearly all the traditional Muslim lands are today controlled and governed in accordance with the precepts of the kafir system, and not according to what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah*. Although the Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, said that some Muslims would follow the example of their predecessors – meaning the Christians and the Jews – just like a lizard making for its hole, he also said that not all of his community would go astray. There are still many Muslims who today follow the same pattern of life as that which was followed by the Prophet Muhammad and the first Muslim community which formed around him. The point is, that although there are people who say they are Muslims but who do not follow the way of Muhammad, at least the way of Muhammad is

still available for those who do wish to follow it, and at least there are people who still do follow it. The main difference between the Jews, the Christians and the Muslims is that the Jews no longer know or do the prayer which Moses did, the Christians no longer know or do the prayer which Jesus did, and the Muslims still know and do the prayer which Muhammad did.

The way of Moses and the way of Jesus have been lost. The religions of Judaism and Christianity have been developed and introduced instead. These religions are an integral part of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system. The Dajjal system is the complete antithesis of the Prophetic way of life, as embodied not only by Moses, Jesus and Muhammad, but also by all the Prophets as far back as Adam, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on all one hundred and twenty four thousand of them.



There are three basic patterns of social grouping in the world. There is the simple community which lives in fitra, that is in simple harmony with existence but without following the Prophetic pattern of worship of Allah. There is the muslim community which as well as living in harmony with existence also worships Allah in the manner indicated by Allah through the Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace. Finally there is the kafir society which neither lives in harmony with existence nor consciously worships Allah. In Reality of course every single atom is in its place and the overall harmony of existence eloquently proclaims the Majesty and Beauty of the Bringer into Existence and the Bringer out of Existence and the Only Existent, Allah.

We have seen how the pattern of life followed by the small community living in fitra and by the muslim community has been considerably eroded and destroyed, especially in the last century, by the spread of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system. In order to appreciate the characteristics of this system, which is outwardly the expression of Dajjal as a world wide social and cultural phenomenon and inwardly the manifestation of Dajjal as an unseen force, it is necessary to examine the system in greater detail.



The way in which today's kafir state is managed and controlled is by means of a highly centralised and increasingly computerised government. The advance of technology, especially in the realms of commu-



nication and travel, together with the use of complex computerised information storage and retrieval systems, has made widespread control from one place a reality. Most kafir states are police states. Compared with the situation a hundred years ago, the degree of surveillance and control exercised by the rulers over the ruled is staggering. Much of this control is made possible by the form which work takes in today's industrial society.

It is significant that the most common form of business concern today is the large corporation, whether privately or state owned, which often not only has branches all over any one particular country, but also all over any one particular land-mass, and even all over the world. Everyone who works within a particular corporation structure is controlled by the manner in which that corporation operates. People are increasingly obliged to put the rules of the corporation above the application of common sense and humanity in the conduct of their everyday lives. Even the individual concern or the small business is highly regulated in what it may or may not do. Everyone is always told that these rules are for their own good, but they are never given the chance to see what life would be like without them.

It comes as no surprise to find that those who control the government of a kafir state usually control the large corporations too. The elite of the kafir controllers control the kafir legal system, which is used to control all the other interlinking sub-systems in the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, by determining what form they may take and what the people who work within them may or must not do. This means that life in a kafir state is highly institutionalised, standardised and regularised. The most common social grouping today is centred around the work nexus. It is pyramidal in form. The manner of its control is pharaonic. This enables the few to enslave and control the many, often without the many realising just how great the degree of control being exercised over them is. All kafir institutions are run as a business concern, whether it be the legal system, the government system, the factory system, the university system, the hospital system or the media system, to name but a few.

All these institutions are geared to enable the effective running of the producer consumer process, which is today's predominant religion, enthralling the many with its myriad rules and controlled by its priesthood of experts. The consumer producer process is promoted as the ideal way

of life by all those who at present control the kafir states of the so-called modern world. This is not surprising, since it is they who benefit most from that process and gather most of its financial rewards.

When establishing the consumer producer process in what is called the third world or the under-developed countries, the colonisers, as has already been noted, have always disrupted the way of life which was being followed by the indigenous population prior to the colonisers' arrival. The basic approach has always been to persuade people to produce more than they need. To do this they have to be persuaded to work longer hours than before, and the women have to be persuaded that they will be free if they go and work in the factory all day. In order to make the work an attractive proposition, the people are offered money, but only enough to ensure that once they are dependant on it they will have to keep on working to have it, because they have not earned enough to save up. In order to make the money seem worth anything, the people are persuaded to want products which they never wanted before and many of which they simply do not need. Once you have the people wanting the products, they have to obtain the money to buy the products, which means they have to work to obtain the money. Thus in a very short period of time a large number of people can be persuaded to abandon their former way of life, in order to manufacture the products which they have been persuaded they want, and so get paid to buy them.

This pattern is reinforced by introducing the debt-mechanism. Everyone is encouraged to 'need' – in fact, to 'want' – more money than they are actually earning, and to borrow the difference. Once in debt, then they are hooked and usually trapped. For the majority of people, 'have it now, pay for it later' usually means, 'once you're in debt, you'll be trying to pay it off for the rest of your life.' The compound interest trap is a particularly vicious one.

Naturally there are those who, although they have been persuaded to want the goods and the money to buy them, either cannot obtain work or cannot be bothered to obtain work. Instead they turn to crime. This provides the ideal excuse for the kafir controllers to introduce their legal system to protect those who are working and at the same time to increase their control over the working population. This also means the creation of more jobs for those who are needed to make the kafir legal system work, including not only the bureaucrats and office staff,

but also the people who have to build the offices to house them, and the courts and prisons to deal with the people who will not play the consumer producer game. Naturally the fines collected in the courts do not provide a sufficiently large income to pay for all these buildings to be erected and to supply the people working in them with a decent salary. Accordingly additional taxes have to be levied. This necessitates more office space and creates more jobs for the tax collectors. It means people have to work harder to maintain their spending capacity. It means people try to avoid paying the taxes, which means the people in the legal system are given more work. As the taxes are increased and as the accepted value of money diminishes, because prices are put up to gather additional income without having to do any additional work, the work force becomes disgruntled. It attempts to organise and alter the status quo. As a result more laws are passed to control their activities. This means more work for the people in the legal system. In no time at all the consumer producer process has been firmly established. The working population is enmeshed in a bureaucratic system of organised disorder, in which their attention has been directed away from their Sustainer and concentrated on their sustenance – on their economic viability and their daily bread.

As activity within the consumer producer state becomes ever more complexified and diverse, and as human society becomes correspondingly alienated and fragmented, there inevitably comes the stage which we are now witnessing in those countries in which the consumer producer process can be said to have originated:

#### Total Collapse.

It is this cycle of self-destructive activity, the kafir consumer producer process, which has all but destroyed the radical alternative to this behavioural pattern, the Prophetic lifestyle. Today millions of people are trapped in the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, and although many of them are not happy with it, it seems unlikely that they will be able to appreciate what living Islam really is until the collapse of the consumer producer process in the High Tec North is far more advanced than at present, so well have they been programmed to believe that a life based on consuming and producing is 'civilised' and 'advanced', whilst a life based on the way of Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, is 'primitive' and 'backward'.

The consumer producer process ensures that people are treated like

children, encouraged to work hard and to enjoy their play – and not to ask awkward questions. The ignorance of the people who control that process and of the people who are controlled by them is displayed by the fact that they are unaware of the true nature of existence, and of what happens to you after you die. They take existence for granted, pretend that they are not going to die in the foreseeable future, and think that when they do eventually die, they will simply become dust or ashes.

Those who follow the Prophetic life pattern, which is based on a revealed message from Allah and not on the speculation and experimentation of the so-called 'expert,' know that everything comes from Allah and returns to Allah. They know that they are on a journey from Allah to Allah. They know what happens after death: the questioning in the grave, the period of waiting until the end of the world, the being brought back to life on the Last Day, the Balance being set up, the weighing of one's actions and intentions, the decision being made as to whether you are for the Fire or the Garden, and finally your going to one or the other, for ever.

Those who follow the Prophetic life pattern not only know what lies on the other side of death, they also appreciate how short life is, and they act accordingly. Clearly for the one whose sights are fixed on the Garden, or only on Allah, the exploitation of others in order to build up wealth and power in this life is clearly a worthless and pointless proposition. It is only an attractive proposition to the kafir because he or she thinks that this life is all there is, and accordingly attempts to construct his or her notion of the Garden in this life and in this phenomenal world.

The Prophetic life pattern is grounded in the worship of Allah. The five prayers which every Muslim does each day are sometimes referred to as the five pillars of the day. They support your day and keep things in perspective. Of course it is necessary to work, for it is only in the Garden that food comes to you whenever you want it, but the mumin is not subservient to his or her work situation, only to Allah. It is much more difficult for a mumin to be anxious about his or her provision, because he or she knows that Allah is the Provider, and that whoever remembers Allah is remembered by Allah, and that whoever praises Allah is fed by Allah.

Muslim economics is not based on the creation of debts. It is based on the voluntary sharing of wealth by the rich with the poor. What the kafir state seeks to achieve by means of heavy taxation enforced

by repressive measures, the muslim community achieves by voluntary sharing. Voluntary sharing is only possible where the true nature of existence is known. The one who has been given wealth knows firstly, that it is from Allah, secondly, that if he or she shares it as he or she has been commanded by Allah this will help take him or her to the Garden, and thirdly, that if he or she does not share it then such greed may take him or her to the Fire. The one who wishes to see the face of Allah also knows that he or she must give out of what Allah has given to him or her.

The Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, said to Abu Dharr in the shadow of the Ka'ba one day that those who are in most danger of going to the Fire are the very rich unless they spend in every direction. He also said that giving out is a shield from the Fire. The reason why a muslim community has no need of a police force, or of prisons, or of a repressive legal system, is that the prospect of the Fire provides a far greater deterrent to committing antisocial or selfish actions, and the prospect of the Garden provides a far greater incentive to do right and generous actions, than the deterrents and incentives needed in a kafir state by people who think that the Fire and the Garden are imaginary places dreamed up by the Christians in the past so that corrupt priests could blackmail simple people into parting with their wealth.

The truth is that although the heaven and hell conceived of by the Christians – who no longer have access to the original teaching of Jesus, peace be on him – may not bear any actual resemblance to the Fire and Garden, and although corrupt Christians in the past have used the threat of their hell and the promise of their heaven to make money out of people who feared God, nevertheless the Fire and Garden are real and you will be going to one or the other. There is no third alternative or easy option. It should be quite clear to anyone who reads the descriptions of the Fire and the Garden in the *Qur'an* that no one in their right mind would have invented the life after this one in order to make this life more bearable, since the possibility of going to the Fire is a horrifying one – and no one can be certain which of these two abodes will be his or her destination in the next life.

Giving out and being generous is the basis of Muslim commerce and of increasing wealth, since whatever you give in the Name of Allah is given back to you by Allah at least ten times over. Thus the mumin

is only indebted to Allah. The kafir attempts to make money out of nothing by charging interest, and when the interest rates go too high there comes a time when paper and plastic currency is seen to be what it is, numbers printed on paper or stored in a computer, absolutely worthless. The mumin gives out and leaves the rest up to Allah. The kafir has to be ruthless to become a millionaire, whilst the mumin has to be generous to achieve the same object. Whereas the mark of a kafir state is vast taxation and the accumulation of capital, the mark of a muslim community is minimal taxation supplemented by voluntary giving out and with no accumulation of capital. Money – gold and silver, not paper and plastic – is kept on the move and in circulation.

The Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, once said that if he was given a mountain of gold the size of Mount Uhud, he would be ashamed if it had not been disposed of within three days. Indeed it was his customary practice never to keep any money overnight. Whatever he happened to have at the end of the day was given away

The kafir state attempts to systematise and orchestrate the distribution of wealth, to the annoyance of all except its ruling elite who benefit from the manner in which that distribution operates, whilst in a muslim community the distribution of wealth takes place naturally, spontaneously and unexpectedly, to the delight of all who trust in Allah.

The people in a muslim community find their meaning in the worship of Allah. Allah says in the *Qur'an*, **'I did not create man and jinn except to glorify Me.'** Allah also said on the lips of the Prophet Muhammad in a hadith qudsi, 'I was a hidden treasure and I wished to make Myself known, so I created the Universe.' The knower, the known and the knowledge are one. The people who are trapped in the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, do not know this. They have been conditioned to find their meaning in the consumer producer process and to accept and submit to the system which enslaves them.



It has already been stated that the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, is formed of interlinking systems. In order to understand how the interlink operates, it is necessary to look at some of the more influential systems more closely. It must be emphasised and remembered that it is the systems and structures which are being examined, and not necessarily the people in them.

It often happens that people are born and brought up within the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, but they do not believe in it. Indeed it is because of their direct experience of it that their understanding of its extent and nature is often more piercing and penetrating than that of those who have been born and brought up either in a simple community living in fitra, or in a traditional muslim community.

The opposite is also true: A person born and brought up within a Muslim community may also end up rejecting it. Nothing in life is fixed. Everything is in change. See how many children born of kafir parents are embracing Islam, and see how many children born of muslim parents are embracing kufr. Everything is in its opposite.



It is an old cliché, but there is an element of truth in it: whereas some people work in order to live, many now live in order to work. The kafir factory system is an inhuman and degrading system. It treats people as a necessary yet expendable part of the consumer producer process. Increased automation means that the people who man the machines are increasingly subservient to the machines. They are obliged to keep pace with the machines. In a factory which produces twenty-four hours every day, the people have to be highly regulated in order to ensure that the machines do not have to be stopped and the flow of production obstructed. Births, marriages and deaths tend to be viewed not as major events in a life-time, but rather as potential inconveniences which threaten to disrupt the continuity of the production process. Any sense of job security is undermined by the practice of only offering short-term contracts and the threat of being replaced, thereby facilitating motivation through fear. The only way to survive in such an environment is either to act like a robot, or to be one.

Success in the factory system is measured by the degree of control which you exercise over others, and by the degree of control which is not exercised over you, and by the amount of money which you make in the process. The more products you can afford, the more successful you are. The more you embody the illusory ideal of the perfect consumer producer as depicted in the media – and there is more than one ideal in order to have as many profitable markets as possible – the greater is your reputation for success in the consumer producer game.



In a kafir society people are educated primarily in order to work, not

in order to understand themselves or the nature of existence. The kafir educational establishments are themselves like factories, only the end product is not merely a product, but a person who will help to make products either directly by working in the factories, or indirectly by managing the factories or by working in one of the interlinking sub-systems which ensure that the final product can be successfully advertised, distributed, sold and consumed. Whether an individual is going to work in the public sector, or in the private sector, or in the services sector, the educational system ensures that he or she has been programmed to look at the world largely in terms of the cost of living, the number of unemployed and the gross national product. The kafir media system maintains this economic perspective in conjunction with the kafir educational system.

The only way to keep people enslaved in the consumer producer system is to keep them in ignorance. Accordingly they are given selected information during their so-called education and by the media, and not real knowledge. They are conditioned to desire the bits of paper and the know-how which will give them the best positions possible in the producer consumer hierarchy. If the conditioning is not successful, it is almost inevitable that the kafir legal system will be called into play in order to implant the basic ideal of the consumer producer process more vigorously upon the person in question. The individual who has a good work record and a job waiting for him or her is usually dealt with more leniently in the courts of so-called justice. Some people are so impervious to the educational conditioning process that they end up spending a great deal of their lives in prison. The result is the same, an individual who has been rendered ineffective by means of institutionalisation.

The great majority of people who teach in the educational system do not have real knowledge, that is knowledge of the Real, that is Allah, or they would not allow themselves to be part of that system and accordingly part of the producer consumer process which, as we have already seen, only appears to be an attractive proposition when Allah and the Last Day and the Fire and the Garden are firmly forgotten. Furthermore, real knowledge is free. As soon as a fee is charged, you can be sure that you will only be receiving information for your money, most of it useless. Useful information is any information which leads to real knowledge. The opposite of that is useless information.

Those who have real knowledge, and share it, do not charge money



for it, because they know that it is not their knowledge to sell, and because they know that their knowledge is a gift from Allah which has only been given to them because they wanted it and Allah wanted it, and not because they could pay for it. The only kind of payment which is necessary in order to acquire real knowledge is worship of Allah and fear of Allah and having a good expectation of Allah. Ultimately it is only given by the grace of Allah if that is what Allah wants. You will not acquire this knowledge by seeking it, but only if you seek it will you acquire it. Allah says in the *Qur'an*, 'Fear Me and I will give you knowledge,' and 'Remember Me and I will remember you,' and 'Ask and I will answer.' Allah is the Rich, and not in need of what appears to be other than Him. All that appears to be other than Him is in need of Allah.

Allah is Al-'Alim, the Knowing, and Al-Khabir, the Knower of every separate thing that befalls us, Al-Latif, the All-Pervading. Allah gives knowledge to whom He pleases, and His outpouring is vast. The producer consumer system is designed to stop you from finding out.



The kafir university system as we know it today, the apex of the educational conditioning system, is big business. It not only completes the conditioning process for those who are eventually going to be given control of the consumer producer process and the systems which regulate and define its functions and make its existence possible, but it also ensures that a handsome profit is made whilst so doing. It also ensures that the future controllers of those countries which have been successfully colonised by the originators of the consumer producer process can be suitably programmed to uphold that process and to protect the colonisers' interests, long after these countries have been granted so-called independence and apparent release from the control of their former colonial masters. This conjuring trick, whereby the colonisers appear to relinquish control whilst in reality still retaining it, is sometimes called neo-colonialism.

Fifty years ago there were hardly any universities. Those which did exist had a relatively small number of students whose primary objective was knowledge, although admittedly these universities did cater primarily for the offspring of the then ruling elite who were educated in order to take over control as and when their relatives died. As the new universities began to materialise, they at first retained the charac-

ter and aims of the older universities, or at least tried to imitate them. Within ten years of the end of the second kafir world war, however, a marked change in policy had become apparent. Whereas in the past the acquisition of knowledge – which is always a hopeless proposition anyway in any institution whose teachers have no access to a living and intact Prophetic guidance – had been the main consideration, now two fresh objectives emerged. The first objective was to expand as quickly as possible so as to have as many fee-paying students as possible, despite the fact that this would mean that a close and meaningful relationship between the teacher and the taught would no longer be possible. The second objective was to channel more people into ‘the sciences’, and to lay less emphasis on ‘the arts’.

Of course these objectives were dressed up in suitable terminology such as, ‘everyone has a right to a decent education’, and, ‘in the interests of national safety and livelihood research must go on’. In reality the so-called education was far from decent, whilst the very methodology used by these educational institutions often ensured that what was being searched for would not be found. Useless research is encouraged in the kafir university because it keeps people busy and provides the fortunate few with an opportunity to build up a reputation and a sizeable income out of nothing.

What lay behind this change in policy, which clearly emerged after the end of the second world war, was this: The power struggle which had been taking place behind the scenes for over two centuries, between the Official Trinitarian Christian Church on one hand, and, on the other hand, those who were busy completing and building upon the foundations of the consumer producer process as we know it today – the architects of the new world order – had been concluded. The bank was now more powerful than the church, the top financier more influential than the archbishop.

The scientific movement had by now confirmed enough about the nature of existence for anyone with any intellect to realise that the Christian metaphysic, whose basis was the untenable doctrine of Trinity – which had never even been mentioned by Jesus, peace be on him, and which had not been completely formulated until about four hundred years after he had left the earth – was no more than a myth and no less than a lie. It is interesting to note in this context that, in contrast, what little knowledge the scientists have acquired through

their methods of research is confirmed by what is in the *Qur'an*, which is after all the A to Z of existence as revealed by the Originator of all which appears to exist.

The primary struggle, however, in this power struggle between the Christians and the scientists, was not between those who claimed to know the nature of existence but disagreed with each other. It was between those who wanted power over the land and the people living in it. Thus the real purpose behind the new 'educational' policy was to ensure the uniform conditioning of as many people as possible. It was important that there was only one predominant version of the meaning of life available for public consumption, with only one predominant way of life to go with it. The fact that the Christian version could be 'scientifically disproved' meant that the scientific version gained more credibility and acceptance. As a result life-styles began to change. Churches began to empty. Sports stadiums began to fill up.

Although many people still believed in God, they did not have the means at their disposal – that is, a living and intact Prophetic guidance – to integrate that belief with the scientific 'facts' with which they were now being presented. Thus although the scientific version was clearly not the whole truth, it could not, on the face of it, be disputed – and in the meantime that magical word, 'research', could be invoked to show not only that whatever was not yet known was in the process of being discovered, but also that 'research' was accordingly necessary to make these discoveries.

It was on this basis – that the scientists were able to provide answers to all the questions which the Christians could no longer avoid by telling people 'this is a mystery', or 'this is not important as long as you have faith' – that the scientific version of existence, plagued as it is with speculation and theory, came to be widely accepted in the High Tec North. Whereas the Christians know that God exists, but cannot explain the nature of existence, the scientists have some inkling of the nature of existence but cannot relate it to God.

Once the scientific version of the nature of existence and the scientific approach to existence had become widely accepted, the people who championed this version and this approach, inevitably gained control of the educational system. The research which they in fact encouraged was orientated largely towards the development of the producer consumer system. This development depended on there being a uniform condi-

tioning of as many people as possible. Only as a result of effective and widespread conditioning could overall control of the general population be ensured. It was necessary to imbue the people with the notion that the meaning of life was to be found in producing and consuming.

As the numbers of students increased, dramatically after the end of the second world war, the people who taught at and controlled the universities changed. The old school either retired or died, and those who replaced them were either dedicated to the producer consumer process and its ideals, or else they were 'free thinkers', unaware of what that process was, and where its development was leading. The few who were aware of the change of approach to life which was being engineered by means of the so-called educational system, and who objected to it, could not afford to object too strenuously or to attempt to change the trend as long as they wished to retain their position, and its accompanying reputation and salary, in the educational hierarchy.

There was nothing they could do to change the system from within that system, and even less if they left it. The interlinking systems which together form the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, supported the educational system too effectively for anyone to be able to change it merely by opposing it. Severing a head or two from the many-headed beast does not kill the beast. Indeed those who control the system encourage a certain amount of dissent, since it is easier to rule a people when they are divided against each other, and also those who are not easily placated by minor cosmetic changes to the system – which do not in fact disturb the status quo – usually end up exhausted and ineffective if they try to change the system single-handed.

Of course if too many people try to change the system together, and look like succeeding, then they can usually be dealt with by means of the kafir legal system. All that is needed is a law making their group 'illegal', and then anyone who persists ends up in jail. In Algeria, for example, the banner of 'democracy' was held up high until it became clear that the vast majority of the people were about to vote for a Muslim government – whereupon a military regime backed principally by France was hastily installed to 'protect the minority' and to tyrannise the Muslims who had so nearly upset their 'former' colonisers' political control mechanism by using democratic means.

As the numbers of students at the universities increased, it became necessary to provide the buildings in which to house and teach them.

The erection of these buildings, or the acquisition of buildings already standing, provided a good source of income for many people, and of course helped to establish the producer consumer process more firmly in the process.

As the university system expanded, it took on the usual characteristics which typify the kafir institution. Gradually the university system, together with the sub-stratum of polytechnics and colleges which had grown up below it, became increasingly impersonal and meaningless – until it had become what it is today, just another production line in the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system.

The relationship between the teacher and the taught was such, and the academic environment in which that relationship functioned was such, that the transmission of real knowledge, even if the teachers had had it in the first place, was an impossibility. The numbers were such and the systems were such that the only transaction which could take place was the systematic and impersonal provision of vast quantities of structured information, much of which was and is utterly useless. The better a parrot a person was, the more clever he or she was considered. Wisdom was reduced to a word with a devalued meaning. The takeover, not only as far as the university system was concerned but also the rest of the educational system which prepared people for that university system, was completed, and continues to function today.

Although life at university is usually depicted as a time of freedom and experimentation – that first release from the restrictions of school and the parental nest – it is in fact highly structured and regulated, other than in the realm of 'private' relationships and 'personal' morality. Students at today's universities are encouraged to indulge in university politics and thereby to play a largely non-influential part in the running of the university – and woe betide any group of Muslim students who appear to be too well organised – to work and to play so that they can let off steam whilst still submitting to their conditioning, and finally to seek promising jobs in the consumer producer process once they have been duly awarded their pieces of paper which are commonly called degrees, and which are nothing to do with the degrees of knowledge to which the *Qur'an* refers.

The majority of students do not even know that they are being conditioned, or what the nature of their conditioning is. The few who do realise what is going on either nevertheless choose to go along with

it, or else they drop out. Of those who drop out a few can overcome the inertia to wake up and look beyond the kafir conditioning process for real knowledge. Indeed it is one of the characteristics of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, that whilst you are in it – that is whilst the state of mind which its conditioning process induces, whether by education or media, continues to prevail – it is virtually impossible to even conceive of any alternative to it.

The world view, that is the version of the meaning of life, which is engendered and nurtured by the kafir educational and media systems is kufr. Only the one who is not content with this view and who has rejected the system, is in a position to cut through all the misconceptions and disinformation with which he or she has been blinded, and to see what Islam really is – is in a position to begin to understand and follow the way of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, who once asked Allah, ‘Teach me to see things as they really are.’



The kafir hospital system has in the last fifty years become an integral and important part of the producer consumer process. It exists to keep people in working fit condition. Many of the illnesses with which it has to deal are the direct result of the way in which people live, and are obliged to live, by virtue of the way in which the consumer producer process operates. The kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, creates its own illnesses, thereby creating work for those who are employed in the hospital system.

The hospital system is run as a business. Everyone is paid for what they do. The livelihood of a large number of people depends on other people being ill – and the way of life, which has evolved and developed as an inevitable result of the way in which the modern producer consumer state is run, ensures that there are more than enough ill people to keep the hospital system busy and in business, thereby ensuring countless others, who supply the hospitals and doctors with the tools and medicines of their trade, steady and profitable employment.

The capacity of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, to create unnecessary jobs and meaningless activity in any sphere of life is something almost to be marvelled at. This is in marked contrast to the situation to be found in the simple village community living in fitra, or in a balanced muslim community. Of course there is illness in such

communities, for illness is the manifestation of imbalance and everyone loses balance at some time or other, but firstly, the healthy not only look after the sick, but also they know how to look after the sick, and secondly, they do not make a business out of it.

Since these two kinds of communities do live more or less in harmony with existence, and since they know what to eat and what not to eat, and since they have a balanced way of life, it inevitably follows that there is far less serious illness around than in a kafir society, simply because there is far less imbalance. If the heart is at peace, it follows that there will be no illness which is caused by nervous strain, anxiety or tension. If the correct food is eaten then the illnesses which originate from the stomach – and most illnesses do – will not arise. If people really understand and accept the way things are, and if they know where they have come from and where they are going to, then it is extremely unlikely that they are going to be on the verge of a nervous breakdown.

Life is very simple. It is simply a question of balance.

The Prophet Muhammad was once sent some costly medicines from Egypt. He returned them with the message that his way of life was its own medicine, and the best of medicines. He was so finely balanced that his only major illnesses arose when people tried to poison him, whether by means of food or magic. The Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, said that if the heart was well then the body would be well, and that if the heart was ill then the body would be ill.

The heart is the centre of one's being. It is the means by which we know the self and Allah, and whoever knows their self knows Allah. All the various outward ways of doing things which together comprise the pattern of life embodied by the Prophet Muhammad have an inward and beneficial effect on the heart. The heart is not at peace unless you worship Allah. Only by the remembrance of Allah is the heart made serene. The only way to worship and remember Allah in every single lived moment is by following the way of Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace.

Like the kafir factory and educational systems, the kafir hospital system tends to be run like a production line. As automation has increased, it has become correspondingly more de-personalised. Medical staff are obliged, by the sheer number of people with whom they have to deal, not to become involved with their patients. It is easier to treat

them as objects than as humans. Since most of the people who run the hospital system have usually been university conditioned, it usually follows that the vast majority of them have no real deep medical knowledge. Many of their so-called cures are only skin deep. In the same way that the university professors toy with ideas in their theoretical speculations, so the doctors experiment with drugs in their medication. Inevitably the patient can become a human guinea pig, the final test for a new drug once no more can be learnt from trying it out on animals. One of their best medicines is the loving care of the nursing staff.

Doctors are often obliged to experiment simply because they do not understand the nature of existence. Many so-called doctors today are even unaware of the basic knowledge, which is so important in the practice of medicine, that all matter is composed of varying combinations of the four elements, that is air, fire, earth and water; that these elements are respectively hot wet, hot dry, cold dry and cold wet; that the body of a human contains four humours that is blood, black bile, yellow bile and phlegm; that these humours are respectively hot wet, hot dry, cold dry and cold wet; that all foods have their own medicinal properties and, depending on the elements from which they are formed, are hot, dry, cold or wet in varying degrees and combinations. Illness occurs in the body when there is an imbalance of the humours. This imbalance can be corrected by taking the food which has the opposite qualities of whatever qualities the illness has, whilst at the same time refraining from the food which has the same qualities as the illness. The 'modern' doctor often denies this approach, dismissing it as 'primitive', and preferring to rely on twenty-first century wonder-drugs, even though they will eventually destroy his or her patients' immune systems and accordingly their natural resistance to illness.

Homeopathy, which is a complementary way of medicine to the natural way just described – in that it treats like with like rather than with its opposite – is usually treated with the same disdain by the kafir practitioner, even though he or she accepts the very same principle when it is applied in the use of vaccines. Similarly the ancient methods which are used to free the subtle energy flows in the body, such as acupuncture and shiatsu, are treated with suspicion. In reality the kafir doctors' opinions as regards these enlightened ways of treating illness only mirror the reflection of their own ignorance in the matter.

It is interesting to note that in order to ensure that the kafir medi-



cal view of treating illness predominates, the kafir legal system usually makes it illegal to practise as a doctor unless you have the appropriate kafir medical qualifications and initials after your name. It is of course necessary to protect unsuspecting people from quacks and charlatans, but there have certainly been many instances where doctors with a profound knowledge of natural medicine have been discredited as 'imposters' simply because they do not comply with the kafir norm – just as in the days of the British Raj, an Indian who could speak Arabic, Persian and Urdu fluently, and who knew the entire *Qur'an* by heart, would be classified as 'illiterate' if he or she could not read and write English!

This approach is typical of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, as a whole. Any view or course of action which contradicts the kafir norm is rendered ineffective and of minimal influence, by making it 'illegal' before the stage is reached where it might become effective. Once any action or approach to existence has been deemed to be against the law, then the weight of the whole kafir legal system can be used to squash it. In effect, the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, ensures that if you disagree with it, you may criticise it but you may not actively try to change it.

As far as surgery is concerned, there can be no doubt that as a result of recent advances in technology, coupled with the discoveries made during the second world war when patients were in plentiful supply, many wonders are performed, and many lives are either saved for the time being and improved or otherwise enhanced. It is also equally clear that many of the operations carried out in the modern hospital system are unnecessary, while many of the operations which do appear necessary are needed to deal with ailments which are directly caused by the way in which people live in a kafir society. If the patients had had a balanced way of life in the first place, they would not have incurred the illness which caused them to arrive in the operating theatre. If techniques did not need to be practised and perfected, some operations would not take place. If sexual promiscuity was not an established social norm, then there would be no need for the thousands and thousands of abortions which are routinely performed every year. If ignorance about what is on the other side of death was not so prevalent, many elderly patients might choose to die a natural death at the end of their natural life-span, rather than being encouraged to opt for a major op-

eration – in order to buy a little more time – from which they might well never fully recover anyway.

Once in the operating theatre, again many patients are no more than guinea pigs. Let us see what this will do to him. Will this new technique work? One of the descriptions of the Dajjal in the *Hadith* states that the Dajjal will cut a man in two, so that it seems that he is dead, and then put him together again, so that it seems that he is alive and well. This description aptly fits what goes on in many an operating theatre, as well as being applicable to some of the psychological disorders, such as schizophrenia, which inevitably result from a kafir way of life.

There can be no doubt, however, that good surgeons – assisted both by skilled anaesthetists and skilful theatre staff – do perform many invaluable operations, and that good doctors do heal many people, and that in the process many wonderful discoveries are made. Indeed it should be emphasised that in all the various interlinking systems that comprise the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, there are many good people who do good – and that any criticism of the system itself should never be mistaken as a criticism of such people. Life is a learning process and whoever seeks knowledge will find it everywhere. Even the Pharaoh's wife, Asiya, was a believer.



The ignorance which is often displayed by the manner in which the kafir medical profession treats physiological disease is only equalled by the lack of knowledge which is evident in the way in which many psychiatrists attempt to deal with psychological disorders. Since they do not know the nature of existence, it follows that they do not know the nature of the human self. It follows that they do not know how to treat the ailments of the self. They have no unitary knowledge. They do not know how the universe and what it contains comes into being, nor how it goes out of being, nor how it appears to be in each moment between its birth and death. Since they have a fixed, as opposed to a dynamic, view of reality it follows that they have a fixed idea of what 'normal' is, and so anyone who does not fit that idea is considered 'abnormal', and accordingly is assaulted either physically or psychically in an attempt to bring them within the bounds of that definition. Since at the very best they only have a partial idea as to how the human self works, they are reduced to the barbaric practice of rendering the brain quiescent and ineffective, either by drugs and heavy sedation, or even by electric shock treatment, or lobotomy, or laser-gun bombardment.



The fact that kafir psychiatrists concentrate on the mind, that is on the contents of the head, in itself shows that they have completely missed the point, since it is the heart which requires attention. Recitation of the *Qur'an* is enough to still the heart and calm the mind, thereby rendering many of the kafir psychologist's approaches obsolete. The reason why many people in today's kafir societies suffer varying degrees and kinds of madness is because they try and figure out the nature of existence with their heads, when only the heart is capable of arriving at such an understanding. Some liken the heart to the sun, and the head to the moon. The moon does not generate its own light. What light it has is reflected light from the sun. Once the heart has been illuminated by the remembrance of Allah, the intellect is then illuminated, and not before.

Perhaps the greatest error of the kafir psychologist is to give reality to the illusory self, that is the self which does not really exist. They give reality to what we think we are, or to what we think others think we are. To the people of real knowledge this illusory self does not exist. It only appears to exist if an imagined reality is given to it, since what ever you imagine, is real for you. If you cease to imagine anything, existence does not cease, but rather you see existence as it really is. You see, wherever you turn, the Existent. Wherever you look, there is the face of Allah. There is no reality – only Reality.

In effect, the illusory self is nothing more than a solidification of events obscuring a light which is the true self, the light of Allah. The kafir psychologist gives reality to that solidification of events and not to the light which it obscures. That is why he or she is kafir: his or her action covers over the truth of the matter. By giving reality to what is unreal and by refusing to give reality to the Real, Allah, it follows that the kafir psychiatrist is not going to have any real success in the cures which he or she attempts to perpetrate, since whatever he or she does will almost inevitably be without reference to the true nature of existence and will accordingly be out of harmony with it. The so-called 'cure' of the kafir psychologist is imbalance piled on imbalance, darkness piled on darkness, the outward semblance of 'normality' imposed on an inward state of insanity.

The mumin doctor – and by this term we do not mean a muslim who has been subjected to the kafir educational conditioning process in the field of medicine and who has accepted that conditioning – the real mumin doctor knows that the illusory self has to be dismantled

before the true self emerges. This is achieved by purification of the heart, the centre of your being. This purification is achieved by the remembrance of Allah. The transformation of the heart only occurs by the grace of Allah. This purification and this transformation of the heart in the inward can only take place if there is a corresponding purification and transformation in the outward, that is in your existential behaviour pattern.

The only way of life which today makes this inward and outward purification a possibility, and for the one who follows it a reality, is the way of Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace. This is the means by which, once the heart has been purified, one knows one's self and one's Lord, and these two knowings are the same knowing. In Reality the knower, the known and the knowledge are one. To gain this knowledge, it is necessary to stop thinking altogether – which means that the one who has this knowledge cannot be trapped by the educational and media conditioning processes, since this conditioning is only successful where the thought process has been attracted, harnessed and programmed.

There is no deep reality to the kafir psychologists' definitions of what 'normal' is. They are arbitrary definitions. Deep sanity is to affirm the reality of Allah, and this affirmation finds its fullest expression in the one who follows the Prophetic life style. This life style finds its fullest expression in the way of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, the first and last of the Prophets in the Prophetic cycle. His way is its own proof. The one who follows it benefits from a healthy body and a peaceful heart and the tranquillity which comes with real knowledge.

The ignorance of the leaders of the kafir medical profession today is evidenced by the fact that they do not have the cures for the physiological and psychological ills which are the natural result of the consumer producer process and the lifestyle which comes with it. They concentrate more on the ailments once they have manifested, than on the original cause of their having manifested in the first place. From one view-point life is like a chemical equation: Given certain ingredients and certain conditions, the result which follows is inevitable: If you follow the kafir lifestyle you will be in turmoil, and are for the Fire. If you follow the way of the Prophets you will be at peace, and are for the Garden. The *Qur'an* is the only book on the face of the earth today

which contains all the equations. It is the A to Z of existence, and in it is a guidance which shows you what to do in every situation. The Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, said that in the *Qur'an* there is a medicine, so take what you need from it.

The one who has no *Qur'an* in his or her heart is like a ruined building, is like a dead person already in their grave. Since kafir doctors do not have access to the *Qur'an*, and indeed would refuse it even if it were offered to them, they proceed on a basis of trial and error which they describe as a path of evolution and progress – perhaps little realising that much of what forms the original basis of institutionalised medicine today was often culled from Muslims in the past, who only received their knowledge by Allah and by following what is in the *Qur'an*. The kafir doctors may discover some of what is already in the *Qur'an* by accident, but they can only have a limited knowledge of what is in the *Qur'an*, because they do not follow what is in the *Qur'an* themselves. They have no unified field of knowledge. You can only understand what is in the *Qur'an* by embodying what is in the *Qur'an*. It is possible to use the right remedy without really knowing why or how it works, but this is not wisdom.

As with the kafir factory and educational systems, the kafir medical system is often not really concerned with healing and with what is beneficial, but with money. It is big business, creating business for the vast pharmaceutical concerns which provide its drugs and equipment, and keeping thousands upon thousands of people usefully employed in patching up people, so that they too can be usefully employed. It is more common to hear the medical students of today talking about the large fees they hope to earn once they have passed the right exams and collected the right bits of paper, than the number of people whom they hope to heal, or more importantly the means by which that healing is to take place.

The kafir medical system is an integral part of the kafir consumer producer process. It promises great rewards for the fully qualified. It plays a very important role in the overall management of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system. Closely linked with the kafir educational system and the kafir legal system, its leaders wield great influence in the kafir state. A hundred years ago the medical system as we know it today did not exist. During that relatively short period of time the takeover has been completed.



The system which makes the operation of the kafir factory, educational and medical systems a viable proposition, and indeed which controls the operation of all systems in the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, is the kafir legal system. The kafir legal system makes the interlink between all the other sub-systems possible. It is thus the heart of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, as a whole.

The kafir legal system defines the structures of all other systems in the kafir state, regulating what they may do and what they may not do, and it ensures that any alternatives to the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, are rendered ineffective, either by making them illegal, or at least by severely restricting them. The kafir legal system also dictates what human behaviour is permissible in the kafir state, thereby ensuring the effective control and monitoring of the majority of people living within that state. Anyone who ignores or actively opposes the legal system finds him or her self locked up in prison in a very short space of time. In effect, the kafir legal system is utilised to ensure that the consumer producer process runs as smoothly as possible.



The inevitable result of such a state of affairs is the police state, that is a society divided against itself, where one half preys on and feeds off the other half. The kafir police force is given wide powers and freedom of action. Basically its members can do in the name of the law what for anyone else is against the law. They are paid a lot of money to do this, even though the taxpayers who provide the money and who at times are both protected and tyrannised by the police do not always want either to pay the taxes or to have the police force. The argument used is that if there were no police force there would be chaos. The answer to this is that there would be chaos amongst those who are truly kafir, but not amongst those who are truly muslim.

The way of Islam means that those who follow it do not need a police force, because each individual is his or her own police man or woman. Instead of policing others the muslim looks to his or her own actions in the knowledge that he or she is answerable to Allah for them. Furthermore, the nature of the muslim community is such that the roots and causes of crime which are permitted to flourish in a kafir society simply do not have a place to grow in the muslim community.

As in the field of kafir medicine, so in the field of kafir laws, many of the ills and ailments which provide the legal system with work are

the direct results of the way in which the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system operates, and of the lifestyle which the people working in that system are conditioned to follow. The kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, creates needless activity patterns in order to keep people occupied, and in order to make money out of that activity. Of course some of the police are helpful, but then helpful people always are.

After the kafir medical system, or rather in conjunction with it, the experts of the kafir legal system are required to undergo the most rigorous of conditioning educational processes, before they are permitted to operate. In effect, this is a screening process, whereby those who are inimical to the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system are prevented from finding out too much about its workings and are weeded out. Only those who will support and strengthen the system are permitted to qualify and eventually assume positions of responsibility within the system.

As in the kafir educational system and the kafir medical system, it is clear that there has also been a change in personnel as it were in the kafir legal system. This is evidenced especially by the fact that although God is mentioned from time to time in accordance with legal tradition – usually just before a witness is about to give evidence – many of the people who exercise control in the judicial system clearly do not either fear God or even believe in Him. If they did, they would act very differently to the way in which they do at the moment. It is interesting to note that the manner in which a typical trial is conducted is a pale imitation of the Last Day. The person who acts as judge and decides what is to be done to the person in the dock acts on many an occasion as if he or she were God, often completely oblivious of the fact that there will come a time when he or she will in turn stand alone before Allah, answerable for all that he or she has done.

By examining the changes in the legal system over the last hundred years it is clear that the takeover has taken and continues to take place. Whereas a hundred years ago the laws of most of today's kafir states were based on the remnants of the teachings of Jesus, peace be on him, and on common sense and common practice, today they are unashamedly designed to control and manipulate wherever possible. It is said that the laws have been passed to create a more just society, but in reality their effect has been to keep the majority of people firmly enmeshed in the producer consumer process. Again, that insidious doctrine, the doctrine of evolution, is invoked in order to persuade people that the

legal system is progressing and getting better, which it will continue to do – until it finally collapses, brought down by its own weight.

Like the kafir medical experts, the kafir legal experts do not understand the nature of reality. They give reality to what has no reality and refuse to give reality to the Real, Allah. It follows that they do not know how to deal with reality. All their attempts at social engineering are grounded in speculation and arbitrary theories. They have no certainty. It follows that the alleged objectives of many of their laws will never in fact be realised. Thus, for example, the development of the laws designed to uphold human rights has been paralleled by a vast increase in the degradation and ill-treatment of humans throughout the world, much of that ill-treatment and degradation being caused by the infliction of laws formulated by the very same legal systems which invented human rights law in the first place. In reality these human rights laws are given publicity in order to persuade people that they have a just legal system, but not in order to actually establish a just society.

The only cure for the social fragmentation which is today everywhere in evidence, and which is being aided by the way in which the kafir legal system operates – even though that system purports to be curing that fragmentation – is Islam.

One of the results of kafir colonisation has been that the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system – and especially its kafir legal system – has been successfully implanted in nearly all the countries which, before the coming of the colonisers, were ruled in accordance with what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah*. This means that at the time of writing this, there is not one country in the world today which is free from the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system.

The study, however, of history from a Qur'anic perspective and not from the currently favoured kafir perspective, clearly demonstrates that any community, country, or group of countries, has always flourished when following Prophetic guidance, and has always suffered when its people abandoned that guidance.

The Qur'anic study of history also clearly shows that the people in any one country, during the passage of time, fluctuate between kufr and iman. There is a time when the majority of them are kafir, and there is a time when the majority of them are mumin, and there are times of transition between these two opposites. This pattern of activity is in accordance with the true nature of existence, which is the manifesta-



tion and dynamic interplay of opposites originating from one source, Allah.

Since everything lies in its opposite, and since the majority of people in the High Tec North have not been following an unadulterated Prophetic guidance for several centuries, it follows that the advent of Islam in the west is not only the cure for the sick kafir states of the High Tec North, but is also absolutely inevitable. Allah says in the *Qur'an* that there is no changing the way of Allah. Only Allah knows what is in the future, but insh'Allah the practice of Islam will grow and flourish amidst the ruins of the present kafir society once it has finally and fully collapsed.

The last fifty years has witnessed a dramatic increase in the number of new laws which have been formulated, throughout the world, as well as in the multitude of regulations which are drawn up under, and by virtue of, the so-called authority conferred by these laws. Never before in the history of mankind have humans been so regulated in what they may and may not do. People are punished for the least deviation from the legally defined norm, even in circumstances where neither person nor property has been injured or damaged or even endangered in any way. The doctrine of strict liability means that a person can be found guilty of an offence even where there is no blame, and even if, in the circumstances of his or her particular case, he or she was doing what according to common sense was most appropriate.

The more laws there are in a country the more 'offenders' there will be. The more offenders there are, the more business there is for the people who operate the legal system, and the richer they become. Even in situations where injury or damage to person or property does occur, and even if the person who caused the damage or injury has made good that damage or injury, he or she will still be subjected to the legal process as well and punished. This indicates that kafir law is not used to maintain balance, but has become an idol – which if violated must be swift in retribution. The kafir legal system is not used to maintain social harmony, but to maintain social inequality by means of oppression and repression. It favours the people who control the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, and it is used by them to control and manipulate the people who are enslaved by that system.

Many of the laws in force today arise out of a situation and a society in which there is no trust between people. In a time when many people

have become hard-hearted and mean, they seek to take advantage of others rather than to help them. Such people are described in the *Qur'an* as the *mutafafifin*, meaning 'the defrauders', those who demand full measure from others but who give short measure in return. Laws are passed to curtail their actions, but as quickly as these new laws are passed the defrauders find ways to evade them, which means that more laws have to be passed to stop up the loopholes as they become apparent.

Since it is often the defrauders who make the laws in the first place, it comes as no surprise to find that there are always some loopholes left open permanently for the lucky few who know about them. Although, for example, both the *Bible* and the *Qur'an* – which many witnesses hold in their right hands as they swear by God to tell the truth in courts of law – forbid usury, these very same courts not only authorise and uphold usury but at times even insist on it.

As well as the ever-growing multitude of laws, life is further complicated by the doctrine of judicial precedent which states that all past judicial decisions are binding on judges when deciding a case which has a similar fact situation. Since no situation is ever exactly repeated again in creation, and since all judicial decisions are made subject to the personal prejudices of the judges who make them, it inevitably follows that sometimes judges are obliged to reach decisions which are patently unjust because of a case which may have been decided many years ago, when life and attitudes were very different to what they are today.

The only way around the doctrine of judicial precedent is to 'distinguish' cases that would otherwise be binding by indulging in word-play and intellectual dishonesty – which ultimately causes confusion and uncertainty when a decision arrived at by these means has to be applied to yet another similar fact situation at a later stage.

The result of all these laws and all these regulations and all the past decisions which have been reached – often when the law then was very different to what it is now – is a complex web of 'do's and 'don't's which is for ever changing or being changed, so that only the legal expert who spends his or her whole life in this maze has any idea of its geography. Indeed the maze is now so large that the need to specialise in one particular area has become a necessity, until the time is reached, if it is ever reached, when all the information is stored on magnetic tapes and compact discs and we have trial by computer. It is this complexity – a complexity which is magnified by having a specialist vocabulary and

complicated procedures – which ensures that the legal expert will always be needed, and will always command a good price for his or her advice and services both in and out of court.

This situation is the complete antithesis of that which arises in a muslim community. A muslim community has no need of a legal system. Everything that it needs is in the *Qur'an* and the *Hadith*. The *Qur'an* does not need to be changed because it already contains the necessary guidance as to what to do in every conceivable situation in which a person may find him or her self. It already has what more enlightened legislators have been seeking to attain for the last several hundred years. Since its contents as regards the behaviour of people within the community and the manner in which they are to conduct their affairs are simple, it follows that there is no need whatsoever for a specialist elite to set themselves up as its interpreters or to enforce it on others. The people in a real muslim community follow what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Hadith* because they do not wish to do otherwise. Provided that they fear Allah and the Last Day, and follow the way of the Prophet Muhammad and the first Muslim community which gathered round him, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him and them, they are not a threat to anyone else and no one is a threat to them. The way of Islam is a guidance for whoever means well and fears Allah.

One of the secrets of existence is that whatever is in your heart appears before you in existence. Since a kafir has disorder in his or her heart he or she experiences disorder in existence. The kafir then tries to put existence 'in order' by changing it outwardly. If there is still disorder in the heart, however, the measures taken by the kafir have no effect, and disorder merely manifests before him or her in a different form. Since the mumin, that is the one who is at peace, has peace in the heart it follows that peace manifests before the mumin in creation – and Islam is established.

The only way to change or transform what is in your heart is to follow the way of the Prophet Muhammad and the community which first gathered around him at Madina al-Munawarra, that is, the illuminated place where the life transaction is. Madina was illuminated by a people whose hearts had been illuminated with knowledge and love of Allah and His Messenger, may the peace and blessings of Allah be on him and them, and who accordingly had no need of anything like the systems which characterise the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system – especially its legal system.

Islam is not a system. It is a way of life, and you can only be described as being a Muslim if you follow that way. Those countries which have been colonised and subjected to the kafir legal system and the kafir consumer producer process cannot be described as having 'muslim' governments, merely because a little of what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Hadith* has been incorporated into 'acts of parliament'. A truly muslim country has no need of a kafir styled parliament. The *Qur'an* is its constitution.

Allah says in the *Qur'an* that there is no compulsion in the life transaction. Once you know which way to go, you simply abandon the way which was a hindrance to you. It is not enough to be called a muslim. It is necessary to be a Muslim, that is to embody the way of Islam and to be at peace with yourself and with existence. The Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, said that a Muslim is one from whose hand and whose tongue you are safe. He said that the Muslims should be like two hands washing each other, and like the rafters of a roof which support each other. He said that you are not a Muslim until you want for your companion what you want for your self. He said that you are not a mumin until you prefer for your companion what you want for yourself. He said that if you have a full stomach and someone in the house next door has an empty stomach, then you are not a Muslim. He said that the best aspect of Islam is to greet those you know and those you do not know, and to welcome and feed the guest.

If the people in a muslim community have this approach to life and to each other, then it follows that they already are 'law-abiding' citizens, and abiding by the best of laws – the laws of God, and not the laws of men. This is only possible in a community of people whose lives are based on the worship of Allah. As has already been noted, Muslim communities in the past always disintegrated once their members abandoned the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah* and turned away from Allah to what is other than Allah.

The majority of offences which have been formulated by the kafir legal system have not been so formulated with what happens after death in mind. This is in marked contrast to the relatively few offences against the Muslim community which are indicated in the *Qur'an*. The offences referred to in the *Qur'an* are those anti-social acts which, if freely permitted, would undermine the trust which is essential if the

members of that community are to live together in harmony. Adultery, for example, is an offence not only because it involves deception and betrayal, but also because it destroys the family and therefore the community. The number of witnesses required before the offence may be punished – which, in the absence of a voluntary confession, is four – means that there can never be any doubt in the matter – while anyone who accuses someone of committing adultery but has no witnesses receives eighty lashes.

This is in marked contrast to the kafir legal system, where a person can be accused and convicted of and punished for any number of offences on the flimsiest of circumstantial evidence, and nearly always when a member of the police says that the person in the dock was either seen to do the act in question, or admitted to doing it at the police station. The police are highly skilled in incorporating into their written records of alleged interviews with the accused or of the alleged behaviour of the accused, admissions or acts which will guarantee a conviction once the matter comes to trial. Even where interviews are taped, the manner in which the transcript of that interview is subsequently edited often means that a completely different impression of the substance and tenor of the interview can be created on paper – which is often the only version of the interview which will be presented in evidence. Furthermore, it is an unwritten presumption of kafir law that where there is a conflict between the police version of events and the accused's version of events, then the police version is to be believed unless the contrary is proved. If the presumption were the other way around then there would be too many acquittals, and as a result the legal system would not be the thriving business concern that it is today.

As far as punishment is concerned, in the kafir legal system the motivation behind punishment is to make money and to render ineffective those who threaten the fabric of society. In theory the punishment is also regarded as the just retribution which is to be inflicted on the offender by the legal system on behalf of the other law-abiding members of society. The fact that a great majority of people in today's 'modern' societies do not always agree with either the law or the offender's being punished in accordance with that law is always conveniently overlooked by those who continue to administer the law in their name and allegedly on their behalf.

The punishments inflicted in a kafir society are also intended to

deter others from following the example of the person who has been punished. Indeed by invoking that nebulous concept known as ‘public policy’ – which is never formulated by the general public but only for the general public – or ‘the interests of the state’ – which in reality are the interests of the ruling elite who benefit most from maintaining the status quo as it is – it is possible to punish someone far more than they deserve in order that others will be sufficiently deterred from following suit. Since the punishments are in order that the status quo can be maintained, it follows that they invariably derive from a distorted perspective.

The relatively few punishments prescribed in the *Qur’an* and the *Sunnah* are admittedly both retributive and deterrent in effect, but the primary motivation behind them is that the one who submits to a Qur’anic punishment is thereby released from his or her wrong action, and accordingly may still go to the Garden. Indeed since the mumin fears Allah and longs for the Garden and dreads the Fire, it follows that he or she is far less likely to do a major wrong action in the first place.

This perspective is entirely lacking in a kafir society, whose members usually believe that they will ‘get away with it’ as long as no-one either catches or sees them doing whatever ‘it’ may be. The kafir does not realise that every action is witnessed by the recording angels, and by Allah, and that whatever he or she does will have to be answered for on the Last Day. Given this ignorance, the kafir is far more prone to do wrong action, and if he or she is then caught, will be processed by the kafir legal system without reference to what is yet to take place on the Last Day. Allah says in the *Qur’an* that the kafir receives a double punishment, in this world and in the next.

Since the kafir legal system is not based on any divine revelation – other than those few laws which derive from the remnants of earlier Prophetic guidances, or which happen to tally with what is in the *Qur’an* by sheer coincidence – but rather is formulated in defiance of such revelation, it follows that many of the offences which have been formulated by the legal system are offences only because they have been defined as such by ignorant men, who are not acting in accordance with what Allah has indicated should be regarded as wrong action. Man-made laws are only as good – or as bad – as the people who make them. ‘The Law’ is neither an abstract entity, nor is it God. In reality, ‘the rule of law’ is the rule of whoever makes the law. The Shari’ah of Islam is the law of God.

Many of the offences defined by the kafir legal system are not even based on common sense, and certainly do not arise from wisdom. They have come into being because the consumer producer system needs a great many rules if it is to operate efficiently, and these rules can only be enforced by punishing the people who break them. They are the result of political expediency, the necessary means for effective manipulation and population control in the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system. It will be remembered that the definition of an ignorant person is the one who thinks he or she knows, when in reality he or she does not.

Just as the kafir medical experts have an illusory definition of what 'normal' is, so too do the kafir legal experts. In effect, if you fulfil the functions of an obedient robot in the producer consumer system, then you fall fully within the legal definition of what is considered 'normal', provided of course that you abide by the rules. Anyone who falls outside the legal norm of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, soon finds him or her self in trouble with the legal system. As the police state becomes more and more of a reality, and more and more oppressive, it becomes increasingly more difficult to follow any human way of life which is a viable alternative to that norm, without experiencing greater and greater harassment from the legal system.

The legal experts who frame the laws which make the system work are skilled in defining laws which will enable the controllers of that system to take whatever steps are necessary to protect their interests and to maintain the status quo. Anyone whose actions fall within the legal definition of an offence is automatically considered a criminal, and can be punished accordingly. It follows that any pattern of activity which threatens the continued existence of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, can be 'legally' destroyed or disrupted merely by passing a law which makes that pattern of activity 'illegal'.

The kafir media system is then used to justify and promote that law by using the appropriate emotive adjectives to describe the pattern of activity which has just been outlawed – such as 'anarchistic', 'fanatical', 'terrorist' – and by using the appropriate platitudes to make the law seem necessary – such as 'in the public interest', 'in the interests of the state', 'for the protection of society'. The ease with which such laws can be passed is eloquent proof of the fact that the ruling elite of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, are not only established at the head of all the interlinking systems which form the kafir system, but

also by virtue of that fact are able to work in close conjunction with each other.

The law-making body in any kafir state is also the body which administers those laws, is also the body which governs in purported accordance with those laws, no matter how many carefully worded theories concerning the doctrine of the separation of powers there are, which seek to create the impression that the legislators, the judiciary and the executive are independent of each other, and therefore by implication incorruptible. In reality the opposite of this doctrine is true of the typical kafir state, and that is why it is possible to 'legally' silence anyone who is too manifestly opposed to the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, with ease.

As well as ensuring that the kafir norm and status quo are upheld and maintained, the legal system, like the medical system, is big business. It is for this reason that so many prosecutions, which otherwise would be completely pointless and unnecessary, are pursued. The outcome of the prosecution is not important. Whether the person accused is convicted or acquitted is quite irrelevant. What matters, as far as the people working in the legal system are concerned, is that they are kept occupied. If they had a just society they would be out of a job, and that is why the controllers of the kafir state ensure that they do not have a just society.

As is the case with every system in the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, the legal system ensures its continued and profitable existence by creating work for itself. Of all the systems it is the most cannibalistic, for in effect it feeds off human beings. Even a simple motoring 'offence' by one person, for example, is a potential source of income for the police who deal with him or her, the solicitor, the barrister, the prosecutor, the judiciary, and of course all those who fill the bureaucratic positions which are necessary to enable the cumbersome machinery of the legal system to grind on its way. It is one of the surprises of creation that there are people who can view such a system with pride and love, but then every created being loves something. The fly loves shit, while the bee loves honey – and of course there are times when the system does function well, when the lawyers are skilled, and the truth does emerge, and the judge is impartial, and the outcome is just.

Again, as with the hospital system, it must be emphasised that within the legal system too there are good people, men and women endowed



with intelligence and integrity whose desire is to see that justice is done, and who more often than not ensure that justice is done – but often in spite of the system and not because of it!

Given the way the system is set up, it is not surprising that the police are forced by the very nature of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, to hunt for and prosecute even the most trivial of so-called offences and offenders. Given the presence of all the various legal entities in the legal system, it follows that they must have work to justify their existence. The vast amounts of money which are gathered by means of fines imposed in the courts each day are used to supplement the money gathered by means of taxes, in order to cover the running costs of the legal system. These costs are vast. The police force is continually increasing in size, and not only must its members receive their above average pay, but also they must have all the latest equipment.

Since kafir legal procedure and kafir laws are complex, and expressed in a specialist vocabulary, most people who find themselves accused of anything usually have to obtain assistance from lawyers if they are to stand any chance of acquittal in court at all. Since not all the victims of the legal system are rich, and indeed most of them come from among the helpless and the poor, provision has to be made for the lawyers who represent them. The legal aid scheme ensures that the lawyers will still get paid, even when their client has no money. Naturally the handsome income of the judiciary, and the not so handsome income of the people filling the bureaucratic posts in the legal system, is also safely guaranteed, but adds a great deal to the annual cost of running the legal system.

Finally there is the upkeep of the buildings in which the people who operate the legal system enact their daily dramas, as well as the need to erect more buildings in what is after all a profitable and expanding business. As any society disintegrates, more prisons are always needed. All this expense, most of it unnecessary – in the sense that if a different approach to ‘crime’ were used, much of the expense at present incurred could be avoided – has to be met by the people enslaved in the producer consumer process.



It is not only the criminal law but also the civil law which is a potential source of handsome reward for those involved in the legal system. The dependence of people on the civil law process is achieved by ensuring

that even the simplest of transactions needs to be evidenced in writing if it is to be regarded as 'valid'. When you are born, your birth must be registered, as must eventually your death. Marriage must be registered and if it does not work out, it is only by means of the civil law that it can be legally dissolved, and financial provision and division of shared assets be legally made. When you die your property cannot be distributed according to your wishes without your personal representatives, or their legal representatives first going to court to obtain probate.

Thus all the main milestones along the journey of life, that is birth, marriage and death, are in a kafir society only regarded as real and valid and legal and right and proper, if they have been endorsed by usually quite unnecessary paper work. Further reliance on the civil legal process is also ensured by the fact that in a situation where people do not trust each other, and are suspicious of each other's motives – and this is the natural condition of the kafir mind – they usually tend to place more reliance on courts of law to obtain for them what they want. What this means is that the kafir has to be confronted with the threat of impending punishment before he or she will keep his or her word when it does not seem expedient so to do. Whoever does not fear God, or fear the Fire, or long for the Garden, inevitably has to be threatened with a big stick!

Everyone is motivated by hope and fear – but what a difference between those whose hope and fear are dictated by their attitude towards the creation, and those whose hope and fear are directed by their attitude towards the Creator.

By far the greatest volume of work for the kafir civil courts derives from the consumer producer process itself. Since that process is based on competition and exploitation, it follows that there will always be people who are trying to get something for nothing, and this can usually only be achieved by clever word play which achieves the desired result without infringing the law. The guidance of a legal expert is needed in such matters. Similarly, such dishonest activity can usually only be prevented by taking or threatening to take the matter before the courts. Allah says in the *Qur'an* that the kafirun appear to be one body, but they are divided against each other. It is this division, which is characterised by lack of trust and by the willingness to take advantage of others, which ensures that the civil courts and lawyers are kept in business.

Furthermore, because the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system,

needs so many rules and regulations in order to function, this means not only that there will always be constant breaches of these rules occurring, but also that experts will be needed to interpret these rules both in their application and when dealing with any breaches thereof. Further dependence on the civil judicial process is also ensured by the fact that these rules and procedures are for ever changing, which means not only that the publishers of legal text books are given continued and lucrative work, but also that it is only the legal expert who has even the slightest idea of what the legal position probably is in any given situation, at any particular point in time.

When anything goes wrong in a kafir transaction, the only way to ensure that things are put right is by employing the people who know how to deal with the paperwork, and who have some idea of how all the relevant laws – which govern the validity of what the paper in question records – operate. Amongst people who trust each other, neither these laws, nor the courts which administer them, nor the experts who interpret them, are needed.

The involvement of the kafir banking, insurance, hire purchase, building society and other finance systems in the producer consumer system, and indeed in all aspects of people's lives lived in the context of that system, also help to ensure that the kafir civil judicial process is kept busy. All these kafir financial institutions deal in sophisticated magic, in that they create money out of nothing by charging interest, an activity which Allah expressly prohibits in the *Qur'an*, saying that those who indulge in it are for the Fire. They all work on the understanding that anyone who has been adequately programmed to desire the products of the consumer producer process will be willing to pay extra if he or she can have immediate possession of the product in question. The 'extra' is calculated in terms of interest.

Since all these finance institutions only exist to make money out of people, they are usually merciless in commencing legal proceedings whenever a customer falls behind in payment, especially now that decisions are increasingly being made by computers rather than by human beings. The overriding criterion no longer appears to be whether or not someone who needs help is trustworthy, but whether or not he or she is a good investment – that is, whether or not enough money can be made out of him or her.

If someone, for example – who under a mortgage agreement has

agreed to pay over three times the amount that would have been payable if he or she had been able to pay for the house in full at the time of agreeing to buy the house – falls behind on the mortgage repayments after having conscientiously paid them for twenty years – and after he or she has already in fact paid twice the original value of the house – then under the terms of the mortgage agreement, the house will usually be repossessed and sold, and if the proceeds of sale do not cover the outstanding debt, then its former owner will be pursued for the balance. In effect, the end result will be that after having paid for the house three times over, he or she will end up without the house and without any money!

There can be no doubt whatsoever that usury, in whatever form it takes – and charging interest on bank overdrafts or loans is only one of these forms – is legalised theft.

This situation is the complete opposite of that in which one Muslim lends money to another Muslim, and is quite prepared to wait long beyond the agreed time of repayment, and if necessary relieve the debtor of having to repay the loan altogether, firm in the knowledge that Allah will repay the debt for him or her ten times over. Indeed there are some Muslims who refuse to lend money, but will only give it away, on the principle and in the knowledge that if they lend money they only stand to regain the sum lent, whereas if they give it away they will recover ten times that amount, in accordance with the promise and by the generous outpouring of Allah.

This knowledge is entirely lacking in the typical kafir financial institution which, because of its size and the manner in which it is run, can be utterly ruthless with the most deserving of people, simply because the individual who is borrowing the money never meets the individual who is lending it. The representative of the financial institution is always in a position to say that if he or she could help then he or she would, but unfortunately rules are rules, and he or she is bound by the rules of the company and his or her contract of employment. Most of the transactions are conducted via computer, and, since most computers have not been programmed to be compassionate, for their programmers are not compassionate, accordingly legal proceedings can be initiated automatically and without deliberation or compassion.

Although the insurance companies are concerned primarily with safeguarding products once they have been acquired, by agreeing to

pay out money to the owner if the product is lost or damaged in certain specified circumstances, and provided that the owner agrees to pay a specified premium to the insurance company throughout the period of insurance, they also play a large role in the context of personal injury and fatal accident claims. Since they are in the insurance trade solely for purposes of business, the amounts they are prepared to pay out on the various claims have already been carefully calculated, so that after they have been paid out the company will be left with an overall profit. If they can get away with paying less on a claim than they expect they will have to pay, then they will do so. This means that many claims become the subject of litigation, for it is only when experts' reports have been prepared, and lawyers employed to bargain by correspondence and advise the respective parties as to what sum the judge would be likely to award if the matter went to court, that it may become clear as to how much the claim is really worth. This pattern of activity is another clear example of how the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, creates activity in order that money can be made out of it.

The kafir civil legal process is like the kafir criminal legal process: It makes money out of other people's misfortunes. A person who breaks an arm at work because, for example, he was given a faulty ladder to use, will not receive any financial compensation for his injury until after the insurance company has been involved, solicitors and barristers have been involved, medical experts have been involved, and, if agreement cannot be reached, until the matter has been finally settled in court. In a simple case like this the costs of all these different entities being involved will be greatly in excess of the sum which is finally recovered by the victim of the accident. The truth of the matter is that this pattern of activity is not really for the benefit of the victim. It is more for the benefit of the so-called experts without whose help the victim can recover nothing.

This is the key to the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system. Once the experts who control that system have persuaded the majority of the population to rely on their services, then the position and income of the experts, and therefore the continued existence of that system, is assured.

The muslim community has no need of these so-called experts. In the case of unexpected damage to property or injury to life and limb, the members of the community help each other out. Where appropri-

ate, money can be distributed from the bayt al-mal, that is the fund into which the members of the community pay the minimal taxes required by the *Qur'an*.

The only taxes which a Muslim is obliged by Allah to pay are the zakat which is a tax of two and a half per cent of any capital or income above a certain amount which has been accumulated and not used for at least a year – in other words, wealth which is over and above what its owner actually needs in order to live; and a tax of two and a half per cent on merchandise above a certain amount which has remained in stock for at least a year; and a tax of ten per cent on naturally watered crops, or five per cent on artificially watered crops, which is to be paid in the form of one tenth or one twentieth of what has actually been harvested; and a tax of a small proportion of any herd of livestock over a certain size; and a tax of two and a half per cent of the value of all mineral and subterranean resources which are mined.

There is also the zakat al-fitr, which is four both-hands-cupped-fulls of a local staple food, usually grain or dried fruit, payable by or on behalf of every Muslim in the community at the end of Ramadan, which is the lunar month during which every adult Muslim in good health fasts between dawn and sunset. Finally, if a Muslim finds buried treasure, he or she must pay a tax on it of twenty per cent. All these taxes are paid into the bayt al-mal.

Since the way of Islam is based on giving out, a real muslim community ensures that the contents of this central fund are immediately distributed to those in need – as defined in the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah* – as quickly as it fills up. Since the taxes are gathered in at different times of the year, it follows that the bayt al-mal is continually being filled, expended and replenished. The taxes are so simple that they can be understood by someone who is illiterate. There is thus no need for the expert to interpret and administer them.

There are two other taxes, payable by non-muslims, which are equally simple: The jizya tax, which is paid by all adult males of the ahlu'l-dhimma, that is any non-muslims living under Muslim rule and protection. The amount per head, which can be reduced in cases of real poverty, is four dinars of gold or forty dirhams of silver each year. This is approximately the equivalent, at the time of writing this, of £200-00 English, or \$300 American. By virtue of paying the jizya tax, the ahlu'l-dhimma do not have to fight if the Muslim community is attacked, and

are entitled to protection by the Muslims during such an attack. The other tax is ten per cent on imports into Muslim territory from other countries, which is levied on traders who are not muslim.

The absolute simplicity of the muslim taxes means that they can be gathered with ease. There is thus none of the unnecessary activity which is engendered by the kafir tax laws, which are so complex and so oppressive that they create the demand for legal experts to interpret them and find ways of evading and avoiding them, and for a complex bureaucratic system to collect them – and of course provide the authorities with the work of catching tax offenders and the kafir legal system with more business in dealing with them. Since muslim taxes are so low, virtually everyone can afford to pay them, especially since they are only payable out of what a person actually possesses, and not on what someone may have earned during the year. A Muslim, for example, who has an annual income of a million pounds or dollars would not have to pay any zakat on this amount if none of it had been accumulated for at least a year or more.



It is quite evident that, after the regulation of society, the main concern of many kafir legal system is making money and creating situations from which money can be made – not justice. It follows that the outcome of a good many cases depends not on the facts or the merits of the case, but on who is going to have to pay the costs. This means that there are two laws, one for the rich and one for the poor. This means that the kafir legal system favours those who control the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, at the expense of those who are enslaved by that system. The profits involved are increased by the fact that since the kafir legal machine involves much bureaucracy there is much delay. This delay is a disadvantage to the accused or to the litigant as the case may be, since when events are no longer fresh in people's minds the outcome of the case becomes more uncertain. As far as the people involved with the conduct of the case are concerned, however, any delay means more pay.

The kafir legal system, the heart of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, creates work for itself and is provided with work by virtue of the way in which the producer consumer system operates, and it makes vast sums of money out of that work, whilst at the same time maintaining the status quo which ensures that work continues to be made available.

Only those who know how the kafir system that is the Dajjal system works, and who help to control it, share in the profits which arise from the way in which it operates. Everyone else loses out, in monetary terms at any rate. Of course in the final analysis success or failure can only be measured in terms of whether you end up in the Garden or in the Fire in the life after this one. If one looks at the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, from this Qur'anic perspective, then it is clear that the kafir controllers, who imagine that they have got it made in this world, are in for a big shock in the next one.

It follows that the following excerpt from a letter from the London branch of the banking firm of Rothschild Brothers, dated the 25th of June 1863 and addressed to the New York bank of Ickleheimer, Morton and Van der Gould – which was quoted by Ezra Pound in his writings, and which gives some indication of both the nature and the identity of the iceberg of institutionalised usury which has so deeply affected the characteristics and quality of life in the twentieth and twenty-first centuries – is only of limited accuracy when viewed from a kafir perspective, and of none when viewed from a Qur'anic perspective:

'The few who understand the system ... will either be so interested in its profits, or so dependant on its favours, that there will be no opposition from that class, while, on the other hand, the great body of people, mentally incapable of comprehending the tremendous advantages that Capital derives from the system, will bear its burden without complaint, and perhaps without even suspecting that the system is inimical to their interests ...'

It must be emphasised that the Prophetic mode of existence is the complete opposite of the kafir system that is the Dajjal system. Kufr creates complexity. Islam embodies simplicity. In the muslim community there is a complete absence of institutions and bodies of experts whose livelihood and continued existence depends on creating work for themselves, by feeding off other people's misfortunes. The Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, said, 'We are an illiterate community. We do not write and we do not calculate.' Human transactions in a muslim community are conducted on the basis of mutual trust, and not on the basis of a spurious legal validity which necessitates paper work. The *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah* contain all the guidance an individual human being or group of people needs.



Where disputes arise, they can be settled by reference to what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Hadith*, and not necessarily by reference to other people's decisions in similar fact situations in the past, or to complex, arbitrary and for ever changing laws and rules.

It is true that there are those who have attempted to make a legal system, based on one or more kafir legal systems, out of some of the teachings of Islam, but they cannot be regarded as muslims and must be ignored. They are merely the fulfilment of the Prophet Muhammad's prophecy, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, that there would be those who, in the name of Islam, would follow the example of their predecessors, meaning the Jews and the Christians, just like a lizard making for its hole, that is by compromising and abandoning the guidance which their Prophet had brought.

The nature of the real muslim community is such, that there can be no consumer producer process, because the Muslims know that they were not created for that purpose; that there can be no educational system such as is operated by the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, because the Muslims do not need to be conditioned to be exploited – because the basis of a muslim community is the worship of Allah and not the exploitation of others, and because the knowledge which the true Muslims have is certain knowledge, derived from the *Qur'an* and the *Hadith*, directly from Allah and His Messenger, and not the often useless or irrelevant speculative information in which the kafir educational system largely traffics; that there can be no medical system, because the Muslim by virtue of his or her way of life is basically healthy – and when sick, uses a different form of healing to that employed by the kafir medical system; that there can be no legal system, because the guidance in the *Qur'an* and the *Hadith* is complete and does not need to be changed or amended, and because anyone can follow it without the necessity of experts to interpret it, and because it can only be followed if it is accepted voluntarily and not if it is imposed by or on others; that there can be no financial systems which operate on the basis of charging interest, because not only are these forbidden by Allah, but also because muslim commerce is based on generosity and giving out, and not on being mean and retention.

In a real muslim society there are no faceless institutions, there are no banks as we know banks today, there are no prisons and no law courts, and there is no police force, or standing army for that matter. The ruler is the person whom everyone has accepted as their ruler, and

who follows what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah*. Since there is no ruling elite – for the way of Muhammad expressly forbids dynastic rule and whoever adopts dynastic rule does so in defiance of the guidance sent by Allah – it follows that there is no body of people who, because they wish to exploit the rest of the population, need to have both the means of oppression and the means which are used to disguise the nature of that oppression.

Whenever anyone in a muslim community goes beyond the limits of Allah, as indicated in the *Qur'an* and the *Hadith*, in a manner which harms someone else or the community as a whole, then that person is dealt with, in accordance with what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Hadith*, by the community through its leader and on the spot without delay. No one in a muslim community should be deprived of their liberty for more than three days, no matter what they may have done. Everyone inclines to wrong action at some time or other. The compassionate way in which the Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, dealt with those who had gone beyond the limits set by Allah provides a clear example of how to rule, for all those who have been chosen to rule. He directed rulers not to reach a conclusion until they had heard both sides of the story, and not to sit in judgement if they were angry or constipated. He never built a prison.

The fact that anything which occurs in a muslim community and which requires a decision is dealt with on the spot means that there is no room for bureaucracy or bureaucrats or paper work. In a muslim community justice is not a matter of who pays the costs, because there are no costs of the kind which the operation of kafir legal systems engenders to pay.

Anyone in a muslim community who has taken upon him or her self the obligations of the Shari'ah, that is the road to Allah, which are simply stated in the *Qur'an* and the *Hadith*, and who fears Allah and the Last Day, is solely by virtue of the way in which he or she has chosen to live neither a threat to others nor to his or her own self. To follow the Prophetic life style is to live in harmony with one's self and with others, and in order to achieve this balance there is no need whatsoever for a body of people who have appointed themselves as the judges of others' actions and as the enforcers of this way of life. Indeed whenever this group appears, and there is always a time when it does, it is a sign of disintegration, a sign of the first inclination away from Islam towards Kufr.

The whole point of the way of Islam is that it cannot be successfully imposed on anyone who does not wish to follow it. It can only be voluntarily adopted by the one who wishes to live in that way. Allah says in the *Qur'an* that there is no compulsion in the life transaction. Only a fool tries to force people to live in a certain manner, for the reality of existence is that every atom is in its place, and everything that takes place is intended by Allah. If you look at creation you can find no fault in it. It is perfect. If you are a mumin it is no good trying to be a kafir. If you are a kafir it is no good trying to be a mumin. You can only be who you are and allow others to be who they are. There is no power and no strength except from Allah.



Reference has been made to the ruling elite of the kafir system that is the Dajjal system, and to the fact that they now control all the sub-systems which together make up that system. Up to now this group of kafir controllers has not been positively identified. It is now necessary to take a closer look at who they are. Co-ordinated control of the apparently separate albeit interlinking sub-systems which together form the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, is made possible by the existence of the ruling elite's secret organisations, the various lodges of the freemasons. The ruling elite of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, are the freemasons. Their activities are masked by the popular misconception that the freemasons are no more than a fraternity who help each other in the business world and do charitable work. This is true, but the extent of that mutual assistance, and the high degree of influence and control which they exercise, is hidden from public knowledge. The hierarchy within these lodges, as is typical of all kafir systems, is pyramidal in form. One of their symbols is the pyramid with the 'all-seeing' eye, the eye of the Dajjal. The freemasons are the magicians of the twentieth and twenty-first centuries. All magic is concerned with a formal manipulation of existence which is conducted in such a way that the method used to achieve the desired result is not apparent to the onlooker. This accurately describes the nature of freemasonic activity in the sphere of the kafir producer consumer system, that is the Dajjal system, even to the point where governments are subverted and wars engineered in order that debts may be created, by supplying so-called advisers and arms at a cost, which are further inflated by charging interest on the debts thereby incurred. The freemasons are today's equivalent of Pharaoh's

magicians, many of whom, as we know from the *Qur'an*, supported the kafir manipulation control system of the Pharaoh who opposed Moses and his teaching, and who eventually brought about his own downfall by so doing. The story of the transaction between Moses and Pharaoh is related in great detail and more than once in the *Qur'an*. It demonstrates with great clarity that when a man of Allah, who knows that he is completely helpless in the hands of Allah, meets a man of kufr, who relies on the magic which Allah has given him without his knowing it, then it is the man of Allah to whom victory is given by Allah. There is no strength and no power except from Allah.



The transaction which occurred between Moses and Pharaoh is the same as the transaction which occurred between Noah and the kafir ruler of his time, is the same as the transaction which occurred between Abraham and Nimrod, is the same as the transaction which occurred between Jesus and the Roman Emperor, is the same as the transaction which occurred between Muhammad and Abu Jahl, is the same as the transaction which today occurs between iman and kufr, and which will find its final expression in the confrontation between the Mahdi and Dajjal.

Looking at history from the Qur'anic perspective, we see that there has only ever been one major transaction between people on the face of this earth, that is the transaction between those who accept Allah and His Prophets and those who reject Allah and His Prophets.

Allah is as He was before the creation of the Universe and continues to be. Allah is as He will be. Allah cannot be conceived of, and everything other than Allah which appears to be is the conception of Allah. Vision cannot contain Him, but He contains vision, and he is the All-Pervading, the Knower of every separate thing that befalls us. Allah is One. Allah is independent of what appears to be other than Him. He was not born from anything and nothing is born from Him and there is nothing like Him. There is no god only Allah. There is only Allah.

All the Prophets and Messengers of Allah, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on them, were sent by Allah to teach people the meaning of these words, and to show them how to live in accordance with that meaning. They were sent in order that people might know the nature of reality that is the Real that is Allah, and in order that people might know how to live with that knowledge. They were sent with a

way of life which would lead those who followed it to self-knowledge and to knowledge of Allah, the same knowledge, for who ever knows their self truly knows their Lord.

It follows, since they all came from and affirmed the same and only One Reality, Allah, that all the respective Prophets' teachings were essentially the same, although sometimes differing slightly in their application in accordance with the particular needs of the particular time and people for whom each Prophet was sent and meant. Moses and Jesus, for example, were sent specifically to the Tribe of Israel, whereas Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him and on all the Prophets, was sent for all mankind and the jinn.

It follows that all the people who have ever lived or are alive or are to live on this earth have only ever had or will have one choice, that is whether to be mumin or kafir. In Reality there is not even that choice, since you can only be what Allah has decreed you will be. Allah is the doer of you and your actions. You are answerable for your actions. On the Last Day you will not question Allah, but Allah will question you. Right now the choice is yours.

The Dajjal is not something separate from kufr. The Dajjal is the final and most extreme expression of kufr before the end of the world, just as the Mahdi will be the final and most eloquent embodiment of Islam before the end of the world. It will be remembered that the Mahdi will be a drop compared to the ocean of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him. It is the final confrontation between the Mahdi and the Dajjal and their respective followers which, according to the *Hadith*, heralds the end of the world. During that final confrontation the Prophet Jesus, peace be on him, will reappear on earth and kill the Dajjal. There will then follow the peaceful rule of the Mahdi as leader of all the Muslims, who will be spread all around the world. When Jesus eventually dies, he will be buried next to the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on both of them, in Madina. After this period there will come a time when Allah will take the arwah, that is the spirit forms, of all those who trust in Allah from their bodies and this earth, so that there is only one Muslim left on the face of the earth, in China. When he dies, there will be a period when those who are left on the earth will live like animals. At the end of this period, Israfil the angel will blow the first blast of his trumpet, at which every living thing will die. The earth will

remain lifeless for a period. At the end of this period Israfil will give a second blast on his trumpet at which the world will disintegrate, as is described in the *Qur'an* and the *Hadith*, until it has become one vast flat plain of silver sand. All those who have ever lived will be brought to life again, and this is easy for the One Who gave you life in the first place. Then, depending on their actions and the intentions behind those actions whilst they were in this world, it will be decided who is for the Fire, and who is for the Garden. The Fire is for the kafirun. The Garden is for the muminun. Dajjal and his followers are for the Fire. The Mahdi and his followers are for the Garden. You are either for the Fire or for the Garden. Right now the choice is yours.



The freemasons are the leaders of the takeover by Dajjal as an unseen force. The results of their activities are evidenced by Dajjal as a world wide social and cultural phenomenon. They will be the ones who acclaim and support Dajjal the individual when he appears. Without the freemasons the takeover would not have progressed as far as it has. Since, at the moment of writing this, they control all the kafir institutions and systems in the world today, it would seem that they have never been in an apparently stronger position than now to orchestrate their plans for world domination through the producer consumer process, backed by their banking system, by means of dividing and ruling. The point has even been reached where they are planning mass sterilisation of women in the third world countries so that, in the name of women's 'liberation', they can manipulate and balance the forces of supply and demand in the emerging new world market.

The high degree of control exercised by the freemasons today is witnessed by the fact that they are able to instigate a war, provide the arms for the two sides to be able to fight it, at a price of course, and then take over control, or strengthen control if they already have it, once the fighting is over, any opposition to them having been considerably weakened by the inevitable consequences of war. Look, for example, at what has happened in Bosnia.

This technique of manipulation control by divide and rule is effected by operating on two fronts at the same time. There is what goes on behind the scenes as it were, and there is the official stage production which is put on for the benefit of the general public. The manner in which the hidden activities are conducted is highly ruthless, and the efficiency with which they are carried out is matched only by the lengths

to which the freemasons are prepared to go to put on a convincing constitutional, legal and just stage production for the benefit and continued misguidance of the unsuspecting public. The success of the show, that is of the official version of events, is only made possible by the fact that the different kafir sub-systems are able to interlink and co-operate, by virtue of the fact that they are controlled by one and the same ruling elite, the freemasons, who staged the french revolution to begin with, and who have never ceased to increase the magnitude of their stage productions and the control underlying them since that time.

The interaction of the medical and legal kafir systems provides perhaps the most eloquent example of the freemasonic co-operation which is necessary to ensure a good stage production fronting the acquisition of ultimate control. It is not entirely a coincidence that, taking London as an example, the High Court of Justice and the Royal College of Surgeons have their backs facing each other, but are separated only by a stone's throw. Although they apparently face in different directions, they can work in close conjunction with each other when necessary.

To give but three examples of how the legal and medical systems, aided of course by the media system, can work together, we may examine the removal of Lord Northcliffe, a former chief proprietor of *The Times* newspaper, which occurred after the first world war, and the trial of Ezra Pound, the famous poet, and the notorious Nuremberg trials, which took place immediately after the second world war.



Under cover of the first world war, Palestine – which had been selected as the 'homeland' of the Zionist Jews whose forefathers, the Khazar Jews, were in fact from the Caucasus – was occupied by the British. The famous Balfour Declaration, addressed to Lord Rothschild, was officially delivered on the 2nd of November, 1917, during exactly the same week in which the Russian Revolution was successfully concluded:

His Majesty's Government view with favour the establishment in Palestine of a National Home for the Jewish People, and will use their best endeavours to facilitate the achievement of this object, it being clearly understood that nothing shall be done which may prejudice the civil and religious rights of existing non-Jewish communities in Palestine, or the rights and political status enjoyed by Jews in any country.

It is interesting to note in passing that Communism, like Zionism, was predominantly a Khazar Jewish affair, as Douglas Reed records in his book, *The Controversy of Zion*:

The British Government's White Paper of 1919 (Russia, No.1, a Collection of Reports on Bolshevism) quoted the report sent to Mr. Balfour in London in 1918 by the Netherlands Minister at Saint Petersburg, M. Oudendyke: 'Bolshevism is organised and worked by Jews, who have no nationality and whose one object is to destroy for their own ends the existing order of things.' The United States Ambassador, Mr. David R. Francis, reported similarly: 'The Bolshevik leaders here, most of whom are Jews and 90 per cent of whom are returned exiles, care little for Russia or any other country but are internationalists and they are trying to start a worldwide social revolution.' M. Oudendyke's report was deleted from later editions of the British official publication and all such authentic documents of that period are now difficult to obtain. Fortunately for the student, one witness preserved the official record.

This was Mr. Robert Wilton, correspondent of the London Times, who experienced the Bolshevik revolution. The French edition of his book included the official Bolshevik lists of the membership of the ruling revolutionary bodies (they were omitted from the English edition).

These records show that the Central Committee of the Bolshevik party, which wielded the supreme power, contained 3 Russians (including Lenin) and 9 Jews. The next body in importance, the Central Committee of the Executive Commission (or secret police) comprised 42 Jews and 19 Russians, Letts, Georgians and others. The Council of People's Commissars consisted of 17 Jews and five others. The Moscow Che-ka (secret police) was formed of 23 Jews and 13 others. Among the names of 556 high officials of the Bolshevik state officially published in 1918–1919 were 458 Jews and 108 others. Among the central committees of small, supposedly 'Socialist' or other non-Communist parties (during that early period the semblance of 'opposition' was permitted, to beguile the masses, accustomed



under the Czar to opposition parties) were 55 Jews and 6 others. All the names are given in the original documents reproduced by Mr. Wilton.

After the conclusion of the first world war, and while the League of Nations was being set up in order to rubber-stamp the Mandate which would grant the British government 'international' approval to administer Palestine on behalf of the Jews until a sufficient number of Jews had been installed in Palestine to be able to take over control there themselves, Lord Northcliffe, the chief proprietor of, inter alia, *The Times* newspaper, accompanied by a journalist, Mr. J.M.N. Jeffries, visited Palestine and saw exactly what was going on, as Douglas Reed records:

This was a combination of a different sort from that formed by the editors of *The Times* and *Manchester Guardian*, who wrote their leading articles about Palestine in England and in consultation with the Zionist chieftain, Dr. Weizmann. Lord Northcliffe, on the spot, reached the same conclusion as all other impartial investigators, and wrote, 'In my opinion we, without sufficient thought, guaranteed Palestine as a home for the Jews despite the fact that 700,000 Arab Muslims live there and own it ... The Jews seemed to be under the impression that all England was devoted to the one cause of Zionism, enthusiastic for it in fact; and I told them that this was not so and to be careful that they do not tire out our people by secret importation of arms to fight 700,000 Arabs ... There will be trouble in Palestine ... people dare not tell the Jews the truth here. They have had some from me.'

The editor of *The Times*, however, Mr. Wickham Steed – who during the war had already refused to publish the eyewitness accounts of the true nature of the (Khazar Jewish) Russian Revolution which had been written by its chief foreign correspondent for Russia, Mr. Robert Wilton – refused to publish Lord Northcliffe's series of articles on the situation in Palestine; when instructed by Lord Northcliffe to come out to Palestine to see things for himself, he refused to do so; and when he was told, again by Lord Northcliffe, to publish an editorial attacking Mr. Balfour's attitude towards Zionism, he refused yet again. After

returning to England, Lord Northcliffe requested the resignation of Mr. Wickham Steed, on the 2nd of March, 1922. The editor refused to do so and informed a director of *The Times* that Lord Northcliffe was 'going mad'. Douglas Reed continues the story:

On June 8, 1922 Lord Northcliffe, from Boulogne, asked Mr. Wickham Steed to meet him in Paris; they met there on June 11, 1922, and Lord Northcliffe told his visitor that he, Lord Northcliffe, would assume the editorship of *The Times*. On June 12, 1922 the whole party left for Evian-les-Bains, a doctor being secreted on the train, as far as the Swiss frontier, by Mr. Wickham Steed. Arrived in Switzerland 'a brilliant French nerve specialist' (unnamed) was summoned and in the evening certified Lord Northcliffe insane. On the strength of this Mr. Wickham Steed cabled instructions to *The Times* to disregard and not to publish anything received from Lord Northcliffe, and on June 13, 1922 he left, never to see Lord Northcliffe again. On June 18, 1922 Lord Northcliffe returned to London and was in fact removed from all control of, and even communication with his undertakings (especially *The Times*; his telephone was cut). The manager had police posted at the door to prevent him entering the office of *The Times* if he were able to reach it. All this, according to the Official History of *The Times*, was on the strength of certification in a foreign country (Switzerland) by an unnamed (French) doctor. On August 14, 1922 Lord Northcliffe died; the cause of death stated was ulcerative endocarditis, and his age was fifty-seven. He was buried, after a service at Westminster Abbey, amid a great array of mourning editors.

Such is the story as I have taken it from the official publication. None of this was known outside a small circle at the time; it only emerged in the Official History after three decades, and if it had been published in 1922 would presumably have called forth many questions. I doubt if any comparable displacement of a powerful and wealthy man can be adduced, at any rate in such mysterious circumstances.

Douglas Reed concludes:

Lord Northcliffe therefore was out of circulation, and of

the control of his newspapers, during the decisive period preceding the ratification of 'the mandate' by the League of Nations, which clinched the Palestinian transaction and bequeathed the effects of it to our present generation. The opposition of a widely-read chain of journals at that period might have changed the whole course of events. After Lord Northcliffe died the possibility of editorials in *The Times* 'attacking Balfour's attitude towards Zionism' faded. From that time the submission of the press, in the manner described by the Protocols, grew ever more apparent and in time reached the condition which prevails today, when faithful reporting and impartial comment on this question has long been in suspense.

Lord Northcliffe was removed from control of his newspapers and put under constraint on June 18, 1922; on July 24, 1922 the Council of the League of Nations met in London, secure from any possibility of loud public protest by Lord Northcliffe, to bestow on Britain a 'mandate' to remain in Palestine and by arms to instal the Zionists there (I describe what events have shown to be the fact; the matter was not so depicted to the public, of course).

It is interesting to note in passing that Douglas Reed, who had joined the staff of *The Times* newspaper at the end of the first world war, was sent to Boulogne to act as Lord Northcliffe's secretary during the first week of June 1922. He was thus one of the last people to be with Lord Northcliffe before he was pronounced 'insane'. It is clear that in the opinion of Douglas Reed – who subsequently was to be *The Times* chief foreign correspondent for Central Europe and the Balkans – Lord Northcliffe was his normal self during that week:

I cannot judge, and can only record what I saw and thought at the time, as a young man who had no more idea of what went on around him than a babe knows the shape of the world. When I returned to London I was questioned about Lord Northcliffe by his brother, Lord Rothermere, and one of his chief associates, Sir George Sutton. The thought of madness must by that time have been in their minds (the 'certification' had ensued) and therefore have underlain their questions, but not even then did any such suspicion

occur to me, although I had been one of the last people to see him before he was certified and removed from control of his newspapers. I did not know of that when I saw them or for long afterwards. In such secrecy was all this done that, although I continued in the service of *The Times* for sixteen years, I only learned of the ‘madness’ and ‘certification’ thirty years later, from the Official History. By that time I was able to see what great consequences had flowed from an affair in which I was an uninitiated onlooker at the age of twenty-seven.

For, under cover of the second world war, the swiftly growing number of Jews in Palestine were armed, and, with the creation of the successor to the League of Nations, the United Nations, the state of Israel was both proclaimed and then swiftly officially and ‘internationally’ recognised by the members of that institution soon after the war had come to an end.



Ezra Pound was only too well aware that what passed itself off as education in the western world was nothing less than a conditioning process which guaranteed ignorance of the overall nature and unity of existence, at the expense of being highly informed about specific and isolated pockets of life, the height of that ignorance being the person who thinks he or she knows all there is to know, when in fact the opposite is the case. Ezra Pound was also only too well aware that both the first and the second kafir world wars had been engineered, precipitated and orchestrated by the freemasons, who as a result had made much money out of them, as well as increasing their control both over and in not only the governments of all the countries involved, but also their educational, business, medical, legal and media systems, thereby ensuring and insuring, via their banking, insurance and other finance systems, virtually complete control over much of the kafir producer consumer process which was being established in those countries. Ezra Pound was brave enough to broadcast what he saw was going on over the radio from Italy midway during the second world war. He was foolish or foolhardy enough not to realise the degree of control which the freemasons already exercised over the systems which he hoped to liberate by warning the people of the danger which threatened to engulf them, and by suggesting an alternative way of life and of government

and commerce, based on the teachings of Confucius, which at the time he was in the process of translating. It would appear that he was unaware of the only viable alternative way of life to the kafir system that is the Dajjal system: that is, the way of Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace.

When the American forces reached the part of Italy where Pound was, he was immediately arrested. At that point he imagined that he was going to be taken to America to advise the government as to how to best adopt and implement the Confucian mode which he had been suggesting into the American way of life. The basis of this mode echoed the resolve of the original founding fathers of America, in that interest in any form or guise should not be charged on any kind of debt or loan.

Pound's subsequent treatment soon demonstrated that he was sadly mistaken in his belief, and showed how inimical the controlling freemasonic elite of America were to any suggestions which threatened their chief source of revenue and control, that is the creation of debts and the charging of interest thereon, so that the debtors had no choice but to work continuously in their producer consumer process, in order to raise the money to pay off the old debts, whilst at the same time incurring fresh ones. The takeover had already been virtually completed in America, and accordingly as far as the ruling elite of America was concerned, Ezra Pound was public enemy number one.

Soon after his arrest, Ezra Pound was taken to Pisa, where he was put in solitary confinement in an iron cage which stood in the middle of a military compound, and which provided no shelter from the sun by day, nor from the cold of night, nor from the wind and the dust and the rain. No-one was allowed to hold a conversation with him. Eventually he became so ill that he had to be put inside a tent in order that he be kept alive. After several weeks he was transported to America, still suffering from exposure and ill health.

On arrival in America Ezra Pound was given no time to recover, but was immediately brought before a judge and charged with treason, the very charge which he had been levelling at the freemasons, since in his opinion they were destroying and corrupting the America in which he personally believed – the America which the original founding fathers had envisaged – and were, through their manipulation control techniques, busy establishing the America which in fact exists today.

Ezra Pound was not permitted to have the defence lawyer of his

own choosing. Instead he was allocated a lawyer who was himself a freemason, as was the judge who presided over the judicial proceedings, and as were the medical experts who were appointed both by the prosecution and the defence lawyers.

As far as the freemasons were concerned, it was important that Pound should not give evidence, nor indeed come to trial, since this would mean that his knowledge of the takeover would become known to all those who followed the trial, and might become too well publicised, even though the main media systems in America – as in Europe – were, and still are, controlled by the freemasons. Anyone who has attempted to set up their own broadcasting station in a kafir country will know just how tight the control exercised by the freemasons is.

Accordingly Pound's lawyer advised him that the best tactic was to avoid the danger of his being convicted for treason, which is an offence carrying the death penalty, by maintaining that he was unfit to stand trial by reason of insanity. In order for this stratagem to succeed, it was necessary that Pound did not speak a word in court. Pound, who was already an ageing and, because of the treatment which he had just received, a sick man, submitted to the pressure exerted by his lawyer and by his wife, and agreed to adopt this approach.

Pound appeared before the judge and a grand jury on his arraignment, his lawyer made the submission that Pound was unfit to stand trial, and the judge ordered a medical enquiry to be undertaken by medical experts who were to be selected by both the prosecution and the defence lawyers.

It is usual in such cases for the medical experts to disagree sharply, since they are only usually selected by the respective sides in the case because their opinion is going to support and strengthen the arguments put forward by the lawyer who chose them. It would have been expected in this case therefore, that the medical experts chosen by the prosecution would have come to the conclusion that Pound was perfectly sane and fit to stand trial. However, because it had already been agreed behind the scenes what was to happen to Ezra Pound, it came as no surprise that the prosecution medical experts – who like the defence medical expert, all the lawyers concerned and the judge, were freemasons – instead of supporting the contention that Pound was fit to plead and should not be allowed to escape the so-called demands of justice, in fact agreed completely with the defence medical expert in

stating, once the necessary but unnecessary rigmarole of due observation, examination and psychiatric tests had been performed, that Pound was indeed 'insane' and therefore unable to stand trial.

This decision was of course portrayed by the freemasonic controlled media as an example of the humane treatment which an insane person, who could not really be held responsible for what he said or did, could expect to receive from a just and understanding legal system. In reality the freemasons were making very sure that what Pound had said or done to expose them did not become common knowledge.

Once the medical experts had come to their inevitable conclusion, and once that conclusion had been given weight by voicing it in the correct judicial setting, Pound's committal to an insane asylum for an indefinite period was a mere formality. The freemasons, as a result of the skilful and polished use and combination of their medical and legal systems, had succeeded in silencing one of their most eloquent and knowledgeable opponents with utmost ease, and all with the appearance of complete what is called legality and due judicial process. The Pound pantomime had been a resounding success: The audience were satisfied and unaware of what had really been going on.

Ezra Pound spent the next fifteen years in an insane asylum. He was allowed visitors, and indeed attracted quite a cult following, but his views were still effectively curtailed. He knew that if he spoke out again, and attempted to organise a more widespread dissemination of his political views by means of his visitors, then he would either be no longer allowed to have visitors, or else he would be brought back to court, adjudged sane, and immediately put on trial for treason. He by now must have realised that he could be found guilty of treason and sentenced to death just as easily as he had already been found insane and unfit to stand trial. Perhaps he saw that there was very little he could do at his advanced age, and acting virtually alone, to change the system. He had tried to kill the many headed monster by cutting off one or two of its heads, and had failed. He was probably unaware of the way to its heart. He chose to remain alive and be a celebrated poet.

Throughout all these goings on, the freemasonic controlled media discredited Pound by all possible means, fully endorsing his so-called insanity, and subtly casting doubt on any of his views concerning economics and politics and the way in which the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, was, and still is, being controlled. The media presented

the public with the picture of a man who was a mad but gifted poet, who in his own almost inspired but certainly idiosyncratic way was competent and even entertaining in his chosen sphere of literary activity – but who was otherwise totally inadequate and unqualified to make any relevant observation whatsoever on the way in which America was being governed and controlled by the freemasons, not only by means of their banking, insurance and other finance systems, but also through all the other large kafir institutions and systems, whether business, educational, media, medical, legal, or governmental.

All efforts were made to ensure that Pound's views were given as restricted a circulation as possible. Since the freemasons controlled the publishing world, which not only provides the educational system with most of its teaching resources, but also makes sure that the bookshops are filled with suitably opiate material for public consumption, nearly all of Pound's writings which attacked the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, with an accuracy which was a little too uncomfortable to be tolerated, were successfully withdrawn from the market. Only his 'pretty' poems were allowed to have continued general circulation. Even today, many of the editions of Pound's *Cantos* have certain passages blacked out, wherever sensitive areas or key people, such as the Rothschilds, for example, are – or rather were – indicated or directly mentioned.

Finally, after fifteen years, when Pound was no longer capable of being a threat to the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, simply because he was old and worn out and preparing for death, he was released from the insane asylum. He returned to Italy, where he subsequently died. If you ask anyone today who Ezra Pound was, they will probably tell you, a famous poet. Hardly anyone knows his real story, simply because it is very well hidden in the kafir information retrieval systems, and not available for all and sundry. The way in which Pound was effectively silenced was only possible because of the efficient interlink which existed, and continues to exist, between the American governmental, legal, medical and media systems, an interlink which was and is made possible by virtue of the control exercised by the freemasons.



It is clear that the success of the performance of the kafir stage production, which is used to disguise the true nature of the freemasonic ruling elite's ruthless manipulation control techniques, depends on the acceptance by the general population of the kafir definitions of what is 'normal' and what is 'legal'.



The kafir medical experts define what is 'normal' and what is 'abnormal', that is what is to be considered sane or insane. The kafir legal experts define what is 'legal' and what is 'illegal', that is what action is to be considered permissible or not permissible. Since the kafir expert is concerned with reputation and with the opinion of others, it follows that there is always more than one current definition of what is normal and what is legal, because the person who can come up with what the kafir calls an original idea or two thereby ensures a good position in the kafir experts' hierarchy – provided he or she is given suitable publicity and enough of it.

However, although the various kafir definitions of what is normal and what is legal differ widely, they all have one basic characteristic in common, that is that they all uphold the kafir view of existence. This means, in effect, that the apparent differences in opinion amongst the kafir experts are only surface conflicts. In fact they are all agreed when it comes to rejecting the way of the Prophets and affirming the way of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system. Kufr is one system. The kafirun appear to be one body, but they are divided against each other.

The kafir educational system is used to inculcate and condition the general population with the definitions which have been framed by the kafir experts. The media is used to reinforce and sustain this conditioning. It is for this reason that alternative ways of education which do not support the kafir view of existence tend to be made illegal before they can ever become popular. It is a criminal offence in most kafir states for parents not to send their children through its educational conditioning process. Any 'alternative' educational establishment which is permitted to exist usually has to teach 'the national curriculum' if it is to survive – and is extremely unlikely to receive any form of government funding.

If the local authorities discover families who have slipped through the net, they have wide powers to take their children into what is called care, so that the children can no longer be deprived of their conditioning. Since it often happens that the parents who try to save their children from the educational system do not themselves know what the alternative to it is, the task of the care authorities in satisfying the court that the children should be taken into care because the parents cannot cope is made easier.

Similarly, the most influential media systems, that is radio and television, are monopolised by the kafir system that is the Dajjal system. It is a criminal offence in most kafir states to make an independent radio

or television broadcast without a licence. Only those organisations which support the system, whether directly or indirectly, are likely to be granted such a licence.

In this way penetrating criticism of the kafir system that is the Dajjal system on a mass basis is effectively prevented. Instead, limited coverage is given to such 'extremists', since its effect is to persuade the average viewer or listener that the apparent relative stability of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, is far more preferable than the brave new world envisaged by the angry and inept minority, whose views are presented in the worst possible light on the media system.

Naturally not all of the imperfections of the system can be hidden from every one, and accordingly the media system usually presents programs in which it appears not only that these failings have been noticed and are being criticised, but also that something is being done to remedy them. The more established the system is in any particular kafir state, the more people are permitted to criticise it – simply because their words will not really change anything. These 'current affairs' programs alternate with dream and fantasy programs which are usually laced with ever more explicit soft pornography, thereby equating 'progress' and 'artistic licence' with the extent to which sexual activity and vulgar language are depicted and used. Having been shocked or lulled by the news you can then be excited by sports time, or entertained by music and drama time, or captivated by competition time, and suddenly another precious day has gone.

The effect of the media system is to make life a cerebral affair. Much of the action goes on in a person's head, via the radio or the television, or the computer, so that 'reality' is indeed virtual. It is a form of hypnosis. Everything happens by means of a technological interface. The result of being plugged into the media system for too long is that in the end you will accept almost anything, without actually doing anything about it, provided that your stomach is full, and your bed is warm, and your home is comfortable.

The individual in a kafir society is bombarded with so much information by the media system, that in the end he or she is usually left feeling completely helpless when confronted with the idea of changing the system, even when he or she has a pretty good idea of how it works. There are many people in today's kafir societies who are not at all happy with the way their lives are being organised, but who feel powerless to change either themselves or their environment. There are

also those who, as a result of their educational and media conditioning, accept the world with which they are presented by that conditioning without question.

By controlling the educational and media systems, the kafir ruling elite ensure that their definitions of what is 'normal' and what is 'legal' prevail. The people in a kafir state are presented with these definitions from birth to death. Many of them only see what they are told to see. Very few realise how deeply implanted these definitions are in their consciousness, or seek to find the real meaning of existence, which is covered over by these definitions. The result of a kafir education, that is the view of existence which comes with and as a result of it, is kufr, is what might be called the Dajjal mentality. Ironically but predictably, anyone who disagrees with it is described and dismissed as having been 'brainwashed'.

All these kafir definitions are not based on an understanding of the true nature of existence. Indeed they are used to cover up the truth of things. They do not originate from Prophetic revelation, which derives from the source of existence and the destination to which all existence returns, Allah. Indeed it is only by basing one's life on Prophetic revelation, that is both one's existential life pattern as well as one's understanding of the nature of life itself – and today the only Prophetic revelation which is still intact and available to the seeker of knowledge is the *Qur'an* – that it is possible to cut through the web of kafir conditioning which covers over real knowledge, that is knowledge of the Real, Allah. In order to really understand existence, it is necessary to be 'heartwashed'!

The only way to base one's life on what is in the *Qur'an* is by finding a community of Muslims who most nearly follow the example and life style of the people who were the first to base their lives on what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah*, that is the first Muslim community of Madina al-Munawarra, which means the illuminated place where the life transaction is, who formed round the Prophet Muhammad fourteen hundred years ago. Allah says in the *Qur'an* that this was the best community which has ever been on the face of the earth, and since all creation is from Allah, He knows what He is talking about. The companions of the Prophet Muhammad received their knowledge of Allah, and of how to live, by keeping company with the Prophet Muhammad, whose every action embodied what is in the *Qur'an*, whose every word contained wisdom, and whose very presence transformed and illuminated those

who were near him, may the blessings and peace of Allah always be on him and them.

The transaction of the real muslim community is the same today. The people in such a community receive their learning and knowledge by the baraka, that is by the blessing of their leader, who is a man of Allah and who is guided by Allah. Such a man is called a wali of Allah, that is a friend of Allah. He loves Allah and Allah loves him, and the people who also love Allah and whom Allah loves gather round him. There is no competition between the awliya of Allah. Each has his or her own station with Allah. The greater the wali's fear of Allah, the higher his or her station is with Allah. The greatest of the awliya meet and talk with the Prophet Muhammad in the Unseen, either in dreams or in vision. They accordingly have an access to the living life transaction of Islam which those who lay claim to leadership, merely by virtue of the fact that they have read more books than anyone else, do not have.

Living Islam is not to be found in books. It is transmitted from person to person. However this transmission is only possible because the Muslims have the *Qur'an*, which means 'the Recitation'. The key to understanding what is in the *Qur'an* is to recite it out loud, neither too soft nor too strong, either in a gathering or alone, with your attention on your heart.

The *Qur'an* is the uncreated word of Allah. It is the only book on the face of the earth today which has not been written by a human being, but which was revealed by Allah via the angel Gabriel to the Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace – who himself could neither read nor write – and which has not been changed, even by one letter, since it was first revealed. Allah has promised that the *Qur'an* will be preserved intact until the end of the world.

In the light of the *Qur'an* the definitions of the kafir experts are seen to be what they are: often ignorant, often limited, and often inaccurate ideas based on speculation and without certainty. The contents of the *Qur'an* can be used to ascertain the accuracy of any statement, since the *Qur'an* is the definitive collection of statements on the true nature of existence, coming as it does from the Source of all existence, Allah. Some of the more enlightened and sincere scientists from the High Tec North are now discovering that whatever they have accurately 'discovered' is corroborated by what is in the *Qur'an* – revealed more than thirteen and a half centuries ago – and further that there is much

in the *Qur'an* which they have not yet discovered, and which they can never hope to discover, since their methods are too gross and clumsy and misconceived, to make such discoveries.

Everything in creation has meaning, but the kafir definitions often obscure and cover over what this meaning really is. Since the kafirun have no certainty but only speculation, their definitions are for ever being re-defined. The kafir experts cover up the inadequacy of their definitions by grandly stating that the reason why these definitions are changing is because they are continually evolving and progressing, not because they are inadequate and misinformed. A leading proponent of the big bang theory was once asked what there was before the big bang took place. He replied that there was an unwritten agreement amongst all scientists not to ask that question – let alone to attempt to answer it. The truth, behind this unwritten agreement, is that they all know that if they admitted their ignorance, then they would lose their professional titles and their salary and their reputation. The best of them know that if they really wanted to discover the true nature of existence then they would have to leave their laboratories, and seek out a man or woman of Allah, that is a person with real knowledge.

One of the key speculative theories of the present so-called civilisation is the Darwinian theory of evolution. The conceptual framework of this theory has been borrowed by most kafir theorists at some time or other to support their ideas. Basically the theory is used to further the kafir doctrine of 'progress and development' in all spheres of activity. Any course of action or any development in technology, for example, which on the face of it appears to be clearly suicidal – the atomic bomb, for example – can always be validated by claiming that it is what has 'evolved' from what came before it, and that therefore it must be better.

The part of Darwin's theory which has received most publicity is the proposition that man is not descended from Adam, but from the apes. We learn from the *Qur'an* that the opposite is the truth. All mankind comes from Adam and Eve, despite what the kafir geneticists may say. There was a people in the past who rejected the Messenger whom Allah had sent to them and who, instead of following the life pattern which he had brought, lived like animals. As a result Allah turned some of them into apes and some of them into pigs. When Allah wishes something to happen, He says, 'Be' – and it is.

Allah says in the *Qur'an* that a people who do not follow the Prophetic life pattern destroy themselves. Even a cursory examination of today's present kafir societies plainly proves this to be the case. These kafir societies are not evolving and getting better. They are getting worse as they disintegrate.

Everything in existence is subject to birth and death, and to growth and decay. When the present kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, disintegrates and finally collapses, the survivors will have no option but to embrace Islam, if they have not already done so.

The Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, said that there would not be an age which was not worse than the one before it, until the end of the world. If anything, therefore, the world and what is in it is not evolving but rather devolving. It is approaching its end. The Prophet Muhammad said that you should not be children of this world, but rather children of the next world, because this world is leaving you and the next world is approaching you.

The kafir experts who supply the official definitions of what is normal and what is legal are incapable of giving this kind of advice, simply because they are totally unaware of the true nature of the journey which we all have to make, willingly or unwillingly. They do not know from where they come, and they do not know to where they are going, and their paltry definitions amply reflect their ignorance. Surely we come from Allah, and to Allah we will surely return.

The end to which such definitions are used is not to further man's understanding of the nature of existence, but is rather population manipulation and control in the producer consumer process. These definitions are used, in effect, to programme and condition people into accepting this process as being the meaning of their lives, and the reason for their existence. Allah says in the *Qur'an* that He did not create man and jinn except to worship Him.

As has been seen from the examples of Lord Northcliffe and Ezra Pound, these definitions also provide the means by which the freemasonic ruling elite can eliminate or at least control whoever recognises the kafir system that is the Dajjal system for what it is – and who might disrupt its functioning unless they are stopped – by subjecting them to judicial and medical processes which the majority of the population have been conditioned to accept as legal and normal.

The kafir experts who frame and sustain these definitions are clearly

identified by the descriptions contained in the *Qur'an* as being the mufsidun, meaning 'those who corrupt', that is, the people who say they are putting everything right, when in fact they are only creating disruption, division and dissension.

Thus although the actual word 'Dajjal' does not appear in the *Qur'an*, the activities of Dajjal, the last and ultimate expression of kufr in the creational process before the end of the world, are clearly indicated and identified. The kafir system as a whole, with all its inter-linking sub-systems, all controlled by their so-called experts – and the Prophet Muhammad said that kufr is one system – is Dajjal as a world wide social and cultural phenomenon. The way in which the producer consumer process is operated, and the way in which its supporting sub-systems are used to control and manipulate the people enslaved by the producer consumer system, are clear evidence of the takeover which has been and is taking place by Dajjal as an unseen force. The kafir system that is the Dajjal system dominates nearly all of the countries of the world today, and it can only be a matter of time before Dajjal the individual appears.



Another example of the manner in which the Dajjal system operates as regards the elimination of opposition by so-called 'constitutional means' is to be found in the manner in which the famous Nuremberg trials were conducted. This particular stage production was perhaps one of the most thoroughly and carefully orchestrated cover-ups in the history of the Dajjal takeover, and cost millions of pounds.



Hitler, like Ezra Pound, was well aware of the freemasons' activities, as were his immediate followers. He instigated a widespread propaganda campaign designed to reveal these activities. He even embarked on the second kafir world war. Like Pound he under-estimated the degree of control already exercised by the freemasons. There was even a stage when, partially financed by Zionist financiers on Wall Street, he believed that the American government would be supporting him, so little did he know of the takeover which had been going on in earnest in that country for at least the fifty years prior to the commencement of the second world war.

What Hitler did not realise was that he was just the man that the freemasons were looking for. He had sufficient charisma to attract a

large enough following who would be prepared to fight for him, and he was sufficiently greedy for power and sufficiently ruthless in the methods which he was prepared to use to try and attain the power which he desired, for the freemasons to be able to discredit him entirely once the war was over. In effect, Hitler was used by the freemasons to bring about his own destruction, whilst at the same time providing them with the situation from which they could make handsome profits out of the war, and from which they could eventually increase their control on a world wide basis.

The second world war provided nearly every country after the war with sufficient reason to amass vast quantities of armaments, thereby providing the freemasons with countless potential conflict situations to exploit, for it is inevitable that once a country has arms there is going to emerge someone who wants to use them. That someone is given backing by the freemasons, who also help the people opposed to that someone, on the understanding that the winner of the conflict will then return past favours, usually by purchasing more arms, borrowing more money on interest, and giving freemasonic backed corporations favourable contracts, to establish the producer consumer process in the country in question, and to exploit its natural resources. Since the freemasons back both sides in the conflict, without either of the two sides realising it, the outcome of the conflict is immaterial, since the freemasons cannot lose, whichever side 'wins'.

As with Pound, the freemasons had to come up with an effective counter-move at the end of the second world war in order to effectively discredit Hitler's ideas, by portraying him as a man who was so insane that nothing which he had said could possibly be believed to have contained any truth. Having used Hitler to create a profitable conflict situation, the freemasons had to then disassociate themselves not only from any involvement in his rise and downfall and the overall orchestration of the war, but also from the many truths which were undoubtedly voiced by Hitler concerning their activities. Since Hitler was himself a kafir, this task was relatively simple.

Although Hitler was aware of the freemasons' bid for world control, he did not have access to the only viable alternative to the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system – that is, trust in Allah, and a way of life based on the way of life embodied by the Prophet Muhammad, and followed by the community which formed around him at Madina al-Munawarra,



that is the illuminated place where the life transaction is, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him and them.

Indeed Hitler did not even have any of the ideals which Ezra Pound had possessed. Like the freemasons, all that he wanted was power. In effect, Hitler wished to beat the freemasons at their own game, by replacing their pyramidal power structure with his own pyramidal power structure.

In the final analysis, the second kafir world war was merely a power struggle between kafir powers, and not a confrontation between iman and kufr – that is, a struggle between those who accept the wisdom of the Prophetic lifestyle and those who reject it – although of course there were individuals on both sides, who found themselves unwillingly swept up in the conflict, and whose only way of keeping sane was by trusting in Allah. There was even one Muslim colonel from Hyderabad who decided to fight for the English on the basis that if the Germans won the war, they would be so efficient in running the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, that it would take twice as long for it to reach the state of collapse which it has now reached today. Allah says in the *Qur'an* that although the kafirun appear to be one body, they are divided against each other.

Since Hitler was unaware of the degree of control which the freemasons already exercised over the western world, he was foolish enough to imagine that he could succeed in his power bid for world domination. The freemasons on the other hand, knew that they would win the war even before they encouraged Hitler into 'starting' it. The only 'losers' were the people who were unfortunate enough to be misled into fighting in it. One of the main purposes of the second world war was to increase the extent of the territory now controlled by the Communists who had seized power in Russia under cover of the first world war. This is why war was declared on Germany but not Russia, even though Russia also invaded Poland 'before' the second world war began – and even though Russia ended up occupying all of Poland and half of Germany 'after' the war had ended.

One of the freemasons' main concerns was the cover-up job which it was essential should be performed once the war was over. Their task was twofold. Firstly, it was necessary to discredit Hitler's views on freemasonic meddling and manipulation in world affairs by giving them as little publicity as possible, and by bringing him into utter disrepute.

Secondly, it was necessary to create the impression that the actions which had arisen as a result of those views were other than what they really were. Hitler's views – especially his critique and condemnation of usury – had to be represented as the imaginings of a mad man, and accordingly without any basis of truth or accuracy. His actions, and the actions of those who followed him, had to be portrayed as the horrifying manifestation of the insane prejudices of a racially prejudiced tyrant, rather than the misguided attempts of a man who was trying to free Europe from the stranglehold control of the freemasons, but unfortunately by using the wrong methods.

Many of Hitler's views were either derived from or reinforced by the discovery and publication of *The Protocols of the Learned Elders of Zion*, a small book, originally written in Russian and published by Sergyei Nilus in 1905 – possession of which was punished by death at the time of the Communist takeover in Russia – and which presents a partial yet informative outline of the freemasonic blueprint for world control, the new world order.

The contents of *The Protocols* merely reinforced what Hitler had himself already observed in the way of freemasonic control exercised by what he called the dictatorship of the world stock exchange, the monopoly of raw materials, the control of land if not its ownership and, above all, usury in all its forms.

The freemasons, who at that stage of the takeover had already gained almost complete control of the media in the western world, entered a highly energetic cover-up campaign designed not only to establish the idea that *The Protocols* were a forgery, but also, and more important, to affirm that there was no truth in the contents of *The Protocols* whatsoever. Newspaper articles to this effect appeared in all the leading publications of the western world – including *The Times*, once Lord Northcliffe had been removed – and indeed even still continue to appear occasionally today.

The two most popular stories as to the origins of *The Protocols* were, firstly, that they could be traced back to a satirical dialogue between Machiavelli and Montesquieu in hell, aimed at Napoleon III, and published as part of the German novel *Biarritz*; and, secondly, that they were alleged to have been composed during the last few years of the nineteenth century by members of the Russian secret police in Paris, who had drawn their ideas from a French pamphlet written by a French lawyer called Maurice Joly.

This cover-up campaign culminated in the matter being taken before a Swiss freemasonic controlled court, which – having directed that the provisions of the Swiss Civil Code would not apply to the hearing, and having permitted only one of the forty defence witnesses to give evidence, and having allowed the plaintiffs to appoint two private stenographers, instead of the court stenographer, to keep the ‘official’ record of the evidence given by their sixteen witnesses – duly gave the desired declaration, on the 14th of May 1935, after the case had lasted nearly two years, in favour of the Swiss Israelitic Alliance and the Israelitic Congregation in Berne, and indeed for the benefit of freemasons in general, that *The Protocols* were a deliberate forgery, probably originating in the Paris Offices of the Russian Political Police, and intended for use by the Tsarist government against Russian liberals. It is not altogether surprising that in view of all the procedural irregularities which had taken place, the Swiss Court of Criminal Appeal quashed this judgement in its entirety, on the 1st of November 1937.

It should perhaps be mentioned in passing that although the Khazar Jews continue to claim that *The Protocols of the Learned Elders of Zion* is ‘a horrifying old forgery’ – whose circulation on the open market they have gone to such great lengths to prevent – there is, as Henry Ford once pointed out in 1921, a strong resemblance between what *The Protocols* originally envisaged and proposed, and what has since happened and is actually now taking place, (‘They have fitted the world situation up to this time. They fit it now.’), whether it be the creation of the United Nations at an international level, (i.e. the World Government of the proposed new world order); or the creation of highly regulated police states at a national level; or the creation of economic impotence through interest-based debts and crippling taxation at a community level; or the creation of confusion and sexual immorality by spreading false political and social theories amongst the Goyim (those who are not Jews) through the media at an individual level; or the introduction of organised sport to replace institutionalised religious worship at every level; to give but a few examples.

A ‘forgery’ is either an imitation of something original or the creation of something that purports to be an original. A good forgery is often so close to the original that there is virtually no difference between them, or else it is so accurate that it is as ‘true’ as an original, even if it was not created by whoever is said to have created it. In other words,

a 'forgery' is capable of not misrepresenting whatever it purports to imitate or describe.

Even if *The Protocols of the Learned Elders of Zion* is a forgery, which has never been conclusively proved to be the case, it may be that much of what it describes is nevertheless true. Whether it be fact or fiction, it still makes interesting reading. The reader will have to satisfy him or her self as to where the truth lies, by reading *The Protocols*, if that is possible. As in the case of Pound's writings, the freemasons who control the publishing business and its distribution outlets have ensured that virtually all copies of *The Protocols* and any translations thereof have long been withdrawn from the market for public consumption.

Similarly, the writings of Alfred Rosenberg, who was one of Hitler's men and who wrote extensively on *The Protocols*, and who amongst other things traced the sources of the Russian Revolution back to freemasonic activity, were and continue to be withdrawn from the general public's gaze.

As well as withdrawing all written records of Hitler's views which were damaging to the image of the freemasons, literally hundreds of books, backed by other media presentations on radio and on the screen, were written and broadcasted in order to distort what Hitler had actually been saying. Very few people today know what Hitler actually said or believed. His views have been covered over by a barrage of emotional invective, which has prevented the vast majority of people today from actually being in a position to coolly and critically examine what he actually had to say, in order to see what truth if any there was in his words. If you ask people today what motivated Hitler in his actions, most of them will give a predictable involuntary shiver, and dutifully come out with the freemasonic media manufactured picture of a tyrant who was irrationally prejudiced against the Jews, for no reason other than that they were Jews. There is no doubt that Hitler did hate some Jews, but he did have his reasons, and some of them are understandable.

As far as Hitler's actions and the actions of those who followed him are concerned, they were clearly excessive, and this made it all the easier for the freemasons to portray them as being far more excessive than they really were. It is always easier to exaggerate something that has happened, than to invent something which never even happened at all. The freemasons took full advantage of this in their attempts to depict Hitler and his followers as fanatical racist madmen, who wished to utterly destroy all Jews altogether and to establish the Aryan master race.

Using highly emotive techniques of media manipulation, which include the display of the incriminating close up, but not the overall picture, backed up by highly loaded vocabulary, the freemasons were highly successful in portraying Hitler as a disordered paranoid psychopath, who was imagining a conspiracy which did not exist, in order to justify his purely racist and entirely irrational discriminatory prejudice and hatred of the Jews as a whole. Of course there was some truth in their allegations, but they maintained, through the media systems, that this was the whole truth, when in fact large vistas of the truth had been omitted from the picture which had been prepared for the general public.

Thus, for example, Douglas Reed, who was *The Times* newspaper's chief correspondent for central Europe and the Balkans in the 1930s wrote in his book *The Controversy of Zion*:

In the case of 'the Jewish persecution' in Germany I found that impartial presentation of the facts gradually gave way to so partisan a depiction that the truth was lost. This transformation was effected in three subtle stages. First the persecution of 'political opponents and Jews' was reported; then this was imperceptibly amended to 'Jews and political opponents'; and at the end the press in general spoke only of 'the persecution of Jews.' By this means a false image was projected on to the public mind and the plight of the overwhelming majority of the victims, by this fixing of the spotlight on one group, was lost to sight. The result showed in 1945, when, on the one hand, the persecution of Jews was made the subject of a formal indictment at Nuremberg, and on the other hand half of Europe and all the people in it were abandoned to the selfsame persecution, in which the Jews had shared in their small proportion to populations everywhere.

Douglas Reed continues:

When the general persecution began I reported it as I saw it. If I learned of a concentration camp containing a thousand captives I reported this; if I learned that the thousand included thirty or fifty Jews I reported that. I saw the first terror, spoke with many of the victims, examined their

injuries, and was warned that I incurred Gestapo hostility thereby. The victims were in the great majority, certainly much over ninety per cent, Germans, and a few were Jews. This reflected the population-ratio, in Germany and later in the countries overrun by Hitler. But the manner of reporting in the world's press in time blocked-out the great suffering mass, leaving only the case of the Jews.

Similarly, when the Soviet troops – who it will be remembered also invaded Poland prior to the beginning of the war – finally overran Poland and eastern Germany towards the end of the war, it was they who took over most of the concentration camps and – just as Hitler had used them to dispose of his political enemies – used them to dispose of Stalin's political enemies, many of whom had been prevented from escaping across the river Elbe by the armies of the Western Allies – an awful scenario of which the general public were never informed, as Douglas Reed again points out:

The Western masses knew nothing of these happenings in British-American occupied Germany at the time, and might not have objected violently if they had known, for at that period they were still under the influence of wartime propaganda, particularly in the matter of the Nazi concentration camps. They seemed to me completely to have forgotten that the concentration camp was originally a Communist idea, copied by Hitler, and that the further the Red armies were allowed into Europe the more certain its perpetuation became. Their feelings were inflamed by the horrifying news-reel pictures, shown to them on a million screens as the Allied armies entered Germany, of piles of emaciated corpses stacked like firewood in these camps.

I was a member of those audiences and heard the comments around me with misgiving. Wartime propaganda is the most insidious poison known to man, and I believe these picturegoers of 1945, deprived of truthful information for years, had lost all ability, perhaps all desire to judge what they saw. I think most of them thought the human remains they saw were those of Jews, for this was the suggestion hammered into their minds by the press day by day. They constantly read of 'Nazi gas chambers for Jews

... Nazi crematoria for Jews', and few of them in later years troubled to read the stories of inmates and find out who these victims truly were. One instance: a German woman who spent five years in Ravensbruck camp (Frau Margaret Bubers Newmann) says the first victims were the sick or afflicted, or those incapable of work, and the next ones were 'the inferior races', among whom the Poles were placed first, and the Czechs, Balts, Hungarians and others next.

Thus the piles of dead received as little true compassion as the living who were driven back by the Western allies into the concentration-camp area, and today it may be only a matter of historical interest, pertaining to such a book as this, to show that the 'Nazi' concentration camps, at the time when the Anglo-American armies entered Germany, were predominantly under Communist control, that Jews were among the tormentors, and that anti-Communism was a surer qualification for the death-chamber than anti-Hitlerism!

Douglas Reed concludes:

Communists ran these camps, tortured and murdered the victims. If there was any difference between them and the Gestapo jailers it was only that they were more villainous, because they denounced and killed men who were supposed to be their comrades in battle against a common foe. As the Eastern Jews, in particular, play so large a part in Communism, Jews logically appear among the persons implicated in these deeds. That is not in itself surprising at all, for Jews, like all other men, are good and bad, cruel or humane; but it was kept hidden from the public masses, who received a picture of torture-camps inhabited almost entirely by Jews, tormented by depraved 'Nazi' captors. In fact, the Jews formed a small proportion of the entire camp-population; the tormentors in the last three years of the war were largely Communists, whose motives have been shown; and among these tormentors were Jews.

The media campaign directed against Hitler – designed to persuade the people of the west and of the east that there was no truth whatsoever

in Hitler's statements about the activities of the freemasons, and that all the courses of action which he had initiated in order to bring his allegedly madly imagined state of affairs to an end were crimes which ought to be punished – culminated in the notorious Nuremberg trials, one of history's most carefully contrived judicial pantomimes.

Naturally the media coverage portrayed these trials as one of the major landmarks in the history of human rights and impartial due legal process. The view was expressed that the accused were fortunate even to get a trial, let alone a fair one, since any less impartial victors might well have summarily executed them on the spot in angry revenge. This media cover-up picture of the Nuremberg trials continues to be sustained today, as it has been since the trials first took place. It needs but a brief glance at the record of these trials to discover that their outcome had been virtually decided before they began, and that they were designed to inflict as much torment on the accused as possible, before they were finally disposed of by being hanged on the Jewish Day of Judgement, Hoshana Rabba.

The records of the Nuremberg trials, for those who care to go beyond the trite media picture of dastardly criminals being brought to justice by the just, provide a clear example of the extent to which the kafir legal and kafir medical systems can be employed to eliminate opposition.



Unlike Ezra Pound, whose political opinions had received hardly any publicity or coverage in the media system, the German propaganda machine had aired Hitler's views to such an extent that it was impossible to pretend that they did not exist. Whereas Pound's views had been contained by keeping him silenced, Hitler's views had to be rendered ineffective and made to look ridiculous by distorting them through exaggeration, thereby discrediting them.

This could only be achieved by presenting Hitler and his immediate followers as violent and inhuman psychopaths who, blinded by ignorance and racist hatred, had somehow mesmerised and terrorised the German people not only into attempting to eliminate all the Jews in Europe, but also into fighting a war which they did not really wish to fight in order to achieve that object.

One of the means by which this impression was created was the Nuremberg trials. In the name of international law, which is otherwise known as the law of international expediency, and of justice, their words



and actions were accordingly manipulated and arranged, so as to create the desired picture, which was then spread abroad by the freemasonic controlled media system.



It was imperative that the accused should be found fit to stand trial, even though they were subsequently to be presented to the world as mentally deranged beings, who could hardly be described as humans. Clearly if any of them could successfully plead that they were unfit for trial, then the impact and force of the picture which was to be presented to the public would thereby be diminished. Accordingly the appropriate medical experts were selected to adjudge the accused as being normal enough to stand trial, and it comes as no surprise to learn that this was the conclusion to which they all came: The only way to avoid standing trial was by committing suicide, a course of action which only a very limited number of the accused chose to adopt.

As in the case of Ezra Pound, the accused were kept in solitary confinement and in unsavoury conditions, albeit not out in the open, in order to soften them up for the impending judicial proceedings. It was during this period of solitary confinement, which lasted several months, that the accused were subjected to the famous Rorschach tests, the results and interpretations of which were subsequently used to great effect in the post-trial propaganda campaign against the followers of Hitler. The Rorschach tests were initially begun by an English psychiatrist, who some years later was to commit suicide on New Year's Eve by swallowing one of the cyanide capsules which had been found on Goering after his own suicide. Allah says in the *Qur'an* that the one who does not follow the way of the Prophets is self-destroyed. This psychiatrist was not considered ideally suited for the leading psychiatrist role in the Nuremberg stage production, and was accordingly replaced by a more expert American expert early on in the show. It was this man who conducted the Rorschach tests on the accused and subsequently wrote volumes on his so-called 'expert' findings.

The basis of the Rorschach tests is to present the 'patient' with a series of large symmetrical ink blots, each differing in shape and colour. The patient gives a verbal reaction to each blot as it is shown, stating what he or she sees in it. The medical 'expert' then interprets the patient's reactions, on the basis that what the patient has seen in the blot is in fact a reflection of the patient's own reality.

It comes as no surprise to learn that the reactions of the accused to the Rorschach tests were interpreted so as to give medically tested credibility to the popular image which was being created, of the Nazis being depicted as dangerous psychopathic sub-human beasts.

The underlying assumption behind these tests – that is, that the Rorschach tests are a valid means of measuring what is ‘normal’ and ‘abnormal’ and what is ‘sane’ and ‘insane’ – is a fallacious one, not only because, as we have already seen, kafir conceptions of what is ‘normal’ and what is ‘sane’ are not connected to the true nature of existence, but in fact cover it up, but also because the methodology used is itself faulty. What the Rorschach method fails to make adequate provision for is the psychological make-up of the medical expert who carries out the tests. Since there is some truth in the assumption that the patient does see his or her own reflection in what is in front of him or her, it follows that this is also true for the medical expert, and that therefore the medical expert’s reactions to the responses of the patient to the Rorschach test provide in themselves a further secondary Rorschach-type response, so that any evaluation of the patient’s response by the medical expert is in reality an evaluation by the expert of his or her own self.

In other words, the medical expert’s interpretation of the Nuremberg accused’s responses was in itself a reflection of the experts’ own inner reality, just as much as the accused’s reaction to the blots was initially a reflection of the accused’s own inner reality. The conclusion which the medical experts reached regarding the accused in fact applied to themselves, just as the opinions which the medical experts had reached as regards Ezra Pound’s sanity were in fact descriptions of the state of their own sanity.



This is one aspect of the underlying unity of existence of which the kafir ‘expert’ is often unaware – that the patients whom a doctor has tend to reflect his or her reality, just as the people who come before a judge tend to reflect his or her reality. This is partly why different doctors have different kinds of patients, and different judges have different types of cases. As far as the Nuremberg trials are concerned, there was no difference between the accusers and the accused, and no difference between the judges and the judged – and, what is more, and contrary to established legal practice, the accusers and the judges were in reality one and the same.

The idea that the kafir 'expert' is somehow a detached observer of life is one of the hallmarks of the kafir view of existence. He or she thinks that because of his or her special knowledge – or rather superior ability in amassing and juggling with information – he or she is capable of forming a detached and 'objective' view of reality in which he or she is neither directly nor indirectly implicated. The truth is that there is no split in existence. There is only One Reality. No one is separate from the rest of existence even if they imagine that to be the case. The truth is that everyone in creation only sees what is in their own heart. Whatever is in your heart appears before you in creation. Whatever you see in creation is a reflection of your self. All you ever get back from the world is the echo of your own voice.

It follows that the only real doctors are the awliya of Allah, that is the friends of Allah, who have been given the idhn, that is the authority, to cure the hidden illnesses of the heart and the self by Allah, and to lead people from ignorance to knowledge and gnosis of Allah by Allah. The awliya of Allah who teach with idhn are the only doctors in the world who see things as they are, which is to say as they are not, with a direct seeing. The kafir medical expert gives reality to what he imagines to be real but which in fact is illusory. The awliya of Allah give reality to the Real, Allah.

It follows that the awliya who teach with idhn cannot lie. Whoever comes into their presence receives a true reflection of his or her own self, and at the same time benefits from and is transformed by the light of Allah which is their light. Since all this happens by Allah, and since the awliya know this, they are unable to charge money for what they do. This is the sign of the rightly guided man of Allah, that he is rightly guided by Allah, and that he does not ask for money – the complete antithesis of the kafir medical expert.

For the same reasons the awliya of Allah are the people who are best equipped to judge between people, when a judge is needed, because their furqan – that is, their ability to discriminate between what is just and what is unjust – is guided by the *Qur'an* and by the *Hadith* and is by Allah. Since they are the ones who have the most knowledge of Allah, it follows that they have most knowledge of all that comes from Allah, and are therefore in the best position to decide matters. Since their hearts have been purified, they see with a clear seeing. Since they have great fear of Allah, it is not possible for them to be motivated by

self interest or personal greed, since they know this would take them to the Fire. Further, since their self has been obliterated in Allah it follows that there is no self to be interested in, or rather they see that the whole of existence is their self, so that personal greed is an impossibility. The awliya of Allah are the complete antithesis of the kafir legal experts, who are not in a position to judge anything because they do not see anything as it really is.



The Charter which was drawn up principally by American and English legal experts, and which defined how the Nuremberg trials were to be conducted, was framed in such a manner that it ensured that the desired end result of the trials would be achieved with ease. The official legal definitions of what was to constitute a crime, and the ways in which the commission of that crime was to be capable of being proved, were so wide and so favoured the prosecution lawyers, that even a child could have convicted the accused of the crimes with which they were charged.

It must be emphasised that the accused were not tried in accordance with the rules and laws of any existing legal system, since this would have made the task of convicting them all far more difficult, and much more time-consuming and expensive.

Instead, the freemasonic legal experts created a legal system just for the purpose of the Nuremberg trials, with its own special rules of procedure and evidence, and with its own special definitions of the crimes with which the accused were charged. Had the accused been given any right of appeal to, for example, the English Court of Appeal or the House of Lords, the manner in which the Nuremberg trials were conducted would have been easily proved to be what existing legal systems would have defined as a gross irregularity in the conduct of those trials, and accordingly the accused would all have had to be acquitted and their convictions quashed. It was in order to escape this possibility that a separate self-contained legal system, without any rights of appeal, was created specifically for the purposes of the Nuremberg trials.

There were four major crimes of which most of the accused were charged with committing. The definitions of these crimes were so vague and so all-embracing that a great many acts of war – which are inevitably committed by all concerned on both sides during the course of war, because that is the nature of war – could easily be shown to come within

the ambit of these definitions, whenever it was convenient or expedient so to do. The four major crimes were Crimes against Humanity, War Crimes, Crimes against Peace, and Conspiracy to commit these crimes. It should be pointed out that since it was the freemasons who had engineered the war in the first place, it follows that they were just as 'guilty' of these crimes as the accused, if not more so.

The Charter also stated that it was a crime to belong to 'a criminal organisation'. The Charter defined nearly all the organs of government and administration and all the armed forces of Germany, and its official and secret police forces and intelligence agencies, as being criminal organisations. Naturally their counterparts among the Western Allies were not regarded as criminal organisations, despite the fact that they had been operating in basically the same way and using basically the same methods as the Germans throughout the war – for ultimately there is really no difference between one kafir and another, whether they be English, American, Russian or German.

Membership of one of these allegedly criminal organisations was defined as being prima facie evidence of the fact that the person concerned belonged to the Conspiracy to commit the other major crimes defined by the Charter.

Since all the accused, and indeed more than half of the population of Germany, belonged to at least one of the bodies which were defined as being criminal organisations, it followed that they were all automatically implicated in the Conspiracy to commit the other major crimes before the trials had even begun. All that had to be shown, once the trials had started, for the accused to be found guilty of the Conspiracy charge, was membership of one of the what had been defined as criminal organisations.

In effect, the freemasons were accusing the German leaders of the very conspiracy in which they themselves were involved, and which Hitler had unsuccessfully tried to expose and destroy. By boldly turning the tables in this way, the freemasons hoped to provide an effective smoke-screen to cover up and obscure the true nature of their own activities. It would seem that their hopes were fulfilled, for even at the time of writing this, the wind still has not blown the smoke away.

The fact that the Nuremberg Charter defined nearly all of the national institutions in Germany as being criminal for the purpose of the trials, as well as ensuring that the accused would be automatically

found guilty of the Conspiracy charge, not only effectively allowed the freemasons to charge whoever they wished to charge, but also indirectly ensured that there would be very few witnesses for the defence indeed. Whilst the judicial machinery for the trials was being prepared, large quantities of leaflets were distributed amongst the German people, requesting members of the what had been defined as criminal organisations to give themselves up, and asking any potential witnesses in the impending proceedings to step forward and identify themselves. Any member of one of the so-called criminal organisations who gave him or her self up could then be charged, if the prosecution thought it necessary, and all without any of the bother and expense of having to go out and find them.

Any potential witness who was foolish enough to identify him or her self was often immediately arrested and charged with belonging to one of the criminal organisations and accordingly with Conspiracy to commit the other major crimes. If however, the person in question agreed to act as a prosecution witness, and not as a defence witness, then it could easily be arranged that in return the charges against him or her would be dropped. If it was not possible to eliminate a potential defence witness in this way, then he or she was often successfully deterred and discouraged from giving evidence by being beaten up. The few defence witnesses who survived this screening process were, like the accused, kept imprisoned in solitary confinement in order to break them down and weaken their morale. No real distinction was ever made between the accused and the few defence witnesses who were able to give evidence at the trial. By the time the trials were under way their value as witnesses, and the weight of their testimony, had been so effectively eroded and undermined by the treatment which they had received, that really their only function was to help create the impression that the accused were receiving a fair trial.

This technique of inducing people to give themselves up voluntarily, and of persuading them to incriminate their colleagues in order to save their own skins, is strongly reminiscent of the techniques used by the Mediaeval and Spanish Inquisitions to achieve exactly the same objects, the only major difference between them being that the Inquisitors were after Jews, Unitarian Christians and Muslims, whilst the Nuremberg prosecutors were after fellow kafirun. It may well be that the Nuremberg prosecutors were aware of and followed the example

of the Inquisition, since the Inquisitors were then what the freemasons of today are now.

The Nuremberg prosecutors, who in open disregard of the kafir doctrine of the separation of powers legislative, administrative and judicial, were also both the legislators of the Charter and the judges of the accused, based their case largely on documentary evidence. The advantage of this approach was, and is, that you cannot cross-examine a piece of paper as to the truth of its contents, and a verbal denial alone of the truth of those contents or of a particular interpretation of or construction which has been placed upon those contents, is hardly ever sufficient to rebut the evidence apparently contained in the document in question, especially if the judge is in fact already entirely in agreement with the prosecution case.

The rules relating to documentary evidence which usually apply to judicial proceedings in the kafir courts of the west, and which give at least a limited guarantee of the possibility of being able to establish whether or not what is stated in any particular document is accurate, were for the purposes of the Nuremberg trials waived completely. This meant that the Nuremberg prosecutors could conduct their case in a manner which normally, even by kafir standards of normality, would have been condemned and brought to a halt for being biased, oppressive and contrary to the laws of what the kafir legal systems define as 'natural justice' and 'international law'. Indeed it was even openly argued by the prosecution lawyers that since the accused's actions were breaches of international law, therefore they could not expect to enjoy the protection of international law, let alone to be tried in accordance with it.

Basically the prosecution lawyers were allowed to adduce whatever document they wanted in evidence even if it contained second or third hand hearsay, let alone first hand hearsay, and even if the document was not an original but a copy. This meant that forged documents could also be introduced into the prosecution evidence without being effectively challenged by the defence. Even if a document was challenged as being of suspect origin, naturally there would always be a sworn affidavit available, made by a sufficiently high-ranking legal expert, which stated that all documents were original documents and had been verified as such by whoever had found them.

The Nuremberg prosecutors were given carte blanche by virtue of Articles 18 and 19 of the Charter. Under Article 18 of the Charter the

Tribunal was to confine the trial to an expeditious hearing, and to take strict measures to prevent any action which would cause unreasonable delay, and to rule out irrelevant issues and statements of any kind whatsoever. Article 19 of the Charter stated that the Tribunal was not be bound by technical rules of evidence, and that it should adopt and apply to the greatest possible extent expeditious and non-technical procedure, and that it should admit any evidence which it deemed to have probative value.

Anyone who has the time to read the record of the Nuremberg trials will see how time and again the Tribunal used Article 18 to silence the defence, while allowing the prosecution to adduce whatever so-called evidence they wished by virtue of Article 19. Of course the Charter also provided, by virtue of Article 3, that any attempt to question the validity of the Tribunal's jurisdiction, or its right to try the accused in the first place, should be automatically dismissed without further ado.

The Nuremberg prosecutors were not only able to adduce whatever piece of paper they wanted in evidence, but also often did so without first having served copies of these documents on the defence prior to their being produced. Furthermore, it sometimes happened that when an incriminating document's contents were worded in a language other than German, no translation was provided for the defence lawyers. Whenever this happened, therefore, it meant that the defence lawyers were forced to rely solely on the simultaneous translation service provided by IBM, which translated whatever was being said at the time into English, French, Russian and German, usually about a sentence behind and often inaccurately.

In effect, this meant that the defence lawyers did not know what case they had to meet until the very last moment, which gave them very little time to prepare their case. Furthermore, the defence lawyers were not permitted to converse with the accused in the court room. They could only communicate by written note. This again limited what a defence lawyer could do when an unexpected point was raised by the prosecution, since written communication was so much slower than the whispered word, when it came to trying to ascertain what any particular accused's response was to the point in question.

The Tribunal also permitted the prosecution to adduce in evidence sworn affidavits of alleged prosecution witnesses who were, so it was said, 'unable to attend'. This meant that the defence lawyers were unable



to test the truth of the contents of these affidavits by cross-examining the people who were alleged to have made them in the witness box, and to ask them the questions which had purposely not been asked by the prosecutor who had prepared the affidavits. The Tribunal permitted the production of such affidavits under Article 19, blandly stating that it would take into account the fact that such statements did not have as much probative value as they would have had if the person making them had been in the witness box and available for cross-examination, and that accordingly not so much weight would be attached to them.

The truth of the matter is that the nature of the evidence was such that, although to a layman it must have seemed as if it was all being presented in accordance with sound judicial precept and established legal practice, in fact it was not only heavily biased, but also the members of the Tribunal could put whatever interpretation and whatever weight they wished on it. Indeed the conclusions they were to draw had already been reached long before any of the evidence was formally presented for their consideration.

By basing their case on documentary evidence, and by adducing that evidence in the manner in which they were permitted to do so, the prosecution lawyers were able to say what they wanted without fear of being effectively challenged by the defence lawyers, and without having to rely on live witnesses, who might possibly have come out with evidence which was favourable to the accused.

The prosecution lawyers were also helped by the fact that the accused had only been permitted to choose their legal representatives from a list of lawyers which had been prepared by the prosecutors, who no doubt had been sure to ensure that only freemasons, or lawyers who would not put up too much of a fight or ask too many awkward questions, or lawyers who were unfamiliar with the mainly American and English judicial techniques and procedures which were being employed by the prosecutors, were included on that list.

In effect, any lawyer who might possibly be aware of what the freemasons were up to, and who would be prepared to oppose and expose their activities, was excluded from that list of eligible defence lawyers, and accordingly prevented from representing the accused. Furthermore, although the Charter granted the accused the right of conducting their own defence if they so wished, in practice they were in fact deterred and prevented from exercising that right. This meant not only that they were

prevented from saying more than was minimally necessary during the course of the proceedings, but also that they were represented by tame lawyers, since any lawyer worth his or her salt would have objected far more strongly about the manner in which, and the basis on which, the proceedings were being conducted than the defence lawyers who were chosen to represent the accused actually did.

The other advantage of basing the prosecution case on documentary evidence was this: At the end of the war the American and English command had set up special documentation centres, and as their forces advanced into Germany, they collected and transported all the official documents which they found to these centres. Literally hundreds of tons of documents were collected. The highly trained personnel at these centres subsequently sifted through the considerable tonnage of these documents and retained all those which helped to support the prosecution case. Those sections of the written word or the filmed event which did not help the prosecution case were either erased or cut and shredded when and wherever possible. Any documents or films which might establish the so-called innocence of the accused, or assist their defence lawyers in their attempts to exonerate the accused, were retained and either destroyed or at least certainly not disclosed to the defence.

As it happened, there were some documents amongst the many thousands which were made available to the Nuremberg prosecutors, which had passed unnoticed through the documentation centre screening process, and which turned out to be favourable to the defence case. As soon as this fact was appreciated, the documents in question suddenly disappeared from the safe in which all the documents which were to be adduced in evidence were kept in safe keeping.

The prosecution lawyers thus had access to and control over all the documents which they wished to adduce in evidence, whilst the defence lawyers had virtually no access to any documents at all, except the useless documents which the prosecutors allowed them to have.

The Nuremberg prosecutors could produce whatever document they wanted, whenever they wanted, without having warned the defence lawyers of their intention so to do – with the exception, that is, of the less important and less incriminating documents – and certainly without having permitted the defence lawyers to have a copy of the document in question before it was actually produced to the court. As

it was, it quite often happened that when documents were suddenly produced in this manner, there was no copy available for the defence lawyer who needed it, and if several defence lawyers each needed a copy of a certain document, it often happened that if there were copies available, they were insufficient in number so that they had to be shared.

These tactics ensured that the defence lawyers, ill-equipped as they were, were never in a position to meet the case which was being levelled at the people whom they represented. At best often all that could be mustered was a flat and empty denial of whatever was being alleged, a denial which was easily muffled and silenced by the mountains of paper ammunition which was at the disposal of the prosecution.



It is clear that many of the accused in the Nuremberg trials had been responsible either directly or indirectly for the deaths of other people during the war. If they had been charged with murder, or attempted murder, or conspiracy to commit murder, and tried in an ordinary court of law in accordance with existing legal principles and procedures, they probably would have been found guilty on at least one of those counts. However it must be remembered that the purpose of the Nuremberg trials was not merely to find the principal followers of Hitler guilty of capital offences so that they could be legally eliminated. The main purpose of the Nuremberg trials was to create a sufficiently grandiose yet illusory diversion in order to direct the general public's attention away from the activities of the freemasons, and cause them to lay the causes of the second world war fairly, or rather unfairly, and squarely at the door of the German people.



The outcome of the Nuremberg trials was a foregone conclusion. What is interesting is the extent to which the freemasons were prepared to go in order firstly, to create the illusion of a fair trial, conducted in accordance with due judicial process, secondly, to arrange the presentation of evidence in such a way that a completely false yet convincing picture of how the war was started and what the Germans did in it was made to emerge, and thirdly, to make sure that this false yet convincing picture was subsequently spread across the face of the earth and accepted by the great majority of those who either saw or heard about it.

The freemasons, like the magicians of Pharaoh, are today's masters of illusion. They mesmerise people with illusions, so as to be able to

control and manipulate them, and the Nuremberg trials illusion was perhaps one of their greatest feats of illusion, masking a masterly exercise in manipulation control, thanks to the combined efforts of the medical and legal experts, and ensuring not only that the important followers of Hitler were both utterly discredited and eliminated in the process, but also that the general public of the world were taken in by that illusion.

The publicity which this exercise in mass manipulation received and needed was of course provided by the freemasonic controlled media systems, which were in a position to provide the appropriate pictures and excerpts from speeches and loaded commentaries needed to create the desired impression of an impressive and just judicial assembly who were trying, with all the apparent detachment and impartiality in the world, a motley and inhuman group of psychopathic desperadoes, who really did not even deserve the fair trial which they appeared to be getting, in the first place.

Clearly the part played by the media systems of the kafirun was and continues to be very significant. Creating the desired picture was relatively child's play. The real challenge was to make sure that this picture subsequently found its way by one means or another into the recesses of the majority of the general public's minds. The fact that it did, and has, indicates not only the extreme efficiency of the freemasons, but also the high degree of control which they exercise over a great many people through their media systems. 'Big Brother' may not have been watching you, but he has certainly been programming and conditioning you.

In reality there was little or no difference between the people who tried the accused in the Nuremberg trials and the accused who were tried. In reality the second kafir world war was no more or less than a power struggle between opposing pyramidal kafir power systems. Allah says in the *Qur'an* that the kafirun appear to be one body, but in fact they are divided against each other. The Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, said that kufr is one system. Thus in effect, the second kafir world war was one unified event involving one system, that is the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, involved in destroying itself. Allah says in the *Qur'an* that a people who do not follow the way of the Prophets are self-destroyed, that is, they destroy themselves and each other.

The success of the Nuremberg trials, as far as the freemasons were

and are concerned, can be measured by the fact that if you say to anyone in the street today – that is anyone who has been exposed to the usual educational and media conditioning process – the one word ‘Hitler’, or ‘Nazi’, or ‘Nuremberg’, then the magical figure and phrase of ‘six million’ Jews murdered in the concentration camps will probably spring to his or her lips, or at least flash across his or her mind – even though it was never actually established during the Nuremberg trials, or subsequently, that anything like that number of Jews were killed in this way, and by the methods purported to have been used by those who controlled the concentration camps.

When the figure of six million was being decided on by the freemasons who were most concerned with publicity, Chaim Weizmann, who was one of the public figurehead founders of the Zionist movement, is reputed to have supported the six million mark, by stating that people would not believe a little lie, but they would believe a big one. As Douglas Reed pointed out in his book *The Controversy of Zion*:

In six years of war the Germans, Japanese and Italians, using every lethal means, killed 824,928 British, British Commonwealth and American fighting-men, merchant sailors and civilians. Assuming that the Germans killed, say, half of these in Europe, they killed (according to this assertion) fifteen times as many Jews there. To do that, they would have needed such quantities of men, weapons, transports, guards and materials as would have enabled them to win the war many times over.

Further, it should be remembered that the phrase, ‘concentration camp’, is now a very emotionally loaded term, due to the way in which it has been used by the media. Concentration camps were basically prisoner of war camps. Prisoner of war camps were first popularised by the British as they established the British Empire and then tried to keep it, especially during the Boer War in South Africa – but in fact there have always been prisoner of war camps as long as there have been wars in which people have been taken prisoner in large numbers, and they have always been unpleasant places in which to be – especially when run by Communists.

The reality of the second kafir world war is that the actions of nearly all the people concerned in it, on both sides, at some time or other

came within the ambit of one or other of the crimes as defined by the sweeping terms of the Nuremberg Charter, which in effect, made it a crime to plan a war and fight it in the way that kafir wars are usually planned and fought.

Kafir wars are fought indiscriminately, whereas jihad, that is a fight in the way of Allah by those who trust in Allah, is fought on the basis that you may only fight in self-defence; and that you may not kill anyone who says the shahada – that is, anyone who affirms that there is no god only Allah and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah; and that you must not kill in anger, since that will take you to the Fire; and that you may not pillage and rape if Allah gives you victory; and finally, that if you die in the jihad, then you will die directly witnessing Allah and go straight to the Garden.

The kafir fights in complete ignorance of what lies on the other side of death, and is therefore careless about how and whom he or she kills, and what he or she does. The mumin fights with intense awareness of what lies on the other side of death, fearful in the knowledge that fighting for the wrong reason, or killing the wrong person, can result in him or her ending up in the Fire – and accordingly the mumin is very careful about whom he or she kills in times of war and in what he or she does.

In an age where modern technology has all but perfected the technique of killing people more swiftly and efficiently than ever before, it is possible to become quite blasé about the unjustified taking of human life. Whoever has an intellect – and whatever ‘side’ they may be on – would be well advised to remember what Allah decreed for the Tribe of Israel:

**We decreed for the Tribe of Israel that whoever kills a human being for other than manslaughter or corruption in the earth, it shall be as if he had killed all mankind; and whoever saves the life of someone, it shall be as if he had saved the life of all mankind. (*Qur’an: Surat’al-Ma’idah – 5.32*)**

When viewed from this perspective, it is clear that numbers are not significant. Whether the number is 600,000, or 60,000, or 60, or even just 1, it is equally awful and unlawful to kill anyone ‘without just cause’ – as defined by God. Allah also says in the *Qur’an*:

**And whoever kills a believer of set purpose, then his reward is Hell, for ever there, and the wrath of Allah is on him and He has cursed him and has prepared for him an awful punishment. (Qur'an: Surat'an-Nisa – 4.93)**

It is interesting to note that the definitions of the major crimes embodied in the Nuremberg Charter did not take the next world into consideration at all. If one views the actions of both sides from the limited perspective of the terms of the Charter then everyone who fought in the war was guilty of those crimes – and especially the freemasons who not only masterminded the war but also drew up the Charter. The victors however were in a position to turn a blind eye to this fact, whilst the vanquished were prevented from voicing it publicly. As Justice Holmes once observed, 'History is what the people who won say it is.'



It is interesting to note that in the relatively minor wars which the freemasons have arranged since the end of the second world war, the actions of notably the American and English forces – which have borne an evident and marked resemblance to those of the German forces in the last war – have not been punished at the hands of military tribunals, but rather praised as being the valiant attempts of those who were prepared to sacrifice their lives for their country or 'democracy' or control over oil-fields, in the name of peace, freedom and justice, in the war against 'the communists', or 'the terrorists', or 'the fanatics', or 'the extremists', or whomever else the freemasonic controlled media has depicted as being 'the enemy'.

Basically the people who control the current media systems can depict whoever they want as being 'the enemy'. This is done by using highly emotive vocabulary to describe 'them' – such as the words 'communists', 'terrorists', 'fanatics', 'extremists' and more recently 'fundamentalists', whose very mention triggers an immediate emotional response in any listener who has been adequately conditioned by the educational and media systems. This emotional response takes the form of an automatic feeling of rejection and condemnation of whoever has been described by these key kafir definitions, so that the person in whom the response arises is totally incapable of seeing who the people so described really are, or of examining what they are really saying.

Furthermore, it is impossible for anyone who relies on the kafir

media version of events ever to find out what the truth of the matter really is, since all that he or she has to go on is what he or she is presented with, and this – as we have seen from the examples of Lord Northcliffe and Ezra Pound and the Nuremberg trials – is often very far from the truth. The people who control the media can basically create any illusion they wish, and as long as the validity of their techniques remains unchallenged, get away with it. Indeed it is now possible, using current advanced computer graphics software, to create virtually any image or picture that might be useful. Any person, for example, can be inserted into or removed from a ‘photograph’ with ease, thereby providing ‘evidence’ of any false alibi or accusation that might be needed.

In the past, the term ‘fanatic’ was usually reserved for Muslims; the term ‘communist’ was usually reserved for any non-Muslims who wished to take over control of any particular government from its current masters; and the term ‘terrorist’ was usually reserved for the people in either of these two groups who were prepared to act rather than just talk. In recent years, however – in fact ever since European communism was officially discarded in favour of universal ‘democracy’, and the imaginary iron curtain dismantled – the word ‘Communist’ has ceased to be a key term. Instead, ‘the Muslims’ have been substituted by the media as the new threat to democracy, peace and the new world order.

By combining one or more of the other key terms with either the word ‘Muslim’, or the word ‘Islamic’, the way of Islam has been increasingly and greatly discredited and misrepresented in the kafir media system, and ‘the Muslims’ have increasingly been presented to the general public as the new backward public enemy, ever ready to kill indiscriminately and to blindly die for their cause. If any Muslims are attacked and fight back in self-defence, the media defines this as ‘terrorism’. If anyone attacks the Muslims this is defined as ‘retaliation’. The fact that the vast majority of Muslims in the world today are not even fighting anyone is of course never mentioned. The current media equation is: Terrorism = fanatical paranoid Muslim fundamentalists = Islam = all Muslims.

As we have already seen, the difference between the Muslims and what the kafir calls the capitalists, is the same as the difference between the Muslims and what the kafir calls the communists. The Muslims accept Allah and His Messengers, whilst both the capitalists and the communists reject Allah and his Messengers.



In fact during the last decade of the twentieth century, the world has witnessed the almost overnight transformation of the communists into capitalists. Birds of a feather flock together.

Even when capitalism and communism were presented by the media as being 'at war' with each other – which, at the time of writing this, is still the case with Cuban and Chinese 'communism', although no doubt 'democracy' will soon miraculously prevail in these two cases as well – in reality there was never any real difference between the capitalists and the communists. Capitalism and Communism are the same. Their roots are the same. The capitalists and the communists are kafirun. They appear to be divided against each other, but they are the same body. Kufr is one system.

The capitalists and the communists both base their societies on identical interlinking pyramidal systems structures. They share the same kafir view of existence. They fight for the same things and worship the same idols. Their leaders follow the same behavioural life pattern. They both use kafir ideologies, and although they employ a different vocabulary, that is a different term of reference to describe their actions and what they are doing, they in fact both affirm and sustain the producer consumer process, which can only operate as it does today if the many are enslaved by that process for the benefit of the few.

Although they used to pretend to be at war with each other, and to be separated by their imaginary iron or bamboo curtains, the capitalists and the communists in fact always used to trade with each other and to sustain each other's economies. This is even more the case now, as the new global free market economy, financed by the international banking and stock market systems, continues to expand and be exploited as the true nature of the emerging brave new world order becomes ever more apparent.

And as in the past, so today, the capitalists and the communists both use exactly the same methods and manipulation techniques to condition their people to accept the goals of the consumer producer process, and to be content with its apparent rewards, despite and in spite of the reality of the human situation, which is that only the remembrance of Allah makes the heart peaceful.

As we have already seen, this conditioning is only possible where the educational and media institutions and systems are in the control of the few, the kafir ruling elite, who create the illusion not only that their

legal system is what they call just, not only that their medical system is what they call advanced, not only that their educational system provides what they call knowledge, but also that the consumer producer process is what man was created for, and that there is no viable alternative way of life to it.

Indeed it is one of the favourite arguments of the kafir politician to say, whenever the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, is criticised, that it may not be perfect but at least it is better than anarchy. The word 'anarchy' is another key emotional term in the kafir media system vocabulary. The emotional response which it is desired to evoke in the listener is a vision of absolute chaos, which with any luck will reach apocalyptic proportions if the listener has a good imagination backed up by the typical kafir's fear of creation and poverty, a fear which always exists in an ignorant person who does not know how existence works. This apparent lack of choice, which typifies the 'either you accept society as it is or else there will be anarchy' approach to life, is another example of the persuasive power which the media system exercises over the people whom it helps to condition.

Indeed it is one of the characteristics of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, that as long as a person accepts his or her conditioning and the prevailing kafir definitions of the nature of existence, it is impossible to envisage or imagine any other alternative to that system, so strong is the influence of that conditioning. This is one of the reasons why any drug which is capable of lifting a person's consciousness free of that conditioning, and altering that perception of existence, is usually defined as being illegal by most kafir legal systems. The only drugs which are permitted in a kafir state are those which will mildly stimulate or mildly tranquillise.

This does not mean that drugs are necessary in order to alter the consciousness. None of the Messengers of Allah, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on all of them, ever used or advocated the use of drugs as a means to self-knowledge. The way of the Prophet Muhammad wakes you up to the true nature of existence in a way which nothing else can, rendering all drugs obsolete.

It is only those who have seen the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, for what it is, and who have rejected it, who are able to begin to appreciate the only viable alternative to that system, which is Islam. The only way to really appreciate what the way of Islam is, is to follow

that way, for to read about the journey, or to examine the map, is not the same as actually making the journey itself. Life is a journey, but you have to be wide awake to appreciate it. Islam is the science of waking up.

Whoever sets out on this journey progressively tastes the deep sanity which springs from the knowledge of how existence works, and the peace and certainty which this knowledge brings.

Allah says in the *Qur'an*, 'I did not create man and jinn except to worship Me.' To embody the guidance contained in the *Qur'an*, as exemplified by the Prophet Muhammad and the first Muslim community of Madina al-Munawarra, is to worship Allah in every moment. Many people in the High Tec North who have become dis-encharmed with the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system – no matter how high up in one of its hierarchical sub-systems they may be or may have been – are beginning to find out the truth of these words for themselves. Many people in the Poor South who were beguiled by the surface attractions of the illusory rewards of the producer consumer system, which had been successfully introduced into their countries by the colonisers, are now beginning to rediscover the living life transaction of Islam for themselves.

The resurgence of Islam in these times, which was predicted by the Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace – and which is already very much in evidence despite the attempts of the kafir media systems to disguise and discredit it – cannot be compared to the rise of Hitler's movement, and to his attempts to replace one kafir power structure by another kafir power structure. Hitler and his followers were part of the phenomenon of Dajjal as a world wide social and cultural phenomenon and Dajjal as an unseen force. The present resurgence of Islam is the sign that the present dominant kafir culture is about to be replaced and eclipsed by another way of life, which is its complete antithesis and entirely different to it, that is the Prophetic way of life.

It follows that all the kafir governments which at the time of writing this control nearly all of the Muslim countries in the name of Islam, but in accordance with kafir modes of manipulation control, will inevitably be replaced by real Muslims who govern in accordance with what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah*. These so-called 'islamic' governments are part of the Dajjal system. The people who control them are identified in the *Hadith* as being people whose hearts are devoid of the *Qur'an*,

because it cannot descend beyond their throats. Their appearance on the face of the earth is one of the signs of the approach of the end of the world. The Prophet Muhammad said that they would go out of Islam faster than an arrow leaves the bow and passes through its target, and that they would be the worst people on the face of the earth.

The destination of the munafiqun, that is the people who say that they are muslims when in reality they are not, is the deepest part of the Fire.



The present resurgence of Islam is the necessary preliminary phase prior to the appearance of the Mahdi, just as the present ascendance in the influence of the kafir system that is the Dajjal system, throughout the world, is the necessary preliminary phase prior to the appearance of Dajjal the individual.



The examples provided by the treatment of Lord Northcliffe, Ezra Pound and the Nuremberg so-called war criminals – and there are many others – are dramatic ones. They demonstrate the extreme lengths to which the people who control the kafir system that is the Dajjal system are prepared to go in order to ensure the continued survival of that system and their control over it. They are by no means the only examples. You only have to observe what is going on around you, to recognise how the Dajjal system operates and is organised. The machinations of this system in all its various activities in all spheres of life, and the actions of its controlling elite, are everywhere in evidence for whoever looks closely, no matter how hard and cunningly that elite attempts to hide and disguise those activities and actions.

Their actions and activities are always manifest, but it is the meaning of these actions and activities which is so often obscured by the kafir educational and media smoke screen and conditioning techniques. By presenting a fragmented view of existence these systems prevent people from adding the bits and pieces together and from arriving at an overall understanding of what is going on. The people who split existence – or rather who create that illusion, since in Reality existence cannot be split because there is only Allah – are described in the *Qur'an* as the *fasiqun*, meaning 'those who divide'.

Division characterises the actions and activities of the kafirun, and division is the inevitable result of the way in which the kafir system,

that is the Dajjal system, operates. This is why cancer is a physiological illness of this age. This is why schizophrenia and autism are psychological illnesses of this age. This is why nationalism and modern tribal warfare are social illnesses of this age. Whether within the individual, or in the family group, or in kafir society as a whole, we see division, the result of the way of life of the fasiqun, that is the people who operate and uphold the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, by dividing and ruling.

Clearly there are many people who suffer from the manner in which the Dajjal system operates and who are enslaved by it, but who do not realise what the cause of that suffering is nor realise the nature of the prison they are in. As a result of their conditioning they continue to play an active and often important part in the running of the very system which unbeknown to them is the cause of their pain and the invisible walls of their prison. Drinking alcohol or taking drugs is no cure, rather these 'remedies' are part of the disease. It is the actual existential pattern of behaviour, together with the mental outlook that goes with it, which is the disease, simply because they are not in harmony with the true nature of existence, and accordingly that imbalance manifests in illness whether physiological, psychological, social or political.

Inevitably the most desperate lash out blindly in anger, causing damage and even death. As the saying goes, violence is the last resort of the incompetent, and – since it has become customary for the kafir media to equate such violence with terrorism, and to equate such terrorism with Islam – it must be emphasised that the Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, forbade the killing of women and children and the elderly in times of war, as well as the wanton destruction of property. Killing defenceless people and destroying property at random may be the hallmark of extreme frustration, or the sign of a very hard heart, but it has nothing to do with the teachings of Islam.

If Muslims are attacked and forced to defend themselves, then they are obliged to fight with honour and within the limits of behaviour which were clearly demonstrated by the Prophet Muhammad and his companions, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him and them.

It is said that sayyedina 'Ali, may Allah be pleased with him, sometimes refrained from killing his opponents on the battlefield because he could see with his inner sight that their children were going to be Muslims. On one occasion, when he was about to deliver the coup

de grâce, his opponent spat defiantly in his face and made him angry, whereupon 'Ali let him go. When his opponent asked him why he had done this, he replied that if he had killed him in anger, it would have taken him to the Fire. His opponent was so impressed that he accepted Islam and became a Muslim.

The influence and overall control of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, are so widespread and insidiously present in all aspects of people's lives today, that the majority of people are unaware of what confronts them. The Dajjal system is as much a part of their lives as the air around them, which they breathe and depend on without knowing it. The freemasonic control which is exercised over them is so much a part of their every day lives, it is so close up to them, that they do not see it, just as they do not see that their being is from Allah, and that they are entirely dependant on Allah for their every heart beat. The truth of things is a blur in the corner of their eye. They have been born into the Dajjal system, and they have been brought up to accept that this is the way life is. They have been educated in the Dajjal system's ways and they have continually been misled by the media to affirm it, even after their formal education has been completed.

Even when someone is aware that all is not well in the state of kufr, he or she is often not able to say why or what. A person may glimpse an instance of blatant kafir media manipulation, or witness a particular example of the injustice of the kafir legal system at work, or admit deep down that he or she has learnt nothing of real value in the official curriculum at school or university – and yet be unable to form a clear picture of the system as a whole, or to pull free from the influence of the producer consumer process in which he or she is trapped.

Everyone is faced with the basic realities of life. Those simple bare necessities, such as food, shelter and clothing, have to be acquired and the bills have to be paid – which for most people means work and play from day to day – and once a man and a woman meet and start a family, then everyday life can easily become too filled and busy to have time to find out what it is all about.

In reality every atom is in its place and everything which appears to take place in existence is a part of one unified event. In Reality that one unified event does not exist. There is only Allah. Allah is the Inwardly Hidden and the Outwardly Manifest. Allah is the First before time began and the Last after time ceased. Wherever you look there is the

face of Allah. Everything is passing away except the face of Allah. Surely we come from Allah and to Allah we surely return.

The difference between the kafir way of life and the muslim way of life is that the kafir way of life prevents you from seeing this, whilst the muslim way of life not only opens this knowledge up to you, but also enables you to live with it at peace and in tranquillity. The kafir thinks that he or she exists, and is troubled, whilst the mumin knows that Allah exists, and is at peace.

The needs and demands of everyday life in a kafir society, whether actual or merely media created – which because of the complex nature of the system are themselves both complex and profuse – make it difficult for most people to stop and reflect, let alone to make the decision as a result of that reflection to abandon the kafir way of life, to de-programme and de-condition, and to find out who they really are and what the true nature of existence really is.

Indeed the influence of the kafir system that is the Dajjal system is often so all pervasive and persuasive that anyone enslaved by it usually believes that the kafir way of life is the only viable way of life there is, is not aware that he or she has been programmed and conditioned, and thinks that his or her kafir view of existence is clear and unclouded. In other words, like goldfish born in captivity, some people do not even realise that they are trapped.

Even if, despite all this, the point of departure is reached, and the decision to really find out what it is all about is made, it is still often difficult to act on this inward intention existentially without coming up against the preventative and deterrent provisions of the kafir legal system, which have been designed to prevent people straying too far from the limits of what the kafir system that is the Dajjal system has defined as 'normal' and 'legal'. Furthermore, there are often strong social pressures from relations and friends who may be relatively content with the system as it is, and who will be correspondingly appalled at your decision to leave it, and therefore be prepared to do all that they can, whether by means of financial inducement, emotional blackmail or even physical force, to dissuade you from acting on your decision.

Anyone who chooses a teacher or follows a leader and joins a group or community of like-minded people will almost inevitably be regarded as having been brainwashed into joining a cult (if they are Christians) or a sect (if they are Muslims). Unfortunately this is in fact often the case,

because – as both Jesus and Muhammad foretold, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on both of them – there are many false teachers and leaders at this point in time, even within the Muslim community, which can be very confusing for anyone who is genuinely seeking knowledge. Ultimately everyone is given the teacher they deserve.

Even more unfortunately, the genuine teachers and leaders within the Muslim community – who are rightly guided and who do have the *idhn*, that is the permission, from Allah and His Messenger, to teach – are often tarred with the same brush by the *kafirun* and the *munafiqun* working together – although for the discerning *mumin* this in itself tends to be a confirmation that a rightly-guided teacher is on the *sirat al-mustaqim* – for any teacher or leader who is on the *sirat al-mustaqim* is bound to be opposed and slandered by the *kafirun* and the *munafiqun*, as was the case with the Prophet Muhammad himself, and his close companions and followers, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him and them.

It is inevitable that the sincere *muminun* – and indeed all the Muslims as a whole – will always be hated and slandered by the *kafirun* and the *munafiqun*. The more followers any Muslim teacher or leader attracts – whether rightly-guided or not – the more that teacher or leader and his followers will usually be subjected to a vicious media campaign, in which they will be described as ‘paranoid’, ‘fanatical’, ‘fundamentalist’ and if not expressly then by implication ‘terrorist’, and finally, if they have ever criticised the barbaric treatment that has been meted out to the Palestinian Arabs during the twentieth and twenty-first centuries, they will be automatically branded not as ‘anti-Zionist’, but as ‘anti-semitic’ – and therefore by implication no different from Hitler and the Nazis – even though it is the Palestinian Arabs who are in fact ‘semitic’, and even though the majority of European and American Zionists are not descended from the Tribe of Israel, but from the Khazars of the Caucasus, and are therefore in fact ‘turkic’.

If, in spite of any *kafir* media campaign, any such teacher or leader remains popular with his followers, and if the degree of his influence continues to be regarded as a threat by the architects of the new world order, then more pressure will be brought to bear. His movements will be curtailed. He may be prevented from leaving the country in which he is resident. He may be placed under house arrest and allowed no visitors. He may be accused of some crime – usually a conspiracy of



one kind or another – and brought to trial. He may end up in prison. He may even be killed.

In such a climate it is not surprising that the genuine teachers tend to remain concealed and without much of a following, while those who are genuinely in search of real knowledge find it hard to find anyone whom they feel they can really trust. By the grace of Allah, however, the heart finds the heart.

The sign of a true teacher is that he calls people to worship Allah and to the way of Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace. The sign of a false teacher is that he calls people to himself. Do not accompany the one whose state does not change you, and whose speech does not guide you to Allah. Whoever seeks a teacher will find one in accordance with his or her own sincerity and strength of resolution.

For those who, despite all the contrary forces – which, in effect, are a test of any seeker's sincerity and strength of resolution – still feel impelled to seek real knowledge and the balanced way of life which must necessarily accompany that search, many subsequently find that they are only prepared to go so far, either because they do not want all that there is to be wanted, or because their inherent social conditioning is just too strongly implanted to overcome, or else because the usually irrational fear of being punished, silenced or eliminated by the system acts as a deterrent, and induces the would-be searcher back into playing the producer consumer game. Only those who fear Allah alone are free from fear of other than Allah, and accordingly are free from fear of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, and its varied means of norm enforcement.

The people who only fear Allah alone are those who follow the way of the Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace. Clearly those people who have not yet encountered the way of Islam, although they may have a misconceived idea of what it is, as a result of their educational and media programming, and who are at present caught up in the consumer producer process, will have fear of the powers that appear to be in the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, even though they have already inwardly rejected that system.

Furthermore, the existential panic and anxiety about the possibility of not having adequate provision and shelter – which inevitably arise in the heart of whoever does not know how existence works – reinforce fear of the system, and act as an added incentive to continue to act in

accordance with the dictates of the consumer producer process, which promises to relieve that panic and anxiety by coming up with the goods. The deal is that if you play the consumer producer game, then you will acquire the money to buy the goods which you have been conditioned to want. In fact this is a lie, since, as we have already noted, one of the ways of keeping people working in the producer consumer process is to only pay them a sum which will not meet all their needs, so that firstly, they have to continue to work to live, and secondly, they have to continue to work to pay off the debts swelled by interest which they have been encouraged to incur by the various kafir finance systems. The nature of the kafir system that is the Dajjal system is such that only the controlling elite are in a position to fully enjoy the rewards of the labours of all the others. Indeed it has to be this way, since there simply are not enough luxury items in existence for everyone in a kafir society to be able to enjoy them all.

Even the people who receive more than their fair share of the myriad goods which today's consumer producer system manufactures do not find that their existential panic and anxiety have been quelled, and accordingly they often become lost in the endless search for the latest model and the ultimate thing, neither of which really exist. It is like drinking sea-water – the more they drink, the thirstier they become. Only those who are destined to find out stop, and reflect.

The fact that mere consumption is not the answer to anxiety about provision is true for two main reasons. Firstly, this anxiety is the result of ignorance of how existence works, and accordingly will only begin to disappear when that ignorance is replaced by knowledge. Secondly, the restlessness which every man and woman feels deep in their heart is no less than the longing for knowledge of Allah, and accordingly that longing and that restlessness can only be appeased by knowledge of Allah. Real knowledge of Allah only comes with remembrance of Allah, and accordingly it is only in the remembrance of Allah that the heart finds rest. It is only possible to remember Allah if you follow the way of the Messengers who have been sent by Allah during the various ages of mankind, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on all of them. The Messenger who was sent by Allah for the present age is the Prophet Muhammad, and accordingly it is only by following his way that fear of existence and existential panic and anxiety about provision and shelter will disappear. The choice is yours, right now.

Although the choice is clear, it is not always an easy one to make for whoever has been conditioned by the Dajjal system, even if the person in question is in the process of rejecting that conditioning. The conditioning provided by the Dajjal system is insidiously strong. It has an addictive quality about it. It creates in the mind of the individual the impression that the only way to dispel fear and anxiety is by taking the remedies offered by the system, that is to work and to play when you are well, and to do what the doctor tells you when you are ill, and above all not to try and change the status quo either inwardly or outwardly.

In effect, whoever has been conditioned by the Dajjal system is never really permitted to grow up, even though he or she is capable of having children and holding down an office job and driving a car. Whoever has been conditioned by the Dajjal system is kept in awe of that system, in the same way that a young child is not only in awe of the parents but also thinks that they are the best parents in the world and that they know everything. Whoever is not involved in seeking knowledge of Allah is a child, for it is only when you reach a certain age that you begin to wish to know the nature of existence. Some people never emotionally or intellectually reach that age. Some people simply do not have an intellect, which in the *Qur'an* is called *aql*, nor do they have what in the *Qur'an* is called *lubb*, meaning 'a core', that is access to the innermost secret of their being.

There is no blame in this. Everyone can only be who they are. Allah has made some people *kafir* and some people *mumin*. Allah has made some people ignorant and some people knowledgeable. Allah has made some people blind and some people seeing. They are not the same, but there is no blame. The mercy of Allah covers the whole of creation and pervades it in every respect. The *kafir* does not see this whilst the *mumin* does.

Clearly there are those who are utterly blind, and there are those who are utterly seeing, and there are those who are somewhere in between blindness and sight. A distinction must therefore be drawn between the one who is quite content with the Dajjal system such as it is for what it is worth, and the one who cannot bear it and is only interested in following the way of Muhammad in all its rich simplicity, and the one who does not particularly like the Dajjal system but who has not yet encountered the way of Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace.

Allah says in the *Qur'an* that people either follow the way of the Prophets or they follow the way of their fathers. Clearly there are a great many people in the world today who have not had access to the living and vibrant life transaction of the Prophet Muhammad, as it was lived by him and the first Muslim community of Madina al-Munawarra – and who accordingly have been following the way of their fathers, no matter how ignorant or cultured that way might be, simply because they do not know any better or any other way. These people cannot really be described as being kafir – indeed many of them are from or originate from what have been traditionally regarded as 'the Muslim countries', but have not in fact been brought up as Muslims – since a kafir is one who has actually been presented with a clear exposition of what Islam is and what Allah requires of him or her, and who has then openly rejected what he or she has heard, and subsequently attempted to shut out all mention or manifestation of the way of Islam.

It also often happens that a person, because the self is poisoned with ignorance, at first rejects the way of Islam, because to a sick person what is sweet often tastes bitter and what is bitter often tastes sweet, but then in the ripeness of time he or she accepts the way of Islam. Allah says in the *Qur'an* that it is Allah who expands the heart to accept Islam, and Allah does as He wishes.

It follows that there are a great many people in the kafir states of the world who, although they are at present trapped by the system and caught up in the daily whirl of the consumer producer process, will, when Allah wishes it, and once they have encountered real Muslims and experienced what Islam really is and means, themselves become muslim.

Of course there will also be those who utterly reject the way of Islam. Allah says of these people in the *Qur'an* that their ears and eyes and hearts are veiled, so that they cannot hear what a Muslim says or see what a Muslim does with any true understanding. Whether you talk to them or not, it is the same. They are blind, deaf and dumb, even though they appear to see, and hear, and speak.

Allah guides whom He wishes, and Allah leads astray whom He wishes. Allah sends some to the Garden and He does not care, and Allah sends some to the Fire and He does not care. Allah has power over everything. There is no strength and no power except from Allah.

The present resurgence of Islam is a clear indication from Allah

that the polarisation of the people of iman and the people of kufr on a world scale is under way. This polarisation is a necessary preliminary phase before their respective leaders, the Mahdi for the muminin, and Dajjal the individual for the kafirin, can appear – and before the two opposites meet as they inevitably must, since anyone who is kafir cannot help but attack anyone who is muslim, and once the Muslims are attacked, Allah has ordered them to fight back in self-defence and to kill their aggressors, that is anyone who attacks them and then refuses either to say the shahada – that is, to witness that there is no god only Allah and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah, may Allah bless him and grant him peace – or to surrender by accepting Muslim governance and paying the jizya tax.



One way of measuring the level of ignorance in a kafir society, and the corresponding fear of existence and anxiety about provision and shelter which arise out of that ignorance, which is the hallmark of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, is to examine the extent to which people insure themselves and their goods against possible disaster and misfortune, even when they are not required to do so by kafir law.

The kafir insurance system is totally unnecessary for the people who know how existence works, and who follow the Prophetic life pattern – which is its own insurance.

Since everyone meets the consequences of their actions both in this life and the next, it follows that the one who is unaware of what action is fruitful and what action is unfruitful often brings misfortune upon him or her self, solely because of the way in which he or she behaves. Since the kafir does not know this, he or she seeks to avoid the effects of such misfortune by insuring against it before it happens – rather than by abandoning the course of action which is the real cause of the misfortune.

The way of Muhammad is the science of fruitful action. In the *Qur'an* fruitful action is called halal, whilst unfruitful action is called haram. Although these words are sometimes translated respectively as meaning 'what is permitted' and 'what is forbidden', their real meaning is to be found in the consequences of the actions which they describe. If this perspective is lost, it often happens that the conceptual framework, which the kafir calls 'morality', begins to develop. This moral attitude, which is regarded as the mark of being civilised by whoever has it, in fact

tends to make people forget where they are going. It works like this:

To begin with there is the knowledge that what is halal is fruitful in this world and leads to the Garden in the next world, whilst what is haram is unfruitful in this world and leads to the Fire in the next world. This applies even to the food which you eat, because if you eat halal food your actions will tend to be halal, and if you eat haram food your actions will tend to be haram. Drinking wine or eating pork, for example, may not in themselves appear to be serious wrong actions, but the actions which may arise out of these actions, such as violence or adultery, for example, often are. They lead not only to an imbalance in the body but also to an imbalance in actions, an imbalance which causes distress in this world and is experienced as the Fire in the next world. In the same way doing what is halal leads to balanced action which results in harmony in this world and is experienced as the Garden in the next world.

This perspective begins to be lost when it is said that halal means 'permitted' and haram means 'forbidden', because it then often happens that some people begin to forget exactly why an action is permitted or forbidden. The original perspective is further clouded when a value judgement is placed on what is permitted and what is forbidden, that is, when what is described as halal is called 'good', and when what is described as haram is called 'bad', again because it becomes easier to forget why it is 'good' or why it is 'bad'.

If the overall perspective of the next world is lost, then people forget why something is really good or really bad. Instead they begin to form fixed ideas of what is good and what is bad. Then, if they forget that Allah looks at the intention behind the action and not the action itself, they begin to be less critical of their own actions, since they no longer fear the Fire or hope for the Garden, and instead become more critical of other people's actions. They begin to judge the outward actions of others – even though unaware of what the inward intention behind those actions might be – in accordance with their own ideas of what is good and what is bad.

Once people forget about the Fire and the Garden, and indeed cease to know that the next world exists, they then begin to call what appears to be expedient 'good' and what appears not to be expedient 'bad'. In effect, their idea of what is good and what is bad is no longer connected to the true realities of life, but rather is attached to whatever they give reality.

Once this stage has been reached, you have what the kafir calls 'morality', that is, a complex web of do's and don't's which are given spurious validity by emotional value judgements, which often have no relation to the true nature of existence, which like kafir law are always subject to change and re-evaluation, and which accordingly tend to cause whoever has this 'moral' attitude to forget where he or she is going – that is, to Allah, via the Fire or via the Garden.

Anyone who becomes aware of the hypocrisy which inevitably arises out of kafir 'morality' usually then rejects it. Once they have rejected it, they have no frame of reference to use when dealing with situations which require judgement, other than their own personal preferences and prejudices, together with whatever they have already learned from their own experience – that is, they have a limited knowledge of what is halal and what is haram, which they have arrived at by trial and error, and the full significance of which they do not realise, because they do not link this limited knowledge of what is halal and what is haram to what will be happening in the next world.

They then have a choice, which is either to do what they want, seeking pleasure and avoiding pain, or else to set out on a journey to discover the full science of what is halal and what is haram by following the way of Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him. If they make the first choice, they are at the mercy of their own desires and the illusory goals which the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, promises them. If they make the second choice, then they will arrive at the knowledge of what is halal and what is haram and they will know why something is halal or haram. If they follow the way of Muhammad, avoiding what is haram and doing what is halal, then they will arrive at an inwardly peaceful and outwardly balanced state of being, in which the very idea of kafir insurance will be patently ridiculous. The one who does not follow the way of Muhammad, on the other hand, and who subscribes to the producer consumer process, will inevitably think that insurance is a 'good' idea, and waste as much money as he or she can afford on it.

People are encouraged to insure against every possible misfortune by the kafir insurance companies simply because the more people insure, the greater the profit will be for the company. A kafir insurance company cannot be described as a benevolent institution. It exists to make money out of other people's fears and anxieties. Of course it appears to be worthwhile when one of the events which have been

insured against actually takes place and the person who took out the insurance eventually collects the money, but as we have already noted, there are more human ways of dealing with loss and misfortune, which in the real muslim community take the form of voluntary giving out, without your having had to pay a premium as a condition precedent, either by individuals in the community who have been given more than they need by Allah, or else from the bayt al-mal, that is the community's central fund into which all the minimal taxes required by the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah* are paid, for the purposes of redistribution amongst those in need.

A brief historical study of Muslim communities in the past clearly shows that whenever their people held to what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah*, and only paid the taxes which Allah had told them to pay, and immediately redistributed those taxes once they had been collected in accordance with what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah*, then those communities prospered. As soon as the people began to abandon what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah*, they were given leaders over them who likewise ignored the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah*. The Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, said that every people have the leaders that they deserve. As soon as these leaders began to gather extra taxes, and to keep the proceeds either for themselves or out of anxiety, instead of redistributing them in accordance with what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah*, then the communities became divided against each other, ceased to prosper, and were eventually destroyed – just as Allah has promised in the *Qur'an*, that every people who reject Prophetic guidance will be destroyed.

When the companion of the Prophet who was called 'Umar became khalif, may Allah be pleased with him, he requested that he be told immediately the moment he strayed outside what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah*, so fearful was he of Allah and the Last Day. He was only too aware that the life transaction of Islam is its own insurance. A person once came to him and asked him to do the rain prayer, since there was a bad drought at the time. Sayyedina 'Umar, may Allah be pleased with him, replied that the reason for the drought was the fact that too many of the people in the community had become lax in following what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah*. In effect, the outward drought was a reflection of the inward drought of lack of trust in Allah. When that trust was renewed, then the rain which is the mercy of Allah, came.



The Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, said that if anyone were to have been a Prophet after him, then it would have been sayyedina ‘Umar, may Allah be pleased with him.

The fact that many of the so-called muslim but actually kafir governments – which are, at the time of writing this, still in control of the Muslim lands because they are being supported by the colonisers who helped to install them there in the first place – collect taxes in addition to what is prescribed by Allah in the *Qur’an* and the *Sunnah*, and then refuse to redistribute them, is not only one of the reasons for the lack of prosperity in these countries, but is also a clear sign of the extent of the influence of the world-wide kafir system, that is the Dajjal system.

Indeed it is a well known fact that the oil revenue of the Muslim countries is being used by the people who control it not so much for the benefit of the Muslims, but rather to support the kafir producer consumer system of both the west and the east, of both the High Tec North and the Poor South. This revenue, or at least a large proportion of it, is either invested in large kafir corporations or else it is deposited in kafir financial institutions where it collects compound interest and is used to provide compound interest-bearing loans to the poorer Muslim countries, thereby increasing their national debts still further. Since these corporations and financial institutions are controlled by the freemasonic elite of the kafir system that is the Dajjal system, it follows that they are using the wealth of the Muslims to destroy the Muslims, for one of the principal aims of the freemasons is to destroy the Muslims, in order to fully achieve world-wide control through their business and finance systems, that is by establishing the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, world wide – the new world order.

The Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, said that every people has its trial, and that the trial of the Muslims would be wealth. He also said that the downfall of the Arabs would be ‘black gold’ – a term which in the ‘modern’ world has only relatively recently been coined to describe oil. This much is clear from what has already happened not only to the rulers of Saudi Arabia, who in the name of Islam are busy establishing a police state, based largely on the kafir models of the west, but also to all the Arab states in the Middle East which as a result of the recent Gulf War – instigated principally in order to secure the oil-fields for the benefit of the High-Tec North – have all been considerably destabilised and virtually bankrupted.

The Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, made it clear that the leader of a Muslim community should not be chosen as leader simply because his father was leader before him. It is not the *Sunnah* to have 'royal' families. If this was the *Sunnah*, then clearly the royal family of the Muslims would have been the family of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him and them, and accordingly virtually all of the Muslim rulers for the last fourteen hundred years would have been descended from the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, and on his family, and on his companions, and on all who follow him and them with sincerity in what they are able, until the Last Day.

A brief historical study of Muslim communities in the past shows that as soon as these communities opted for dynastic rule, they inevitably became corrupted and were destroyed. It is absolutely clear that the leader of a Muslim community should be recognised as such on the basis that his fear and knowledge of Allah are great, and that of all the people in the community he has the best understanding of what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah*, simply because he most embodies what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah*.

The corruption in the Muslim lands today is not surprising. It is part of the inevitable process of life. Furthermore, to simply blame the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, for that corruption is not to see the whole picture. Clearly if some of the Muslim leaders in the past had not already been prone to corruption, then the kafir colonisers would have been unable to plant the seeds of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, in the Muslim countries in the first place, nor would those seeds have been able to sprout and grow.

The truth of the matter is that everything in life is subject to birth and death and growth and decay. Even the first Muslim community of Madina al-Munawarra was subject to this cycle. The Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, foretold that the dynamic living Islam which that community enjoyed would only last in Madina for thirty or seventy years after he had died. He foretold civil war amongst the Muslims, that is, that Muslim would fight Muslim. He foretold that what had begun as a prophecy and a mercy, would become a khalifate and a mercy, would become a tyranny filled with many injustices. He also said that towards the end of time a just and merciful khalifate would once again be established by the Muslims.

And he never mentioned anything about a 'new world order' being established by the kafirun for any length of time!

It is very easy to make Islam an instrument of tyranny, simply by systematising it, and moralising it, and then inflicting that system and that morality, neither of which have anything to do with the life transaction brought by the Prophet Muhammad, on other people who have no desire to be regulated by such a system and such a morality. Many of those who are alive today have seen and experienced this happening.

The Prophet Muhammad also foretold that not all of his community would go astray. He said that towards the end of the world the Muslims would be divided into seventy three different groups, and only one of those groups would have the living life transaction of Islam which he had originally brought. There can be no doubt that this one group, which has access to the living life transaction of Islam in all its rich simplicity, is comprised of the awliya of Allah – that is the friends of Allah, the people whom Allah loves and who love Allah – along with all those who recognise and follow them.

The awliya of Allah are the ones who have preserved the living life transaction of Islam by the grace and guidance of Allah, in every time and age. They are recognised by the fact that people are drawn to them because of their wisdom and serenity, in the same way that people were drawn to the Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, and so real muslim communities form round them, may Allah be pleased with them, just as the first Muslim community formed round the Prophet Muhammad.

The real muslim community is simply the outward manifestation of what is inwardly in the heart of the wali, in the same way that the tyranny of the kafir state is the outward manifestation of the inward darkness of the tyrants who control it. The heart of the wali is inwardly light and peace, and this manifests outwardly in the form of the harmonious and human transactions which always characterise a real muslim community.

The awliya of Allah are not located in one place. As the ruh, that is the spirit form, pervades the entire body, so they are spread throughout the world. The awliya are the ruh of the world. Just as the body rots once the ruh has left it, so the world will come to an end once there are no longer awliya living in it.

The real muslim communities which form around the awliya of Allah

are subject to the same cycle of growth and decay as the first Muslim community of Madina al-Munawarra. They begin with one man, the wali. The community forms around him. The kafirun try to destroy the community, but fail because Allah gives victory to those who trust in Him. Then the wali eventually dies. There follows a period of balance during which the community continues to hold to what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah*, and is led by rightly-guided men, who were the close companions of the wali, and who received their knowledge of Allah by Allah through him. Then these companions die, and the community is led by those who were the companions of the wali's companions. Then they die, and gradually almost without anybody realising it, the community begins to lose the dynamism and living vibrancy which its first members originally possessed.

With the continued passage of time the stage is reached where there is no longer a unified Muslim community. Its members may still follow much of what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah*, simply because that is what they have been born into, but many do this because it is what their fathers did, and not because they recognise Islam for what it really is. They no longer have what the original community which formed round the wali had. Everything in creation has its high point, and then thereafter there is a falling away. Basically a real muslim community which lives with anything like the same zest for life, and with anything like the same awareness of the true nature of existence, as the first Muslim community of Madina al-Munawarra, only lasts for three generations. Then it is all over. As quickly as one Muslim community dies another is born somewhere else. The knowledge which the awliya possess, and which does not come from books, is transmitted from person to person. Once a wali has transmitted that knowledge to another wali, then that wali takes that knowledge wherever he or she goes. In this way this knowledge has always been kept alive from the time of the Prophet Muhammad up until now, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him and on all who follow in the dust of his footsteps.

Not every wali has a muslim community forming around him or her. Allah often hides who the awliya are as a protection for them. In those times during the alternating cycle of iman and kufr when kufr is in the ascendancy, the awliya remain hidden. Their job is simply to keep their knowledge and wisdom alive, and to ensure that the chain of transmission remains unbroken. When the time arrives when iman is in

the ascendancy, as it is now, then the awliya emerge into the open, and real muslim communities form around them, and there is nothing that the kafirun and the munafiqun can do to stop them, because Allah gives victory to the ones who trust in Allah, and the awliya and those who follow the awliya are the ones who really trust in Allah. They cannot do other than trust in Allah because of the knowledge of Allah which Allah has given them. Allah said on the lips of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, in a hadith qudsi, that whoever makes war on a wali of Allah, Allah makes war on them.

Naturally there are ignorant people who claim to be walis when they are not. They deal in esoteric information and pseudo-wisdom, but not in real knowledge of Allah. They are usually recognisable because they are concerned with personal reputation – that is, they are more concerned about what other people think about them than what Allah knows about them; and because they usually charge money for the information which they pass on; and because outwardly they do not follow the existential life pattern of the Prophet Muhammad, even in very essential matters such as eating halal food, and doing the prayer, and fasting Ramadan; and because inwardly they do not have the light and wisdom which only a wali of Allah is given by Allah; and because, in the final analysis, they do not have the idhn to teach – that is, they do not have the permission of Allah to teach. One great wali in the past, Shaykh Ahmad ibn ‘Ata’illah, said that as for the one who speaks with idhn, his words are heard by creation, but as for the one who speaks without idhn, he is no more than a dog barking. Idhn is from Allah and His Messenger, may Allah bless him and grant him peace.

The true awliya are recognisable by a number of signs. Outwardly they embody the way of Muhammad in every respect. Inwardly they have a light which bathes and cleanses the hearts of those who sit with them. They have the best of manners and are human and compassionate. They have great wisdom and knowledge, which they share without charging a fee. They fear only Allah. They love Allah. They have gnosis of Allah, which is not the same as possessing information about Allah. Their selves have been purified. Allah loves them, and when Allah loves them then, as Allah said on the lips of the Prophet Muhammad, in a hadith qudsi, He is the tongue with which they speak, and the hand with which they grasp, and the foot with which they walk. When you see them, it is as if you see instruments moved by divine decree. This is

why and how they make things happen and bring knowledge to life.

The awliya are the complete antithesis of the freemasons. The freemasons are the elite of the kafirun. The awliya are the elite of the mumun. The freemasons only want power. The awliya only want Allah. The freemasons exploit and tyrannise the people whom they control and manipulate. The awliya illuminate and liberate the people whom they serve. Both the freemasons and the awliya are necessary to the creational process, which works by the dynamic interplay of opposites. You have to see which of the two opposites you belong to. If you are a kafir then go and join the freemasons, because they receive the best of their world and the worst of the next world. If you are a mumun then go and join the awliya, because they receive the best of this world and the best of the next world. The choice is yours right now.



The life transaction of Islam is the best insurance in the world. It guarantees provision in this world, and the Garden in the next world, for the one who embodies it with sincerity. The minimum that you have to do to ensure clothing, food and shelter, is five prayers a day. The minimum that you have to do to ensure the Garden, is to affirm that there is no god only Allah and that Muhammad is the messenger of Allah, in the moment; and to do five prayers in the day; and to fast during the month of Ramadan in the year, and to pay the zakat tax once every year; and finally, if it is possible, to do the hajj, that is the pilgrimage to Makka, at least once in your life time.

These five essential actions, the five pillars of Islam as they are called, are not only all you need to do to reach the Garden, but are also the basis of a balanced life on this earth which inevitably leads to knowledge of Allah. They alone can transform the heart of whoever does them, and make it peaceful. Of course the more that you embody of the way of Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, the more you gain from it, since there is great wisdom in everything which the Prophet did, and this wisdom is only available for the people who do likewise.

Ultimately, Allah is in the expectation of His slave. You will receive from Allah what you expect from Allah. Every one gets what they want. It is related that there was a man who on the Last Day was told that he was for the Fire. He replied, 'Which is greater, my wrong actions or Allah's forgiveness?' Because he had this expectation of Allah, he went to the Garden.

The truth of the matter is that Allah could not show His mercy and forgiveness if no one had wrong actions. To the one who seeks knowledge of Allah, right action and wrong action are the same, because he or she learns from both. If the one who trusts in Allah is wise then he or she does not get stung in the same place or in the same way twice. For the one who desires to see the face of Allah – and that vision is possible both in this world and in the Garden within the Garden in the next world – Allah is his or her only concern. The object in life for such a person is not simply to avoid the Fire and reach the Garden, but solely to see the face of Allah. The only way to reach the stage when and where Allah will give you this vision, if He wishes it, is by following the way of Muhammad.

The danger for the one who neither desires Allah, nor longs for the Garden, nor dreads the Fire, is that he or she will worship Islam instead of worshipping Allah – that is, he or she will mistake the means for the end.

Whoever makes this mistake kills the living life transaction of Islam stone dead, and makes a religion out of it, that is a constricting web of do's and don't's which has nothing to do with the way of Muhammad. This is what the Jews and the Christians have done to the teachings of their respective Prophets, Moses and Jesus, on whom be peace, and unfortunately some of the Muslims have also made a religion out of the teaching of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, in fulfilment of his prophecy that some of the Muslims would follow the example of their predecessors, meaning the Jews and the Christians, just like a lizard making for its hole.

If you wish to follow the way of Muhammad, then learn from those who have travelled it and who embody it, and not from those who have made a religion out of Islam. The ones who best know the way of Muhammad are the awliya, because they best embody it. The one who desires knowledge should only take it from the one whose actions are the same as his or her words.

So in reality there are two choices. Firstly, you may choose between iman and kufr. If you choose iman, then secondly, you may choose between either the living life transaction of Islam – which thrives around the awliya and which inevitably leads to knowledge of Allah and to the Garden, or the dead religion of Islam – which is followed by the people of book knowledge and fixed 'morality' and which is like a prison. The choice is yours right now.

It is clear that a mumin's insurance, that is the living life transaction of Islam and trust in Allah, is accompanied by a vibrant awareness of the Unseen and of what comes after death. Kafir insurance is the opposite of this. To the kafir, death is not simply a doorway which leads from one world to another world, and which accordingly is not in itself something to be feared. To the kafir, death is the ultimate misfortune which is accordingly to be insured against. This is because the kafir does not know what death is, or what lies on the other side of death – and even if he or she is told, the teller will not be believed.

Life insurance also appears to be necessary to the kafir because of his or her anxiety about provision and shelter in old age. In many ways this anxiety is a well-grounded one in a fragmented society, because the young tend to abandon the old, and leave them to fend for themselves, often alone. This is the complete antithesis of the real muslim community where life insurance policies are completely unnecessary, because everyone looks after each other, from birth to death.

Another inevitable result of the fragmentation of kafir society, and especially a society which makes people want so many things because they have been conditioned to want them in order to keep the consumer producer process in business, is that there is a lot of what the kafirun call crime. It is almost inevitable that people who do not fear Allah and the Last Day, and who cannot get what they have been conditioned to want from the consumer producer process by legal means, will turn to crime. As we have already seen this criminal activity is not discouraged, or rather its true causes are not eliminated, because it provides many of the people who work for the legal system with a reason for living and a steady income.

Crime also provides an added incentive to make people insure their property. As we have already seen, the insurers do not lose out, because they have fixed the insurance system so that they receive more in premiums than what they pay out in claims, and then these profits are further swelled by investing them and earning interest. Thus we see that the kafir insurance system appears to be necessary, because it performs a costly service in a fragmented society where people do not trust each other. The average kafir is obliged to trust in the average insurance company – which is not itself entirely trustworthy, because however 'efficient' it may be, in the final analysis its directors have the annual profits in mind more than the welfare of their customers. Anyone who has read



the terms of insurance policies and studied the law which governs the interpretation of these terms, will know that the policies are designed to cover as little possible misfortune as they can in practice, whilst appearing and purporting to do the opposite in theory.

The kafir insurance system is another of the important sub-systems in the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system. Whereas the kafir legal and medical systems make their money out of the actual misfortunes of people – and misfortunes which have often been created by the way in which the system works at that – the kafir insurance system goes one step further and makes its money out of the fear people have for misfortunes which only might happen.

The illusory need to insure – which derives both from groundless anxiety, and from the legal obligation to insure – and which arises out of the inevitable detrimental results of a society which is fragmenting, are both the children of ignorance as to how existence works, and of lack of trust either in Allah or in other people – and in truth these two trusts are the same trust. This state of affairs is in direct contrast to the reality of the mumin whose only insurance is trust in Allah, a trust which is manifested by his or her following the guidance which Allah has sent, and which is contained in the *Qur'an* and the way of Muhammad.

The Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, said that if you really trusted in Allah, then you would live like the birds who go out in the morning with nothing, and who return to their nests in the evening with nothing, and who in the meantime have been fed. He also said that whoever does five prayers a day is guaranteed food, clothing and shelter by Allah. The Prophet himself could not go to sleep at night if there was money in his simple room. Accordingly he was what the kafirun call bankrupt at the end of each of his days as a Prophet – and yet there has never been anyone richer than he, nor will there ever be.

The reality of provision is that Allah is the Provider, and He remembers those who remember Him as is promised in the *Qur'an*. The reality of provision is that in the fifth month of pregnancy the ruh, that is the spirit form, is breathed into the foetus, and at that time it is written what his or her provision will be in the world, whether he or she will be happy or sad, when he or she will die, and whether he or she is for the Fire or the Garden. The whole matter has already been decided, even before you were born. Once you are born then whatever is coming to

you comes at its appointed time, and whatever is not coming to you will never come. That is why Allah says in the *Qur'an* that what is written for you cannot be avoided, and what is not written for you cannot be reached. That is why Allah says in the *Qur'an* do not exult in what you are given, and do not grieve for what you are not given.

One of the companions of the Prophet Muhammad asked him, 'Are we on a matter which is completed, or are we on a matter which is not completed?' The Prophet replied, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, 'We are on a matter which is already completed. The pen has stopped writing, and the ink is dry.'

The kafir tries to make a nonsense of this by conjuring up visions of an idiot sitting and doing nothing and waiting for his or her provision to fall out of the sky, or of another idiot who blindly walks across the road without first looking to see if there is a car coming. This shallow kafir concept – which is usually described as 'fatalism' or 'belief in predestination', has nothing to do with the true nature of existence. Your going out and getting things, and your taking precautions to avoid mishaps, your every breath, your every heartbeat, are all part of what has been written for you.

You cannot do other than what is in your heart, your every move is already decided, but whenever you are faced with a choice you have to make the decision. Right now the choice is yours, but once it has been made, and looking back on it, perhaps you will see that you could not have made any other decision. Allah is the doer of you and your actions, and you are answerable for your actions on the Last Day, and depending on what actions you choose in this life, you will be for the Fire or for the Garden in the life after this.



It has been related that 'Umar ibn al-Khattab, may Allah be pleased with him, was asked about this ayah:

**When your Lord took their progeny from the Banu Adam from their backs and made them testify against themselves, 'Am I not your Lord?' They said, 'Yes, we bear witness', lest you should say on the Day of Rising, 'We were heedless of that.'** (*Qur'an: Surat'al-'Araf* – 7.172)

'Umar ibn al-Khattab said, 'I heard the Messenger of Allah, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, being asked

about it. The Messenger of Allah, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, said, “Allah, the Blessed, the Exalted, created Adam. Then He stroked his back with His right hand, and progeny issued from it. He said, ‘I created these for the Garden and they will act with the behaviour of the people of the Garden.’ Then He stroked his back again and brought forth progeny from him. He said, ‘I created these for the Fire and they will act with the behaviour of the people of the Fire.’” A man said, “Messenger of Allah! Then of what value are deeds?” The Messenger of Allah, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, answered, “When Allah creates a slave for the Garden, He makes him use the behaviour of the people of the Garden, so that he dies on one of the actions of the people of the Garden, and by it He brings him into the Garden. When He creates a slave for the Fire, He makes him use the behaviour of the people of the Fire, so that he dies on one of the actions of the people of the Fire, and by it He brings him into the Fire.”

Yahya related to me from Malik that he heard that the Messenger of Allah, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, said, ‘I have left two matters with you. As long as you hold to them, you will not go the wrong way. They are the Book of Allah and the Sunnah of His Prophet.’

Yahya related to me from Malik from Ziyad ibn Sa’d from ‘Amr ibn Muslim that Tawus al-Yamani said, ‘I found some of the companions of the Messenger of Allah, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, saying, “Everything is by decree.” Tawus added, ‘I heard ‘Abdullah ibn ‘Umar say that the Messenger of Allah, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, said, “Everything is by decree – even incapacity and ability,” (or “ability and incapacity”):’ (*Al-Muwatta’* of Imam Malik: 46.1.2-4)

Allah says in the *Qur’an*:

**And Allah has created you and what you do.**

(*Qur’an: Surat’as-Saffat* – 37.96)



It is sheer ignorance of this state of affairs which induces the kafir not only to rely on his or her own actions rather than on Allah, from Whom all actions come, but also to insure against what is defined by kafir insurance terminology as 'risk'. In reality there is no such thing as risk, just as there is no such thing as luck. Allah's mercy is greater than His wrath, and the way of Islam is the means to taste His mercy and avoid His wrath.

The reality of the kafir insurance business system, and indeed of all the kafir finance systems, is that they are carefully designed to involve as many people as possible more fully in the producer consumer process, and to make as much money as possible out of that involvement. The insurance system plays a vital role in the functioning of the commodity markets which deal in raw materials from the mineral, vegetable and animal kingdoms, in bulk and in the future. These markets buy and sell crops which have not yet been planted, fruit which has not yet begun to ripen, metals which have not yet been mined, and livestock which has not yet been born. By dealing in the future like this, the profit margin is increased, whilst possible losses occasioned by unforeseen events are insured against, the premiums for the insurance being paid out of the large profits which have been made by paying the producers of the commodity in question a lower price in advance than the price which the buyer would have had to pay if the goods had actually existed at the time of buying.

This is yet another example of how the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, creates a quite unnecessary pattern of activity in order to make money from it. The winners are those who operate the markets and the insurers. The losers are the people at the bottom of the company pyramid – who in fact are usually the ones who do all the hard work.

Behind this pattern of activity of buying and selling in the future – a pattern of activity which is not permitted for Muslims – is not only sheer greed, but also a deep underlying anxiety about provision. The Muslim who does not have this anxiety, only buys and sells what already actually exists, in accordance with the way of Muhammad, which clearly states firstly, that dealing in the future like this is haram – that is, it is forbidden because it is unfruitful – and secondly, that a trader should not make more than thirty per cent profit on all essential goods and commodities – so that people are not exploited. It is because the Muslim only deals in the present, and not in the future, and because he or

she trusts in Allah, and the other Muslims with whom he or she deals, that insurance in the Muslim business world is totally unnecessary.

If kafir insurance was not a way of making money out of people, then the insurance companies would not exist. The amounts which they are prepared to pay out, and the circumstances in which they are prepared to make payment, are all carefully calculated so that overall payments out are a great deal less than the total amount of premiums received and invested – although of course whenever there is a really large-scale 'disaster', which was unlikely to happen but which is covered by an insurance policy, then all these calculations about future probabilities prove to be of no avail, and expert juggling and restructuring is rapidly needed to ensure that the insurance company in question stays afloat.

It is because of the large profits which they usually make that the insurance companies can afford to use the civil legal process to their own advantage, either by employing legal experts to achieve the court decision which conveniently limits their liabilities in claims over which there is a dispute, or by offering sums which are less than the amount which they should really be paying out – because they know that the person or company insured cannot afford to take them to court, and will therefore have to reach a settlement on the insurance company's terms by accepting whatever is being offered. When the situation is such that both parties in a dispute over an insurance claim can afford to go to court, then of course this means continuity of work for the people involved in the civil legal process. This is yet another example of how the interlink between the sub-systems of the kafir system that is the Dajjal system ensures that they keep each other busy, by providing work for each other.

Once a person or company has taken out an insurance policy, or, for that matter, has entered into a hire purchase or mortgage agreement, or borrowed money from the bank, then this means that that person or company is more fully committed to keep working in the producer consumer process, in order to keep up the payment of the premiums, or the hire purchase, mortgage or overdraft repayments. The more you insure, and the greater the financial commitments which you incur, the harder you have to work to pay them off, and accordingly the more you are trapped and enslaved by the producer consumer process.

The media systems are used with devastating effect not only to

encourage people to consume generally, but also, more specifically, to fall into debt by living beyond their means. Once they have fallen into this trap it is then relatively simple to create money out of nothing, by charging them interest on the money which they owe. In effect, you are provided with some of the goodies which the kafir system that is the Dajjal system promises you, now, but at the price of having to pay much more for them than you would have had to pay if you could have bought them outright in the first place.

The main purpose of the 'have it now, pay later' techniques is to create debts, because then the interest on the debts can also be collected. Furthermore, this kind of transaction encourages the buyer to insure the goods, especially if we are talking about something expensive rather than something cheap, because there is nothing more frustrating than having to continue to pay for something which has been written off or stolen, especially if you are being charged interest into the bargain! The chances are that in fact the thing, whatever it is, will not be written off. This will mean that you have not only had to pay interest on the original debt, but also will have incurred the additional expense of the insurance as well.

By inflating the cost of goods in a kafir society by these methods, the freemasonic controlling elite ensure that the people they control continue to be enslaved by the consumer producer system, whilst making a profit out of them.

Living in debt beyond their means encourages or drives many people to gamble, since only a miracle win is going to wipe out their growing debts. Of course the vast majority of gamblers tend to end up further in debt as a result – because all forms of gambling only exist in order to make money out of gamblers, and not to help them. As a result, many people end up trying to find enough money not to pay off their debts, but simply to be able to service them, by making the required monthly payments. Once they have reached a 'no win – no escape' situation, many people are then encouraged to insure against the possibility of their not being able to keep up their repayments on their debts as a result of ill-health or redundancy. Thus virtually all debts today are further increased by the additional premiums which are paid out on payment 'protection' plans.

The combined activities of the various kafir finance institutions make the accumulation of vast pools of wealth a reality. Even a mil-

lion one pound monthly premium payments by a million small-time policy-holders, gives the insurance company twelve million pounds to play with. In the present complex kafir states of the High Tec North, where virtually every kind of activity involves one form of insurance or another, of course the actual figures are not mere millions, but run into hundreds and thousands of millions and billions. And of course much of what has been said about the kafir insurance companies applies equally to the kafir hire purchase finance companies, and to the kafir building societies, and especially to the kafir banks.



Of all the kafir finance institutions, the kafir banks accumulate the most wealth, because they not only charge interest on debts, but also they encourage people to save money, if they have it to save, and to deposit whatever they save in the banks. Although the banks pay interest on money in deposit accounts, they of course invest that money and receive far more from it than the amounts which they have to pay out on it. Furthermore, they also have most of the money which is lying in the current accounts to play with, and on this money they have to pay no interest at all. Thus whatever return they receive by investing current account money is all profit. The banks have found in practice that on average out of every thirteen pounds lying in the bank, there is only ever an actual collective demand by the clients of the bank for one of those pounds in cash. This leaves the bank with twelve pounds out of every thirteen to play with.

The overall sum which the banks have to play with is phenomenal, because virtually all of the other kafir finance institutions, and virtually all of the business corporations and concerns, and indeed most of the people in the street, deposit their money with the banks. The banks are the means by which vast pools of wealth are accumulated – and, for example, out of every thirteen billion pounds deposited with them, they are free to invest twelve billion pounds in order not only to maximise their own profits, but also, more significantly, to finance and facilitate whatever social engineering there happens to be on the political agenda. The new world order could not exist without the banks.

The banks are controlled by freemasons. The giant corporations of the kafir producer consumer system, that is the Dajjal system, are controlled by the freemasons. The governments of the kafir states are controlled by the freemasons. It follows that the freemasons are in a

position to use the vast pools of wealth which have been accumulated by the banks to finance those projects which will provide business for their large corporations, and furthermore, this activity will be sanctioned by official government approval and permitted by the kafir legal system.

These large projects, which affect the lives of all those who work in them, are decided upon without asking all those who have been affected whether or not that is what they want. The project is set in motion, and the people who work in it work because they need the money, not because they necessarily believe in the project. Naturally the freemasonic controlling elite decide on those projects which are profitable to them. In effect, any project is profitable to them, firstly, because the people who do the work are paid less than the money which is received by the company which employs them, and secondly, because the money which they do earn has to pass through the banks, who then use whatever is not being spent by the client to finance yet another project.

The kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, is a self-perpetuating system. Once it has people working in and for it, their activity generates more activity, and all this activity generates money. The large corporations and companies do not really exist. They merely provide an effective facade to disguise the activities of the freemasons who control them, and an illusory structure within which the people who work for them are trapped. Using the large kafir corporations and companies as a front, the freemasons channel the vast amounts of money to which they have access to finance the social projects which ensure continued profits and therefore power for themselves, and which also ensure the continued subservience of the people who are caught up in working in those social projects.

It is clear from this perspective that the kafir taxation system is in fact just one more kafir finance system, which ensures that people do not have too much money to play with, and are accordingly obliged to keep on working in the kafir producer consumer process. Once the taxes have been collected – and their overall bulk and effect is disguised by giving them different names, and by taxing not only earned income but also any transaction where capital is gained or transferred and where consumer items or services are purchased or utilised – the money which has been accumulated in this way can then be used to finance the social projects of the freemasonic ruling elite's choice. Thus, for example, the freemasonic controlled government will give the juicy



contract to the freemasonic controlled building corporation to build all the buildings needed to house all the activities of the bureaucratic infra-structure which is used by the government to gather the taxes which are needed to control the country which it rules.

The argument, which states that since the government has been elected by the people, therefore it follows that the government policies are the policies which the people want and support, is nonsense. Firstly, the government which is publicly elected is not the real government. It is just a figurehead government, which distracts the attention of the people away from the real ruling elite who are the freemasons. Secondly, the reality of the 'democratic' election process today is that the figurehead government is always elected by a minority of the actual total number of people living in the kafir state in question, even though it has been elected by a majority of those who bothered to vote.

The reason why so many people do not bother to vote is because they at least have an inkling of the fact that they have no real choice in the matter. They are presented with a limited choice of apparently acceptable candidates, usually not more than two, both of whom make promises which they usually never keep, and neither of whom necessarily represent the views of those who usually end up voting for them, simply because there is no one else to vote for. People are encouraged to vote, through the media system, on the basis that since it is their country, they should have a say in who rules it, but in fact they can only choose someone who has his name on the ballot slip – and the only people who ever get their names on the ballot slip in the first place and get elected are people who either secretly or unwittingly support the activities of the freemasonic ruling elite, and who in turn are supported by that elite, since it is impossible to conduct a successful election campaign without the use and support of the media, all of which costs a great deal of money.

Whoever the people vote for, or even if they do not vote – which means that they do not wish to be governed by any of the candidates standing for election – the so-called government still gets elected, and the real ruling force behind the facade of the election pantomime, that is the freemasonic ruling elite, remains in power. Of course some kafir states do not even bother with elections. Instead the figurehead ruler claims to have the interests of the people at heart, and may even call the country 'a people's republic' to prove it, although of course this meaningless phrase changes nothing.

The people who really rule the kafir states of today are the people who control the kafir finance and business institutions, that is the freemasons. The freemasons decide what the social projects are to be. The freemasonic controlled business institutions carry out those social projects, enslaving the working population within those social projects in the process. The freemasonic controlled finance institutions finance these projects.

The key kafir finance institution is the banking system since it handles the life blood of the consumer producer process, that is money. The importance of the banking system lies in the fact that it not only facilitates financial transactions on a national level, but also enables transactions between different countries using different currencies to take place. As a result of these international transactions, money itself becomes a commodity. As well as making money by charging a commission every time one currency is changed into another currency, money can also be made simply by buying and selling different currencies at strategic intervals. These transactions are very magical since often no money actually changes hands, and yet by buying and selling on the same day, a profit can be made and recorded in the bank computer's memory.

This activity is very similar to what happens on the stock exchange, which is ostensibly the place where companies and corporations raise money to finance their operations, by promising to pay the share holder a dividend, that is interest, on the money which he or she is effectively lending to the company.

This method of raising money is attractive to the corporation or company, because it may work out cheaper than borrowing it from the bank. This method of lending money is attractive to the shareholder, because if the company or corporation makes large profits, then the annual return on the loan will probably be greater than the interest which would have accrued if the money loaned had been deposited with the bank.

What in fact happens is that the different shares, like the different currencies, become commodities in themselves. You can buy and sell them. You can buy and sell them for different reasons. You can buy and sell them to gain or relinquish control of the company or corporation whose shares they are. This works by virtue of the reasoning that if you are providing most of the finance for the company or corporation then you should have the final say in how it is run. Naturally the freemasons

have a controlling interest in all the important corporations, because only they have access to the funds which are necessary to acquire such an interest. This system of control by owning the bulk of the shares of any large business concern means that the freemasons can takeover virtually whoever they want, simply because they can provide whatever price is needed to achieve this object. Once they have a controlling share, they can then staff that company or corporation with their own people. This is one way in which the Dajjal takeover sometimes manifests.

The usual reason for buying and selling shares is simply to make money by investing it wisely, or to raise money quickly if you need it. Another reason for buying and selling shares is to make a quick profit without actually having had to part with any money at any stage in the transaction. Like the gambling which goes on in the currency exchange, it all happens on paper, or on the computer screen via the internet. One of the favourite techniques is to buy shares, even though you do not have the money to pay for them, hoping to sell them again at a higher price, before the time for your having to pay for them falls due. Alternatively you can sell shares which you do not possess, in the hope that you can buy them from someone else at a lower price than what you will be paid for them, and before the time arrives when you are meant to be 'handing them over' to the person to whom you originally sold them before you had them. In using either of these techniques it is possible to make a large profit from nothing other than skilful juggling along the telephone lines. Of course if, like the freemasons, you already have the capital at your disposal in the first place, then you can buy and sell shares at leisure, hoping that the market forces will eventually enable you to sell for more than you bought, or to buy for less than what you will eventually sell.

It is on the commodity, stock and money exchanges that the power struggles for control of the kafir producer consumer system, that is the Dajjal system, are conducted. It is from these power struggles that money is made. Thus even at the very tip of the producer consumer pyramid, the principle of divide and rule is applied. The main division is between those who control and those who are controlled. In financial terms this is the difference between those who lend money, and those who borrow money.

Any large corporation in its infancy has to borrow money in order to grow. One of the ways in which this is done is to borrow money

from one source, then to go to another source and borrow more money using the sum you have already borrowed as security for the second loan. Having in effect, doubled your money on the strength of nothing, you then go to another source and borrow more money again using the money you have accumulated thus far as security. This process can usually be repeated up to eight times in succession by a corporation which is sufficiently large enough to command a good credit-rating. Having amassed sufficient funds by this method, the corporation then has to embark on a business venture which will reap sufficient profits to pay back all the loans and the interest thereon. In order to do this its controllers must be ruthless, and all the successful ones are.

There comes a time when a successful corporation has generated enough activity, and accrued sufficient capital not to have to borrow any more. At this stage it can begin to take over other smaller corporations and companies, either by agreement or by sharp dealing on the stock exchange. There comes a point where a really large corporation has amassed enough capital in enough different countries to be able to have its own internal banking system, which works independently from, but not in competition with, the main international banking system. In effect, the multi-national corporation 'bank' is in a position to pursue all the profitable activities enjoyed by kafir banking as a whole – such as loaning money on interest and financing profitable projects for a price – whilst the corporation is released from the liabilities which it would incur if it still relied on the main kafir banking system – such as, for example, having to pay bank charges every time large sums of money are transferred from one country to another, or being subject to exchange control regulations, or having to pay interest on loans raised for new projects.

By having their own 'banks', the multi-national corporations ensure their freedom to act. Since they and the main kafir banking system are not in competition with each other, because all the chief controllers concerned are freemasons, the money which the large multi-national corporations expend, sooner or later finds its way into the main banking system, which can then make it grow by lending twelve thirteenths of it at interest, or by investing that proportion profitably on the stock exchange.

The main kafir banking system does not stop creating money out of nothing at this stage. Firstly, the money which has been created by

charging interest can then be loaned out again and thus accrue further interest. This process can continue ad infinitum. Secondly, the man who borrows a thousand pounds for example, will probably put some of it in the bank. Although to him it is a minus amount, in the sense that it is not really his to spend because he will eventually have to pay it back, to the bank it is a plus amount in the sense that twelve thirteenths of what has been deposited can be loaned out again, or otherwise invested. This process can also continue ad infinitum.

As far as 'small man in the street' transactions are concerned, the aforementioned banking practices do not appear to be significant, although of course when all the small transactions in the world are added together, it is clear that the banking system makes a considerable profit even out of these. Where these practices do become significant is in the large multi-national transactions. Loans of several million dollars or pounds accrue much interest in a short time. This means that the subservience of the debtor to the loaning bank is correspondingly greater. It also means that the pool of wealth, which the loaning bank accumulates by multiplying it through charging interest on what is loaned, increases at such a rate that in the end it does not really matter whether or not a particular loan is repaid. No-one in the bank is going to starve if the loan is not repaid. What is important, however, is that the bank is in a position to dictate to the borrower the conditions on which the obligation to repay the interest or the loan or both will be waived, and it is in an even stronger position to lay down further conditions under which further sums will be loaned, such as, for example, in what projects the new loans must be invested. In effect, by creating the debt, the bank gains control over whoever has borrowed the money.

The ultimate expression of the 'control through debt' and 'motivation through fear' syndromes is to be seen in the activities of the International Monetary Fund and of the World Bank. Basically the I.M.F. lends money to the so-called 'developed' countries of the High Tec North, whilst the World Bank lends money to the countries of the 'third' world, that is the so-called 'less-developed' countries of the Poor South. These two financial institutions have so much money, on paper at any rate – or rather, in computer – that it has no meaning as money per se. What it really means is control over every government in the world – because there is not a government in the world today which is not in debt – and once a government is in debt it can then

be told how to spend the money which is subsequently lent to it; and it can be told that if it does 'this' then there will be more funds available; and it can be told that if it does 'that' then there will be no more funds available.

This is the principal way in which the freemasonic controlling elite of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, attempt to control the world. The freemasonic controlled banking system loans money to governments, and continues to loan to them even after they have become heavily indebted, and can never hope to repay all the money back, on the condition that they do as they are told. This is the reality of what is called neo-colonialism. Although it is said that the countries in question have been given their so-called independence, in fact this has only been granted once the country in question has become totally involved in the kafir consumer producer process, and totally reliant on the kafir banking system to finance that process.

Most of the larger national debts in the non-Muslim countries were created and developed during the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, while most of the national debts in the Muslim countries were created during the twentieth century, largely thanks to the efforts of Jamal'ud-Din Al-Afghani, Muhammad Abdou and Rashid Reda, who, having been granted the dubious privilege of becoming members of Lord Cromer's freemasonic lodge – Lord Cromer was a member of the notorious Barings banking family – eventually managed to 'persuade' the Muslim rulers of the day, more by means of bribery than the original teachings of Islam, that certain types of usury were 'not haram', and that it was not only 'halal' but indeed preferable to use paper money – thereby facilitating the introduction of the utterly haram banking system into the Muslim lands in the name of progress, development and modernisation.



Since all national debts have been structured in such a way that they will never be repaid – even England's national debt, which was initiated with a £1.2 million loan to King William of Orange, was deliberately structured on the basis of irredeemable annuities – and since by the operation of compound interest combined with the additional borrowing that always occurs in times of war, all national debts can only and have only grown ever larger – at the time of writing this, for example, England's national debt is now approaching the £300 billion mark – one

of the inevitable results has been that taxation of the general population in virtually every kafir state in the world has also continued to grow steadily through the years – which is why nowadays many people who do vote tend to vote for whoever promises to tax them the least.

This in fact is the economic basis of ‘modern democracy’: a state whose government is elected to service the national debt by taxing the general electorate. This is the reality of the ‘control through debt’ and ‘motivation through fear’ syndromes. This is the basis of the new world order. Inexorable economic control disguised by liberal political debate.



Thus, to summarise, the people who really rule the kafir states of today are not the politicians who appear on television, but rather the people who control the major finance and business institutions, that is the freemasons. Effective control is exercised especially by using the kafir banking system to create debts by charging interest, which grow so large that they can never be repaid. In order to speed up the process of creating debts, the freemasons, as we have already seen, create conflict situations out of which profits are made by selling the goods – especially armaments and food – needed by the sides who have been drawn into conflict, at a high price, and out of which debts are created by providing those goods on credit at interest.

The conflict situations created by the freemasons vary, from manipulating market forces – especially in the commodity markets and on the stock and money exchanges – to engineering war on a large scale. Thus, for example, in order to curb the wealth of the Muslim oil-producing countries during the boom of the 1970s – and especially after the price of oil was quadrupled by OPEC in 1973 in response to the High Tec North’s support of Israeli military aggression against the Arabs in the Yom Kippur War – the cost of crude oil from the Middle East was soon reduced, not only by re-negotiating the price per barrel, but also by devaluing the currencies of all the oil-producing countries – by revaluing the exchange rates within the international banking system, as well as by manipulating supply and demand and therefore value on the international money markets.

During the 1980s, Iraq was armed, at its own expense, in order to wage war on and weaken Iran. Once this had been achieved – increasing both Iraq’s and Iran’s dependence on the international banking system

in the process – Iraq was then encouraged to invade Kuwait, while at the same time Saudi Arabia and the Gulf states were warned that if American troops – accompanied by token forces from other countries to create the impression of its being an ‘international’ affair – were not permitted to come to their rescue, at their expense, then they would be the next to be invaded by Iraq. The troops came, the Gulf War ensued, all the latest technological weapons (including the chemical ones and their vaccines) were tested, Kuwait was destroyed and had to be rebuilt, at its own expense, much of Iraq was destroyed and its population decimated, and Saudi Arabia and all the Gulf states spent billions on financing the war and buying obsolete armaments in order to ensure that the same thing did not happen all over again.

During the early 1990s therefore, vast profits were made by the armaments industry, and vast profits were made by the international banking system as funds poured out of the Middle East into the High Tec North at one rate of exchange and then eventually back again, once it was all over, at another rate of exchange. As a result the oil-wealth of the Middle East had been reduced to virtually nothing, and as if to emphasise the hold which the international banking system now enjoys over Saudi Arabia and the Gulf states, the BCCI Arab bank was closed down almost overnight, wiping out much of the Muslims’ ‘wealth’ throughout the world in the process.

Once again, everything had gone more or less according to plan and the architects of the new world order had triumphed. This was the same kind of carefully orchestrated activity of which both Ezra Pound and Adolf Hitler were fully aware, and tried to prevent, but without any success.



Perhaps one of the main reasons why Pound and Hitler failed to expose and destroy the activities of the freemasons was because they were not fully aware of the true nature of existence. The true nature of existence is that nothing exists, only Allah. It follows that anything other than Allah only appears to exist if you give it reality.

The way of Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, means that reality is given to Allah. The way of kufr means that reality is given to other than Allah.

If enough of the people who are at present enslaved by the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, and who are accordingly imprisoned



by the kafir view of existence, decide to follow the way of Muhammad, and accordingly cease to give reality to what they have been conditioned to give reality to by the educational and media systems, then the producer consumer process will collapse and cease to exist – especially once the Muslims abandon the banks and their worthless paper and plastic money.

Thus the way to fight the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, is not to fight it, but to leave it. Ignore it. The way to leave the system is to follow the way of Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace. The system is already in an advanced state of collapse. Accordingly it is becoming easier and easier to leave it, and to follow the way of Muhammad – and when the system does collapse, it will be the Muslims who will best be able to cope with what happens next. The choice is yours, right now.



One of the main reasons why the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, is in an advanced stage of self-destruction and collapse is that the money, which is the life-blood of the consumer producer process, and which is the medium by which control through debt is exercised through the banking system, is only really worth the paper on which it is printed. As the life-blood of the producer consumer system it is totally anaemic.

Money only succeeds in its role as the medium by which control through debt is exercised through the banking system because enough people think it is worth something. Money, however, only has the value which people ascribe to it, but it has no inherent value of its own. Money is only numbers printed on bits of paper or stored in mega-computer data-bases.

Anyone who uses this kind of money is part of a gigantic confidence trick. Once the trick is exposed it is impossible to place any confidence in either paper, or plastic, or micro-chip money.

The endless discussions on the illusory topic of inflation, and the futile attempts to resolve the illusory problem of inflation are only either decoys, smoke screens or red herrings, to disguise the fact that the real issue is not the question of money losing value, simply because it has no real value to lose in the first place.

The reason why money has absolutely no value today, other than the illusory value which the great majority of people are conditioned to give it, is on account of the way in which it has been and is handled by the

international banking system and the international money markets. In order to appreciate this fact, it is necessary to look at what money used to be, before the present banking system was first introduced.



Money used to be made principally of gold or silver. Since it was made from these precious metals it had inherent value. Even if it was melted down, its value did not change – unlike paper money which at *Fahrenheit 451* ignites and turns to ashes. Coins minted in different countries of the world could nevertheless be used as a means of exchange in any other country in the world, once the quality and purity of the gold or silver used to mint the coin was established, simply by weighing it. As a result, the value of money remained more or less constant, while the prices of the goods for which it was exchanged fluctuated as the market forces of supply and demand varied.

Furthermore, up until the time of the Reformation of the European Trinitarian Church, which occurred during the sixteenth century, usurious transactions were forbidden for and avoided by all believing Jews, Christians and Muslims. During the Reformation, however, the Jews argued that they were entitled to charge non-Jews interest, the Christians argued that instead of ‘no interest’ they would permit ‘low interest’, and at a much later stage some of the Muslims argued that if interest was given a different name, like ‘service charge’, then it was no longer interest. As soon as interest began to be charged, the value of money was affected, since it had now become a commodity in itself, not merely a means of exchange, and accordingly its value was now marginally subject to the market forces of supply and demand.

The first banks were formed to look after other people’s money by keeping it in a safe place, although of course even at this stage money still had a palpable and valuable form. The practice arose whereby when someone deposited gold or silver in the bank, the banker would give the depositor a written receipt, whereby he promised to repay ‘the bearer on demand’ the gold or silver when that receipt was presented to him. The practice then arose that these receipts became transferable. Thus the depositor of the gold was able to buy goods to the value of the gold in the bank, by giving his receipt to the seller of the goods. The seller of the goods could then take that receipt to the bank, and collect the gold, even though it was not he who had originally deposited the gold there.

Since gold and silver are relatively heavy, and since paper is relatively light, the bankers then hit upon the idea of printing paper money. Anyone who deposited gold and silver with them was given this paper money. That paper money could then be used in any number of consecutive transactions, the understanding being that anyone at any time who had these notes come into his or her possession could, if he or she wanted, take them to the bank and exchange them for the gold or silver which they represented.

At this relatively simple stage, during the mid-nineteenth century, every paper note was backed by its equivalent amount of gold or silver. You could exchange one for the other at any time. It was also at this stage, if not before, that the bankers discovered that for every thirteen pounds of gold or silver deposited with them only one of these thirteen pounds was actually physically required by the customer to spend at any one time, which left the bankers free to loan on interest, or otherwise profitably invest, the other twelve pounds.

This meant, in effect, that for every thirteen paper pound notes, only one needed to be backed by gold, and this is what happened. It was no longer the case that every paper note referred back to its equivalent in gold or silver. Instead, for every pound's worth of gold or silver which the banks had in their vaults, thirteen paper pound notes were printed.

At this stage, however, you could still go into the bank, produce a paper pound, ask for a pound's worth of gold, and get it. Provided that not everyone tried to exchange their paper money for gold or silver at the same time, the banks were 'safe', even though in fact not all the paper money was backed by gold any more. At this stage, in real terms, paper money was only really 'worth' one thirteenth of what it used to be worth.

Gradually people became so used to using paper money that no-one even thought of going to the bank and asking for gold or silver in exchange. Everyone believed that the paper money was 'worth' what it said it was worth on its two sides, that is its 'face' value. At the same time the volume of the banks' business was increasing, as the origins of what is today's consumer producer process began to get under way and become established. This meant that the banking system was creating more and more money, not by printing more bank notes, but by charging interest.

Debts owed to the banks – especially vast national debts – grew on

paper in the ledgers, as the interest ticked up, but the money created in this way had no direct connection with the money which was already in existence, and which was backed by gold in the proportion of thirteen paper to one gold or silver. In effect, money was being created out of nothing, and this 'out of nothing' money was not even being manifested in the form of pound notes, but was merely being given a tenuous reality by being recorded in a ledger, or as today, in a computer.

This put the banks in a more precarious position. If, for example, everyone decided to draw their paper money out of the bank at the same time, the banks simply would not be able to produce it, simply because the volume of money, which was recorded as existing in the ledgers or in the computers, was so much greater than the number of printed money notes in actual circulation. Thus at this stage there were two credibility tricks which the banks had to play on the growing number of customers, who were needed by the banks for both profit and manipulation purposes.

The first trick was to fool everyone into thinking that all the paper money was still 'backed' by gold, even though people no longer tried to change paper notes for their gold equivalent. The second trick was to fool everyone into thinking that all the money, which existed according to the computer and ledger records, actually existed in the form of paper notes. Neither of these illusions created by the freemasonic magician bankers was real, but as long as the great majority of the population thought they were real, then the whole magical but totally illusory system continued to work, and indeed continues to work today.

As a result of the massive debts created during the first world war – according to 'official' estimates there was a 475 per cent increase in the world's national debts as a whole between 1914 and 1920 – the vast gulf that now existed between the volume of money that had been created through interest, and the volume of paper money that had actually been printed, was so great that it was no longer feasible to maintain the thirteen paper to one gold ratio. During the next decade, therefore, the international banking system abandoned the gold standard altogether, and from this point onwards it was no longer possible to take a paper note into a bank and demand its equivalent in gold or silver. From this point onwards, the 'value' of paper currencies could be altered by the international banking system and the international money markets almost at will. From this point onwards the 'value' of

money was increasingly determined by supply and demand on the international money markets and by 'government policy' as regards exports, imports and the balance of payments.

As a result of the even more massive debts created during the second world war, and after two hundred years of compound interest at work, the world's national debts were now so ridiculously large that supra-national banking institutions such as the I.M.F. and the World Bank had to be created in order to regulate a situation where millions and billions and trillions were being made and lost in accordance with predetermined – and eventually fully computerised – mathematical formulas. 'Inflation' had come of age.

Clearly one of the greatest dangers to the freemasonic banking system was and is that too many people would ask for too much paper money at the same time. Although endless amounts of more paper money could easily be printed, with a very large numeral being printed on each individual piece of paper to represent its face value if necessary, there was always the danger that the general public would see through the illusion and realise that however large the number which had been printed on the note, it still was not really worth a penny.

It was only by having a carefully regulated flow of paper money – not too plentiful, and not too scarce – that the illusion of normality and 'business as usual' could be sustained and maintained. After all, very few people whose wealth was tied up in the banking system could bear the thought of the fragile web being blown away, of the whole system collapsing, of their discovering that their tens, or their hundreds, or their thousands, or even their millions or billions or trillions, were all equally worthless.

In order to regulate this supply and demand difficulty, and to keep the now fluctuating value of money within what appeared to be 'reasonable' limits, people like John Maynard Keynes came up with new theories of economics which were in keeping with the new paper-based interest-inflated currencies of the world, and which were designed to replace the Victorian theories of *laissez faire*, which could only, and had only, worked in a situation where real money, gold and silver with inherent value, was being used.

Basically Keynes drew people's attention to the fact that the demand for paper money in the hand could be regulated, by making spending and saving either more or less attractive, by raising or lowering the bank

rate, that is the rate at which interest would be charged on loans and paid out on savings deposits. Put very simply, the higher the rate, the more it costs to borrow and the more interest you will receive on your savings deposits. Accordingly high interest rates encourage people to borrow less, spend less and save more. Conversely low interest rates encourage people to borrow more and therefore spend more, and to save less because if money is not going to 'grow', very quickly, you might as well spend it.

In effect, Keynes's theories of economics appeared to achieve two things. Firstly, when applied to the producer consumer process, they were used to regulate the pace and extent of business activity, by making it more or less profitable and therefore possible. Secondly, they were used to regulate the demand for paper money, by regulating the pace and extent of borrowing and saving – and therefore of spending.

Today there has been a further development in the international banking system's strategy to ensure that not too many people ask for money which does not even exist in paper form, but only in computer memory, at the same time. Basically they are attempting to make it unnecessary to have money at all. This has been done by encouraging not only cheque transactions, but also the increasing use of plastic card transactions.

The way that the plastic card transaction works is that when you produce your plastic card, which contains information as to your identity, together with the bank's guarantee that it will honour your financial commitments incurred by using that card, then a record of that information is made and sent to the bank together with the relevant details of the transaction, and the bank debits your account and credits the account of the person from whom, for example, you have bought the goods.

In this kind of transaction no money passes hands. All that happens is that figures are moved from one field to another in the banking network computer database memory. As more and more of these transactions occur and become commonplace, paper money increasingly ceases to have relevance. If this way of transacting is carried out to its ultimate and logical extent, then eventually there will be hardly any demand for paper money at all, because virtually all transactions will be carried out via the plastic card, and the monetary result recorded in the bank's computer – a plus here, and a minus there – and of course with

a little nibble here and a little nibble there for the bank, which not only charges the buyer interest on whatever has been 'borrowed' in order to complete the transaction, but which also charges the seller a percentage of the total amount of any given transaction.

This trend – assisted by the widespread use of direct debit and direct credit facilities – has been reflected in England, for example, by the fact that since 1986 people have no longer had the right to be paid in the 'coin of the realm' – which up until the mid-nineteenth century used to be predominantly gold and silver, rather than paper, until, as we have already seen, the gold and silver were withdrawn from circulation, and paper introduced instead. Now that an employer is no longer obliged to pay employees in the 'paper of the realm', this means that employees can be paid either by cheque or by a direct credit to the employee's bank account, instead of in 'cash'. In other words, virtually everyone in England now 'needs' to have a bank account in order to have access to their pay. In other words, virtually everyone in the country now relies on the banking system.

The general aim is to eventually have the plastic card system operating throughout the world, because that will mean that virtually everyone is dependant on the banking system, and that will mean that everyone is that more easy to control. If, for example, all your 'wealth' is stored in your bank's computer database, then it can be 'frozen' at the touch of a button, or deductions can be made at source in compliance with, for example, a court order. In other words, if you value your 'money', then you will have to behave.

Conversely, on the other side of the 'coin' so to speak, this is why today's bank robber no longer needs a balaclava, a gun and getaway car, but rather a computer, a modem and the software and ability needed to hack into and out of the banking network computer system.

If this trend within the banking system continues along its way, then by the twenty-first century most people's credit cards will be their identity cards. Everyone's personal details will be on the computer, their income and expenditure subject to assessment and analysis, their credit-rating monitored, even their movements recorded via the bank computer's record of the times and places where their plastic cards have been used – and of course everyone will be encouraged to spend more than they actually have, to be constantly in debt, just like whatever government they may 'choose' to elect – which, whatever the state of

the balance of payments, will always have a growing national debt to service, as long as the system lasts.

And as the different computer databases increase their interlink capacity – the banking database, the TV licence database, the house-owner database, the car-owner database, the electricity, gas and water supplies databases, the telephone database, the various social benefits databases, the electoral role database, the various police records and national security databases, to name but a few – then perhaps the scenario envisaged in George Orwell's *Nineteen Eighty-Four* will not seem quite as far-fetched as when the book was first published in 1949 – or even as when the year 1984 itself came and went, with the new world order still, at that point, to be publicly announced.



We see, therefore, that the influence of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, through its international banking system, has almost reached the stage where paper money is not only worthless, but also it does not matter that it is worthless, because everyone now depends on the banks for their services in conducting their financial transactions. The banks themselves have become the medium of exchange – and now virtually every transaction can be done with a piece of plastic, or over the telephone, or on the internet. Paper money has almost become redundant. And as the internet becomes more established, financial transactions are becoming even more tenuous and even less 'physical' than ever before.

If you use the internet to make a purchase, then you do not even have to hand your credit card over to another person to be swiped, or sign the receipt; you do not even have to talk to a person over the telephone to give them your credit card number, expiry date and security code; all it needs is a few taps on your computer keyboard, a few clicks on your mouse, and goods can be advertised or purchased, bills paid or sent, stocks and shares bought or sold, and fortunes made or lost.



And if the power supply which makes it all possible for this fragile web to function is suddenly cut, then what? Allah is the power which powers the power supply. There is no strength and no power except from Allah.

It is on usury that the new world order is based – and since it is based on usury it is bound to collapse, because usury is forbidden, and because



Allah and His Messenger have declared war on usury:

**O you who believe, fear Allah and give up what remains to you of usury, if you are indeed believers. If you do not, then take notice of war from Allah and His Messenger.**

*(Qur'an: Surat'al-Baqara – 2.278-279)*

Who has ever been at war with Allah and His Messenger, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, and won? And even if there were no war on usury, all things must pass.



People in a kafir society are not only manoeuvred into needing the banking system, but, as we have already seen, they are also encouraged to spend more than they have, and accordingly to become indebted to the various financial institutions, especially the banks. This ensures continued dependence on the freemasonic controlled kafir banking system, whether by the man in the street at his local branch, or by the government of a country at its 'central' bank or at the World Bank or the I.M.F. It is at this stage that the actual extent of the indebtedness is seen to be irrelevant. After all it only exists in the computer.

What is significant is the actual extent of the dependence on the banking system, for the greater the dependence on it, the greater the manipulation control it exercises, and accordingly the greater is the influence of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, over the world. The degree and significance of that control and that influence can be measured by the fact that if you merely closed down all the banks for a little while – or rather if you just turned off the banking computer network – then the whole consumer producer process as we know it today would collapse, and then it would be time for the next world order.



The aim of the freemasons is to perfect the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, by involving everyone in the producer consumer process, as far as their work and consumption of goods is concerned, whilst ensuring the smooth running and overall balance of activity in that process, by having everyone and every business concern dependent on their banking system.

In effect, they wish to arrive at the stage where the people of the world are completely caught up in one synchronised and unified field of

activity, that is economic activity. If this aim were to be achieved, there would of course be only one currency, which would not even take the form of paper money, but which would be identified solely in terms of computer credits and debits. Ideally everyone would have their basic needs taken care of, but of course some would have them taken care of better than others, and the freemasonic ruling elite would have them taken care of best of all, as has always been the case. This would mean that everyone would be relatively comfortable in the freemasonic idea of paradise now on earth made fact – but they would be completely unprepared for what comes after death.

Fortunately we know from the *Qur'an* and the *Hadith* that this illusory dream will never be realised. The new world order is doomed to fail. There will inevitably be a collapse in the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, before the freemasons' ideal can ever be made to happen. The social decay which accompanies the way in which the system operates means that the people who are most exploited by the system will cease to play the consumer producer game long before this dream of a unified global economic pyramid can be realised.

The point in time is bound to be reached when enough people realise that the money in their pockets and the money recorded in the computer memory – whether the figures are 'plus' or 'minus' – is absolutely worthless. This will mean that they will cease to become dependent on the kafir banking system, and this will happen long before everyone has been issued with their plastic economic identity cards.

Most important of all is the fact that the present resurgence of Islam means that more and more people are severing connections with the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, and are accordingly ceasing to be trapped by the system. The more people cease to give reality to the system, the more it ceases to exist. As the number of real Muslims grows, and as they begin to reunite, so the controllers of the Dajjal system will try to wipe them out. These attempts will find their most extreme expression when Dajjal the individual has appeared, and leads his army against the Muslims who have gathered around the Mahdi.

This final and ultimate conflict between the two opposites, kufir and iman, which is referred to in other writings as Armageddon, or Har Meggidon, will result in the death of Dajjal the individual and his followers, and indeed of the whole Dajjal system, thanks to the reappearance and intervention of the Prophet Jesus, on whom be peace.

The period of unified and peaceful Muslim rule, in accordance with what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah*, under the Mahdi, the rightly guided leader of the Muslims, will then commence. This will be the next world order.



The mumin understanding of the nature of money is utterly opposite that of the kafir system of economics. This is because it is based on an understanding of the true nature of existence. The mumin knows that only Allah exists, although this knowing differs from person to person. Some know it intellectually and others know it through direct witnessing. It follows that the mumin knows that since money does not really exist, it is worth nothing, right from the start. To the mumin money is just a medium of exchange, but not a commodity in itself. There is thus absolutely no point in hanging on to it whatsoever, and since the mumin has no anxiety about provision and shelter, his commerce is, as we have already seen, based on giving out in the knowledge that whatever he or she gives out will be returned by Allah ten times over.

There is no need for the Muslims to amass capital in the way that the kafir banks do, because their capital is the generosity of Allah, which is limitless. There is no need for the Muslims to borrow and lend on interest, because Allah's return on any gift made in the Name of Allah is far higher than any interest that anyone could hope to charge – that is, the equivalent of one thousand per cent. There is no need to manipulate people by getting them into debt, because since the body politic of the muslim community is unified there is no body of people within it who seek to control and manipulate and exploit the others.

The only elite in the muslim community are the awliya, whose stations are greater than the others because they fear and love Allah more than the others; it is because of their great knowledge of Allah and therefore of how existence works that they know that the more they serve the others, and the more they give out in the Name of Allah, the more Allah will look after them and give them what they want – which in their case is not other than what they need.

Muslim commerce is based on trust and on giving out. It is dynamic and free flowing. There is no need for Keynesian control techniques. Kafir economics is based on exploitation of others and retention. It is static and stagnant. It stinks. As 'Umar Ibrahim Vadillo points out in his book, *Islam Against Economics*:

Islamic Law defines the parameters within which trade and business will be just. Economics defines the parameters within which an economy will be more efficient. Islamic Law and economics are totally different approaches to existence that create two different ways of life. Islam rejects usury, while economics is based on usury. Economics has managed to justify what is Islamically a crime. This is possible because economics has a methodology and an object of study which covers up the inherent injustice of usury. In other words, economics can neither properly analyse nor identify the nature of usury.

And as ‘Umar Ibrahim Vadillo concludes in his book, *The Workers have been Told a Lie about their own Situation*:

The only way out of the usurious system is Islam. Because only Islam is government without state and commerce without usury. The age of judaism and christianity is over. Only by understanding that ‘there is no god but Allah’, can the people stop worshipping useless perishing things, like the state, money and their job, and be free. Only by accepting ‘Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah’ can there be justice in the transaction. Islam or Economics, Islam or the Banking System, this is the decision everybody will have to make.

It is clear, from this analysis, that there is no such thing as a halal ‘islamic’ bank. As ‘Umar Ibrahim Vadillo observes in his book, *The End of Economics*:

The so-called ‘Islamic bank’ is a usurious institution contrary to Islam. The fallacy of the ‘Islamic bank’ is an absurd attempt to resolve, as was done in the case of Christianity, the unswerving opposition of Islam to usury for fourteen centuries. Since its origin the ‘Islamic bank’ has been patronised and promoted by usurers. Their only intention was to incorporate the thousand million Muslims of the world – who in general would scornfully avoid using any banking or usurious institution – into the international financial and monetary system. The artificial creation by the colonial powers of the so-called ‘Islamic states’, itself a contradiction in terms, whose character is markedly anti-Islamic, was the

historical result of the end of territorial colonisation and the beginning of financial neo-colonisation. The universal establishment of the western constitutional model (the model of the french revolution) brings with it the establishment of artificial and unnatural boundaries, the creation of a repressive ministerial bureaucracy, the exacting of taxes, the imposition of an artificial yet legal money, and the legalisation of usury itself (the banking system), all measures which are profoundly contrary to Islam. The Islamic bank is nothing other than a typically degenerate product of the so-called 'Islamic states'.

And as 'Umar Ibrahim Vadillo concludes in his book, *Fatwa on Paper Money*:

The founders of the so-called Salafiyya movement or modernist movement were the first to declare publicly from a recognised position, like the University of al-Azhar, that the use of banking was halal. The implications of this declaration can be seen in our day with the implantation in the Muslim lands of the 'Islamic Bank'. The 'Islamic Bank' is a completely usurious institution used as a means to lure the Muslims who still reject the banks to enter in the banking system. The 'Islamic Bank' is a Trojan horse in Dar al-Islam.



Given the dynamic nature of muslim commerce, it comes as no surprise to learn that the value of money, in the time of the first muslim community of Madina al-Munawarra, was based not on how much gold or silver it could buy – because their money was gold and silver – but on how much gold or silver was needed to buy a given volume of grain.

Since grain was readily available, unless there was a severe drought, and could be grown by anyone, it followed that it could not be used – by either withholding it or flooding the market with it – to make the value of money fluctuate, in the way that the artificially limited gold and silver markets of today are manipulated in order to raise and lower the apparent value of today's worthless money, almost at will. This meant that the basic value of money – in other words, its purchasing power – remained stable in Madina al-Munawarra, and accordingly there was no such thing as what the kafirun call 'inflation'. Furthermore, since the taxes required by the *Qur'an* are so low, it followed that there was no

stimulus to make people raise their prices in order to beat the effects of the taxes, as happens in today's 'modern' so-called advanced kafir state. Accordingly prices remained stable, and so again there was no inflation caused by rising prices.

Furthermore, since it is not permissible to make more than thirty per cent profit on essential goods, the Muslims in that first community did not raise prices too high out of sheer greed, if they feared Allah and the Last Day – which they did. Since the value of money was stable, and since prices were stable, it followed that incomes were stable, so there was no inflation caused by excessive 'wage demands', as happens today in the so-called 'modern' kafir state.

Finally, since Allah expressly forbids the charging of interest, saying more than once in the *Qur'an* that it is haram, and will take you to the Fire if you indulge in it, it follows that there was no opening for the kind of business institution which today lives off other people's indebtedness to it, by charging interest.

Allah says in the *Qur'an* that the first community of Madina al-Munawarra was the best community that has ever lived on the face of the earth. It follows that in order to know how to live, it is necessary to see how they lived. Having seen this, it is possible to apply their way of doing things to the way we do things today. The kafir argument that their way of life is now 'out of date', and does not and cannot apply to the twenty-first century, is palpably weak. The scenery and the props may change, but the human situation remains the same, and the way of the first community is the best way of dealing with it – and it will remain so until the end of time. Following the way of the first community of Madina al-Munawarra does not mean religiously imitating their way of life in every detail. It does not mean having to abandon today's technology, where that technology can be usefully used, and used with the discrimination between what is halal and what is haram.

The way of the first community was based on what is in the *Qur'an* and on the example of the Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, who was described by his wife 'A'isha as being 'the *Qur'an* walking'. Records of that example still exist today, both in the *Qur'an* and the *Hadith* collections, and in human beings, notably the awliya, who have had the existential way of living of the Prophet and the knowledge which goes with it transmitted to them, person to person, from the time of the Prophet Muhammad and the first community up

until the present day, without a break in that chain of transmission.

The nature of the *Qur'an* is such that the guidance in it can be applied to any situation. Where there is no specific mention of what to do in the situation in which you find yourself, it is still possible to see what to do by doing *ijtihad*. *Ijtihad* is the process whereby you see what to do in the light of what you know of what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Hadith* and the way of Muhammad. To begin with it is a conscious thinking process, but as the heart becomes more finely tuned and illuminated, *ijtihad* becomes a reflex action. You know what to do and what not to do in the moment, and without having to think about it. If you are not sure about something all you have to do is open the *Qur'an*, and you will see the ayah that is the sign which contains the answer. Thus it is not only Muslim commerce which is dynamic, but the whole way of life in whatever sphere. The nature of phenomenal existence is such that there is a constant and dynamic interplay of many opposites, which is always in motion and never exactly repeats itself, even though patterns and cycles are clearly recognisable. You are part of that interplay. You are not separate from it.

The way of Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him and on all who follow him, is the way of knowing what to do in that interplay, so that you never fight it, but go with it. By living in this way you arrive at knowledge of Allah from Whom this interplay of opposites originates and returns – not only in the very beginning, and at the very end, but also in every moment. By living in this way you arrive at knowledge of yourself, and you find that the whole of existence is your self, and whoever knows their self truly knows their Lord, Allah. When you live in this way and with this knowledge then you are a human being, who acts with humanity and with humility. You are pleased with Allah and Allah is pleased with you, and in this state you enter the Garden.



The result of the way in which all the *kafir* sub-systems and institutions in the *kafir* system, that is the *Dajjal* system, work and operate, is to de-personalise and de-humanise the human transaction. Where in the past people used to give to each other, now they charge each other for services rendered. Where once common sense, generosity, wisdom, flexibility, and above all humanity, used to characterise human transactions, now the rules of the various systems which together form the *Dajjal*

system are often applied with automatic and unfeeling inflexibility, even when the outcome is patently ridiculous. The complementary descriptions which are used to affirm and promote the system do not in the least accord with what is actually going on as conditions in general steadily continue to deteriorate. The more citizens' charters and other official guarantees there are, the less people are treated like human beings. Patients in hospitals are now called 'customers' and people in general are now called 'consumers'. The words, the conditioning, the programming, the explanations, the reasons – all of these are no more than a web of illusion which has been spun by the controlling elite of the kafir system that is the Dajjal system, the freemasons, so that they can entangle and enslave the many, as they struggle to free themselves.

The kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, uses people until they are of no further use to that system – and then they are discarded. People are given numbers and treated like robots, because machines are much easier to control than human beings. Machines submit to whatever you do with them without complaint, provided they are kept in running order. There is no need to behave like a human being towards a machine, because machines cannot respond like humans. You just use them until they have come to the end of their working life, and then you get rid of them and carry on with their replacements – until, that is, the time comes for you to be replaced as well.

It is only possible to treat people like robots, because half the people in the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, already are robots. The so-called people who are completely happy with the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, are the people who have been taken over, are the living proof of the manifestation of Dajjal as a world wide social and cultural phenomenon and Dajjal as an unseen force, will be the people who recognise, support and follow Dajjal the individual when he appears, will be for the Fire. The people who abhor the kafir system that is the Dajjal system are the human beings who have not been taken over, who if they are not already Muslims will be Muslims, insh'Allah, who will recognise, support and follow the Mahdi when he appears, who are for the Garden.

You belong to either one group or the other group, and there is no third group. You cannot extricate yourself from the creational process of which you are a part, and which is based on the dynamic interplay of opposites. There is no escape. Turning your back on 'the problem' will



not make it disappear. Hiding your head in the sand will not change who you are, but will merely make it extremely difficult to see where you are ultimately going. There is no hyper-space button to press and magically transfer you to another location or a different context. You can change your name, or your address, or your possessions, or your job, or your partner, but you cannot change your true identity.

There is one other definable group who in fact belong with the kafirun. This group are the munafiqun, that is the people who say they are muslim but who in reality are kafir, because they do not trust in Allah, and they do not follow the way of Muhammad, even though they know that it exists. The munafiqun can often be recognised by their constant criticism and bad opinion of the muminun. The Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, said that the munafiqun have four main characteristics, even if they do the prayer and fast Ramadan: when they speak, they tell lies; when they argue they are abusive; when they make a promise, they act treacherously; and when they are trusted, they betray that trust.

The munafiqun are a part of the Dajjal system, and when the army of the Mahdi confronts the army of Dajjal the individual, the munafiqun will be with the followers of the Dajjal. In the next world the munafiqun will be in the deepest part of the Fire, because they did not act on what they knew in this world, that is they did not follow the way of Muhammad, even though it was there for them to follow, and they knew it.

The people who are attempting to follow the example of the Prophets who came before the Prophet Muhammad, such as, for example, those who brought the original Vedas, Buddha, Moses and Jesus, are in a difficult position. The sincere among them wish to worship Allah, but it is impossible for them to worship Allah in the way that Allah has indicated that He is to be worshipped, because the holy books which they now have are not the original books which their Prophets were given, blessings and peace be on them, and because the existential life pattern of those Prophets has been lost for ever.

It follows that the people who still attempt to follow the way of these Prophets in the present age, will never have true knowledge of Allah, because this knowledge only comes to the one who embodies what has been revealed to the Prophet whom he or she follows. If the existential life pattern of embodying that teaching has been lost, and if the teaching itself has been lost by having been changed by corrupt people in the

past, then it is not possible to follow the original life pattern of the Prophet concerned or his original teaching, and therefore knowledge of the Real, Allah, is not possible, by holding to the remnants of these earlier teachings.

Allah says in the *Qur'an* that everything in creation worships Allah, only some people do not realise this. Every atom in existence is sustained by the power of Allah and is proof of Allah and worships Allah. All the kingdoms in the phenomenal world and in the Unseen praise Allah, but only man is capable of having gnosis of Allah. The one who has this knowledge of Allah worships and praises Allah with a greater understanding than any other created being or thing. The atoms in the body of a kafir bear witness to the limitless perfection and splendour of Allah, but with his or her words and actions the kafir denies the very existence of Allah. The atoms in the body of one who trusts in Allah bear witness to the limitless perfection and splendour of Allah, and so do his or her words and actions, and what is more the one who trusts in Allah knows this, and has knowledge of Allah.

Whoever tries to follow the way of one of the Prophets who came before the Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, is somewhere in between these two opposites. The atoms in his or her body bear witness to the limitless perfection and splendour of Allah, but because he or she is not following a guidance which is still intact, it follows that only some but not all of his or her actions affirms this Reality and his or her understanding of what he or she is doing, and accordingly his or her understanding and knowledge of Allah, is therefore incomplete and inevitably partially distorted.

Only by knowing Allah can you truly worship Allah. The worship of Allah by the one who has gnosis of Allah is deeper than the worship of Allah by the one who only has an intellectual understanding of Allah, is deeper than the worship of Allah by the one who only has limited information about Allah, is deeper than the worship of Allah by the one who has distorted information about Allah, is deeper than the worship of Allah by the one who only worships Allah by virtue of the existence which Allah has given to him or her, but who consciously thinks that Allah does not exist.

The greater the knowledge that a person has of Allah, the more he or she realises that he or she knows nothing. Allah says again and again in the *Qur'an* that Allah knows and you do not know. One of the signs of

ignorance is thinking you know when in fact you do not know. This is especially true of the kafirun, but it also applies to those who are content to try and follow the distorted remnants of earlier Prophetic teachings, which are now defunct and not really for this time.

Those who have not yet had access to the living life transaction of Islam cannot be blamed for not following it. Allah says of the people who follow Prophets other than Muhammad in this time, that those who worship Allah with sincerity have nothing to fear from Allah on the Last Day. Allah also says in the *Qur'an* that once a person knows about Islam, no other way of life is acceptable to Allah. Surely the life transaction with Allah is the life transaction of Islam.

The life transaction with Allah always has been the life transaction of Islam. All the Prophets embodied the life transaction of Islam – one of whose meanings is 'accepting the way things are', including 'submitting the self in worshipping Allah' – but the only life transaction of Islam which is still intact today, and which is for today until the end of the world, is the life transaction of Islam which was brought by the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, and on his family, and on his companions, and on all who sincerely follow him – and right now the choice is yours.



The only viable alternative to the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, is the way of Islam. All other apparent alternatives never succeed in being established. Either these movements are rapidly eliminated and annihilated by the system, or else they are reshaped and absorbed into the system, or else they are in reality already part and parcel of the system, and any apparent conflict between the two is merely on the surface.

The reason why Islam is the only viable alternative to the kafir system that is the Dajjal system is that the way of Islam is diametrically opposed to the way of Kufr. They are opposites, and one of the secrets of life is that everything lies in its opposite. In the dynamic interplay of opposites, which is the creational process, the interplay between kufr and iman is such, that once you have one, you will inevitably have the other. Anyone who is awake sees that this is true not only of themselves, but also of other individuals, of other families, of other communities, of other towns and cities, of other countries – and indeed of the whole world. Since, at the time of writing this, the kafir system that is the Dajjal system is the dominant force in the world today, it is inevitable that

the life transaction of Islam must replace it tomorrow. Everything lies in its opposite, and there is no changing the way of Allah.

The only way of appreciating what the way of Islam is, is to become a Muslim if you are not one already, and to follow that way. No one can bring you to Islam and no one can take you away from it. Allah says in the *Qur'an* that there is no compulsion in the life transaction. It is Allah Who makes the straight way plain from the crooked one – and the straight way is the way of Islam, and it is as narrow as the edge between the two sides of the sharpest sword. This is why the wise who take this way rely on Allah for success.

It is Allah Who expands the heart to Islam. You cannot make people become muslim, even the ones you love. It is Allah Who gives the ability to discern the differences between kufr and iman, and between what is displeasing to Allah and what is pleasing to Allah, and between what is haram and what is halal, and between what words and actions lead to the Fire and what words and actions lead to the Garden.

Above all, it is Allah Who gives knowledge of Allah, to whomever He pleases, as He pleases. You will not acquire knowledge of Allah by looking for it, but only if you look for it will you acquire it. So do not rely on your actions, but rely on Allah.

In reality everything is from Allah, including everyone and whatever they do. The whole cosmos comes from and returns to Allah, and it does not contain Allah, but Allah contains it, and no form or idea in the seen or unseen worlds can be associated with Allah. Allah is not like anything. If you have an idea of Allah, Allah is not like that idea. You are the idea of Allah. The whole of creation is Allah's idea. To understand this you have to put your head on the ground before Allah. Until you have stood, and bowed, and prostrated, and sat in the presence of Allah in the same way that the Prophet Muhammad stood, and bowed, and prostrated, and sat in the presence of Allah, you cannot begin to appreciate what the way of Islam is, nor can you begin to have real knowledge, that is knowledge of the Real, Allah.

The reason why the Jews and the Christians cannot have real knowledge, that is knowledge of the Real, Allah, is that they do not do the same prayer as the prayer that their respective Prophets, Moses and Jesus, once did. The way that Moses and Jesus prayed, peace be on them, and the words that they actually used, have been lost for ever. The prayer of the Muslims, on the other hand, and the words they use, are the same as the prayer of the Prophet Muhammad, and the words

that he actually used. When you recite the *Qur'an* you recite the words which the angel Gabriel recited to the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, and which the Prophet Muhammad recited to his followers, may Allah be pleased with all of them.

In reality everything is from Allah. The entire cosmos, both in the seen and in the unseen worlds – in the mulk, and in the malakut, and in the jabarut – is the manifestation of the Names and Attributes of Allah, which display the Beauty and the Majesty of Allah. All that people think good, and all that they think bad, is from Allah, by the decree of Allah. To have knowledge of Allah it is necessary to abandon all value judgements, and all 'moral' judgements. It is necessary to stop thinking, so that you can let the heart take over. Existence does not cease when you stop thinking – rather you see it in a different light. Relax the mind and learn to swim. Clean the heart with remembrance of Allah, in order that you may find what is in it. Allah. Allah said on the lips of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, in a hadith qudsi, 'The whole universe cannot contain Me, but the heart of the mumin contains Me.' In Reality there is only Allah. Allah said on the lips of the Prophet, in a hadith qudsi, 'La ilaha il'Allah means Me and only Me.' Wherever you look, there is the face of Allah. Everything is passing away except the face of Allah. There is no reality, only the Reality. There is only Allah. Allah.

Allah guides whomever He wishes and Allah leads astray whomever He wishes. Allah gives life and Allah takes away life. Allah increases and decreases provision. Allah said, on the lips of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, in a hadith qudsi, 'I send people to the Garden and I do not care, and I send people to the Fire and I do not care.' Allah is the doer of you and your actions, and you are responsible for your actions. On the Last Day you will not be asked what others were doing, you will be asked what you were doing, and you will not question Allah, but Allah will question you, and depending on what you did in this world, and the intentions behind what you did, and your expectation of Allah, and the mercy and wrath of Allah, you will either be for the Fire, or you will be for the Garden.

Allah has power over everything. There is no strength to do right action or wrong action, except from Allah. There is no strength and no power, except from Allah. You are helpless – but right now the choice is yours.



The only way of following the way of Islam is to keep company with those who do their best to follow the example of the first community of Muslims who gathered round the Prophet Muhammad at Madina al-Munawarra, the illuminated place where the life transaction is, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him and them. Such a company will only be found round a person whom Allah loves, and who loves and fears Allah, that is a wali of Allah, a friend and lover of Allah.

The wali of Allah is the one who, after the Prophet Muhammad, comes nearest to embodying and understanding what is in the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah*. The wali of Allah is like a drop compared to the ocean of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him. The wali of Allah is the best of guides because Allah guides the ones whom He loves, and no one is loved more by Allah than the awliya. The awliya are the ones to whom the living life transaction of Islam, and the knowledge which goes with it, have been transmitted in an unbroken chain of transmission, from the Prophet Muhammad, person to person, to the awliya of today.

It is the awliya of today who are the ones who best know and follow the way of Islam. The greatest of them meet and talk with the Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, in true dream and in direct vision, receiving confirmation and guidance whenever it is needed. Help comes to them from the Prophet Muhammad in every moment. The excellence of their knowledge of the means – Muhammad – is only matched by the excellence of their knowledge of the end – Allah. The awliya of Allah have gnosis of Allah, the highest knowledge there is, and it is this knowledge which gives them certainty as to the true nature of existence.

There are three stages of certainty. The mithal, that is the likeness, of these three stages is that firstly you are told of the fire in the forest – and without seeing it you believe the one who told you; then you see the fire in the forest for yourself – and you hear its crackling and smell its smoke and feel its heat, so that now there is no room to doubt its existence; and then finally you are the fire in the forest – utterly transformed and annihilated by and in it.

In this final stage of certainty is the station of the greatest of the awliya, and the meaning of this station is that Allah loves them, and when Allah loves them, then He is the tongue with which they speak, and the hand with which they grasp, and the foot with which they

walk. It is because of this that their pleasure is Allah's pleasure, and their guidance is Allah's guidance, and they are the best of guides, and they cannot be associated with Allah who is the Guide.

It is from amongst the awliya that the Mahdi – who will be one of the Prophet Muhammad's descendants, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him and on all his family – will appear. The Mahdi will be the most rightly guided of guides, and all the real Muslims will recognise that.



A distinction must be made between the living life transaction of Islam, which has been transmitted to and preserved by the awliya, and the dead religion of Islam which has been created and perpetuated by the people who obtain their knowledge solely from books. The awliya use books, but they do not rely on them. Their knowledge comes from fear of Allah and by the grace of Allah. If your knowledge does not come from the fear of Allah then you have been deceived. One of the great awliya in the past, Abu Yazid al-Bistami, said to a man who relied solely on books, 'You get your knowledge from the dead, but we get our knowledge from the Living who never dies.' Another of the great awliya in the past, Abu'l-'Abbas al-Mursi, said, 'If the Prophet Muhammad left my sight for a moment, I would no longer consider myself a Muslim.'

At best the ones who rely solely on books for their knowledge of Islam only ever reach the first stage of certainty. They will go to the Garden, insha'Allah, but they are not the best of guides. The danger in following them is that you may end up worshipping Islam instead of Allah, mistaking, in effect, the means for the end.

The way of Islam is so that you can have knowledge of Allah, and worship Allah, and the best knowledge of Allah is gnosis of Allah, and the one who has gnosis of Allah worships Allah with a deeper understanding of Allah than the one who only possesses information – however much – concerning Allah.

At worst the ones who rely solely on books for their knowledge of Islam will side-track you away from Islam, because they do not always act on what they know. Only take your knowledge from those who act on what they know. Is, for example, the leader of their community an Amir – which is the *Sunnah* of the Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace; or is the community run by a democratically elected committee – which is the sunnah of the Jews and the Christians?

If there is a dispute between two members of the community, do they go to the Amir for a decision in accordance with the *Qur'an* and the *Sunnah* – a decision which they both agree to accept and abide by beforehand; or do they resort to the kafir legal system for judgement and enforcement?

Is the beginning and end of Ramadan announced to the community by the Amir – after he has satisfied himself that the new moon has been sighted by at least two reliable witnesses; or is all this decided by a committee who have in fact already secretly decided in advance when Ramadan will begin and end, after referring to an astronomical almanac which only records the times when it has been scientifically predicted that the new moons will most probably be born – but not when they will be capable of being sighted, and most certainly not when they will actually be sighted?

Is the collection and distribution of the zakat supervised by the Amir; or does a committee leave it up to each person's individual conscience and choice, leaving it up to everyone to assess their own zakat and then pay it into a collecting box in the mosque or to a charity of their choice – and simply ignoring those who either refuse or forget to fulfil this obligation?

Is the Imam who leads the community in prayer also the Amir or else someone appointed by the Amir; or is the Imam appointed and controlled by a committee who pay his salary? Are there separate facilities for both men and women in the community's mosque; or do they mix freely there – which is the sunnah of the Christians; or is it a place for 'men only' – which is the sunnah of the Jews?

In other words, does the community have Islam in their actions as well as on their tongues? Usually those who have Islam in their actions have remembrance of Allah on their tongues – and in their hearts. The signs which indicate those who are following the way of Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, and the signs which indicate those who are following the example of their predecessors – meaning the Jews and the Christians, just like a lizard making for its hole – are very clear indeed, for anyone to see.

Only take your knowledge from the one whose actions and words are the same. In an ignorant age a person's words are mistaken for their actions. Such people do not act from certainty but out of expediency. They fear other than Allah and they do not fear Allah. They are con-



fused and they confuse whoever listens to or follows them. The Prophet Muhammad said that there would be some people who would have the *Qur'an* on their tongues, but not in their hearts nor in their actions. He said that they would be the worst people on the face of the earth. These are the munafiqun, the hypocrites, destined for the deepest part of the Fire. One of their signs is that they have no fear in their hearts that there may be hypocrisy in their hearts. They can also sometimes be recognised in that they often consider themselves 'experts' on Islam – in the same way that the kafir expert considers him or her self an 'expert' in a particular field – which often results in their praising themselves and slandering the muminun.

Although they use so-called 'islamic' vocabulary, the institutions which the munafiqun either initiate or support are modelled on the institutions of the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system. In effect, they are part and parcel of the system. Today they are to be found particularly in the Muslim lands whose governments are based on kafir models and controlled by the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system. The munafiqun are often used by corrupt governments to gain the people's acquiescence in and acceptance of such governments, by assuring them that these governments are 'islamic'.

Just in the same way that people in kafir states are persuaded to accept the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, because they are led to believe what the so-called kafir experts tell them, so people in the Muslim lands are persuaded to accept the infiltration of the system into their countries, because they are led to believe the so-called 'islamic' experts who tell them that the ways of the kafirun which their governments have adopted are 'islamic'.

Allah does not always reveal who the munafiqun are, but no doubt as to their identity is left whenever there is a direct confrontation between kufr and iman, since at that point the munafiqun always side with the people of kufr and oppose the Muslims. This is a sure sign of their ignorance and of their lack of trust in Allah, since the reason why they side with the kafirun is that they think that the kafirun are going to come out on top!

The cerebral brand of Islam which they advocate is nothing to do with the living life transaction of Islam, as embodied by the Prophet Muhammad and the first Muslim community of Madina al-Munawarra – simply because they say one thing and do another. The religion of

Islam which they have manufactured is really no more or less than a form of kufr in disguise, just in the same way that the modern religions of Judaism and Christianity are no more or less than different forms of kufr in disguise.

One of the most distinguishing features of these three pseudo-religions is that they are all orchestrated by a hierarchical ruling elite of priests some, but not all, of whom are in fact freemasons into the bargain. They do not oppose the kafir system that is the Dajjal system, but rather they support it, often providing so-called religious ceremonies or even written 'legal' opinions to provide an aura of respectability and credibility to some of the kafir rites and public occasions. In effect, they are a part of the stage show which is put on for the benefit of the general public, in order to disguise the true nature of the activities of the freemasonic ruling elite.

Naturally there are members of each of these three official priesthoods who are sincere in their actions and worship of Allah, but if these people took the trouble to examine the respective teachings of their Prophets even a little more closely, they would find that none of these Prophets, nor indeed any Prophet, ever initiated a priesthood who said 'you need us' to reach Allah.



The real transaction with Allah is between you and Allah direct, and without any intermediary. Your whole life is between you and Allah. Those who have access to the living life transaction of Islam know this.



The teaching of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, is the only Prophetic teaching which is intact today, because the awliya to whom this teaching has been transmitted are all Muslims. You will not find gnostics of Allah, which is what the great awliya are, amongst the Hindus, or the Buddhists, or the Magians, or the Jews, or the Christians, because gnosis of Allah is only possible for the one who has access to, and follows, a Prophetic teaching which is still intact. All the Prophetic teachings which were once followed in their entirety long before the coming of the Prophet Muhammad have either been lost or altered, and either successfully de-potentised by the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, or incorporated into it – and this is also partially true of the people who have turned the original teachings of Islam into a dead re-defined religion.

The few Jews who can still claim to be direct descendants of the original Tribe of Israel which was led by Moses, and the Jews who are not really Jews – that is either those who are descendants of the Khazars, or those who are descendants of Oriental or Sephardic Jews who interbred with other races – do not follow the existential life pattern which was embodied by Moses, peace be on him. The Christians – whether Unitarian or Trinitarian – do not follow the existential life pattern which was embodied by Jesus, peace be on him. The books on which the Jews, and the Jews who are not Jews, and the Christians, rely are unreliable, having been altered and censored by corrupt rabbis and priests in the past, who made changes in order to compromise with kafir rulers, and in order to make a little money on the side.

Furthermore, in both cases it is not even the original revelation which has been changed: In the case of the Jews, there was a point in time in their history – at least six centuries after the death of Moses, peace be on him – when all complete copies of the *Torah* were destroyed by the forces of Nebuchadnezzar when they sacked Jerusalem in 586 BC. The Jews tried to restore it, by gathering together all the surviving remnants and the rabbis who had committed different parts of it to memory, to see if it was possible to reconstitute the original *Torah*. It was not. Still they put an edition together which contained as much as they could find or remember. This was the compilation which was supervised by Ezra during the exile of some of the Jews in Babylon in the 5th century BC, and which he brought to Jerusalem in 458 BC – but it is generally accepted that this compilation was in turn destroyed during the sack of Jerusalem by Antiochus Epeplianus in 161 BC.

It is interesting to note in passing that prior to the exile in Babylon, only the book of Deuteronomy – which had been written in 621 BC and read to the people in the Temple at Jerusalem – had existed in written form. Prior to this – that is, throughout the previous six centuries – the knowledge of the Jews and of their history had been kept alive by means of an oral tradition. Douglas Reed writes in his book, *The Controversy of Zion*:

Significantly, Deuteronomy which appears as the fifth book of today's Bible, with an air of growing naturally out of the previous ones, was the first book to be completed as a whole. Though Genesis and Exodus provide the historical background and mount for it, they were later produced by

the Levites, and Leviticus and Numbers, the other books of the Torah, were compiled even later.

Even if the original *Torah* was successfully memorised accurately by heart by successive generations of Levites during a period of several centuries without any mistakes or alterations being made, which is unlikely, the fact of the matter is that most of the contents of these five books – and indeed of all the other books in the Old Testament – are in the form of various accounts of what happened before, during and after the lifetime of the Moses, peace be on him, and therefore cannot possibly represent what was actually revealed to him on Mount Sinai. The form that these books take is more in the nature of a ‘history’ of the Tribe of Israel than of anything else.

During the four centuries between 450 and 50 BC, and especially after the destruction of Ezra’s compilation by Antiochus in his invasion of Jerusalem in 161 BC, the book which was called the *Torah* – together with the additional books which purported to record the history of the Tribe of Israel after the time of Moses, and which were often written and compiled from remnants of various sources centuries after the events which they purported to describe had taken place – continued to be written and rewritten and revised and subsequently further altered in the process by corrupt rabbis who wished to bend the law which had been derived from the original living life transaction of islam brought by Moses, peace be on him.

As Dr. Maurice Bucaille points out in his book, *The Bible, the Qur’an and Science*, by the time the Hebrew Scriptures came to be translated into Greek by, it is said, seventy-two Jewish scholars at Alexandria, between 275 and 150 BC, they no longer truly represented the original teachings of Moses – nor had they done so for some considerable time:

Around the Third century BC, there were at least three forms of the Hebrew text: the text which was to become the Masoretic text, the text which was used, in part at least, for the Greek translation, and the Samaritan Pentateuch. In the First century BC, there was a tendency towards the establishment of a single text, but it was not until a century after Christ that the Biblical text was definitely established.

If we had had the three forms of the text, comparison would have been possible, and we could have reached an

opinion concerning what the original might have been. Unfortunately, we do not have the slightest idea. Apart from the Dead Sea Scrolls (Cave of Qumran), dating from a pre-Christian era near the time of Jesus, a papyrus of the Ten Commandments of the Second century AD presenting variations from the classical text, and a few fragments from the Fifth century AD (Geniza of Cairo), the oldest Hebrew text of the Bible dates from the Ninth century AD.

Dr. Bucaille continues:

The Old Testament is a collection of works of greatly differing length and many different genres. They were written in several languages over a period of more than nine hundred years, based on oral traditions. Many of these works were corrected and completed in accordance with events or special requirements, often at periods that were very distant from one another.

Dr. Bucaille concludes:

A Revelation is mingled in all these writings, but all we possess today is what men have seen fit to leave us. These men manipulated the texts to please themselves, according to the circumstances they were in and the necessities they had to meet.

In *The Controversy of Zion* Douglas Reed quotes Josef Kastein (alias Julius Katzenstein) from his book *History and Destiny of the Jews* as stating that the Greek translation was undertaken 'with a definite object in view, that of making it comprehensible to the Greeks; this led to the distortion and twisting of words, changes of meaning, and the frequent substitution of general terms and ideas for those that were purely local and national.' Having pointed out that perhaps the real reason for undertaking the translation must have been that the largest single body of Jews at that time was in Alexandria, where Greek had become their everyday language, and that 'many of them could no longer understand Hebrew and a Greek version of their Law was needed as a basis for the rabbinical interpretations of it,' Douglas Reed observes:

In view of the changes which were made, at the translation, (see Dr. Kastein's words, above), none but Judaist scholars

could tell today how closely the Old Testament in the Hebrew-Aramaic original compares with the version which has come down, from the first translation into Greek, as one of the two sections of Christendom's Bible. Clearly substantial changes were made, and quite apart from that there is the 'oral Torah', and the Talmudic continuation of the Torah, so that the Gentile world has never known the whole truth of the Judaic Law.

The *Talmud*, which is alleged to record the oral traditions of Moses, did not actually appear in written form until some seventeen centuries after the death of Moses, and at least nine centuries after the *Torah* itself had ceased to exist in its original form: The *Mishnah*, the written form of the alleged oral traditions of Moses was not collated in its present form until the beginning of the third century AD. The two commentaries on the *Mishnah*, the *Jerusalem Gemara* and the *Babylonian Gemara*, were not completed until the fifth and seventh centuries AD respectively, while the commentaries written on these commentaries, the very extensive *Midrash* literature, were written between 400 and 1200 AD.

It was because these various commentaries were so long and detailed that attempts were then made to codify them. The most well-known codes are *The Code of Maimonides* compiled in the 12th century AD, *The Code of Jacob ben Asher* (called *The Turim*) completed in the 14th century AD, and *The Code of Joseph Caro* (called *The Shulchan Aruch*) compiled in the 16th century AD.

The one book which certainly does not exist today is the *Torah of Moses*, peace be on him, the original revelation that he received from God, in the original language in which it was revealed – so that the accuracy and authenticity of any translation or interpretation of that original text could always be ascertained and assessed simply by referring back to that original text whenever the occasion might arise.



In the case of the Christians, it would seem that the *Injil*, that is the Gospel, which was revealed to Jesus was never actually committed to either parchment or papyrus. Certainly there is no book called the *Gospel of Jesus* and written in Aramaic, which was his tongue, in existence today. If there is, then the Christians are keeping very quiet about it. Instead their New Testament contains four official gospels according to people who never even met Jesus, which contradict each other many times

over, lumped together with the teachings of Paul who also never even met Jesus, which openly contradict the original living life transaction of Islam brought by Jesus, peace be on him. It is this book which was compiled and subsequently altered by corrupt priests in the past who wished to amend and embellish the original teachings of Jesus almost beyond recognition, and to make their new religion more amenable both to kafir rulers and to their congregations.

Perhaps the two most flagrant alterations were firstly, the insertion of the one and only reference to the Paulinian doctrine of the Trinity (I John 5: 7), and secondly, the insertion of the one and only reference to the Paulinian doctrine of Incarnation (I Timothy 3: 16) – both of which were conclusively proved by, inter alia, Sir Isaac Newton to be forgeries, and neither of which were ever referred to during the fierce theological debates which took place during the first three centuries after Jesus had disappeared, for the very simple reason that neither of these two verses existed at that time!

According to the English translation of the Italian version of the Gospel of Barnabas – which, like the other officially accepted Gospels, is incapable of being fully authenticated in the absence of an original text – the *Injil* was not committed to ‘paper’, but was revealed to Jesus by the angel Gabriel in a vision, taking the form of a well of knowledge in his heart, from which he could draw as he wished, and which was the means by which he breathed new life back into the original law of Moses which, it should always be remembered, he had come to revive and re-establish among the twelve tribes of the Tribe of Israel – and not to change ‘by one jot or one tittle’.

This made things difficult for the priesthood of the Jews who prior to the arrival of Jesus had been able to claim that they were the true guardians of the original teachings of Moses, and who had made this claim the basis of their leadership and their livelihood. Jesus showed up their hypocrisy and endangered the source of their authority and wealth and this was why they opposed him so vehemently. With the arrival of Jesus, all the misrepresentations and changes to the original teachings of Moses which had gradually been introduced by the Jewish priesthood during the nine centuries which had elapsed since the reign of the Prophet Solomon had ended, peace be upon him, were suddenly in grave danger of being exposed, and their hierarchy of being destroyed. This is why they rejected Jesus, peace be on him, and this is why they plotted with the Romans to have him killed – although they

did not succeed:

**And they did not kill him and they did not crucify him, but it appeared so to them. And surely those who disagree about it are certainly in doubt about it – they have no knowledge about it except that they follow speculation. And they did not kill him for certain – but Allah took him up to Himself. And Allah was ever Mighty, Wise.**

*(Qur'an: Surat'an-Nisa – 4. 157-158)*

Unfortunately, after the miraculous disappearance of Jesus, and as a result of the subsequent conflict which occurred between the original followers of Jesus (the Nazarenes – who are sometimes described as 'the Judeo-Christians' in order to distinguish them from those followers of Jesus who did not belong to the Tribe of Israel), and the followers of Paul (who after four centuries of debate eventually formulated, inter alia, the doctrines of Incarnation, Trinity, Original Sin, and the Atonement and Forgiveness of Sins), many of the early written eye-witness accounts of the life and sayings of Jesus, of which it is said there were about three hundred, were destroyed – including, inter alia, the *Gospel of the Hebrews*, the original *Gospel of Barnabas* and the *Gospel of Thomas* – especially after the Council of Nicea in 325 AD, at which it was officially decided that Jesus was the 'son' of God, and during which the four official Gospels were selected by the Paulinian Christians.

As Dr. Maurice Bucaille makes clear in his book *The Bible, the Qur'an and Science*, these four Gospels were not eyewitness accounts and only came to be written down at a relatively late date:

The texts that we have today, after many adaptations from the sources, began to appear around 70 AD, the time when the two rival communities were engaged in a fierce struggle, with the Judeo-Christians still retaining the upper hand. With the Jewish war and the fall of Jerusalem in 70 AD, the situation was to be reversed. This is how Cardinal Daniélou explains the decline:

'After the Jews had been discredited in the Empire, the Christians tended to detach themselves from them. The Hellenistic peoples of Christian persuasion then gained the upper hand: Paul won a posthumous victory; Christianity separated itself politically and sociologically from



Judaism: it became the third people. All the same, until the Jewish revolt in 140 AD, Judeo-Christianity continued to predominate culturally.'

From 70 AD to a period situated sometime before 110 AD the Gospels of Mark, Matthew, Luke and John were produced. They do not constitute the first written Christian documents: the letters of Paul date from well before them. According to O. Culmann, Paul probably wrote his letter to the Thessalonians in 50 AD. He had probably disappeared several years prior to the completion of Mark's Gospel.

Dr. Bucaille continues:

As far as the Gospels are concerned however, it is almost certain that if this atmosphere of struggle between communities had not existed, we would not have had the writings we possess today. They appeared at a time of fierce struggle between the two communities. These 'combat writings', as Father Kannengiesser calls them, emerged from the multitude of writings on Jesus. These occurred at the time when Paul's style of Christianity won through definitively, and created its own collection of official texts. These texts constituted the 'Canon' which condemned and excluded as unorthodox any other documents that were not suited to the line adopted by the Church.

As regards the four officially accepted Gospels, there are no versions in the original Hebrew or Aramaic, and, as Dr. Bucaille confirms, the earliest Greek versions date from after the Council of Nicea:

Documents prior to this, i.e. papyri from the Third century AD and one possibly dating from the Second, only transmit fragments to us. The two oldest parchment manuscripts are Greek, Fourth century AD. They are the Codex Vaticanus, preserved in the Vatican Library and whose place of discovery is unknown, and the Codex Sinaiticus, which was discovered on Mount Sinai and is now preserved in the British Museum, London. The second contains two apocryphal works.

According to the Ecumenical Translation, two hundred and fifty other known parchments exist throughout the

world, the last of these being from the Eleventh century AD. 'Not all the copies of the New Testament that have come down to us are identical' however. 'On the contrary, it is possible to distinguish differences of varying degrees of importance between them, but however important they may be, there is always a large number of them. Some of these only concern differences of grammatical detail, vocabulary or word order. Elsewhere however, differences between manuscripts can be seen which affect the meaning of whole passages.'

Thus not only is it possible – indeed it is highly likely – that significant changes were made to the original texts which pre-dated the Council of Nicea and which have all been destroyed, but also even the texts which date from after the Council of Nicea do not fully agree with each other, cannot therefore be entirely accurate, and in fact have themselves been altered:

The authenticity of a text, and of even the most venerable manuscript, is always open to debate. The Codex Vaticanus is a good example of this. The facsimile reproduction edited by the Vatican City, 1965, contains an accompanying note from its editors informing us that, 'several centuries after it was copied (believed to have been in circa the Tenth or Eleventh century), a scribe inked over all the letters except those he thought were a mistake.' There are passages in the text where the original letters in light brown still show through, contrasting visibly with the rest of the text which is in dark brown. There is no indication that it was a faithful restoration. The note states moreover that, 'the different hands that corrected and annotated the manuscript over the centuries have not yet been definitively discerned; a certain number of corrections were undoubtedly made when the text was inked over.' In all the religious manuals the text is presented as a Fourth century copy. One has to go to sources at the Vatican to discover that various hands may have altered the text centuries later.

The one book which certainly does not exist today is the *Gospel of Jesus*, peace be on him, the original revelation that he received from God, in

the original language in which it was revealed – so that the accuracy and authenticity of any translation or interpretation of that original text could always be ascertained and assessed simply by referring back to that original text whenever the occasion might arise.



This is not to say that there is no truth left in the books on which the Jews, and the Jews who are not Jews, and the Christians rely. There is truth in them, and some of their contents most probably correspond with the original books which were revealed to their respective Prophets, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on both of them. They do not, however, contain the whole truth, and furthermore, as well as having been censored, deliberate lies have been inserted. It is for this reason that they are not entirely reliable. Finally, even if the original *Torah* and the original *Ingil* still existed, they have been abrogated by the *Qur'an*.

The original *Torah* as revealed to Moses no longer exists. The original *Ingil*, or Gospel, as revealed to Jesus no longer exists. The people to whom the existential life pattern of these Prophets was transmitted, person to person, without a break in the chain of transmission, are all long dead. The chains of transmission from Moses and from Jesus have been broken and lost for ever. Even if you are filled with the greatest sincerity, you cannot follow the existential pattern of worship and behaviour which was once embodied by Moses and Jesus – and by the bringers of the original Vedas and by Buddha for that matter – and the communities which formed around them, because that behavioural pattern has been lost for ever, and other falsified patterns have been put in its place, in their names and in the Name of God. There is no going back. Only the existential pattern of worship and behaviour which was once embodied by Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, the way of Muhammad, has survived up to the present day.



The *Qur'an* is the only Prophetic guidance on the face of the earth today which has not been changed by even one letter either by alteration, addition or subtraction. It is recorded as it was revealed. It was both memorised by heart and recorded in writing as it was in the process of being revealed. Those who were delegated to record the *Qur'an* in writing were instructed by the Prophet Muhammad – who was himself illiterate and could neither read nor write – not to record anything else, in order to ensure that there could be no confusion between the

contents of the *Qur'an* on one hand, and what he himself said during the normal course of events on the other. The revelation of the *Qur'an* was completed before the Prophet Muhammad died, may Allah bless him and grant him peace. The written version was gathered together, authenticated and verified by those who knew it by heart within twenty years of the Prophet Muhammad's death, may he have peace and light in his grave – and the number of Muslims who have continued to know the entire *Qur'an* by heart ever since that time, right up until the present day, has always been quite extraordinary.

Allah has promised that the *Qur'an* will remain intact until the end of the world. There is no doubt in it. It is utterly reliable. Even the most ingenious kafir so-called scholars and orientalisks have been unable to discredit it. Allah says in the *Qur'an* that if you do not believe that the *Qur'an* is from Allah, then try and write something like it. No-one has ever been able to meet this challenge – and they never will. Allah says in the *Qur'an* that even if the whole of mankind and all the jinn banded together, they still could not produce the like of the *Qur'an* between them.

The Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, said:

'Allah sent down this *Qur'an* to command and prevent, and as a Sunnah to be followed and a parable. It contains your history, information about what came before you, news about what will come after you and correct judgement between you. Repetition does not wear it out and its wonders do not end. It is the Truth. It is not a jest. Whoever recites it speaks the truth. Whoever judges by it is just. Whoever argues by it wins. Whoever divides by it is equitable. Whoever acts by it is rewarded. Whoever clings to it is guided to a straight path. Allah will misguide whoever seeks guidance from other than it. Allah will destroy whoever judges by other than it. It is the Wise Remembrance, the Clear Light, the Straight Path, the Firm Rope of Allah and the Useful Healing. It is a protection for the one who clings to it and a rescue for the one who follows it. It is not crooked and so puts things straight. It does not deviate so as to be blamed. Its wonders do not cease. It does not wear out with much repetition.' (It was related by At-Tirmidhi).

Furthermore, not only the *Qur'an* but also the existential life pattern of the Prophet Muhammad and the community which formed around him, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him and them, has been preserved and transmitted, from living person to living person, in an unbroken chain of transmission, right up until today. The Prophet Muhammad said that this transmission would continue until just before the end of time, when there will be no more Muslims left on the face of the earth.

If you believe in Allah and wish to worship Allah in the manner which Allah has indicated that He should be worshipped through his Prophets, then you must find out what is in the *Qur'an* and in the *Hadith*, and follow the way of Muhammad, that is the living life transaction of Islam. Right now the choice is yours.



Each of the one hundred and twenty four thousand Prophets who have been sent by Allah, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on all of them, were sent for specific people, and at a specific time in the history of mankind. Some were sent for only a few people, some were sent for a particular tribe, some were sent for a particular nation, and only one was sent for the whole world. Noah, for example, only had nineteen followers at the time of the great flood, even though he lived for nine hundred and fifty years. Both Moses and Jesus were sent only for the Tribe of Israel, so only Allah knows what the Jews who are not Jews, and the Christians who are not descended from the Tribe of Israel, are up to today. Only the Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, was sent with a guidance, a good news and a warning, for all people and the jinn from the time the *Qur'an* was revealed to him up until the end of the world.

The times for all the Prophets who came before the time of the Prophet Muhammad are now long over. The people for whom all the Prophets who came before the Prophet Muhammad were sent are now long dead. The time for following the way of the Prophet Muhammad is now. The people for whom the Prophet Muhammad was sent have either died during the last fourteen hundred years, or they are alive today, or they will live at some stage between now and the end of the world.

The only way to follow the Prophetic life pattern today is to follow the way of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, and on his family, and on his companions, and all who

follow him, because his way is the only Prophetic life pattern which has survived intact up until today, and which will continue to survive up until the time immediately preceding the end of the world, when Allah will take the arwah, that is the spirit forms, of all the Muslims who are alive at that time from this world, leaving only the people who will live like animals until the end of the world.

The Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, is the first and the last of the Prophets. He was in existence when Adam was still between water and clay. He is the last of the Prophets, the seal of the Prophets, confirming by the *Qur'an* all the messages of the Prophets before him, and thereby abrogating and completing those messages. The *Qur'an* contains all that the teachings of the earlier Prophets contained, and more.

The *Qur'an* is the final edition of the A to Z of existence, and its author, publisher and distributor is Allah, the Originator of all that appears to exist, and the One to whom all that appears to exist returns. Since the Prophet Muhammad was the embodiment of the *Qur'an*, that is the *Qur'an* walking, he was the only complete and perfect man that existence has ever known, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him – and he cannot be associated with Allah, because Allah is One, alone without any partner.

Allah was a hidden treasure, and He wished to make Himself known, so He created the Universe. When there was only Allah, before time and space began, Allah took a portion of His light and said, 'Be Muhammad!' From this light of Muhammad all the source forms of everything that was ever to manifest either in the Unseen, or in the phenomenal world which is apprehended by the senses, were created. The first source form to be created was the source form of the man and Prophet, Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him for ever.

Since that time all the source forms created from the light of Muhammad by Allah have manifested, and continue to manifest, and will continue to manifest until the end of the world, in the Unseen and in the phenomenal worlds. Everything is made from the light of Muhammad. The light of Muhammad is from the light of Allah. Only Allah exists. Everything in the time and space continuum is an illusion, is not what it appears to be. Do not curse the time and space continuum, for it is Allah. Everywhere you look, there is the face of Allah. Everything is passing

away except the face of Allah. Allah is as He was before the creation of the Universe, and He continues to be. There is only Allah.

**Say: He is Allah the One, Allah the Everlasting – nothing is born from Him and He was not born from anything and there is nothing like Him.**

*(Qur'an: Surat'al-Ikblas – 112.1-4)*

The reality of the Prophets, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on them all, is that the next Prophet only came when the teaching of the Prophet before him had been lost. All the teachings of all the Prophets, except for the teaching of the Prophet Muhammad, have been lost. The Prophet Muhammad is the last of the Prophets before the end of the world. If you wish to follow the way of the Prophets you have no choice but to follow the way of Muhammad. Right now the choice is yours and it is a very simple one to make, but a difficult one to put into practice.

The Prophet Muhammad said that a time would come when to hold to the living life transaction of Islam would be like handling hot coals. That time has come. The people who control the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, are making it difficult to hold to the living life transaction of Islam. This is a test from Allah. The more Allah loves someone, the more Allah tests them. No one was tested as much as the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, because no one has been loved as much by Allah as the Prophet Muhammad.

The reality of the Prophets is that they were all from Allah, and they all brought the same message, because there is only One Allah to know and affirm, and because the nature of existence, which derives from Allah, has always been essentially the same. This means that there is no competition between the Prophets because they all affirmed One and the same Reality, Allah. In the same way there is no competition between the awliya, because there is only Allah, and they know it with direct seeing. The knowledge, the knower and the known are One. The Muslims are the only ones who recognise this. This is why only the Muslims accept all the Prophets, and make no distinction between them, all one hundred and twenty-four thousand of them.

There is no way to worship Allah, as Allah has indicated He should be worshipped, except by following the way of Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him. Only by following the way of

Muhammad will you be able to affirm the true nature of existence, and understand it, and know your self – and truly whoever knows their self knows their Lord. The whole Universe cannot contain Allah, but the heart of the one who trusts in Allah contains Allah, and the way to your heart is the way of Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him.



Either you are for the kafir system, that is the Dajjal system, or you are against it. If you are against it, then you are for the way of Islam. If you are not against the way of Islam – and you must find out what it really is, because it certainly is not what the educational and media systems depict it to be – then you are for the way of Islam. No one can take you to Islam, and no one can take you away from Islam.



Allah is in the expectation of His slave, and we are all slaves of Allah, and deep down we all know that, because when Allah had created the source forms from the light of Muhammad, He said to all the arwah, that is the spirit forms, of all the people who would ever come into and go out of existence, ‘Am I not your Lord?’ – ‘*Alastu birabbikum?*’ and they all answered, ‘Yes, we bear witness.’ – ‘*Bala shahidna.*’ This question and this answer resonate in the heart of every human being. Deep down in the heart, whoever is mumin remembers this – whilst whoever is kafir covers it up and pretends that it did not happen.

The only way to realise the full extent of your being a slave of Allah – and this means that you will not be a slave of anything or anyone or any idea which or who appears to be other than Allah – is to follow the way of Muhammad, who was the perfect slave of Allah. He, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, was so pure that he cast no shadow when he walked in the sunlight. When he laughed, light bounced off the walls. His sweat smelled of musk. He was immersed in remembrance of Allah in every moment. He was always in complete abasement before Allah. He was a complete and perfect man, and therefore his way is the best of ways. There is no better example of how to be a human being than him.

Ask yourself now the questions which you will be asked later, after your death. Who do you worship? Who do you follow? What is your source of knowledge? What is your way of life? Right now the choice is yours.





It is not known for certain exactly when Dajjal the individual is going to appear. It is not known for certain exactly when the Mahdi, the rightly guided leader of the Muslims, who walks in the footsteps of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, is going to appear.

It has been stated by some of the awliya of the present age that both the Dajjal and the Mahdi are alive and on this earth – which would appear to indicate that the time when they finally meet cannot be all that far away, which in turn would appear to indicate that the second coming of Jesus, peace be on him, is also imminent – but only Allah knows for certain when that time will be. They may appear in your life time, they may not.

What we do know is that in the end there are only two basic ways of living while you are here on this earth. Either you follow the way of Kufr, or you follow the way of Islam.



From Abu Hurayra, may Allah be pleased with him:

The Prophet, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, said: 'The Prophets are like brothers; they have different mothers but their life transaction is one. I am the closest of all the people to Jesus son of Mary, because there is no other Prophet between him and myself. He will come again, and when you see him, you will recognize him. He is of medium height and his colouring is reddish-white. He will be wearing two garments, and his hair will look wet. He will break the cross, kill the pigs, abolish the jizya and call the people to Islam. During his time, Allah will end every religion and sect other than Islam, and will destroy the Dajjal. Then peace and security will prevail on earth, so that lions will graze with camels, tigers with cattle, and wolves with sheep; children will be able to play with snakes without coming to any harm. Jesus will remain for forty years, then die, and the Muslims will pray for him.' (It was related by Ibn Hanbal)

From An-Nuwas ibn Sam'an, may Allah be pleased with him:

One morning the Prophet, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, spoke about the Dajjal. Sometimes he described him as insignificant, and sometimes he described him as

so dangerous that we thought he was in the clump of date-palms nearby. When we went to him later on, he noticed that fear in our faces, and asked, 'What is the matter with you?' We said, 'O Messenger of Allah, this morning you spoke of the Dajjal; sometimes you described him as insignificant, and sometimes you described him as being so dangerous that we thought he was in the clump of date-palms nearby.'

The Prophet, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, said, 'I fear for you in other matters besides the Dajjal. If he appears whilst I am among you, I will contend with him on your behalf. But if he appears while I am not among you, then each man must contend with him on his own behalf, and Allah will take care of every Muslim on my behalf. The Dajjal will be a young man, with short, curly hair, and one eye floating. I would liken him to Abdal-'Uzza ibn Qatan. Whoever amongst you lives to see him should recite the opening ayat of Surat'al-Kahf. He will appear on the way between Syria and Iraq, and will create disaster left and right. O servants of Allah, adhere to the Path of Truth.'

We said, 'O Messenger of Allah, for the day which is like a year, will one day's prayers be sufficient?' He said, 'No, you must make an estimate of the time, and then observe the prayers.'

We asked, 'O Messenger of Allah, how quickly will he walk upon the earth?' He said, 'Like a cloud driven by the wind. He will come to the people and call them (to a false religion), and they will believe in him and respond to him. He will issue a command to the sky, and it will rain; and to the earth, and it will produce crops. After grazing on these crops, their animals will return with their udders full of milk and their flanks stretched. Then he will come to another people and will call them (to a false religion), but they will reject his call. He will depart from them; they will suffer famine and will possess nothing in the form of wealth. Then he will pass through the wasteland and will say, "Bring forth your treasures", and the treasures will come forth, like swarms of bees. Then he will call a man brimming

with youth; he will strike him with a sword and cut him in two, then place the two pieces at the distance between an archer and his target. Then he will call him, and the young man will come running and laughing.

‘At that point, Allah will send the Messiah, son of Mary, and he will descend to the white minaret in the east of Damascus, wearing two garments dyed with saffron, placing his hands on the wings of two angels. When he lowers his head, beads of perspiration will fall from it, and when he raises his head, beads like pearls will scatter from it. Every kafir who smells his fragrance will die, and his breath will reach as far as he can see. He will search for the Dajjal until he finds him at the gate of Ludd (the biblical Lydda, now known as Lod), where he will kill him.

‘Then a people whom Allah has protected will come to Jesus son of Mary, and he will wipe their faces (i.e. wipe the traces of hardship from their faces) and tell them of their status in Paradise. At that time Allah will reveal to Jesus: “I have brought forth some of My servants whom no-one will be able to fight. Take My servants safely to at-Tur.”

‘Then Allah will send Gog and Magog, and they will swarm down from every slope. The first of them will pass by the Lake of Tiberias, and will drink some of its water; the last of them will pass by it and say, “There used to be water here”. Jesus, the Prophet of Allah, and his Companions will be besieged until a bull’s head will be dearer to them than one hundred dinars are to you nowadays.

‘Then Jesus and his Companions will pray to Allah, and He will send insects who will bite the people of Gog and Magog on their necks, so that in the morning they will all perish as one. Then Jesus and his Companions will come down and will not find any nook or cranny on earth which is free from their putrid stench. Jesus and his Companions will again pray to Allah, Who will send birds like the necks of camels; they will seize the bodies of Gog and Magog and throw them wherever Allah wills. Then Allah will send rain which no house or tent will be able to keep out, and the earth will be cleansed, until it will look like a mirror. Then

the earth will be told to bring forth its fruit and restore its blessing. On that day, a group of people will be able to eat from a single pomegranate and seek shelter under its skin (i.e. the fruit will be so large). A milch-camel will give so much milk that a whole party will be able to drink from it; a cow will give so much milk that a whole tribe will be able to drink from it; and a milch-sheep will give so much milk that a whole family will be able to drink from it. At that time, Allah will send a pleasant wind which will soothe them even under their armpits, and will take the soul of every Muslim. Only the most wicked people will be left, and they will fornicate like asses; then the Last Hour will come upon them.' (It was related by Muslim)

From Ibn Mas'ud, may Allah be pleased with him:

The Prophet, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, said: 'On the night of the Isra (the Night Journey), I met my father Abraham, Moses and Jesus, and they discussed the Hour. The matter was referred first to Abraham, then to Moses, and both said, "I have no knowledge of it." Then it was referred to Jesus, who said, "No-one knows about its timing except Allah; what my Lord told me was that the Dajjal will appear, and when he sees me he will begin to melt like lead. Allah will destroy him when he sees me. The Muslims will fight against the kafirun, and even the trees and rocks will say, 'O Muslim, there is a kafir hiding behind me – come and kill him!' Allah will destroy the kafirun, and the people will return to their own lands. Then Gog and Magog will appear from all directions, eating and drinking everything they find. The people will complain to me, so I will pray to Allah and He will destroy them, so that the earth will be filled with their stench. Allah will send rain which will wash their bodies into the sea. My Lord has told me that when that happens, the Hour will be very close, like a pregnant woman whose time is due, but her family do not know exactly when she will deliver.'" (It was related by Ahmad ibn Hanbal)



To conclude, Dajjal the individual will be the final embodiment of

all that denotes the way of kufr. The Mahdi will be the final human embodiment of all that it is possible to follow in the way of Islam – for only the Prophet Muhammad was in a position to be all of the Qur'an walking, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him. When these two opposites meet, everyone will have a choice – and when Jesus has come again, and the final conflict has been resolved, then the choice will be even clearer.

All this, however, lies in the future, and in the meantime everyone has a choice, the same choice, between iman and kufr.

It is not possible to defer making your choice between the two alternatives until a later date, since once you know that you have a choice, it must be made. Right now the choice is yours.

The *Qur'an* is crystal clear as to what will happen when the opposites meet: Allah gives victory to the ones who trust in Allah, over the ones who reject Allah. The *Qur'an* is crystal clear as to what will happen to you after your death. If you trusted in Allah and followed the way of His Prophet Muhammad, then you will be for the Garden. If you rejected Allah and refused to follow the way of His Prophet Muhammad, then you will be for the Fire. For ever. Right now the choice is yours.

Once you know about the way of Muhammad, the living life transaction of Islam, no other life transaction is acceptable to Allah. Surely the life transaction with Allah is Islam. Right now the choice is yours.



From 'Umar, may Allah be pleased with him:

One day while we were sitting with the Messenger of Allah, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, there appeared before us a man whose clothes were exceedingly white and whose hair was exceedingly black; no signs of journeying were to be seen on him and none of us knew him. He walked up and sat down by the Prophet, may the blessings and peace of Allah be upon him. Resting his knees against his and placing the palms of his hands on his thighs, he said, 'Oh Muhammad, tell me about Islam.'

The Messenger of Allah, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, said, 'Islam is to witness that there is no god only Allah and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah; to do the prayer; to pay the zakat; to fast in Ramadan; and to go on pilgrimage to the House if you are able to do so.'

He said, 'You have spoken truly.' And we were amazed at him asking him and saying that he had spoken truly. He said, 'Then tell me about Iman.'

He said, 'It is to believe in Allah, His Angels, His Books, His Messengers, and the Last Day, and to believe in the Decree, the good of it and the evil of it.'

He said, 'You have spoken truly.' He said, 'Then tell me about Ihsan.'

He said, 'It is to worship Allah as though you see Him, and though you do not see Him, yet truly He sees you.'

He said, 'Then tell me about the Hour.'

He said, 'The one questioned about it knows no more than the questioner.'

He said, 'Then tell me about its signs.'

He said, 'That the slave girl will give birth to her mistress; and that you will see the barefooted, naked, destitute herdsmen competing in constructing tall buildings.'

Then he went, and I stayed for a time. Then he said, 'Oh, 'Umar, do you know who the questioner was?'

I said, 'Allah and His Messenger know best.'

He said, 'It was Gabriel, who came to teach you your deen.' (It was related by Muslim)

From Abu 'Abdullah Jabir the son of 'Abdullah al-Ansari, may Allah be pleased with them both:

A man asked the Messenger of Allah, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, 'Do you think that if I do the obligatory prayers, fast in Ramadan, treat as permitted that which is permitted and treat as forbidden that which is forbidden, and do nothing more than that, I shall enter the Garden?'

He said, 'Yes.' (It was related by Muslim)

Yahya related to me from Malik that he heard that the Messenger of Allah, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, said, 'I have left two matters with you. As long as you hold to them, you will not go the wrong way. They are the Book of Allah and the Sunnah of His Prophet.' (It was related by Malik bin Anas)



You are on a journey. Your passage through this world is only a brief part of that journey, like a person who enters a room through one door, crosses it, and goes out through another door; or like a rider who comes to a tree, rests under it for a moment or two, and then continues on his or her journey.

Allah says in the *Qur'an* that people will be asked how long their lifetime was in this world, and they will reply that it was only a short time, maybe a day or half a day.

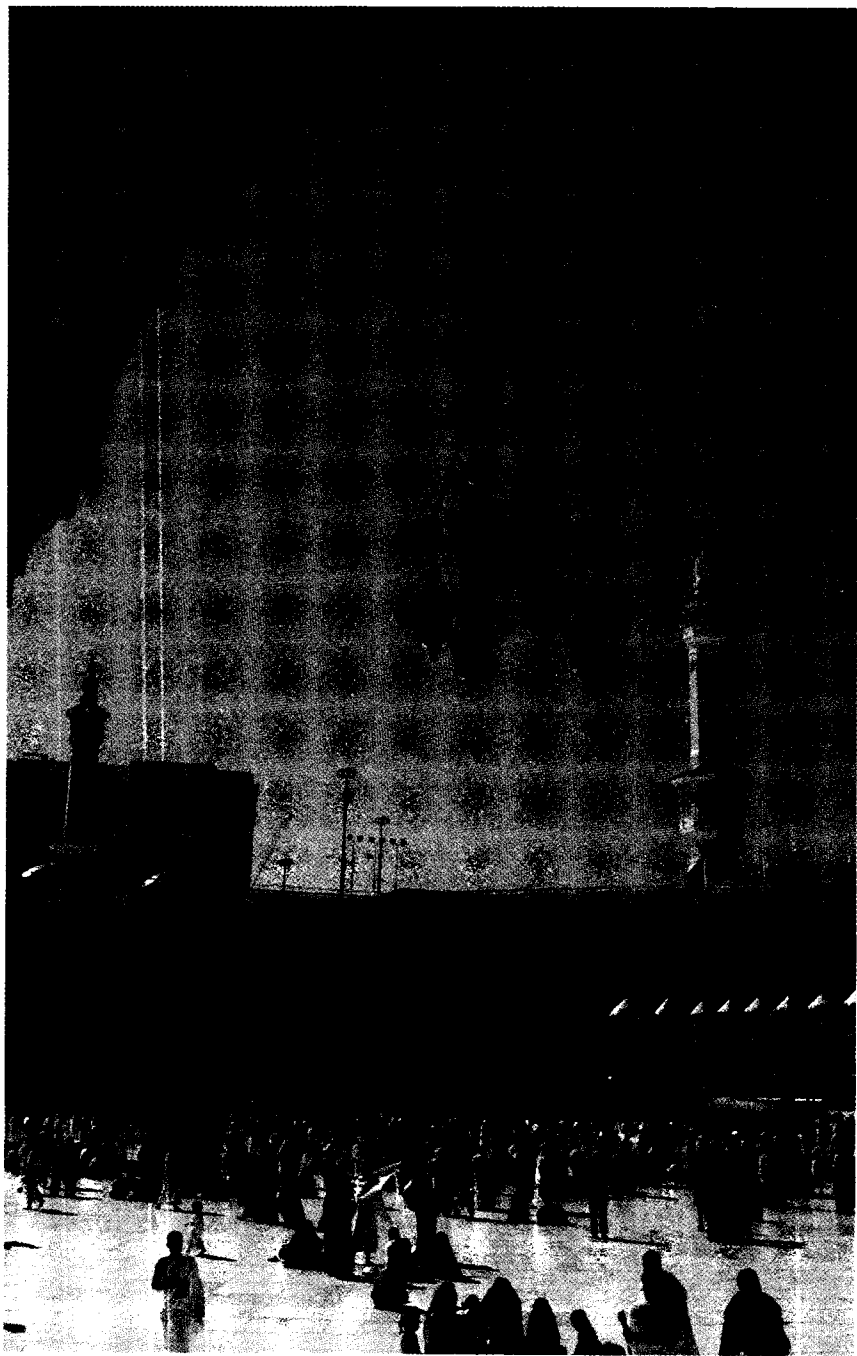
The Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, said that you should be children of the next world, not of this world, because this world is leaving you and the next world is approaching you. He also said, 'Love whom you will, they will surely die. Do what you will, you will be judged accordingly.'

Right now the choice is yours.

Follow your heart. Do what you can. You will be drawn to what you love. You will be repulsed by what you hate. You will do what you have to do. Do not deny your heart. Nobody can make you what you're never meant to be. Nothing but this moment knows the moments that will be. And as what remains of your life time unfolds, moment by moment, hour by hour, day by day, and as all the changes come and go, one after another, each so unexpected in the future, each so immediate in the present, each so unreal in the past, then do not forget, but remember, and when you forget, remember:

You are on a journey. Truly everything comes from Allah and returns to Allah, willingly or unwillingly, via the Garden or via the Fire, including you. Right now the choice is yours. Wake up. Time is passing. You are on a journey. The journey is to Allah.

*Allah*



The Ka'aba, Makka



When everyone is standing before Allah  
On the Last Day  
Allah will say  
'Who is the King now?'

Say: 'This is my way – I call to Allah with clear understanding, I and whoever follows me, and glory be to Allah, and I am not one of the idol worshippers.'

*(Qur'an: Surah Yusuf – 12.108)*

Who could say anything better than someone who summons to Allah and acts rightly and says, 'I am one of the Muslims'?

*(Qur'an: Surah Fussilat – 41.32)*

There is no god only Allah  
Muhammad is the messenger of Allah

The Prophet Muhammad said, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, that knowledge is the lost property of the mumin, who may pick it up wherever he or she finds it.

Nothing is what it seems.

This book is for all those who are not satisfied with the official version, and who want the real thing.

There is no real thing, only the Real, Allah.

*Allah*

# Glossary of Arabic Terms

**adab** : inner courtesy coming out as graciousness in right action.

**adhan** : the call to prayer.

**ahlu'l-dhimma** : non-muslims living in Muslim territory and under the protection of Muslim rule by virtue of the fact that they have agreed to pay the jizya tax.

**akhira** : what is on the other side of death; the world after this world in the realm of the Unseen.

**Alastu bi Rabbikum?** : 'Am I not your Lord?' The question which Allah asked all the arwah when they were first given form. They all answered, 'Yes, we bear witness,' including you.

**Allah** : the Lord of all the Worlds and what is in them, including you. Allah has ninety-nine Names all of which are from and within the One, Allah. Allah, the supreme and mighty Name, indicates the One, the Existent, the Creator, the Worshipped, the Lord of the Universe. Allah is the First without beginning and the Last without end. He is the Outwardly Manifest and the Inwardly Hidden. There is no existent except Him and there is only Him in existence.

**al-hamdulillahi wa shukrulillah** : Praise to Allah and thanks to Allah.

**'alim** : a Muslim who has sound knowledge of the Qur'an and the Hadith, and accordingly of the Shari'ah and the Sunnah, and who puts what he knows into action.

**amir** : one who commands and makes the final decision; the source of authority in any given situation. When and wherever there is a group of Muslims it is the Sunnah to choose an Amir from amongst themselves.

**aql** : intellect, the faculty of reason. The noun derives from the verb which means 'to hobble a camel'.

**arwah** : the plural of ruh; spirits.

**awliya** : the plural of wali; the friends of Allah, and those who have the greatest knowledge of Allah, which is ma'rifa.

**ayah** : a phrase structure of the Qur'an, and also a sign, both in the linguistic and semiotic sense. There are ayat in the self and on the horizon.

**ayat** : the plural of ayah; signs.

**baraka** : blessing. A subtle energy which flows through everything, in some places more than others, most of all in the human being. Purity permits its flow, for it is purity itself, which is light. Density of perception blocks it. Since it is light, baraka is intimately connected with the ruh.

**barzakh** : an interspace between two realities which both separates and yet links them; commonly used to describe the interspace between the dunya and the akhira, which begins when death takes place, when the ruh leaves the body – and ends when the Last Day arrives, when the ruh and the body are reunited again; also used to describe the realm of the arwah in the Unseen, which is the abode of the ruh prior to its entering the unborn foetus in the womb after about sixteen weeks of pregnancy.

**bayt al-mal** : house of wealth; the treasury of the Muslims where income from zakat and other sources is gathered for redistribution.

**Dajjal** : the ultimate embodiment of kufr, manifesting as an individual, as a social and cultural phenomenon, and as an unseen force; sometimes called the AntiChrist, the Dajjal is the false Messiah whose appearance marks the imminent end of the world, the antithesis of Jesus. The science of recognising Dajjal is very intricate and carefully delineated. The manifestation will appear both as a person, and as a certain historical situation, and as a series of cosmic phenomena. The Dajjal will affect the masses and cause chaos.

**Dar al-Harb** : the abode of conflict, wherever the deen of Kufr is established.

**Dar al-Islam** : the abode of peace, wherever the deen of Islam is established.

**deen** : the life transaction, the way you live and behave towards Allah. It is submission and obedience to a particular system of rules and practices. Literally it means the debt or exchange situation between two parties, in this usage the Creator and the created, or as some say

between the conditioned and the unconditioned, the limited and the limitless, or the many and the One. Allah says in the Qur'an that surely the deen with Allah is Islam.

**dhikr** : remembrance and invocation of Allah. All worship of Allah is dhikr. Its foundation is declaring the Unity of Allah, prostrating before Allah, fasting, giving to the needy, and doing the hajj, the pilgrimage to Makka. Recitation of the Qur'an is its heart, and invocation of the Single Name, Allah, is its end.

**dinar** : a 28 carat gold coin weighing approximately 4.25 grams.

**dirham** : a pure silver coin weighing approximately 3 grams.

**du'a** : making supplication to Allah.

**dunya** : the world as it is imagined, inwardly and outwardly. It has been compared to a bunch of grapes which appears to be in reach but which, when you stretch out for it, disappears.

**fard** : what is obligatory in the Shari'ah. This is divided into fard 'ayn, which is what is obligatory on every adult Muslim; and fard kifaya, which is what is obligatory on at least one of the adults in any particular Muslim community.

**fasiqun** : those who split and divide, either their selves inwardly, or existence outwardly.

**fiqh** : the formal study of knowledge, especially the practice of Islam. It is the science of the application of Shari'ah.

**fitra** : the first nature, the natural, primal condition of mankind in harmony with nature, with the self inwardly, and with existence outwardly.

**fuqaha** : the scholars of fiqh, who by virtue of their knowledge can give an authoritative legal opinion or judgement which is firmly based on what is in the Qur'an and the Hadith and which is in accordance with the Shari'ah and the Sunnah.

**furqan** : the faculty of being able to discriminate between what is halal and what is haram, between what is valuable and what is worthless, between what is fruitful and what is unfruitful, between what is good and what is bad, both for your self and for others. One of the names of the Qur'an is Al-Furqan. To embody the Sunnah and follow the Shari'ah is furqan.

**Jibril** : the angel Gabriel who was the means by which the Qur'an was revealed to the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him.

**ghayb** : the Unseen.

**ghusl** : washing the entire body with water in accordance with the Sunnah of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him. It is necessary to have a ghusl on embracing Islam, after sexual intercourse or seminal emission, at the end of menstruation, and after child birth – and before being buried when your body is washed for you. It is necessary to be in ghusl and in wudu before you do the salat or hold a copy of the Qur'an. Ghusl is a purification both inwardly and outwardly.

**hadith** : the written record of what the Prophet Muhammad said or did, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, preserved intact from source, through a reliable chain of human transmission, person to person.

**hadith qudsi** : the written record of those words of Allah on the tongue of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, which are not a part of the Revelation of the Qur'an, preserved intact from source, through a reliable chain of human transmission, person to person.

**hajj** : the greater pilgrimage to the Ka'ba, the House of Allah in Makka, and the performance of the rites of pilgrimage in the protected area which surrounds the Ka'ba. The hajj begins on the 8th of Dhu'l-Hijja, the twelfth lunar month of the Muslim calendar. The hajj is one of the pillars of Islam, and is a purification outwardly and inwardly.

**hajrat al-aswad** : the Black Stone, a stone, which some say fell from heaven, set into one corner of the Ka'ba in Makka by the Prophet Ibrahim, peace be on him, which the pilgrims in imitation of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, kiss, so unifying all the Muslims throughout the ages in one place.

**halal** : what is permitted by the Shari'ah.

**haram** : what is forbidden by the Shari'ah. Also Haram: a protected area. There are two protected areas, known as the Haramayn, in which certain behaviour is forbidden and other behaviour necessary. These are the areas around the Ka'ba in Makka and around the Prophet's

Mosque in Madina, in which is his tomb, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him.

**hijra** : to emigrate in the way of Allah to a place where it is possible to follow the way of Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, and establish the deen of Islam as a social reality. Islam takes its dating from the first Hijra of the Prophet Muhammad, from Makka to Madina, in 622 AD.

**hudud** : the limits; the boundary limits which separate what is halal from what is haram, as defined by Allah.

**'id** : a festival. There are two main festivals of the Muslim year, on the first day of which 'id prayers are prayed.

**'Id al-Adha** : a four day festival at the time of the hajj. The 'id of the (greater) Sacrifice, it starts on the 10th day of Dhu'l-Hijjah, the day that the pilgrims sacrifice their animals, remembering the sacrifice which the Prophet Ibrahim, on him be peace, was prepared to make, and the sacrifice which he made instead.

**'Id al-Fitr** : a three day festival after the month of fasting, Ramadan.

**idhn** : permission or authority, either to teach, or to fight jihad in the way of Allah. Idhn is from Allah and His Messenger, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him.

**ihsan** : the inward state of the mumin who is constantly aware of being in the Presence of Allah, and who acts accordingly. Ihsan is to worship Allah as though you see Him, knowing that although you do not see Him, He sees you.

**ijtihad** : exercising personal judgement; the faculty of deciding the best course of action in a situation, which is not expressly referred to in the Qur'an and the Hadith, and then choosing a course of action which is close to the Sunnah and in accord with the Shari'ah. Very useful when dealing with technology.

**imam** : the one who leads the communal prayers. In the first Muslim community of Madina al-Munawarra, the Amir was the Imam.

**iman** : trust in Allah and acceptance of His Messenger, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him. Iman grows in the heart of the one who follows the way of Islam. Iman is to believe in Allah; His Angels; His Books; His Messengers; the Last Day and the Fire and the Garden;

and the Decree of what is good and what is evil. Thus iman is the inner knowledge and certainty in the heart which gives you taqwa and tawba and the yearning to know more.

**insh'Allah** : if Allah is willing; if Allah wants it.

**Islam** : the Prophetic guidance brought by the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, for this age for the people and jinn who desire Peace in this world, the Garden in the next world, and knowledge and worship of Allah in both worlds. The five pillars of Islam are the affirmation of the shahada; doing the salat; fasting Ramadan; paying the zakat; and doing the hajj if you are able. The peak of Islam is jihad. A person enters Islam by saying the shahada in front of at least two witnesses, and having a ghusl either directly before or after this.

**isnad** : the record, either memorised or recorded in writing, of the names of the people who form the chain of human transmission, person to person, by means of which a hadith is preserved – and accordingly these people themselves. One of the sciences of the Muslims which was developed after the Prophet Muhammad's death, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, is the science of assessing the authenticity of a hadith by assessing the reliability of its isnad.

**'isra'** : the Night Journey of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, from Makka to Jerusalem and then through the realms of the seven heavens beyond the limit of forms, the sidrat al-muntaha, to within a bow-span's length or nearer to the Presence of the Real.

**Israfil** : the angel who will blow the Trumpet which heralds the Last Day.

**Izrail** : the angel who takes the ruh from the body at the moment of death.

**Jabarut** : the source world, the world of divine light and power. Shaykh 'Abd'al-Qadir al-Murabit writes, 'The kingdom of power. This is the kingdom of lights. Shaykh al-Akbar notes: "With Abu Talib it is the world of Immensity. With us it is the middle world." By this he indicates that the mulk is opposite the jabarut and it is precisely the realm of lights, the Divine Presence that creates the split between the two worlds on which creational reality is based. That means that Light is



the barzakh, the inter-space between the visible and the invisible. In reality existence is one, the three kingdoms are one kingdom with one Lord. It is by the setting up of the limits and the barriers and the differences that the universal metagalactic existence is able to come into being. That which sets up barriers, and is the barriers, is none other than the One Reality in its sublime perfection unrelated to any form. The barriers are not realities in themselves yet without them nothing would be defined and no-one could define them.' (*Quranic Tawhid*. Diwan Press. 1981).

**jahiliyya** : the time of arrogance and ignorance which precedes the time when the way of Islam is established as a social reality. Anyone who does not have wisdom suffers from jahiliyya.

**Jalal** : Allah's Attribute of Majesty.

**Jamal** : Allah's Attribute of Beauty.

**Jibril** : the angel Gabriel, peace be on him.

**jihad** : the fight in the way of Allah against kufr. Inwardly, the greater jihad is the fight against the kufr in your own heart. Until your heart is purified, you are your own worst enemy. Outwardly, the lesser jihad is the fight against the kafir who attempts to subvert or destroy the practice of Islam.

**Jinnah** : the Garden, the final destination and resting place of the Muslims in the akhira, once the Day of Reckoning is past. Jinnah is accurately described in great detail in the Qur'an and in the Hadith.

**jinn** : beings made of smokeless fire who live in the Unseen. Some jinn are mumin, some are kafir, some are the followers of shaytan, and we seek refuge in Allah from the accursed shaytan.

**jizya** : the annual tax paid by all adult males of the ahlu'l-dhimma, who are guaranteed the protection of the Muslims in return.

**Ka'ba** : the House of Allah, in Makka, originally built by the Prophet Ibrahim, peace be on him, and rebuilt with the help of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him. The Ka'ba is the focal point which all Muslims face when doing the salat. This does not mean that Allah lives inside the Ka'ba, nor does it mean that the Muslims worship the Ka'ba. It is Allah whom the Muslims worship, and Allah is not contained or confined in any form or place or time or concept.

**kafir** : the one who denies the Existence of Allah and who rejects His Prophets and Messengers, and who accordingly has no peace or trust in this life, and a place in the Fire in the next life. Shaykh 'Abd'al-Qadir al-Murabit writes, 'Kufr means to cover up reality: kafir is one who does so. The kafir is the opposite of the mu'min. The point is that everyone knows 'how it is' – only it suits some people to deny it and pretend it is otherwise, to behave as if we were going to be here for ever. This is called kufr. The condition of the kafir is therefore one of neurosis, because of his inner knowing. He 'bites his hand in rage' but will not give in to his inevitable oncoming death.' (*Quranic Tawhid*. Diwan Press. 1981).

**kafirun** : the plural of kafir. The disbelievers.

**khalif** : one who stands in for someone else, in this case, the leader of the Muslim community. In the first Muslim community of Madina al-Munawarra, the Khalif was the Amir was the Imam.

**kharaaj** : taxes imposed on revenue from land or the work of slaves.

**khulafa ar-rashidun** : the rightly guided Khalifs, Abu Bakr, 'Umar, 'Uthman and 'Ali, may Allah be pleased with them.

**kitab** : a book.

**kufr** : to cover up reality, to deny Allah, to reject His Messengers.

**kutub** : the plural of kitab; books, often meaning the Books revealed by Allah to His Messengers.

**lubb** : a core. This term is used in the Qur'an to indicate people who have great understanding in the core of their being, the heart. Those who have lubb are capable of worshipping Allah with deep knowledge and attaining ma'rifa.

**Madina al-Munawarra** : the city to which the Prophet Muhammad made Hijra, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, and where the revelation of the Qur'an was completed. The first Muslim community was established in Madina al-Munawarra, and Allah says in the Qur'an that this is the best community ever raised up from amongst mankind. Their hearts and actions were illuminated and enlightened, may Allah be pleased with all of them, by Allah and His Messenger; and Madina al-Munawarra is still illuminated by the presence of the arwah of those of them who are buried there, especially the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him.

**Mahdi** : one who is rightly guided. The Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, said that there would be a mahdi every hundred years who would revive the deen of Islam, and that the last of them would be the Mahdi who would fight the Dajjal until the Prophet Jesus, peace be on him, returned to this world and killed the Dajjal.

**Makka** : the city in which the Ka'ba stands, and in which the Prophet Muhammad was born, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, and where the revelation of the Qur'an commenced.

**makruh** : disapproved of without being forbidden.

**mala'ika** : the angels, who are made of light and glorify Allah unceasingly. They are neither male nor female. They do not need food or drink. They are incapable of wrong action and disobeying Allah and they do what Allah commands them to do. Everyone has two recording angels continually with them who write down their actions and none of this escapes the knowledge of Allah.

**Malakut** : the angelic world, the kingdom of Unseen forms. Shaykh 'Abd'al-Qadir al-Murabit writes, 'This is both the kingdom of the source-forms of the creational realities, crystals, atoms, organisms, and the kingdom of the spiritual realities, the Lote-tree, the Balance, the Throne and so on. It is the realm of vision as the mulk is the realm of event. As the characteristic of the mulk is fixity or apparent fixity so the characteristic of the malakut is flux and transformation or apparent flux. In fact one could say that the reality of the two worlds is opposite that, for indeed the solid forms are all in change, while the visions are all unfolding the fixed primal patterns on which all the visible world is based.' (*Qur'anic Tawhid*. Diwan Press. 1981).

**mamnu'a** : what is prohibited in acts of worship in the Shari'ah.

**ma'rifa** : gnosis, the highest knowledge of Allah possible to man or woman. It is to directly witness the Light of the Names and Attributes of Allah manifested in the heart. Shaykh 'Abd'al-Qadir al-Murabit writes, 'Gnosis, the central knowledge, for it is knowledge of the self, is a proof to the one who knows it and this is its glory and its supremacy over all others. By it its possessor knows the universe, how it is set up and its underlying laws in their action, their qualities and their essences. His knowledge of the Universe is his own self knowledge, while his

knowledge of his own self is direct perception of his own original reality, the adamic identity. Everything he has comes from Allah. He never sees anything but he sees Allah in it, before it, after it. There is only Allah in his eyes as there is only Allah in his heart.' (*Qur'anic Tawhid*. Diwan Press. 1981).

**ma'sha'Allah** : it is the will of Allah; it is what Allah wants.

**Masih ad-Dajjal** : the false Messiah, the AntiChrist, the Dajjal.

**Masih ibn Maryam** : the Messiah, son of Mary – Jesus Christ, peace be on him.

**Mikail** : the angel in charge of the Garden.

**mizan** : balance, in life, inwardly and outwardly. Mizan is also used to indicate the means by which actions and intentions will be measured on the Last Day. Shaykh 'Abd'al-Qadir al-Murabit writes, 'Al-Mizan. Its meaning is the justice and harmony of all creation and therefore of time/space and therefore of us and events. It is the meaning of the Garden and the Fire, of the balance between the matrices, it is what was called in the ancient Tao-form of Islam in China, yin/yang. It is the secret of the contrary Names. It is what we are born and die on, and which turns our acts and intentions into realities to be weighed on the Day of the Balance.' (*Qur'anic Tawhid*. Diwan Press. 1981).

**mudd** : a measure of volume, one both hands cupped full, a double handed scoop.

**mufsida** : what invalidates acts of worship in the Shari'ah.

**mufsidun** : the mischief makers. Those who say they are putting everything right, when in fact they are only creating disorder.

**muhsin** : the Muslim who has ihsan, and who accordingly only gives reality to the Real, Allah. Only the muhsin really knows what Tawhid is. A wali of Allah, Shaykh 'Abd'al-Qadir al-Murabit, once said, 'The difference between the kafir and the muslim is vast. The difference between the muslim and the mumin is greater still. The difference between the mumin and the muhsin is immeasurable,' not only in inward state, but also in outward action.

**Mulk** : the phenomenal world, the universe. Shaykh 'Abd'al-Qadir al-Murabit writes, 'The visible realm. The mulk is what is experienced in the sensory (hiss) and in illusion (wahm). Of its nature mulk is both

solid, sensory and pure-space, illusory. This is now confirmed by kafir science. The amazing interlocking substantiality of Mulk veils most people from the meaning-realm onto which it opens the intellect, thus it is designated kingdom for it is a realm of reality, seemingly complete in itself. It is not real, but it is made WITH THE REAL, in the language of Qur'an. Thus to understand it we must penetrate its imprisoning solidity.' (*Qur'anic Tawhid*. Diwan Press. 1981).

**mumin** : the Muslim who has iman, who trusts in Allah and accepts His Messenger, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, and for whom the next world is more real than this world. The mumin longs for the Garden so much, that this world seems like the Fire by comparison.

**muminun** : the plural of mumin; the believers.

**munafiqun** : the hypocrites. Those people who outwardly profess Islam on the tongue, but who inwardly reject Allah and His Messenger, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, and who side with the kafirun against the muminun. The deepest part of the Fire is reserved for the munafiqun.

**Munkar and Nakir** : the two angels who question the ruh in the grave after the dead body has been buried, asking, 'Who is your Lord?'; 'Who is your Prophet?'; 'What is your Book?'; 'What was your Deen?' The kafir will be confused. The mumin will have the best reply.

**mushrikun** : the idol worshippers, those who commit shirk.

**muslim** : one who follows the Way of Islam, doing what is obligatory and avoiding what is forbidden in the Shari'ah, keeping within the hudud of Allah, and embodying as much of the Sunnah as he or she is able, through study of the Qur'an and the Hadith followed by action. A Muslim is, by definition, one who is safe and sound, at peace in this world, and guaranteed the Garden in the next world.

**mustahab** : what is recommended, but not obligatory, in acts of worship in the Shari'ah.

**mutafafifin** : the cheaters; those who give short measure and demand more than a fair price.

**nabi** : a Prophet; a man rightly guided by Allah and sent by Allah to guide others. Altogether there have been one hundred and twenty-four

thousand Prophets in the history of mankind. The last Prophet before the end of the world, the Seal of the Prophets, is the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him.

**nafs** : the illusory experiencing self; you as you think you are. When the nafs is impure, it is an illusory solidification of events obscuring a light, the ruh. When it has been completely purified, the nafs is ruh.

**Nar** : the Fire of Jahannam, the final destination and place of torment of the kafirun and the munafiqun in the akhira, once the Day of Reckoning is past. Some of those Muslims who neglected what is fard in the Shari'ah and who did grave wrong action without making tawba will spend some time in the Fire before being allowed to enter the Garden, depending on the Forgiveness of Allah – Who forgives every wrong action except shirk if He wishes. Nar is accurately described in great detail in the Qur'an and in the Hadith.

**nawafil** : what is voluntary in acts of worship in the Shari'ah.

**Nur** : Light. Allah says in the Qur'an that Allah is the Light of the heavens and the earth.

**Nuri Muhammad** : the ruhani Light of Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him.

**qadr** : the Decree of Allah, which determines every sub-atomic particle in existence, and accordingly whatever appears to be in existence. One of Allah's Names is Al-Qadir, the Powerful, the One Who does whatever He wants. Again and again the Qur'an reminds us that Allah has power over everything and that Allah does what He wants.

**qabr** : the grave, experienced as a place of peace and light and space by the ruh of the mumin, who sees his or her place in the Garden in the morning and in the evening; and experienced as a place of torment and darkness and no space by the ruh of the kafir, who sees his or her place in the Fire in the morning and in the evening. After death there is a period of waiting in the grave for the ruh until the Last Day arrives, when everyone will be brought back to life, assembled together, and sent to the Garden or to the Fire. So do not have your body cremated.

**qibla** : direction. Everyone has a direction in life. The direction which the Muslims face when they do the prayer is towards the Ka'ba in Makka. This direction is what distinguishes the Muslims from everyone else, who have every direction except the qibla.

**Qur'an** : the 'Recitation', the last Revelation from Allah to mankind and the jinn before the end of the world, revealed to the Prophet Muhammad, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, through the angel Jibril, over a period of twenty-three years, the first thirteen of which were spent in Makka and the last ten of which were spent in Madina. The Qur'an amends, encompasses, expands, surpasses and abrogates all the earlier revelations revealed to the earlier Messengers, peace be on all of them. The Qur'an is by far the greatest of all the miracles given to the Prophet Muhammad by Allah, for he was illiterate and could neither read nor write. The Qur'an is the uncreated word of Allah. The Qur'an still exists today exactly as it was originally revealed, without any alteration or change or addition or deletion. Whoever recites the Qur'an with courtesy and sincerity receives knowledge and wisdom, for it is the well of wisdom in this age.

**qutb** : the Pole or axis of the Universe, the greatest living wali at any given point in time. Shaykh 'Abd'al-Qadir al-Murabit writes, 'This term is only understood by the one who has attained to it. An approximation would be to say that in him gnosis is complete inwardly so that outwardly his gnosis radiates as a sun over all the other gnostics. The proofs of the qutb are these: that he is surrounded by a circle of gnostics as a King is visibly recognisable by his Court, that the deen of Islam revives around him bringing life to the people, and thirdly that he names his successor before his death.' (*The Meaning of Man*. Diwan Press. 1977).

**Ramadan** : one of the pillars of Islam. It is the ninth lunar month of the Muslim calendar during which all adult Muslims who are in good health fast from dawn to sunset each day. During the first third of the fast you taste Allah's Mercy; during the second third of the fast you taste Allah's Forgiveness; and during the last third of the fast you taste freedom from the Fire. The Qur'an was first revealed in the month of Ramadan during the Night of Power, which is one of the nights in the last third of Ramadan. The fast of Ramadan is a purification outwardly and inwardly.

**rasul** : a Messenger, a Prophet who has been given a revealed Book by Allah. Every Messenger was a Prophet, but not every Prophet was a Messenger.

**ruh** : the spirit, formed of pure light, the Light of Allah.

**ruhani** : pertaining to the ruh.

**rusul** : the plural of rasul; the Messengers.

**sa‘** : hour; usually used to denote the Hour, that is the time when the world ends, and the yawm al-akhira begins.

**saa** : a measure of volume, equal to four mudds.

**sadaqa** : giving to the needy, in any form, including sharing wisdom, giving a helping hand, giving away clothing, food and money. Sadaqa is given voluntarily and willingly seeking only the pleasure of Allah.

**sahih** : healthy and sound with no defects.

**salat** : one of the pillars of Islam. It is the prayer which consists of fixed sets of standings, bowings, prostrations and sittings in worship to Allah. There are five prayers which are obligatory: subh which is done between dawn and sunrise; dhur which is done between mid-day and mid-afternoon; ‘asr which is done between mid-afternoon and sunset; maghrib which is done immediately after sunset; and ‘isha which is done between once it is dark and mid-night. The Muslim day begins at maghrib. It is necessary to be in ghushl and in wudu before you do the salat. Salat is a purification outwardly and inwardly.

**salih** : a developed man; by definition, one who is in the right place at the right time.

**sayyedina** : ‘our master’, a term of respect.

**shahada** : one of the pillars of Islam. It is to witness: ‘La ilaha il’Allah, Muhammad ar-rasulu’llah,’ that is, that: ‘There is no god only Allah, Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah,’ may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him. The shahada is the gateway to Islam in this world and the gateway to Jinnah in the next world. It is easy to say, but to act on it is a vast undertaking which has far-reaching consequences, both in inward awareness and in outward action, both in this world and in the next world. Affirming the shahada is a purification outwardly and inwardly.

**shahid** : a witness, a martyr in the way of Allah.

**Shari‘ah** : a road; the Way of Islam, the Way of Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, the road which leads to knowledge of Allah and the Garden. Shaykh ‘Abd’al-Qadir al-Murabit writes, ‘It is the behaviour modality of a people based on the revelation



of their Prophet. The last shari'ah in history has proved to be that of Islam. Its social modality abrogates all previous shara'i e.g. Navaho, Judaic, Vedic, Buddhist, etc. These shara'i however, continue until the arrival and confrontation takes place in that culture with the final and thus superior shari'ah – Islam. It is, being the last, therefore the easiest to follow, for it is applicable to the whole human race wherever they are.' (*Qur'anic Tawhid*. Diwan Press. 1981).

**Shara'i** : the plural of shari'ah; roads.

**shaykh** : an old man – an 'alim who has knowledge of Allah and His Messenger, may Allah bless him and grant him peace, and His deen – the one who guides you from knowledge of your self to knowledge of your Lord.

**shaytan** : a devil, particularly the Devil, Iblis (Satan), may Allah curse him, who is one of the jinn who was and is too proud to obey Allah, and who encourages everyone else to be likewise. Shaytan is part of the creation of Allah, and we seek refuge in Allah from the evil that He has created.

**shirk** : to associate anything or anyone as a partner with Allah, that is, to worship what is other than Allah, including your self, your country, your universe and anything it contains. Shirk is the opposite of Tawhid. Allah says in the Qur'an that He will forgive any wrong action except shirk. Shaykh 'Abd'al-Qadir al-Murabit writes, 'Idol-worship means giving delineation to the Real. Encasing it in an object, a concept, a ritual, or a myth. This is called shirk, or association. Avoidance of shirk is the most radical element in the approach to understanding existence in Islam. It soars free of these deep social restrictions and so posits such a profoundly revolutionary approach to existence that it constitutes – and has done for fourteen hundred years – the most radical rejection of the political version of idolatry, statism. It is very difficult for programmed literates in this society to cut through to the clear tenets of Islam, for the Judaic and Christian perversions stand so strongly in the way either as, rightly, anathema, or else as ideals. The whole approach to understanding reality has a quite different texture than that known and defined in European languages, thus a deep insight into the structure of the Arabic language itself would prove a better introduction to the metaphysic than a philosophical statement. The uncompromising tawhid that is affirmed does not add on any sort of 'god-concept'. Nor

does it posit an infra-god, a grund-god, even an over-god. Christian philosophers were so frightened by this position that when they met it, to stop people discovering the fantasy element in their trinitarian mythology they decided to identify it with pantheism in the hope of discrediting it. That they succeeded in this deception is an indication of how far the whole viewpoint has been kept out of reach of the literate savage society. Let it suffice here to indicate that there is no 'problem' about the nature of Allah. Nor do we consider it possible even to speak of it. No how, who, or what or why. It is not hedging the matter in mystery. It is simply asking the wrong questions. The knowledge of Allah is specifically a personal quest in which the radical question that has to be asked is not even 'Who am I?' but 'Where then are you going?' (*Qur'anic Tawhid*. Diwan Press. 1981).

**Sidrat al-Muntaha** : 'the lote tree of the furthest limit', the place in the Unseen where form ends.

**Sirat al-Mustaqim** : the straight path, of Islam.

**Sunnah** : the form, the customary practice of a person or group of people. It has come to refer almost exclusively to the practice of the Messenger of Allah, Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, but at the time that Imam Malik, may Allah be pleased with him, compiled *Al-Muwatta'*, meaning 'The Well-Trodden Path', there was no sense of setting the Sunnah of the Prophet apart from the Sunnah of Madina, so that the actions of its knowledgeable people were given even more weight than the behaviour of the Prophet related in isolated Hadith. The Sunnah of the Prophet Muhammad and the first Muslim community of Madina al-Munawarra is a complete behavioural science that has been systematically kept outside the learning framework of this society.

**surah** : a form, a large unit of the Qur'an linked by thematic content, composed of ayat. Every surah in the Qur'an has a particular form, and is named as such.

**Surat'al-Fatiha** : the form of both Opening and Victory. This is the opening surah of the Qur'an. Recitation of Surat'al-Fatiha is an integral and essential part of the salat, which means that every Muslim recites it at least twenty times a day. It is thus the most often daily repeated statement on the face of the earth today. Its translation in English is as follows:

**In the Name of Allah, the Merciful, the Compassionate**

**Praise to Allah, Lord of the worlds, the Merciful, the Compassionate, King of the Day of the Life-Transaction. Only You we worship and only You we ask for help. Lead us on the Straight Path, the path of those whom You have blessed, not of those with whom You are angry, and not of those who are astray. Amin.**

**Surah Yunus** : the form of the Prophet Jonah, on him be peace.

**Surah Yusuf** : the form of the Prophet Joseph, on him be peace.

**takbir** : the saying of 'Allahu Akbar' meaning 'Allah is Greatest'. Salat begins with a takbir.

**taqlid** : in reference to fiqh, it means the following of previous authorities and the avoidance of ijtihad.

**taqwa** : awe of Allah, which inspires a person to be on guard against wrong action and eager for actions which please Him.

**taslim** : giving the muslim greeting of 'As-Salaamu 'alaykum,' meaning 'Peace be on you'. Salat ends with a taslim.

**tasawwuf** : sufism. Shaykh 'Abd'al-Qadir al-Murabit writes, 'Its preferred etymology is that it derives from suf, wool. Shaykh Hassan al-Basra said, "I saw forty of the people of Badr and they all wore wool." This means that the sufi - tasawwafa - has put on the wool. This is distinct from those who confirm the way of Islam with the tongue and by book learning. It is taking the ancient way, the primordial path of direct experience of the Real. Junayd said, "The sufi is like the earth, filth is flung on it but roses grow from it." He also said, "The sufi is like the earth which supports the innocent and the guilty, like the sky which shades everything, like the rain which washes everything." The sufi is universal. He has reduced and then eliminated the marks of selfhood to allow a clear view of the cosmic reality. He has rolled up the cosmos in its turn and obliterated it. He has gone beyond. The sufi has said 'Allah' - until he has understood. All men and women play in the world like children. The sufi's task is to recognise the end in the beginning, accept the beginning in the end, arrive at the unified view. When the outward opposites are the same, and the instant is presence, and the heart is serene, empty and full, light on light, the one in the woollen cloak has been robed with the robe of honour and is complete. The Imam also said, "If I had known of any

science greater than sufism, I would have gone to it, even on my hands and knees.” (*Qur’anic Tawhid*. Diwan Press. 1981).

**tawaf** : circling the Ka‘ba.

**tawba** : turning away from wrong action to Allah and asking His Forgiveness, returning to correct action after error, turning to face the Real whereas before one turned one’s back. One of the greatest acts of tawba is to abandon the deen of kufr and to embrace the deen of Islam. Your turning to Him is in reality His turning to you.

**Tawhid** : Unity in its most profound sense. Allah is One in His Essence and His Attributes and His Acts. The whole universe and what it contains is One unified event which in itself has no lasting reality. Allah is Real. Shaykh ‘Abd’al-Qadir al-Murabit writes, ‘Our Imam said, “It is a meaning which obliterates the outlines and joins the knowledges. Allah is as He always was. Tawhid has five pillars: it consists of the raising of the veil on the contingent, to attribute endlessness to Allah alone, to abandon friends, to leave one’s country, and to forget what one knows and what one does not know.” His greatest statement on tawhid, which Shaykh al-Akbar has called the highest of what may be said on the subject is, “The colour of the water is the colour of the glass.” Commenting on this Shaykh Ibn ‘Ajiba said, “This means that the exalted Essence is subtle, hidden and luminous. It appears in the outlines and the forms, it takes on their colours. Admit this and understand it if you do not taste it.” Tawhid is itself a definition whose meaning is not complete for the one who holds to it until he has abandoned it or rather exhausted its indications and abandoned it for complete absorption in the One.’ (*Qur’anic Tawhid*. Diwan Press. 1981).

**tayammum** : purification for prayer with clean dust, earth or stone, when water for ghusl or wudu is either unavailable or would be detrimental to health. Tayammum is done by striking the earth with the palms of the hands and wiping the face and hands and forearms.

**‘ulama** : the plural of ‘alim; those who know. Allah says in the Qur’an that the ‘ulama are those who fear Allah.

**‘umra** : the lesser pilgrimage to the Ka‘ba, the House of Allah in Makka, and the performance of its rites in the protected area which surrounds the Ka‘ba. It can be done at any time of the year.

**wajib** : what is necessary, but not obligatory, in acts of worship in the Shari'ah.

**wali** : the friend of Allah; the one who has both inward knowledge and outward knowledge. The station of the wali is the station of knowledge of the Real by direct seeing. Inwardly the wali has gnosis of Allah. He or she has intimate knowledge of the Qur'an and the Hadith, knowing their outward meanings and their inward meanings and their gnostic meanings, as much as Allah wills. Outwardly the wali embodies the Shari'ah of Islam and the Sunnah of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him. The greatest wali alive at any given point in time, the Qutb, is like a drop compared to the ocean of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him.

**wudu** : washing the hands, mouth, nostrils, face, forearms, head, ears, and feet, with water, in accordance with the Sunnah of the Prophet Muhammad, may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him, so as to be pure for prayer. You must already be in ghusl for wudu to be effective. You should ensure that your private parts and under-clothes are clean before doing wudu. Once you have done wudu, you remain in the state of wudu until it broken by: any of the conditions which make it necessary to have a ghusl; emission of impurities from the private parts – urine, faeces, wind, prostatic fluid, or other discharge; loss of consciousness by whatever means, usually by sleep or fainting; physical contact between man and woman where sexual pleasure is either intended or experienced; touching your penis with the inside of your hand or fingers; and leaving Islam. It is necessary to be in ghusl and in wudu to do the salat, and to hold the Qur'an. Wudu is a purification both outwardly and inwardly.

**yaqin** : certainty. It has three stages:

'Ilm al-yaqin, knowledge of certainty.

'Ayn al-yaqin, source of certainty.

Haqq al-yaqin, truth of certainty.

The Raja of Mahmudabad defined them thus:

You are told – there is a fire in the forest.

You reach the fire in the forest and see it.

You are the fire in the forest.

**Yawm al-Akhira** : the Day After – the end of the world, and thus the Last Day, when everyone who has ever lived will be given life again, gathered together, their actions and intentions weighed in the Balance, and their place in either the Garden or the Fire confirmed. Yawm al-Akhira is also referred to in the Qur'an as Yawm ad-Deen, the Day of the Life Transaction; Yawm al-Ba'th, the Day of Rising from the grave; Yawm al-Hashr, the Day of Gathering; Yawm al-Qiyama, the Day of Standing; Yawm al-Mizan, the Day of the Balance; and Yawm al-Hisab, the Day of Reckoning. That Day will either be the best day or the worst day of your life, depending on who you are and where you are going. The Yawm al-Akhira is accurately described in great detail in the Qur'an and in the Hadith.

**zakat** : one of the pillars of Islam. It is an annual wealth tax paid only by Muslims, and not the ahlu'l-dhimma, usually in the form of one fortieth of surplus wealth which is more than a certain fixed minimum amount, which is called the nisab. Zakat is payable on: accumulated wealth; merchandise; certain crops; certain live-stock; and subterranean and mineral wealth. As soon as it is collected it is redistributed to those in need, as defined in the Qur'an and in the Hadith. Zakat is a purification both outwardly and inwardly.

**zakat al-fitr** : a small obligatory head-tax, one saa, of a local staple food, usually grain or dried fruit, which is collected from, or on behalf of, every single Muslim in the community at the end of Ramadan before the 'Id al-Fitr, and given to those in need, as defined in the Qur'an and in the Hadith. Zakat al-Fitr is a purification both outwardly and inwardly.

**Zamzam** : the well near the Ka'ba in Makka which provides the best water in the world.



Most of the definitions in this Glossary are taken directly or derive from the books listed in the Bibliography, which should all be read in order to arrive at an understanding which is far beyond the scope of this book.



## Post Script

The world has changed a great deal since the first edition of *Dajjal* was written in the space of six weeks in 1980 and the revised edition completed in 1997. Suffice it to say that the tide and nature of events during the last 30 years have on the whole confirmed the original analysis and assessment – often more graphically than could have been imagined.

The opposites continue to polarise and what used to be disguised is now more apparent ~ and what Allah decrees will surely happen.

As during the twentieth century, the meaning of events in the Middle East can only be understood in the context of recognising what has to be done if the publicly proclaimed Zionist dream of establishing a Greater Eretz from the Nile to the Euphrates is to be realised.

Outwardly, the peoples of the world are faced with the choice of either being further enslaved by means of institutionalised usury and secular democracy, supported and masked by the doctrine of human rights ~ or of establishing governance in accordance with the Shari'ah of Islam, and implementing the abolition of usury and restoration of the gold dinar and silver dirham, supported and illuminated by worship of Allah.

Inwardly, the journey of knowledge for each of us continues ~ we are always free to stop at each and every step of the way ~ or to go on. As time passes and lives draw to their close, right now the choice is ours:

Furth, fortune and fill the fetters. ~ Say Allah! and go straight ahead!

**The angels descend on those who say,**

**'Our Lord is Allah,' and then go straight:**

**'Do not fear and do not grieve**

**but rejoice in the Garden you have been promised.**

**We are your protectors in the life of the dunya and the akhira.**

**You will have there all that your selves could wish for.**

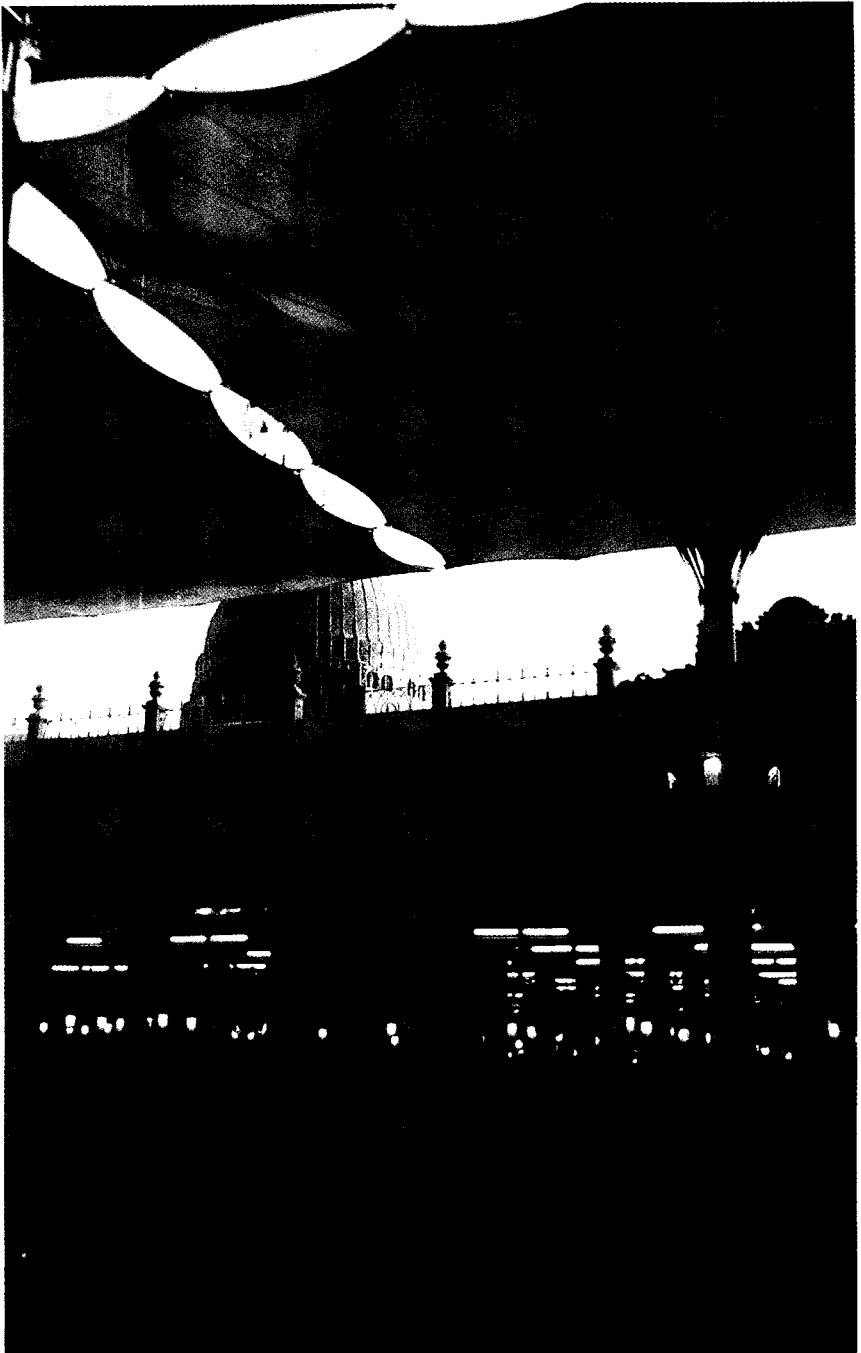
**You will have there everything you demand.**

**Hospitality from One Who is Ever-Forgiving, Most Merciful.'**

**(*Qur'an: Surah Fussilat – 41.29-31*)**

from a free spirit in a free world

**Ahmad Thomson  
Safar 1432 / February 2011**



The Prophet's Mosque ﷺ , Madina



# Bibliography

*Qur'an*, the uncreated word of Allah. Translations by Muhammad Pickthall, by Muhammad Yusuf Ali and by Shaykh Abdalhaqq & Aisha Bewley. Avoid gross mis-translations by non-muslims.

*Al-Muwatta'*, of Imam Malik. Translated by 'A'isha 'Abdarahman at-Tarjumana and Ya'qub Johnson. Diwan Press. 1982.

*Ar-Risala*, of Imam Ibn Abi Zaid al-Qairwani. Translated by Alh. Bello Muhammad Daura. Northern Nigerian Publishing Co. Ltd. 1983.

*Handbook on Islam, Iman, Ihsan*, of Shaykh Uthman Dan Fodio. Translated by 'A'isha 'Abdar-Rahman Bewley. Diwan Press. 1978.

*The Foundations of Islam*, of Qadi 'Ayad. Translated by 'A'isha 'Abdarahman at-Tarjumana. Diwan al-Amir Publications. 1982.

*The Shifa'*, of Qadi 'Ayad. Translated by 'A'isha 'Abdarahman at-Tarjumana. Madinah Press. 1991.

*Life of Muhammad*, of Ibn Ishaq. Translated by A. Guillaume. Oxford University Press. 1978.

*Life of Muhammad*, by Martin Lings. Allen and Unwin. 1983.

*The Life of Muhammad*, by Tahia Al-Isma'il. Ta-Ha Publishers Ltd. 1988.

*Sahih*, of Imam Bukhari. Translated by Dr. Muhammad Muhsin Khan. Crescent Publishing House. 1974.

*Sahih*, of Imam Muslim. Translated by 'Abdal-Hamid Siddiqui. Nusrat Ali Nasri for Kitab Bhavan. 1987.

*Sunan*, of Imam Abu Da'ud. Translated by Ahmad Hasan. Sh. Muhammad Ashraf. 1984.

*The Gardens of the Righteous*, of Imam Nawawi. Translated by Zafrullah Khan.

*Mishkat al-Masabih*. Translated by Professor Robson. 1972.

*Forty Hadith*, of Imam Nawawi. Translated by Ezedin Ibrahim and Denys Johnson-Davies. The Holy Qur'an Publishing House. 1976.

*Forty Hadith Qudsi*, from Allah. Translated by Ezzedin Ibrahim and Denys Johnson-Davies. The Holy Qur'an Publishing House. 1980.

*Kufr – an Islamic Critique*, by Shaykh 'Abd'al-Qadir al-Murabit. Diwan Press. 1981.

*Letter to an African Muslim*, by Shaykh 'Abd'al-Qadir al-Murabit. Diwan Press. 1981.

*Root Islamic Education*, by Shaykh 'Abd'al-Qadir al-Murabit. Diwan al-Amir Publications. 1982.

*The Sign of the Sword*, by Shaykh 'Abd'al-Qadir al-Murabit. Medina Press. 1984.

*The Book of Strangers*, by Ian Dallas. Victor Gollancz. 1972.

*The Way of Muhammad*, by Shaykh 'Abd'al-Qadir al-Murabit. Diwan Press. 1974.

*Diwans of the Darqawa*. Translated by 'A'isha 'Abdarahman at-Tarjumana. Diwan Press 1980.

*The Darqawi Way*, of Shaykh Mawlay al-'Arabi ad-Darqawi. Translated by 'A'isha 'Abdarahman at-Tarjumana. Diwan Press. 1979.

*The Meaning of Man*, by Shaykh 'Ali al-Jamal. Translated by 'A'isha 'Abdarahman at-Tarjumana. Diwan Press. 1978.

*Qur'anic Tawhid*, by Shaykh 'Abd'al-Qadir al-Murabit. Diwan Press. 1981.

*Indications from Signs*, by Shaykh 'Abd'al-Qadir al-Murabit. Diwan Press. 1982.

*Jesus, Prophet of Islam – Revised Edition*, by Muhammad Ata'ur-Rahim and Ahmad Thomson. Ta-Ha Publishers Ltd. 1996.

*For Christ's Sake and Islam in Andalus* (the Revised Edition of *Blood on the Cross*), by Ahmad Thomson and Muhammad Ata'ur-Rahim. Ta-Ha Publishers Ltd. 1996.

*Making History*, by Ahmad Thomson. Ta-Ha Publishers Ltd. 1997.

*The Bible, the Qur'an and Science*, by Maurice Bucaille. 4th Edition.

*The Holy Bible*, by various authors. King James and New International Versions. Hodder and Stoughton. 1979.

*The Gospel of Barnabas*. Edited and translated from the Italian Ms. in the Imperial Library at Vienna, by Laura and Lonsdale Ragg. Aisha Bawany Waqf. 1977.

*The Protocols of the Elders of Zion*. Translated by Victor E. Marsden. British Patriot Publications. 1978.

*The Thirteenth Tribe*, by A. Koestler. Hutchinson & Co. (Publishers) Ltd. 1976.

*The History of the Jewish Khazars*, by D.M. Dunlop. Princeton University Press. 1954.

*The Controversy of Zion*, by Douglas Reed. Veritas Publishing Company (Pty) Ltd. 1985.

*Last Days of the Romanoffs*, by Robert Wilton. Thornton Butterworth. 1920.

*History and Destiny of the Jews*, by Josef Kastein (alias Julius Katzenstein). Translated by Huntley Paterson. John Lane. 1933.

*False Inheritance*, by Michael Rice. Kegan Paul International. 1994.

*The Sign of the Sword*, by Shaykh 'Abd' al-Qadir al-Murabit. Murabitun Publications. 1984

*For the Coming Man*, by Shaykh 'Abd' al-Qadir al-Murabit. Murabitun Press. 1988.

*The End of Economics*, by 'Umar Ibrahim Vadillo. Madinah Press. 1991.

*Islam against Economics*, by 'Umar Ibrahim Vadillo. Murabitun Publications. 1991.

*Fatwa on Paper-Money*, by 'Umar Ibrahim Vadillo. Madinah Press. 1991.

*The Workers have been Told a Lie about Their Own Situation*, by 'Umar Ibrahim Vadillo. Murabitun Publications. 1992.

*Jewish Foundations of the New World Order*, by Leo Jung. Herald Square Press, Inc. 1949.

*The Signs before the Day of Judgement*, of Ibn Kathir. Translated by Huda Khattab. Dar Al-Taqwa Ltd. 1991.



Most of the books on Ezra Pound and the Nuremberg Trials in the British Library – and many many others, here, there and everywhere.



## **About the author**

Ahmad Thomson was born in Chipata, Zambia, and was educated principally in Zimbabwe and in England, obtaining a Bachelor of Laws Degree with Honours at the University of Exeter, and a Diploma in Law at the City University of London. He was called to the Bar by the Honourable Society of Gray's Inn in 1979. As well as being the author or co-author of several books and practising as a barrister, the author has worked as a bus conductor, accountant, potter, publisher, oriental carpet warehouseman, delivery van driver, hospital cleaner, theatre porter and editor. The author embraced Islam on the 13th August 1973 at the hand of the Raja of Mahmudabad, alehi rahma, and has travelled widely in the Muslim world in search of knowledge, including England, Spain, Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia, Egypt, Sudan, Saudi Arabia, Syria, Turkey, Iran, Pakistan, India, Thailand, Malaysia and Singapore. Since knowledge is infinite, the search continues, and if you want what Allah wants then there is no confusion as what Allah wants happens.

## **By the same author**

The Last Prophet

may the blessings and peace of Allah be on him  
and on his family and on his companions and followers

The Wives of the Prophet

Fatima az-Zahra

Asma bint Abi Bakr

The Journey of Ahmad and Layla

The Moghuls

The Difficult Journey

The Way Back

The Next World Order

Making History

## **As co-author with Muhammad Ata'ur-Rahim**

Jesus, Prophet of Islam – Revised Edition

For Christ's Sake – Part One of the Revised Edition of Blood on the Cross

Islam in Andalus – Part Two of the Revised Edition of Blood on the Cross

## **As co-author with Abdal-Haqq and A'i'sha Bewley**

The Islamic Will

